IEC 62680-1-3

Edition 4.0 2021-02

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD

NORME INTERNATIONALE

colour inside

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Universal serial bus interfaces for data and power – Part 1-3: Common components – USB Type-C® Cable and Connector Specification

Interfaces de bus universel en série pour les données et l'alimentation électrique – Partie 1-3: Composants communs – Spécification des câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C®



IEC 62680-1-3:2021-02(en-fr)

THIS PUBLICATION IS COPYRIGHT PROTECTED
Copyright © 2021 IEC, Geneva, Switzerland

All rights reserved. Unless otherwise specified, no part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from either IEC or IEC's member National Committee in the country of the requester. If you have any questions about IEC copyright or have an enquiry about obtaining additional rights to this publication, please contact the address below or your local IEC member National Committee for further information.

Droits de reproduction réservés. Sauf indication contraire, aucune partie de cette publication ne peut être reproduite ni utilisée sous quelque forme que ce soit et par aucun procédé, électronique ou mécanique, y compris la photocopie et les microfilms, sans l'accord écrit de l'IEC ou du Comité national de l'IEC du pays du demandeur. Si vous avez des questions sur le copyright de l'IEC ou si vous désirez obtenir des droits supplémentaires sur cette publication, utilisez les coordonnées ci-après ou contactez le Comité national de l'IEC de votre pays de résidence.

IEC Central Office
3, rue de Varembé
CH-1211 Geneva 20
Switzerland

Tel.: +41 22 919 02 11
info@iec.ch
www.iec.ch

About the IEC
The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is the leading global organization that prepares and publishes International Standards for all electrical, electronic and related technologies.

About IEC publications
The technical content of IEC publications is kept under constant review by the IEC. Please make sure that you have the latest edition, a corrigendum or an amendment might have been published.

IEC publications search - webstore.iec.ch/advsearchform
The advanced search enables to find IEC publications by a variety of criteria (reference number, text, technical committee, …). It also gives information on projects, replaced and withdrawn publications.

IEC Just Published - webstore.iec.ch/justpublished
Stay up to date on all new IEC publications. Just Published details all new publications released. Available online and once a month by email.

IEC Customer Service Centre - webstore.iec.ch/csc
If you wish to give us your feedback on this publication or need further assistance, please contact the Customer Service Centre: sales@iec.ch.

IEC online collection - oc.iec.ch
Discover our powerful search engine and read freely all the publications previews. With a subscription you will always have access to up to date content tailored to your needs.

Electropedia - www.electropedia.org
The world's leading online dictionary on electrotechnology, containing more than 22 000 terminological entries in English and French, with equivalent terms in 18 additional languages. Also known as the International Electrotechnical Vocabulary (IEV) online.

A propos de l'IEC
La Commission Electrotechnique Internationale (IEC) est la première organisation mondiale qui élabore et publie des Normes internationales pour tout ce qui a trait à l'électricité, à l'électronique et aux technologies apparentées.

A propos des publications IEC
Le contenu technique des publications IEC est constamment revu. Veuillez vous assurer que vous possédez l'édition la plus récente, un corrigendum ou amendement peut avoir été publié.

Recherche de publications IEC - webstore.iec.ch/advsearchform
La recherche avancée permet de trouver des publications IEC en utilisant différents critères (numéro de référence, texte, comité d'études, …). Elle donne aussi des informations sur les projets et les publications remplacées ou retirées.

IEC Just Published - webstore.iec.ch/justpublished
Restez informé sur les nouvelles publications IEC. Just Published détaille les nouvelles publications parues. Disponible en ligne et une fois par mois par email.

Service Clients - webstore.iec.ch/csc
Si vous désirez nous donner des commentaires sur cette publication ou si vous avez des questions contactez-nous: sales@iec.ch.

IEC online collection - oc.iec.ch
Découvrez notre puissant moteur de recherche et consultez gratuitement tous les aperçus des publications. Avec un abonnement, vous aurez toujours accès à un contenu à jour adapté à vos besoins.

Electropedia - www.electropedia.org
Le premier dictionnaire d'électrotechnologie en ligne au monde, avec plus de 22 000 articles terminologiques en anglais et en français, ainsi que les termes équivalents dans 16 langues additionnelles. Egalement appelé Vocabulaire Electrotechnique International (IEV) en ligne.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

IEC 62680-1-3

Edition 4.0 2021-02

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD

NORME INTERNATIONALE

colour inside

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Universal serial bus interfaces for data and power – Part 1-3: Common components – USB Type-C® Cable and Connector Specification

Interfaces de bus universel en série pour les données et l'alimentation électrique – Partie 1-3: Composants communs – Spécification des câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C®

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION

COMMISSION ELECTROTECHNIQUE INTERNATIONALE

ICS 33.120.20; 33.120.30; 35.200

ISBN 978-2-8322-9337-9

Warning! Make sure that you obtained this publication from an authorized distributor.
Attention! Veuillez vous assurer que vous avez obtenu cette publication via un distributeur agréé.

® Registered trademark of the International Electrotechnical Commission
Marque déposée de la Commission Electrotechnique Internationale

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION

_____

UNIVERSAL SERIAL BUS INTERFACES FOR DATA AND POWER

Part 1-3: Common components – USB Type-C® Cable and Connector Specification

FOREWORD

1) The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is a worldwide organization for standardization comprising all national electrotechnical committees (IEC National Committees). The object of IEC is to promote international co-operation on all questions concerning standardization in the electrical and electronic fields. To this end and in addition to other activities, IEC publishes International Standards, Technical Specifications, Technical Reports, Publicly Available Specifications (PAS) and Guides (hereafter referred to as "IEC Publication(s)"). Their preparation is entrusted to technical committees; any IEC National Committee interested in the subject dealt with may participate in this preparatory work. International, governmental and non-governmental organizations liaising with the IEC also participate in this preparation. IEC collaborates closely with the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) in accordance with conditions determined by agreement between the two organizations.
2) The formal decisions or agreements of IEC on technical matters express, as nearly as possible, an international consensus of opinion on the relevant subjects since each technical committee has representation from all interested IEC National Committees.
3) IEC Publications have the form of recommendations for international use and are accepted by IEC National Committees in that sense. While all reasonable efforts are made to ensure that the technical content of IEC Publications is accurate, IEC cannot be held responsible for the way in which they are used or for any misinterpretation by any end user.
4) In order to promote international uniformity, IEC National Committees undertake to apply IEC Publications transparently to the maximum extent possible in their national and regional publications. Any divergence between any IEC Publication and the corresponding national or regional publication shall be clearly indicated in the latter.
5) IEC itself does not provide any attestation of conformity. Independent certification bodies provide conformity assessment services and, in some areas, access to IEC marks of conformity. IEC is not responsible for any services carried out by independent certification bodies.
6) All users should ensure that they have the latest edition of this publication.
7) No liability shall attach to IEC or its directors, employees, servants or agents including individual experts and members of its technical committees and IEC National Committees for any personal injury, property damage or other damage of any nature whatsoever, whether direct or indirect, or for costs (including legal fees) and expenses arising out of the publication, use of, or reliance upon, this IEC Publication or any other IEC Publications.
8) Attention is drawn to the Normative references cited in this publication. Use of the referenced publications is indispensable for the correct application of this publication.
9) Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this IEC Publication may be the subject of patent rights. IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

International Standard IEC 62680-1-3 has been prepared by technical area 18: Multimedia home systems and applications for end-user networks, of IEC technical committee 100: Audio, video and multimedia systems and equipment.

The text of this standard was prepared by the USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF). The structure and editorial rules used in this publication reflect the practice of the organization which submitted it.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

The text of this International Standard is based on the following documents:

CDV	Report on voting
100/3439/CDV	100/3501/RVC

Full information on the voting for the approval of this International Standard can be found in the report on voting indicated in the above table.

This document has been drafted in accordance with the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

The committee has decided that the contents of this document will remain unchanged until the stability date indicated on the IEC website under "http://webstore.iec.ch" in the data related to the specific document. At this date, the document will be

- reconfirmed,
- withdrawn,
- replaced by a revised edition, or
- amended.

IMPORTANT – The "colour inside" logo on the cover page of this document indicates that it contains colours which are considered to be useful for the correct understanding of its contents. Users should therefore print this document using a colour printer.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

INTRODUCTION

The IEC 62680 series is based on a series of specifications that were originally developed by the USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF). These specifications were submitted to the IEC under the auspices of a special agreement between the IEC and the USB-IF.

This standard is the USB-IF publication Universal Serial Bus Type-C Cable and Connector Specification Revision 2.0.

The USB Implementers Forum, Inc.(USB-IF) is a non-profit corporation founded by the group of companies that developed the Universal Serial Bus specification. The USB-IF was formed to provide a support organization and forum for the advancement and adoption of Universal Serial Bus technology. The Forum facilitates the development of high-quality compatible USB peripherals (devices), and promotes the benefits of USB and the quality of products that have passed compliance testing.

ANY USB SPECIFICATIONS ARE PROVIDED TO YOU "AS IS, "WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE USB IMPLEMENTERS FORUM AND THE AUTHORS OF ANY USB SPECIFICATIONS DISCLAIM ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PROPRIETARY RIGHTS, RELATING TO USE OR IMPLEMENTATION OR INFORMATION IN THIS SPECIFICAITON.

THE PROVISION OF ANY USB SPECIFICATIONS TO YOU DOES NOT PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY LICENSE, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, BY ESTOPPEL OR OTHERWISE, TO ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS.

Entering into USB Adopters Agreements may, however, allow a signing company to participate in a reciprocal, RAND-Z licensing arrangement for compliant products. For more information, please see:

https://www.usb.org/documents

IEC DOES NOT TAKE ANY POSITION AS TO WHETHER IT IS ADVISABLE FOR YOU TO ENTER INTO ANY USB ADOPTERS AGREEMENTS OR TO PARTICIPATE IN THE USB IMPLEMENTERS FORUM."

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Universal Serial Bus Type-C® Cable and Connector Specification

Release 2.0
August 2019

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

**Copyright © 2014-2019, USB 3.0 Promoter Group:
Apple Inc., Hewlett-Packard Inc., Intel Corporation, Microsoft
Corporation, Renesas, STMicroelectronics, and Texas Instruments
All rights reserved.**

NOTE: Adopters may only use the USB Type-C® cable and connector to implement USB or third party functionality as expressly described in this Specification; all other uses are prohibited.

LIMITED COPYRIGHT LICENSE: The USB 3.0 Promoters grant a conditional copyright license under the copyrights embodied in the USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification to use and reproduce the Specification for the sole purpose of, and solely to the extent necessary for, evaluating whether to implement the Specification in products that would comply with the specification. Without limiting the foregoing, use of the Specification for the purpose of filing or modifying any patent application to target the Specification or USB compliant products is not authorized. Except for this express copyright license, no other rights or licenses are granted, including without limitation any patent licenses. In order to obtain any additional intellectual property licenses or licensing commitments associated with the Specification a party must execute the USB 3.0 Adopters Agreement. NOTE: By using the Specification, you accept these license terms on your own behalf and, in the case where you are doing this as an employee, on behalf of your employer.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY DISCLAIMER

THIS SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED TO YOU "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE AUTHORS OF THIS SPECIFICATION DISCLAIM ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING LIABILITY FOR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PROPRIETARY RIGHTS, RELATING TO USE OR IMPLEMENTATION OF INFORMATION IN THIS SPECIFICATION. THE PROVISION OF THIS SPECIFICATION TO YOU DOES NOT PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY LICENSE, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, BY ESTOPPEL OR OTHERWISE, TO ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS.

All implementation examples and reference designs contained within this Specification are included as part of the limited patent license for those companies that execute the USB 3.0 Adopters Agreement.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

USB Type-C®, USB-C®, USB 2.0 Type-C™ and USB4™ are trademarks of the Universal Serial Bus Implementers Forum (USB-IF). DisplayPort™ is a trademark of VESA. All product names are trademarks, registered trademarks, or service marks of their respective owners.

Thunderbolt™ is a trademark of Intel Corporation. You may only use the Thunderbolt™ trademark or logo in conjunction with products designed to this specification that complete proper certification and executing a Thunderbolt™ trademark license – see usb.org/compliance for further information.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

CONTENTS

Specification Work Group Chairs / Specification Editors 19
Specification Work Group Contributors 19
Pre-Release Draft Industry Reviewing Companies That Provided Feedback 24
Revision History 25
1 Introduction 26
1.1 Purpose 26
1.2 Scope 26
1.3 Related Documents 27
1.4 Conventions 27
1.4.1 Precedence 27
1.4.2 Keywords 27
1.4.3 Numbering 28
1.5 Terms and Abbreviations 28
2 Overview 33
2.1 Introduction 33
2.2 USB Type-C Receptacles, Plugs and Cables 34
2.3 Configuration Process 35
2.3.1 Source-to-Sink Attach/Detach Detection 36
2.3.2 Plug Orientation/Cable Twist Detection 36
2.3.3 Initial Power (Source-to-Sink) Detection and Establishing the Data (Host-to-Device) Relationship 36
2.3.4 USB Type-C VBUS Current Detection and Usage 37
2.3.5 USB PD Communication 37
2.3.6 Functional Extensions 38
2.4 VBUS 38
2.5 VCONN 39
2.6 Hubs 39
3 Mechanical 40
3.1 Overview 40
3.1.1 Compliant Connectors 40
3.1.2 Compliant Cable Assemblies 40
3.1.3 Compliant USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assemblies 40
3.1.4 Compliant USB Type-C to Legacy Adapter Assemblies 41
3.2 USB Type-C Connector Mating Interfaces 41
3.2.1 Interface Definition 42
3.2.2 Reference Designs 63
3.2.3 Pin Assignments and Descriptions 70
3.3 Cable Construction and Wire Assignments 71
3.3.1 Cable Construction (Informative) 71
3.3.2 Wire Assignments 73
3.3.3 Wire Gauges and Cable Diameters (Informative) 74
3.4 Standard USB Type-C Cable Assemblies 76

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.4.1 USB Full-Featured Type-C Cable Assembly 76
3.4.2 USB 2.0 Type-C Cable Assembly 77
3.4.3 USB Type-C Captive Cable Assemblies 78
3.5 Legacy Cable Assemblies 78
3.5.1 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Cable Assembly 79
3.5.2 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-A Cable Assembly 80
3.5.3 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-B Cable Assembly 81
3.5.4 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-B Cable Assembly 82
3.5.5 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Mini-B Cable Assembly 83
3.5.6 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Micro-B Cable Assembly 84
3.5.7 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Cable Assembly 86
3.6 Legacy Adapter Assemblies 87
3.6.1 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly 87
3.6.2 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Receptacle Adapter Assembly 89
3.7 Electrical Characteristics 90
3.7.1 Raw Cable (Informative) 90
3.7.2 USB Type-C to Type-C Passive Cable Assemblies (Normative) 91
3.7.3 Mated Connector (Informative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2) 109
3.7.4 Mated Connector (Normative – USB4 Gen3) 113
3.7.5 USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assemblies (Normative) 114
3.7.6 USB Type-C to USB Legacy Adapter Assemblies (Normative) 118
3.7.7 Shielding Effectiveness Requirements (Normative) 120
3.7.8 DC Electrical Requirements (Normative) 122
3.8 Mechanical and Environmental Requirements (Normative) 125
3.8.1 Mechanical Requirements 125
3.8.2 Environmental Requirements 130
3.9 Docking Applications (Informative) 131
3.10 Implementation Notes and Design Guides 132
3.10.1 EMC Management (Informative) 132
3.10.2 Stacked and Side-by-Side Connector Physical Spacing (Informative) 134
3.10.3 Cable Mating Considerations (Informative) 135
4 Functional 136
4.1 Signal Summary 136
4.2 Signal Pin Descriptions 136
4.2.1 SuperSpeed USB Pins 136
4.2.2 USB 2.0 Pins 137
4.2.3 Auxiliary Signal Pins 137
4.2.4 Power and Ground Pins 137
4.2.5 Configuration Pins 137
4.3 Sideband Use (SBU) 137
4.4 Power and Ground 137
4.4.1 IR Drop 137
4.4.2 VBUS 138
4.4.3 VCONN 141

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5 Configuration Channel (CC) 145
4.5.1 Architectural Overview 145
4.5.2 CC Functional and Behavioral Requirements 159
4.5.3 USB Port Interoperability Behavior 194
4.6 Power 213
4.6.1 Power Requirements during USB Suspend 214
4.6.2 VBUS Power Provided Over a USB Type-C Cable 215
4.7 USB Hubs 220
4.8 Power Sourcing and Charging 220
4.8.1 DFP as a Power Source 221
4.8.2 Non-USB Charging Methods 223
4.8.3 Sinking Host 224
4.8.4 Sourcing Device 224
4.8.5 Charging a System with a Dead Battery 224
4.8.6 USB Type-C Multi-Port Chargers 224
4.9 Electronically Marked Cables 227
4.9.1 Parameter Values 228
4.9.2 Active Cables 229
4.10 VCONN-Powered Accessories (VPAs) and VCONN-Powered USB Devices (VPDs) 229
4.10.1 VCONN-Powered Accessories (VPAs) 229
4.10.2 VCONN-Powered USB Devices (VPDs) 229
4.11 Parameter Values 231
4.11.1 Termination Parameters 231
4.11.2 Timing Parameters 233
4.11.3 Voltage Parameters 236
5 USB4 Discovery and Entry 238
5.1 Overview of the Discovery and Entry Process 238
5.2 USB4 Functional Requirements 239
5.2.1 USB4 Host Functional Requirements 239
5.2.2 USB4 Device Functional Requirements 239
5.2.3 USB4 Alternate Mode Support 239
5.2.3.1 USB4 Alternate Mode Support on Hosts 239
5.2.3.2 USB4 Alternate Mode Support on Hubs and USB4-based Docks 239
5.3 USB4 Power Requirements 240
5.3.1 Source Power Requirements 240
5.3.2 Sink Power Requirements 240
5.3.3 Device Power Management Requirements 240
5.4 USB4 Discovery and Entry Flow Requirements 241
5.4.1 USB Type-C Initial Connection 241
5.4.2 USB Power Delivery Contract 241
5.4.3 USB4 Discovery and Entry Flow 241
5.4.3.1 USB4 Device Discovery (SOP) 242
5.4.3.2 USB4 Cable Discovery (SOP') 243
5.4.3.3 USB4 Operational Entry 245

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

5.4.4 USB4 Post-Entry Operation 245
5.4.4.1 During USB4 Operation 245
5.4.4.2 Exiting USB4 Operation 245
5.5 USB4 Hub Connection Requirements 246
5.5.1 USB4 Hub Port Initial Connection Requirements 246
5.5.2 USB4 Hub UFP and Host Capabilities Discovery 246
5.5.3 Hub DFP Connection Requirements 247
5.5.3.1 Speculative Connections 247
5.5.3.2 Operational Connections 247
5.5.4 Hub Ports Connection Behavior Flow Model 247
5.5.5 Connecting to Downstream USB4 Hubs 253
5.5.6 Fallback Functional Requirements for USB4 Hubs 253
5.6 USB4 Device Connection Requirements 254
5.6.1 Fallback Mapping of USB4 Peripheral Functions to USB Device Class Types 254
5.7 Parameter Values 255
5.7.1 Timing Parameters 255
6 Active Cables 256
6.1 USB Type-C State Machine 257
6.2 USB PD Requirements 258
6.2.1 Active Cable USB PD Requirements 259
6.2.2 USB PD Messages for OIAC 259
6.2.3 Short Active Cable Behaviors in Response to Power Delivery Events 271
6.3 OIAC Connection Flow and State Diagrams 271
6.3.1 OIAC Connection Flow – Discovery – Phase 1 272
6.3.2 OIAC Connection Flow – Reboot – Phase 2 273
6.3.3 OIAC Connection Flow – Configuration – Phase 3 274
6.3.4 OIAC Connection State Diagram Master 277
6.3.5 OIAC Connection State Diagram Slave 285
6.4 Active Cable Power Requirements 290
6.4.1 VBUS Requirements 290
6.4.2 OIAC VBUS Requirements 290
6.4.3 USB PD Rules in Active State 291
6.4.4 VCONN Requirements 292
6.5 Mechanical 293
6.5.1 Thermal 293
6.5.2 Plug Spacing 293
6.6 Electrical Requirements 294
6.6.1 Shielding Effectiveness Requirement 294
6.6.2 Low Speed Signal Requirement 294
6.6.3 USB 2.0 294
6.6.4 USB 3.2 295
6.6.5 Return Loss 301
6.7 Active Cables That Support Alternate Modes 302
6.7.1 Discover SVIDs 302

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.7.2 Discover Modes 302
6.7.3 Enter/Exit Modes 302
6.7.4 Power in Alternate Modes 302
A Audio Adapter Accessory Mode 303
A.1 Overview 303
A.2 Detail 303
A.3 Electrical Requirements 304
A.4 Example Implementations 306
A.4.1 Passive 3.5 mm to USB Type-C Adapter – Single Pole Detection Switch 306
A.4.2 3.5 mm to USB Type-C Adapter Supporting 500 mA Charge-Through 306
B Debug Accessory Mode 308
B.1 Overview 308
B.2 Functional 308
B.2.1 Signal Summary 309
B.2.2 Port Interoperability 309
B.2.3 Debug Accessory Mode Entry 309
B.2.4 Connection State Diagrams 310
B.2.5 DTS Port Interoperability Behavior 318
B.2.6 Orientation Detection 327
B.3 Security/Privacy Requirements: 328
C USB Type-C Digital Audio 329
C.1 Overview 329
C.2 USB Type-C Digital Audio Specifications 329
D Thermal Design Considerations for Active Cables 331
D.1 Introduction 331
D.2 Model 331
D.2.1 Assumptions 331
D.2.2 Model Architecture 332
D.2.3 Heat Sources 333
D.2.4 Heat Flow 333
D.3 USB 3.2 Single Lane Active Cable 334
D.3.1 USB 3.2 Single-Lane Active Cable Design Considerations 334
D.4 Dual-Lane Active Cables 337
D.4.1 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane Active Cable Design Considerations 337
D.4.2 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane Active Cable in a Multi-Port Configuration 339
D.5 USB 3.2 Host and Device Design Considerations 341
D.5.1 Heat Spreading or Heat Sinking from Host or Device 341
D.5.2 Motherboard Temperature Control 342
D.5.3 Wider Port Spacing for Multi-Port Applications 342
D.5.4 Power Policies 342
E Alternate Modes 343
E.1 Alternate Mode Architecture 343
E.2 Alternate Mode Requirements 343
E.2.1 Alternate Mode Pin Reassignment 344

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

E.2.2 Alternate Mode Electrical Requirements 344
E.3 Parameter Values 347
E.4 Example Alternate Mode – USB DisplayPort™ Dock 348
E.4.1 USB DisplayPort™ Dock Example 348
E.4.2 Functional Overview 349
E.4.3 Operational Summary 350
F Thunderbolt 3 Compatibility Discovery and Entry 351
F.1 TBT3 Compatibility Mode Functional Requirements 351
F.1.1 TBT3-Compatible Power Requirements 351
F.1.2 TBT3-Compatible Host Requirements 351
F.1.3 TBT3-Compatible Device Upstream Requirements 351
F.1.4 TBT3-Compatible Device Downstream Requirements 351
F.1.5 TBT3-Compatible Self-Powered Device Without Predefined Upstream Port Rules 352
F.1.6 TBT3-Compatible Devices with a Captive Cable 352
F.2 TBT3 Discovery and Entry Flow 352
F.2.1 TBT3 Passive Cable Discover Identity Responses 354
F.2.2 TBT3 Active Cable Discover Identity Responses 356
F.2.3 TBT3 Device Discover Identity Responses 359
F.2.4 TBT3 Discover SVID Responses 360
F.2.5 TBT3 Device Discover Mode Responses 361
F.2.6 TBT3 Cable Discover Mode Responses 362
F.2.7 TBT3 Cable Enter Mode Command 363
F.2.8 TBT3 Device Enter Mode Command 364
F.2.9 TBT3 Cable Functional Difference Summary 365

FIGURES

Figure 2-1 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface (Front View) 33
Figure 2-2 USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Interface (Front View) 34
Figure 3-1 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface Dimensions 44
Figure 3-2 Reference Design USB Type-C Plug External EMC Spring Contact Zones 47
Figure 3-3 USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Interface Dimensions 48
Figure 3-4 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Vertical Mount Receptacle (Informative) 51
Figure 3-5 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Dual-Row SMT Right Angle Receptacle (Informative) 52
Figure 3-6 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Hybrid Right-Angle Receptacle (Informative) 53
Figure 3-7 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Mid-Mount Dual-Row SMT Receptacle (Informative) 54
Figure 3-8 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Mid-Mount Hybrid Receptacle (Informative) 55
Figure 3-9 Reference Footprint for a USB 2.0 Type-C Through Hole Right Angle Receptacle (Informative) 56
Figure 3-10 Reference Footprint for a USB 2.0 Type-C Single Row Right Angle Receptacle (Informative) 57
Figure 3-11 *USB 2.0* Type-C Plug Interface Dimensions 59
Figure 3-12 USB Type-C Plug EMC Shielding Spring Tip Requirements 62
Figure 3-13 Reference Design of Receptacle Mid-Plate 63
Figure 3-14 Reference Design of the Retention Latch 64

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-15 Illustration of the Latch Soldered to the Paddle Card Ground 64
Figure 3-16 Reference Design of the USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Internal EMC Spring 65
Figure 3-17 Reference Design of the *USB 2.0* Type-C Plug Internal EMC Spring 66
Figure 3-18 Reference Design of Internal EMC Pad 67
Figure 3-19 Reference Design of a USB Type-C Receptacle with External EMC Springs 68
Figure 3-20 Reference Design for a USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Paddle Card 69
Figure 3-21 Illustration of a USB Full-Featured Type-C Cable Cross Section, a Coaxial Wire Example with VCONN 72
Figure 3-22 Illustration of a USB Full-Featured Type-C Cable Cross Section, a Coaxial Wire Example without VCONN 72
Figure 3-23 USB Full-Featured Type-C Standard Cable Assembly 76
Figure 3-24 USB Type-C to USB 3.1 Standard-A Cable Assembly 79
Figure 3-25 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-A Cable Assembly 80
Figure 3-26 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-B Cable Assembly 81
Figure 3-27 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-B Cable Assembly 82
Figure 3-28 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Mini-B Cable Assembly 83
Figure 3-29 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Micro-B Cable Assembly 84
Figure 3-30 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Cable Assembly 86
Figure 3-31 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly 87
Figure 3-32 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Receptacle Adapter Assembly 89
Figure 3-33 Illustration of Test Points for a Mated Cable Assembly 91
Figure 3-34 Recommended Differential Insertion Loss Requirement (USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2) 92
Figure 3-35 Recommended Differential Return Loss Requirement 92
Figure 3-36 Recommended Differential Crosstalk Requirement 93
Figure 3-37 Recommended Differential Near-End and Far-End Crosstalk Requirement between USB D+/D− Pair and TX/RX Pair 94
Figure 3-38 Recommended Differential Insertion Loss Requirement (USB4 Gen3) 94
Figure 3-39 Illustration of Insertion Loss Fit at Nyquist Frequency 95
Figure 3-40 Input Pulse Spectrum 96
Figure 3-41 IMR Limit as Function of ILfitatNq 97
Figure 3-42 IRL Limit as Function of ILfitatNq 99
Figure 3-43 Differential-to-Common-Mode Conversion Requirement 99
Figure 3-44 IMR Limit as Function of ILfit at 10 GHz (USB4 Gen3) 100
Figure 3-45 Definition of Port, Victim and Aggressor 101
Figure 3-46 IXT_DP and IXT_USB Limit as Function of ILfit at 10 GHz (USB4 Gen3) 101
Figure 3-47 IRL Limit as Function of ILfitatNq (USB4 Gen3) 102
Figure 3-48 Differential-to-Commom-Mode Conversion Requirement (USB4 Gen3) 102
Figure 3-49 Cable Assembly in System 103
Figure 3-50 Requirement for Differential Coupling between CC and D+/D− 105
Figure 3-51 Requirement for Single-Ended Coupling between CC and D− in USB 2.0 Type-C Cables 105
Figure 3-52 Requirement for Single-Ended Coupling between CC and D− in USB Full-Featured Type-C Cables 106
Figure 3-53 Requirement for Differential Coupling between VBUS and D+/D− 106
Figure 3-54 Requirement for Single-Ended Coupling between SBU_A and SBU_B 107
Figure 3-55 Requirement for Single-Ended Coupling between SBU_A/SBU_B and CC 108
Figure 3-56 Requirement for Coupling between SBU_A and differential D+/D−, and SBU_B and differential D+/D− 108
Figure 3-57 Illustration of USB Type-C Mated Connector 109
Figure 3-58 Recommended Impedance Limits of a USB Type-C Mated Connector 110
Figure 3-59 Recommended Ground Void Dimensions for USB Type-C Receptacle 111
Figure 3-60 Recommended Differential Near-End and Far-End Crosstalk Limits between D+/D− Pair and TX/RX Pairs 112
Figure 3-61 Recommended Limits for Differential-to-Common-Mode Conversion 113
Figure 3-62 IMR Limit as Function of ILfitatNq for USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assembly 117
Figure 3-63 IRL Limit as Function of ILfitatNq for USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assembly 117
Figure 3-64 Cable Assembly Shielding Effectiveness Testing 120

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-65 Shielding Effectiveness Pass/Fail Criteria 121
Figure 3-66 LLCR Measurement Diagram 122
Figure 3-67 Temperature Measurement Point 123
Figure 3-68 Example Current Rating Test Fixture Trace Configuration 124
Figure 3-69 Example of 4-Axis Continuity Test Fixture 126
Figure 3-70 Example Wrenching Strength Test Fixture for Plugs without Overmold 128
Figure 3-71 Reference Wrenching Strength Continuity Test Fixture 129
Figure 3-72 Example of Wrenching Strength Test Mechanical Failure Point 129
Figure 3-73 Wrenching Strength Test with Cable in Fixture 130
Figure 3-74 USB Type-C Cable Receptacle Flange Example 132
Figure 3-75 EMC Guidelines for Side Latch and Mid-plate 133
Figure 3-76 EMC Finger Connections to Plug Shell 133
Figure 3-77 EMC Pad Connections to Receptacle Shell 134
Figure 3-78 Examples of Connector Apertures 134
Figure 3-79 Recommended Minimum Spacing between Connectors 135
Figure 3-80 Recommended Minimum Plug Overmold Clearance 135
Figure 3-81 Cable Plug Overmold and an Angled Surface 135
Figure 4-1 Cable IR Drop 138
Figure 4-2 Cable IR Drop for powered cables 138
Figure 4-3 Logical Model for Single-Lane Data Bus Routing across USB Type-C-based Ports 147
Figure 4-4 Logical Model for USB Type-C-based Ports for a Single-Lane Direct Connect Device 147
Figure 4-5 Pull-Up/Pull-Down CC Model 149
Figure 4-6 Current Source/Pull-Down CC Model 149
Figure 4-7 Source Functional Model for CC1 and CC2 152
Figure 4-8 Source Functional Model Supporting USB PD PR_Swap 153
Figure 4-9 Sink Functional Model for CC1 and CC2 153
Figure 4-10 Sink Functional Model Supporting USB PD PR_Swap and VCONN_Swap 154
Figure 4-11 DRP Functional Model for CC1 and CC2 155
Figure 4-12 Connection State Diagram: Source 160
Figure 4-13 Connection State Diagram: Sink 161
Figure 4-14 Connection State Diagram: Sink with Accessory Support 162
Figure 4-15 Connection State Diagram: DRP 163
Figure 4-16 Connection State Diagram: DRP with Accessory and Try.SRC Support 164
Figure 4-17 Connection State Diagram: DRP with Accessory and Try.SNK Support 165
Figure 4-18 Connection State Diagram: Charge-Through VPD 166
Figure 4-19 Sink Power Sub-States 189
Figure 4-20 Cable eMarker State Diagram 190
Figure 4-21 Source to Sink Functional Model 194
Figure 4-22 Source to DRP Functional Model 195
Figure 4-23 DRP to Sink Functional Model 196
Figure 4-24 DRP to DRP Functional Model – CASE 1 197
Figure 4-25 DRP to DRP Functional Model – CASE 2 & 3 198
Figure 4-26 Source to Source Functional Model 200
Figure 4-27 Sink to Sink Functional Model 201
Figure 4-28 DRP to VPD Model 201
Figure 4-29 Example DRP to Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device Model 202
Figure 4-30 Source to Legacy Device Port Functional Model 210
Figure 4-31 Legacy Host Port to Sink Functional Model 211
Figure 4-32 DRP to Legacy Device Port Functional Model 212
Figure 4-33 Legacy Host Port to DRP Functional Model 213
Figure 4-34 Sink Monitoring for Current in Pull-Up/Pull-Down CC Model 216
Figure 4-35 Sink Monitoring for Current in Current Source/Pull-Down CC Model 217
Figure 4-36 USB PD over CC Pins 217
Figure 4-37 USB PD BMC Signaling over CC 218

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-38 USB Type-C Cable's Output as a Function of Load for Non-PD-based USB Type-C Charging 222
Figure 4-39 0 – 3 A USB PD-based Charger USB Type-C Cable's Output as a Function of Load 223
Figure 4-40 3 – 5 A USB PD-based Charger USB Type-C Cable's Output as a Function of Load 223
Figure 4-41 Electronically Marked Cable with VCONN connected through the cable 228
Figure 4-42 Electronically Marked Cable with SOP' at both ends 228
Figure 4-43 Example Charge-Through VCONN-Power USB Device Use Case 231
Figure 4-44 DRP Timing 234
Figure 5-1 USB4 Discovery and Entry Flow Model 242
Figure 5-2 USB4 Hub with USB4 Host and Device Connection Flow Alignment 248
Figure 5-3 USB4 Hub with USB 3.2 Host and USB4 Device Host Connection Flow Model 249
Figure 5-4 USB4 Hub with USB4 Host and USB 3.2 Device Connection Flow Model 250
Figure 5-5 USB4 Hub with USB 3.2 Host and Device Connection Flow Model 251
Figure 5-6 USB4 Hub with USB4 Host and DP Alt Mode Device Connection Flow Model 252
Figure 5-7 USB4 Hub with USB 3.2 Host and DP Alt Mode Device Connection Flow Model 253
Figure 6-1 Electronically Marked Short Active Cable with SOP' Only 258
Figure 6-2 Electronically Marked Short Active Cable with SOP' and SOP" 258
Figure 6-3 Electronically Marked Optically Isolated Active Cable 259
Figure 6-4 OIAC USB PD Message Forwarding 265
Figure 6-5 OIAC Successful Data Role Swap 268
Figure 6-6 OIAC Rejected Data Role Swap 269
Figure 6-7 OIAC Wait Data Role Swap 269
Figure 6-8 OIAC Initiator Reject Data Role Swap 270
Figure 6-9 OIAC Initiator Wait Data Role Swap 271
Figure 6-10 OIAC Discovery – Phase 1 273
Figure 6-11 OIAC Reboot – Phase 2 274
Figure 6-12 OIAC Master Plug Configure as DFP – Phase 3 275
Figure 6-13 OIAC Master Plug Configure as UFP – Phase 3 276
Figure 6-14 OIAC Master Plug No Connection Possible Billboard – Phase 3 277
Figure 6-15 OIAC Master Plug State Diagram Part 1 (Phase 1 and 2) 278
Figure 6-16 OIAC Master Plug State Diagram Part 2 (Phase 3) 279
Figure 6-17 OIAC Slave Plug State Diagram 286
Figure 6-18 Active Cable Topologies 295
Figure 6-19 Illustrations of Usages for OIAC That Require an Adapter or Hub 298
Figure 6-20 SuperSpeed USB Electrical Test Points 299
Figure 6-21 SuperSpeed USB Compliance Test Setup 299
Figure A-1 Example Passive 3.5 mm to USB Type-C Adapter 306
Figure A-2 Example 3.5 mm to USB Type-C Adapter Supporting 500 mA Charge-Through 307
Figure B-1 USB Type-C Debug Accessory Layered Behavior 308
Figure B-2 DTS Plug Interface 309
Figure B-3 Connection State Diagram: DTS Source 310
Figure B-4 Connection State Diagram: DTS Sink 311
Figure B-5 Connection State Diagram: DTS DRP 312
Figure B-6 TS Sink Power Sub-States 316
Figure D-1 Active Cable Model (Single Port, Top Mount Receptacle) 332
Figure D-2 Model Architecture 332
Figure D-3 Heat Sources and Heat Flow Paths 333
Figure D-4 Vertically Stacked Horizontal Connectors 3x1 Configuration (VERT) 335
Figure D-5 Horizontally Stacked Vertical Connectors 1x3 Configuration (HZ90) 335
Figure D-6 Horizontally Stacked Horizontal Connector 1x3 Configuration (HORZ) 335
Figure D-7 USB 3.2 Single-Lane 3A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration 336
Figure D-8 USB 3.2 Single-Lane 5A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration 337
Figure D-9 Impact of Over-mold Power P_O and Thermal Boundary Temperature T_{MB} at 3 A VBUS in a Single Port Configuration 338
Figure D-10 Impact of Over-mold Power P_O and Thermal Boundary Temperature T_{MB} at 5 A VBUS in a Single Port Configuration 339

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure D-11 USB 3.2 Active Cable Dongle Design (One End Shown) 339
Figure D-12 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane 3A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration 340
Figure D-13 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane 5A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration 341
Figure D-14 Example: Additional Heat Spreader on Receptacle in Host or Device 342
Figure D-15 Example: Heat Sinking by Chassis of Host or Device 342
Figure E-1 Pins Available for Reconfiguration over the Full-Featured Cable 344
Figure E-2 Pins Available for Reconfiguration for Direct Connect Applications 344
Figure E-3 Alternate Mode Implementation using a USB Type-C to USB Type-C Cable 346
Figure E-4 Alternate Mode Implementation using a USB Type-C to Alternate Mode Cable or Device 347
Figure E-5 USB DisplayPort Dock Example 349
Figure F-1 TBT3 Discovery Flow 353

TABLES

Table 2-1 Summary of power supply options 38
Table 3-1 USB Type-C Standard Cable Assemblies 40
Table 3-2 USB Type-C Legacy Cable Assemblies 41
Table 3-3 USB Type-C Legacy Adapter Assemblies 41
Table 3-4 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface Pin Assignments 70
Table 3-5 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface Pin Assignments for USB 2.0-only Support 71
Table 3-6 USB Type-C Standard Cable Wire Assignments 73
Table 3-7 USB Type-C Cable Wire Assignments for Legacy Cables/Adapters 74
Table 3-8 Reference Wire Gauges for standard USB Type-C Cable Assemblies 75
Table 3-9 Reference Wire Gauges for USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assemblies 75
Table 3-10 USB Full-Featured Type-C Standard Cable Assembly Wiring 77
Table 3-11 *USB 2.0* Type-C Standard Cable Assembly Wiring 78
Table 3-12 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Cable Assembly Wiring 79
Table 3-13 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-A Cable Assembly Wiring 80
Table 3-14 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-B Cable Assembly Wiring 81
Table 3-15 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-B Cable Assembly Wiring 82
Table 3-16 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Mini-B Cable Assembly Wiring 83
Table 3-17 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Micro-B Cable Assembly Wiring 85
Table 3-18 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Cable Assembly Wiring 86
Table 3-19 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly Wiring 88
Table 3-20 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Receptacle Adapter Assembly Wiring 89
Table 3-21 Differential Insertion Loss Examples for TX/RX with Twisted Pair Construction 90
Table 3-22 Differential Insertion Loss Examples for USB TX/RX with Coaxial Construction 91
Table 3-23 Key Parameters in COM Configuration File 103
Table 3-24 Electrical Requirements for CC and SBU wires 104
Table 3-25 Coupling Matrix for Low Speed Signals 104
Table 3-26 Maximum Mutual Inductance (M) between VBUS and Low Speed Signal Lines 107
Table 3-27 USB D+/D− Signal Integrity Requirements for USB Type-C to USB Type-C Passive Cable Assemblies 109
Table 3-28 USB Type-C Mated Connector Recommended Signal Integrity Characteristics (Informative) 111
Table 3-29 USB Type-C Mated Connector Signal Integrity Characteristics for USB4 Gen3 (Normative) 113
Table 3-30 USB D+/D− Signal Integrity Requirements for USB Type-C to Legacy USB Cable Assemblies 115
Table 3-31 Design Targets for USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Gen2 Legacy Cable Assemblies (Informative) 115
Table 3-32 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Gen2 Legacy Cable Assembly Signal Integrity Requirements (Normative) 116
Table 3-33 USB D+/D− Signal Integrity Requirements for USB Type-C to Legacy USB Adapter Assemblies (Normative) 118
Table 3-34 Design Targets for USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Adapter Assemblies (Informative) 119

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-35 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly Signal Integrity Requirements (Normative) 119
Table 3-36 Current Rating Test PCB 124
Table 3-37 Maximum DC Resistance Requirement (Normative) 124
Table 3-38 Force and Moment Requirements 127
Table 3-39 Environmental Test Conditions 130
Table 3-40 Reference Materials 131
Table 4-1 USB Type-C List of Signals 136
Table 4-2 VBUS Source Characteristics 139
Table 4-3 VBUS Sink Characteristics 140
Table 4-4 USB Type-C Source Port's VCONN Requirements Summary 141
Table 4-5 VCONN Source Characteristics 142
Table 4-6 Cable VCONN Sink Characteristics 143
Table 4-7 VCONN-Powered Accessory (VPA) Sink Characteristics 144
Table 4-8 VCONN-Powered USB Device (VPD) Sink Characteristics 145
Table 4-9 USB Type-C-based Port Interoperability 148
Table 4-10 Source Perspective 150
Table 4-11 Source (Host) and Sink (Device) Behaviors by State 151
Table 4-12 USB PD Swapping Port Behavior Summary 157
Table 4-13 Power Role Behavioral Model Summary 158
Table 4-14 Source Port CC Pin State 167
Table 4-15 Sink Port CC Pin State 167
Table 4-16 Mandatory and Optional States 192
Table 4-17 Precedence of power source usage 214
Table 4-18 USB Type-C Current Advertisement and PDP Equivalent 216
Table 4-19 Precedence of power source usage 219
Table 4-20 Example Charge-Through VPD Sink Maximum Currents based on VBUS Impedance and GND Impedance 220
Table 4-21 SOP' and SOP" Timing 228
Table 4-22 Charge-Through VPD CC Impedance (RccCON) Requirements 230
Table 4-23 CTVPD Charge-Through Port VBUS Bypass Requirements 230
Table 4-24 Source CC Termination (Rp) Requirements 231
Table 4-25 Sink CC Termination (Rd) Requirements 232
Table 4-26 Powered Cable Termination Requirements 232
Table 4-27 CC Termination Requirements for Disabled state, ErrorRecovery state, and Unpowered Source 232
Table 4-28 SBU Termination Requirements 232
Table 4-29 VBUS and VCONN Timing Parameters 233
Table 4-30 DRP Timing Parameters 234
Table 4-31 CC Timing 235
Table 4-32 CC Voltages on Source Side – Default USB 236
Table 4-33 CC Voltages on Source Side – 1.5 A @ 5 V 236
Table 4-34 CC Voltages on Source Side – 3.0 A @ 5 V 237
Table 4-35 Voltage on Sink CC Pins (Default USB Type-C Current only) 237
Table 4-36 Voltage on Sink CC pins (Multiple Source Current Advertisements) 237
Table 5-1 Certified Cables Where USB4-compatible Operation is Expected 243
Table 5-2 Fallback Mapping USB4 Peripheral Functions to USB Device Class Types 254
Table 5-3 USB Billboard Device Class Availability Following USB4 Device Entry Failure 255
Table 6-1 Comparison of Active Cables 257
Table 6-2 Summary of Active Cable Features 257
Table 6-3 OIAC USB PD Message Behavior on Initial Connection 260
Table 6-4 OIAC USB PD Messages Which Do Not Traverse in Active State 262
Table 6-5 OIAC USB PD Messages Addressed to SOP Which Traverse the OIAC in the Active State 264
Table 6-6 OIAC USB PD Message Timing 265
Table 6-7 OIAC SOP Messages Which Terminate at the Cable Plug 266
Table 6-8 Port and Plug Capabilities 272

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 6-9 OIAC Sink_Capabilities PDO (SOP) on Initial Connection 290
Table 6-10 OIAC Sink_Capabilities_Extended PDO (SOP) on Initial Connection 291
Table 6-11 OIAC Sink RDO (SOP) on Initial Connection 291
Table 6-12 OIAC Active Sink RDO (SOP) 292
Table 6-13 OIAC Sink_Capabilities PDO (SOP) in Active 292
Table 6-14 Cable Temperature Requirements 293
Table 6-15 Summary of Active Cable Features 294
Table 6-16 Active Cable Power-on Requirements 296
Table 6-17 OIAC Maximum USB 3.2 U0 Delay 297
Table 6-18 Usages for OIAC That Require an Adapter or Hub 297
Table 6-19 USB 3.2 U-State Requirements 298
Table 6-20 Active Cable USB 3.2 Stressed Source Swing, TP1 300
Table 6-21 Active Cable USB 3.2 Stressed Source Jitter, TP1 300
Table 6-22 Active Cable USB 3.2 Input Swing at TP2 (Informative) 301
Table 6-23 Active Cable USB 3.2 Output Swing at TP3 (Informative) 301
Table A-1 USB Type-C Analog Audio Pin Assignments 304
Table A-2 USB Type-C Analog Audio Pin Electrical Parameter Ratings 305
Table B-1 DTS to TS Port Interoperability 309
Table B-2 Rp/Rp Charging Current Values for a DTS Source 316
Table B-3 Mandatory and Optional States 318
Table D-1 Heat Sources and Heat Dissipation Example (1.5 W cable and 5 A) 334
Table D-2 USB 3.2 Active Cable Design Single Port Case Study at 35 °C Ambient and 60 °C Thermal Boundary (Single Lane) 334
Table D-3 USB 3.2 Active Cable Design Single Port Case Study at 35 °C Ambient and 60 °C Thermal Boundary (Dual Lane) 338
Table E-1 USB Safe State Electrical Requirements 347
Table E-2 USB Billboard Device Class Availability Following Alternate Mode Entry Failure 348
Table E-3 Alternate Mode Signal Noise Ingression Requirements 348
Table F-1 TBT3 Passive Cable Discover Identity VDO Responses 354
Table F-2 TBT3 Passive Cable VDO for USB PD Revision 2.0, Version 1.3 355
Table F-3 TBT3 Passive Cable VDO for USB PD Revision 3.0, Version 1.2 355
Table F-4 TBT3 Active Cable Discover Identity VDO Responses 356
Table F-5 TBT3 Active Cable VDO for USB PD Revision 2.0, Version 1.3 357
Table F-6 TBT3 Active Cable VDO 1 for USB PD Revision 3.0, Version 1.2 357
Table F-7 TBT3 Active Cable VDO 2 for USB PD Revision 3.0, Version 1.2 358
Table F-8 TBT3 Device Discover Identity VDO Responses 359
Table F-9 TBT3 Discover SVID VDO Responses 360
Table F-10 TBT3 Device Discover Mode VDO Responses 361
Table F-11 TBT3 Cable Discover Mode VDO Responses 362
Table F-12 TBT3 Cable Enter Mode Command 363
Table F-13 TBT3 Device Enter Mode Command 364
Table F-14 TBT3 Cable Functional Difference Summary 365

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Specification Work Group Chairs / Specification Editors

Intel Corporation (USB Promoter company)	Yun Ling – Mechanical WG co-chair, Mechanical Chapter Co-editor Brad Saunders – Plenary/Functional WG chair, Specification Co-author
Renesas Electronics Corp. (USB Promoter company)	Bob Dunstan – Functional WG co-chair, Specification Co-author
Seagate	Alvin Cox, Mechanical WG co-chair, Mechanical Chapter Co-editor

Specification Work Group Contributors

Note: For historical reasons, the following list also includes individual contributors that were members of the work group and associated with their company affliations at the time of the original Release 1.0 and Release 2.0.

Advanced-Connectek, Inc. (ACON)	Victory Chen	Conrad Choy	Alan Tsai
	Glen Chandler	Vicky Chuang	Wayne Wang
	Dennis Cheung	Jessica Feng	Stephen Yang
	Jeff Chien	Aven Kao	Sunney Yang
	Lee (Dick Lee) Ching	Danny Liao	
Advanced Micro Devices	Steve Capezza	Jason Hawken	Joseph Scanlon
	Walter Fry	Tim Perley	Peter Teng
	Will Harris		
Allion Labs, Inc.	Howard Chang	Brian Shih	Chester Tsai
	Minoru Ohara		
Amphenol AssembleTech (Xiamen) Co., Ltd.	Louis Chan	Martin Li	Alan Yang
	Jesse Jaramillo	Lino Liu	
	Terry Ke	Shawn Wei	
Amphenol Corporation	Zhinenng Fan		
Agilent Technologies, Inc.	James Choate		
Analogix Semiconductor, Inc.	Mehran Badii	Haijian Sui	Yueke Tang
	Greg Stewart		
Apple Inc. (USB Promoter company)	Colin Abraham	Zheng Gao	James Orr
	Mahmoud Amini	Derek Iwamoto	Keith Porthouse
	Sree Anantharaman	Scott Jackson	Breton Saunders
	Brian Baek	Girault Jones	Reese Schreiber
	Paul Baker	Keong Kam	Sascha Tietz
	Michael Bonham	Kevin Keeler	Jennifer Tsai
	Carlos Calderon	Min Kim	Colin Whitby-Strevens
	Jason Chung	Woopoung Kim	Jeff Wilcox
	David Conroy	Alexei Kosut	Eric Wiles
	Bill Cornelius	Christine Krause	Dan Wilson
	Christophe Daniel	Chris Ligtenberg	Dennis Yarak
	William Ferry	Matthew Mora	
	Brian Follis	Nathan Ng	
Bizlink Technology, Inc.	Alex Chou	Morphy Hsieh	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Cadence Design Systems, Inc.	Marcin Behrendt	Dariusz Kaczmarczyk	Neelabh Singh
	Huzaifa Dalal	Tomasz Klimek	Michal Staworko
	Pawel Eichler	Jie Min	Fred Stivers
	Sathish Kumar Ganesan	Asila Nahas	Mark Summers
		Uyen Nguyen	Claire Ying
Canova Tech	Piergiorgio Beruto	Michael Marioli	Paola Pilla
	Andrea Maniero	Antonio Orzelli	Nicola Scantamburlo
Cirrus Logic Inc.	Sean Davis	Darren Holding	Brad Lambert
Corning Optical Communication LLC	Wojciech Giziewicz	Ian McKay	Jamie Silva
Cosemi Technologies Inc.	Samir Desai	Devang Parekh	
Cypress Semiconductor	Mark Fu	Benjamin Kropf	Jagadeesan Raj
	Naman Jain	Venkat Mandagulathur	Sanjay Sancheti
	Rushil Kadakia	Anup Nayak	Subu Sankaran
Dell	Mohammed Hijazi	Ernesto Ramirez	Thomas Voor
	David Meyers	Siddhartha Reddy	Merle Wood
	Sean O'Neal		
Dialog Semiconductor (UK) Ltd.	Yimin Chen		
Diodes Incorporated	Kay Annamalai	Bob Lo	Qun Song
	Justin Lee	Jaya Shukla	Ada Yip
	Paul Li		
DisplayLink (UK) Ltd.	Pete Burgers		
DJI Technology Co., Ltd.	Steve Huang		
Electronics Testing Center, Taiwan	Sophia Liu		
Elka International Ltd.	Roy Ting		
Ellisys	Abel Astley	Mario Pasquali	Tim Wei
	Rick Bogart	Chuck Trefts	
Etron Technology, Inc.	Chien-Cheng Kuo		
Feature Integration Technologies Inc.	Jacky Chan	KungAn Lin	Paul Yang
	Chen Kris	Yuchi Tsao	Amanda Ying
	Yulin Lan		
Foxconn / Hon Hai	Patrick Casher	Bob Hall	Pei Tsao
	Asroc Chen	Chien-Ping Kao	AJ Yang
	Joe Chen	Ji Li	Yuan Zhang
	Allen Cheng	Ann Liu	Jessica Zheng
	Jason Chou	Terry Little	Jie Zheng
	Edmond Choy	Steve Sedio	Andy Yao
	Fred Fons	Christine Tran	
Foxlink/Cheng Uei Precision Industry Co., Ltd.	Robert Chen	Armando Lee	Steve Tsai
	Sunny Chou	Dennis Lee	Wen Yang
	Carrie Chuang	Justin Lin	Wiley Yang
	Wen-Chuan Hsu	Robert Lu	Junjie Yu
	Alex Hsue	Tse Wu Ting	
Fresco Logic Inc.	Bob McVay	Christopher Meyers	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Google	Alec Berg	Nithya Jagannathan	Adam Rodriguez
	Joshua Boilard	Lawrence Lam	David Schneider
	Alec Berg	Adam Langley	Stephan Schooley
	Todd Broch	Ingrid Lin	Toshak Singhal
	Jim Guerin	Richard Palatin	Ken Wu
	Jeffrey Hayashida	Vincent Palatin	
	Mark Hayter	Dylan Reid	
Granite River Labs	Yung Han Ang	Alan Chuang	Krishna Murthy
	Sandy Chang	Mike Engbretson	Johnson Tan
	Allen Chen	Caspar Lin	Chin Hun Yaep
	Swee Guan Chua		
Hewlett Packard Inc. (USB Promoter company)	Lee Atkinson	Robin Castell	Jim Mann
	Srinath Balaraman	Steve Chen	Linden McClure
	Roger Benson	Michael Krause	Mike Pescetto
	Alan Berkema	Rahul Lakdawala	Asjad Shamim
Hirose Electric Co., Ltd.	Jeremy Buan	William MacKillop	Eungsoo Shin
	William Kysiak	Gourgen Oganessyan	Sid Tono
	Sang-Muk Lim		
Hosiden Corporation	Takahisa Otsuji	Fumitake Tamaki	
I-PEX (Dai-ichi Seiko)	Alan Kinningham	Ro Richard	Tetsuya Tagawa
Infineon Technologies	Tue Fatt David Wee		
Intel Corporation (USB Promoter company)	Dave Ackelson	Ziv Kabiry	Sridharan Ranganathan
	Mike Bell	Vijaykumar Kadgi	Rajaram Regupathy
	Brad Berlin	Luke Johnson	Brad Saunders
	Pierre Bossart	Jerzy Kolinski	Ehud Shoor
	Kuan-Yu Chen	Rolf Kuhnis	Amit Srivastava
	Hengju Cheng	Henrik Leegaard	Einat Surijan
	Jhuda Dayan	Edmond Lau	Ron Swartz
	Paul Durley	Xiang Li	David Thompson
	Saranya Gopal	Yun Ling	Karthi Vadivelu
	Howard Heck	Guobin Liu	Tsion Vidal
	Hao-Han Hsu	Steve McGowan	Stephanie Wallick
	Seppo Ingalsuo	Sankaran Menon	Rafal Wielicki
	Abdul (Rahman) Ismail	Chee Lim Nge	Devon Worrell
	James Jaussi	Sagar Pawar	Li Yuan
Japan Aviation Electronics Industry Ltd. (JAE)	Kenji Hagiwara	Tadashi Okubo	Masaaki Takaku
	Hiroaki Ikeda	Kazuhiro Saito	Jussi Takaneva
	Masaki Kimura	Kimiaki Saito	Tomohiko Tamada
	Toshio Masumoto	Yuichi Saito	Kentaro Toda
	Kenta Minejima	Mark Saubert	Kouhei Ueda
	Toshiyuki Moritake	Toshio Shimoyama	Takakazu Usami
	Joe Motojima	Tatsuya Shioda	Masahide Watanabe
	Ron Muir	Atsuo Tago	Youhei Yokoyama
JPC/Main Super Inc.	Sam Tseng	Ray Yang	
LeCroy Corporation	Daniel H. Jacobs	Tyler Joe	
Lenovo	Rob Bowser	Jianye Li	Howard Locker
	Tomoki Harada	Wei Liu	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

LG Electronics Inc.	Do Kyun Kim		
Lintes Technology Co., Ltd.	Tammy Huang	Max Lo	JinYi Tu
	Charles Kaun	CT Pien	Jason Yang
	RD Lintes		
Lotes Co., Ltd.	Ariel Delos Reyes	Charles Kaun	John Lynch
	Ernest Han	Chi-Chang Lin	JinYi Tu
	Mark Ho	Max Lo	Jason Yang
	Regina Liu-Hwang		
LSI Corporation	Dave Thompson		
Luxshare-ICT	Josue Castillo	Alan Kinningham	Sean O'Neal
	Daniel Chen	Gorden Lin	Scott Shuey
	Lisen Chen	John Lin	James Stevens
	Sally Chiu	Stone Lin	Pat Young
	CY Hsu	Alan Liu	
Maxim Integrated Products	Forrest Christo	Sang Kim	Michael Miskho
	Ken Helfrich	Jeff Lo	Jacob Scott
MCCI Corporation	Terry Moore		
MediaTek Inc.	Alex YC Lin		
MegaChips Corporation	Alan Kobayashi	Satoru Kumashiro	
Microchip (SMSC)	Josh Averyt	Matthew Kalibat	John Sisto
	Mark Bohm	Donald Perkins	Anthony Tarascio
	Shannon Cash	Richard Petrie	Kiet Tran
	Thomas Farkas	Mohammed Rahman	Christopher Twigg
	Fernando Gonzalez	Andrew Rogers	Prasanna Vengateshan
Microsoft Corporation (USB Promoter company)	Randy Aull	Teemu Helenius	Toby Nixon
	Jim Belesiu	Dan Iatco	Rahul Ramadas
	Michelle Bergeron	Kai Inha	Srivatsan Ravindran
	Fred Bhesania	Jayson Kastens	Nathan Sherman
	Anthony Chen	Andrea Keating	Bala Sivakumar
	Philip Froese	Shoaib Khan	Timo Toivola
	Vivek Gupta	Eric Lee	David Voth
	David Hargrove	Ivan McCracken	Andrew Yang
	Robbie Harris	Arvind Murching	Panu Ylihaavisto
	Robert Hollyer	Gene Obie	
Molex LLC	Adib Al Abaji	Alan MacDougall	
Monolithic Power Systems	Di Han	Chris Sporck	
MQP Electronics Ltd.	Sten Carlsen	Pat Crowe	
NEC Corporation	Kenji Oguma		
Newnex Technology Corp.	Sam Liu	Nimrod Peled	
Nokia Corporation	Daniel Gratiot	Samuli Makinen	Timo Toivola
	Pekka Leinonen	Pekka Talmola	Panu Ylihaavisto
NXP Semiconductors	Mahmoud EL Sabbagh	Ken Jaramillo	Guru Prasad
	Dennis Ha	Vijendra Kuroodi	Krishnan TN
Oculus VR LLC	Amish Babu	Marty Evans	Joaquin Fierro
ON Semiconductor	Eduardo De Reza	Christian Klein	Michael Smith
	Oscar Freitas	Amir Lahooti	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Parade Technologies, Inc.	Jian Chen	Paul Xu	Alan Yuen
	Craig Wiley		
Power Integrations	Shruti Anand	Aditya Kulkarni	Amruta Patra
	Rahul Joshi	Akshay Nayaknur	
Qualcomm, Inc.	Lior Amarilio	Philip Hardy	Jack Pham
	Aris Balatsos	Will Kun	Vamsi Samavedam
	Tomer Ben Chen	Jonathan Luty	Matthew Sienko
	Richard Burrows	Lalan Mishra	Dmitrii Vasilchenko
	Amit Gil	George Paparrizos	Joshua Warner
	James Goel	Vatsal Patel	Chris Wiesner
	Amit Gupta		
Realtek Semiconductor Corp.	Marco Chiu	Ty Kingsmore	Terry Lin
	Tsung-Peng Chuang	Ray Lee	Chuting Su
	Charlie Hsu	Jay Lin	Changhung Wu
	Fan-Hau Hsu	Ryan Lin	
Renesas Electronics Corp. (USB Promoter company)	Kai Bao	Philip Leung	Hajime Nozaki
	Bob Dunstan	Kiichi Muto	Yosuke Sasaki
	Nobuo Furuya	Ziba Nami	Toshifumi Yamaoka
Richtek Technology Corp.	Roger Lo		
Rohm Co., Ltd.	Mark Aaldering	Yusuke Kondo	Yoshinori Ohwaki
	Kris Bahar	Arun Kumar	Takashi Sato
	Ruben Balbuena	Chris Lin	Hiroshi Yoshimura
	Nobutaka Itakura	Kazuomi Nagai	
Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.	Jaedeok Cha	Sangju Kim	Jun Bum Lee
	KangSeok Cho	Soondo Kim	Jinyoung Oh
	Wooin Choi	Woonki Kim	Chahoon Park
	Yeongbok Choi	Jagoun Koo	Chulwoo Park
	Cheolyoon Chung	Termi Kwon	Youngjin Park
	JaeRyong Han	Cheolho Lee	Jung Waneui
	Jaehyeok Jang	Edward Lee	Sunggeun Yoon
	Wonseok Jang		
Seagate	Alvin Cox	Tony Priborsky	Dan Smith
	Emmanuel Lemay	Tom Skaar	
Shenzhen Deren Electronic Co., Ltd.	Smark (Zhudong) Huo	Yang Lirong	Lucy Zhang
	Wen Fa Lei		
Silicon Line Gmbh	Ian Jackson		
SiliConch Systems Private Limited	Jaswanth Ammineni	Shubham Paliwal	Vishnu Pusuluri
	Pavitra Balasubramanian	Jinisha Patel	Abhishek Sardeshpande
	Kaustubh Kumar	Vinay Patel	Satish Anand Verkila
	Aniket Mathad	Rakesh Polasa	
Simula Technology Inc.	John Chang	Jung Lin	CK Wang
	Voss Cheng	Jyunming Lin	Alice Yu
	Thomas Li	Doris Liu	
Softnautics LLP	Bhavesh Desai	Dipakkumar Modi	Ujjwal Talati
	Hetal Jariwala	Ishita Shah	
Sony Corporation	Shinichi Hirata	Shigenori Tagami	
Spectra7 Microsystems Corp.	Andrew Kim	James McGrath	John Mitchell
Specwerkz	Amanda Hosler	Diane Lenox	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

STMicroelectronics (USB Promoter company)	Jerome Bach	Gregory Cosciniak	Pascal Legrand
	Nathalie Ballot	Chekib Hammami	Richard O'Connor
	Filippo Bonaccorso	Joel Huloux	Massimo Panzica
	Christophe Cochard	Christophe Lorin	Legrand Pascal
	Nicolas Florenchie	Patrizia Milazzo	Nicolas Perrin
	Cedric Force	Federico Musarra	
Sumitomo Electric Ind., Ltd.	Takeshi Inoue	Wataru Sakurai	Masaki Suzuki
	Yasuhiro Maeda	Sainer Siagian	Mitsuaki Tamura
Synaptics Inc.	Daniel Bogard	Jeff Lukanc	Prashant Shamarao
Synopsys, Inc.	Subramaniam Aravindhan	Morten Christiansen	Satya Patnala
		Nivin George	
Tektronix, Inc.	Randy White		
Texas Instruments (USB Promoter company)	Jawaid Ahmad	Win Maung	Sai Karthik Rajaraman
	Mike Campbell	Shafiuddin Mohammed	Wes Ray
	Greg Collins	Lauren Moore	Dafydd Roche
	Gary Cooper	Brian Parten	Anwar Sadat
	GP Gopalakrishnan	Martin Patoka	Cory Stewart
	Craig Greenberg	Jason Peck	Sue Vining
	Richard Hubbard	John Perry	Bill Waters
	Nate Johnson	Louis Peryea	Deric Waters
	Michael Koltun IV	Brian Quach	Gregory Watkins
	Yoon Lee		Roy Wojciechowski
	Grant Ley		
Total Phase	Chris Yokum		
Tyco Electronics Corp. (TE Connectivity Ltd.)	Max Chao	Mike Lockyer	Hiroshi Shirai
	Robert E. Cid	Jeff Mason	Hidenori Taguchi
	Calvin Feng	Takeshi Nakashima	Nathan Tracy
	Kengo Ijiro	Luis A. Navarro	Bernard Vetten
	Eiji Ikematsu	Masako Saito	Ryan Yu
	Joan Leu	Yoshiaki Sakuma	Noah Zhang
	Clark Li	Gavin Shih	Sjoerd Zwartkruis
UL LLC	Michael Hu		
Varjo Technologies	Kai Inha		
Ventev Mobile	Brad Cox	Colin Vose	
VIA Technologies Inc.	Terrance Shih	Jay Tseng	Fong-Jim Wang
Weltrend Semiconductor	Hung Chiang	Wayne Lo	Eric Wu
	Jeng Cheng	Ho Wen Tsai	
Xiaomi Communications Co., Ltd.	Xiaoxing Yang	Juejia Zhou	

Pre-Release Draft Industry Reviewing Companies That Provided Feedback

Aces	JST Mfg. Co., Ltd.	Pericom
Fairchild Semiconductor	Korea Electric Terminal	Semtech Corporation
Fujitsu Ltd.	Marvell Semiconductor	Silicon Image
Industrial Technology Research Institute (ITRI)	Motorola Mobility LLC	SMK Corporation
	PalCONN/PalNova (Palpilot International Corp.)	Toshiba Corporation

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Joinsoon Electronics Mfg. Co.
Ltd.

Revision History

Revision	Date	Description
1.0	August 11, 2014	Initial Release
1.1	April 3, 2015	Reprint release including incorporation of all approved ECNs as of the revision date plus editorial clean-up.
1.2	March 25, 2016	Reprint release including incorporation of all approved ECNs as of the revision date plus editorial clean-up.
1.3	July 14, 2017	Reprint release including incorporation of all approved ECNs as of the revision date plus editorial clean-up.
1.4	March 29, 2019	Reprint release including incorporation of all approved ECNs as of the revision date plus editorial clean-up.
2.0	August 2019	New release primarily for enabling USB4 over USB Type-C connectors and cables. Also includes incorporation of all approved ECNs as of the revision date plus editorial clean-up.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

1 Introduction

With the continued success of the USB interface, there exists a need to adapt USB technology to serve newer computing platforms and devices as they trend toward smaller, thinner and lighter form-factors. Many of these newer platforms and devices are reaching a point where existing USB receptacles and plugs are inhibiting innovation, especially given the relatively large size and internal volume constraints of the Standard-A and Standard-B versions of USB connectors. Additionally, as platform usage models have evolved, usability and robustness requirements have advanced and the existing set of USB connectors were not originally designed for some of these newer requirements. This specification is to establish a new USB connector ecosystem that addresses the evolving needs of platforms and devices while retaining all of the functional benefits of USB that form the basis for this most popular of computing device interconnects.

1.1 Purpose

This specification defines the USB Type-C® receptacles, plug and cables.

The USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification is guided by the following principles:

- Enable new and exciting host and device form-factors where size, industrial design and style are important parameters
- Work seamlessly with existing USB host and device silicon solutions
- Enhance ease of use for connecting USB devices with a focus on minimizing user confusion for plug and cable orientation

The USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification defines a new receptacle, plug, cable and detection mechanisms that are compatible with existing USB interface electrical and functional specifications. This specification covers the following aspects that are needed to produce and use this new USB cable/connector solution in newer platforms and devices, and that interoperate with existing platforms and devices:

- USB Type-C receptacles, including electro-mechanical definition and performance requirements
- USB Type-C plugs and cable assemblies, including electro-mechanical definition and performance requirements
- USB Type-C to legacy cable assemblies and adapters
- USB Type-C-based device detection and interface configuration, including support for legacy connections
- USB Power Delivery optimized for the USB Type-C connector

The USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification defines a standardized mechanism that supports Alternate Modes, such as repurposing the connector for docking-specific applications.

1.2 Scope

This specification is intended as a supplement to the existing *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2*, *USB4™* and *USB Power Delivery* specifications. It addresses only the elements required to implement and support the USB Type-C receptacles, plugs and cables.

Normative information is provided to allow interoperability of components designed to this specification. Informative information, when provided, may illustrate possible design implementations.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

1.3 Related Documents

USB 2.0 *Universal Serial Bus Revision 2.0 Specification*
This includes the entire document release package.

USB 3.2 *Universal Serial Bus Revision 3.2 Specification*
This includes the entire document release package.
USB 3.1 Legacy Cable and Connector Specification, Revision 1.0

USB4 *USB4™ Specification, Version 1.0, August 2019*
(including posted errata and ECNs)

TBT3 Chapter 13 of *USB4 Specification, Version 1.0, August 2019*

USB PD *USB Power Delivery Specification, Revision 2.0, Version 1.3, January 12, 2017*
USB Power Delivery Specification, Revision 3.0, Version 2.0, August 2019
(including posted errata and ECNs)

USB BB *USB Billboard Device Class Specification, Revision 1.21, September 8, 2016*

USB BC *Battery Charging Specification, Revision 1.2 (including errata and ECNs through March 15, 2012), March 15, 2012*

DP AM *DisplayPort™ Alt Mode on USB Type-C Standard, Version 1.0b, 03 November 2017*

All USB-specific documents are available for download at http://www.usb.org/documents. The DisplayPort Alt Mode specification is available from VESA (http://www.vesa.org).

1.4 Conventions

1.4.1 Precedence

If there is a conflict between text, figures, and tables, the precedence shall be tables, figures, and then text.

1.4.2 Keywords

The following keywords differentiate between the levels of requirements and options.

1.4.2.1 Informative

Informative is a keyword that describes information with this specification that intends to discuss and clarify requirements and features as opposed to mandating them.

1.4.2.2 May

May is a keyword that indicates a choice with no implied preference.

1.4.2.3 N/A

N/A is a keyword that indicates that a field or value is not applicable and has no defined value and shall not be checked or used by the recipient.

1.4.2.4 Normative

Normative is a keyword that describes features that are mandated by this specification.

1.4.2.5 Optional

Optional is a keyword that describes features not mandated by this specification. However, if an optional feature is implemented, the feature shall be implemented as defined by this specification (optional normative).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

1.4.2.6 Reserved

Reserved is a keyword indicating reserved bits, bytes, words, fields, and code values that are set-aside for future standardization. Their use and interpretation may be specified by future extensions to this specification and, unless otherwise stated, shall not be utilized or adapted by vendor implementation. A reserved bit, byte, word, or field shall be set to zero by the sender and shall be ignored by the receiver. Reserved field values shall not be sent by the sender and, if received, shall be ignored by the receiver.

1.4.2.7 Shall

Shall is a keyword indicating a mandatory (normative) requirement. Designers are mandated to implement all such requirements to ensure interoperability with other compliant Devices.

1.4.2.8 Should

Should is a keyword indicating flexibility of choice with a preferred alternative. Equivalent to the phrase “it is recommended that”.

1.4.3 Numbering

Numbers that are immediately followed by a lowercase “b” (e.g., 01b) are binary values. Numbers that are immediately followed by an uppercase “B” are byte values. Numbers that are immediately followed by a lowercase “h” (e.g., 3Ah) are hexadecimal values. Numbers not immediately followed by either a “b”, “B”, or “h” are decimal values.

1.5 Terms and Abbreviations

Term	Description
Accessory Mode	A reconfiguration of the connector based on the presence of Rd/Rd or Ra/Ra on CC1/CC2, respectively.
Active cable	Active cables are USB Full-Featured Type-C Cables that incorporate repeaters in the *USB 3.2* data path. All active cables, regardless of length, are expected to comply with this specification, the *USB 3.2* Appendix E, and the *USB 3.2* active cable CTS. Active cables may incorporate repeaters in both ends of the cable, one end, or anywhere in the cable.
Alternate Mode	Operation defined by a vendor or standards organization that is associated with a SVID assigned by the USB-IF. Entry and exit into and from an Alternate Mode is controlled by the *USB PD* Structured VDM Enter Mode and Exit Mode commands.
Alternate Mode Adapter (AMA)	A *USB PD* Device which supports Alternate Modes and acts as a UFP.
Audio Adapter Accessory Mode	The Accessory Mode defined by the presence of Ra/Ra on CC1/CC2, respectively. See Appendix A.
BMC	Biphase Mark Coding used for *USB PD* communication over the CC wire.
Cable Port Partner	The USB Type-C DRP, Source, or Sink connected to the cable plug.
Captive cable	A cable that is terminated on one end with a USB Type-C plug and has a vendor-specific connect means (hardwired or custom detachable) on the opposite end.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Term	Description
CC	Configuration Channel (CC) used in the discovery, configuration and management of connections across a USB Type-C cable.
Charge-Through VPD (CTVPD)	A VCONN-Powered USB Device that has the mechanism to pass power and CC communication from one port to the other without any reregulation.
Configuration Lane	The USB 3.2 Configuration Lane is used to establish and manage dual-lane SuperSpeed USB operation. The Configuration Lane is specifically the SuperSpeed USB TX1/RX1 differential signal set in the cable/plug.
Debug Accessory Mode (DAM)	The Accessory Mode defined by the presence of Rd/Rd or Rp/Rp on CC1/CC2, respectively. See Appendix B.
Debug and Test System (DTS)	The combined hardware and software system that provides a system developer debug visibility and control when connected to a Target System in Debug Accessory Mode.
Default VBUS	VBUS voltage as defined by the *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* specifications. Note: where used, 5 V connotes the same meaning.
DFP	Downstream Facing Port, specifically associated with the flow of data in a USB connection. Typically the ports on a host or the ports on a hub to which devices are connected. In its initial state, the DFP sources VBUS and VCONN, and supports data. A charge-only DFP port only sources VBUS.
Direct connect device	A device with either a captive cable or just a USB Type-C plug (e.g., thumb drive).
DRD (Dual-Role-Data)	The acronym used in this specification to refer to a USB port that can operate as either a DFP (Host) or UFP (Device). The role that the port initially takes is determined by the port's power role at attach. A Source port takes on the data role of a DFP and a Sink port takes on the data role of a UFP. The port's data role may be changed dynamically using *USB PD* Data Role Swap.
DRP (Dual-Role-Power)	The acronym used in this specification to refer to a USB port that can operate as either a Source or a Sink. The role that the port offers may be fixed to either a Source or Sink or may alternate between the two port states. Initially when operating as a Source, the port will also take on the data role of a DFP and when operating as a Sink, the port will also take on the data role of a UFP. The port's power role may be changed dynamically using *USB PD* Power Role Swap.
DR_Swap	*USB PD* Data Role Swap.
Dual-lane (x2)	USB 3.2 dual-lane operation is defined as simultaneously signaling on both sets of SuperSpeed USB transmit and receive differential pairs (TX1/RX1 and TX2/RX2 in the cable/plug).
Electronically Marked Cable	A USB Type-C cable that uses *USB PD* to provide the cable's characteristics.
eMarker	The element in an Electronically Marked Cable that returns information about the cable in response to a *USB PD* Discover Identity command.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Term	Description
Initiator	The port initiating a Vendor Defined Message. It is independent of the port's PD role (e.g., Provider, Consumer, Provider/Consumer, or Consumer/Provider). In most cases, the Initiator will be a host.
Internal Temperature	In reference to an active cable, the temperature measured inside a plug. It is not the skin temperature. There is a relationship between the plug's internal temperature and the skin temperature, but that relationship is design dependent.
Local Plug	The cable plug being referred to.
Optically Isolated Active Cable (OIAC)	A cable with a USB Type-C Plug on each end with one Cable Plug supporting SOP' and the other supporting SOP". This cable is electrically isolated between the two plugs.
Passive cable	A cable that does not incorporate any electronics to condition the data path signals. A passive cable may or may not be electronically marked.
Port Partner	Refers to the port (device or host) a port is attached to.
Power Bank	A device with a battery whose primary function is to charge or otherwise extend the runtime of other USB Type-C devices.
Power Sinking Devices (PSD)	Sink which draws power but has no other USB or Alternate Mode communication function, e.g. a USB-powered light.
Powered cable	A cable with electronics in the plug that requires VCONN indicated by the presence of Ra between the VCONN pin and ground.
PR_Swap	*USB PD* Power Role Swap.
Re-driver	Re-driver refers to an analog component that operates on the signal without re-timing it. This may include equalization, amplification, and transmitter. The re-driver does not include a clock-data recovery (CDR) circuit. Re-drivers are beyond the scope of this document.
Remote Plug	A remote cable plug in the context of OIAC plugs is the plug at the other end of the Optically Isolated Active Cable.
Repeater	Repeater refers to any active component that acts on a signal in order to increase the physical lengths and/or interconnect loss over which the signal can be transmitted successfully. The category of repeaters includes both re-timers and re-drivers.
Responder	The port responding to the Initiator of a Vendor Defined Message (VDM). It is independent of the port's PD role (e.g., Provider, Consumer, Provider/Consumer, or Consumer/Provider). In most cases, the Responder will be a device.
Re-timer	Re-timer refers to a component that contains a clock-data recovery (CDR) circuit that "retimes" the signal. The re-timer latches the signal into a synchronous memory element before re-transmitting it. It is used to extend the physical length of the system without accumulating high frequency jitter by creating separate clock domains on either side of the re-timer. Re-timers are defined in *USB 3.2* Appendix E and *USB4*.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Term	Description
SBU	Sideband Use.
Short Active Cable (SAC)	A cable with a USB Type-C Plug on each end at least one of which is a Cable Plug supporting SOP'. Cable length up to 5 meters.
SID	A Standard ID (SID) is a unique 16-bit value assigned by the USB-IF to identify an industry standard.
Single-lane (x1)	USB 3.2 single-lane operation is defined as signaling on only one set of SuperSpeed USB transmit and receive differential pairs (TX1/RX1 in the cable/plug).
Sink	Port asserting Rd on CC and when attached is consuming power from VBUS; most commonly a Device.
Skin Temperature	In reference to an active cable, the temperature of a plug's over-mold.
Source	Port asserting Rp on CC and when attached is providing power over VBUS; most commonly a Host or Hub DFP.
SVID	General reference to either a SID or a VID. Used by *USB PD* Structured VDMs when requesting SIDs and VIDs from a device.
Target System (TS)	The system being debugged in Debug Accessory Mode.
Type-A	A general reference to all versions of USB "A" plugs and receptacles.
Type-B	A general reference to all versions of USB "B" plugs and receptacles.
Type-C Plug	A USB plug conforming to the mechanical and electrical requirements in this specification.
Type-C Port	The USB port associated to a USB Type-C receptacle. This includes the USB signaling, CC logic, multiplexers and other associated logic.
Type-C Receptacle	A USB receptacle conforming to the mechanical and electrical requirements of this specification.
UFP	Upstream Facing Port, specifically associated with the flow of data in a USB connection. The port on a device or a hub that connects to a host or the DFP of a hub. In its initial state, the UFP sinks VBUS and supports data.
USB 2.0 Type-C Cable	A USB Type-C to Type-C cable that only supports *USB 2.0* data operation. This cable does not include *USB 3.2* or SBU wires.
USB 2.0 Type-C Plug	A USB Type-C plug specifically designed to implement the *USB 2.0* Type-C cable.
USB Full-Featured Type-C Cable	A USB Type-C to Type-C cable that supports *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2* and *USB4* data operation. This cable includes SBU wires and is an Electronically Marked Cable.
USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug	A USB Type-C plug specifically designed to implement the USB Full-Featured Type-C cable.
USB4 Hub	A USB4 hub product is used for USB port expansion, includes only USB upstream and downstream ports, and does not include any additional capability that exposes other connector types or functions except as defined in Section 5.2.3 (Alternate Modes).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Term	Description
USB4-based Dock	A USB4-based dock product combines a USB4 hub (including at least one exposed USB Type-C downstream port) with additional capabilities that either exposes other connector types and/or includes other user-visible functions, e.g. storage, networking, etc. Examples of functions that are not considered user-visible include firmware update and device authentication.
USB Safe State	The USB Safe State as defined by the *USB PD* specification.
VCONN-Powered Accessory (VPA)	An accessory that is powered from VCONN to operate in an Alternate Mode. VPAs cannot implement the charge-through mechanism described for VPDs, and instead must intermediate by negotiating USB Power Delivery with both the connected host and source in order to enable similar functionality.
VCONN-Powered USB Device (VPD)	A USB direct-connect or captive-cable device that can be powered solely from either VCONN or VBUS. VPDs may optionally support the VPD charge-through capability.
VCONN_Swap	*USB PD* VCONN Swap.
VDM	Vendor Defined Message as defined by the *USB PD* specification.
VID	A Vendor ID (VID) is a unique 16-bit value assigned by the USB-IF to identify a vendor.
vSafe0V	VBUS “0 volts” as defined by the *USB PD* specification.
vSafe5V	VBUS “5 volts” as defined by the *USB PD* specification.
x1	See Single-lane.
x2	See Dual-lane.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

2 Overview

2.1 Introduction

The USB Type-C® receptacle, plug and cable provide a smaller, thinner and more robust alternative to legacy USB interconnect (Standard and Micro USB cables and connectors). This solution targets use in very thin platforms, ranging from ultra-thin notebook PCs down to smart phones where existing Standard-A and Micro-AB receptacles are deemed too large, difficult to use, or inadequately robust. Some key specific enhancements include:

- The USB Type-C receptacle may be used in very thin platforms as its total system height for the mounted receptacle is under 3 mm
- The USB Type-C plug enhances ease of use by being plug-able in either upside-up or upside-down directions
- The USB Type-C cable enhances ease of use by being plug-able in either direction between host and devices

While the USB Type-C interconnect no longer physically differentiates plugs on a cable by being an A-type or B-type, the USB interface still maintains such a host-to-device logical relationship. Determination of this host-to-device relationship is accomplished through a Configuration Channel (CC) that is connected through the cable. In addition, the Configuration Channel is used to set up and manage power and Alternate/Accessory Modes.

Using the Configuration Channel, the USB Type-C interconnect defines a simplified 5 volt VBUS-based power delivery and charging solution that supplements what is already defined in the *USB 3.2 Specification*. More advanced power delivery and battery charging features over the USB Type-C interconnect are based on the *USB Power Delivery Specification*. As a product implementation improvement, the USB Type-C interconnect shifts the *USB PD* communication protocol from being communicated over VBUS to being delivered across the USB Type-C Configuration Channel.

The USB Type-C receptacle, plug and cable designs are intended to support future USB functional extensions. As such, consideration was given to frequency scaling performance, pin-out arrangement and the configuration mechanisms when developing this solution. The definition of future USB functional extensions is not in the scope of this specification but rather will be provided in future releases of the base USB Specification, i.e., beyond the existing *USB4™ Specification*.

Figure 2-1 illustrates the comprehensive functional signal plan for the USB Full-Featured Type-C receptacle, not all signals shown are required in all platforms or devices. As shown, the receptacle signal list functionally delivers both *USB 2.0* (D+ and D−) and either *USB 3.2* or *USB4* (TX and RX pairs) data buses, USB power (VBUS) and ground (GND), Configuration Channel signals (CC1 and CC2), and two Sideband Use (SBU) signal pins. Multiple sets of USB data bus signal locations in this layout facilitate being able to functionally map the USB signals independent of plug orientation in the receptacle. For reference, the signal pins are labeled. For the *USB 2.0* Type-C receptacle, neither the *USB 3.2* nor *USB4* signals are implemented.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

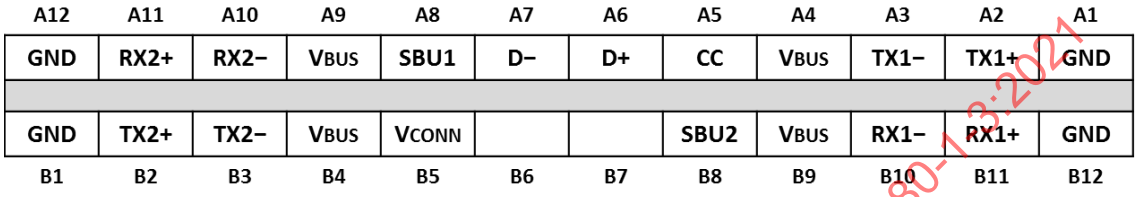
Figure 2-1 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface (Front View)

A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	A9	A10	A11	A12
GND	TX1+	TX1−	VBUS	CC1	D+	D−	SBU1	VBUS	RX2−	RX2+	GND
GND	RX1+	RX1−	VBUS	SBU2	D−	D+	CC2	VBUS	TX2−	TX2+	GND
B12	B11	B10	B9	B8	B7	B6	B5	B4	B3	B2	B1

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 2-2 illustrates the comprehensive functional signal plan for the USB Type-C plug. Only one CC pin is connected through the cable to establish signal orientation and the other CC pin is repurposed as VCONN for powering electronics in the USB Type-C plug. Also, only one set of *USB 2.0* D+/D− wires are implemented in a USB Type-C cable. For USB Type-C cables that only intend to support *USB 2.0* functionality, the TX/RX and SBU signals are not implemented. For the USB Type-C Power-Only plug (intended only for USB Type-C Sink applications), only nine contacts are implemented to support CC, VBUS, and GND.

Figure 2-2 USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Interface (Front View)



2.2 USB Type-C Receptacles, Plugs and Cables

Cables and connectors, including USB Type-C to USB legacy cables and adapters, are explicitly defined within this specification. These are the only connectors and cables that are authorized by the licensing terms of this specification. All licensed cables and connectors are required to comply with the compliance and certification requirements that are developed and maintained by the USB-IF.

The following USB Type-C receptacles and plugs are defined.

- USB Full-Featured Type-C receptacle for *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2*, *USB4* and full-featured platforms and devices
- *USB 2.0* Type-C receptacle for *USB 2.0* platforms and devices
- USB Full-Featured Type-C plug
- *USB 2.0* Type-C plug
- USB Type-C Power-Only plug

The following USB Type-C cables are defined.

- USB Full-Featured Type-C cable with a USB Full-Featured Type-C plug at both ends for *USB 3.2*, *USB4* and full-featured applications
- *USB 2.0* Type-C cable with a *USB 2.0* Type-C plug at both ends for *USB 2.0* applications
- Captive cable with either a USB Full-Featured Type-C plug or *USB 2.0* Type-C plug at one end
- Active cables as defined in Chapter 6

All of the defined USB Type-C receptacles, plugs and cables (except OIAC) support USB charging applications, including support for the optional USB Type-C-specific implementation of the *USB Power Delivery Specification* (See Section 4.6.2.4).

All USB Full-Featured Type-C cables are electronically marked. *USB 2.0* Type-C cables may be electronically marked. See Section 4.9 for the requirements of Electronically Marked Cables.

The following USB Type-C to USB legacy cables and adapters are defined.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- *USB 3.2* Type-C to Legacy Host cable with a USB Full-Featured Type-C plug at one end and a *USB 3.1* Standard-A plug at the other end – *this cable supports use of a USB Type-C-based device with a legacy USB host*
- *USB 2.0* Type-C to Legacy Host cable with a *USB 2.0* Type-C plug at one end and a *USB 2.0* Standard-A plug at the other end – *this cable supports use of a USB Type-C-based device with a legacy USB 2.0 host (primarily for mobile charging and sync applications)*
- *USB 3.2* Type-C to Legacy Device cable with a USB Full-Featured Type-C plug at one end and a *USB 3.1* Standard-B plug at the other end – *this cable supports use of legacy USB 3.1 hubs and devices with a USB Type-C-based host*
- *USB 2.0* Type-C to Legacy Device cable with a *USB 2.0* Type-C plug at one end and a *USB 2.0* Standard-B plug at the other end – *this cable supports use of legacy USB 2.0 hubs and devices with a USB Type-C-based host*
- *USB 2.0* Type-C to Legacy Mini Device cable with a *USB 2.0* Type-C plug at one end and a *USB 2.0* Mini-B plug at the other end – *this cable supports use of legacy devices with a USB 2.0 Type-C-based host*
- *USB 3.2* Type-C to Legacy Micro Device cable with a USB Full-Featured Type-C plug at one end and a *USB 3.1* Micro-B plug at the other end – *this cable supports use of legacy USB 3.1 hubs and devices with a USB Type-C-based host*
- *USB 2.0* Type-C to Legacy Micro Device cable with a *USB 2.0* Type-C plug at one end and a *USB 2.0* Micro-B plug at the other end – *this cable supports use of legacy USB 2.0 hubs and devices with a USB Type-C-based host*
- *USB 3.2* Type-C to Legacy Standard-A adapter with a USB Full-Featured Type-C plug at one end and a *USB 3.1* Standard-A receptacle at the other end – *this adapter supports use of a legacy USB "thumb drive" style device or a legacy USB ThinCard device with a USB 3.2 Type-C-based host*
- *USB 2.0* Type-C to Legacy Micro-B adapter with a *USB 2.0* Type-C plug at one end and a *USB 2.0* Micro-B receptacle at the other end – *this adapter supports charging a USB Type-C-based mobile device using a legacy USB Micro-B-based chargers, either captive cable-based or used in conjunction with a legacy USB 2.0 Standard-A to Micro-B cable*

USB Type-C receptacle to USB legacy adapters are explicitly not defined or allowed. Such adapters would allow many invalid and potentially unsafe cable connections to be constructed by users.

2.3 Configuration Process

The USB Type-C receptacle, plug and cable solution incorporates a configuration process to detect a downstream facing port to upstream facing port (Source-to-Sink) connection for VBUS management and host-to-device connected relationship determination.

The USB Type-C port configuration process is used for the following:

- Source-to-Sink attach/detach detection
- Plug orientation/cable twist detection
- Initial power (Source-to-Sink) detection and establishing the data (Host-to-Device) relationship
- Detect if cable requires VCONN
- USB Type-C VBUS current detection and usage
- *USB PD* communication
- Discovery and configuration of functional extensions

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Two pins on the USB Type-C receptacle, CC1 and CC2, are used for this purpose. Within a standard USB Type-C cable, only a single CC pin position within each plug of the cable is connected through the cable.

2.3.1 Source-to-Sink Attach/Detach Detection

Initially, Source-to-Sink attach is detected by a host or hub port (Source) when one of the CC pins at its USB Type-C receptacle senses a specified resistance to GND. Subsequently, Source-to-Sink detach is detected when the CC pin that was terminated at its USB Type-C receptacle is no longer terminated to GND.

Power is not applied to the USB Type-C host or hub receptacle (VBUS or VCONN) until the Source detects the presence of an attached device (Sink) port. When a Source-to-Sink attach is detected, the Source is expected to enable power to the receptacle and proceed to normal USB operation with the attached device. When a Source-to-Sink detach is detected, the port sourcing VBUS removes power.

2.3.2 Plug Orientation/Cable Twist Detection

The USB Type-C plug can be inserted into a receptacle in either one of two orientations, therefore the CC pins enable a method for detecting plug orientation in order to determine the lane ordering of the SuperSpeed USB data signal pairs functionally connected through the cable and identify the Configuration Lane for dual-lane operation when supported. This allows for signal routing, if needed, within a host or device to be established for a successful connection.

2.3.3 Initial Power (Source-to-Sink) Detection and Establishing the Data (Host-to-Device) Relationship

Unlike existing USB Type-A and USB Type-B receptacles and plugs, the mechanical characteristics of the USB Type-C receptacle and plug do not inherently establish the relationship of USB host and device ports. The CC pins on the receptacle also serve to establish an initial power (Source-to-Sink) and data (Host-to-Device) relationships prior to the normal USB enumeration process.

For the purpose of defining how the CC pins are used to establish the initial power relationship, the following port power behavior modes are defined.

1. Source-only – for this mode, the port exclusively behaves as a Source
2. Sink-only – for this mode, the port exclusively behaves as a Sink
3. Dual-Role-Power (DRP) – for this mode, the port can behave either as a Source or Sink

Additionally, when a port supports USB data operation, a port's data behavior modes are defined.

1. DFP-only – for this mode, the port exclusively behaves as a DFP
2. UFP-only – for this mode, the port exclusively behaves as a UFP
3. Dual-Role-Data (DRD) – for this mode, the port can behave either as a DFP or UFP

The DFP-only and UFP-only ports behaviorally map to traditional USB host ports and USB device ports, respectively but may not necessarily do USB data communication. When a host-only port is attached to a device-only port, the behavior from the user's perspective follows the traditional USB host-to-device port model. However, the USB Type-C connector solution does not physically prevent host-to-host or device-to-device connections. In this case, the resulting host-to-host or device-to-device connection results in a safe but non-functional situation.

Once initially established, the Source supplies VBUS and behaves as a DFP, and the Sink consumes VBUS and behaves as a UFP. *USB PD*, when supported by both ports, may then be used to independently swap both the power and data roles of the ports.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

A port that supports dual-role operation by being able to shift to the appropriate connected mode when attached to either a Source-only or Sink-only port is a DRP. In the special case of a DRP being attached to another DRP, an initialization protocol across the CC pins is used to establish the initial host-to-device relationship. Given no role-swapping intervention, the determination of which is DFP or UFP is random from the user's perspective.

Two independent set of mechanisms are defined to allow a USB Type-C DRP to functionally swap power and data roles. When *USB PD* is supported, power and data role swapping is performed as a subsequent step following the initial connection process. For non-PD implementations, power/data role swapping can optionally be dealt with as part of the initial connection process. To improve the user's experience when connecting devices that are of categorically different types, products may be implemented to strongly prefer being a DFP or a UFP, such that the DFP/UFP determination becomes predictable when connecting two DRPs of differing categories. See Section 4.5.1.4 for more on available swapping mechanisms.

As an alternative to role swapping, a USB Type-C DRP may provide useful functionality by when operating as a host, exposing a CDC/network (preferably TCP/IP) stack or when operating as a device, exposing a CDC/network interface.

USB hubs have two types of ports, a UFP that is connected to a DFP (host or another hub) that initially functions as a Sink, and one or more DFPs for connecting other devices that initially function as Sources.

2.3.4 USB Type-C VBUS Current Detection and Usage

With the USB Type-C connector solution, a Source (host or downstream hub port) may implement higher source current over VBUS to enable faster charging of mobile devices or higher-power devices. All USB host and hub ports advertise via the CC pins the level of current that is presently available. The USB device port is required to manage its load to stay within the current level offered by the host or hub, including dynamically scaling back the load if the host or hub port changes its advertisement to a lower level as indicated over the CC pins.

Three current level advertisements at 5V VBUS are defined by USB Type-C Current:

- Default is the as-configured for high-power operation current value as defined by a USB Specification (500 mA for USB 2.0 ports; 900 mA or 1,500 mA for USB 3.2 ports operating in single-lane or dual-lane, respectively)
- USB Type-C Current @ 1.5 A
- USB Type-C Current @ 3.0 A

There is a clear functional distinction between advertising Default versus the USB Type-C Current at either 1.5 A or 3.0 A.

- Default is intended for host operation in providing bus power to a connected device where the host manages the device's current consumption for the low-power, high-power and suspend states as defined in the USB base specifications.
- USB Type-C Current at either 1.5 A or 3.0 A is primarily intended for charging applications. The Sink can vary its current draw up to the advertised limit. Offering USB Type-C Current at either 1.5 A or 3.0 A is allowed for a host providing bus power to a device. The host needs to assume that the device will continuously draw up to the offered limit.

The higher USB Type-C Current levels that can be advertised allows hosts and devices that do not implement *USB PD* to take advantage of higher charging current.

2.3.5 USB PD Communication

USB Power Delivery is a feature on products (hosts, hubs and devices). *USB PD* communications is used to:

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- Establish power contracts that allow voltage and current beyond existing USB data bus specifications.
- Change the port sourcing VBUS.
- Change the port sourcing VCONN.
- Swap DFP and UFP roles.
- Communicate with cables.

The *USB PD* Bi-phase Mark Coded (BMC) communications are carried on the CC wire of the USB Type-C cable.

2.3.6 Functional Extensions

Functional extensions (see Chapter E) are enabled via a communications channel across CC using methods defined by the *USB Power Delivery Specification*.

2.4 VBUS

VBUS provides a path to deliver power between a host and a device, and between a USB power charger and a host/device. A simplified high-current supply capability is defined for hosts and chargers that optionally support current levels beyond the *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2*, and *USB4* specifications. The *USB Power Delivery Specification* is supported.

Table 2-1 summarizes the power supply options available from the perspective of a device with the USB Type-C connector. Not all options will be available to the device from all host or hub ports – only the first two listed options are mandated by the base USB specifications and form the basis of USB Type-C Current at the Default USB Power level.

Table 2-1 Summary of power supply options

Mode of Operation	Voltage	Current	Notes
USB 2.0	5 V	See *USB 2.0*	
USB 3.2	5 V	See *USB 3.2*	
USB4	5 V	1.5 A	See Section 5.3.
USB BC 1.2	5 V	1.5 A[1]	Legacy charging
USB Type-C Current @ 1.5 A	5 V	1.5 A	Supports higher power devices
USB Type-C Current @ 3.0 A	5 V	3 A	Supports higher power devices
USB PD	Configurable up to 20 V	Configurable up to 5 A	Directional control and power level management

Notes:

1. Whereas *USB BC 1.2* specification permits a power provider to be designed to support a level of power between 0.5 A and 1.5 A, the USB Type-C specification requires that a Source port that supports *USB BC 1.2* be at a minimum capable of supplying 1.5 A and advertise USB Type-C Current @ 1.5 A in addition to supporting the *USB BC 1.2* power provider termination.

The USB Type-C receptacle is specified for current capability of 5 A whereas standard USB Type-C cable assemblies are rated for 3 A. The higher rating of the receptacle enables systems to deliver more power over directly attached docking solutions or using appropriately designed chargers with

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

captive cables when implementing *USB PD*. Also, USB Type-C cable assemblies designed for *USB PD* and appropriately identified via electronic marking are allowed to support up to 5 A.

2.5 VCONN

Once the connection between host and device is established, the CC pin (CC1 or CC2) in the receptacle that is not connected via the CC wire through the standard cable is repurposed to source VCONN to power circuits in the plug needed to implement Electronically Marked Cables (see Section 4.9), VCONN-Powered Accessories and VCONN-Powered USB Devices. Initially, the source supplies VCONN and the source of VCONN may be swapped using *USB PD* VCONN_Swap.

Electronically marked cables may use VBUS instead of VCONN as VBUS is available across the cable. VCONN functionally differs from VBUS in that it is isolated from the other end of the cable. VCONN is independent of VBUS and, unlike VBUS which can use *USB PD* to support higher voltages, VCONN voltage stays within the range of 3.0 to 5.5 V (vVCONNValid).

2.6 Hubs

USB hubs implemented with USB Type-C receptacles are required to clearly identify the upstream facing port. This requirement is needed because a user can no longer know which port on a hub is the upstream facing port and which ports are the downstream facing ports by the type of receptacles that are exposed, i.e., USB Type-B is the upstream facing port and USB Type-A is a downstream facing port.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3 Mechanical

3.1 Overview

This chapter defines the USB Type-C® connectors and wired cable assemblies. Cables which include active elements in the data path are defined in Chapter 6 (Active Cables).

3.1.1 Compliant Connectors

The USB Type-C specification defines the following standard connectors:

- USB Full-Featured Type-C receptacle
- *USB 2.0* Type-C receptacle
- USB Full-Featured Type-C plug
- *USB 2.0* Type-C plug
- USB Type-C Power-Only plug

3.1.2 Compliant Cable Assemblies

Table 3-1 summarizes the USB Type-C standard cable assemblies along with the primary differentiating characteristics. All USB Full-Featured Type-C cables shall support simultaneous, independent signal transmission on both *USB 3.2* and *USB4™* (TX and RX pairs) data buses. The cable lengths listed in the table are informative and represents the practical length based on cable performance requirements. All cables that are either full-featured and/or are rated at more than 3 A current are Electronically Marked Cables.

Table 3-1 USB Type-C Standard Cable Assemblies

Cable Ref	Plug 1	Plug 2	USB Version	Cable Length	Current Rating	USB Power Delivery	USB Type-C Electronically Marked
CC2-3	C	C	USB 2.0	≤ 4 m	3 A	Supported	Optional
CC2-5					5 A		Required
CC3G1-3	C	C	USB 3.2 Gen1 and USB4 Gen2	≤ 2 m	3 A	Supported	Required
CC3G1-5					5 A		
CC3G2-3	C	C	USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2	≤ 1 m	3 A	Supported	Required
CC3G2-5					5 A		
CC4G3-3	C	C	USB4 Gen3	≤ 0.8 m	3 A	Supported	Required
CC4G3-5					5 A		

USB Type-C products are also allowed to have a captive cable. See Section 3.4.3.

3.1.3 Compliant USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assemblies

Table 3-2 summarizes the USB Type-C legacy cable assemblies along with the primary differentiating characteristics. The cable lengths listed in the table are informative and represents the practical length based on cable performance requirements. *USB 3.2* Type-C legacy cables assemblies that only offer performance up to *USB 3.1* Gen1 are not allowed by this specification. All USB Type-C to legacy cable assemblies are only defined specific to *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* as there are no USB Type-C to legacy cables that are uniquely applicable to *USB4*.

For USB Type-C legacy cable assemblies that incorporate Rp termination, the value of this termination is required to be specified to the Default setting of USB Type-C Current even though the

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

cable assemblies are rated for 3 A. The Rp termination in these cables is intended to represent the maximum current of a compliant legacy USB host port, not the current rating of the cable itself. The cable current rating is intentionally set to a higher level given that there are numerous non-standard power chargers that offer more than the Default levels established by the *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.1* specifications.

Table 3-2 USB Type-C Legacy Cable Assemblies

Cable Ref	Plug 1[3]	Plug 2[3]	USB Version	Cable Length	Current Rating
AC2-3	USB 2.0 Standard-A	USB 2.0 Type-C[1]	USB 2.0	≤ 4 m	3 A
AC3G2-3	USB 3.1 Standard-A	USB Full-Featured Type-C[1]	USB 3.1 Gen2	≤ 1 m	3 A
CB2-3	USB 2.0 Type-C[2]	USB 2.0 Standard-B	USB 2.0	≤ 4 m	3 A
CB3G2-3	USB Full-Featured Type-C[2]	USB 3.1 Standard-B	USB 3.1 Gen2	≤ 1 m	3 A
CmB2	USB 2.0 Type-C[2]	USB 2.0 Mini-B	USB 2.0	≤ 4 m	500 mA
CμB2-3	USB 2.0 Type-C[2]	USB 2.0 Micro-B	USB 2.0	≤ 2 m	3 A
CμB3G2-3	USB Full-Featured Type-C[2]	USB 3.1 Micro-B	USB 3.1 Gen2	≤ 1 m	3 A

Notes:

1. USB Type-C plugs associated with the "B" end of a legacy adapter cable are required to have Rp (56 kΩ ± 5%) termination incorporated into the plug assembly – see Section 4.5.3.2.2.
2. USB Type-C plugs associated with the "A" end of a legacy adapter cable are required to have Rd (5.1 kΩ ± 20%) termination incorporated into the plug assembly – see Section 4.5.3.2.1.
3. Refer to Section 3.7.5.3 for the mated resistance and temperature rise required for the legacy plugs.

3.1.4 Compliant USB Type-C to Legacy Adapter Assemblies

Table 3-3 summarizes the USB Type-C legacy adapter assemblies along with the primary differentiating characteristics. The cable lengths listed in the table are informative and represents the practical length based on cable performance requirements. All USB Type-C to legacy adapter assemblies are only defined specific to *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* as there are no USB Type-C to legacy adapters that are uniquely applicable to *USB4*.

Table 3-3 USB Type-C Legacy Adapter Assemblies

Adapter Ref	Plug	Receptacle[3]	USB Version	Cable Length	Current Rating
CμBR2-3	USB 2.0 Type-C[1]	USB 2.0 Micro-B	USB 2.0	≤ 0.15 m	3 A
CAR3G1-3	USB Full-Featured Type-C[2]	USB 3.1 Standard-A	USB 3.1 Gen1	≤ 0.15 m	3 A

Notes:

1. USB Type-C plugs associated with the "B" end of a legacy adapter are required to have Rp (56 kΩ ± 5%) termination incorporated into the plug assembly – see Section 4.5.3.2.2.
2. USB Type-C plugs associated with the "A" end of a legacy adapter are required to have Rd (5.1 kΩ ± 20%) termination incorporated into the plug assembly – see Section 4.5.3.2.1.
3. Refer to Section 3.7.6.3 for the mated resistance and temperature rise required for the legacy receptacles.

3.2 USB Type-C Connector Mating Interfaces

This section defines the connector mating interfaces, including the connector interface drawings, pin assignments, and descriptions. All dimensions in figures are in millimeters

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.2.1 Interface Definition

Figure 3-1 and Figure 3-3 show, respectively, the USB Type-C receptacle and USB Full-Featured Type-C plug interface dimensions.

Figure 3-11 shows the *USB 2.0* Type-C plug interface dimensions. The dimensions that govern the mating interoperability are specified. All the REF dimensions are provided for reference only, not hard requirements.

Key features, configuration options, and design areas that need attention:

1. Figure 3-1 shows a vertical-mount receptacle. Other PCB mounting types such as right-angle mount and mid-mount are allowed.
2. A mid-plate is required between the top and bottom signals inside the receptacle tongue to manage crosstalk in full-featured applications. The mid-plate shall be connected to the PCB ground with at least two grounding points. A reference design of the mid-plate is provided in Section 3.2.2.1.
3. Retention of the cable assembly in the receptacle is achieved by the side-latches in the plug and features on the sides of the receptacle tongue. Side latches are required for all plugs except plugs used for docking with no cable attached. Side latches shall be connected to ground inside the plug. A reference design of the side latches is provided in Section 3.2.2.2 along with its grounding scheme. Docking applications may not have side latches, requiring special consideration regarding EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility).
4. The EMC shielding springs are required inside the cable plug. The shielding spring shall be connected to the plug shell. No EMC shielding spring finger tip of the USB Full-Featured Type-C plug or *USB 2.0* Type-C plug shall be exposed in the plug housing opening of the unmated USB Type-C plug (see Figure 3-12). Section 3.2.2.3 shows reference designs of the EMC spring.
5. Shorting of any signal or power contact spring to the plug metal shell is not allowed. The spring in the deflected state should not touch the plug shell. An isolation layer (e.g., Kapton tape placed on the plug shell) is recommended to prevent accidental shorting due to plug shell deformation.
6. The USB Type-C receptacle shall provide an EMC ground return path through one of the following options:
   - a system of specific points of contact on the receptacle outer shell (e.g., spring fingers or spring fingers and formed solid bumps),
   - internal EMC pads, or
   - a combination of both points of contact on the receptacle outer shell and internal EMC pads.

   If points of contacts are used on the receptacle, then the receptacle points of contact shall make connection with the mated plug within the contact zones defined in Figure 3-2. A minimum of four separate points of contact are required. Additional points of contact are allowed. See Section 3.2.2.4 for a reference design of receptacle outer shell. The reference design includes four spring fingers as points of contact. Alternate configurations may include spring fingers on the A contact side or B contact side and formed solid bumps (e.g., dimples) on the B contact side or A contact side, respectively. Spring fingers are required on a minimum of one side to provide a pressure fit on opposing sides of the plug shell. Additional bumps may be used, but if bumps are on opposing sides of the receptacle shell, the minimum distance between the bumps shall be greater than the maximum plug shell defined dimension.

   If internal EMC pads are present in the receptacle, then they shall comply with the requirements defined in Figure 3-1. The shielding pads shall be connected to the receptacle shell. If no receptacle shell is present, then the receptacle shall provide a means to connect

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

the shielding pad to ground. See Section 3.2.2.3 for a reference design of the shielding pad and ground connection.

7. This specification defines the USB Type-C receptacle shell length of 6.20 mm as a reference dimension. The USB Type-C receptacle is designed to have shell length of 6.20 ± 0.20 mm to provide proper mechanical and electrical mating of the plug to the receptacle (e.g., full seating of the plug in the receptacle and protection of the receptacle tongue during insertion/withdrawal). The USB Type-C receptacle at the system level should be implemented such that the USB Type-C receptacle connector mounted in the associated system hardware has an effective shell length equal to 6.20 ± 0.20 mm.

8. The USB Type-C connector mating interface is defined so that the electrical connection may be established without the receptacle shell. To prevent excessive misalignment of the plug when it enters or exits the receptacle, the enclosure should have features to guide the plug for insertion and withdrawal when a modified receptacle shell is present. If the USB Type-C receptacle shell is modified from the specified dimension, then the recommended lead in from the receptacle tongue to the plug point of entry is 1.5 mm minimum when mounted in the system.

   This specification allows receptacle configurations with a conductive shell, a non-conductive shell, or no shell. The following requirements apply to the receptacle contact dimensions shown in SECTION A-A and ALTERNATE SECTION A-A shown in Figure 3-1:

   - If the receptacle shell is conductive, then the receptacle contact dimensions of SECTION A-A or ALTERNATE SECTION A-A shown in Figure 3-1 shall be used.
   - If the receptacle shell is non-conductive, then the receptacle contact dimensions of ALTERNATE SECTION A-A shown in Figure 3-1 shall be used. The contact dimensions of SECTION A-A are not allowed.
   - If there is no receptacle shell, then the receptacle contact dimensions of either SECTION A-A or ALTERNATE SECTION A-A shown in Figure 3-1 shall be used. If there is no receptacle shell and the receptacle is used in an implementation that does not effectively provide a conductive shell, then a receptacle with the contact dimensions of ALTERNATE SECTION A-A shown in Figure 3-1 should be used.

9. A paddle card (e.g., PCB) may be used in the USB Type-C plug to manage wire termination and electrical performance. Section 3.2.2.5 includes the guidelines and a design example for a paddle card.

10. This specification does not define standard footprints. Figure 3-4 shows an example SMT (surface mount) footprint for the vertical receptacle shown in Figure 3-1. Additional reference footprints and mounting configurations are shown in Figure 3-5, Figure 3-6, Figure 3-7, Figure 3-8, Figure 3-9 and Figure 3-10.

11. The receptacle shell shall be connected to the PCB ground plane.

12. All VBUS pins shall be connected together in the USB Type-C plug.

13. All Ground return pins shall be connected together in the USB Type-C plug.

14. All VBUS pins shall be connected together at the USB Type-C receptacle when it is in its mounted condition (e.g., all VBUS pins bussed together in the PCB).

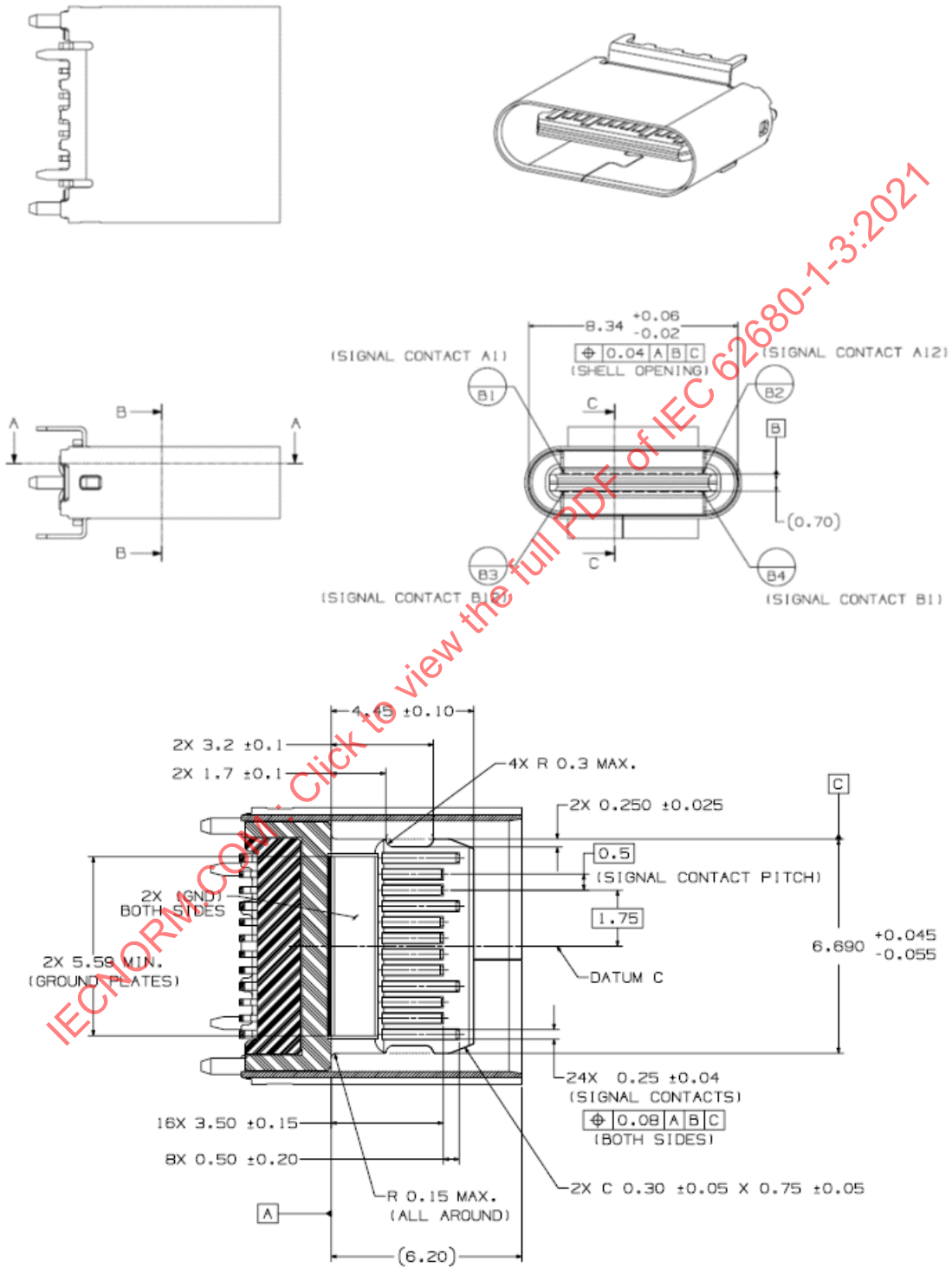
15. All Ground return pins shall be connected together at the USB Type-C receptacle when it is in its mounted condition (e.g., all Ground return pins bussed together in the PCB).

16. The USB Type-C Power-Only plug is a depopulated version of the USB Full-Featured Type-C plug or the *USB 2.0* Type-C plug. The interface dimensions shall conform to Figure 3-3 or Figure 3-11. Contacts for CC, VBUS, and GND (i.e., A1, A4, A5, A9, A12, B1, B4, B9, and B12) shall be present. Physical presence of contacts in the other 15 contact locations is optional. The USB Type-C Power-Only plug shall only be used on a non-charger captive cable application. Implementation of Rd or CC communication on pin A5 is required in the application.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

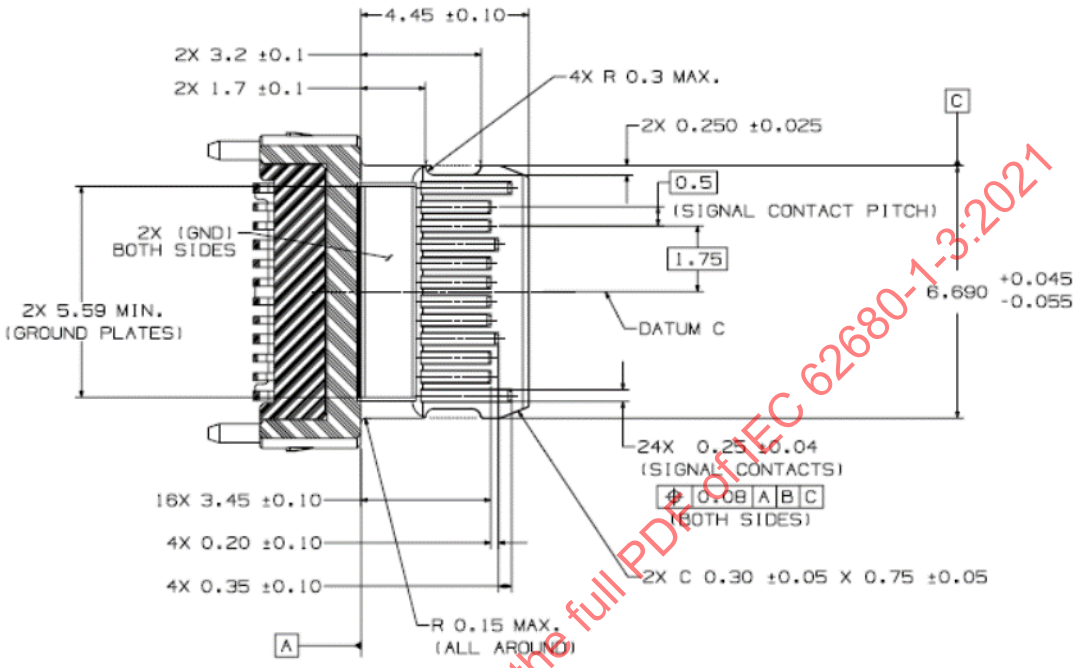
Figure 3-1 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface Dimensions



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

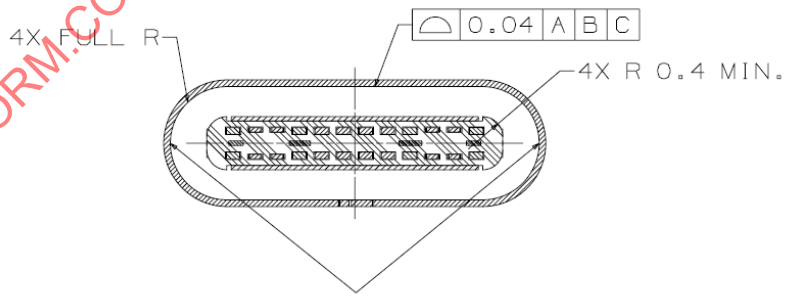
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-1 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface Dimensions, cont.



ALTERNATE SECTION A-A dimensions for use if the receptacle shell is non-conductive or there is no receptacle shell. This configuration is also allowed for receptacles with a conductive shell. See text for full requirements.

ALTERNATE SECTION A-A

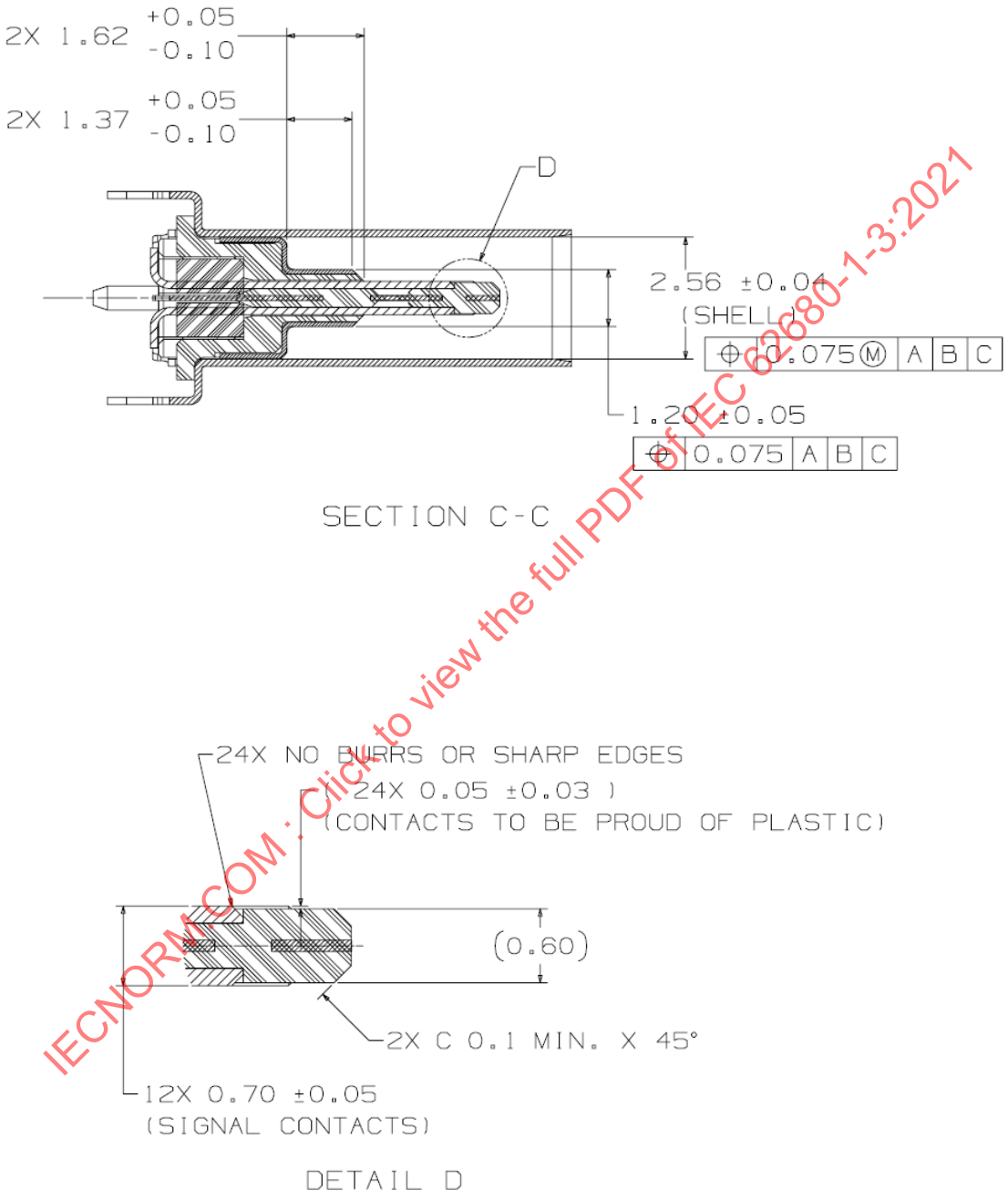


SECTION B-B

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

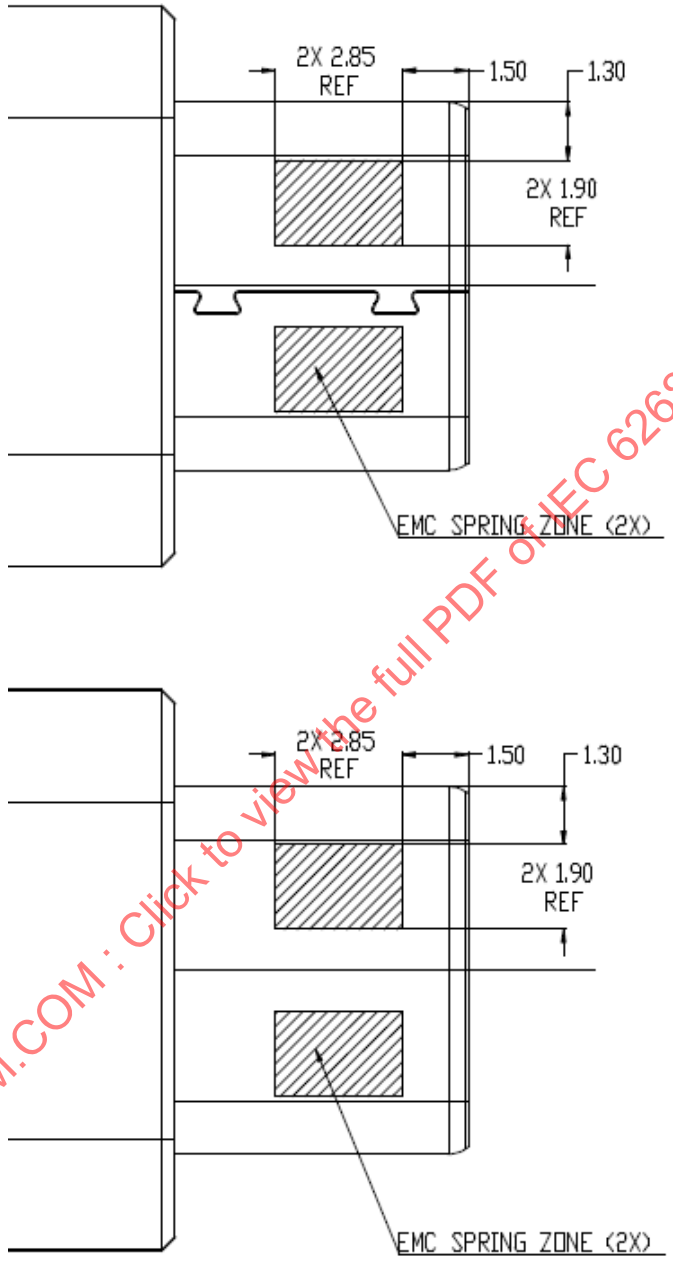
Figure 3-1 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface Dimensions, cont.



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

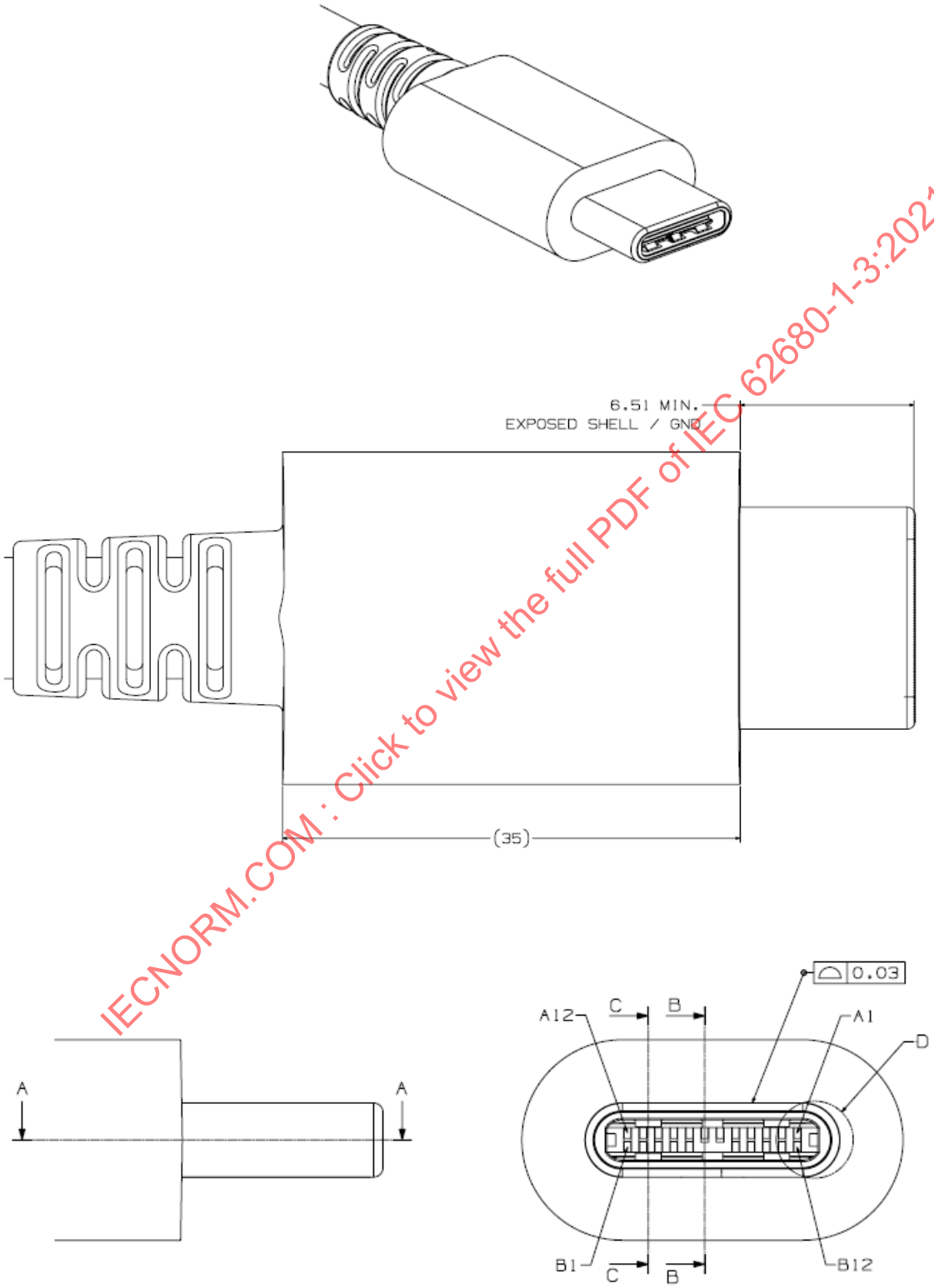
Figure 3-2 Reference Design USB Type-C Plug External EMC Spring Contact Zones



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

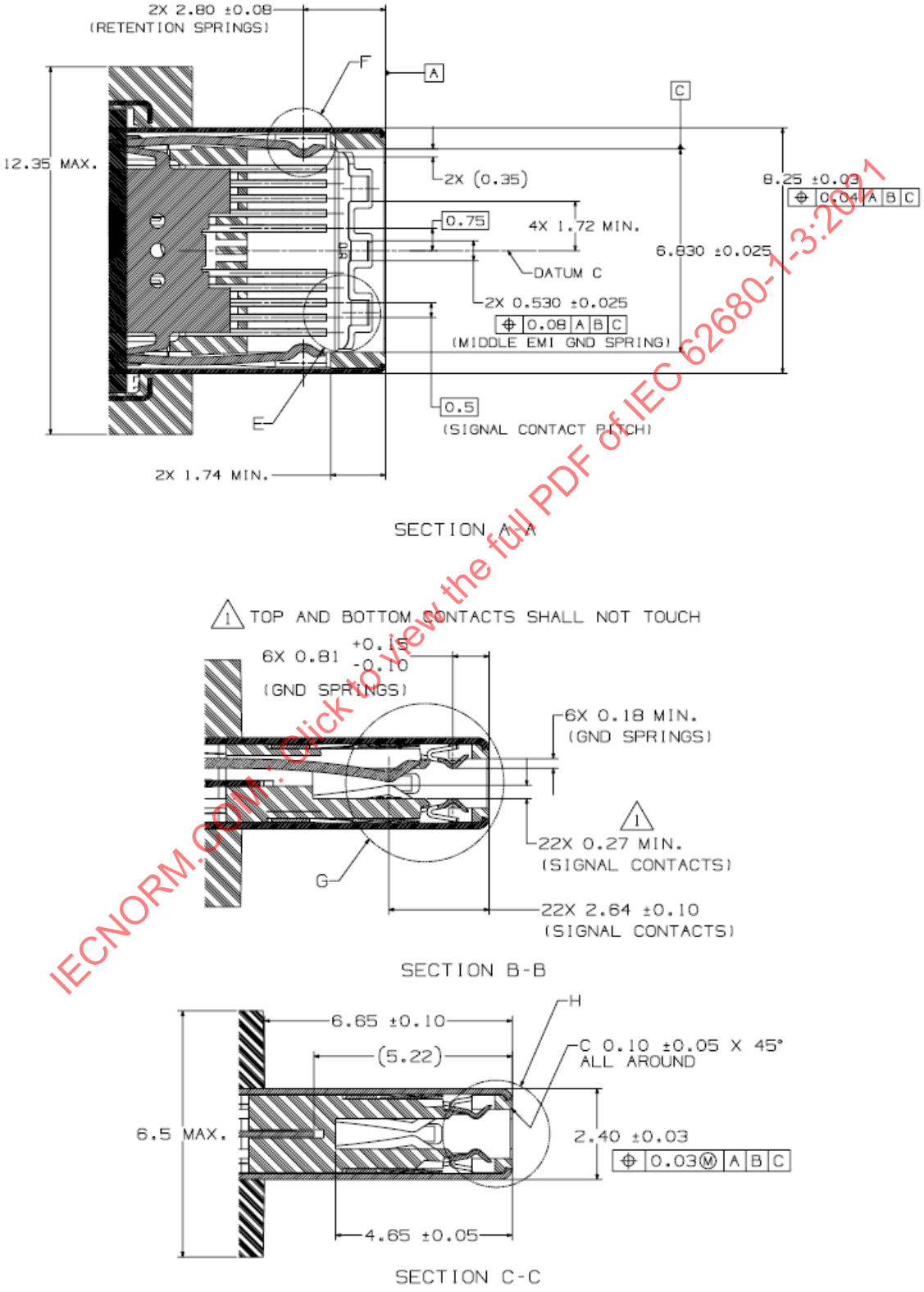
Figure 3-3 USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Interface Dimensions



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

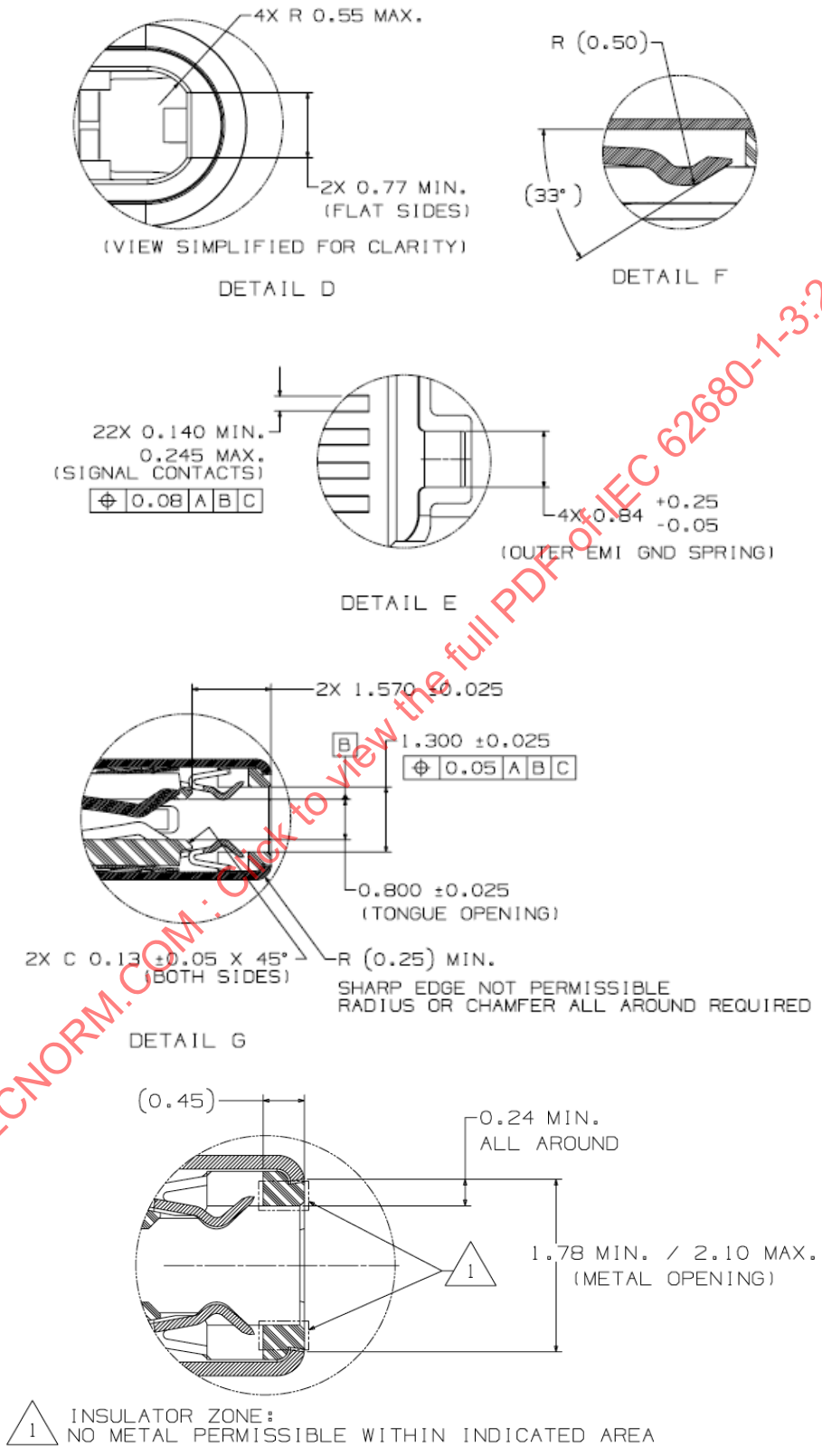
Figure 3-3 USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Interface Dimensions, cont.



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

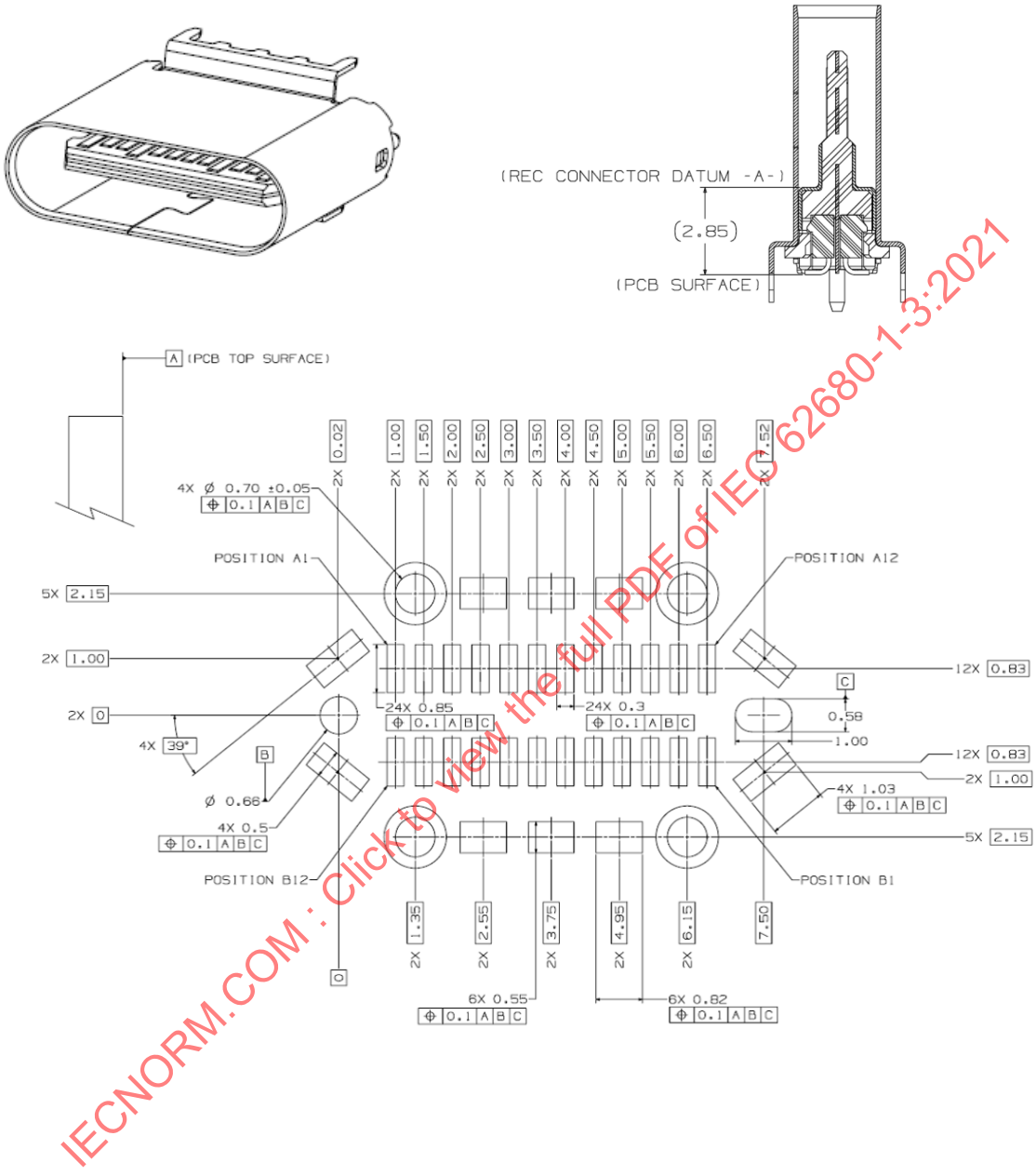
Figure 3-3 USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Interface Dimensions, cont.



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

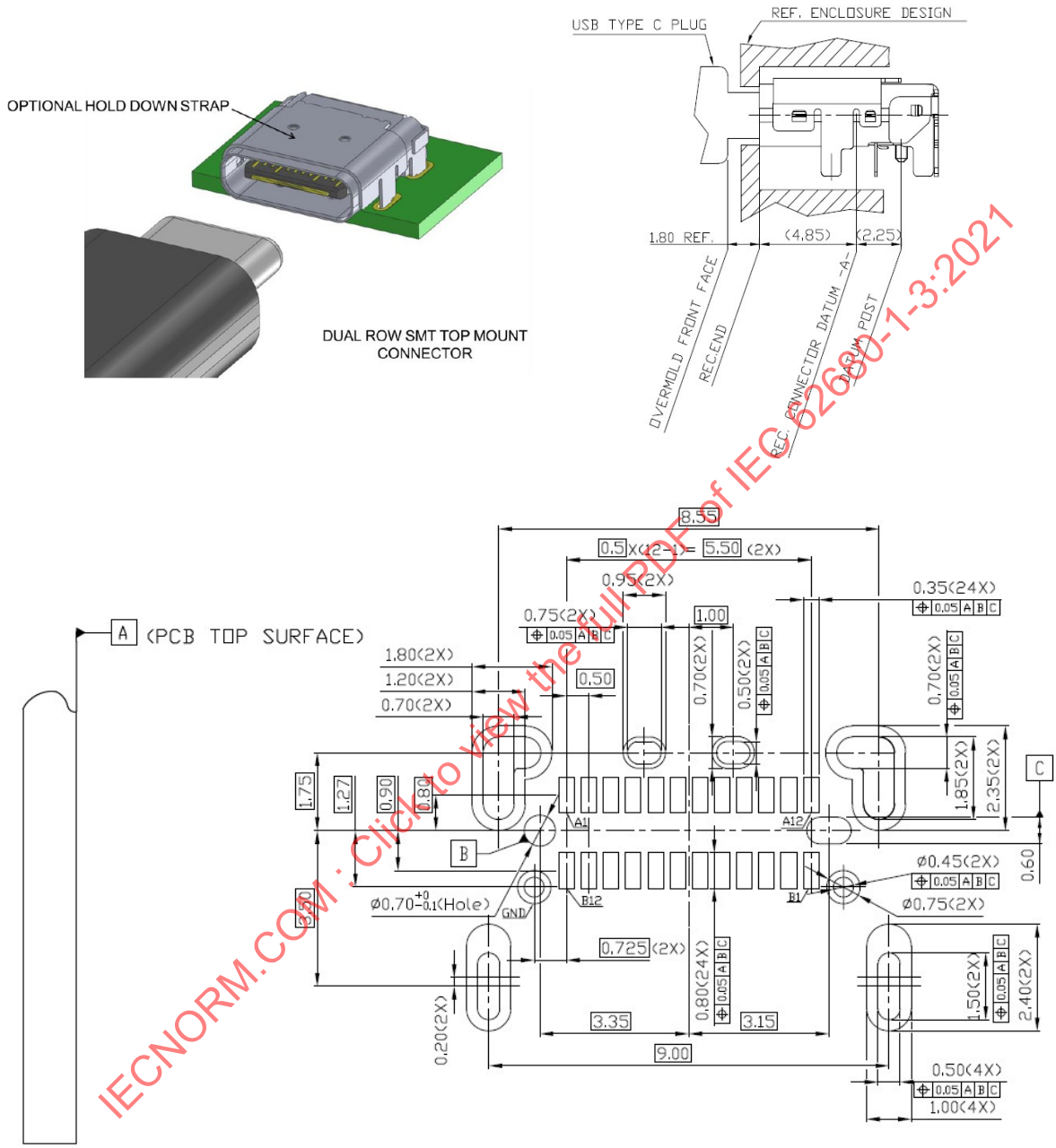
Figure 3-4 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Vertical Mount Receptacle (Informative)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

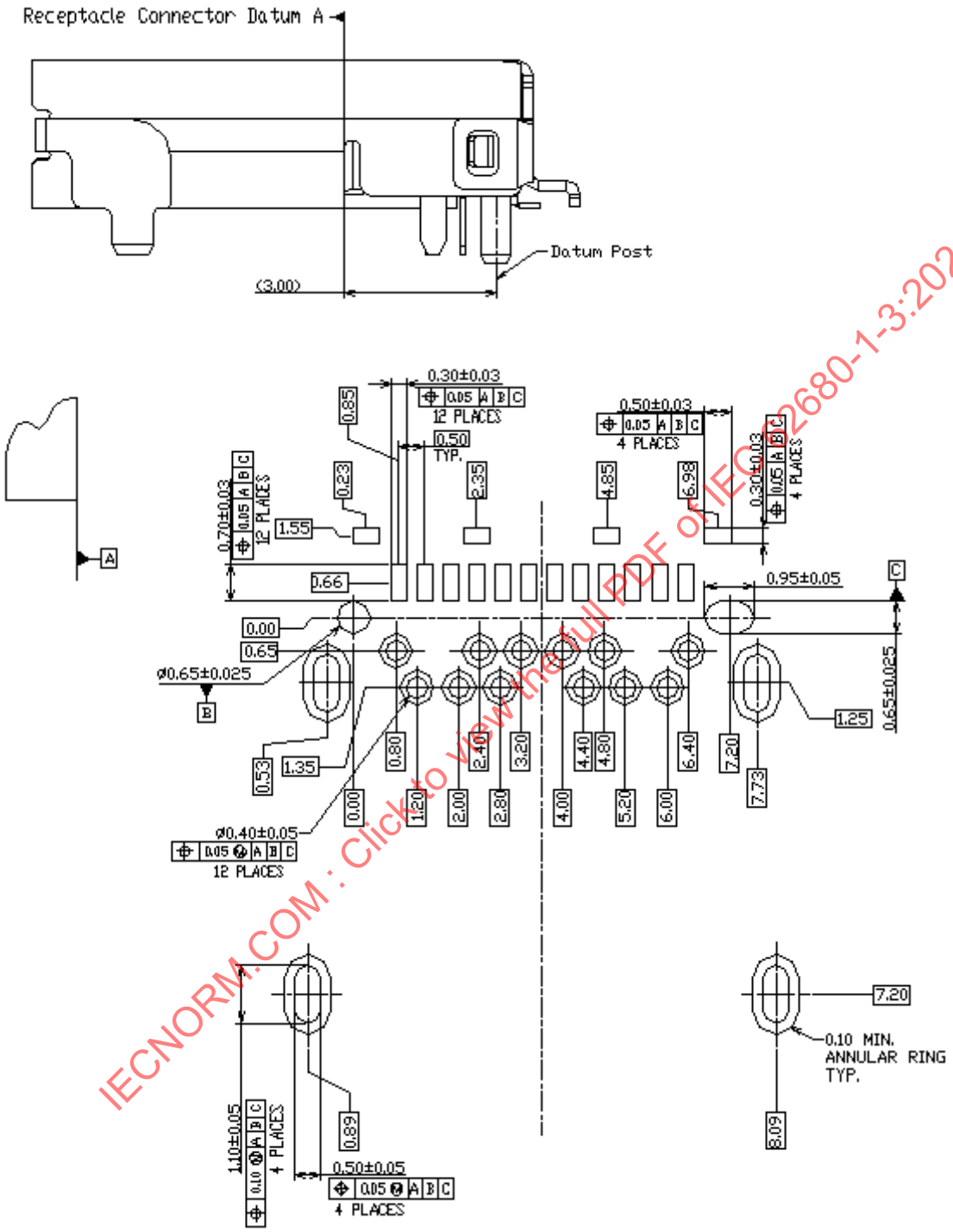
Figure 3-5 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Dual-Row SMT Right Angle Receptacle (Informative)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

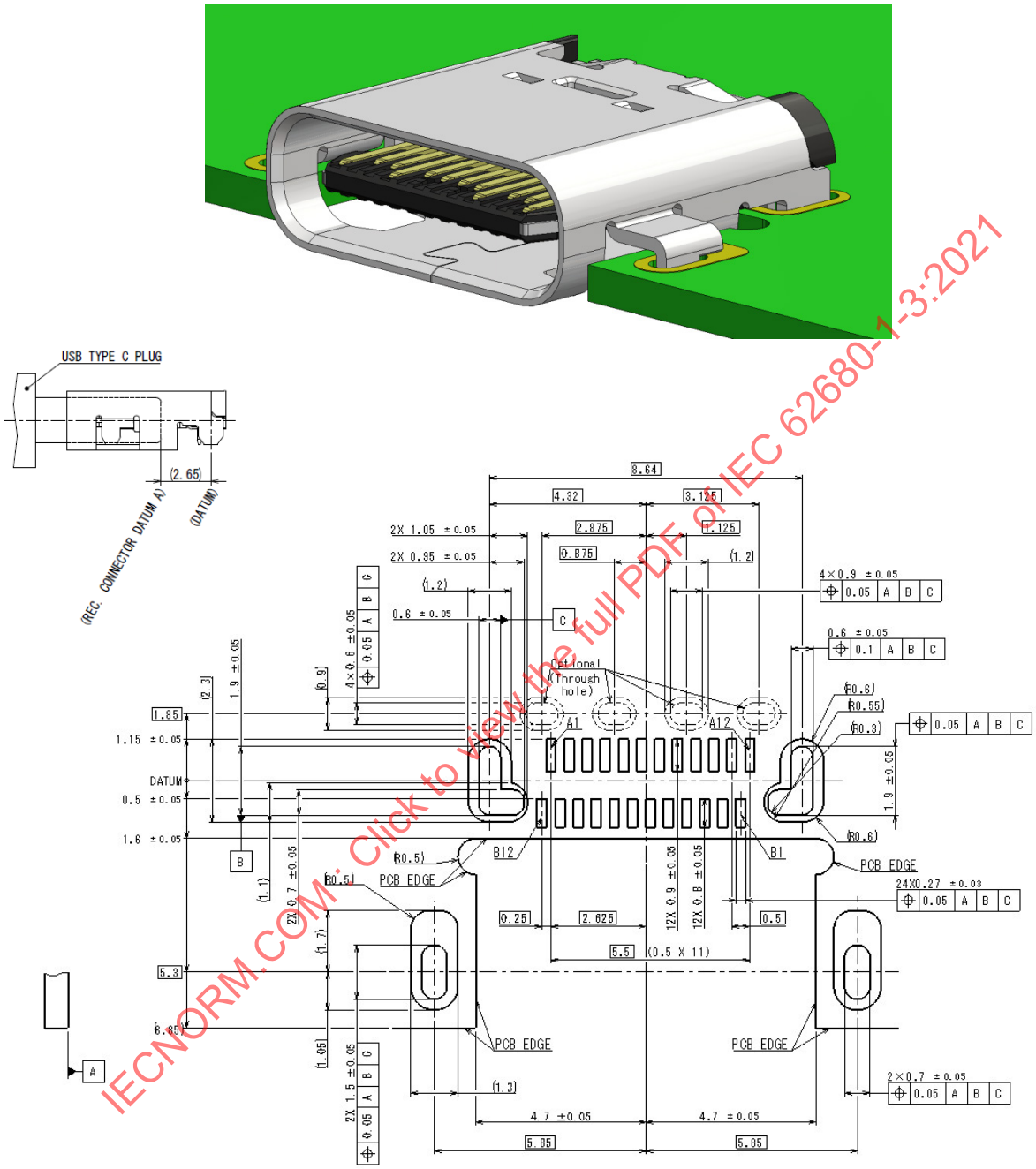
Figure 3-6 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Hybrid Right-Angle Receptacle (Informative)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

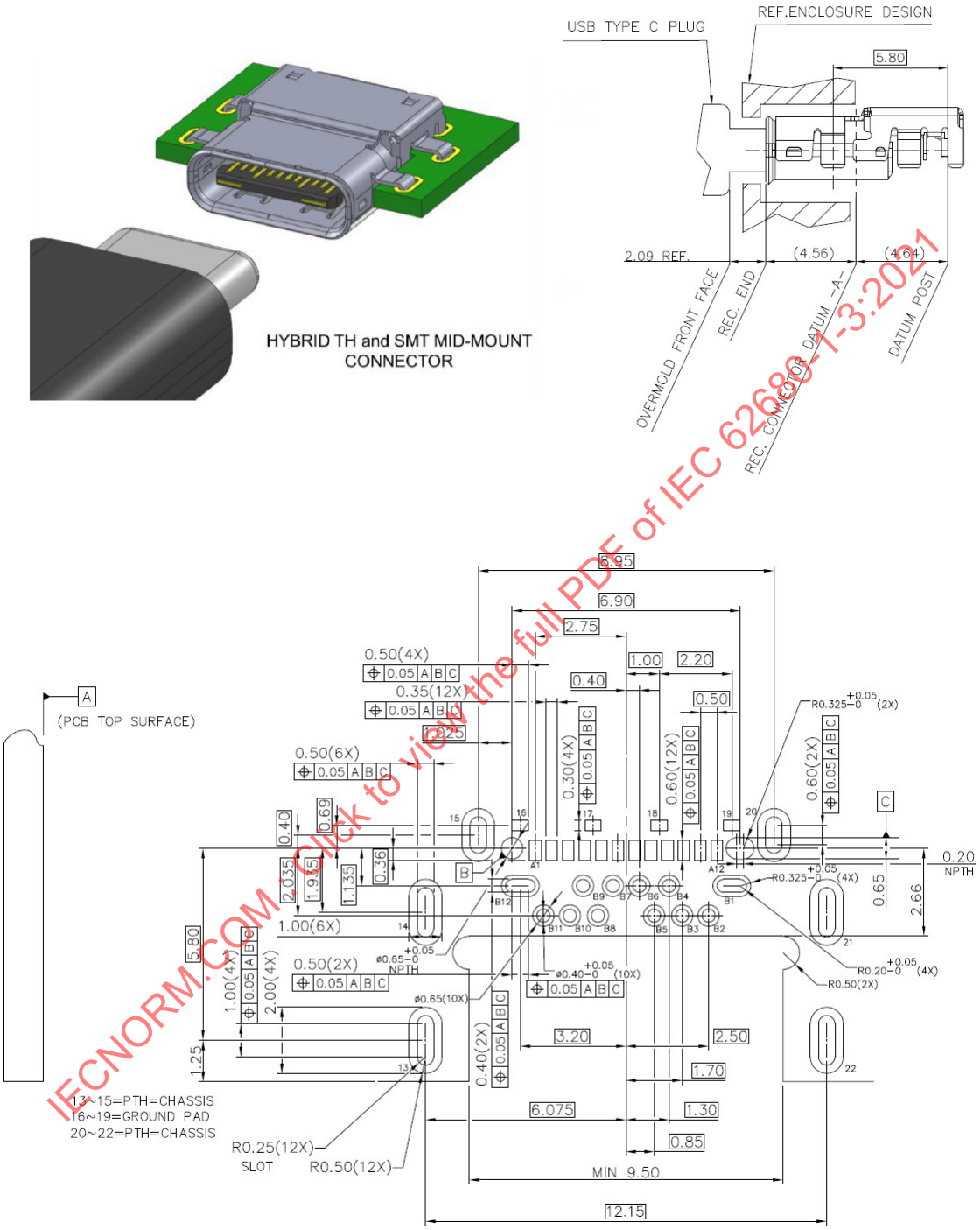
Figure 3-7 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Mid-Mount Dual-Row SMT Receptacle (Informative)



IECNORM.COM: Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

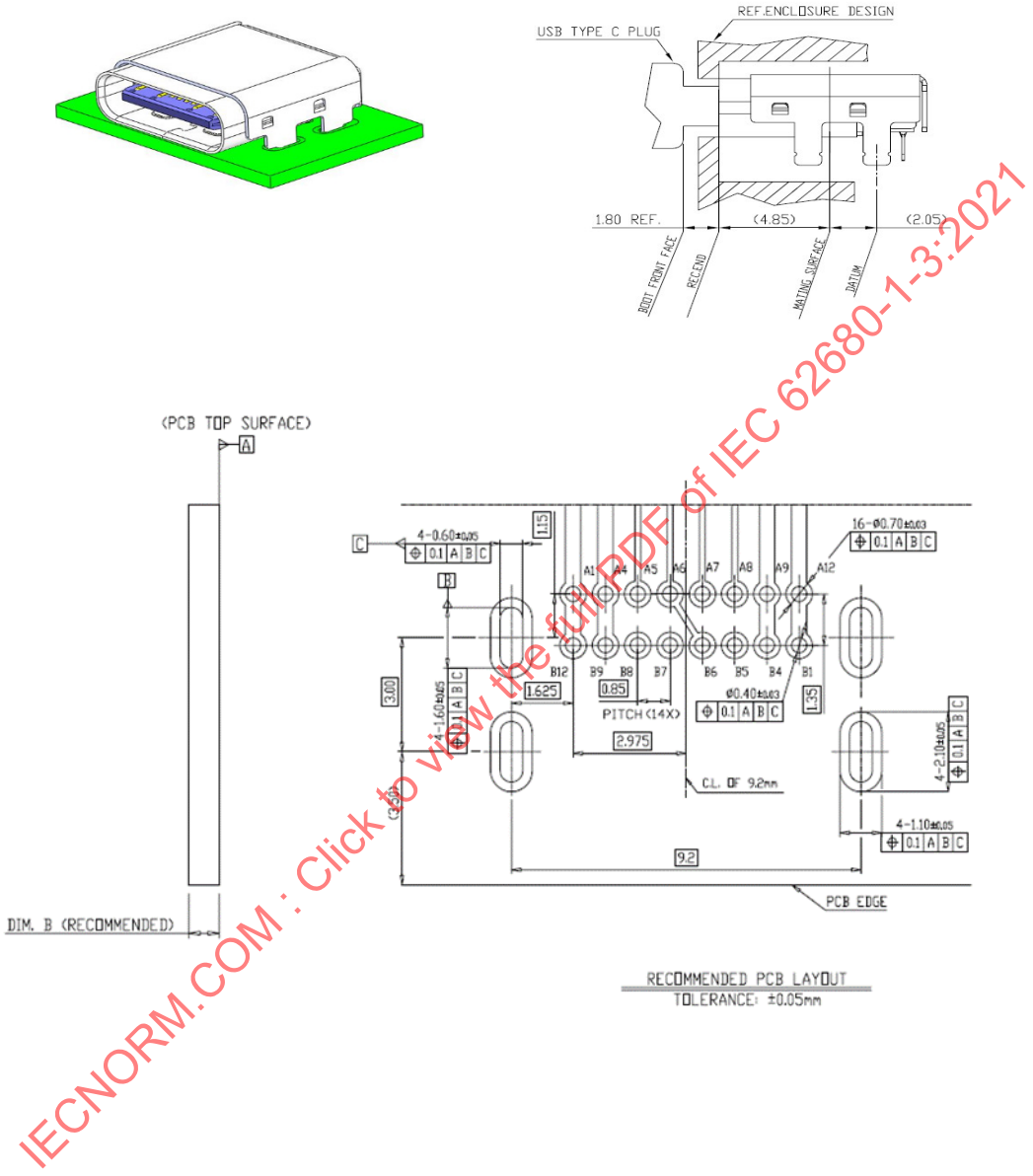
Figure 3-8 Reference Footprint for a USB Type-C Mid-Mount Hybrid Receptacle (Informative)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

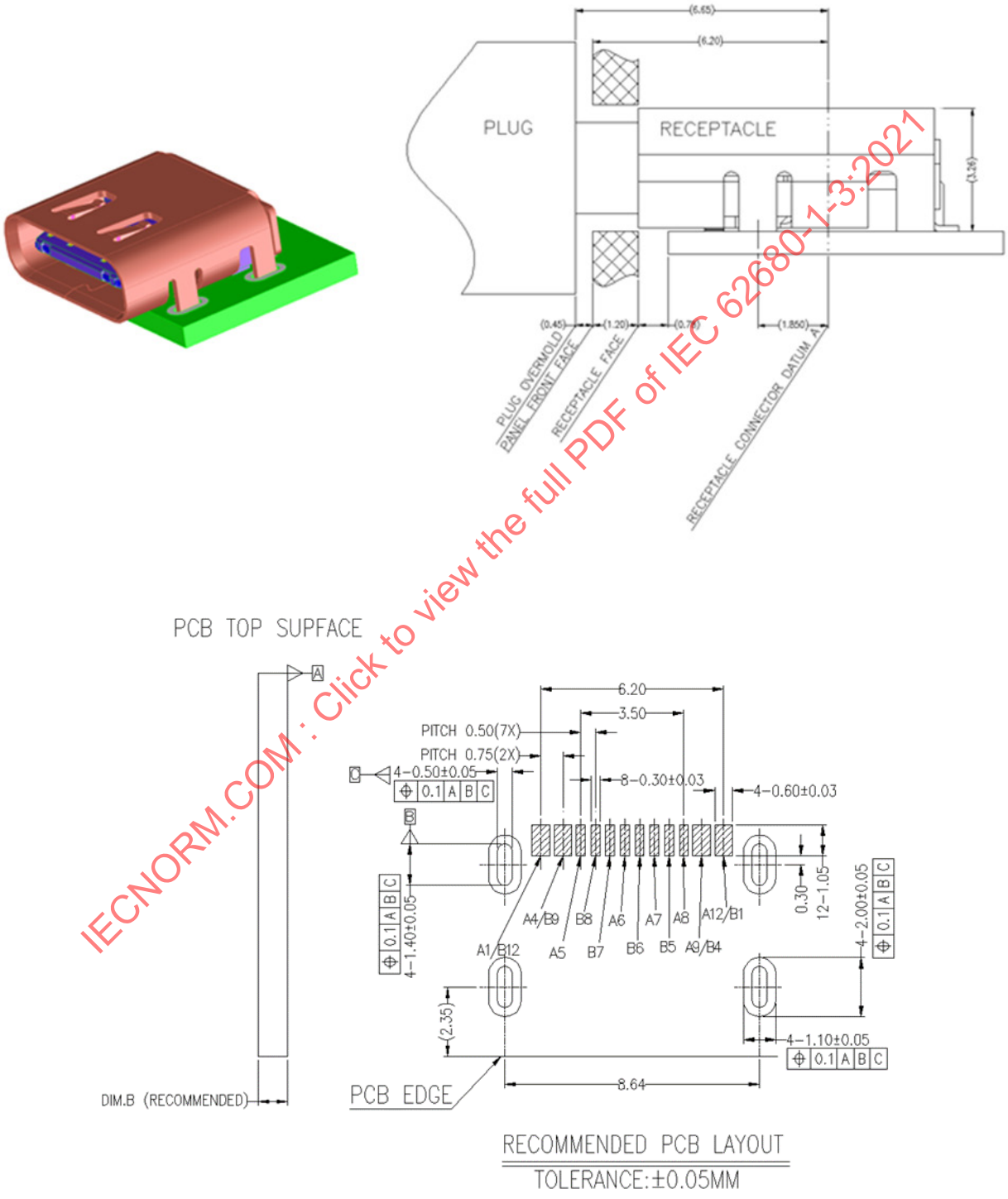
Figure 3-9 Reference Footprint for a USB 2.0 Type-C Through Hole Right Angle Receptacle (Informative)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-10 Reference Footprint for a USB 2.0 Type-C Single Row Right Angle Receptacle (Informative)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

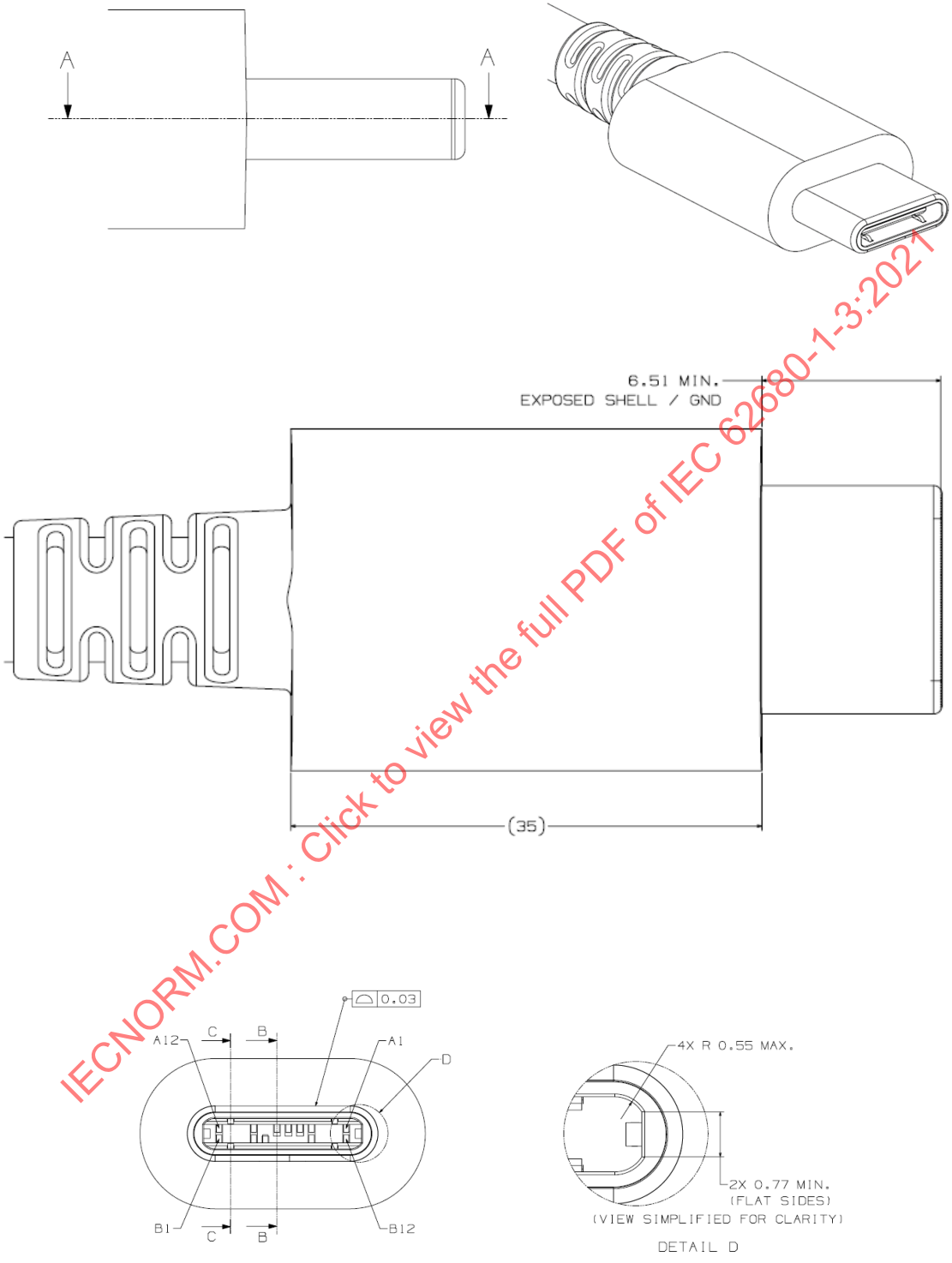
This specification requires that all contacts be present in the mating interface of the USB Full-Featured Type-C receptacle connector and all contacts except the *USB 3.2* or *USB4* signals (i.e., A2, A3, A10, A11, B2, B3, B10 and B11) be present in the mating interface of the *USB 2.0* Type-C receptacle connector, but allows the plug to include only the contacts required for *USB PD* and *USB 2.0* functionality for applications that only support *USB 2.0*. The *USB 2.0* Type-C plug is shown in Figure 3-11. The following design simplifications may be made when only *USB 2.0* is supported:

- Only the contacts necessary to support *USB PD* and *USB 2.0* are required in the plug. All other pin locations may be unpopulated. See Table 3-5. All contacts are required to be present in the mating interface of the USB Type-C receptacle connector.
- Unlike the USB Full-Featured Type-C plug, the internal EMC springs may be formed from the same strip as the signal, power, and ground contacts. The internal EMC springs contact the inner surface of the plug shell and mate with the receptacle EMC pads when the plug is seated in the receptacle. Alternately, the *USB 2.0* Type-C plug may use the same EMC spring configuration as defined for the USB Full-Featured Type-C plug. The *USB 2.0* Type-C plug four EMC spring locations are defined in Figure 3-11. The alternate configuration using the six spring locations is defined in Figure 3-1. Also refer to the reference designs in 3.2.2.3 for further clarification.
- A paddle card inside the plug may not be necessary if wires are directly attached to the contact pins.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

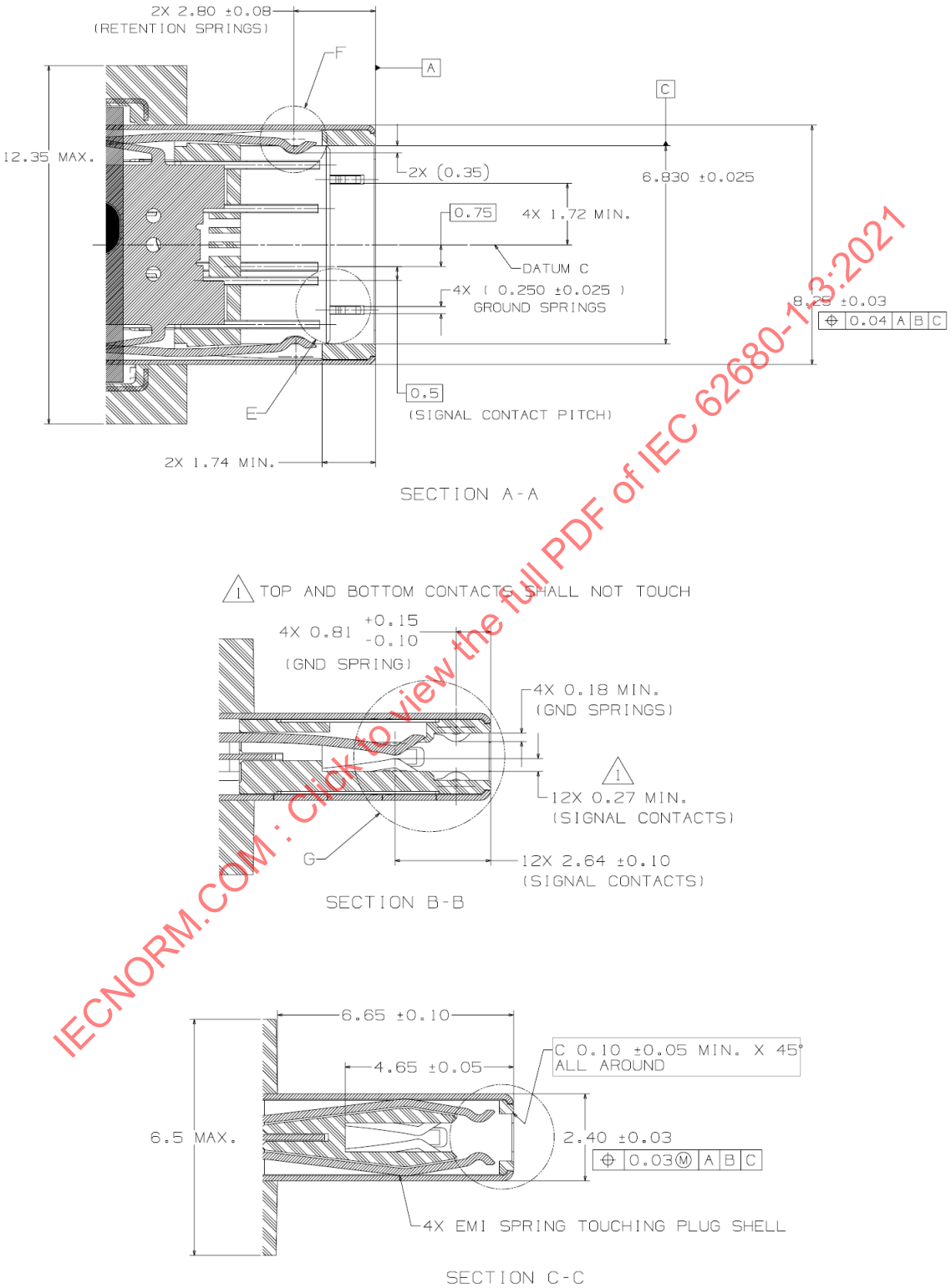
Figure 3-11 *USB 2.0* Type-C Plug Interface Dimensions



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

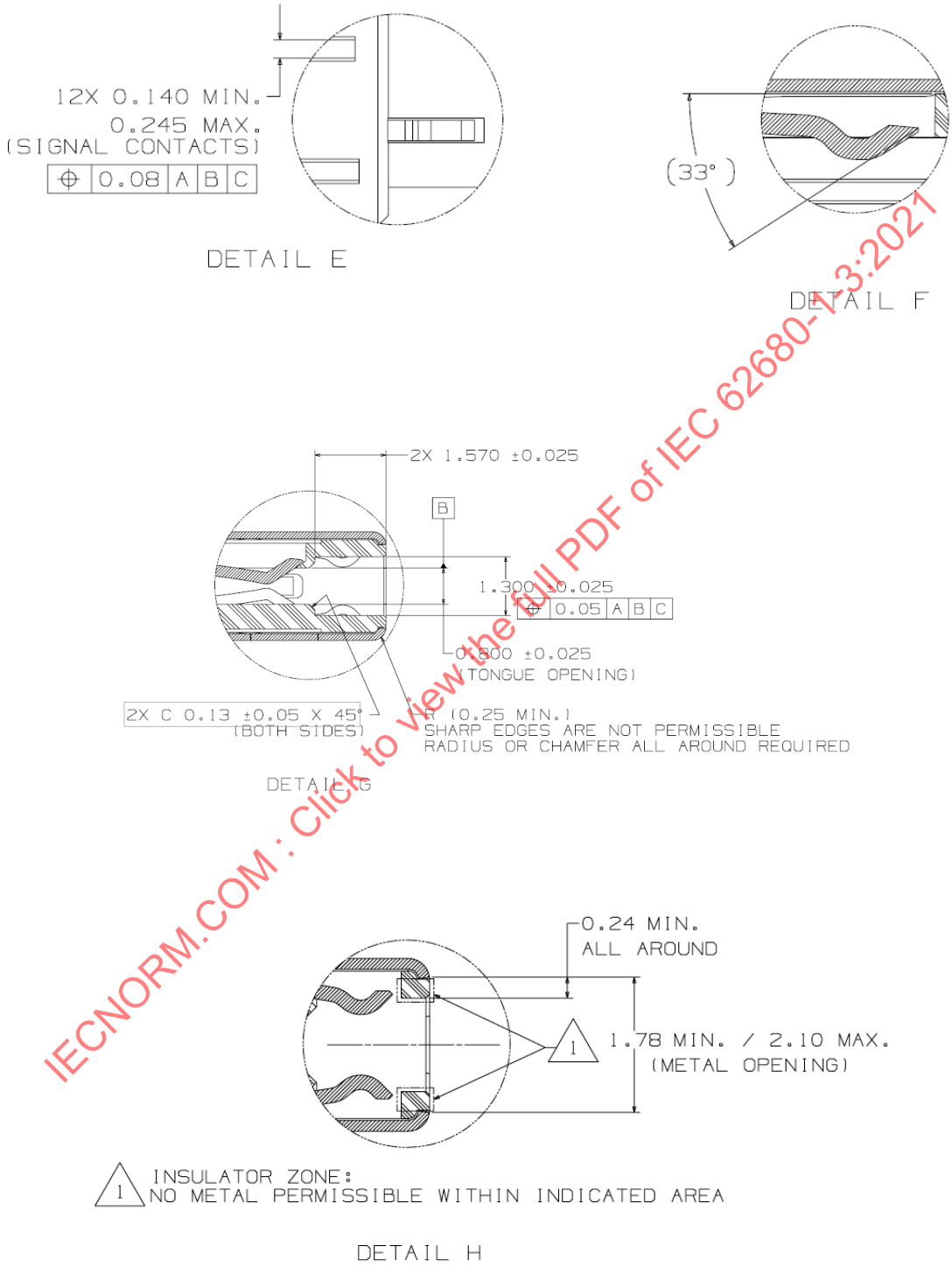
Figure 3-11 *USB 2.0* Type-C Plug Interface Dimensions, cont.



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

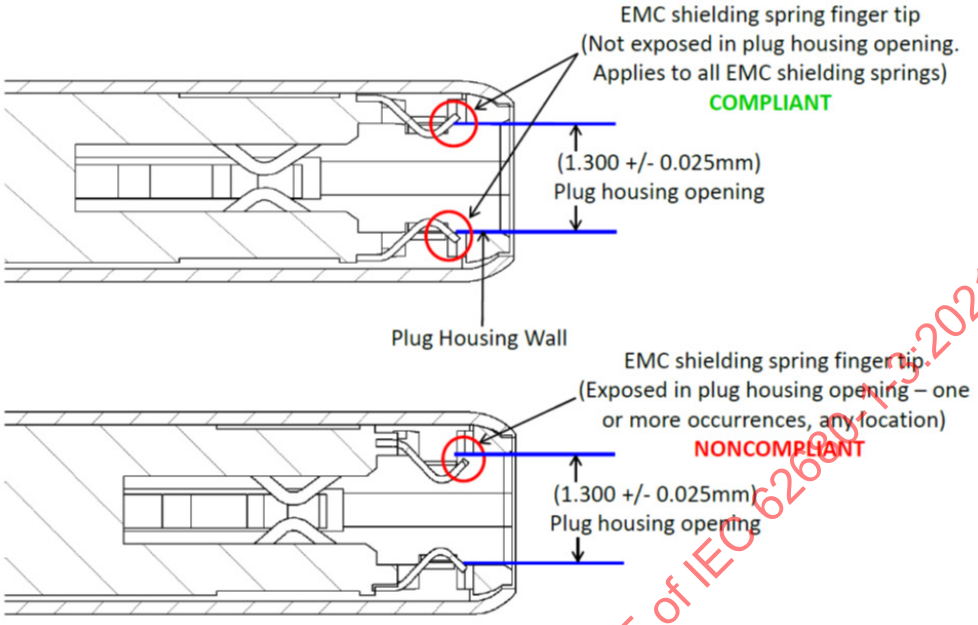
Figure 3-11 *USB 2.0* Type-C Plug Interface Dimensions, cont.



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-12 USB Type-C Plug EMC Shielding Spring Tip Requirements



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.2.2 Reference Designs

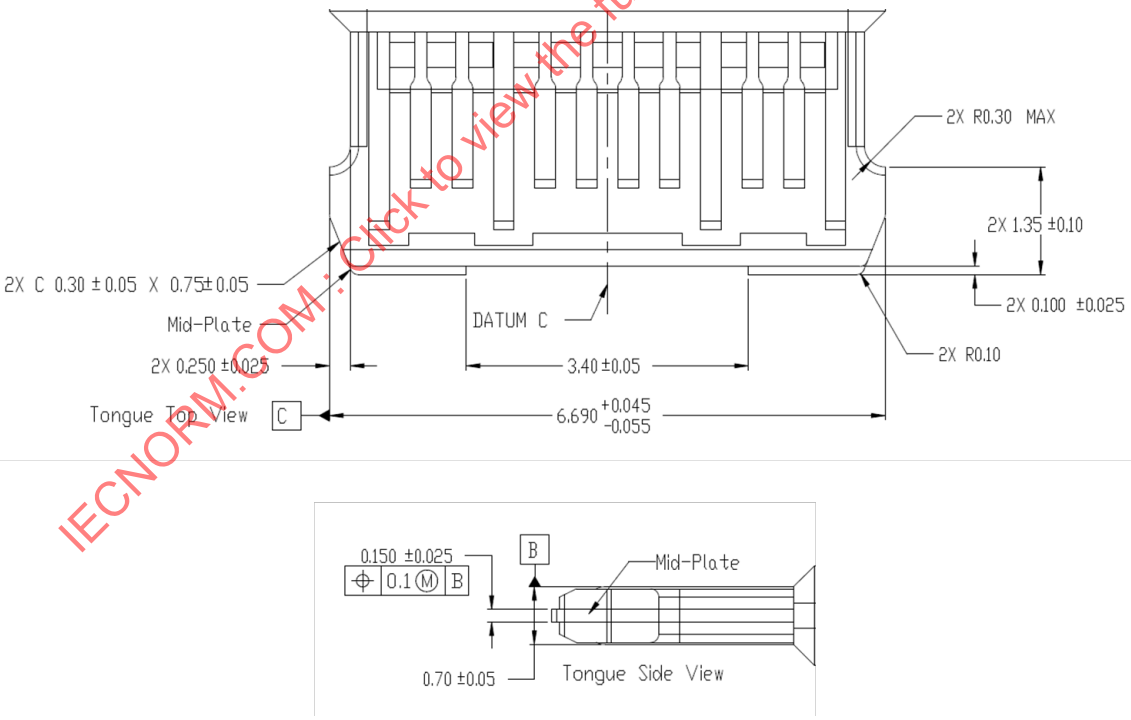
This section provides reference designs for a few key features of the USB Type-C connector. The reference designs are provided as acceptable design examples. They are not normative.

3.2.2.1 Receptacle Mid-Plate (Informative)

The signals between the top and bottom of the receptacle tongue are isolated by a mid-plate inside the tongue. Figure 3-13 shows a reference design of the mid-plate. It is important to pay attention to the following features of the middle plate:

- The distance between the signal contacts and the mid-plate should be accurately controlled since the variation of this distance may significantly impact impedance of the connector.
- The mid-plate in this particular design protrudes slightly beyond the front surface of the tongue. This is to protect the tongue front surface from damage caused by miss-insertion of small objects into the receptacle.
- The mid-plate is required to be directly connected to the PCB ground with at least two grounding points.
- The sides of the mid-plate mate with the plug side latches, making ground connections to reduce EMC. Proper surface finishes are necessary in the areas where the side latches and mid-plate connections occur.

Figure 3-13 Reference Design of Receptacle Mid-Plate



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.2.2.2 Side Latch (informative)

The side latches (retention latches) are located in the plug. Figure 3-14 shows a reference design of a blanked side latch. The plug side latches should contact the receptacle mid-plate to provide an additional ground return path.

Figure 3-14 Reference Design of the Retention Latch

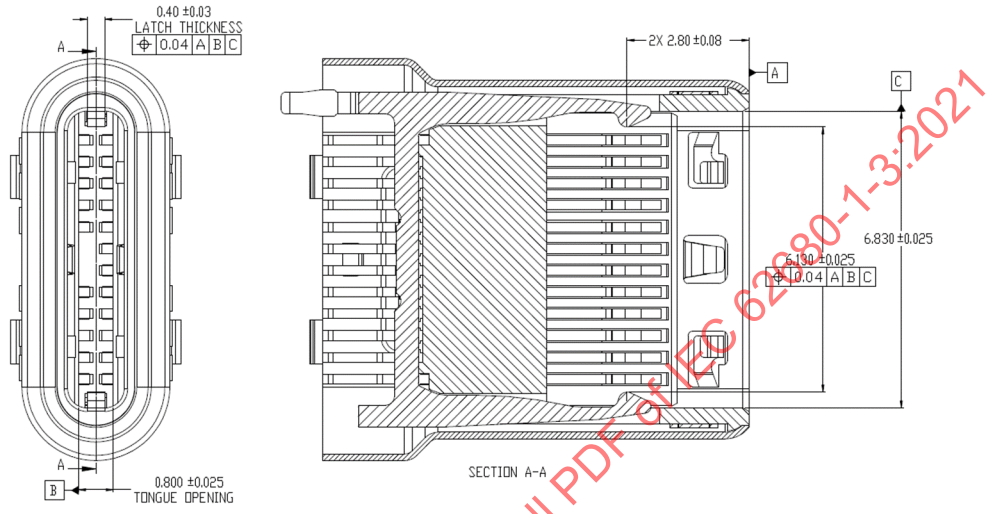
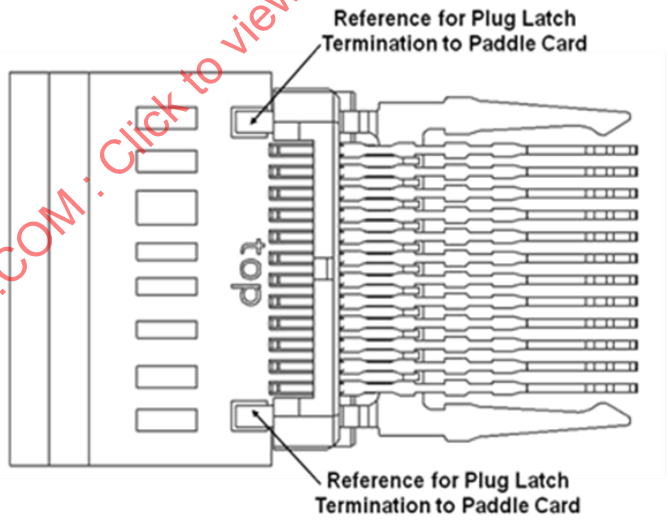


Figure 3-15 Illustration of the Latch Soldered to the Paddle Card Ground



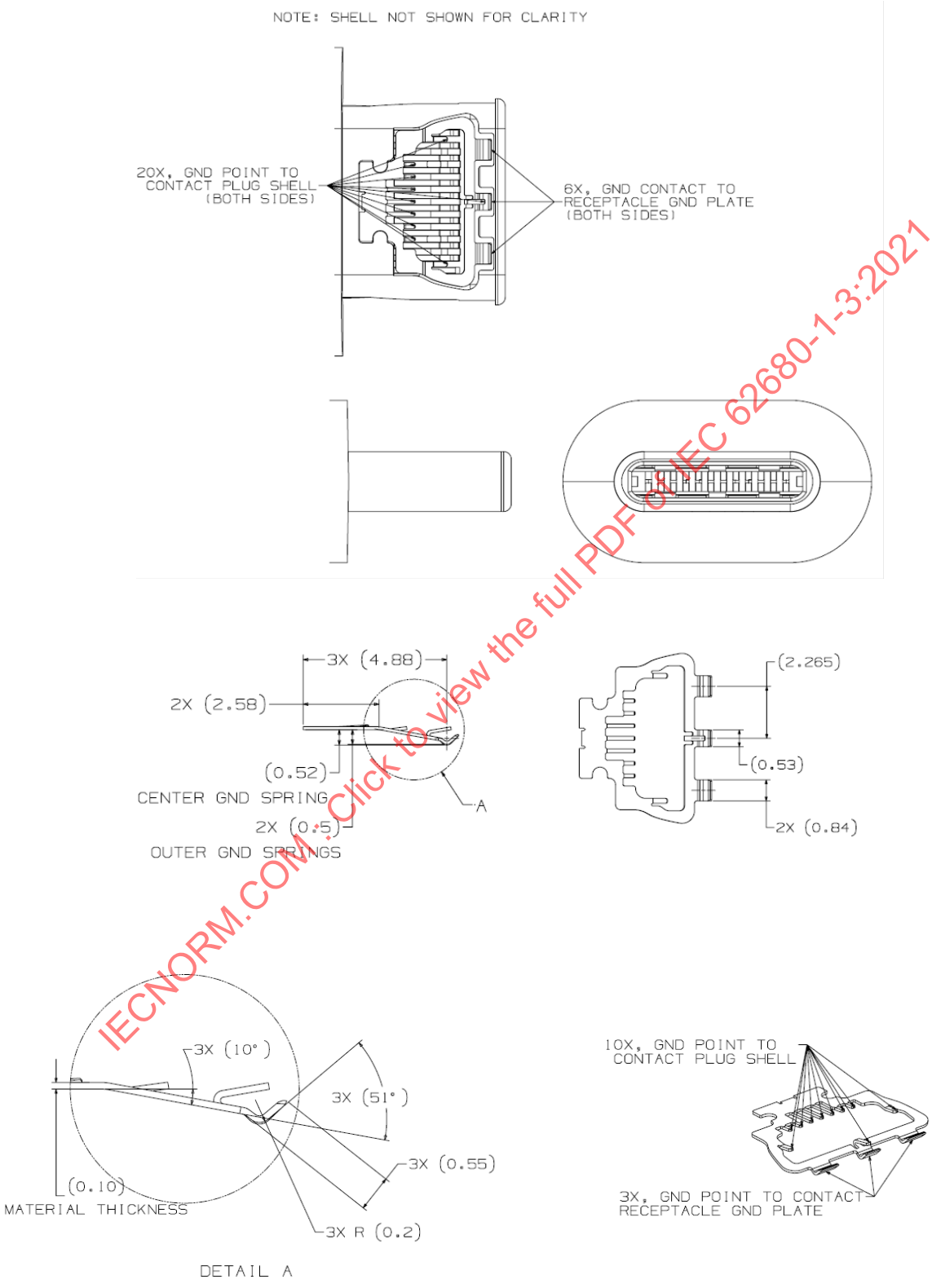
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.2.2.3 Internal EMC Springs and Pads (Informative)

Figure 3-16 is a reference design of the internal EMC spring located inside the USB Full-Featured Type-C plug. Figure 3-17 is a reference design of the internal EMC spring located inside the *USB 2.0* Type-C plug.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

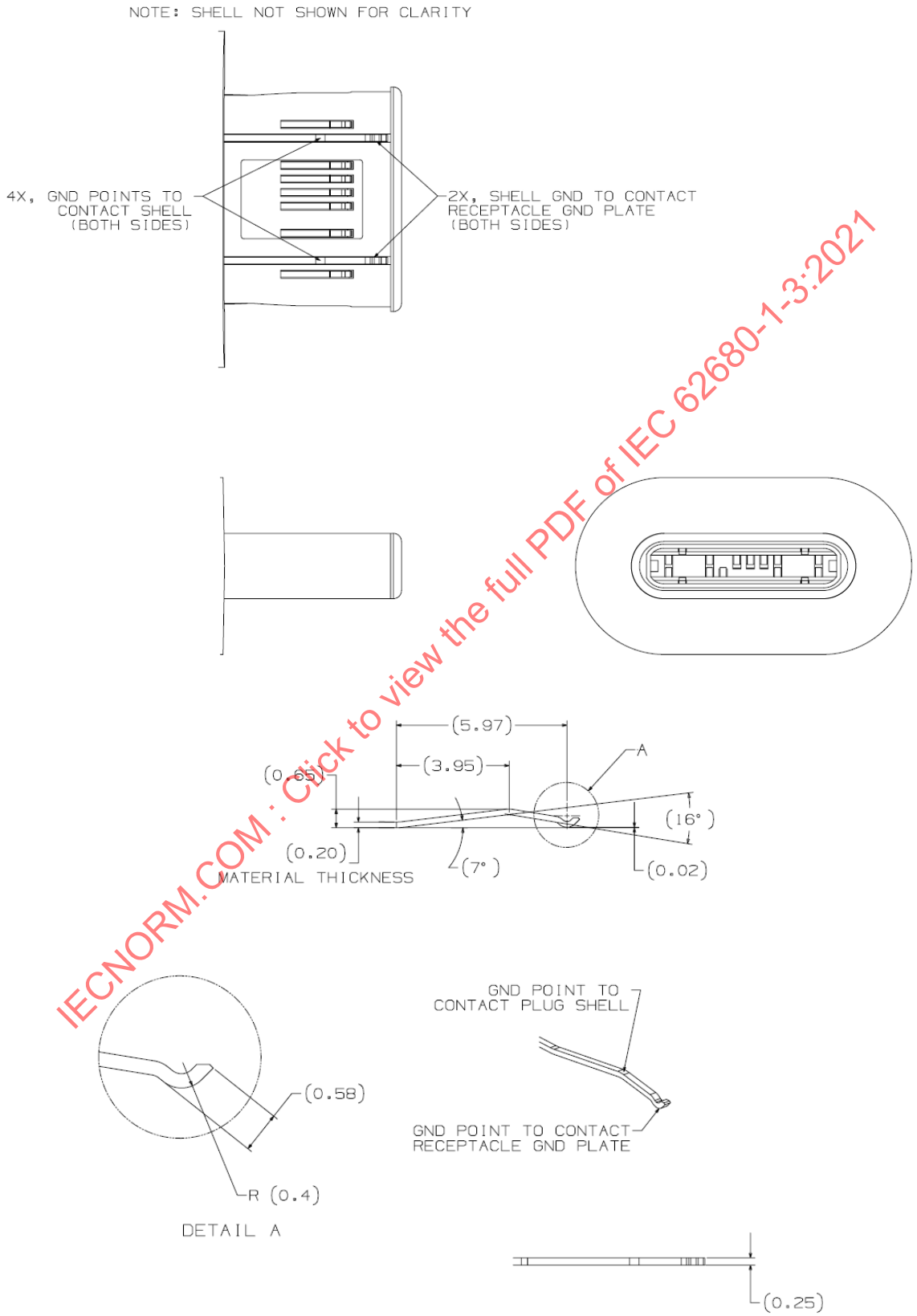
Figure 3-16 Reference Design of the USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Internal EMC Spring



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-17 Reference Design of the *USB 2.0* Type-C Plug Internal EMC Spring



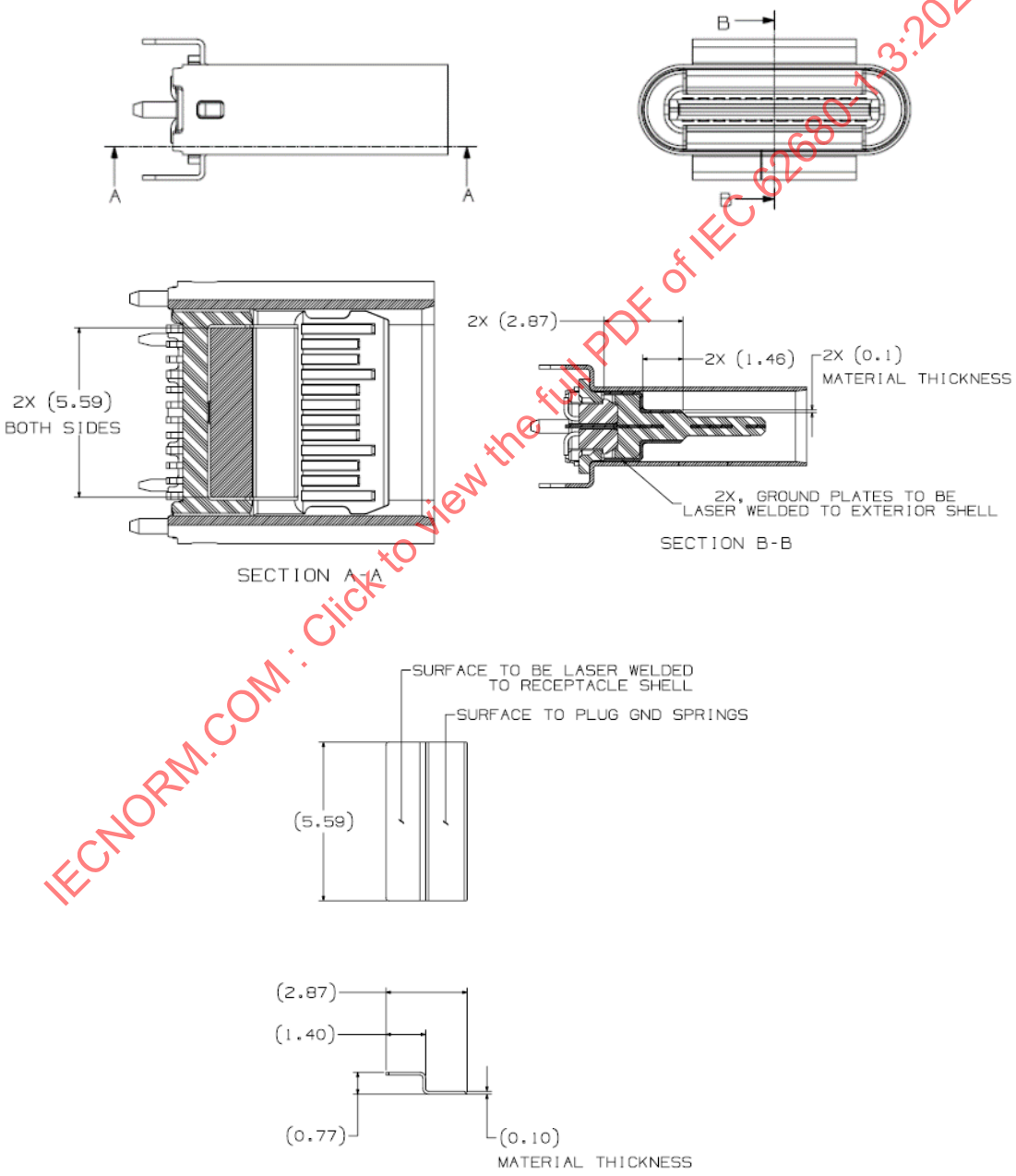
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

It is critical that the internal EMC spring contacts the plug shell as close to the EMC spring mating interface as possible to minimize the length of the return path.

The internal EMC pad (i.e., ground plate) shown in Figure 3-18 is inside the receptacle. It mates with the EMC spring in the plug. To provide an effective ground return, the EMC pads should have multiple connections with the receptacle shell.

Figure 3-18 Reference Design of Internal EMC Pad



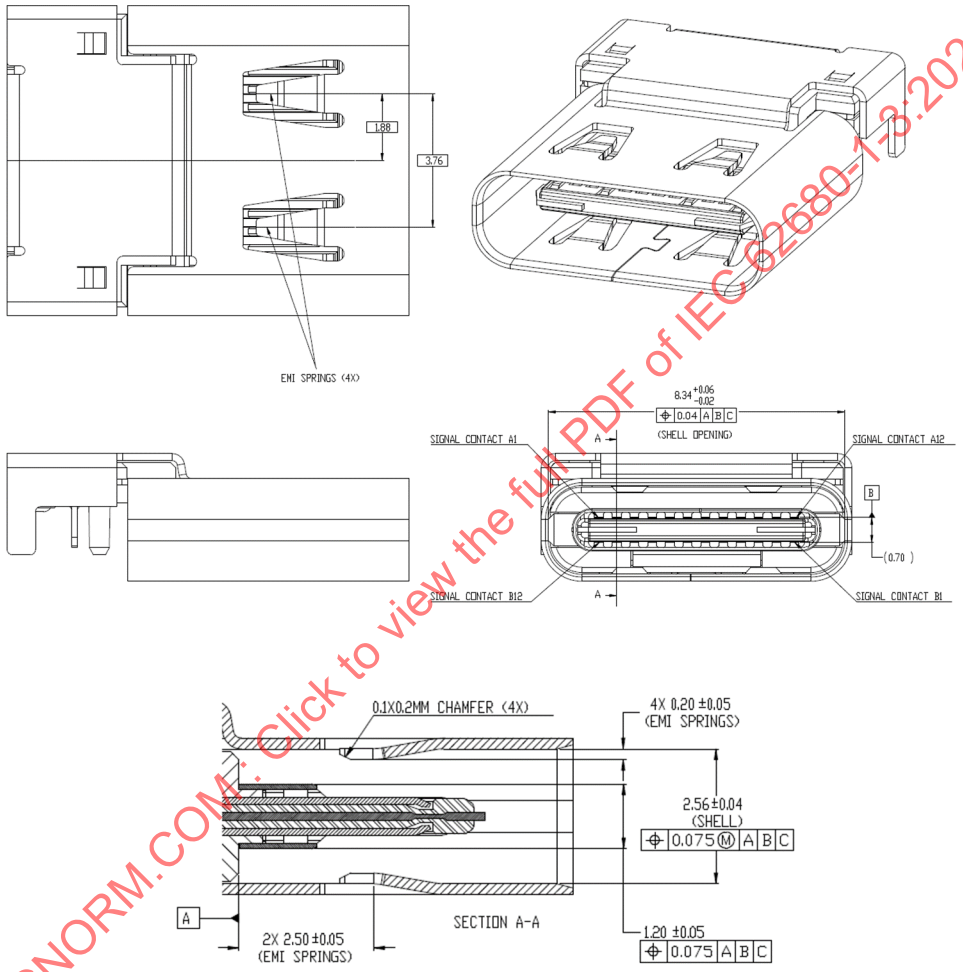
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.2.2.4 Optional External Receptacle EMC Springs (Informative)

Some applications may use receptacles with EMC springs that contact the outside of the plug shell. Figure 3-19 shows a reference receptacle design with external EMC springs. The EMC spring contact landing zones for the fully mated condition are normative and defined in Section 3.2.1.

Figure 3-19 Reference Design of a USB Type-C Receptacle with External EMC Springs



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

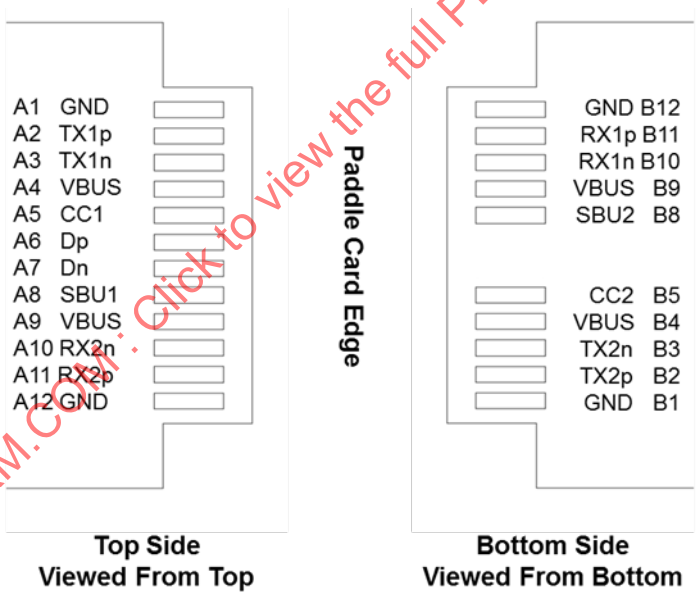
3.2.2.5 USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Paddle Card (Informative)

The use of a paddle card is expected in the USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug. Figure 3-20 illustrates the paddle card pin assignment and contact spring connection location for a USB Full-Featured Type-C plug. The following guidelines are provided for the paddle card design:

- The paddle card should use high performance substrate material. The recommended paddle card thickness should have a tolerance less than or equal to ± 10%.
- The SuperSpeed USB traces should be as short as possible and have a nominal differential characteristic impedance of 85 Ω.
- The wire attach should have two high speed differential pairs on one side and two other high speed differential pairs on the other side, separated as far as practically allowed.
- It is recommended that a grounded coplanar waveguide (CPWG) system be selected as a transmission line method.
- Use of vias should be minimized.
- VBUS pins should be bussed together on the paddle card.
- GND pins should be bussed together on the paddle card.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Figure 3-20 Reference Design for a USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug Paddle Card



Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.2.3 Pin Assignments and Descriptions

The usage and assignments of the 24 pins for the USB Type-C receptacle interface are defined in Table 3-4.

Table 3-4 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface Pin Assignments

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Mating Sequence	Pin	Signal Name	Description	Mating Sequence
A1	GND	Ground return	First	B12	GND	Ground return	First
A2	TXp1	Positive half of first TX differential pair	Second	B11	RXp1	Positive half of first RX differential pair	Second
A3	TXn1	Negative half of first TX differential pair	Second	B10	RXn1	Negative half of first RX differential pair	Second
A4	VBUS	Bus Power	First	B9	VBUS	Bus Power	First
A5	CC1	Configuration Channel	Second	B8	SBU2	Sideband Use (SBU)	Second
A6	Dp1	Positive half of the *USB 2.0* differential pair – Position 1	Second	B7	Dn2	Negative half of the *USB 2.0* differential pair – Position 2	Second
A7	Dn1	Negative half of the *USB 2.0* differential pair – Position 1	Second	B6	Dp2	Positive half of the *USB 2.0* differential pair – Position 2	Second
A8	SBU1	Sideband Use (SBU)	Second	B5	CC2	Configuration Channel	Second
A9	VBUS	Bus Power	First	B4	VBUS	Bus Power	First
A10	RXn2	Negative half of second RX differential pair	Second	B3	TXn2	Negative half of second TX differential pair	Second
A11	RXp2	Positive half of second RX differential pair	Second	B2	TXp2	Positive half of second TX differential pair	Second
A12	GND	Ground return	First	B1	GND	Ground return	First

Notes:

1. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug. The receptacle side shall support the *USB 2.0* differential pair present on Dp1/Dn1 or Dp2/Dn2. The plug orientation determines which pair is active. In one implementation, Dp1 and Dp2 may be shorted on the host/device as close to the receptacle as possible to minimize stub length; Dn1 and Dn2 may also be shorted. The maximum shorting trace length should not exceed 3.5 mm.
2. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug and shall be connected together at the USB Type-C receptacle connector when the receptacle is in its mounted condition (e.g., all VBUS pins bussed together on the PCB).
3. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug and shall be connected together at the USB Type-C receptacle connector when the receptacle is in its mounted condition (e.g., all ground return pins bussed together on the PCB).
4. If the contact dimensions shown in Figure 3-1 ALTERNATE SECTION A-A are used, then the VBUS contacts (A4, A9, B4 and B9) mate second, and signal contacts (A2, A3, A5, A6, A7, A8, A10, A11, B2, B3, B5, B6, B7, B8, B10 and B11) mate third.

The usage and assignments of the signals necessary for the support of only *USB 2.0* with the USB Type-C mating interface are defined in Table 3-5.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-5 USB Type-C Receptacle Interface Pin Assignments for USB 2.0-only Support

Pin	Signal Name	Description	Mating Sequence	Pin	Signal Name	Description	Mating Sequence
A1	GND	Ground return	First	B12	GND	Ground return	First
A2				B11			
A3				B10			
A4	VBUS	Bus Power	First	B9	VBUS	Bus Power	First
A5	CC1	Configuration Channel	Second	B8	SBU2	Sideband Use (SBU)	Second
A6	Dp1	Positive half of the *USB 2.0* differential pair – Position 1	Second	B7	Dn2	Negative half of the *USB 2.0* differential pair – Position 2	Second
A7	Dn1	Negative half of the *USB 2.0* differential pair – Position 1	Second	B6	Dp2	Positive half of the *USB 2.0* differential pair – Position 2	Second
A8	SBU1	Sideband Use (SBU)	Second	B5	CC2	Configuration Channel	Second
A9	VBUS	Bus Power	First	B4	VBUS	Bus Power	First
A10				B3			
A11				B2			
A12	GND	Ground return	First	B1	GND	Ground return	First

Notes:

1. Unused contact locations shall be electrically isolated from power, ground or signaling (i.e., not connected).
2. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug. The receptacle side shall support the *USB 2.0* differential pair present on Dp1/Dn1 or Dp2/Dn2. The plug orientation determines which pair is active. In one implementation, Dp1 and Dp2 may be shorted on the host/device as close to the receptacle as possible to minimize stub length; Dn1 and Dn2 may also be shorted. The maximum shorting trace length should not exceed 3.5 mm.
3. Contacts A8 and B8 (SBU1 and SBU2) shall be not connected unless required for a specified purpose (e.g., Audio Adapter Accessory Mode).
4. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug and shall be connected together at the USB Type-C receptacle connector when the receptacle is in its mounted condition (e.g., all VBUS pins bussed together on the PCB).
5. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug and shall be connected together at the USB Type-C receptacle connector when the receptacle is in its mounted condition (e.g., all ground return pins bussed together on the PCB).
6. If the contact dimensions shown in Figure 3-1 ALTERNATE SECTION A-A are used then the VBUS contacts (A4, A9, B4 and B9) mate second, and signal contacts (A5, A6, A7, A8, B5, B6, B7 and B8) mate third.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.3 Cable Construction and Wire Assignments

This section discusses the USB Type-C cables, including cable construction, wire assignments, and wire gauges.

3.3.1 Cable Construction (Informative)

Figure 3-21 illustrates an example of USB Full-Featured Type-C cable cross-section, using micro-coaxial wires for TX/RX pairs. There are four groups of wires: USB D+/D– (typically unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)), TX/RX signal pairs (coaxial wires, twin-axial or shielded twisted pairs), sideband signal wires, and power and ground wires. In this example, the optional VCONN wire is shown whereas in Figure 3-22 the example is shown with the VCONN wire removed – the inclusion of

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

VCONN or not relates to the implementation approach chosen for Electronically Marked Cables (See Section 4.9).

Figure 3-21 Illustration of a USB Full-Featured Type-C Cable Cross Section, a Coaxial Wire Example with VCONN

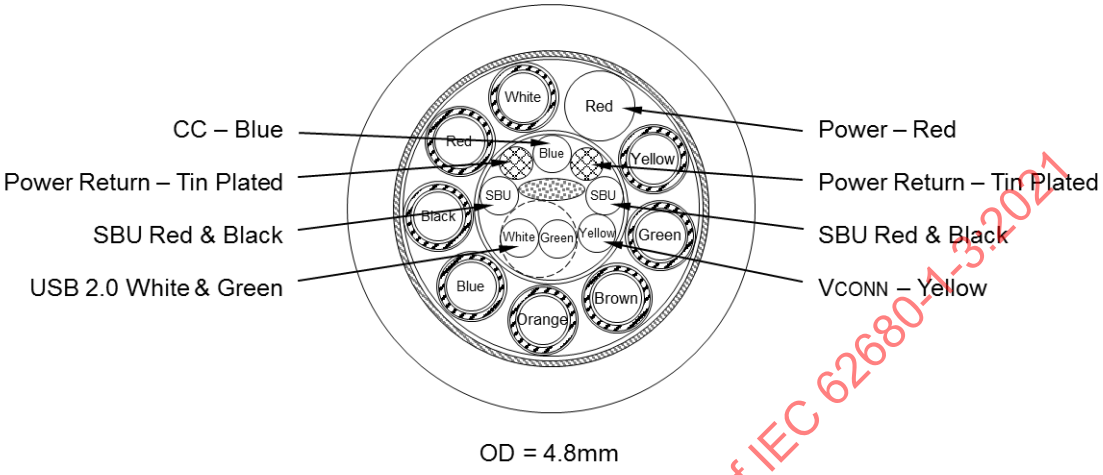
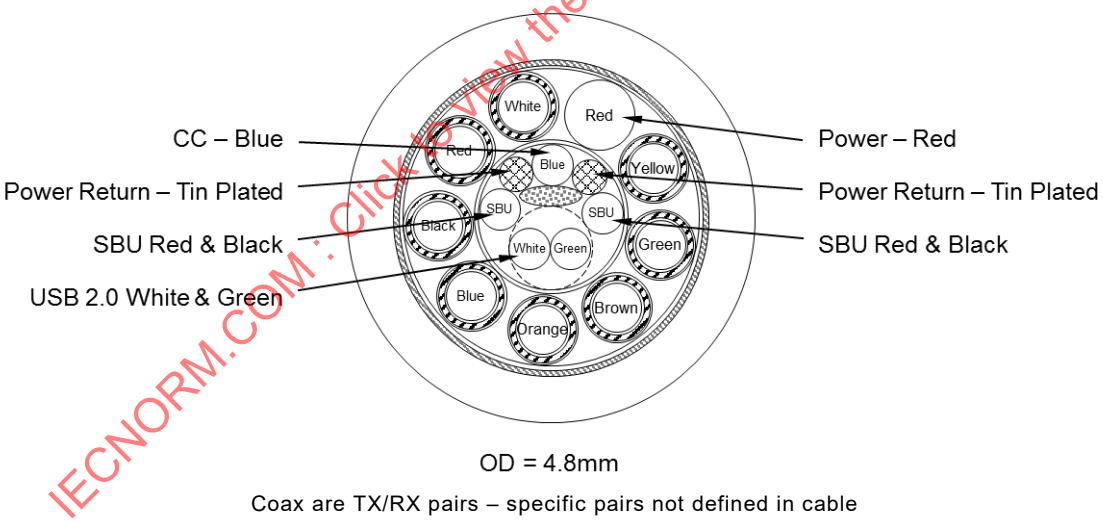


Figure 3-22 Illustration of a USB Full-Featured Type-C Cable Cross Section, a Coaxial Wire Example without VCONN



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

The USB D+/D− signal pair is intended to transmit the *USB 2.0* Low-Speed, Full-Speed and High-Speed signaling while the TX/RX signal pairs are used for either *USB 3.2* or *USB4* signaling. Shielding is needed for the TX/RX differential pairs for signal integrity and EMC performance.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.3.2 Wire Assignments

Table 3-6 defines the full set of possible wires needed to produce all standard USB Type-C cables assemblies. For some cable assemblies, not all of these wires are used. For example, a USB Type-C cable that only provides *USB 2.0* functionality will not include wires 6–15.

Table 3-6 USB Type-C Standard Cable Wire Assignments

Wire Number	Signal Name	Description
1	GND_PWRrt1	Ground for power return
2	PWR_VBUS1	VBUS power
3	CC	Configuration Channel
4	UTP_Dp	Unshielded twist pair, positive
5	UTP_Dn	Unshielded twist pair, negative
6	SDPp1	Shielded differential pair #1, positive
7	SDPn1	Shielded differential pair #1, negative
8	SDPp2	Shielded differential pair #2, positive
9	SDPn2	Shielded differential pair #2, negative
10	SDPp3	Shielded differential pair #3, positive
11	SDPn3	Shielded differential pair #3, negative
12	SDPp4	Shielded differential pair #4, positive
13	SDPn4	Shielded differential pair #4, negative
14	SBU_A	Sideband Use
15	SBU_B	Sideband Use
16	GND_PWRrt2	Ground for power return (optional)
17	PWR_VBUS2	VBUS power (optional)
18	PWR_VCONN	VCONN power (optional, see Section 4.9)
Braid	Shield	Cable external braid

Note:

1. This table is based on the assumption that coaxial wire construction is used for all SDP's and there are no drain wires. The signal ground return is through the shields of the coaxial wires. If shielded twisted or twin-axial pairs are used, then drain wires are needed.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-7 defines the full set of possible wires needed to produce USB Type-C to legacy cable assemblies. For some cable assemblies, not all of these wires are needed. For example, a USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-B cable will not include wires 5–10.

Table 3-7 USB Type-C Cable Wire Assignments for Legacy Cables/Adapters

Wire Number	Signal Name	Description
1	GND_PWRrt1	Ground for power return
2	PWR_VBUS1	VBUS power
3	UTP_Dp	Unshielded twist pair, positive
4	UTP_Dn	Unshielded twist pair, negative
5	SDPp1	Shielded differential pair #1, positive
6	SDPn1	Shielded differential pair #1, negative
7	SDP1_Drain	Drain wire for SDPp1 and SDPn1
8	SDPp2	Shielded differential pair #2, positive
9	SDPn2	Shielded differential pair #2, negative
10	SDP2_Drain	Drain wire for SDPp2 and SDPn2
Braid	Shield	Cable external braid

Note:

a. This table is based on the assumption that shielded twisted pair is used for all SDP's and there are drain wires. If coaxial wire construction is used, then no drain wires are needed and the signal ground return is through the shields of the coaxial wires.

3.3.3 Wire Gauges and Cable Diameters (Informative)

This specification does not specify wire gauge. Table 3-8 and Table 3-9 list typical wire gauges for reference purposes only. A large gauge wire incurs less loss, but at the cost of cable diameter and flexibility. Multiple wires may be used for a single wire such as for VBUS or Ground. It is recommended to use the smallest possible wire gauges that meet the cable assembly electrical and mechanical requirements.

To maximize cable flexibility, all wires should be stranded and the cable outer diameter should be minimized as much as possible. A typical USB Full-Featured Type-C cable outer diameter may range from 4 mm to 6 mm while a typical *USB 2.0* Type-C cable outer diameter may range from 2 mm to 4 mm. A typical USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* legacy cable outer diameter may range from 3 mm to 5 mm.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-8 Reference Wire Gauges for standard USB Type-C Cable Assemblies

Wire Number	Signal Name	Wire Gauge (AWG)
1	GND_PWRrt1	20-28
2	PWR_VBUS1	20-28
3	CC	32-34
4	UTP_Dp	28-34
5	UTP_Dn	28-34
6	SDPp1	26-34
7	SDPn1	26-34
8	SDPp2	26-34
9	SDPn2	26-34
10	SDPp3	26-34
11	SDPn3	26-34
12	SDPp4	26-34
13	SDPn4	26-34
14	SBU_A	32-34
15	SBU_B	32-34
16	GND_PWRrt2	20-28
17	PWR_VBUS2	20-28
18	PWR_VCONN	32-34

Table 3-9 Reference Wire Gauges for USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assemblies

Wire Number	Signal Name	Wire Gauge (AWG)
1	GND_PWRrt1	20-28
2	PWR_VBUS1	20-28
3	UTP_Dp	28-34
4	UTP_Dn	28-34
5	SDPp1	26-34
6	SDPn1	26-34
7	SDP1_Drain	28-34
8	SDPp2	26-34
9	SDPn2	26-34
10	SDP2_Drain	28-34

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.4 Standard USB Type-C Cable Assemblies

Two standard USB Type-C cable assemblies are defined and allowed by this specification. In addition, captive cables are allowed (see Section 3.4.3). Shielding (braid) is required to enclose all the wires in the USB Type-C cable. The shield shall be terminated to the plug metal shells. The shield should be physically connected to the plug metal shell as close to 360° as possible, to control EMC.

Note: Up until Release 1.4 of this specification, the TX and RX signals used in this specification were named SSTX and SSRX. With the introduction of USB4, these signals were renamed such that they generically can apply to both SuperSpeed USB and USB4 signaling. It is intended that the TX and RX signal names are synonymous with the original SSTX and SSRX names for implementations prior to Release 2.0 of this specification.

3.4.1 USB Full-Featured Type-C Cable Assembly

Figure 3-23 shows a USB Full-Featured Type-C standard cable assembly.

Figure 3-23 USB Full-Featured Type-C Standard Cable Assembly

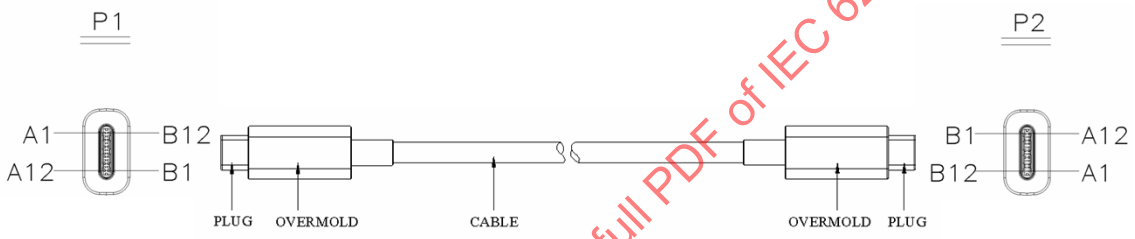


Table 3-10 defines the wire connections for the USB Full-Featured Type-C standard cable assembly.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-10 USB Full-Featured Type-C Standard Cable Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug #1		Wire		USB Type-C Plug #2	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Wire Number**	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1 [16]	GND_PWRrt1 [GND_PWRrt2]	A1, B1, A12, B12	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2 [17]	PWR_VBUS1 [PWR_VBUS2]	A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS
A5	CC	3	CC	A5	CC
B5	VCONN	18	PWR_VCONN (See Section 4.9)	B5	VCONN
A6	Dp1	4	UTP_Dp	A6	Dp1
A7	Dn1	5	UTP_Dn	A7	Dn1
A2	TXp1	6	SDPp1	B11	RXp1
A3	TXn1	7	SDPn1	B10	RXn1
B11	RXp1	8	SDPp2	A2	TXp1
B10	RXn1	9	SDPn2	A3	TXn1
B2	TXp2	10	SDPp3	A11	RXp2
B3	TXn2	11	SDPn3	A10	RXn2
A11	RXp2	12	SDPp4	B2	TXp2
A10	RXn2	13	SDPn4	B3	TXn2
A8	SBU1	14	SBU_A	B8	SBU2
B8	SBU2	15	SBU_B	A8	SBU1
Shell	Shield	Outer shield	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. This table is based on the assumption that coaxial wire construction is used for all SDP's and there are no drain wires. The shields of the coaxial wires are connected to the ground pins. If shielded twisted pair is used, then drain wires are needed and shall be connected to the GND pins.
2. Pin B5 (VCONN) of the USB Type-C plug shall be used in electronically marked versions of this cable. See Section 4.9.
3. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
4. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. A 10 nF bypass capacitor (minimum voltage rating of 30 V) is required for the VBUS pin in the full-featured cable at each end of the cable. The bypass capacitor should be placed as close as possible to the power supply pad.
5. All GND pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug
6. Shield and GND shall be connected within the USB Type-C plug on both ends of the cable assembly.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.4.2 USB 2.0 Type-C Cable Assembly

A *USB 2.0* Type-C standard cable assembly has the same form factor shown in Figure 3-23.

Table 3-11 defines the wire connections for the *USB 2.0* Type-C standard cable assembly.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-11 *USB 2.0* Type-C Standard Cable Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug #1		Wire		USB Type-C Plug #2	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Wire Number**	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	A1, B1, A12, B12	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS
A5	CC	3	CC	A5	CC
B5	VCONN	18	PWR_VCONN (See Section 4.9)	B5	VCONN
A6	Dp1	4	UTP_Dp	A6	Dp1
A7	Dn1	5	UTP_Dn	A7	Dn1
Shell	Shield	Outer shield	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. Pin B5 (VCONN) of the USB Type-C plug shall be used in electronically marked versions of this cable. See Section 4.9.
2. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
3. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. A bypass capacitor is not required for the VBUS pin in the *USB 2.0* Type-C cable.
4. All GND pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
5. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).
6. Shield and GND grounds shall be connected within the USB Type-C plug on both ends of the cable assembly.

3.4.3 USB Type-C Captive Cable Assemblies

A captive cable assembly is a cable assembly that is terminated on one end with a USB Type-C plug and has a vendor-specific connect means (hardwired or custom detachable) on the opposite end. The cable assembly that is hardwired is not detachable from the device.

The assembly wiring for captive USB Type-C cables follow the same wiring assignments as the standard cable assemblies (see Table 3-10 and Table 3-11) with the exception that the hardwired attachment on the device side substitutes for the USB Type-C Plug #2 end.

The CC wire in a captive cable shall be terminated and behave as appropriate to the function of the product to which it is captive (e.g. host or device).

This specification does not define how the hardwired attachment is physically done on the device side.

3.5 Legacy Cable Assemblies

To enable interoperability between USB Type-C-based products and legacy USB products, the following standard legacy cable assemblies are defined. Only the cables defined within this specification are allowed.

Legacy cable assemblies that source power to a USB Type-C connector (e.g. a USB Type-C to USB Standard-A plug cable assembly and a USB Type-C plug to USB Micro-B receptacle adapter assembly) are required to use the Default USB Type-C Current Rp resistor (56 kΩ). The value of Rp is used to inform the Sink how much current the Source can provide. Since the legacy cable assembly does not comprehend the capability of the Source it is connected to, it is only allowed to advertise Default USB Type-C Current as defined by the *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.1* and *USB BC 1.2* specifications. No other Rp values are permitted because these may cause a USB Type-C Sink to overload a legacy power supply.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.5.1 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Cable Assembly

Figure 3-24 shows a USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A cable assembly.

Figure 3-24 USB Type-C to USB 3.1 Standard-A Cable Assembly



Table 3-12 defines the wire connections for the USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A cable assembly.

Table 3-12 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Cable Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug		Wire		USB 3.1 Standard-A plug	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Wire Number**	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1 7, 10	GND_PWRrt1 SDP1_Drain, SDP2_Drain	4 7	GND GND_DRAIN
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	See Note 2			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D–
A2	TXp1	5	SDPp1	6	StdA_SSRX+
A3	TXn1	6	SDPn1	5	StdA_SSRX–
B11	RXp1	8	SDPp2	9	StdA_SSTX+
B10	RXn1	9	SDPn2	8	StdA_SSTX–
Shell	Shield	Outer shield	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. This table is based on the assumption that shielded twisted pair is used for all SDP's and there are drain wires. If coaxial wire construction is used, then no drain wires are present and the shields of the coaxial wires are connected to the ground pins.
2. Pin A5 (CC) of the USB Type-C plug shall be connected to VBUS through a resistor Rp (56 kΩ ± 5%). See Section 4.5.3.2.2 and Table 4-24 for the functional description and value of Rp.
3. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
4. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. A bypass capacitor is required between the VBUS and ground pins in the USB Type-C plug side of the cable. The bypass capacitor shall be 10nF ± 20% in cables which incorporate a USB Standard-A plug. The bypass capacitor shall be placed as close as possible to the power supply pad.
5. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
6. Shield and GND grounds shall be connected within the USB Type-C and *USB 3.1* Standard-A plugs on both ends of the cable assembly.
7. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.2 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-A Cable Assembly

Figure 3-25 shows a USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-A cable assembly.

Figure 3-25 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-A Cable Assembly

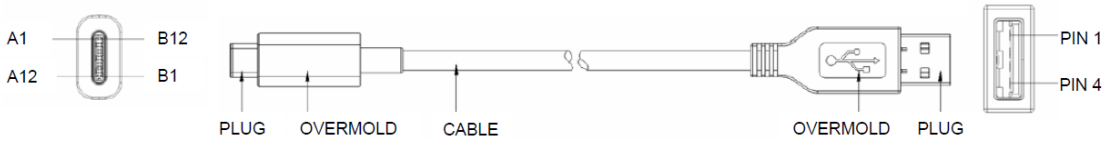


Table 3-13 defines the wire connections for the USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-A cable assembly.

Table 3-13 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-A Cable Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug		Wire		USB 2.0 Standard-A plug	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Wire Number**	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	4	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	See Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D–
Shell	Shield	Outer shield	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. Pin A5 (CC) of the USB Type-C plug shall be connected to VBUS through a resistor Rp (56 kΩ ± 5%). See Section 4.5.3.2.2 and Table 4-24 for the functional description and value of Rp.
2. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
3. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. Bypass capacitors are not required for the VBUS pins in this cable.
4. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
5. Shield and GND grounds shall be connected within the USB Type-C and *USB 2.0* Standard-A plugs on both ends of the cable assembly.
6. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.3 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-B Cable Assembly

Figure 3-26 shows a USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-B cable assembly.

Figure 3-26 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-B Cable Assembly

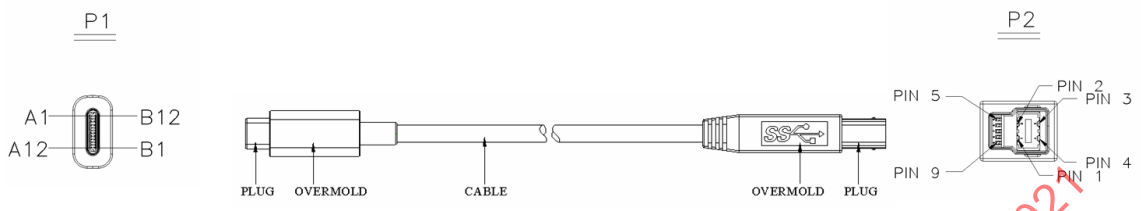


Table 3-14 defines the wire connections for the USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-B cable assembly.

Table 3-14 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-B Cable Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug		Wire		USB 3.1 Standard-B plug	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Wire Number**	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1 7, 10	GND_PWRrt1 SDP1_Drain, SDP2_Drain	4 7	GND GND_DRAIN
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	See Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D–
A2	TXp1	5	SDPp1	9	StdB_SSRX+
A3	TXn1	6	SDPn1	8	StdB_SSRX–
B11	RXp1	8	SDPp2	6	StdB_SSTX+
B10	RXn1	9	SDPn2	5	StdB_SSTX–
Shell	Shield	Outer Shield	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. Pin A5 (CC) of the USB Type-C plug shall be connected to GND through a resistor Rd (5.1 kΩ ± 20%). See Section 4.5.3.2.1 and Table 4-25 for the functional description and value of Rd.
2. This table is based on the assumption that shielded twisted pair is used for all SDP's and there are drain wires. If coaxial wire construction is used, then no drain wires are present and the shields of the coaxial wires are connected to the ground pins.
3. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
4. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. A bypass capacitor is required between the VBUS and ground pins in the USB Type-C plug side of the cable. The bypass capacitor shall be 10nF ± 20% in cables which incorporate a USB Standard-B plug. The bypass capacitor shall be placed as close as possible to the power supply pad.
5. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
6. Shield and GND grounds shall be connected within the USB Type-C and *USB 3.1* Standard-B plugs on both ends of the cable assembly.
7. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.4 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-B Cable Assembly

Figure 3-27 shows a USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-B cable assembly.

Figure 3-27 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-B Cable Assembly

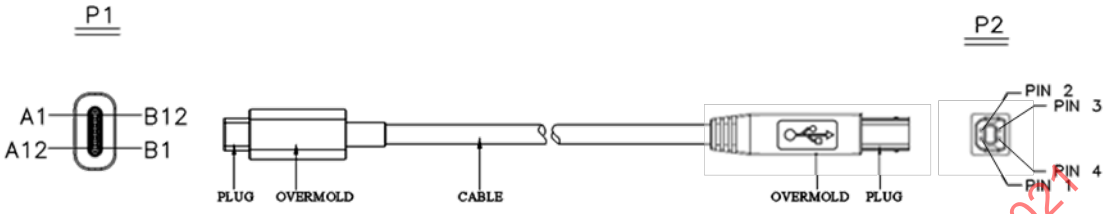


Table 3-15 defines the wire connections for the USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-B cable assembly.

Table 3-15 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-B Cable Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug		Wire		USB 2.0 Standard-B plug	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Wire Number**	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	4	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	See Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D–
Shell	Shield	Outer shield	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. Pin A5 (CC) of the USB Type-C plug shall be connected to GND through a resistor Rd (5.1 kΩ ± 20%). See Section 4.5.3.2.1 and Table 4-25 for the functional description and value of Rd.
2. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
3. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. Bypass capacitors are not required for the VBUS pins in this cable.
4. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
5. Shield and GND grounds shall be connected within the USB Type-C and *USB 2.0* Standard-B plugs on both ends of the cable assembly.
6. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.5 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Mini-B Cable Assembly

Figure 3-28 shows a USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Mini-B cable assembly.

Figure 3-28 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Mini-B Cable Assembly

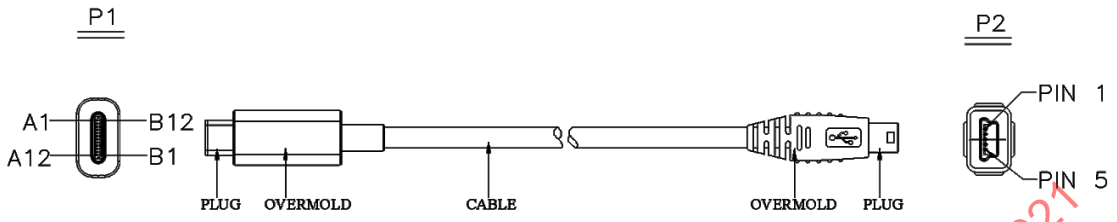


Table 3-16 defines the wire connections for the USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Mini-B cable assembly.

Table 3-16 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Mini-B Cable Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug		Wire		USB 2.0 Mini-B plug	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Wire Number**	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	5	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	See Note 1			
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D−
				4	ID
Shell	Shield	Outer shield	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. Pin A5 of the USB Type-C plug shall be connected to GND through a resistor Rd (5.1 kΩ ± 20%). See Section 4.5.3.2.1 and Table 4-25 for the functional description and value of Rd.
2. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
3. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. Bypass capacitors are not required for the VBUS pins in this cable.
4. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
5. Pin 4 (ID) of the *USB 2.0* Mini-B plug shall be terminated as defined in the applicable specification for the cable type.
6. Shield and GND grounds shall be connected within the USB Type-C and *USB 2.0* Mini-B plugs on both ends of the cable assembly.
7. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.6 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Micro-B Cable Assembly

Figure 3-29 shows a USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Micro-B cable assembly.

Figure 3-29 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Micro-B Cable Assembly

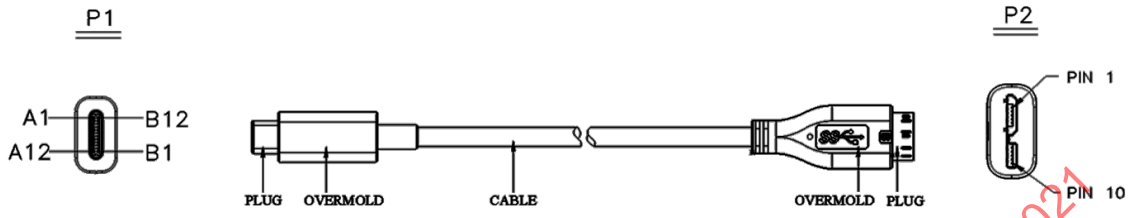


Table 3-17 defines the wire connections for the USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Micro-B cable assembly.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-17 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Micro-B Cable Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug		Wire		USB 3.1 Micro-B plug	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Wire Number**	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1 7, 10	GND_PWRrt1 SDP1_Drain, SDP2_Drain	5 8	GND GND_DRAIN
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	See Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D–
A2	TXp1	5	SDPp1	10	MicB_SSRX+
A3	TXn1	6	SDPn1	9	MicB_SSRX–
B11	RXp1	8	SDPp2	7	MicB_SSTX+
B10	RXn1	9	SDPn2	6	MicB_SSTX–
				4	ID
Shell	Shield	Outer shield	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. Pin A5 (CC) of the USB Type-C plug shall be connected to GND through a resistor Rd (5.1 kΩ ± 20%). See Section 4.5.3.2.1 and Table 4-25 for the functional description and value of Rd.
2. This table is based on the assumption that shielded twisted pair is used for all SDP's and there are drain wires. If coaxial wire construction is used, then no drain wires are present and the shields of the coaxial wires are connected to the ground pins.
3. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
4. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. A bypass capacitor is required between the VBUS and ground pins in the USB Type-C plug side of the cable. The bypass capacitor shall be 10nF ± 20% in cables which incorporate a USB Micro-B plug. The bypass capacitor should be placed as close as possible to the power supply pad.
5. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
6. Pin 4 (ID) of the *USB 3.1* Micro-B plug shall be terminated as defined in the applicable specification for the cable type.
7. Shield and GND grounds shall be connected within the USB Type-C and *USB 3.1* Micro-B plugs on both ends of the cable assembly.
8. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.7 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Cable Assembly

Figure 3-30 shows a USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B cable assembly.

Figure 3-30 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Cable Assembly

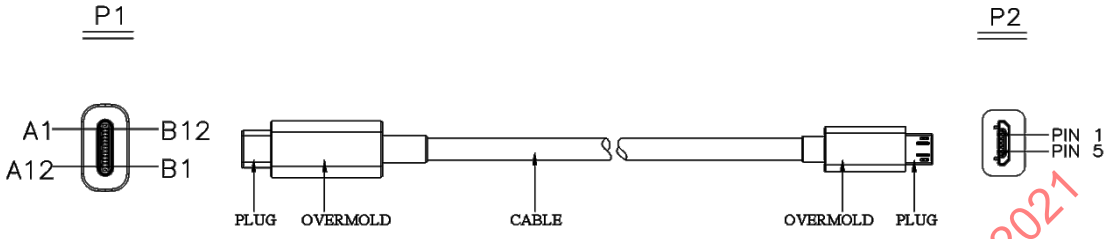


Table 3-18 defines the wire connections for the USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B cable assembly.

Table 3-18 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Cable Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug		Wire		USB 2.0 Micro-B plug	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Wire Number**	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	5	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	See Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D−
				4	ID
Shell	Shield	Outer shield	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. Pin A5 (CC) of the USB Type-C plug shall be connected to GND through a resistor Rd (5.1 kΩ ± 20%). See Section 4.5.3.2.1 and Table 4-25 for the functional description and value of Rd.
2. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
3. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. Bypass capacitors are not required for the VBUS pins in this cable.
4. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
5. Pin 4 (ID) of the *USB 2.0* Micro-B plug shall be terminated as defined in the applicable specification for the cable type.
6. Shield and GND grounds shall be connected within the USB Type-C and *USB 2.0* Micro-B plugs on both ends of the cable assembly.
7. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.6 Legacy Adapter Assemblies

To enable interoperability between USB Type-C-based products and legacy USB products, the following standard legacy adapter assemblies are defined. Only the adapter assemblies defined in this specification are allowed.

3.6.1 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly

Figure 3-31 shows a USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A receptacle adapter assembly. This cable assembly is defined for direct connect to a USB device (e.g., a thumb drive). System functionality of using this adaptor assembly together with another USB cable assembly is not guaranteed.

Figure 3-31 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly

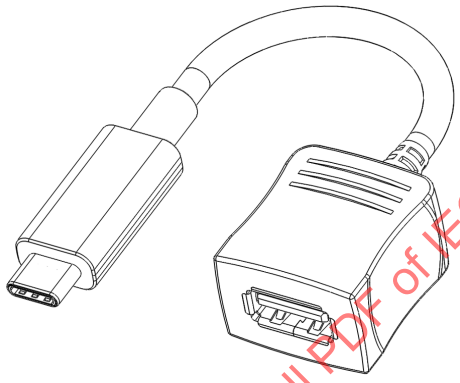


Table 3-19 defines the wire connections for the USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A receptacle adapter assembly.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-19 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug		USB 3.1 Standard-A receptacle	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	4 7	GND GND_DRAIN
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	1	VBUS
A5	CC	See Note 1	
B5	VCONN		
A6	Dp1	3	D+
A7	Dn1	2	D−
A2	TXp1	9	StdA_SSTX+
A3	TXn1	8	StdA_SSTX−
B11	RXp1	6	StdA_SSRX+
B10	RXn1	5	StdA_SSRX−
Shell	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. Pin A5 (CC) of the USB Type-C plug shall be connected to GND through a resistor Rd (5.1 kΩ ± 20%). See Section 4.5.3.2.1 and Table 4-25 for the functional description and value of Rd.
2. This table is based on the assumption that shielded twisted pair is used for all SDP's and there are drain wires. If coaxial wire construction is used, then no drain wires are present and the shields of the coaxial wires are connected to the ground pins.
3. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
4. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. A 10 nF bypass capacitor is required for the VBUS pin in the USB Type-C plug end of the cable. The bypass capacitor should be placed as close as possible to the power supply pad. A bypass capacitor is not required for the VBUS pin in the Standard-A receptacle.
5. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
6. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.6.2 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Receptacle Adapter Assembly

Figure 3-31 shows a USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B receptacle adapter assembly.

Figure 3-32 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Receptacle Adapter Assembly

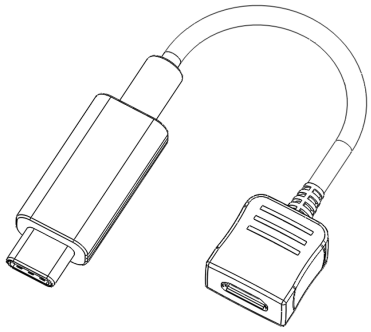


Table 3-19 defines the wire connections for the USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B receptacle adapter assembly.

Table 3-20 USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Receptacle Adapter Assembly Wiring

USB Type-C Plug		USB 2.0 Micro-B receptacle	
Pin	**Signal Name**	**Pin**	**Signal Name**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	5	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	1	VBUS
A5	CC	See Note 1	
A6	Dp1	3	D+
A7	Dn1	2	D–
		4	ID
Shell	Shield	Shell	Shield

Notes:

1. Pin A5 (CC) of the USB Type-C plug shall be connected to VBUS through a resistor Rp (56 kΩ ± 5%). See Section 4.5.3.2.2 and Table 4-24 for the functional description and value of Rp.
2. Contacts B6 and B7 should not be present in the USB Type-C plug.
3. All VBUS pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug. Bypass capacitors are not required for the VBUS pins at the Micro-B receptacle end of this cable.
4. All Ground return pins shall be connected together within the USB Type-C plug.
5. All USB Type-C plug pins that are not listed in this table shall be open (not connected).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7 Electrical Characteristics

This section defines the USB Type-C raw cable, connector, and cable assembly electrical requirements, including signal integrity, shielding effectiveness, and DC requirements. Chapter 4 defines additional requirements regarding functional signal definition, host/device discovery and configuration, and power delivery.

Unless otherwise specified, all measurements are made at a temperature of 15° to 35° C, a relative humidity of 25% to 85%, and an atmospheric pressure of 86 to 106 kPa and all S-parameters are normalized with an 85 Ω differential impedance.

3.7.1 Raw Cable (Informative)

Informative raw cable electrical performance targets are provided to help cable assembly manufacturers manage the procurement of raw cable. These targets are not part of the USB Type-C compliance requirements. The normative requirement is that the cable assembly meets the performance characteristics specified in Sections 3.7.2 and 3.7.5.3.

The differential characteristic impedance for shielded differential pairs is recommended to be 90 Ω ± 5 Ω. The single-ended characteristic impedance of coaxial wires is recommended to be 45 Ω ± 3 Ω. The impedance should be evaluated using a 200 ps (10%-90%) rise time; a faster rise time is not necessary for raw cable since it will make cable test fixture discontinuities more prominent.

3.7.1.1 Intra-Pair Skew (Informative)

The intra-pair skew for a differential pair is recommended to be less than 10 ps/m. It should be measured with a Time Domain Transmission (TDT) in a differential mode using a 200 ps (10%-90%) rise time with a crossing at 50% of the input voltage.

3.7.1.2 Differential Insertion Loss (Informative)

Cable loss depends on wire gauges, plating and dielectric materials. Table 3-21 and Table 3-22 show examples of differential insertion losses.

Table 3-21 Differential Insertion Loss Examples for TX/RX with Twisted Pair Construction

Frequency	34AWG	32AWG	30AWG	28AWG
0.625 GHz	−1.8 dB/m	−1.4 dB/m	−1.2 dB/m	−1.0 dB/m
1.25 GHz	−2.5 dB/m	−2.0 dB/m	−1.7 dB/m	−1.4 dB/m
2.50 GHz	−3.7 dB/m	−2.9 dB/m	−2.5 dB/m	−2.1 dB/m
5.00 GHz	−5.5 dB/m	−4.5 dB/m	−3.9 dB/m	−3.1 dB/m
7.50 GHz	−7.0 dB/m	−5.9 dB/m	−5.0 dB/m	−4.1 dB/m
10.00 GHz	−8.4 dB/m	−7.2 dB/m	−6.1 dB/m	−4.8 dB/m
12.50 GHz	−9.5 dB/m	−8.2 dB/m	−7.3 dB/m	−5.5 dB/m
15.00 GHz	−11.0 dB/m	−9.5 dB/m	−8.7 dB/m	−6.5 dB/m

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-22 Differential Insertion Loss Examples for USB TX/RX with Coaxial Construction

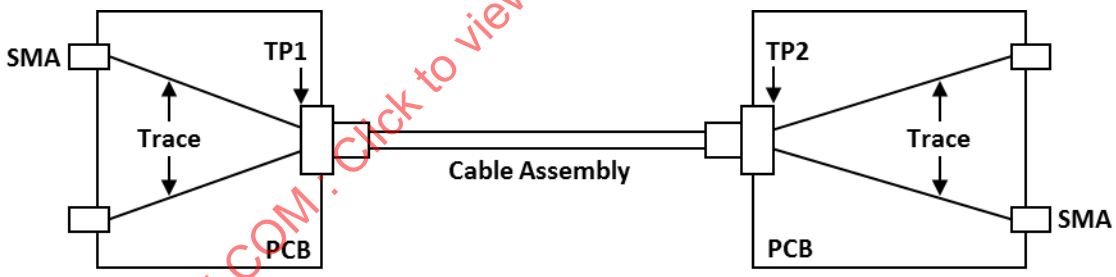
Frequency	34AWG	32AWG	30AWG	28AWG
0.625 GHz	−1.8 dB/m	−1.5 dB/m	−1.2 dB/m	−1.0 dB/m
1.25 GHz	−2.8 dB/m	−2.2 dB/m	−1.8 dB/m	−1.3 dB/m
2.50 GHz	−4.2 dB/m	−3.4 dB/m	−2.7 dB/m	−1.9 dB/m
5.00 GHz	−6.1 dB/m	−4.9 dB/m	−4.0 dB/m	−3.1 dB/m
7.50 GHz	−7.6 dB/m	−6.5 dB/m	−5.2 dB/m	−4.2 dB/m
10.0 GHz	−8.8 dB/m	−7.6 dB/m	−6.1 dB/m	−4.9 dB/m
12.5 GHz	−9.9 dB/m	−8.6 dB/m	−7.1 dB/m	−5.7 dB/m
15.0 GHz	−12.1 dB/m	−10.9 dB/m	−9.0 dB/m	−6.5 dB/m

3.7.2 USB Type-C to Type-C Passive Cable Assemblies (Normative)

A USB Type-C to Type-C cable assembly shall be tested using a test fixture with the receptacle tongue fabricated in the test fixture. This is illustrated in Figure 3-33. The USB Type-C receptacles are not present in the test fixture. Hosts and devices should account for the additional signal degradation the receptacle introduces.

The requirements are for the entire signal path of the cable assembly mated with the fixture PCB tongues, not including lead-in PCB traces. As illustrated in Figure 3-33, the measurement is between TP1 (test point 1) and TP2 (test point 2). Refer to documentation located at Cables and Connectors page on the USB-IF website for a detailed description of a standardized test fixture.

Figure 3-33 Illustration of Test Points for a Mated Cable Assembly



The cable assembly requirements are divided into informative and normative requirements. The informative requirements are provided as design targets for cable assembly manufacturers. The normative requirements are the pass/failure criteria for cable assembly compliance.

3.7.2.1 Recommended TX/RX Passive Cable Assembly Characteristics (USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

The recommended electrical characteristics defined in this section are informative design guidelines. Cable assemblies that do not meet these recommended electrical characteristics may still pass USB certification testing. Similarly, cable assemblies that meet these recommended electrical characteristics may or may not pass USB certification testing.

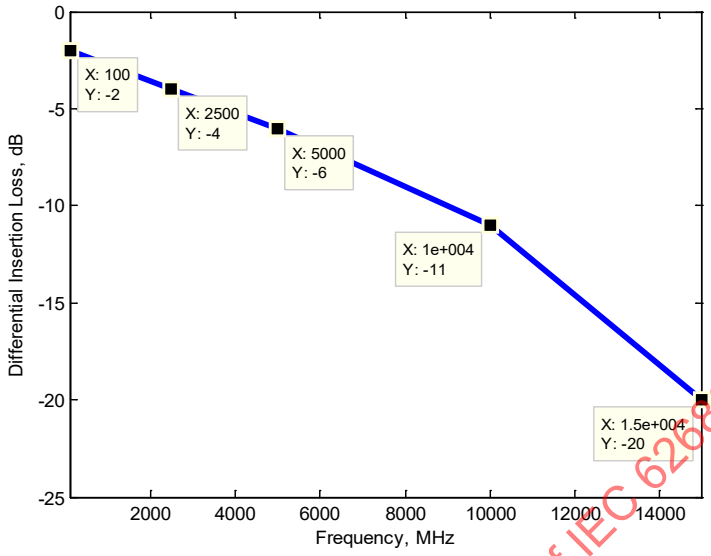
3.7.2.1.1 Differential Insertion Loss (Informative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

Figure 3-34 shows the differential insertion loss limit for a *USB 3.2* Gen2 or a *USB4* Gen2 Type-C cable assembly, which is defined by the following vertices: (100 MHz, −2 dB), (2.5 GHz, −4 dB), (5.0 GHz, −6 dB), (10 GHz, −11 dB) and (15 GHz, −20 dB).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-34 Recommended Differential Insertion Loss Requirement (USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

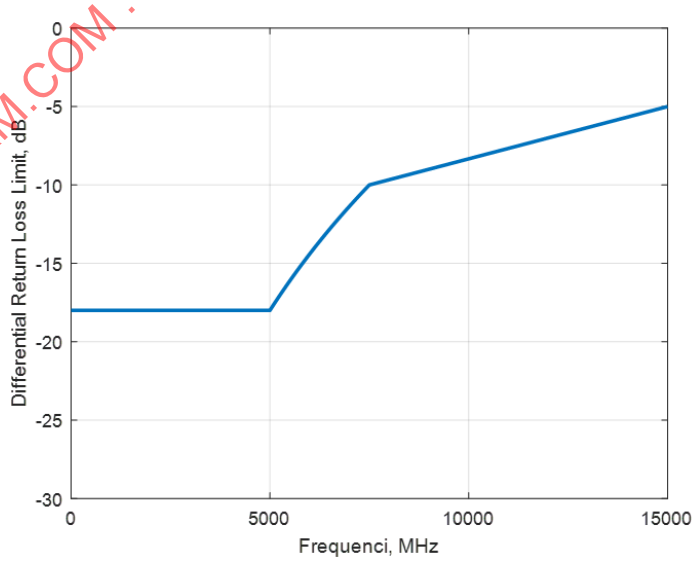


3.7.2.1.2 Differential Return Loss (Informative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

Figure 3-35 shows the differential return loss limit, which is defined by the following equation:

$$RL\ mask = \begin{cases} -18\ dB,\ f < 5\ Ghz \\ -18 + 45.43 \times \log_{10}\left(\frac{f}{5}\right)\ dB,\ 5\ Ghz < f \leq 7.5\ Ghz \\ -15 + \frac{2}{3} \times f\ dB,\ 7.5\ Ghz < f \leq 15\ Ghz \end{cases}$$

Figure 3-35 Recommended Differential Return Loss Requirement



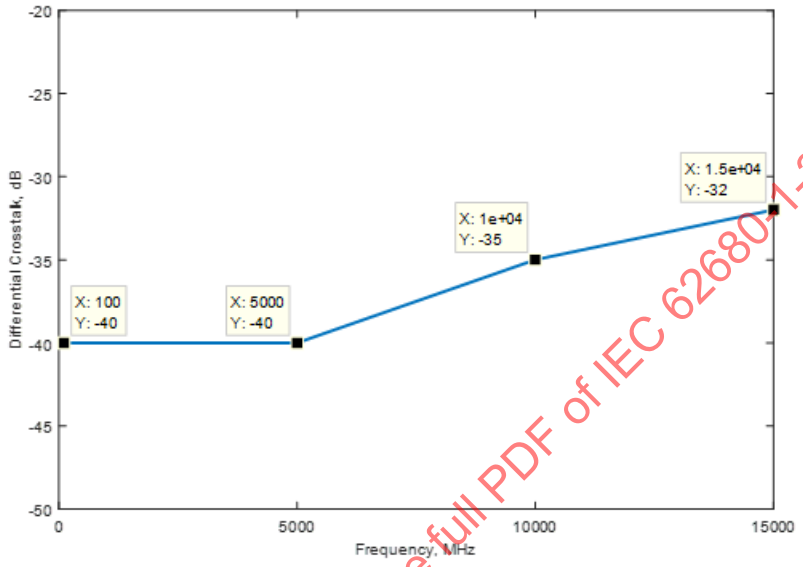
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.2.1.3 Differential Near-End and Far-End Crosstalk between TX/RX Pairs (Informative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

Both the near-end crosstalk (DDNEXT) and far-end crosstalk (DDFEXT) are specified, as shown in Figure 3-36. The DDNEXT/DDFEXT limits are defined by the following vertices: (100 MHz, −40 dB), (5 GHz, −40 dB), (10 GHz, −35 dB), and (15 GHz, −32 dB).

Figure 3-36 Recommended Differential Crosstalk Requirement



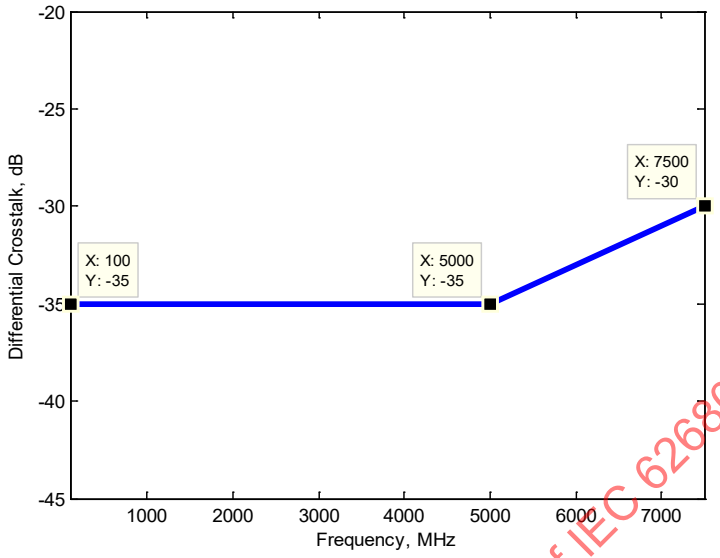
3.7.2.1.4 Differential Crosstalk between USB D+/D− and TX/RX Pairs (Informative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

The differential near-end and far-end crosstalk between the USB D+/D− pair and the TX/RX pairs should be managed not to exceed the limits shown in Figure 3-37. The USB D+/D− pair and the TX/RX pairs should be considered in the context of both an aggressor and a victim. It should also be considered that the D+/D− pair maximum frequency for similar tests is 1.2 GHz (see Table 3-31), but in this case the crosstalk on the D+/D− pair is extended to 7.5 GHz. The limits are defined by the following points: (100 MHz, −35 dB), (5 GHz, −35 dB), and (7.5 GHz, −30 dB).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-37 Recommended Differential Near-End and Far-End Crosstalk Requirement between USB D+/D– Pair and TX/RX Pair

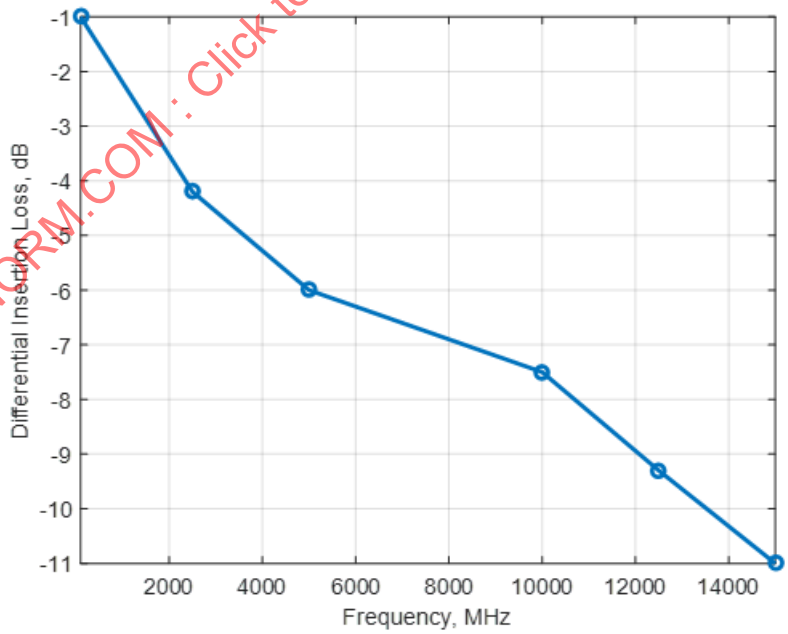


3.7.2.2 Recommended TX/RX Passive Cable Assembly Characteristics (USB4 Gen3)

3.7.2.2.1 Differential Insertion Loss (Informative – USB4 Gen3)

Figure 3-38 shows the recommended differential insertion loss limit for a *USB4* Gen3 Type-C cable assembly, which is defined by the following vertices: (100 MHz, −1 dB), (2.5 GHz, −4.2 dB), (5.0 GHz, −6 dB), (10 GHz, −7.5 dB), (12 GHz, −9.3 dB), and (15 GHz, −11 dB).

Figure 3-38 Recommended Differential Insertion Loss Requirement (USB4 Gen3)



3.7.2.2.2 Differential Return Loss (Informative – USB4 Gen3)

The informative differential return loss mask is identical in Section 3.7.2.1.2.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.2.2.3 Differential Near-End and Far-End Crosstalk between TX/RX Pairs (Informative – USB4 Gen3)

The recommended near-end crosstalk (DDNEXT) and far-end crosstalk (DDFEXT) are defined in Section 3.7.2.1.3. To minimize crosstalk, it is important to optimize the paddle card and wire termination designs inside the cable plug.

3.7.2.2.4 Differential Crosstalk between USB D+/D– and TX/RX Pairs (Informative – USB4 Gen3)

The informative near-end and far-end crosstalk between the USB D+/D– pair and the TX/RX pairs are the same as in Section 3.7.2.1.4.

3.7.2.3 Normative TX/RX Passive Cable Assembly Requirements (USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

The integrated parameters are used for cable assembly compliance (except for insertion loss and differential-to-common-mode conversion) to avoid potential rejection of a functioning cable assembly that may fail the traditional S-parameters spec at a few frequencies.

3.7.2.3.1 Insertion Loss Fit at Nyquist Frequencies (Normative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

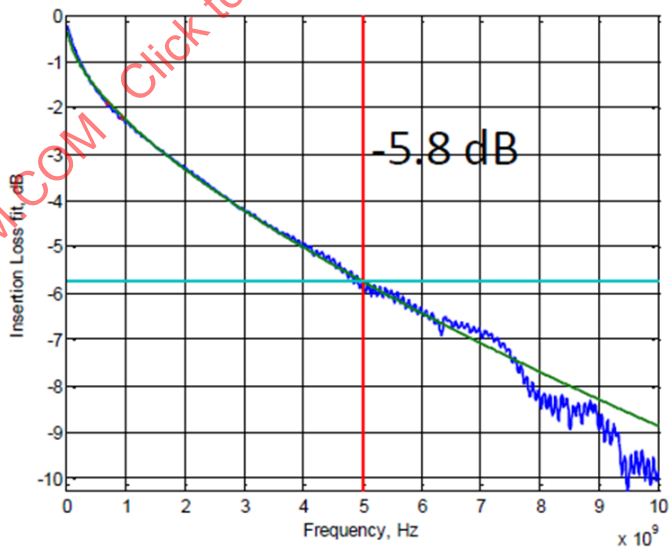
The insertion loss fit at Nyquist frequency measures the attenuation of the cable assembly. To obtain the insertion loss fit at Nyquist frequency, the measured cable assembly differential insertion loss is fitted with a smooth function. A standard fitting algorithm and tool shall be used to extract the insertion loss fit at Nyquist frequencies. The fitting equation is defined by the following equation:

$$IL_{fit} = a + b * \sqrt{f} + c * \sqrt{f^2} + d * \sqrt{f^3}$$

where f is the frequency and a, b, c, and d are the fitting coefficients.

Figure 3-39 illustrates an example of a measured cable assembly insertion loss fitted with a smooth function; the insertion loss fit at the Nyquist frequency of SuperSpeed USB Gen2 (5.0 GHz) is –5.8 dB.

Figure 3-39 Illustration of Insertion Loss Fit at Nyquist Frequency



The insertion loss fit at Nyquist frequency (ILfitatNq) shall meet the following requirements:

- ≥ –4 dB at 2.5 GHz,
- ≥ –6 dB at 5 GHz, and
- ≥ –11 dB at 10 GHz.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

2.5 GHz, 5.0 GHz and 10 GHz are the Nyquist frequencies for SuperSpeed USB Gen1, SuperSpeed USB Gen2, and USB4 Gen3 data rate, respectively.

The SuperSpeed USB Gen1-only Type-C to Type-C cable assembly is allowed by this specification and shall comply with the following insertion loss fit at Nyquist frequency requirements:

- ≥ –7.0 dB at 2.5 GHz, and
- > –12 dB at 5 GHz.

This insertion fit at Nyquist frequency allows the SuperSpeed USB Gen1-only Type-C to Type-C cable assembly to achieve an overall length of approximately 2 meters.

3.7.2.3.2 Integrated Multi-reflection (Normative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

The insertion loss deviation, ILD, is defined as

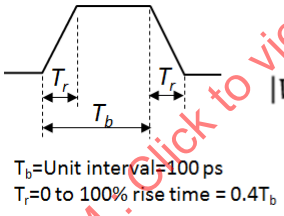
$$ILD(f) = IL(f) - ILfit(f)$$

It measures the ripple of the insertion loss, caused by multiple reflections inside the cable assembly (mated with the fixture). The integration of *ILD(f)* is called the integrated multi- reflection (IMR):

$$IMR = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}|ILD(f)|^2|Vin(f)|^2df}{\int_0^{fmax}|Vin(f)|^2df}}\right)$$

where *fmax* = 12.5 GHz and *Vin(f)* is the input trapezoidal pulse spectrum, defined in Figure 3-40.

Figure 3-40 Input Pulse Spectrum



$$|V_{in}(f)| = \left|\frac{\sin(\pi f T_r)}{\pi f T_r} \cdot \frac{\sin(\pi f T_b)}{\pi f T_b}\right|$$

IMR has dependency on ILfitatNq. More IMR may be tolerated when ILfitatNq decreases. The IMR limit is specified as a function of ILfitatNq:

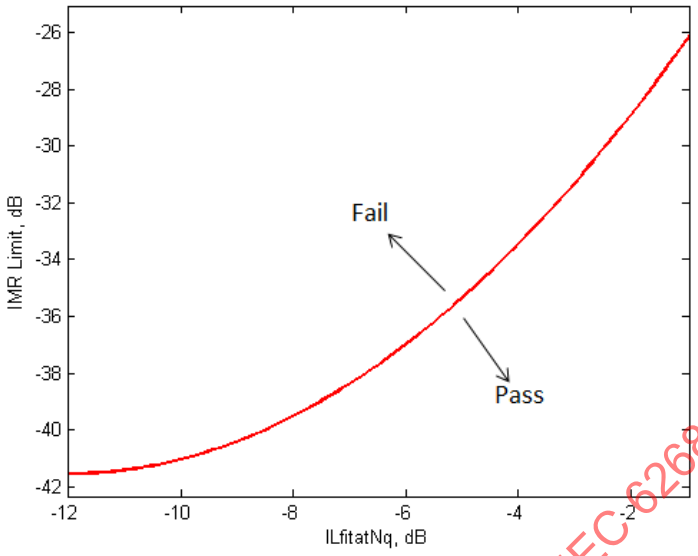
$IMR \leq 0.126 \cdot ILfitatNq^2 + 3.024 \cdot ILfitatNq - 23.392$.

This is plotted in Figure 3-41.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-41 IMR Limit as Function of ILfitatNq



3.7.2.3.3 Integrated Crosstalk between TX/RX Pairs (Normative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

The integrated crosstalk between all TX/RX pairs is calculated with the following equations:

$$INEXT = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}(|Vin(f)|^2(|NEXT(f)|^2 + 0.125^2 \cdot |C2D(f)|^2) + |Vdd(f)|^2\,|NEXTd(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}|Vin(f)|^2 df}}\right)$$

$$IFEXT = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}(|Vin(f)|^2(|FEXT(f)|^2 + 0.125^2 \cdot |C2D(f)|^2) + |Vdd(f)|^2\,|FEXTd(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}|Vin(f)|^2 df}}\right)$$

where *NEXT(f)*, *FEXT(f)*, and *C2D(f)* are the measured near-end and far-end crosstalk between TX/RX pairs, and the common-mode-to-differential conversion, respectively. The factor of 0.125^2 accounts for the assumption that the common mode amplitude is 12.5% of the differential amplitude. *NEXTd(f)* and *FEXTd(f)* are, respectively, the near-end and far-end crosstalk from the D+/D− pair to TX/RX pairs. *Vdd(f)* is the input pulse spectrum evaluated using the equation in Figure 3-40 with Tb=2.08 ns.

The integration shall be done for each NEXT and FEXT between all differential pairs. The largest values of INEXT and IFEXT shall meet the following requirements:

- INEXT ≤ −40 dB to 12.5GHz, for TX1 to RX1, TX2 to RX2, TX1 to RX2, TX2 to RX1, TX1 to TX2, and RX1 to RX2,
- IFEXT ≤ −40 dB to 12.5GHz, for TX1 to RX1, TX2 to RX2, TX1 to RX2, TX2 to RX1, TX1 to TX2, and RX1 to RX2.

The port-to-port crosstalk (TX1 to RX2, TX2 to RX1, TX1 to TX2, and RX1 to RX2) is specified to support the usages in which all the four SuperSpeed pairs transmit or receive signals simultaneously, for example in SuperSpeed USB dual-lane operation.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.2.3.4 Integrated Crosstalk between TX/RX Pairs to USB 2.0 D+/D− (Normative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

Crosstalk from the TX/RX pairs to USB 2.0 D+/D− shall be controlled to ensure the robustness of the USB 2.0 link. Since USB Type-C to Type-C Full-Featured cable assemblies may support the usage of *USB 3.2*, *USB4* or an Alternate Mode (e.g., DisplayPort™), the crosstalk from the four high speed differential pairs to D+/D− may be from near-end crosstalk, far-end crosstalk, or a combination of the two. The integrated crosstalk to D+/D− is calculated with the following equations:

$$\text{IDDXT_1NEXT + FEXT } = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2(|NEXT1(f)|^2 + |FEXT(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2df}}\right)$$

where:

NEXT = Near-end crosstalk from TX pair to D+/D−

FEXT = Far-end crosstalk from RX pair to D+/D−

fmax = 1.2 GHz

$$\text{IDDXT_2NEXT } = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2(|NEXT1(f)|^2 + |NEXT2(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2df}}\right)$$

where:

NEXT1 = Near-end crosstalk from TX pair to D+/D−

NEXT2 = Near-end crosstalk from RX (the RX functioning in TX mode) pair to D+/D−

fmax = 1.2 GHz

The integration shall be done for NEXT + FEXT and 2NEXT on D+/D− from the two differential pairs located at A2, A3, B10 and B11 (see Figure 2-2) and for NEXT + FEXT and 2NEXT on D+/D− from the two differential pairs located at B2, B3 A10 and A11 (see Figure 2-2). Measurements are made in two sets to minimize the number of ports required for each measurement. The integrated differential crosstalk on D+/D− shall meet the following requirements:

- IDDXT_1NEXT + FEXT ≤ −34.5 dB,
- IDDXT_2NEXT ≤ −33 dB.

3.7.2.3.5 Integrated Return Loss (Normative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

The integrated return loss (IRL) manages the reflection between the cable assembly and the rest of the system (host and device). It is defined as:

$$IRL = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}|Vin(f)|^2|SDD21(f)|^2(|SDD11(f)|^2 + |SDD22(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}|Vin(f)|^2df}}\right)$$

where *SDD21(f)* is the measured cable assembly differential insertion loss, *SDD11(f)* and *SDD22(f)* are the measured cable assembly return losses on the left and right sides, respectively, of a differential pair.

The IRL also has a strong dependency on ILfitatNq, and its limit is specified as a function of ILfitatNq:

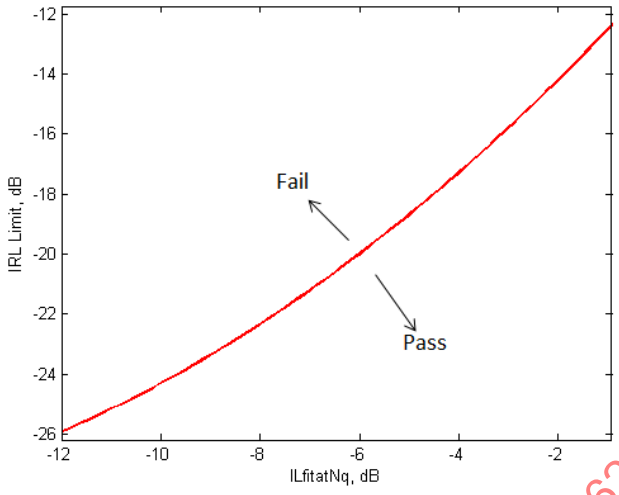
$IRL \leq 0.046 \cdot ILfitatNq^2 + 1.812 \cdot ILfitatNq - 10.784.$

It is shown in Figure 3-42.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

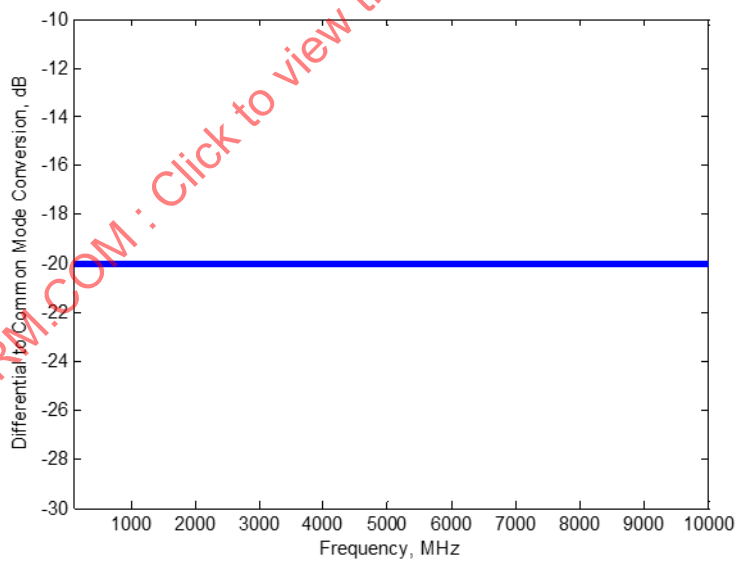
Figure 3-42 IRL Limit as Function of ILfitatNq



3.7.2.3.6 Differential-to-Common-Mode Conversion (Normative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

The differential-to-common-mode conversion is specified to control the injection of common mode noise from the cable assembly into the host or device. Figure 3-43 illustrates the differential-to-common mode conversion (SCD12/SCD21) requirement. A mated cable assembly passes if its SCD12/SCD21 is less than or equal to −20 dB from 100 MHz to 10 GHz.

Figure 3-43 Differential-to-Common-Mode Conversion Requirement



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.2.4 Normative TX/RX Passive Cable Assembly Requirements (USB4 Gen3)

The integrated S-parameter requirements for *USB4* Gen3 follow the same methodology as defined in Section 3.7.2.3. There are parameter adjustments made to suit the *USB4* Gen3 data rate. Unless otherwise specified, the following parameters shall be used to calculate insertion loss fit and integrated parameters:

- T_b, the unit interval, is set to 50 ps, reflecting the *USB4* Gen3 data rate.
- T_r, the rise time, remains at 0.4 * T_b.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- f_{max}, the maximum frequency over which the integration or fitting is performed is increased to 20 GHz.
- An f-square term is added to the insertion loss fit equation to improve fitting quality:

$$IL_{fit} = a + b * \sqrt{f} + c * \sqrt{f^2} + d * \sqrt{f^3} + e * \sqrt{f^4}$$

USB4 Gen3 introduces a system-level COM (Channel Operating Margin) specification for the cable assembly. The details are defined in Section 3.7.2.4.7.

3.7.2.4.1 Insertion Loss Fit at Nyquist Frequencies (Normative – USB4 Gen3)

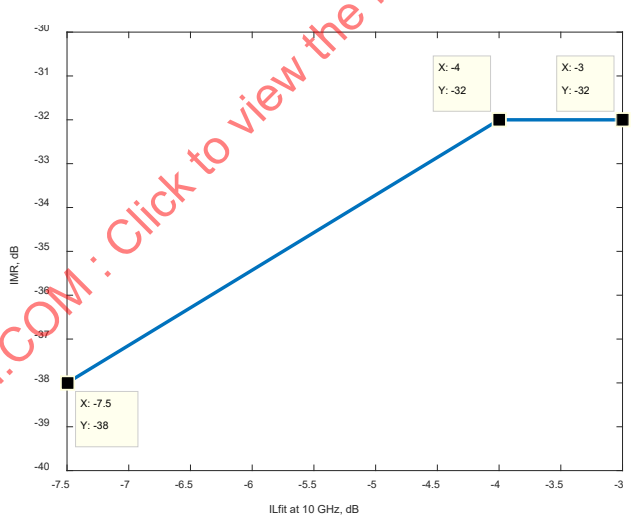
The insertion loss fit at Nyquist frequency (ILfitatNq) shall meet the following requirements:

- ≥ −1 dB at 100 MHz,
- ≥ −4.2 dB at 2.5 GHz,
- ≥ −6 dB at 5 GHz,
- ≥ −7.5 dB at 10 GHz,
- ≥ −9.3 dB at 12.5 GHz, and
- ≥ −11 dB at 15 GHz.

3.7.2.4.2 Integrated Multi-Reflection (Informative – USB4 Gen3)

The IMR limit is plotted in Figure 3-44.

Figure 3-44 IMR Limit as Function of ILfit at 10 GHz (USB4 Gen3)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.2.4.3 Integrated Crosstalk between TX/RX Pairs (Normative – USB4 Gen3)

The integrated crosstalk within a port for TX1 to RX1 and TX2 to RX2 is recommended to meet the following informative requirements:

- INEXT ≤ −43 dB and
- IFEXT ≤ −43 dB.

The recommended informative requirement for the integrated port-to-port crosstalk for TX1 to RX2, TX2 to RX1, TX1 to TX2, and RX1 to RX2) are defined as:

- INEXT_p2p ≤ −50 dB and

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

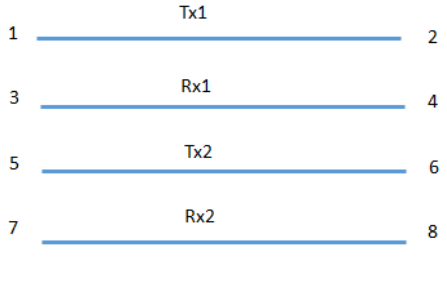
- IFEXT_p2p ≤ −50 dB.

The total crosstalk is defined for both the DP Alternate Mode and *USB4* operation. In DP Alternate Mode, all crosstalk is FEXT, while in *USB4* operation both FEXT and NEXT exist. The total crosstalk is defined in the equation below:

$$\text{IXTi_DP or IXTi_USB} = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2\sum_j|SDDij|^2df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2df}}\right)$$

where the victims i = 1 to 8 and the aggressors j are defined in Figure 3-45.

Figure 3-45 Definition of Port, Victim, and Aggressor



IXT_DP

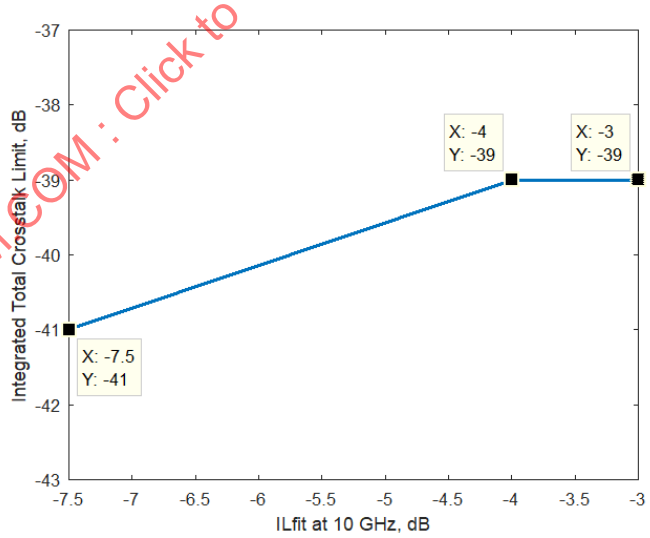
i	j			
1	4	6	8
2	3	5	7
3	2	6	8
4	1	5	7
5	2	4	8
6	1	3	7
7	2	4	6
8	1	3	5

IXT_USB

i	j			
1	3	7	6
2	4	8	5
3	1	5	8
4	2	6	7
5	3	7	2
6	4	8	1
7	1	5	4
8	2	6	3

The total crosstalk for the DP Alternate Mode and *USB4* operation shall be controlled. Its normative limit is defined in Figure 3-46.

Figure 3-46 IXT_DP and IXT_USB Limit as Function of ILfit at 10 GHz (USB4 Gen3)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.2.4.4 Integrated Crosstalk from TX/RX Pairs to USB 2.0 D+/D− (Normative – USB4 Gen3)

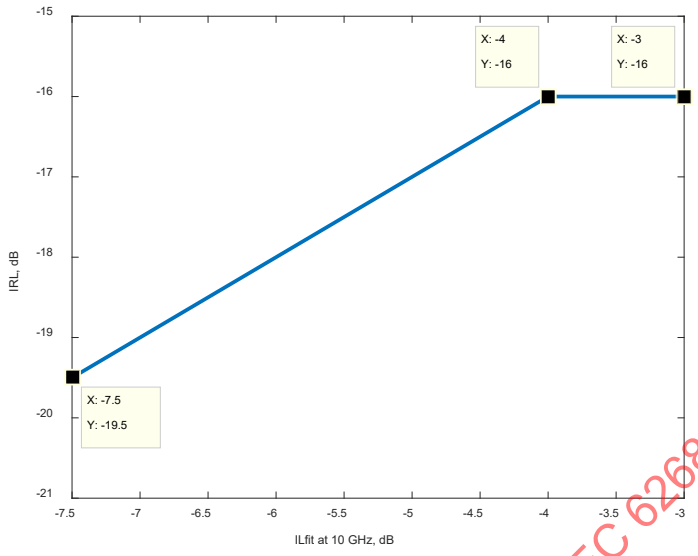
The requirements for the integrated crosstalk from the TX/RX pairs to USB 2.0 D+/D− are defined in Section 3.7.2.3.4.

3.7.2.4.5 Integrated Return Loss (Normative – USB4 Gen3)

The IRL limit is shown in Figure 3-47.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

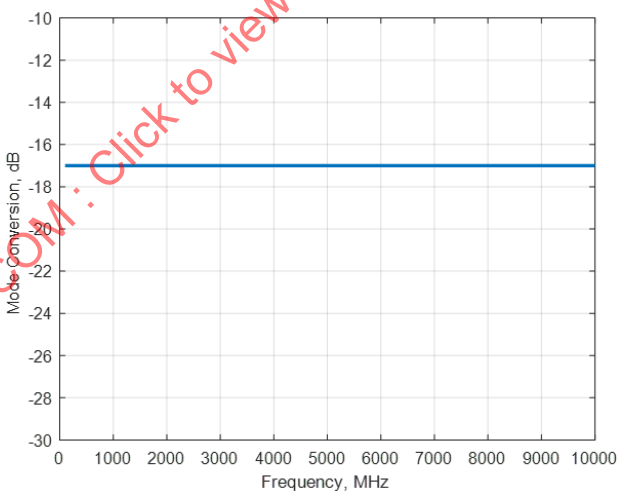
Figure 3-47 IRL Limit as Function of ILfitatNq (USB4 Gen3)



3.7.2.4.6 Differential-to-Common-Mode Conversion (Normative – USB4 Gen3)

Figure 3-48 illustrates the differential-to-common mode conversion (SCD12/SCD21) requirement. A mated cable assembly passes if its SCD12/SCD21 is less than or equal to −17 dB from 100 MHz to 10 GHz. Note that −17 dB is the worst-case limit; no *USB4* Gen3 Type-C cable is allowed to exceed it.

Figure 3-48 Differential-to-Commom-Mode Conversion Requirement (USB4 Gen3)



3.7.2.4.7 COM Requirement (Normative – USB4 Gen3)

Channel Operating Margin (COM) is a figure of merit to measure the channel electrical quality. The technical detail of COM may be found in IEEE Std 802.3bj™-2014 Clause 93a.

COM is essentially the channel signal-to-noise ratio:

$$COM = 20log10(\frac{A}{N})$$

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

where A is the signal amplitude and N is the combined noise at BER (bit-error-ratio), which includes the noise sources from ISI (inter-symbol-interference), crosstalk, transmitter jitter, etc.

To calculate COM, reference hosts/devices, which represent the worst-case hosts/devices, shall be defined and the reference TX and RX shall be used. As illustrated in Figure 3-49, the measured cable assembly S-parameters are cascaded with the reference host and reference device models to form the complete channel; the TX and RX die-loading and equalizers are then applied to the channel to calculate COM.

Figure 3-49 Cable Assembly in System

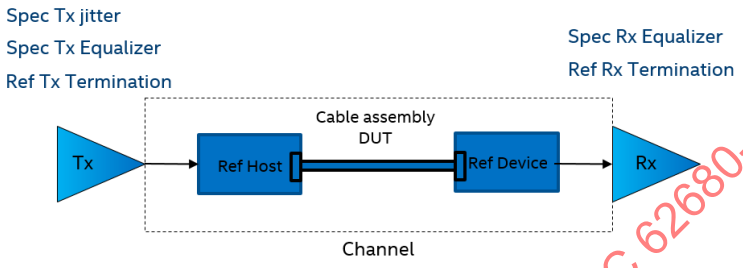


Table 3-23 defines the key parameters in the COM configuration file. It uses the standard COM notations. Note that all the TX and RX equalization settings follow the *USB4* specification.

Table 3-23 Key Parameters in COM Configuration File

Parameter	Setting	Unit	Information
f_b	20	GBd	USB4 Gen 3 data rate
C_d	[0 0]	nF	TX and RX capacitive loading. It is set to zeros as the die-loading is treated as part of the channel
R_d	[42.5 42.5]	Ohm	TX and RX termination resistance
ffe_preset	Table 3-4 of *USB4* Specification		TX equalization presets
g_DC	[-9:1:0]	dB	CTLE DC gain
f_p1	5	GHz	CTLE pole 1
f_p2	10	GHz	CTLE pole 2
f_z	3.55	GHz	CTLE zero
A_v	0.4	V	Signal swing
A_fe	0.4	V	FEXT aggressor swing
A_ne	0.6	V	NEXT aggressor swing
N_b	1		Number of DFE tap
b_max(1)	0.7		DFE bound, ratio to cursor
Sigma_RJ	0.01	UI	TX ramdom jitter, rms.
A_DD	0.085	UI	TX deterministic jitter, mean-to-peak
DER_0	1e-12		Target raw bit-error-rate
eta_0	3.3e-8	V^2/GHz	One sided noise spectral density
SNR_TX	40	dB	TX signal to noise ratio
COM Threshold	3	dB	Pass/fail criterion

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

To support the calculation of the cable assembly COM, the following collaterals is provided and may be obtained from USB-IF website:

- Reference host/device S-parameter models
- Reference TX and RX die-loading S-parameter models
- COM configuration file
- Tool to compute COM

3.7.2.5 Low-Speed Signal Requirements (Normative)

This section specifies the electrical requirements for CC and SBU wires and the coupling among CC, USB D+/D−, VBUS and SBU.

The CC and SBU wires may be unshielded or shielded, and shall have the properties specified in Table 3-24.

Table 3-24 Electrical Requirements for CC and SBU wires

Name	Description	Min	Max	Units
zCable_CC	Cable characteristic impedance on the CC wire	32	93	Ω
rCable_CC	Cable DC resistance on the CC wire		15	Ω
tCableDelay_CC	Cable propagation delay on the CC wire		26	ns
cCablePlug_CC	Capacitance for each cable plug on the CC wire		25	pF
zCable_SBU	Cable characteristic impedance on the SBU wires	32	53	Ω
tCableDelay_SBU	Cable propagation delay on the SBU wires		26	ns
rCable_SBU	DC resistance of SBU wires in the cable		5	Ω
SBU SE Insertion Loss	Cable SBU single-ended insertion loss		2.0 @ 0.5 MHz 4.0 @ 1 MHz 9.0 @ 10 MHz 10.7 @ 25 MHz 11.9 @ 50 MHz 13.0 @ 100 MHz	dB

Coupling or crosstalk, both near-end and far-end, among the low speed signals shall be controlled. Table 3-25 shows the matrix of couplings specified.

Table 3-25 Coupling Matrix for Low Speed Signals

Coupling Matrix	D− (SE)	D+/D− (DF)	VBUS	SBU_B/SBU_A (SE)
CC	FF, CT	FF, CT	FF, CT, CTVPD	FF
D+/D− (DF)	N/A	N/A	FF, CT	FF
SBU_A/SBU_B	N/A	FF	FF	FF

DF: Differential; FF: Full-featured cable; CT: Charge-through cable (including USB 2.0 function); CTVPD: Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device.

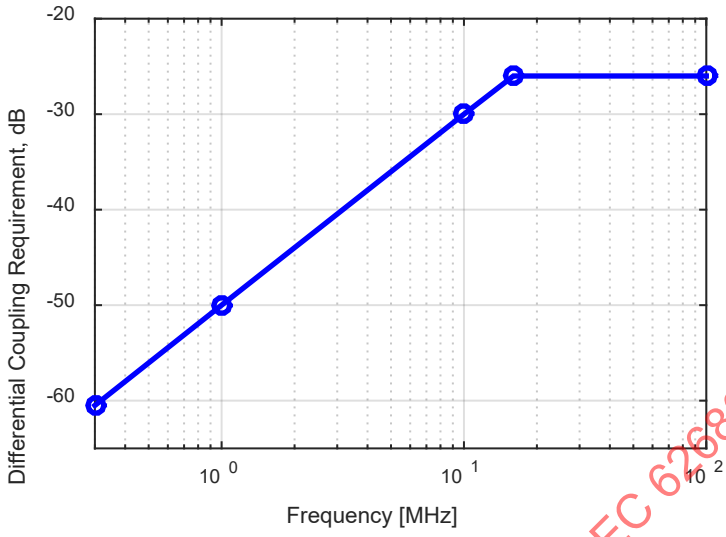
3.7.2.5.1 CC to USB D+/D− (Normative)

The differential coupling between the CC and D+/D− shall be below the limit shown in Figure 3-50. The limit is defined with the vertices of (0.3 MHz, -60.5 dB), (1 MHz, −50 dB), (10 MHz, −30 dB), (16 MHz, −26 dB) and (100 MHz, −26 dB).

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

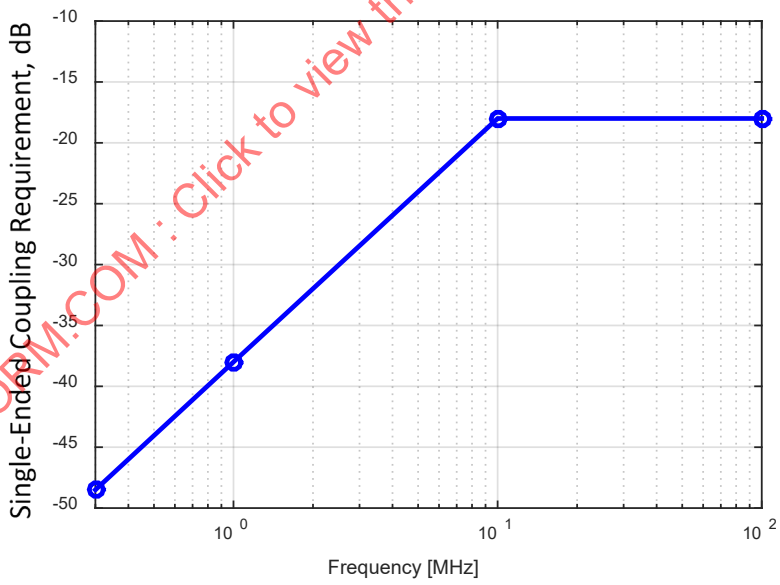
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Figure 3-50 Requirement for Differential Coupling between CC and D+/D–



For USB 2.0 Type-C cables, the singled-ended coupling between the CC and D– shall be below the limit shown in Figure 3-51. The limit is defined with the vertices of (0.3 MHz, –48.5 dB), (1 MHz, –38 dB), (10 MHz, –18 dB) and (100 MHz, –18 dB).

Figure 3-51 Requirement for Single-Ended Coupling between CC and D– in USB 2.0 Type-C Cables

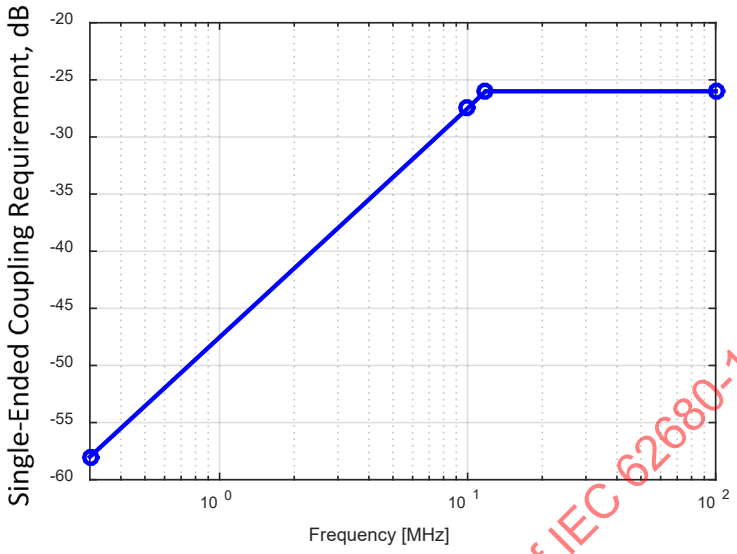


For USB Full-Featured Type-C cables, the singled-ended coupling between the CC and D– shall be below the limit shown in Figure 3-52. The limit is defined with the vertices of (0.3 MHz, –8 dB), (10 MHz, –27.5 dB), (11.8 MHz, –26 dB) and (100 MHz, –26 dB).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-52 Requirement for Single-Ended Coupling between CC and D– in USB Full-Featured Type-C Cables

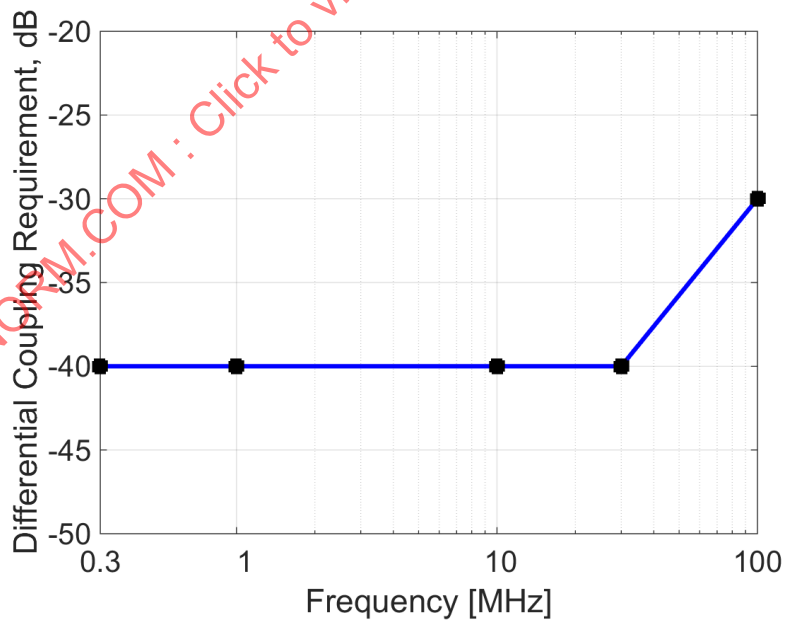


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.2.5.2 VBUS Coupling to SBU_A/SBU_B, CC, and USB D+/D– (Normative)

The differential coupling between VBUS and USB D+/D– shall be less than the limit shown in Figure 3-53. The limit is defined by the following vertices: (0.3 MHz, –40 dB), (1 MHz, –40 dB), (30 MHz, –40 dB), and (100 MHz, –30 dB).

Figure 3-53 Requirement for Differential Coupling between VBUS and D+/D–



The maximum VBUS loop inductance shall be 900 nH and the maximum mutual inductance (M) between VBUS and low speed signal lines (CC, SBU_A, SBU_B, D+, D–) shall be as specified in Table 3-26 to limit VBUS inductive noise coupling on low speed signal lines. For full-featured cables, the

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

range of VBUS bypass capacitance shall be 8nF up to 500nF as any of the values in the range is equally effective for high-speed return-path bypassing.

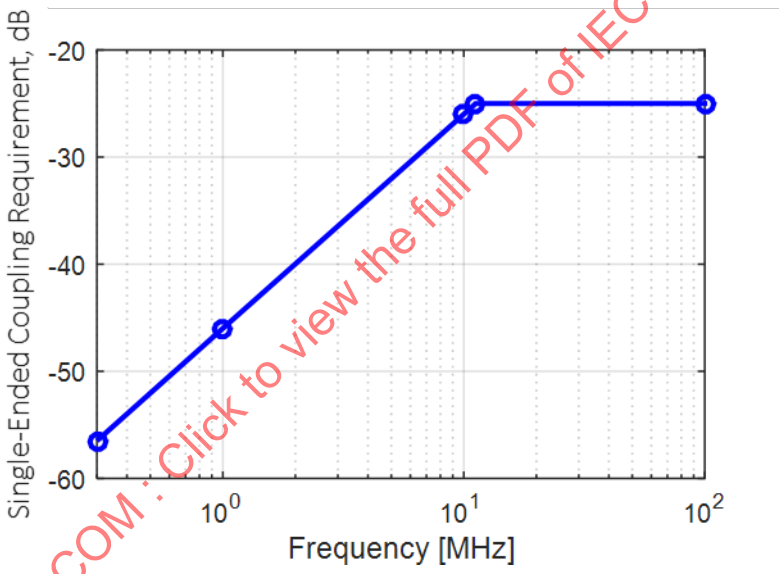
Table 3-26 Maximum Mutual Inductance (M) between VBUS and Low Speed Signal Lines

Low Speed Wire	Max Mutual Inductance (nH)
CC	350
SBU_A, SBU_B	330
D+, D–	330

3.7.2.5.3 Coupling between SBU_A and SBU_B (Normative)

The single-ended coupling between SBU_A and SBU_B shall be less than the limit shown in Figure 3-54. The limit is defined with the vertices of (0.3 MHz, –56.5 dB), (1 MHz, –46 dB), (10 MHz, –26 dB), (11.2 MHz, –25 dB), and (100 MHz, –25 dB).

Figure 3-54 Requirement for Single-Ended Coupling between SBU_A and SBU_B



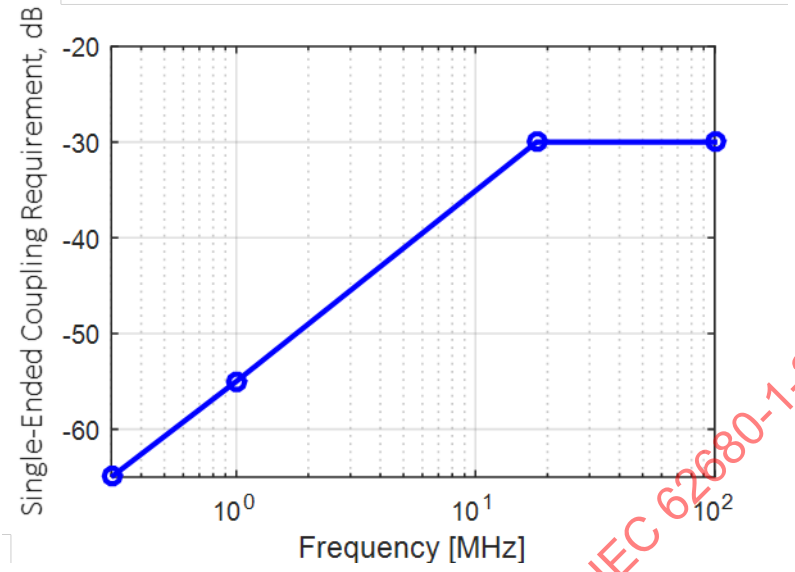
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.2.5.4 Coupling between SBU_A/SBU_B and CC (Normative)

The single-ended coupling between SBU_A and CC, and between SBU_B and CC shall be less than the limit shown in Figure 3-55. The limit is defined with the vertices of (0.3 MHz, –65 dB), (1 MHz, –55 dB), (18 MHz, –30 dB), and (100 MHz, –30 dB).

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

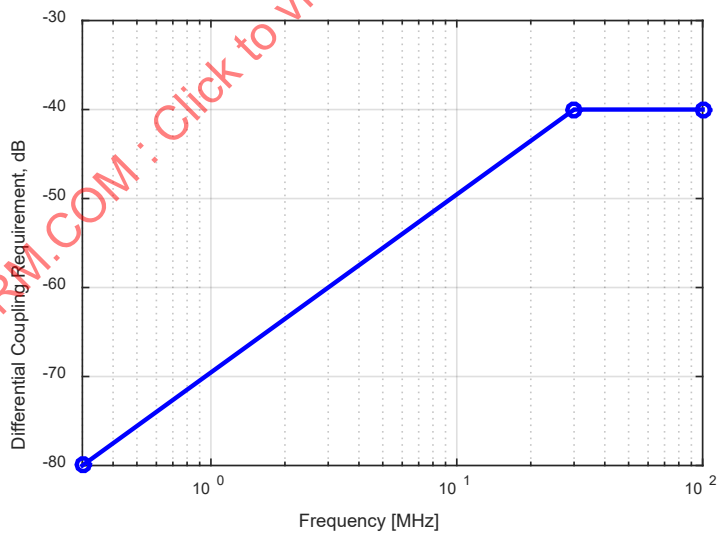
Figure 3-55 Requirement for Single-Ended Coupling between SBU_A/SBU_B and CC



3.7.2.5.5 Coupling between SBU_A/SBU_B and USB D+/D– (Normative)

The coupling between SBU_A and differential D+/D–, and between SBU_B and differential D+/D– shall be less than the limit shown in Figure 3-56. The limit is defined with the vertices of (0.3 MHz, –80 dB), (30 MHz, –40 dB), and (100 MHz, –40 dB).

Figure 3-56 Requirement for Coupling between SBU_A and differential D+/D–, and SBU_B and differential D+/D–



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.2.6 USB D+/D– Signal Requirements (Normative)

The USB D+/D– lines of the USB Type-C to USB Type-C passive cable assembly shall meet the requirements defined in Table 3-27.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-27 USB D+/D– Signal Integrity Requirements for USB Type-C to USB Type-C Passive Cable Assemblies

Items	Descriptions and Procedures	Requirements
Differential Impedance	EIA 364-108 This test ensures that the D+/D– lines of the cable assembly have the proper impedance. For the entire cable assembly.	75 ohms min and 105 ohms max. 400 ps rise time (20%-80%).
Propagation Delay	EIA 364-103 The purpose of the test is to verify the end-to-end propagation of the D+/D– lines of the cable assembly.	26 ns max. 400 ps rise time (20%-80%).
Intra-pair Skew	EIA 364 – 103 This test ensures that the signal on both the D+ and D– lines of cable assembly arrive at the receiver at the same time.	100 ps max. 400 ps rise time (20%-80%).
D+/D– Pair Attenuation	EIA 364 – 101 This test ensures the D+/D– pair of a cable assembly is able to provide adequate signal strength to the receiver in order to maintain a low error rate.	≥ –1.02 dB @ 50 MHz ≥ –1.43 dB @ 100 MHz ≥ –2.40 dB @ 200 MHz ≥ –4.35 dB @ 400 MHz
D+ or D– DC Resistance	This test ensures the D+/D– has the proper DC resistance range in order to predict the EOP level and set the *USB 2.0* disconnect level.	3.5 ohms max.

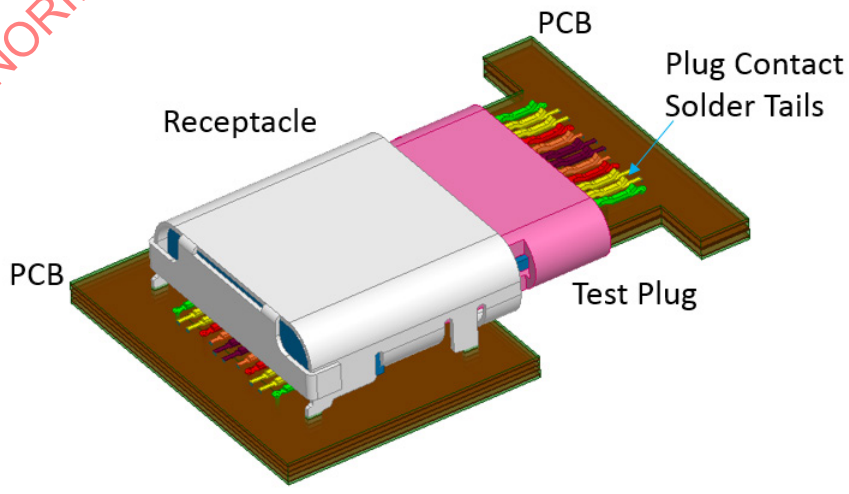
3.7.2.7 VBUS DC Voltage Tolerance (Normative)

A USB Type-C to USB Type-C cable assembly shall tolerate a VBUS voltage of 21 V DC at the cable rated current (i.e. 3 A or 5 A) applied for one hour as a pre-condition of the testing of the electrical aspects of the cable assembly.

3.7.3 Mated Connector (Informative – USB 3.2 Gen2 and USB4 Gen2)

The mated connector as defined in this specification for USB Type-C consists of a receptacle mounted on a PCB, representing how the receptacle is used in a product, and a test plug also mounted on a PCB (paddle card) without cable. This is illustrated in Figure 3-57. Note that the test plug is used in host/device TX/RX testing also.

Figure 3-57 Illustration of USB Type-C Mated Connector



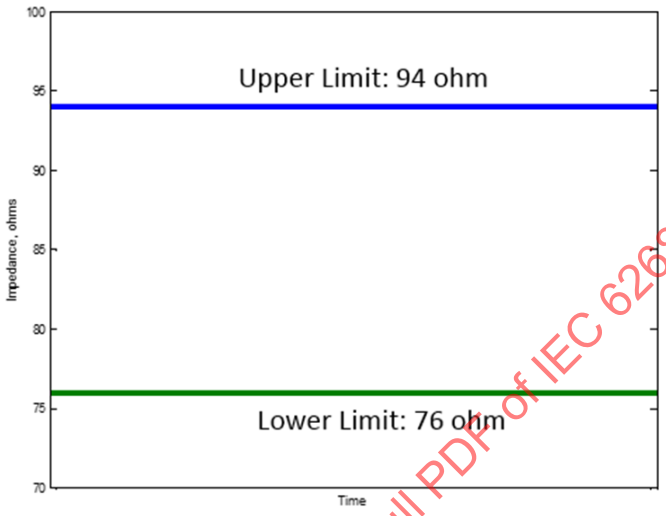
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.3.1 Differential Impedance (Informative)

The mated connector impedance target is specified to minimize reflection from the connector. The differential impedance of a mated connector should be within 85 Ω ± 9 Ω, as seen from a 40 ps (20% – 80%) rise time. The impedance profile of a mated connector should fall within the limits shown in Figure 3-58.

Figure 3-58 Recommended Impedance Limits of a USB Type-C Mated Connector

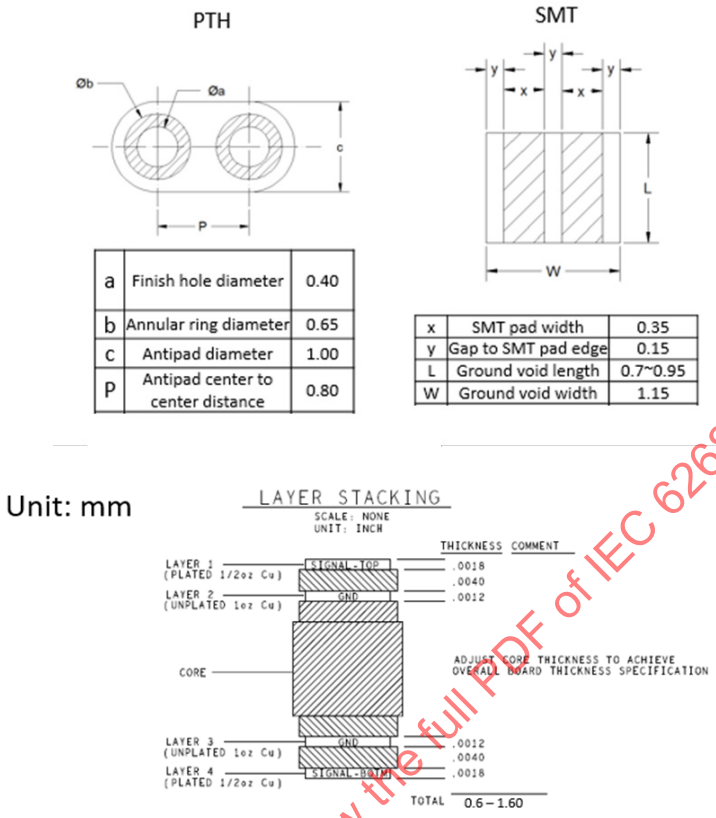


The PCB stack up, lead geometry, and solder pad geometry should be modeled in 3D field-solver to optimize electrical performance. Example ground voids under signal pads are shown in Figure 3-59 based on pad geometry, mounting type, and PCB stack-up shown.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-59 Recommended Ground Void Dimensions for USB Type-C Receptacle



a	Finish hole diameter	0.40
b	Annular ring diameter	0.65
c	Antipad diameter	1.00
P	Antipad center to center distance	0.80

x	SMT pad width	0.35
y	Gap to SMT pad edge	0.15
L	Ground void length	0.7~0.95
W	Ground void width	1.15

3.7.3.2 Mated Connector Recommended Differential S-Parameter and Signal Integrity Characteristics (Informative)

The recommended signal integrity characteristics of USB Type-C mated connector pair are listed in Table 3-28.

Table 3-28 USB Type-C Mated Connector Recommended Signal Integrity Characteristics (Informative)

Items	Descriptions and Procedures	Requirements
Differential Insertion Loss Fit at Nyquist Frequencies (ILfitatNq)	ILfitatNq is evaluated at the TX/RX Gen1, Gen2 and Gen3 generation Nyquist frequencies.	≥ −0.6 dB @ 2.5 GHz ≥ −0.8 dB @ 5.0 GHz ≥ −1.0 dB @ 10 GHz
Integrated Differential Multi-reflection (IMR)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert ILD(f)\rvert^2\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −40 dB
Integrated Differential Near-end Crosstalk on TX/RX (INEXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2 + 0.125^2 \cdot \lvert C2D(f)\rvert^2) df + \int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vdd(f)\rvert^2 \ \lvert NEXTd(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ where: $NEXT$ = NEXT between TX/RX pairs $NEXTd$ = NEXT between D+/D− and TX/RX pairs	≤ −44 dB

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Items	Descriptions and Procedures	Requirements
Integrated Differential Far-end Crosstalk on TX/RX (IFEXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2 + 0.125^2\cdot\lvert C2D(f)\rvert^2)df + \int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vdd(f)\rvert^2\ \lvert FEXTd(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ where: $FEXT$ = FEXT between TX/RX pairs $FEXTd$ = FEXT between D+/D− and TX/RX pairs	≤ −44 dB
Differential Crosstalk of TX/RX on D+/D−	The differential near-end and far-end crosstalk of the TX/RX pairs on the D+/D− pair in mated connectors.	See Figure 3-60
Differential Crosstalk of D+/D− on TX/RX	The differential near-end and far-end crosstalk of the D+/D− pair on the TX/RX pairs in mated connectors.	See Figure 3-60
Integrated Return Loss (IRL)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert SDD21(f)\rvert^2(\lvert SDD11(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert SDD22(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −18 dB
Differential to Common Mode Conversion (SCD12 and SCD21)	The differential to common mode conversion is specified to control the injection of common mode noise from the cable assembly into the host or device. Frequency range: 100 MHz ~ 10.0 GHz	See Figure 3-61

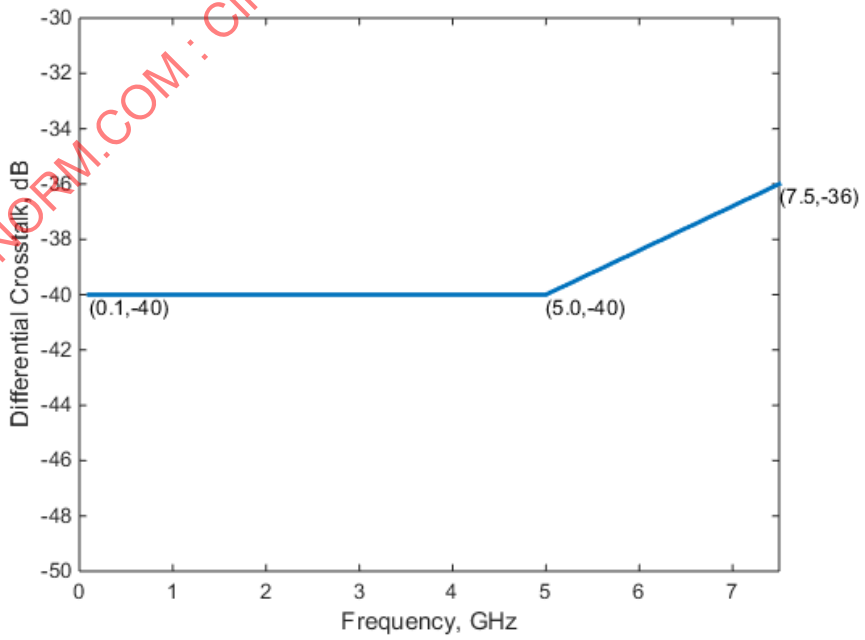
Note: $fmax$ = 12.5 GHz (unless otherwise specified);

$Vin(f)$ is defined in Figure 3-40 with Tb (UI) = 100 ps;

$Vdd(f)$ is also defined in Figure 3-40 with Tb (UI) = 2.08 ns;

$C2D(f)$ =measured near-end and far-end crosstalk between TX/RX pairs, and the common-mode-to-differential conversion, respectively. The factor of 0.125^2 accounts for the assumption that the common mode amplitude is 12.5% of the differential amplitude.

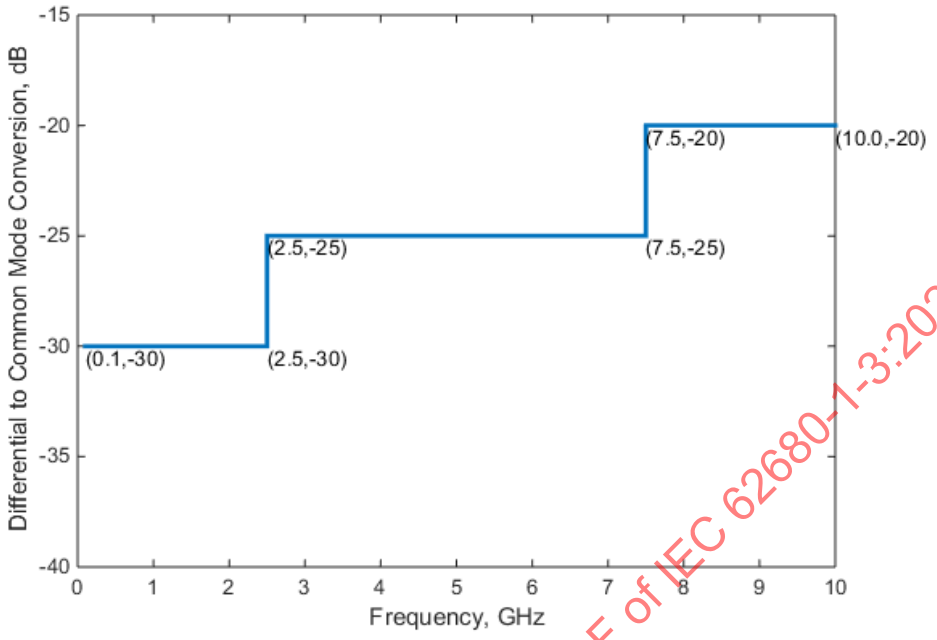
Figure 3-60 Recommended Differential Near-End and Far-End Crosstalk Limits between D+/D− Pair and TX/RX Pairs



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-61 Recommended Limits for Differential-to-Common-Mode Conversion



3.7.4 Mated Connector (Normative – USB4 Gen3)

The mated connector requirements for *USB4* Gen3 is normative and listed in Table 3-29. Unless otherwise specified, the items to be specified are identical to what defined in Section 3.7.3 and the parameters used to calculate the integrated parameters are the same as defined in Section 3.7.2.4 for the *USB4* Gen3 cable assembly.

Table 3-29 USB Type-C Mated Connector Signal Integrity Characteristics for USB4 Gen3 (Normative)

Items	Descriptions and Procedures	Requirements
Differential Insertion Loss Fit at Nyquist Frequencies (ILfitatNq)	ILfitatNq is evaluated at a few different frequencies.	≥ −0.6 dB @ 2.5 GHz ≥ −0.8 dB @ 5.0 GHz ≥ −1.0 dB @ 10 GHz ≥ −1.25 dB @ 12.5 GHz ≥ −1.5 dB @ 15 GHz
Integrated Differential Multi-reflection (IMR)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert ILD(f)\rvert^2\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −39 dB
Integrated Differential Near-end Crosstalk on TX/RX (INEXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ where: *NEXT* = NEXT between TX1and RX1, and TX2 and RX2.	≤ −43 dB
Integrated Differential Far-end Crosstalk on TX/RX (IFEXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ where: *FEXT* = FEXT between TX1 and RX1, and TX2 and RX2.	≤ −43 dB

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Items	Descriptions and Procedures	Requirements
Differential Crosstalk of TX/RX on D+/D−	The differential near-end and far-end crosstalk of the TX/RX pairs on the D+/D− pair in mated connectors, and the differential near-end and far-end crosstalk of the D+/D− pair on the TX/RX pairs in mated connectors. $dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2+\lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2df}}\right)$ where: *FEXT* = Far-end crosstalk between TX/RX and D+/D− pairs *NEXT* = Near-end crosstalk between TX/RX and D+/D− pairs *fmax* = 1.2 GHz	≤ −50 dB
Differential Crosstalk of D+/D− on TX/RX		
Integrated Return Loss (IRL)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert SDD21(f)\rvert^2(\lvert SDD11(f)\rvert^2+\lvert SDD22(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2df}}\right)$	≤ −15 dB
Differential to Common Mode Conversion (SCD12 and SCD21)	The differential to common mode conversion is specified to control the injection of common mode noise from the cable assembly into the host or device. Frequency range: 100 MHz ~ 10.0 GHz	≤ −20 dB

Note: *fmax* = 20 GHz (unless otherwise specified);
Vin(f) is defined with Tb (UI) = 50 ps.

3.7.5 USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assemblies (Normative)

The USB Type-C to legacy cable assemblies may support *USB 2.0* only or *USB 3.2* Gen2; *USB 3.2* Gen1-only Type-C to legacy cable assemblies are not allowed.

3.7.5.1 USB 2.0-only Cable Assemblies (Normative)

The *USB 2.0*-only Type-C to legacy USB cable assemblies include:

- USB Type-C plug to *USB 2.0* Standard-A plug
- USB Type-C plug to *USB 2.0* Standard-B plug
- USB Type-C plug to *USB 2.0* Micro-B plug
- USB Type-C plug to *USB 2.0* Mini-B plug

The USB D+/D− signal integrity requirements are specified in Table 3-30.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-30 USB D+/D– Signal Integrity Requirements for USB Type-C to Legacy USB Cable Assemblies

Items	Descriptions and Procedures	Requirements
Differential Impedance	EIA 364-108 This test ensures that the D+/D– lines of the cable assembly have the proper impedance. For the entire cable assembly.	75 ohms min and 105 ohms max. 400 ps rise time (20%-80%).
Propagation Delay	EIA 364-103 The purpose of the test is to verify the end-to-end propagation of the D+/D– lines of the cable assembly.	10 ns max for USB Type-C to Micro-B cable assembly; 20 ns max for all other USB Type-C to legacy USB cable assemblies. 400 ps rise time (20%-80%).
Intra-pair Skew	EIA 364 – 103 This test ensures that the signal on both the D+ and D– lines of cable assembly arrive at the receiver at the same time.	100 ps max. 400 ps rise time (20%-80%).
D+/D– Pair Attenuation	EIA 364 – 101 This test ensures the D+/D– pair of a cable assembly is able to provide adequate signal strength to the receiver in order to maintain a low error rate.	≥ –1.02 dB @ 50 MHz ≥ –1.43 dB @ 100 MHz ≥ –2.40 dB @ 200 MHz ≥ –4.35 dB @ 400 MHz
D+ or D– DC Resistance	This test ensures the D+/D– has the proper DC resistance range in order to predict the EOP level and set the *USB 2.0* disconnect level.	3.5 ohms max.

3.7.5.2 *USB 3.1* Gen2 Cable Assemblies (Normative)

The USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Gen2 legacy cable assemblies include:

- USB Type-C plug to *USB 3.1* Standard-A plug
- USB Type-C plug to *USB 3.1* Standard-B plug
- USB Type-C plug to *USB 3.1* Micro-B plug

The informative design targets for these cables are provided in Table 3-31.

Table 3-31 Design Targets for USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Gen2 Legacy Cable Assemblies (Informative)

Items	Design Targets
Differential Impedance	76 ohms min and 96 ohms max. 40 ps rise time (20%-80%).
Differential Insertion Loss	≥ –2 dB @ 100 MHz ≥ –4 dB @ 2.5 GHz, except for the USB Type-C plug to USB 3.1 Standard-A plug cable assembly which is ≥–3.5 dB @ 2.5 GHz –6.0 dB max @ 5.0 GHz
Differential NEXT between SuperSpeed Pairs	≤ –34 dB to 5 GHz
Differential NEXT and FEXT between D+/D- and SuperSpeed Pairs	≤ –30 dB to 5 GHz

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

The normative requirements include the USB D+/D− signaling as specified in Table 3-30, and the SuperSpeed USB parameters specified in Table 3-32.

Table 3-32 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Gen2 Legacy Cable Assembly Signal Integrity Requirements (Normative)

Items	Descriptions and Procedures	Requirements
Differential Insertion Loss Fit at Nyquist Frequencies (ILfitatNq)	ILfitatNq is evaluated at both the SuperSpeed Gen1 and Gen2 Nyquist frequencies.	≥ −4 dB @ 2.5 GHz, except for the USB Type-C plug to USB 3.1 Standard-A plug cable assembly which is ≥ −3.5 dB @ 2.5 GHz ≥ −6.0 dB at 5.0 GHz
Integrated Differential Multi-reflection (IMR)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert ILD(f)\rvert^2\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	$\leq 0.126 \cdot ILfitatNq^2 + 3.024 \cdot ILfitatNq - 21.392$ See Figure 3-62.
Integrated Differential Crosstalk on SuperSpeed (ISSXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}(\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert NEXTs(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert Vdd(f)\rvert^2\lvert NEXTd(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ where: *NEXTs* = NEXT between SuperSpeed pairs *NEXTd* = NEXT between D+/D− and SuperSpeed pairs *Vdd(f)* = Input pulse spectrum on D+/D− pair, evaluated using equation shown in Figure 3-40 with Tb (UI) = 2.08 ns.	≤ −38 dB
Integrated Differential Crosstalk on D+/D- (IDDXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ where: *NEXT* = Near-end crosstalk from SuperSpeed to D+/D− *FEXT* = Far-end crosstalk from SuperSpeed to D+/D− *fmax* = 1.2 GHz	≤ −28.5 dB
Integrated Return Loss (IRL)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert SDD21(f)\rvert^2(\lvert SDD11(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert SDD22(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	$\leq 0.046 \cdot ILfitatNq^2 + 1.812 \cdot ILfitatNq - 9.784$ See Figure 3-63.
Differential to Common Mode Conversion (SCD12 and SCD21)	The differential to common mode conversion is specified to control the injection of common mode noise from the cable assembly into the host or device. Frequency range: 100 MHz ~ 10.0 GHz	≤ −20 dB

Note: *fmax* = 10 GHz (unless otherwise specified); *Vin(f)* is defined in Figure 3-40 with Tb (UI) = 100 ps; and *Vdd(f)* is also defined in Figure 3-40 with Tb (UI) = 2.08 ns.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-62 IMR Limit as Function of ILfitatNq for USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assembly

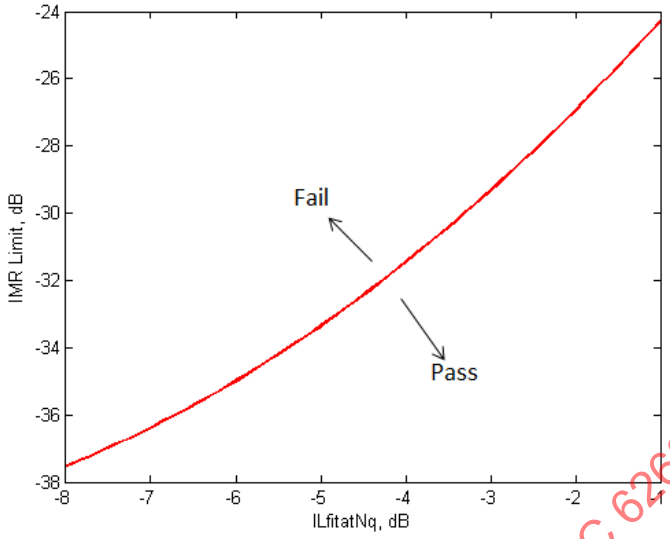
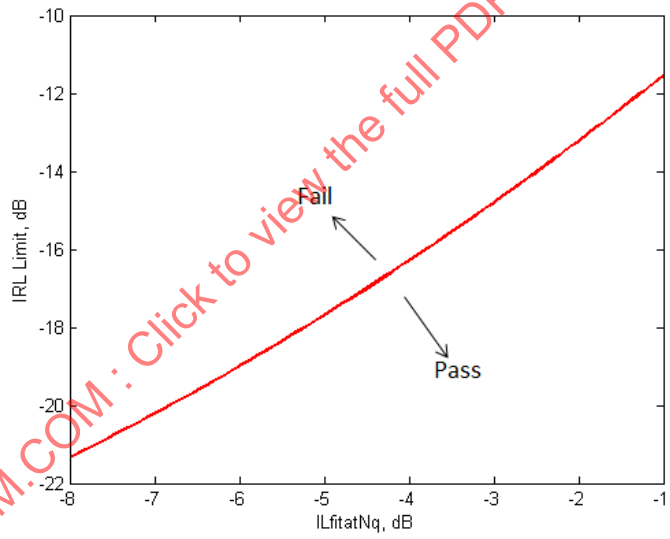


Figure 3-63 IRL Limit as Function of ILfitatNq for USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assembly



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.5.3 Compliant USB Legacy Plugs used in USB Type-C to Legacy Cable Assemblies

The following requirements are incremental to the existing requirements for legacy connectors when used in compliant USB Type-C to legacy cable assemblies.

3.7.5.3.1 Contact Material Requirements for USB Type-C to USB Micro-B Assemblies

For USB Type-C to USB Micro-B assemblies, change the contact material in the USB Micro-B connector to achieve the following Low Level Contact Resistance (EIA 364-23B):

- 20 milliohms (Max) initial for VBUS and GND contacts,
- Maximum change (delta) of +10 milliohms after environmental stresses.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.5.3.2 Contact Current Ratings for USB Standard-A, USB Standard-B and USB Micro-B Connector Mated Pairs (EIA 364-70, Method 2)

When a current of 3 A is applied to the VBUS pin and its corresponding GND pin (i.e., pins 1 and 4 in a USB Standard-A or USB Standard-B connector or pins 1 and 5 in a USB Micro-B connector), the delta temperature shall not exceed +30° C at any point on the connectors under test, when measured at an ambient temperature of 25° C.

3.7.6 USB Type-C to USB Legacy Adapter Assemblies (Normative)

Only the following standard legacy adapter assemblies are defined:

- *USB 2.0* Type-C plug to *USB 2.0* Micro-B receptacle
- USB Full-Featured Type-C plug to *USB 3.1* Standard-A receptacle

3.7.6.1 USB 2.0 Type-C Plug to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Receptacle Adapter Assembly (Normative)

This adapter assembly supports only the *USB 2.0* signaling. It shall not exceed 150 mm total length, measured from end to end. Table 3-33 defines the electrical requirements.

Table 3-33 USB D+/D− Signal Integrity Requirements for USB Type-C to Legacy USB Adapter Assemblies (Normative)

Items	Descriptions and Procedures	Requirements
Differential Impedance	EIA 364-108 This test ensures that the D+/D− lines of the adapter assembly have the proper impedance. For the entire adaptor assembly.	75 ohms min and 105 ohms max. 400 ps rise time (20%-80%).
Intra-pair Skew	EIA 364 – 103 This test ensures that the signal on both the D+ and D− lines of adapter assembly arrive at the receiver at the same time.	20 ps max. 400 ps rise time (20%-80%).
Differential Insertion Loss	EIA 364 – 101 This test ensures the D+/D− pair of an adapter assembly can provide adequate signal strength to the receiver.	−0.7 dB max @ 400 MHz
D+ or D− DC Resistance	This test ensures the D+/D− has the proper DC resistance range in order to predict the EOP level and set the *USB 2.0* disconnect level.	2.5 ohms max.

3.7.6.2 USB Full-Featured Type-C Plug to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly (Normative)

The USB Full-Featured Type-C plug to *USB 3.1* Standard–A receptacle adapter assembly is intended to be used with a direct-attach device (e.g., USB thumb drive). A system is not guaranteed to function when using an adapter assembly together with a Standard USB cable assembly.

To minimize the impact of the adapter assembly to system signal integrity, the adapter assembly should meet the informative design targets in Table 3-34.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-34 Design Targets for USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Adapter Assemblies (Informative)

Items	Design Targets
Differential Return Loss	≤ −15 dB to 5 GHz Normalized with 85 ohms.
Differential Insertion Loss	≥ −2.4 dB to 2.5 GHz, ≥ −3.5 dB to 5 GHz
Differential NEXT between SuperSpeed Pairs	≤ −40 dB to 2.5 GHz ≤ −34 dB at 5 GHz
Differential NEXT and FEXT between D+/D− and SuperSpeed Pairs	≤ −30 dB to 2.5 GHz

The normative requirements for the adapter assembly are defined in Table 3-33 and Table 3-35. The adapter assembly total length is limited to 150 mm max.

Table 3-35 USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly Signal Integrity Requirements (Normative)

Items	Descriptions and Procedures	Requirements
Differential Insertion Loss Fit at Nyquist Frequency (ILfitatNq)	ILfitatNq is evaluated at the SuperSpeed Gen1 Nyquist frequency.	≥ −2.4 dB at 2.5 GHz ≥ −3.5 dB at 5 GHz
Integrated Differential Multi-reflection (IMR)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert ILD(f)\rvert^2\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −38 dB, Tb = 200 ps ≤ −27 dB, Tb = 100 ps
Integrated Differential Crosstalk on SuperSpeed (ISSXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}(\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert NEXTs(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert Vdd(f)\rvert^2\lvert NEXTd(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ where: *NEXTs* = NEXT between SuperSpeed pairs *NEXTd* = NEXT between D+/D− and SuperSpeed pairs *Vdd(f)* = Input pulse spectrum on D+/D− pair, evaluated using equation shown in Figure 3-40 with Tb (UI) = 2.08 ns.	≤ −37 dB
Integrated Differential Crosstalk on D+/D- (IDDXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ where: *NEXT* = Near-end crosstalk from SuperSpeed to D+/D− *FEXT* = Far-end crosstalk from SuperSpeed to D+/D− f_{max} = 1.2 GHz	≤ −30 dB
Integrated Return Loss (IRL)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert SDD21(f)\rvert^2(\lvert SDD11(f)\rvert^2+\lvert SDD22(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −14.5 dB, Tb = 200 ps ≤ −12.0 dB, Tb = 100 ps
Diff to Comm mode	Differential to Common Mode conversion (SCD12, SCD21)	≤ −15 dB

Note: *fmax* = 7.5 GHz; *Vin(f)* is defined in Figure 3-40 with Tb (UI) = 200 ps; and *Vdd(f)* is also specified in Figure 3-40 with Tb (UI) = 2.08 ns.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.6.3 Compliant USB Legacy Receptacles used in USB Type-C to Legacy Adapter Assemblies

3.7.6.3.1 Contact Material Requirements

Refer to Section 3.7.5.3.1 for contact material requirements as these apply to legacy USB Standard-A and USB Micro-B receptacles used in USB Type-C to Legacy Adapter Assemblies.

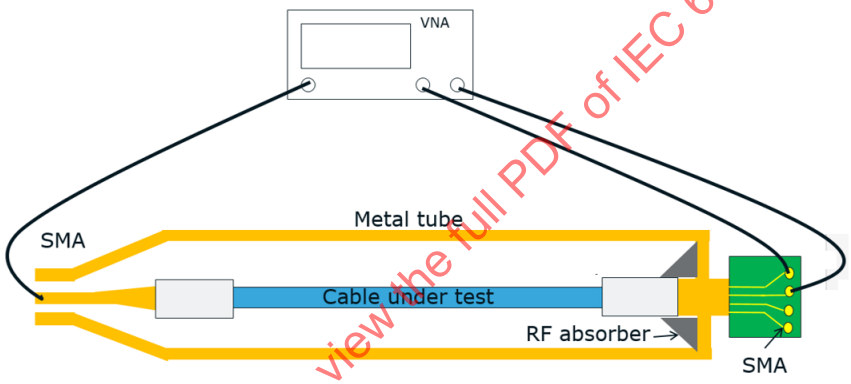
3.7.6.3.2 Contact Current Ratings

Refer to Section 3.7.5.3.2 for contact current rating requirements as these apply to legacy USB Standard-A and USB Micro-B receptacles used in USB Type-C to Legacy Adapter Assemblies.

3.7.7 Shielding Effectiveness Requirements (Normative)

The cable assembly shielding effectiveness (SE) test measures the EMI and RFI levels from the cable assembly. To perform the measurement, the cable assembly shall be installed in the cable SE test fixture as shown in Figure 3-64. The coupling factors from the cable to the fixture are characterized with a VNA.

Figure 3-64 Cable Assembly Shielding Effectiveness Testing

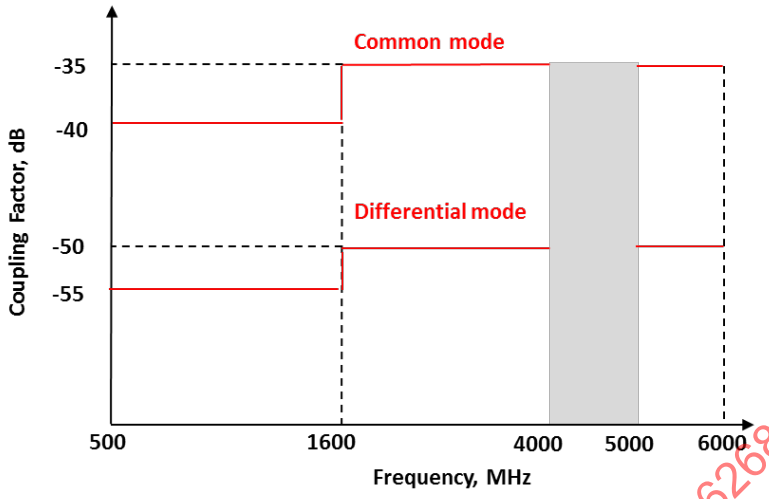


All USB Type-C cable assemblies shall pass the shielding effectiveness test for compliance. Figure 3-65 shows the pass/fail criteria for (a) USB Type-C to USB Type-C cable assemblies, (b) USB Type-C to legacy USB cable assemblies, and (c) the USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Receptacle Adapter assembly. Note that the shielding effectiveness for the frequency band from 4 GHz to 5 GHz is not specified since there is no antenna operating in this frequency range.

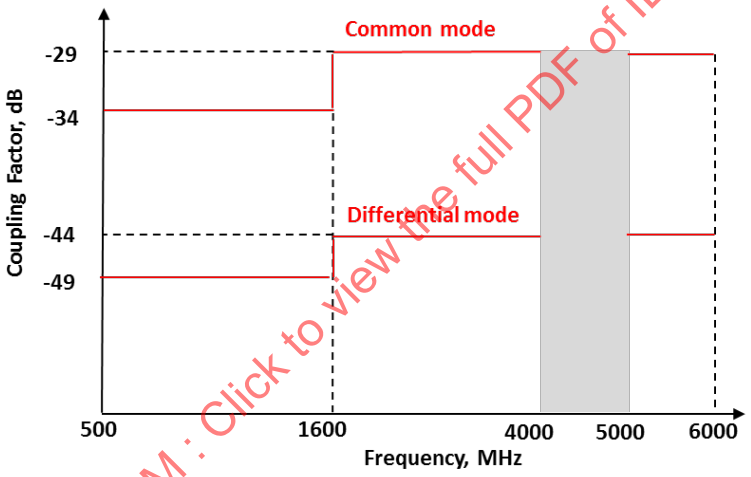
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

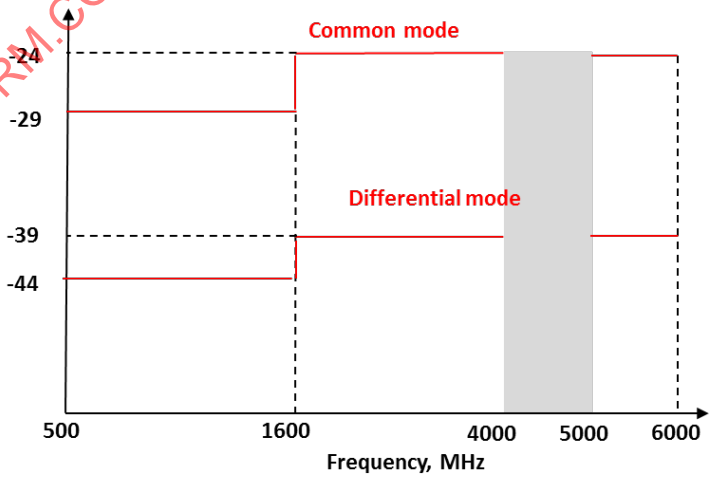
Figure 3-65 Shielding Effectiveness Pass/Fail Criteria



(a) For USB Type-C to USB Type-C Cable Assemblies



(b) For USB Type-C to legacy USB Cable Assemblies



(c) For USB Type-C to USB3.1 Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.8 DC Electrical Requirements (Normative)

Unless otherwise stated, the tests in this section are performed on mated connector pairs.

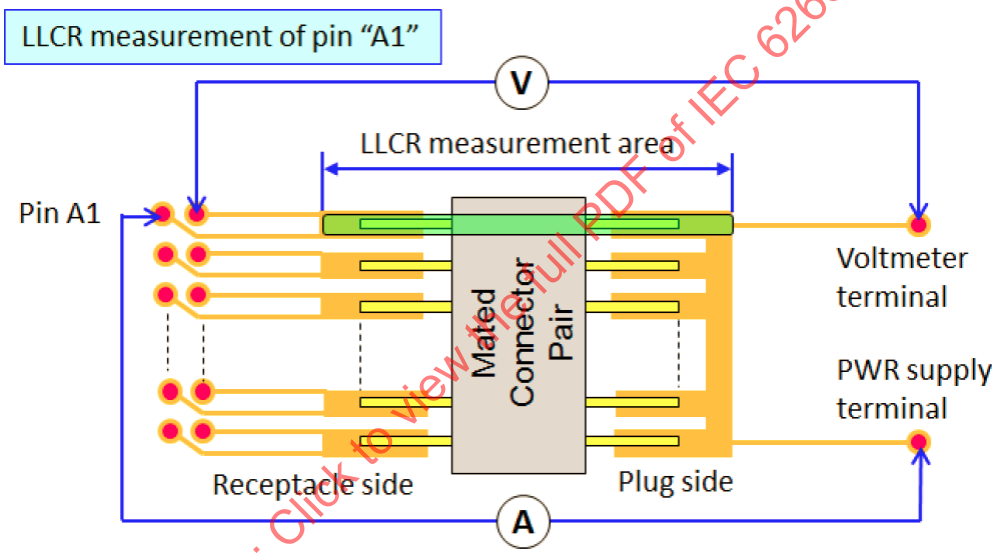
3.7.8.1 Low Level Contact Resistance (EIA 364-23B)

The low level contact resistance (LLCR) measurement is made across the plug and receptacle mated contacts and does not include any internal paddle cards or substrates of the plug or receptacle. See Figure 3-66. The following apply to the power and signal contacts:

- 40 mΩ (Max) initial for VBUS, GND and all other contacts.
- 50 mΩ (Max) after environmental stresses.
- Measure at 20 mV (Max) open circuit at 100 mA.

Refer to Section 3.8 for environmental requirements and test sequences.

Figure 3-66 LLCR Measurement Diagram



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.8.2 Dielectric Strength (EIA 364-20)

No breakdown shall occur when 100 Volts AC (RMS) is applied between adjacent contacts of unmated and mated connectors.

3.7.8.3 Insulation Resistance (EIA 364-21)

A minimum of 100 MΩ insulation resistance is required between adjacent contacts of unmated and mated connectors.

3.7.8.4 Contact Current Rating

The current rating testing for the USB Type-C connector (plug and receptacle) shall be conducted per the following set up and procedures:

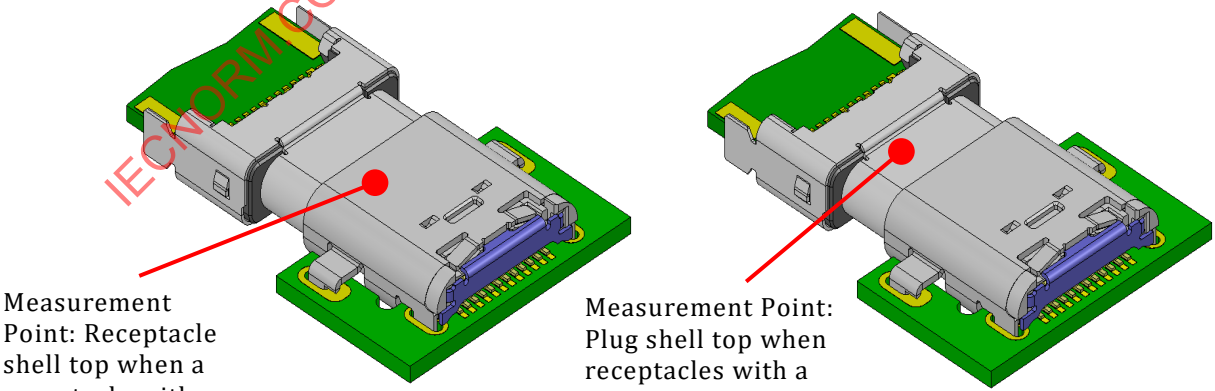
- A current of 5 A shall be applied collectively to VBUS pins (i.e., pins A4, A9, B4, and B9) and 1.25 A shall be applied to the VCONN pin (i.e., B5) as applicable, terminated through the corresponding GND pins (i.e., pins A1, A12, B1, and B12). A minimum current of 0.25 A shall also be applied individually to all the other contacts, as applicable. When current is applied to the contacts, the temperature of the connector pair shall be allowed to stabilize. The temperature rise of the outside shell surface of the mated pair above the VBUS and GND

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

contacts shall not exceed 30 °C above the ambient temperature. Figure 3-67 provides an illustration of the measurement location.

- The measurement shall be done in still air.
- The connectors shall be oriented such that the accessible outer shell surface is on top and horizontal to the ground.
- The plug and receptacle may require modification to access solder tails or cable attachment points.
- Either thermocouple or thermo-imaging (preferred) method may be used for temperature measurement
- For certification, the connector manufacturer shall provide the receptacle and plug samples under test mounted on a current rating test PCB with no copper planes. A cable plug may use short wires to attach the cable attachment points together rather than using a current rating test PCB.
    - The current rating test PCBs shall be of a 2-layer construction. If 2-layer construction is not possible due to the solder tail configuration, VBUS and ground traces shall be located on the outer layers with the inner layers reserved for signal traces, as required; VCONN traces may be routed either on internal or external layers. Table 3-36 defines the requirements for the test PCB thickness and traces. The trace length applies to each PCB (receptacle PCB and plug PCB) and is from the contact terminal to the current source tie point. Figure 3-68 provides an informative partial trace illustration of the current rating test PCB.
    - If short wires are used instead of a current rating test PCB, the wire length shall not exceed 70 mm, measured from the plug contact solder point to the other end of the wire. There shall be no paddle card or overmold included in the test set-up. Each plug solder tail shall be attached with a wire with the wire gauge of AWG 36 for signals, AWG 32 for power (VBUS and VCONN), and AWG 30 for ground.

Figure 3-67 Temperature Measurement Point



Measurement Point: Receptacle shell top when a receptacle with a conductive shell is used

Measurement Point: Plug shell top when receptacles with a non-conductive shell or no shell is used

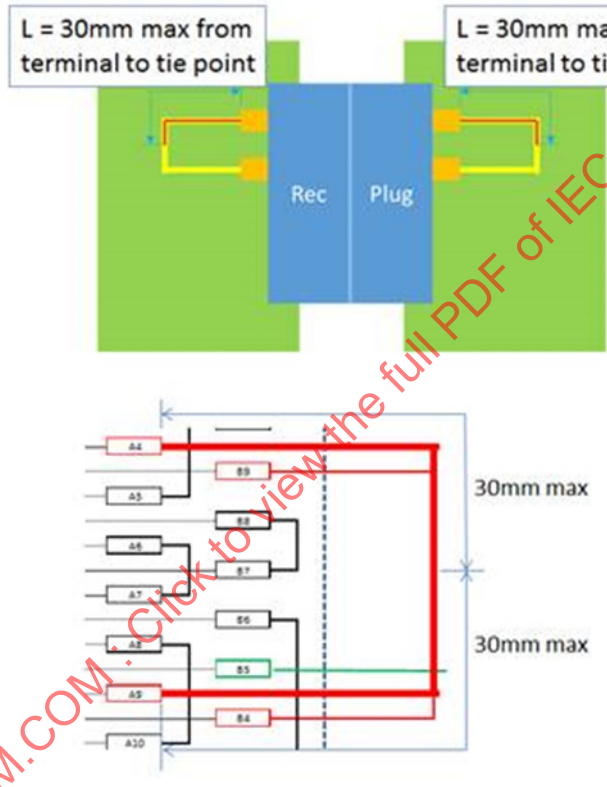
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 3-36 Current Rating Test PCB

Item	Trace width (mm)	Trace length (mm) on each PCB	Thickness
Signal trace	0.25 max.	13 max.	35 µm (1 oz. copper)
Ground trace	1.57 max.	38 max.	35 µm (1 oz. copper)
VBUS and VCONN	1.25 max.	30 max.	35 µm (1 oz. copper)
PCB	N/A	N/A	0.80 – 1.20 mm

Figure 3-68 Example Current Rating Test Fixture Trace Configuration



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.8.5 DC Resistance of D+ and D–

The DC Resistance of the D+ and D– in *USB 2.0* High-Speed capable USB Type-C devices and *USB 2.0* High-Speed capable USB Type-C Captive devices shall be equal or less than the maximum value specified in Table 3-37. The D+ and D– DC Resistance is the series combination of any resistance in switches, multiplexers, and the USB PHY.

Table 3-37 Maximum DC Resistance Requirement (Normative)

	Maximum DC Resistance
USB Type-C Device (USB 2.0 High-speed capable)	19 Ω
USB Type-C Captive Device (USB 2.0 High-speed capable)	25 Ω

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

A USB Type-C Host operating in *USB 2.0* High-Speed mode shall implement a disconnect threshold voltage (V_{HSDSC}) level as defined in the *USB 2.0* DCR ECN.

3.8 Mechanical and Environmental Requirements (Normative)

The requirements in this section apply to all USB Type-C connectors and/or cable assemblies unless otherwise specified. For USB Type-C plug connectors and cable assemblies, the test methods are based on an assumption that the cable exits the overmold in line with mating direction to a USB Type-C receptacle (i.e., straight out the back of the overmold). For USB Type-C plug connectors and cable assemblies with the cable exiting the overmold in a different direction than straight out the back (e.g., right angle to the mating direction), test fixtures and procedures shall be modified as required to accomplish the measurement.

3.8.1 Mechanical Requirements

3.8.1.1 Insertion Force (EIA 364-13)

The initial connector insertion force shall be within the range from 5 N to 20 N at a maximum rate of 12.5 mm (0.492") per minute. This requirement does not apply when the connectors are used in a docking application.

It is recommended to use a non-silicone based lubricant on the latching mechanism to reduce wear. The effects of lubricants should be restricted to insertion and extraction characteristics and should not increase the resistance of the mated connection.

3.8.1.2 Extraction Force (EIA 364-13)

The initial connector extraction force shall be within the range of 8 N to 20 N, measured after a preconditioning of five insertion/extraction cycles (i.e., the sixth extraction). After an additional twenty-five insertion/extraction cycles, the extraction force shall be measured again (i.e., the thirty-second extraction) and the extraction force shall be:

a. within 33% of the initial reading, and
b. within the range of 8 N to 20 N.

The extraction force shall be within the range of 6 N to 20 N after 10,000 insertion/ extraction cycles. The extraction force measurement shall be performed at a maximum speed of 12.5 mm (0.492”) per minute. The extraction force requirement does not apply when the connectors are used in a mechanical docking application.

It is recommended to use a non-silicone based lubricant on the latching mechanism to reduce wear. The effects of lubricants should be restricted to insertion and extraction characteristics and should not increase the resistance of the mated connection.

3.8.1.3 Durability or Insertion/Extraction Cycles (EIA 364-09)

The durability rating shall be 10,000 cycles minimum for the USB Type-C connector family. The durability test shall be done at a rate of 500 ± 50 cycles per hour and no physical damage to any part of the connector and cable assembly shall occur.

3.8.1.4 Cable Flexing (EIA 364-41, Condition 1)

No physical damage or discontinuity over 1ms during flexing shall occur to the cable assembly with Dimension X = 3.7 times the cable diameter and 100 cycles in each of two planes.

3.8.1.5 Cable Pull-Out (EIA 364-38, Method A)

No physical damage to the cable assembly shall occur when it is subjected to a 40 N axial load for a minimum of 1 minute while clamping one end of the cable plug.

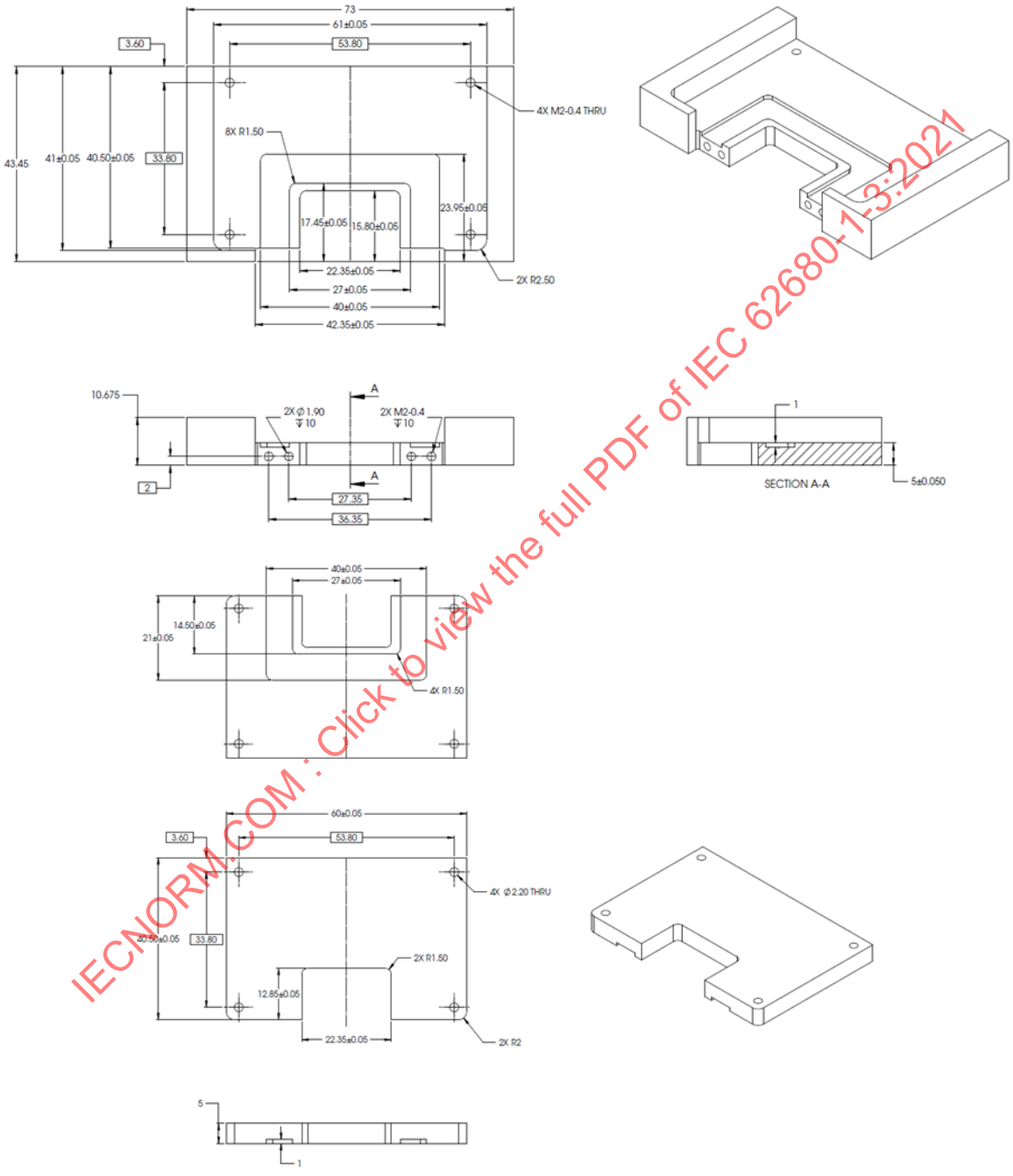
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.8.1.6 4-Axis Continuity Test

The USB Type-C connector family shall be tested for continuity under stress using a test fixture shown in Figure 3-69 or equivalent.

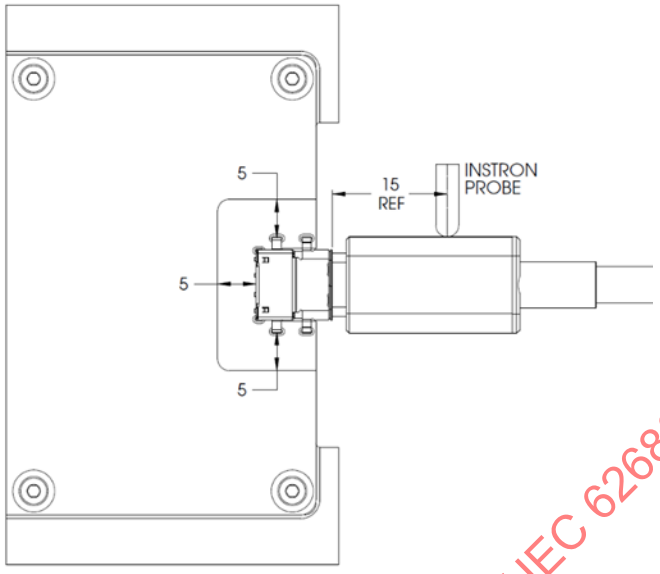
Figure 3-69 Example of 4-Axis Continuity Test Fixture



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-69 Example of 4-Axis Continuity Test Fixture, cont.



Plugs shall be supplied with a representative overmold or mounted on a 2 layer printed circuit board (PCB) between 0.8 mm and 1.0 mm thickness as applicable. A USB Type-C receptacle shall be mounted on a 2 layer PCB between 0.8 mm and 1.0 mm thickness. The PCB shall be clamped on three sides of the receptacle no further than 5 mm away from the receptacle outline. The receptacle PCB shall initially be placed in a horizontal plane, and a perpendicular moment shall be applied to the plug with a 5 mm ball tipped probe for a period of at least 10 seconds at a distance of 15 mm from the mating edge of the receptacle shell in a downward direction, perpendicular to the axis of insertion. See Table 3-38 for the force and moment to be applied. Any configuration of non-conductive shell receptacles shall be tested at the values specified for the vertical receptacle configuration.

Table 3-38 Force and Moment Requirements

Receptacle configuration with respect to mounting surface	Force at 15 mm from receptacle shell mating edge (N)	Moment with respect to receptacle shell mating edge (Nm)
Right angle	20	0.30
Vertical[1]	8	0.12
Notes: 1. Any configuration of non-conductive shell receptacles shall be tested at the values specified for the vertical receptacle configuration.		

The continuity across each contact shall be measured throughout the application of the tensile force. Each non-ground contact shall also be tested to confirm that it does not short to the shell during the stresses. The PCB shall then be rotated 90 degrees such that the cable is still inserted horizontally and the tensile force in Table 3-38 shall be applied again in the downward direction and continuity measured as before. This test is repeated for 180 degree and 270 degree rotations. Passing parts shall not exhibit any discontinuities or shorting to the shell greater than 1 µs duration in any of the four orientations.

One method for measuring the continuity through the contacts is to short all the wires at the end of the cable pigtail and apply a voltage through a pull-up to each of VBUS, USB D+, USB D−, SBU, CC, and TX/RX pins, with the GND pins connected to ground.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

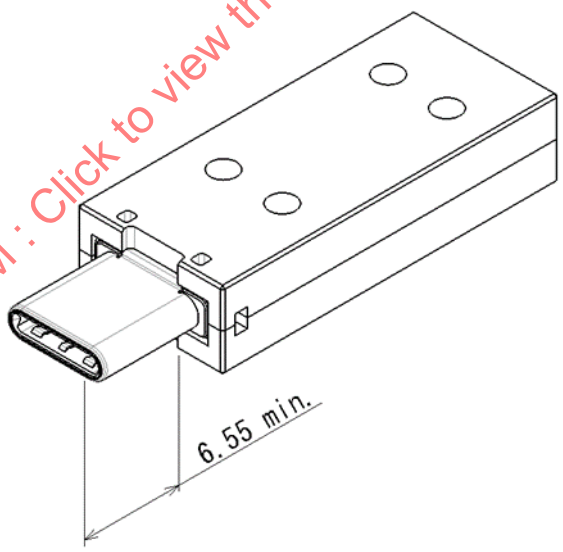
Alternate methods are allowed to verify continuity through all pins.

3.8.1.7 Wrenching Strength

USB Type-C plugs on cable assemblies and fixture plugs without overmold (including PCB-mount USB Type-C plugs) shall be tested using the mechanical wrenching test fixture defined in the Universal Serial Bus Type-C Connectors and Cable Assemblies Compliance Document. For plug without overmold, the supplier shall provide a plug test fixture that conforms to the specified plug overmold dimensions for the USB Type-C plug (see Figure 3-70). The fixture may be metal or other suitable material. Perpendicular moments are applied to the plug with a 5 mm ball tipped probe for a period of at least 10 seconds when inserted in the test fixture to achieve the defined moments in four directions of up or down (i.e., perpendicular to the long axis of the plug opening) and left or right (i.e., in the plane of the plug opening). Compliant connectors shall meet the following force thresholds:

- A moment of 0-0.75 Nm (e.g., 50 N at 15 mm from the edge of the receptacle) is applied to a plug inserted in the test fixture in each of the four directions. A single plug shall be used for this test. Some mechanical deformation may occur. The plug shall be mated with the continuity test fixture after the test forces have been applied to verify no damage has occurred that causes discontinuity or shorting. The continuity test fixture shall provide a planar surface on the mating side located 6.20 ± 0.20 mm from the receptacle Datum A, perpendicular to the direction of insertion. No moment forces are applied to the plug during this continuity test. Figure 3-71 illustrates an example continuity test fixture to perform the continuity test. The Dielectric Withstanding Voltage test shall be conducted after the continuity test to verify plug compliance.

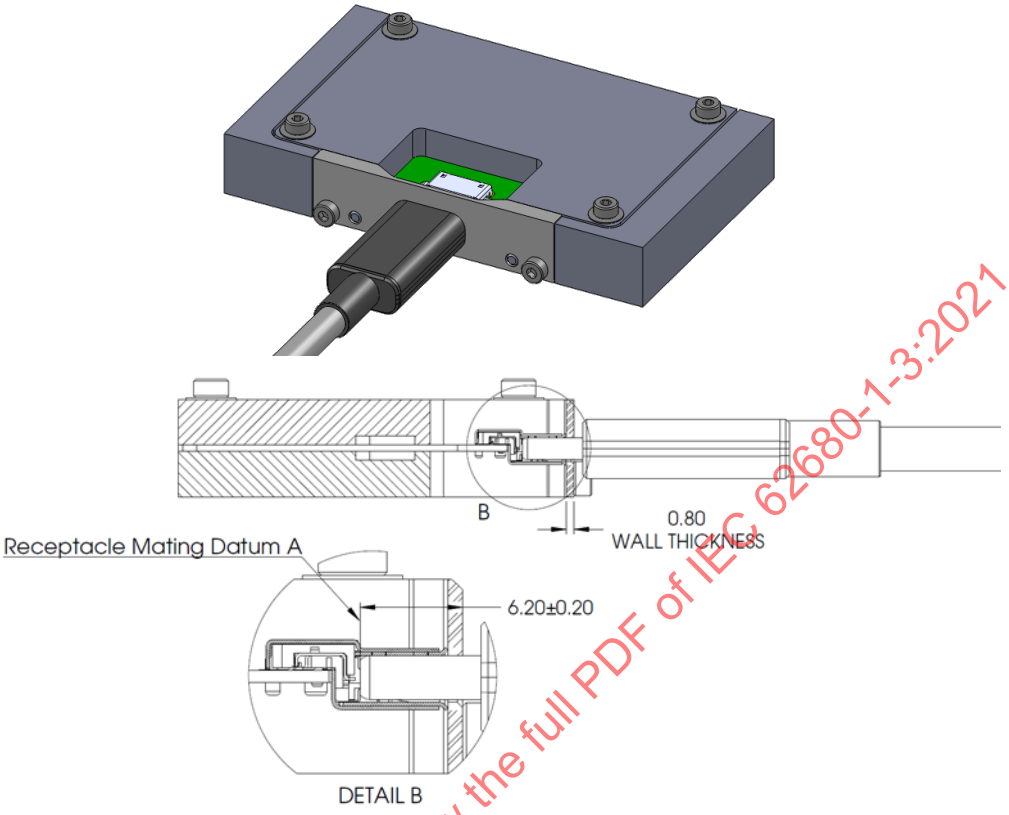
Figure 3-70 Example Wrenching Strength Test Fixture for Plugs without Overmold



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

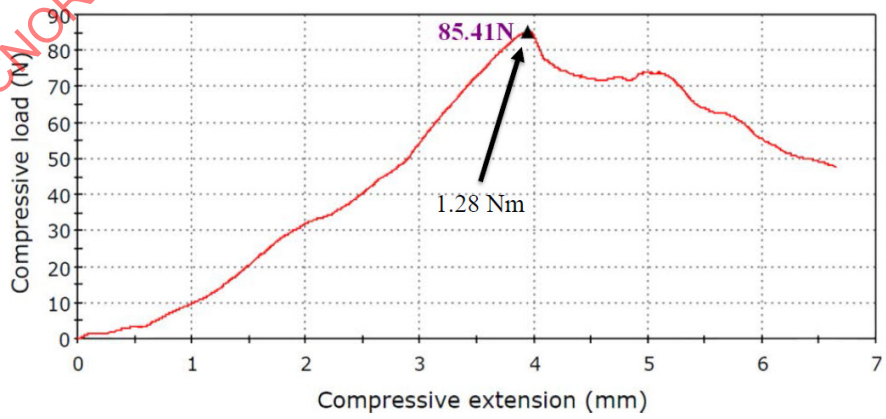
Figure 3-71 Reference Wrenching Strength Continuity Test Fixture



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

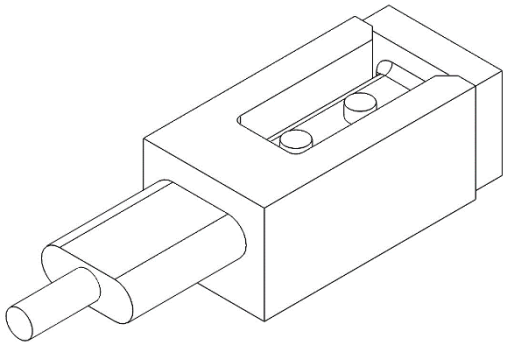
- The plug shall disengage from the test fixture or demonstrate mechanical failure (i.e., the force applied during the test procedure peaks and drops off) when a moment of 2.0 Nm is applied to the plug in the up and down directions and a moment 3.5 Nm is applied to the plug in the left and right directions. A new plug is required for each of the four test directions. An example of the mechanical failure point and an illustration of the wrenching test fixture are shown in Figure 3-72 and Figure 3-73, respectively.

Figure 3-72 Example of Wrenching Strength Test Mechanical Failure Point



Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-73 Wrenching Strength Test with Cable in Fixture



3.8.1.8 Restriction of Hazardous Substances

It is recommended that components be RoHS compliant.

3.8.2 Environmental Requirements

The connector interface environmental tests shall follow EIA 364-1000.01, Environmental Test Methodology for Assessing the Performance of Electrical Connectors and Sockets Used in Business Office Applications.

Since the connector defined has more than 0.127 mm wipe length, Test Group 6 in EIA 364-1000.01 is not required. The temperature life test duration and the mixed flowing gas test duration values are derived from EIA 364-1000.01 based on the field temperature per the following.

Table 3-39 Environmental Test Conditions

Temperature Life test temperature and duration	105 °C for 120 hours
Temperature Life test temperature and duration for preconditioning	105 °C for 72 hours
Mixed flowing gas test duration	7 days

The pass/fail criterion for the low level contact resistance (LLCR) is as defined in Section 3.7.8.1. The durability ratings are defined in Section 3.8.1.3.

3.8.2.1 Reference Materials (Informative)

This specification does not specify materials for connectors and cables. Connector and cable manufacturers should select appropriate materials based on performance requirements. The information below is provided for reference only.

Note: Connector and cable manufacturers should comply with contact plating requirements per the following options:

Option I

Receptacle

Contact area: (Min) 0.05 µm Au + (Min) 0.75 µm Ni-Pd on top of (Min) 2.0 µm Ni

Plug

Contact area: (Min) 0.05 µm Au + (Min) 0.75 µm Ni-Pd on top of (Min) 2.0 µm Ni

Option II

Receptacle

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Contact area: (Min) 0.75 µm Au on top of (Min) 2.0 µm Ni

Plug

Contact area: (Min) 0.75 µm Au on top of (Min) 2.0 µm Ni

Other reference materials that connector and cable manufacturers select based on performance parameters listed in Table 3-40 are for reference only.

Table 3-40 Reference Materials

Component	Materials
Cable	Conductor: copper with tin or silver plating
	SDP Shield: AL foil or AL/mylar foil
	Coaxial shield: copper strand
	Braid: Tin plated copper or aluminum
	Jacket: PVC or halogen free substitute material
Cable Overmold	Thermoset or thermoplastic
Connector Shells	Stainless steel or phosphor bronze
Plug Side Latches	Stainless steel
Receptacle Mid-Plate	Stainless steel
Plug Internal EMC Spring	Stainless steel or high yield strength copper alloy
Receptacle EMC Pad	Stainless steel or phosphor bronze
Receptacle Shell	Stainless steel or phosphor bronze
Receptacle Tongue	Glass-filled nylon
Housing	Thermoplastics capable of withstanding lead-free soldering temperature

Note: Halogen-free materials should be considered for all plastics

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.9 Docking Applications (Informative)

In this specification, docking refers to plugging a device directly into a dock without using a cable assembly. The USB Type-C connector is defined to support such applications.

The connector is only part of a docking solution. A complete docking solution at the system level may also include retention or locking mechanisms, alignment mechanisms, docking plug mounting solutions, and protocols supported through the connector. This specification does not attempt to standardize system docking solutions, therefore there is no interoperability requirement for docking solutions.

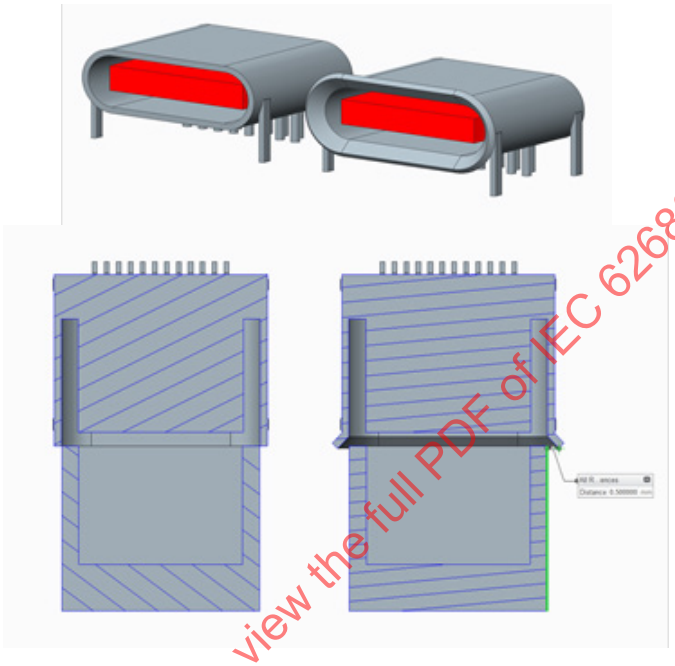
The following list includes the requirements and guidelines when using the USB Type-C connector for docking:

1. The USB Type-C plug used for docking shall work with compliant USB Type-C receptacle. It shall comply with all dimensional, electrical and mechanical requirements.
2. If the plug on the dock does not include the side latches, then the dock should provide a retention or locking mechanism to secure the device to the plug. The retention latches also serve as one of the ground return paths for EMC. The docking design should ensure adequate EMC performance without the side latches if they are not present.
3. The internal EMC fingers are not required for the docking plug as long as the receptacle and plug shells have adequate electrical connection.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4. Alignment is critical for docking. Depending on system design, standard USB Type-C connectors alone may not provide adequate alignment for mating. System level alignment is highly recommended. Alignment solutions are implementation-specific.
5. Fine alignment is provided by the connector. The receptacle front face may have lead-in features for fine alignment. Figure 3-74 shows an example of a USB Type-C receptacle with a lead-in flange compared to a receptacle without the flange.

Figure 3-74 USB Type-C Cable Receptacle Flange Example



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.10 Implementation Notes and Design Guides

This section discusses a few implementation notes and design guides to help users design and use the USB Type-C connectors and cables.

3.10.1 EMC Management (Informative)

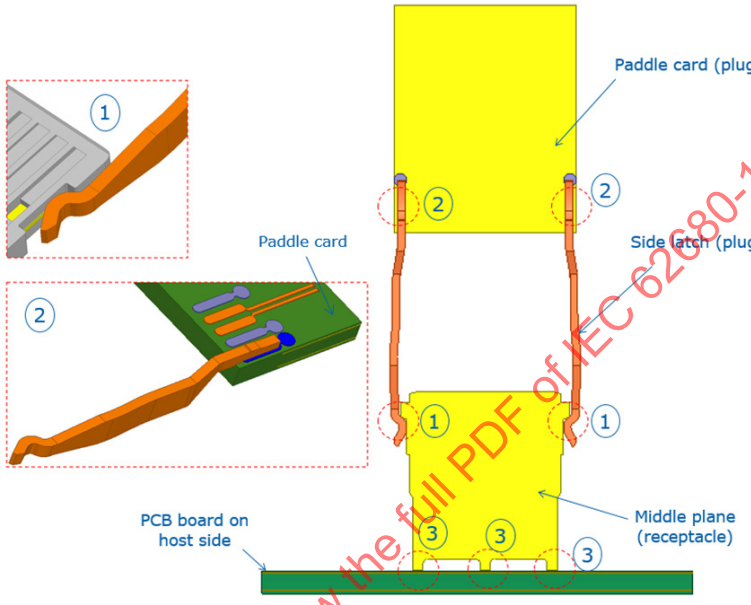
Connector and cable assembly designers, as well as system implementers should pay attention to receptacle and cable assembly shielding to ensure a low-impedance grounding path. The following are guidelines for EMC management:

- The quality of raw cables should be ensured. The intra-pair skew or the differential to common mode conversion of the TX/RX pairs has a significant impact on cable EMC and should be controlled within the limits of this specification.
- The cable external braid should be physically connected to the plug metal shell as close to 360° as possible to control EMC. Without appropriate shielding termination, even a perfect cable with zero intra-pair skew may not meet EMC requirements. Copper tape may be needed to shield off the braid termination area.
- The wire termination contributes to common-mode noise. The breakout distance for the wire termination should be kept as small as possible to optimize EMC and signal integrity performance. If possible, symmetry should be maintained for the two lines within a differential pair.
- Besides the mechanical function, the side latches on the plug and the mid-plate in the receptacle also play a role for EMC. This is illustrated in Figure 3-75:

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

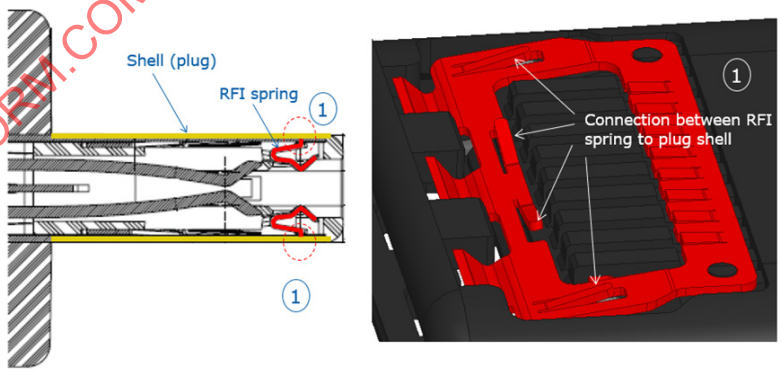
1. The side latch should have electrical connection to the receptacle mid-plate (a docking plug may not have side latches).
2. The side latches should be terminated to the paddle card GND plane inside the plug.
3. The mid-plate should be directly connected to system PCB GND plane with three or more solder leads/tails.

Figure 3-75 EMC Guidelines for Side Latch and Mid-plate



- The internal RFI finger inside the plug should have adequate connection points to the inner surface of the plug shell. Four or more connection points are recommended as illustrated in Figure 3-76.

Figure 3-76 EMC Finger Connections to Plug Shell



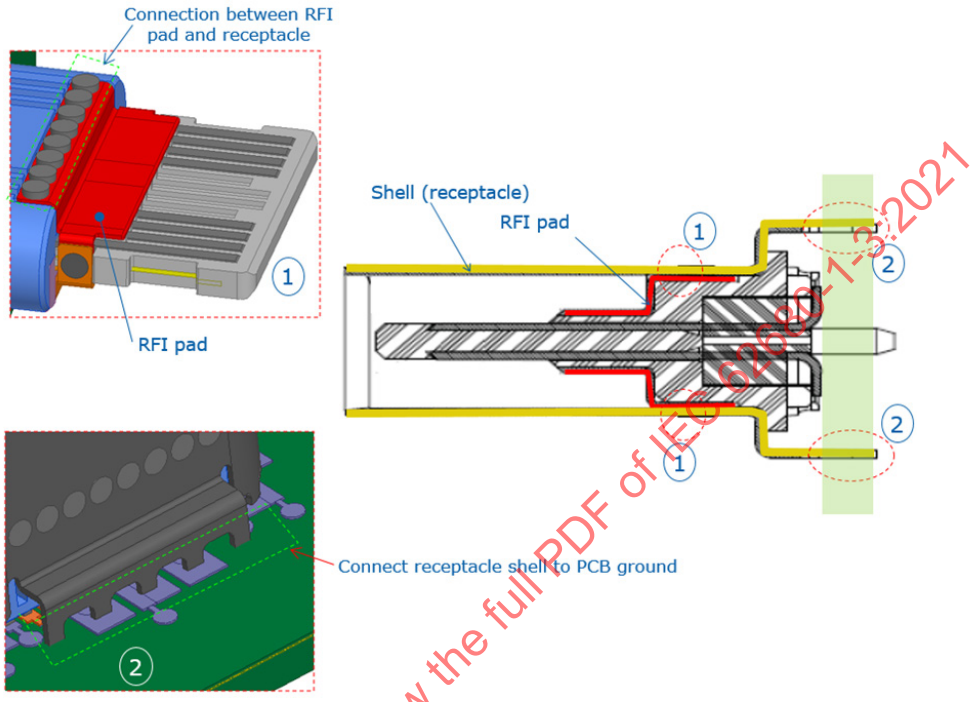
- The EMC fingers inside the plug mates with the EMC pad in the receptacle. It is important for the EMC pad to have adequate connections to the receptacle shell. As illustrated in Figure 3-77, there are multiple laser welding points between the EMC pads and the receptacle shell, top and bottom.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

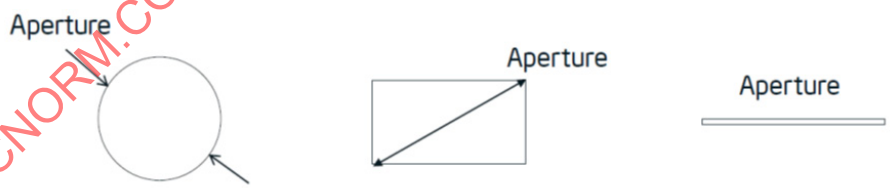
- The receptacle shell should have sufficient connection points to the system PCB GND plane with apertures as small as possible. Figure 3-77 illustrates an example with multiple solder tails to connect the receptacle shell to system PCB GND.

Figure 3-77 EMC Pad Connections to Receptacle Shell



- Apertures in the receptacle and plug shells should be minimized. If apertures are unavoidable, a maximum aperture size of 1.5 mm is recommended. See Figure 3-78 for aperture illustrations. Copper tape may be applied to seal the apertures inside the cable plug.

Figure 3-78 Examples of Connector Apertures



- The receptacle connectors should be connected to metal chassis or enclosures through grounding fingers, screws, or any other way to manage EMC.

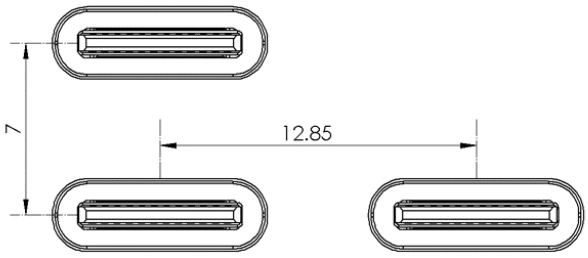
3.10.2 Stacked and Side-by-Side Connector Physical Spacing (Informative)

Stacked and side-by-side USB connectors are commonly used in PC systems. Figure 3-79 illustrates the recommended spacing between connectors for stacked and side-by-side configurations.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-79 Recommended Minimum Spacing between Connectors



3.10.3 Cable Mating Considerations (Informative)

The receptacle mounting location, exterior product surfaces, cable overmold, and plug mating length need to be considered to ensure the USB Type-C plug is allowed to fully engage the USB Type-C receptacle. Figure 3-80 illustrates the recommended minimum plug overmold clearance to allow the cable plug to fully seat in the product receptacle.

Figure 3-80 Recommended Minimum Plug Overmold Clearance

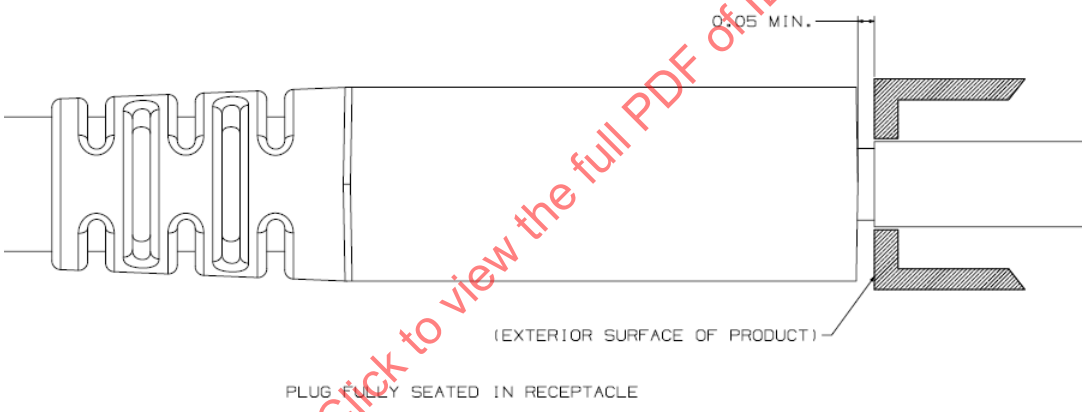
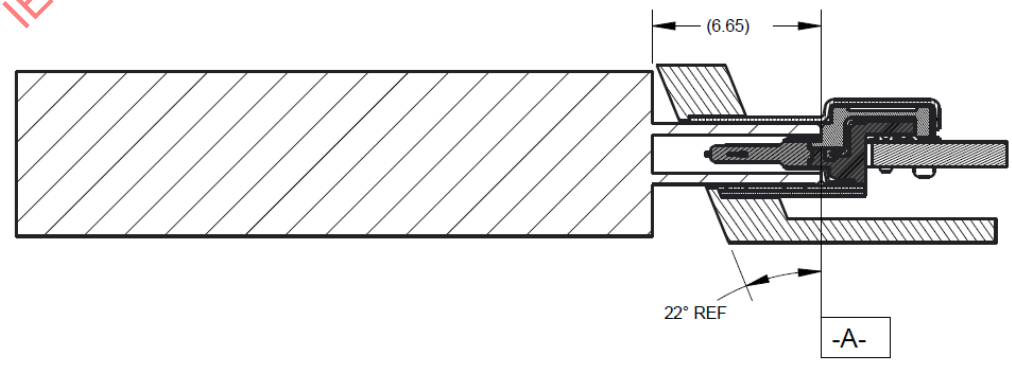


Figure 3-81 illustrates special considerations required when external walls are angled. For such applications, the USB Type-C receptacle shell may not provide as much mechanical alignment protection to the receptacle tongue as in the full shell design. Design options to allow the receptacle to pass mechanical test requirements include relief in the exterior wall surface to allow use of a full shell receptacle or use of a receptacle specifically designed for the application.

Figure 3-81 Cable Plug Overmold and an Angled Surface



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4 Functional

This chapter covers the functional requirements for the signaling across the USB Type-C® cables and connectors. This includes functional signal definition, discovery and configuration processes, and power delivery.

4.1 Signal Summary

Table 4-1 summarizes the list of signals used on the USB Type-C connectors.

Table 4-1 USB Type-C List of Signals

Signal Group	Signal	Description
USB 3.2 / USB4™	**TXp1, TXn1** **RXp1, RXn1** **TXp2, TXn2** **RXp2, RXn2**	Both the USB 3.2 SuperSpeed USB and USB4 serial data interfaces defines 1 differential transmit pair and 1 differential receive pair per lane. On a USB Type-C receptacle, two sets of signal pins are defined to support dual-lane operation and enable plug flipping feature.
USB 2.0	**Dp1, Dn1** **Dp2, Dn2**	USB 2.0 serial data interface defines a differential pair. On a USB Type-C receptacle, two set of USB 2.0 signal pins are defined to enable plug flipping feature.
Configuration	**CC1, CC2** (receptacle) **CC** (plug)	CC channel in the plug used for connection detect, interface configuration and VCONN.
Auxiliary signals	**SBU1, SBU2**	Sideband Use. For USB4, these signals are used for SBTX and SBRX.
Power	**VBUS**	USB cable bus power
	VCONN (plug)	USB plug power
	GND	USB cable return current path

4.2 Signal Pin Descriptions

4.2.1 SuperSpeed USB Pins

TXp1, TXn1
TXp2, TXn2

These pins are required to implement the system's transmit path of either a USB 3.2 SuperSpeed or USB4 TX/RX interface. The transmitter differential pair in a port are routed to the receiver differential pair in the port at the opposite end of the path. Depending on the established connection, the USB 3.2 Specification or USB4 Specification defines all electrical characteristics, enumeration, protocol, and management features for this interface.

Two pairs of pins are defined to enable dual-lane operation – see Section 4.5.1.1 for further definition.

RXp1, RXn1
RXp2, RXn2

These pins are required to implement the system's receive path of a USB 3.2 SuperSpeed or USB4 TX/RX interface. The receiver differential pair in a port are routed to the transmitter differential pair in the port at the opposite end of the path. Depending on the established connection, the USB 3.2 Specification or USB4 Specification defines all electrical characteristics, enumeration, protocol, and management features for this interface.

Two pairs of pins are defined to enable dual-lane operation – see Section 4.5.1.1 for further definition.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.2.2 USB 2.0 Pins

Dp1, Dn1 (Dp2, Dn2) These pins are required to implement *USB 2.0* functionality. *USB 2.0* in all three modes (LS, FS, and HS) is supported. The *USB 2.0 Specification* defines all electrical characteristics, enumeration, and bus protocol and bus management features for this interface.

Two pairs of pins are defined to enable the plug flipping feature – see Section 4.5.1.1 for further definition.

4.2.3 Auxiliary Signal Pins

SBU1, SBU2 These pins are assigned to sideband use. For *USB4*, these signals are used for SBTX and SBRX. Refer to Section 4.3 for the functional requirements.

4.2.4 Power and Ground Pins

VBUS These pins are for USB cable bus power as defined by the USB specifications. VBUS is only present when a Source-to-Sink connection across the CC channel is present – see Section 4.5.1.2.1. Refer to Section 4.4.2 for the functional requirements for VBUS.

VCONN VCONN is applied to the unused CC pin to supply power to the local plug. Refer to Section 4.4.3 for the functional requirements for VCONN.

GND Return current path.

4.2.5 Configuration Pins

CC1, CC2, CC These pins are used to detect connections and configure the interface across the USB Type-C cables and connectors. Refer to Section 4.5 for the functional definition. Once a connection is established, CC1 or CC2 will be reassigned for providing power over the VCONN pin of the plug – see Section 4.5.1.2.1.

4.3 Sideband Use (SBU)

The Sideband Use pins (SBU1 and SBU2) are limited to the uses as defined by this specification and additional functionality defined in the *USB4 Specification*. See Appendix E and Appendix A for use of the SBU pins in Alternate Modes and Audio Adapter Accessory Mode.

The SBU pins on a port shall either be open circuit or have a weak pull-down to ground no stronger than zSBUTermination.

These pins are pre-wired in the standard USB Full-Featured Type-C cable as individual single-ended wires (SBU_A and SBU_B). Note that SBU1 and SBU2 are cross-connected in the cable.

When operating in *USB4*, these pins are used as the *USB4* Sideband Channel with SBU1 mapping to SBTX and SBU2 mapping to SBRX. SBTX and SBRX functional requirements are as defined in the *USB4 Specification*. When a port determines that the locally-inserted plug is flipped (i.e. CC1 is open, CC2 is terminated), the *USB4 Specification* (reference Sideband Channel Lane Reversal) dictates that the port flip the SBTX and SBRX mappings to SBU1 and SBU2 in order to assure proper sideband transmit-to-receive end-to-end operation.

4.4 Power and Ground

4.4.1 IR Drop

The maximum allowable cable IR drop for ground (including ground on a captive cable) shall be 250 mV and for VBUS shall be 500 mV through the cable to the cable's maximum rated VBUS current

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

capacity. When VCONN is being sourced, the IR drop for the ground shall still be met considering any additional VCONN return current.

Figure 4-1 illustrates what parameters contribute to the IR drop and where it shall be measured. The IR drop includes the contact resistance of the mated plug and receptacles at each end.

Figure 4-1 Cable IR Drop

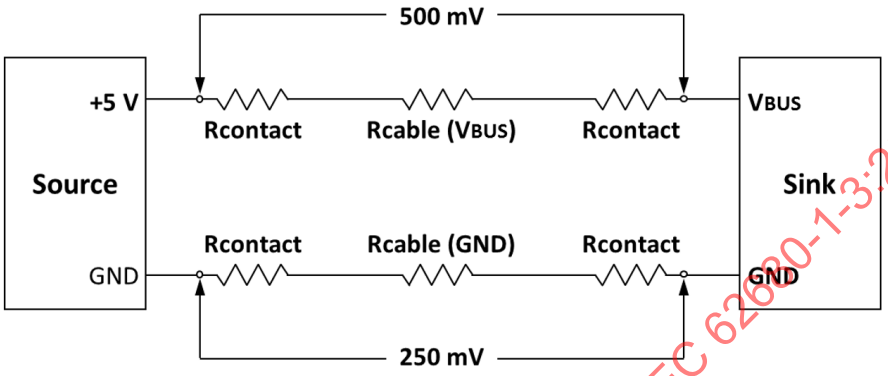
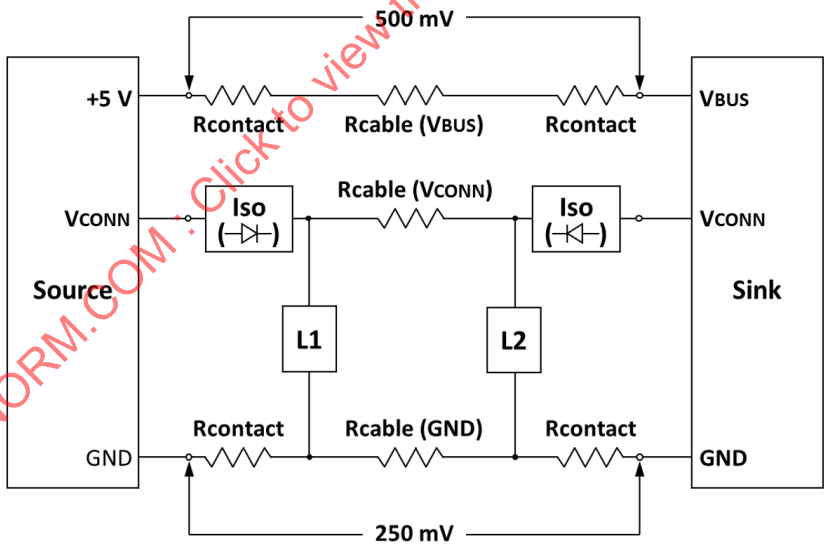


Figure 4-2 illustrates what parameters contribute to the IR drop for a powered cable and where it shall be measured. Note that the powered cable includes isolation elements (Iso) and loads (L1 and L2) for the functions in the powered cable such as *USB PD* controllers. The IR drop shall remain below 250 mV in all cases.

Figure 4-2 Cable IR Drop for powered cables



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.4.2 VBUS

The allowable default range for VBUS as measured at the Source receptacle shall be as defined by the *USB 2.0 Specification* and *USB 3.2 Specification*. For *USB4*, the *USB 3.2 Specification* is used for this requirement. NOTE that due to higher currents allowed, legacy devices may experience a higher voltage (up to 5.5V maximum) at light loads.

The Source's USB Type-C receptacle VBUS pin shall remain unpowered and shall limit the capacitance between VBUS and GND as specified in Table 4-2 until a Sink is attached. The VBUS pin shall return to

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

the unpowered state when the Sink is detached. See Table 4-29 for VBUS timing values. Legacy hosts/chargers that by default source VBUS when connected using any legacy USB connector (Standard-A, Micro-B, etc.) to USB Type-C cable or adapter are exempted from these two requirements.

A DRP or Source (or device with Accessory Support) implementing an Rp pull-up as its method of connection detection shall provide an impedance between VBUS and GND on its receptacle pins as specified in Table 4-2 when not sourcing power on VBUS (i.e., when in states Unattached.SRC or Unattached.Accessory).

Table 4-2 VBUS Source Characteristics

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
VBUS Leakage Impedance	72.4 kΩ		Leakage between VBUS pins and GND pins on receptacle when VBUS is not being sourced.
VBUS Capacitance		3000 µF	Capacitance for source-only ports between VBUS and GND pins on receptacle when VBUS is not being sourced.
		10 µF	Capacitance for DRP ports between VBUS and GND pins on receptacle when VBUS is not being sourced.

Table 4-3 specifies VBUS Sink characteristics with regard to disconnect behavior based on monitoring VBUS. Sinks may monitor the CC pin for the removal of Rp by the Source as an additional indication of disconnect.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-3 VBUS Sink Characteristics

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
tSinkDisconnect		40 ms	Time limit for transition from Attached.SNK to Unattached.SNK
vSinkDisconnect[1]	0.8V	3.67V	Threshold used for transition from Attached.SNK to Unattached.SNK when VBUS is 5 V. This also applies for *USB PD* contracts at 5 V. For *USB PD* contracts at 5 V, the Sink shall take IR drop and margin into account when selecting this threshold.
		PPS_APDO_Min_Voltage * 0.95	Threshold used for transition from Attached.SNK to Unattached.SNK. This applies for *USB PD* PPS contracts for RDO Output Voltage less than or equal to 5 V. This also applies for *USB PD* PPS contracts operating in the Current Limit mode. The Sink shall take IR drop and margin into account when selecting this threshold.
vSinkPD_min[1]		vNew – 750 mV + vValid	Minimum valid VBUS voltage seen by sink when negotiated through *USB PD*. vNew = vSrcNew (min) or vPpsNew (min) as defined in *USB PD*. 750 mV= 500 mV + 250 mV (maximum IR drop) vValid = vSrcValid (min) or vPpsValid (min) as defined in *USB PD*.
vSinkDisconnectPD[1]	90% of vSinkPD_min	vSinkPD_min	VBUS disconnect threshold when VBUS voltage was negotiated through *USB PD* to a value above 5 V. This applies for *USB PD* PPS contracts for RDO Output Voltage above 5 V. This also applies for *USB PD* PPS contracts operating in the Constant Voltage mode.
VBUS Capacitance		10 µF	Capacitance between VBUS and GND pins on receptacle when not in Attached.SNK.

Note 1: See Section 4.5.2.2.5.2 with regard to applicability of this requirement.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.4.3 VCONN

VCONN is provided by the Source to power cables with electronics in the plug. VCONN is provided over the CC pin that is determined not to be connected to the CC wire of the cable.

Initially, VCONN shall be sourced on all Source USB Type-C receptacles that utilize the TX and RX pins during specific connection states as described in Section 4.5.2.2. Subsequently, if VCONN is not explicitly required by the cable or device as indicated in its eMarker, VCONN may be removed as described in Table 4-4. VCONN may also be sourced by USB Type-C receptacles that do not utilize the TX and RX pins as described in Section 4.5.2.2. *USB PD* VCONN_Swap command also provides the Source a means to request that the attached Sink source VCONN.

Table 4-4 USB Type-C Source Port's VCONN Requirements Summary

D+/D–	TX/RX, VPD	> 3 A	VCONN Requirements
No	No	No	Not required to source VCONN
Yes	No	No	Not required to source VCONN
Yes	Yes	No	Required to source 1 W for x1 implementations and 1.5 W for x2 implementations. If not otherwise required, VCONN power may be removed after the source has read the cable's eMarker and has determined that it is not an active cable nor a VPD.
No	No	Yes	Required to source 100 mW. If not otherwise required, VCONN power may be removed after the source has read the cable's eMarker and has determined the cable's current carrying capacity.
Yes	No	Yes	Required to source 100 mW. If not otherwise required, VCONN power may be removed after the source has read the cable's eMarker and has determined the cable's current carrying capacity.
Yes	Yes	Yes	Required to source 1 W for x1 implementations and 1.5 W for x2 implementations. If not otherwise required, VCONN power may be removed after the source has read the cable's eMarker and has determined the cable's current carrying capacity and that it is not an active cable nor a VPD.

Table 4-5 provides the voltage and power requirements that shall be met for VCONN. See Section 4.9 for more details about Electronically Marked Cables. See Appendix E regarding optional support for an increased VCONN power range in Alternate Modes.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-5 VCONN Source Characteristics

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
vVCONNValid	3.0 V	5.5 V	The voltage range over which VCONN is considered valid.
Power for Sources with TX/RX Signals	x1 1 W		Source may latch-off VCONN if excessive power is drawn beyond the specified inrush and mode wattage. Source may disable VCONN per Table 4-4. Alternate modes may require higher power.
	x2 1.5 W		
Power for Sources with VPD support	1 W		Source may latch-off VCONN if excessive power is drawn beyond the specified inrush and mode wattage.
Power for Sources in USB Suspend or without TX/RX Signals	100 mW		Minimum power Source must provide in USB Suspend or without TX/RX signals. Source may disable VCONN per Table 4-4.
Rdch	30 Ω	6120 Ω	Discharge resistance applied in UnattachedWait.SRC between the CC pin being discharged and GND.

To aid in reducing the power associated with supplying VCONN, a Source is allowed to either not source VCONN or turn off VCONN under any of the following conditions:

- Ra is not detected on the CC pin after tCCDebounce when the other CC pin is in the SRC.Rd state, or
- if there is no GoodCRC response to *USB PD* Discover Identity messages sent to SOP'.

If the power source used to supply VCONN power is a shared power source for other USB VCONN and VBUS outputs, it must be bypassed with capacitance identical to the VBUS capacitance requirements of *USB 3.2* Section 11.4.4 – Dynamic Attach and Detach. Any VCONN power source bypass capacitance must be isolated from the CC pins when VCONN is not being provided.

Table 4-6 provides the requirements that shall be met for cables that consume VCONN power.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-6 Cable VCONN Sink Characteristics

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
Voltage	3.0	5.5V	Voltage range (vVCONNValid) over which this table applies
Inrush Capacitance		10 µF	A cable shall not present more than the equivalent inrush capacitance to the VCONN source. The active cable is responsible for discharging its capacitance.
Power for Electronically Marked Passive Cables		20mW	See Section 4.9. Measured with no USB PD traffic at least 500ms after VCONN applied Note: 75mW max allowed for the first 500ms after VCONN applied.
USB 3.2 Power for Active Cables in U-states		See Table 6-19	U0, U1, U2, U3, Rx.Detect, and eSS.Disabled.
tVCONNDischarge		230ms	Time from cable disconnect to vVCONNDischarge met.
vVCONNDischarge		800mV	VCONN voltage after tVCONNDischarge
vRaReconnect	800mV		Voltage at which the cable shall reapply Ra on the falling edge of VCONN.

The cable shall remove or weaken Ra when VCONN is in the valid voltage range (vVCONNValid). The cable shall reapply Ra when VCONN falls below vRaReconnect as defined in Table 4-6. The cable shall discharge VCONN to below vVCONNDischarge on a cable disconnect. The cable shall take into account the VCONN capacitance present in the cable when discharging VCONN.

Implementation Note: Increasing Ra to 20KΩ will meet both the power dissipation for electronically marked passive cables and discharge 10µF to less than vVCONNDischarge in tVCONNDischarge.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-7 VCONN-Powered Accessory (VPA) Sink Characteristics

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
Voltage	3.0 V	5.5 V	Voltage range (vVCONNValid) over which this table applies
Inrush Capacitance		10 µF	An accessory shall not present more than the equivalent inrush capacitance to the VCONN source. The accessory is responsible for discharging its capacitance when detached from a port.
Power before Alternate Mode Entry		35 mW	Maximum power in USB suspend Note: Power shall be reduced 5 seconds after VCONN is applied if no Alternate Mode Entry has occurred. A VCONN power cycle may be required to re-enable USB-PD communication.
tVCONNDischarge		230 ms	Time from VPA disconnect to vVCONNDischarge met.
vVCONNDischarge		800 mV	VCONN voltage after tVCONNDischarge
vRaReconnect	800 mV		Voltage at which the VPA shall reapply Ra on the falling edge of VCONN.
vVCONNDisconnect	800 mV	2.4 V	Threshold used to detect VCONN disconnect.

The VCONN powered accessory shall remove or weaken Ra when VCONN is in the valid voltage range (vVCONNValid). The VCONN powered accessory shall reapply Ra when VCONN falls below vRaReconnect as defined in Table 4-7. The VCONN powered accessory shall take into account the VCONN capacitance present in the accessory when discharging VCONN.

The maximum power consumption while in an Alternate Mode is defined by the specification specific to the Alternate Mode being used.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-8 VCONN-Powered USB Device (VPD) Sink Characteristics

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
Voltage	3.0 V	5.5 V	Voltage range (vVCONNValid) over which this table applies
Inrush Capacitance		10 µF	A VPD shall not present more than the equivalent inrush capacitance to the VCONN source. The VPD is responsible for discharging its capacitance when detached from a port.
Power before USB enumeration		35 mW	Maximum power in USB suspend
Power when active		500 mW (*USB 2.0*) 750 mW (*USB 3.2*)	A VPD shall only expose a low-power interface over USB.
tVCONNDischarge		230 ms	Time from VPD disconnect to vVCONNDischarge met.
vVCONNDischarge		800 mV	VCONN voltage after tVCONNDischarge
vRaReconnect	800 mV		Voltage at which the VPD shall reapply Ra on the falling edge of VCONN.
vVCONNDisconnect	800 mV	2.4 V	Threshold used to detect VCONN disconnect.

The VPD shall remove or weaken Ra when VCONN is in the valid voltage range (vVCONNValid).

The VPD shall reapply Ra when VCONN falls below vRaReconnect as defined in Table 4-8. The VPD shall take into account the VCONN capacitance present in the device when discharging VCONN.

4.5 Configuration Channel (CC)

4.5.1 Architectural Overview

For the USB Type-C solution, two pins on the connector, CC1 and CC2, are used to establish and manage the Source-to-Sink connection. When the device is connected through a hub, the connection between a Sink (UFP) on the hub and the Source (host port) and the connection between the Sink (device port) and a Source (DFP on the hub), are treated as separate connections. Functionally, the configuration channel is used to serve the following purposes.

- Detect attach of USB ports, e.g. a Source to a Sink
- Resolve cable orientation and twist connections to establish USB data bus routing
- Establish data roles between two attached ports
- Discover and configure VBUS: USB Type-C Current modes or *USB Power Delivery*
- Configure VCONN
- Discover and configure optional Alternate and Accessory modes

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.1.1 USB Data Bus Interface and USB Type-C Plug Flip-ability

Since the USB Type-C plug can be inserted in either right-side-up or upside-down position, the hosts and devices that support USB data bus functionality must operate on the signal pins that are actually connected end-to-end. In the case of *USB 2.0*, this is done by shorting together the two D+ signal pins and the two D− signal pins in the host and device receptacles. In the case of *USB 3.2* SuperSpeed USB or *USB4* TX/RX signals in a single-lane implementation, it requires the functional equivalent of a switch in both the host and device to appropriately route the TX and RX signal pairs to the connected path through the cable. For a *USB 3.2* SuperSpeed USB or *USB4* dual-lane implementation, the host and/or device resolves the lane ordering.

Figure 4-3 illustrates the logical data bus model for a USB Type-C-based Host connected to a USB Type-C-based Device that is only capable of SuperSpeed USB single-lane operation. The USB cable that sits between a host and device can be in one of four possible connected states when viewed by the host:

- Un-flipped straight through – Position ① ⇔ Position ①
- Un-flipped twisted through – Position ① ⇔ Position ②
- Flipped straight through – Position ② ⇔ Position ②
- Flipped twisted through – Position ② ⇔ Position ①

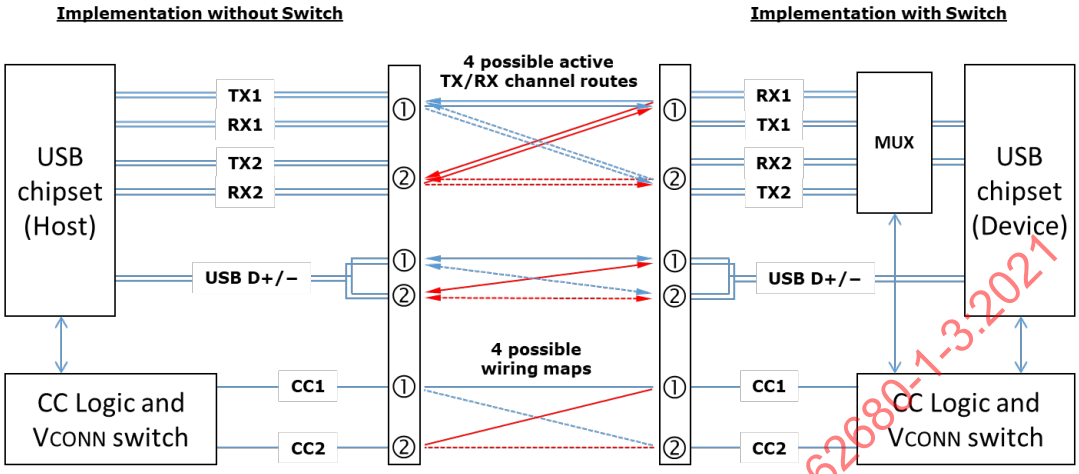
To establish the proper routing of the active USB data bus from host to device, the standard USB Type-C cable is wired such that a single CC wire is position aligned with the first TX/RX signal pairs (TXp1/TXn1 and RXp1/RXn1) – in this way, the CC wire and TX/RX data bus wires that are used for single-lane operational signaling within the cable track with regard to the orientation and twist of the cable. By being able to detect which of the CC pins (CC1 or CC2) at the receptacle is terminated by the device, the host is able to determine which TX/RX signals are to be used for the single-lane connection and the host can use this to control the functional switch for routing the TX/RX signal pairs. Similarly in the device, detecting which of the CC pins at the receptacle is terminated by the host allows the device to control the functional switch that routes its TX/RX signal pairs.

For a dual-lane implementation, the TX/RX signal pairs in the cable/plug aligned with the CC wire/pin is Lane 0 and in reference to *USB 3.2*, shall be identified as the Configuration Lane. The second TX/RX signal pairs (TXp2/TXn2 and RXp2/RXn2) in the cable/plug is Lane 1 of a dual-lane configuration.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

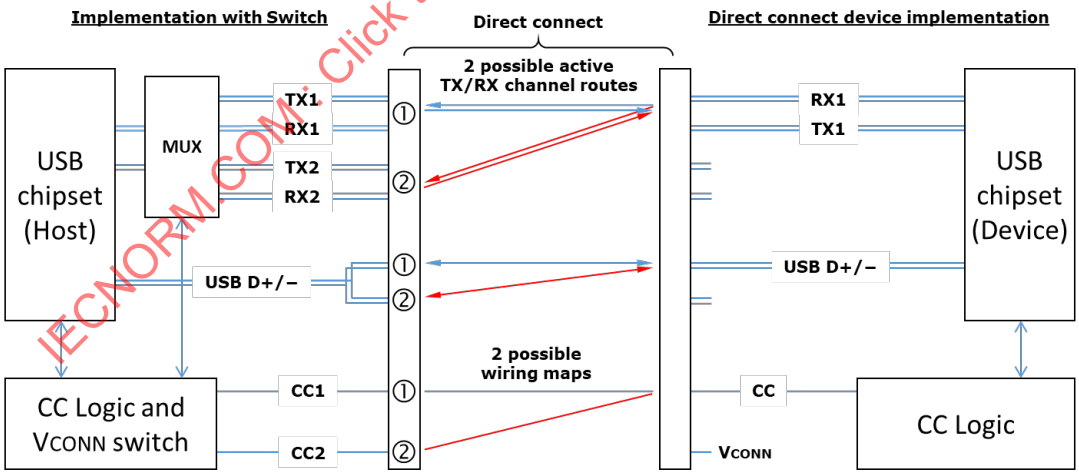
Figure 4-3 Logical Model for Single-Lane Data Bus Routing across USB Type-C-based Ports



While Figure 4-3 illustrates the functional model as a host connected to a device, this model equally applies to a USB hub's downstream ports as well.

Figure 4-4 illustrates the logical data bus model for a single-lane USB Type-C-based Device (implemented with a USB Type-C plug either physically incorporated into the device or permanently attached as a captive cable) connected directly to a USB Type-C-based Host. For the device, the location of the TX/RX data bus, *USB 2.0* data bus, CC and VCONN pins are fixed by design. Given that the device pin locations are fixed, only two possible connected states exist when viewed by the host.

Figure 4-4 Logical Model for USB Type-C-based Ports for a Single-Lane Direct Connect Device



The functional requirements for implementing TX/RX data bus routing for the USB Type-C receptacle are not included in the scope of this specification. There are multiple host, device and hub architectures that can be used to accomplish this which could include either discrete or integrated switching, and could include merging this functionality with other *USB 3.2* or *USB4* design elements, e.g. a bus repeater.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

The functional requirements for addressing SBU1 and SBU2 routing is not included in the scope of this specification. For *USB4*, where SBTX and SBRX are mapped to SBU1 and SBU2, the adjustment to the mapping of these signals based on the connection state (flipped and/or twisted) of the cable is defined by the *USB4 Specification* (reference Sideband Channel Lane Reversal).

4.5.1.2 Connecting Sources and Sinks

Given that the USB Type-C receptacle and plug no longer differentiate host and device roles based on connector shape, e.g., as was the case with USB Type-A and Type-B connectors, any two ports that have USB Type-C receptacles can be connected together with a standard USB Type-C cable. Table 4-9 summarizes the expected results when interconnecting Source, Sink and DRP ports.

Table 4-9 USB Type-C-based Port Interoperability

	Source-only	**Sink-only**	**DRP (Dual-Role-Power)**
Source-only	Non-functional	Functional	Functional
Sink-only	Functional	Non-functional	Functional
DRP (Dual-Role-Power)	Functional	Functional	Functional*

* Resolution of roles may be automatic or manually driven

In the cases where no function results, neither port shall be harmed by this connection. The user has to independently realize the invalid combination and take appropriate action to resolve. While these two invalid combinations mimic traditional USB where host-to-host and device-to-device connections are not intended to work, the non-keyed USB Type-C solution does not prevent the user from attempting such interconnects. VBUS and VCONN shall not be applied by a Source (host) in these cases.

The typical flow for the configuration of the interface in the general USB case of a Source (Host) to a Sink (Device) is as follows:

1. Detect a valid connection between the ports (including determining cable orientation, Source/Sink and DFP/UFP relationship)
2. Optionally discover the cable's capabilities
3. Optionally establish alternatives to traditional USB power (See Section 4.6.2)
    a. *USB PD* communication over CC for advanced power delivery negotiation
    b. USB Type-C Current modes
    c. *USB BC 1.2*
4. USB Device Enumeration

For cases of Dual-Role-Power (DRP) ports connecting to either Source-only, Sink-only or another DRP, the process is essentially the same except that during the detecting a valid connection step, the DRP alternates between operating as a Source for detecting an attached Sink and presenting as a Sink to be detected by an attached Source. Ultimately this results in a Source-to-Sink connection.

4.5.1.2.1 Detecting a Valid Source-to-Sink Connection

The general concept for setting up a valid connection between a Source and Sink is based on being able to detect terminations residing in the product being attached.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

To aid in defining the functional behavior of CC, a pull-up (Rp) and pull-down (Rd) termination model is used – actual implementation in hosts and devices may vary, for example, the pull-up termination could be replaced by a current source. Figure 4-5 and Figure 4-6 illustrates two models, the first based on a pull-up resistor in the Source and the second replacing this with a current source.

Figure 4-5 Pull-Up/Pull-Down CC Model

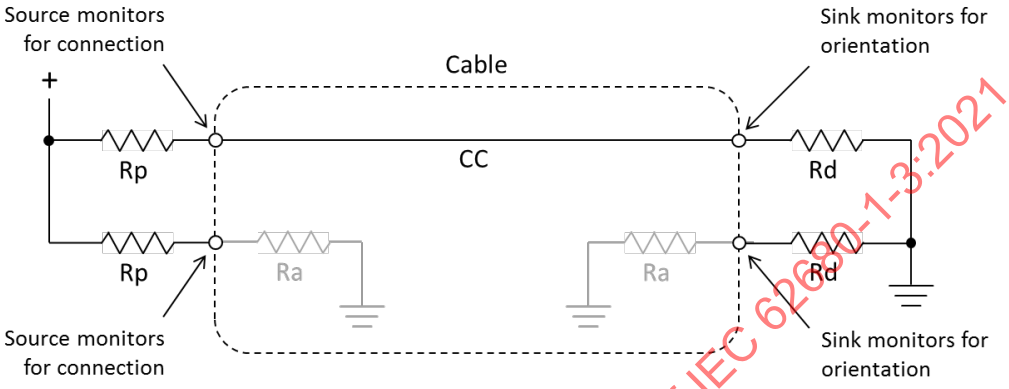
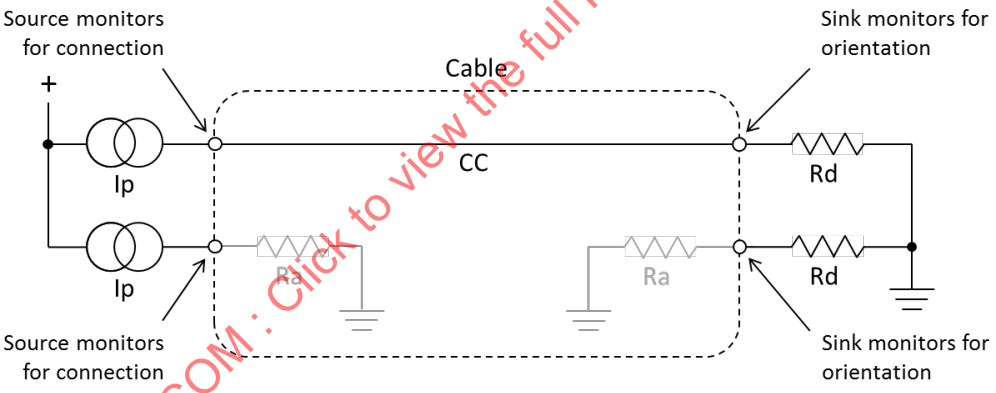


Figure 4-6 Current Source/Pull-Down CC Model



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Initially, a Source exposes independent Rp terminations on its CC1 and CC2 pins, and a Sink exposes independent Rd terminations on its CC1 and CC2 pins, the Source-to-Sink combination of this circuit configuration represents a valid connection. To detect this, the Source monitors CC1 and CC2 for a voltage lower than its unterminated voltage – the choice of Rp is a function of the pull-up termination voltage and the Source's detection circuit. This indicates that either a Sink, a powered cable, or a Sink connected via a powered cable has been attached.

Prior to application of VCONN, a powered cable exposes Ra on its VCONN pin. Ra represents the load on VCONN plus any resistive elements to ground. In some cable plugs it might be a pure resistance and in others it may be simply the load.

The Source has to be able to differentiate between the presence of Rd and Ra to know whether there is a Sink attached and where to apply VCONN. The Source is not required to source VCONN unless Ra is detected.

Two special termination combinations on the CC pins as seen by a Source are defined for directly attached Accessory Modes: Ra/Ra for Audio Adapter Accessory Mode (Appendix A) and Rd/Rd for Debug Accessory Mode (Appendix B).

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

The Source uses de-bounce timers to reliably detect states on the CC pins to de-bounce the connection (tCCDebounce), and hide *USB PD* BMC communications (tPDDebounce).

Table 4-10 summarizes the port state from the Source's perspective.

Table 4-10 Source Perspective

CC1	CC2	State	Position
Open	**Open**	Nothing attached	N/A
Rd	**Open**	Sink attached	①
Open	**Rd**		②
Open	**Ra**	Powered cable without Sink attached	①
Ra	**Open**		②
Rd	**Ra**	Powered cable with Sink, VCONN-Powered Accessory (VPA), or VCONN-Powered USB Device (VPD) attached	①
Ra	**Rd**		②
Rd	**Rd**	Debug Accessory Mode attached (Appendix B)	N/A
Ra	**Ra**	Audio Adapter Accessory Mode attached (Appendix A)	N/A

Once the Sink is powered, the Sink monitors CC1 and CC2 for a voltage greater than its local ground. The CC pin that is at a higher voltage (i.e. pulled up by Rp in the Source) indicates the orientation of the plug.

Table 4-11 summarizes the typical behaviors for simple Sources (Hosts) and Sinks (Devices) for each state in Table 4-10.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-11 Source (Host) and Sink (Device) Behaviors by State

State	Source Behavior	Sink Behavior
Nothing attached	• Sense CC pins for attach • Do not apply VBUS or VCONN	• Sense VBUS for attach
Sink attached	• Sense CC for orientation • Sense CC for detach • Apply VBUS and VCONN	• Sense CC pins for orientation • Sense loss of VBUS for detach
Powered cable without Sink attached	• Sense CC pins for attach • Do not apply VBUS or VCONN	• Sense VBUS for attach
Powered cable with Sink, VCONN-Powered Accessory, or VCONN-Powered USB Device attached	• Sense CC for orientation • Sense CC for detach • Apply VBUS and VCONN • Detect VPD and remove VBUS	• If accessories or VPDs are supported, see Source Behavior with exception that VBUS is not applied., otherwise, N/A.
Debug Accessory Mode attached	• Sense CC pins for detach • Reconfigure for debug	• Sense VBUS for detach • Reconfigure for debug
Audio Adapter Accessory Mode attached	• Sense CC pins for detach • Reconfigure for analog audio	• If accessories are supported, see Source Behavior, otherwise, N/A

Figure 4-3 shows how the inserted plug orientation is detected at the Source's receptacle by noting on which of the two CC pins in the receptacle an Rd termination is sensed. Now that the Source (Host) has recognized that a Sink (Device) is attached and the plug orientation is determined, it configures the TX/RX data bus routing to the receptacle.

The Source (Host) then turns on VBUS. For the CC pin that does not connect Source-to-Sink through the cable, the Source supplies VCONN and may remove the termination. With the Sink (Device) now powered, it configures the USB data path. This completes the Host-to-Device connection.

The Source monitors the CC wire for the loss of pull-down termination to detect detach. If the Sink is removed, the Source port removes any voltage applied to VBUS and VCONN, resets its interface configuration and resumes looking for a new Sink attach.

Once a valid Source-to-Sink connection is established, alternatives to traditional USB power (VBUS as defined by either *USB 2.0* or *USB 3.2* specifications) may be available depending on the capabilities of the host and device. These include USB Type-C Current, USB Power Delivery, and *USB Battery Charging 1.2*.

In the case where *USB PD* PR_Swap is used to swap the Source and Sink of VBUS, the supplier of VCONN remains unchanged during and after the VBUS power swap. The new Source monitors the CC wire and the new Sink monitors VBUS to detect detach. When a detach event is detected, any voltages applied to VBUS and VCONN are removed, each port resets its interface configuration and resumes looking for an attach event.

In the case where *USB PD* DR_Swap is used to swap the data roles (DFP and UFP), the source of VBUS and VCONN do not change after the data role swap.

In the case where *USB PD* VCONN_Swap is used to swap the VCONN source, the VBUS Source/Sink and DFP/UFP roles are maintained during and after the VCONN swap.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

The last step in the normal USB Type-C connect process is for the USB device to be attached and enumerated per standard *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* processes.

4.5.1.3 Configuration Channel Functional Models

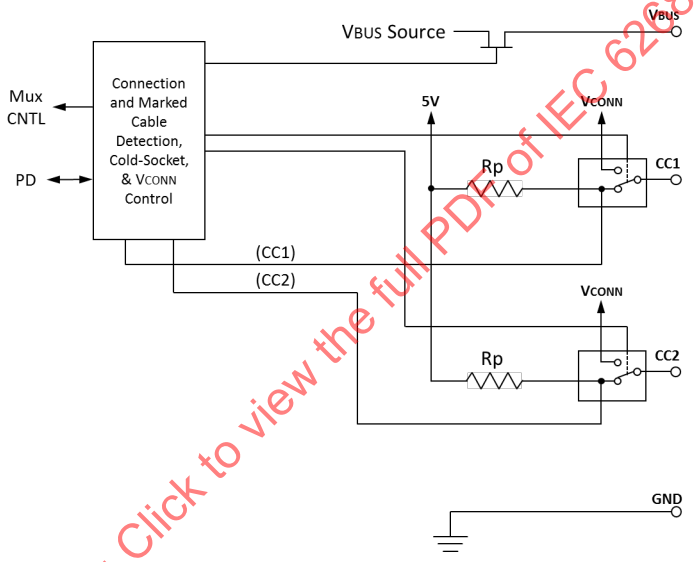
The functional models for the configuration channel behavior based on the CC1 and CC2 pins are described in this section for each port type: Source, Sink and Dual-Role-Power (DRP).

The figures in the following sections illustrate the CC1 and CC2 routing after the CC detection process is complete. In these figures, VBUS and VCONN may or may not actually be available.

4.5.1.3.1 Source Configuration Channel Functional Model

Figure 4-7 illustrates the functional model for CC1 and CC2 for a Source port prior to attach. This illustration includes consideration for *USB PD*.

Figure 4-7 Source Functional Model for CC1 and CC2



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Referring to Figure 4-7, a port that behaves as a Source has the following functional characteristics:

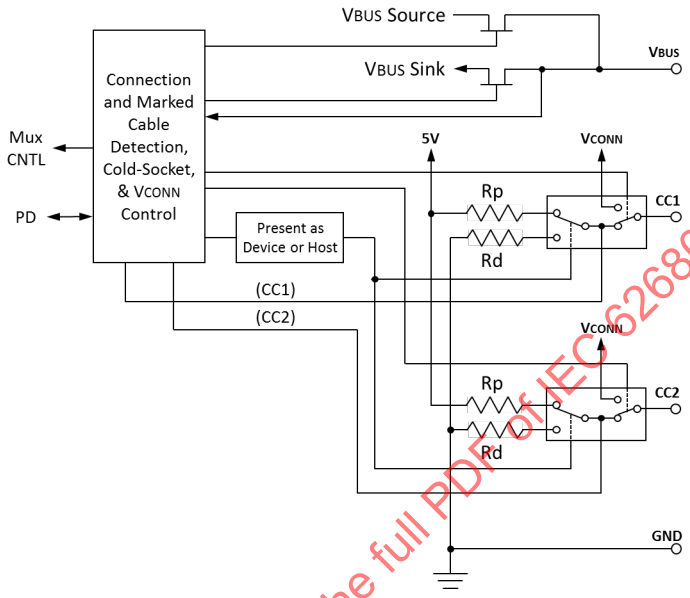
1. The Source uses a FET to enable/disable power delivery across VBUS and initially the Source has VBUS disabled.
2. The Source supplies pull-up resistors (Rp) on CC1 and CC2 and monitors both to detect a Sink. The presence of an Rd pull-down resistor on either pin indicates that a Sink is being attached. The value of Rp indicates the initial USB Type-C Current level supported by the host.
3. The Source uses the CC pin pull-down characteristic to detect and establish the correct routing for the SuperSpeed USB data path and determine which CC pin is intended for supplying VCONN.
4. Once a Sink is detected, the Source enables VBUS and VCONN.
5. The Source can dynamically adjust the value of Rp to indicate a change in available USB Type-C Current to a Sink.
6. The Source monitors the continued presence of Rd to detect Sink detach. When a detach event is detected, the Source removes, if supplied, VBUS and VCONN, and returns to step 2.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

7. If the Source supports advanced functions (*USB Power Delivery* and/or Alternate Modes), *USB PD* communication is required.

Figure 4-8 illustrates the functional model for CC1 and CC2 for a Source that supports *USB PD* PR_Swap.

Figure 4-8 Source Functional Model Supporting USB PD PR_Swap

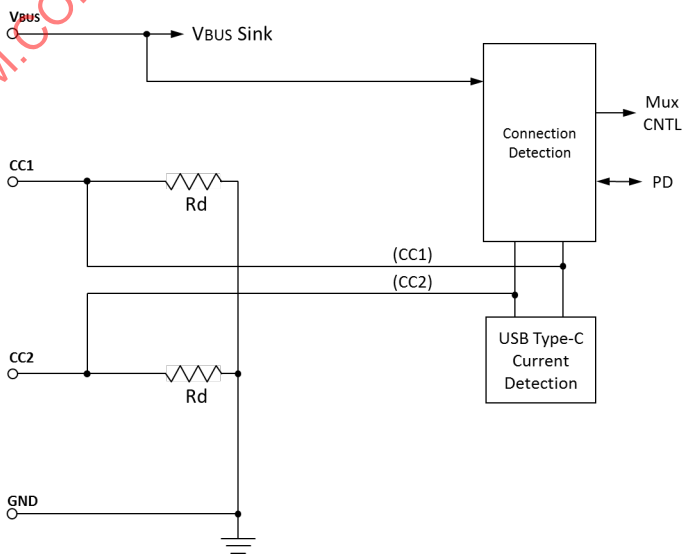


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.5.1.3.2 Sink Configuration Channel Functional Model

Figure 4-9 illustrates the functional model for CC1 and CC2 for a Sink. This illustration includes consideration for both USB Type-C current and *USB PD*.

Figure 4-9 Sink Functional Model for CC1 and CC2



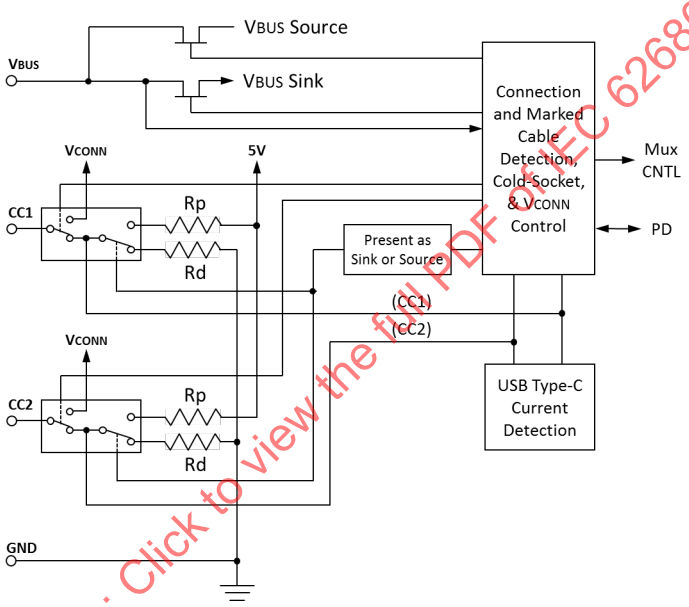
Referring to Figure 4-9, a port that behaves as a Sink has the following functional characteristics:

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

1. The Sink terminates both CC1 and CC2 to GND using pull-down resistors.
2. The Sink determines that a Source is attached by the presence of power on VBUS.
3. The Sink uses the CC pin pull-up characteristic to detect and establish the correct routing for the SuperSpeed USB data path.
4. The Sink can optionally monitor CC to detect an available higher USB Type-C Current from the Source. The Sink shall manage its load to stay within the detected Source current limit.
5. If the Sink supports advanced functions (*USB Power Delivery* and/or Alternate Modes), *USB PD* communication is required.

Figure 4-10 illustrates the functional model for CC1 and CC2 for a Sink that supports *USB PD* PR_Swap and supports *USB PD* VCONN_Swap prior to attach.

Figure 4-10 Sink Functional Model Supporting USB PD PR_Swap and VCONN_Swap



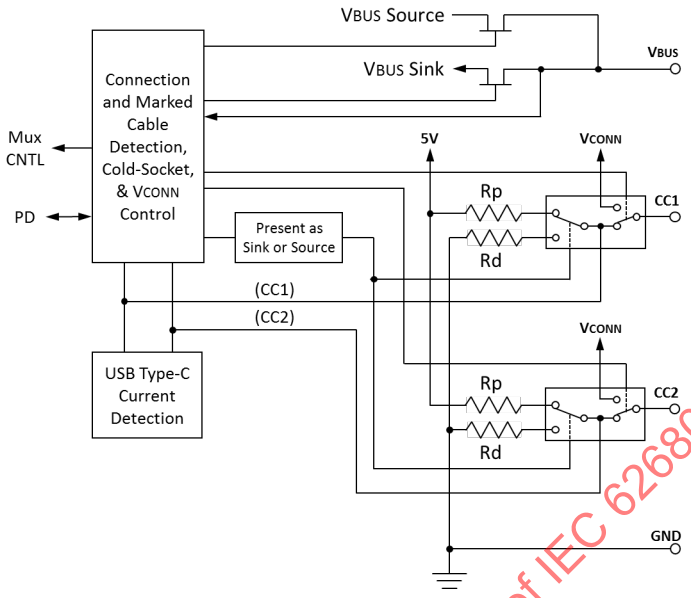
4.5.1.3.3 Dual-Role-Power (DRP) Configuration Channel Functional Model

Figure 4-11 illustrates the functional model for CC1 and CC2 for a DRP presenting as a Source prior to attach. This illustration includes consideration for both the USB Type-C Current and the *USB PD* features.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-11 DRP Functional Model for CC1 and CC2



Referring to Figure 4-11, a port that can alternate between DFP and UFP behaviors has the following functional characteristics:

1. The DRP uses a FET to enable/disable power delivery across VBUS and initially when in Source mode has VBUS disabled.
2. The DRP uses switches for presenting as a Source or Sink.
3. The DRP has logic used during initial attach to toggle between Source and Sink operation:
    a. Until a specific stable state is established, the DRP alternates between exposing itself as a Source and Sink. The timing of this process is dictated by a period (tDRP), percentage of time that a DRP exposes Rp (dcSRC.DRP) and role transition time (tDRPTransition).
    b. When the DRP is presenting as a Source, it follows Source operation to detect an attached Sink – if a Sink is detected, it applies VBUS, VCONN, and continues to operate as a Source (e.g., cease alternating).
    c. When the DRP is presenting as a Sink, it monitors VBUS to detect that it is attached to a Source – if a Source is detected, it continues to operate as a Sink (cease alternating).
4. If the DRP supports advanced functions (*USB Power Delivery* and/or Alternate Modes), *USB PD* communication is required.

4.5.1.4 USB Type-C Port Power Roles and Role Swapping Mechanisms

USB Type-C ports on products (USB hosts, USB devices, USB chargers, etc.) can be generally characterized as implementing one of seven power role behavioral models:

- Source-only
- Source (Default) – strong preference toward being a Source but subsequently capable of becoming a Sink using USB PD swap mechanisms.
- Sink-only
- Sink (Default) – strong preference toward being a Sink but subsequently capable of becoming a Source using USB PD swap mechanisms.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- DRP: Toggling (Source/Sink)
- DRP: Sourcing Device
- DRP: Sinking Host

Two independent sets of swapping mechanisms are defined for USB Type-C port implementations, one based on role swapping within the initial state machine connection process and the other based on subsequent use of *USB PD*-based swapping mechanisms.

4.5.1.4.1 USB Type-C State-Machine-Based Role Swapping

During the initial USB Type-C state machine connection process, the products being connected end up in one of the two following roles associated with the termination of its port:

- Rp → VBUS and VCONN source and behaving as a downstream facing port (USB Host)
- Rd → VBUS sink and behaving as an upstream facing port (USB Device)

A USB Type-C DRP-based product may incorporate either or both the Try.SRC and Try.SNK swap mechanisms to affect the resulting role. Try.SRC allows a DRP that has a policy-based preference to be a Source when connecting to another DRP to effect a transition from a destined Sink role to the Source role. Alternately, Try.SNK allows a DRP that has a policy-based preference to be a Sink when connecting to another DRP to effect a transition from a destined Source role to the Sink role. Connection timing and other factors are involved in this process as defined in the USB Type-C state machine operation (see Section 4.5.2). It is important to note that these mechanisms, Try.SRC and Try.SNK, can only be used once as part of the initial connection process.

Try.SRC and Try.SNK are intended to ensure more predictable power roles when initially connecting two DRPs, especially if the port partner does not support *USB PD*. For example, a small mobile device may want to implement Try.SNK, so that when attaching to a DRP laptop, the mobile device will always initially be the power sink. Similarly, a laptop or Power Bank may wish to implement Try.SRC to ensure it always sources power to attached DRPs. Self-powered devices such as AMAs or those whose primary function is a data UFP may also consider implementing Try.SNK to ensure they can properly expose their functionality. If both sides support *USB PD*, the appropriate roles may then be further refined or swapped as per the *USB PD* specification.

4.5.1.4.2 USB PD-based Power Role, Data Role and VCONN Swapping

Following the completion of the initial USB Type-C state machine connection process, products may use *USB PD*-based swapping mechanisms to command a change power roles, data roles and which end of the cable will supply VCONN. These mechanisms are:

- *USB PD* PR_Swap : swaps Source (Rp) and Sink (Rd)
- *USB PD* DR_Swap : swaps DFP (host data) and UFP (device data) roles
- *USB PD* VCONN_Swap : swaps which port supplies VCONN

Table 4-12 summarizes the behaviors of a port in response to the three *USB PD* swap commands.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-12 USB PD Swapping Port Behavior Summary

	DFP/UFP Data Roles	Rp/Rd	VBUS Source/Sink	VCONN Source
PR_Swap	Unchanged	Swapped	Swapped	Unchanged
DR_Swap	Swapped	Unchanged	Unchanged	Unchanged
VCONN_Swap	Unchanged	Unchanged	Unchanged	Swapped*

* Swapping of VCONN source port

4.5.1.4.3 Power Role Behavioral Model Summary

Table 4-13 provides a summary of the defining characteristics of the seven fundamental power roles.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-13 Power Role Behavioral Model Summary

Power Role		Toggles	PR_Swap	USB Host	USB Device	DFP	UFP	DR_Swap	Try.SRC/ Try.SNK	Connects with
Source-Only		No	NA	Opt.	Opt.[1]	Req.	Opt.	Opt.	NA	Sink/ DRP
Source (Default)		No	Req.	Opt.	Opt.[1]	Req.	Opt.	Opt.	NA	Sink/ DRP
Sink-Only		No	NA	Opt.[1]	Opt.	Opt.	Req.	Opt.	NA	Source/ DRP
Sink (Default)		No	Req.	Opt.[1]	Opt.	Opt.	Req.	Opt.	NA	Source/ DRP
DRP	**Toggling (Source/Sink)**	Req.	Req.	Opt.	Opt.	Req.	Req.	Req.	Opt.	Source/ Sink/ DRP
	Sourcing Device	Req.	Req.	NA	Req.	Req.	Req.	Req.	Opt.	
	Sinking Host	Req.	Req.	Req.	NA	Req.	Req.	Req.	Opt.	

Note: 1. Requires use of DR_Swap

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2 CC Functional and Behavioral Requirements

This section provides the functional and behavioral requirements for implementing CC. The first sub-section provides connection state diagrams that are the basis for the remaining sub-sections.

The terms Source (SRC) and Sink (SNK) used in this section refer to the port's power role while the terms DFP and UFP refer to the port's data role. A DRP (Dual-Role-Power) port is capable of acting as either a Source or Sink. Typically Sources are found on hosts and supply VBUS while a Sink is found on a device and consumes power from VBUS. When a connection is initially made, the port's initial power state and data role are established. *USB PD* introduces three swap commands that may alter a port's power or data role:

- The PR_Swap command changes the port's power state as reflected in the following state machines. PR_Swap does not change the port sourcing VCONN.
- The DR_Swap command has no effect on the following state machines or VCONN as it only changes the port's data role.
- VCONN_Swap command changes the port sourcing VCONN. The PR_Swap command and DR_Swap command have no effect on the port sourcing VCONN.

Note: A VCONN-Powered USB Device that supports the optional Charge-Through capability, once detected via *USB PD* messaging, will also change the Host-side port's power state without changing the port sourcing VCONN.

Note: *USB PD* defines another optional swapping mechanism (FR_Swap) that is used in a special case where a user interaction could inadvertently trigger a need to change the source of VBUS. A variant of PR_Swap, FR_Swap similarly swaps Source (Rp) and Sink (Rd) between two connected ports. For purposes of this specification, only PR_Swap is explicitly considered in the behavior requirements and implementations that support FR_Swap should, where applicable, apply PR_Swap-related behaviors to FR_Swap. See the *USB PD* specification for further details regarding FR_Swap.

The connection state diagrams and CC behavior descriptions in this section describe the behavior of receptacle-based ports. The plug on a direct connect device or a device with a captive cable shall behave as a plug on a cable that is attached at its other end in normal orientation to a receptacle, These devices shall apply and sense CC voltage levels on pin A5 only and pin B5 shall have an impedance above zOPEN, unless it is a VCONN-Powered Accessory, in which case B5 shall have an impedance Ra.

4.5.2.1 Connection State Diagrams

This section provides reference connection state diagrams for CC-based behaviors.

Refer to Section 4.5.2.2 for the specific state transition requirements related to each state shown in the diagrams.

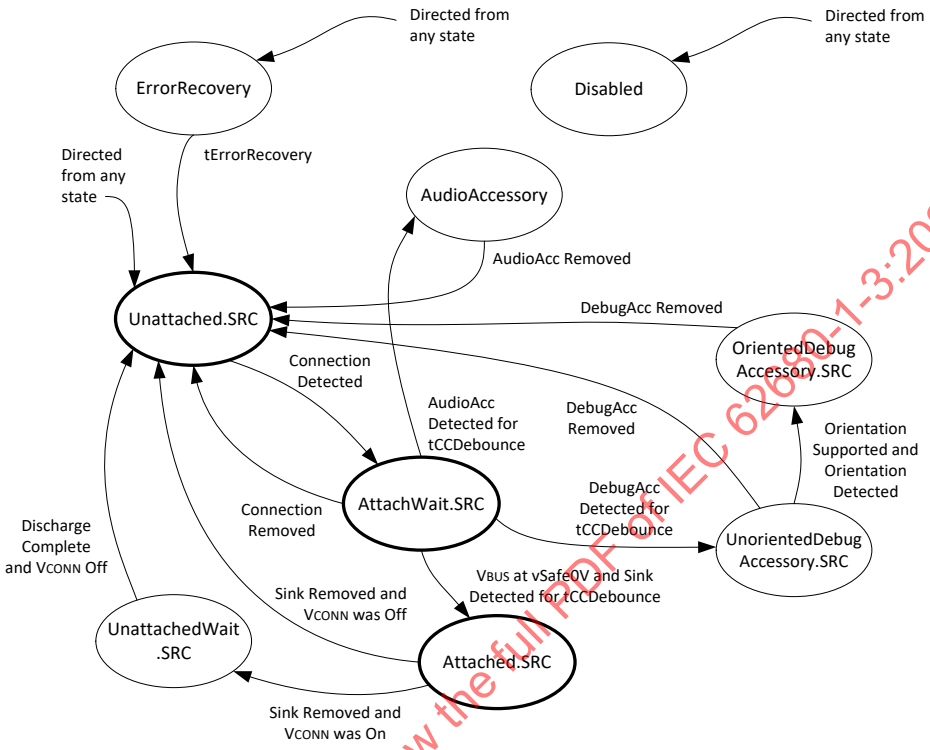
Refer to Section 4.5.2.4 for a description of which states are mandatory for each port type, and a list of states where *USB PD* communication is permitted.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-12 illustrates a connection state diagram for a Source (Host/Hub DFP).

Figure 4-12 Connection State Diagram: Source

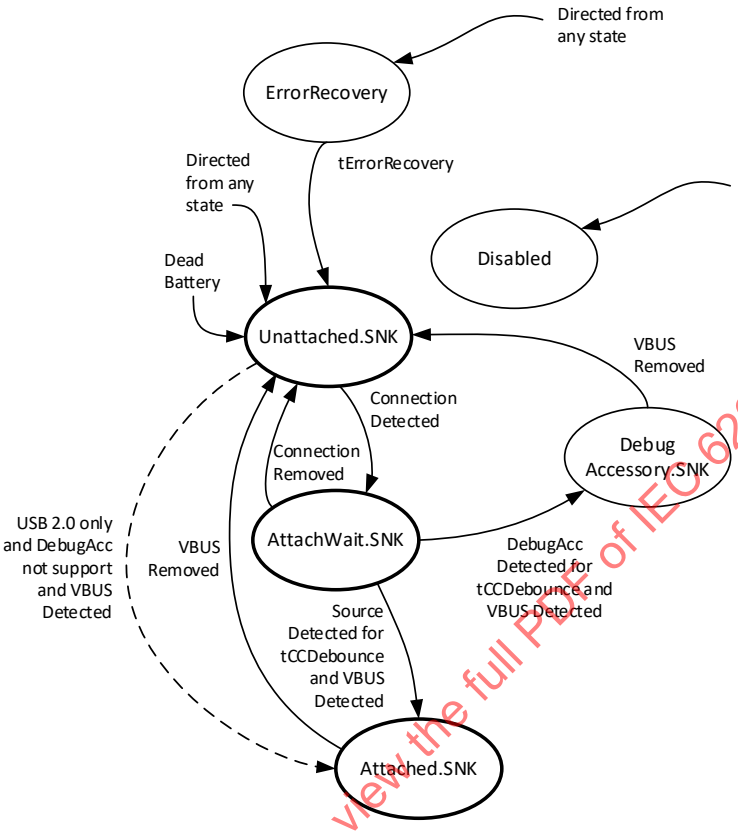


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-13 illustrates a connection state diagram for a simple Sink (Device/Hub UFP).

Figure 4-13 Connection State Diagram: Sink

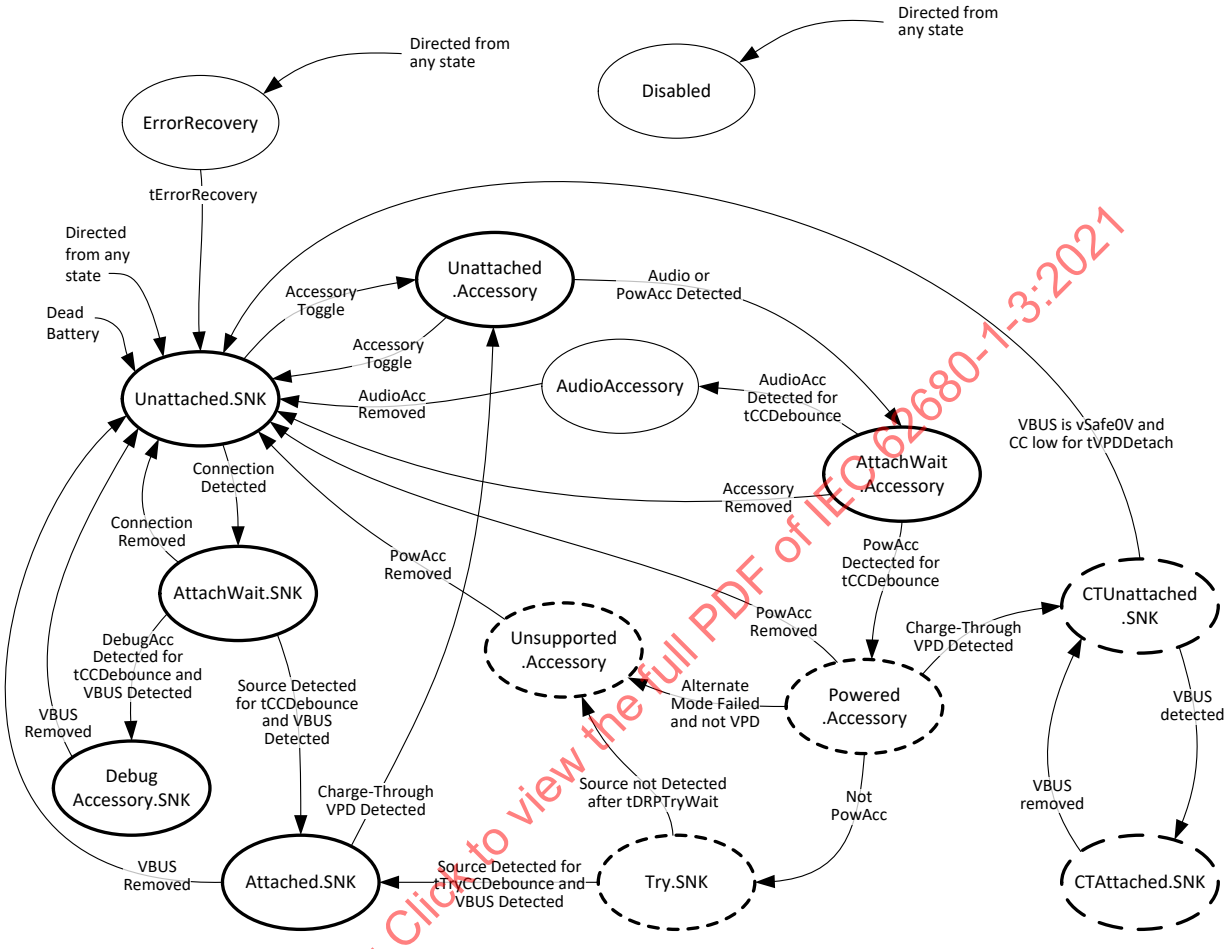


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-14 illustrates a connection state diagram for a Sink that supports Accessory Modes.

Figure 4-14 Connection State Diagram: Sink with Accessory Support

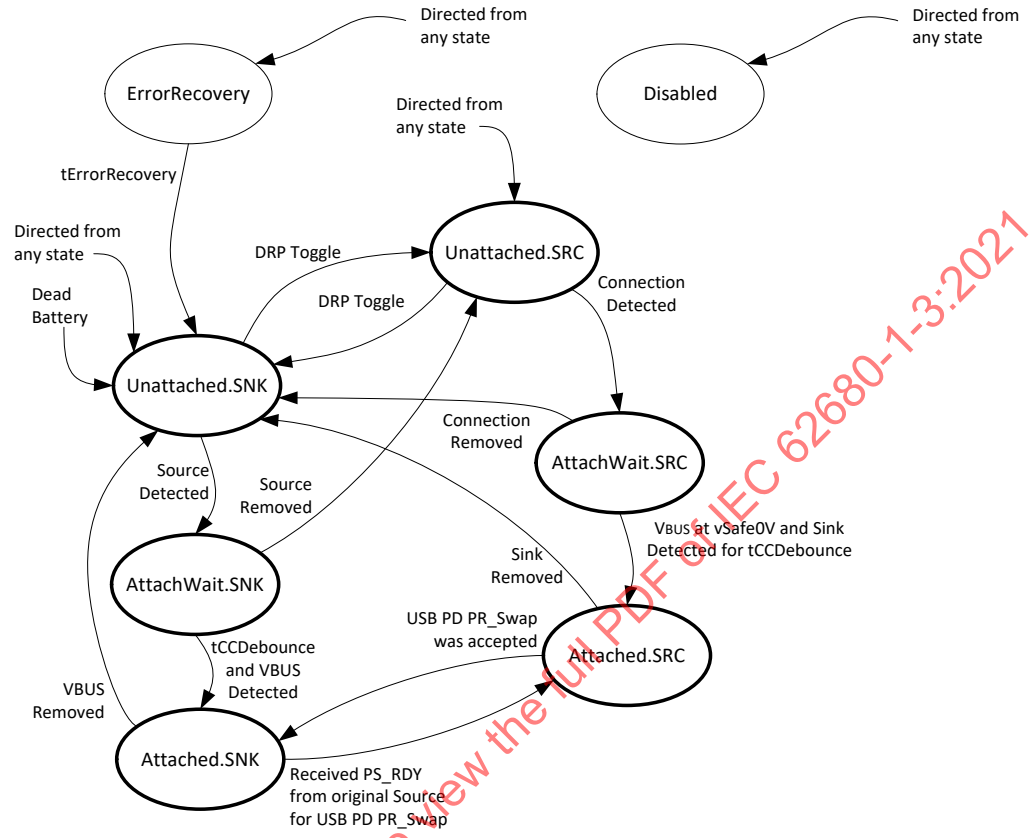


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-15 illustrates a connection state diagram for a simple DRP (Dual-Role-Power) port.

Figure 4-15 Connection State Diagram: DRP

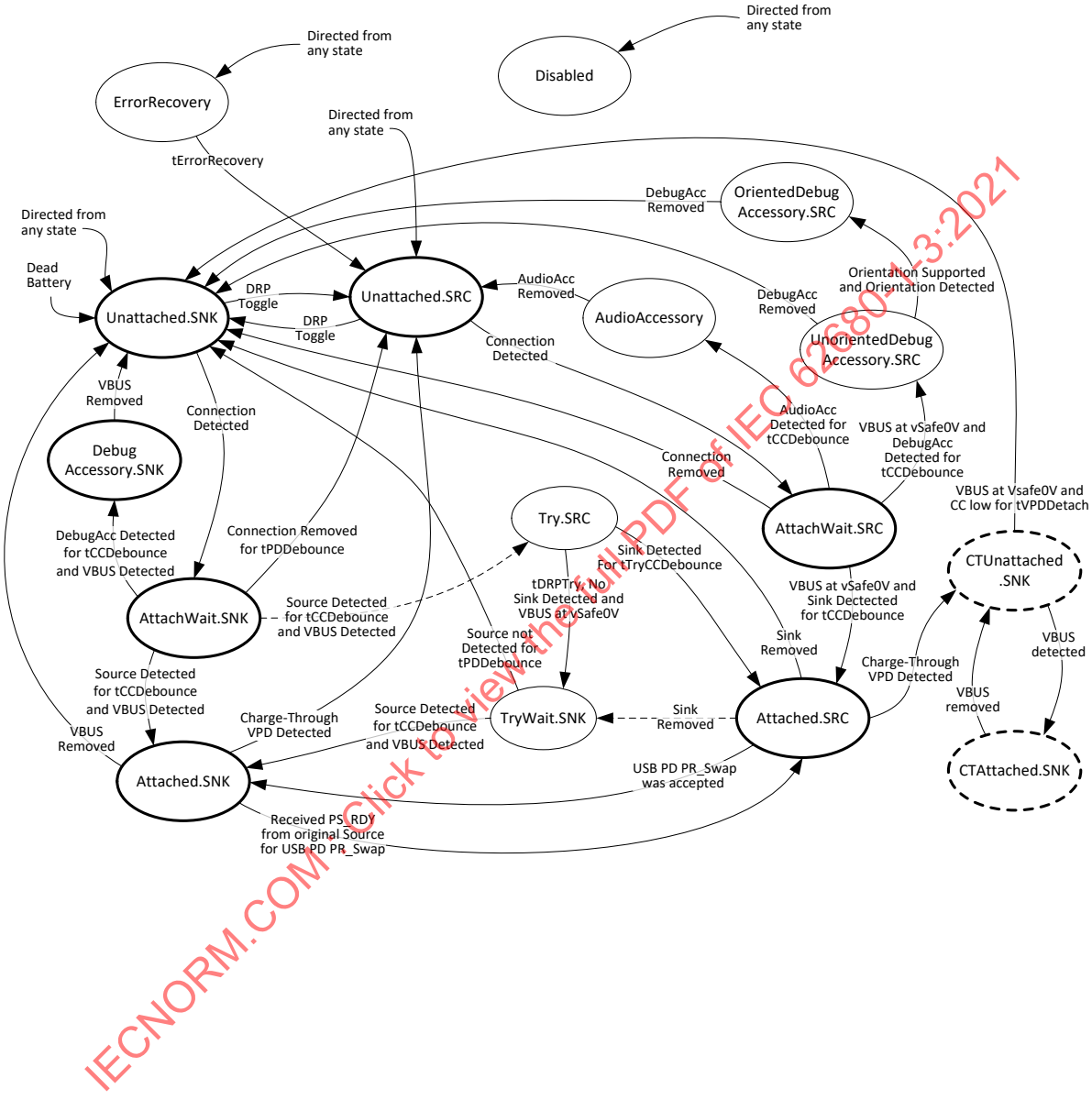


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-16 illustrates a connection state diagram for a DRP that supports Try.SRC and Accessory Modes.

Figure 4-16 Connection State Diagram: DRP with Accessory and Try.SRC Support

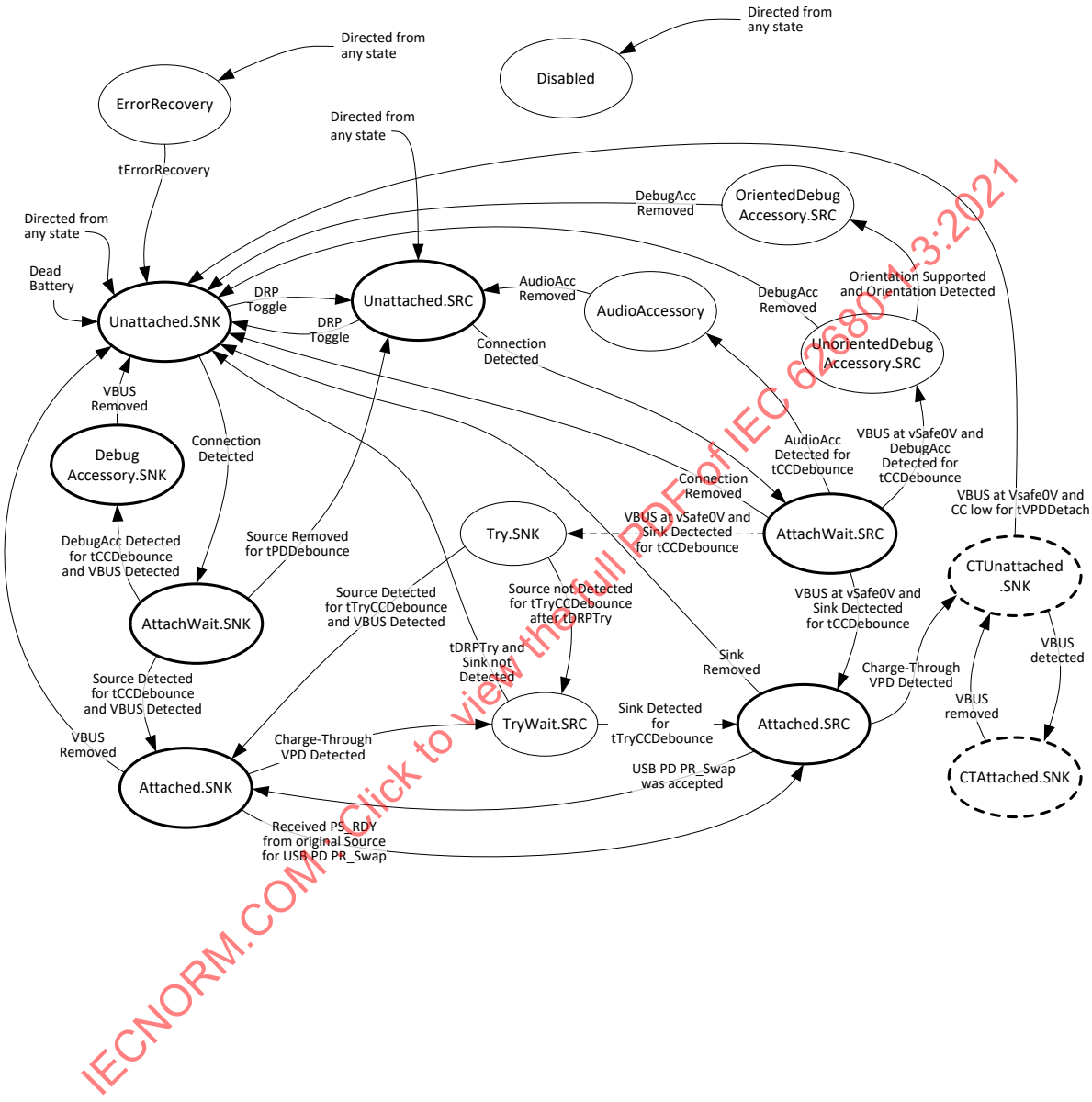


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-17 illustrates a connection state diagram for a DRP that supports Try.SNK and Accessory Modes.

Figure 4-17 Connection State Diagram: DRP with Accessory and Try.SNK Support

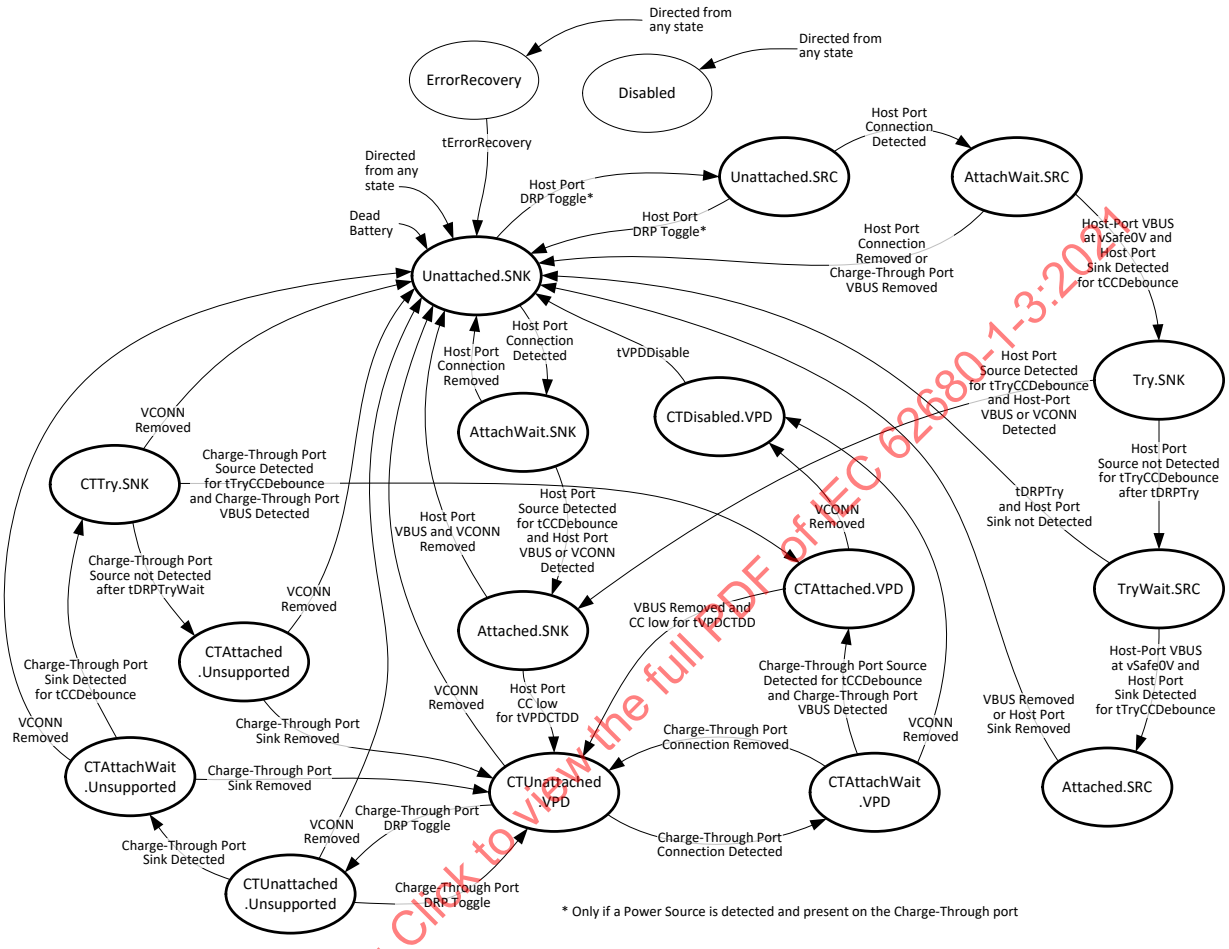


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-18 illustrates a connection state diagram for a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device.

Figure 4-18 Connection State Diagram: Charge-Through VPD



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.2 Connection State Machine Requirements

Entry into any unattached state when "directed from any state" shall not be used to override tDRP toggle.

A DRP or a Sink may consume default power from VBUS in any state where it is not required to provide VBUS.

The following two tables define the electrical states for a CC pin in both a Source and a Sink. Every port has CC1 and CC2 pins, each with its own individual CC pin state. The combination of a port's CC1 and CC2 pin states are be used to define the conditions under which a port transitions from one state to another.

Table 4-14 Source Port CC Pin State

CC Pin State	Port partner CC Termination	Voltage Detected on CC when port asserts Rp
SRC.Open	**Open, Rp**	Above vOPEN
SRC.Rd	**Rd**	Within the vRd range (i.e., between minimum vRd and maximum vRd)
SRC.Ra	**Ra**	Below maximum vRa

Table 4-15 Sink Port CC Pin State

CC Pin State	Port partner CC Termination	Voltage Detected on CC when port asserts Rd
SNK.Rp	**Rp**	Above minimum vRd-Connect
SNK.Open	**Open, Ra, Rd**	Below maximum vRa

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.5.2.2.1 Disabled State

This state appears in Figure 4-12, Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16 and Figure 4-17.

The Disabled state is where the port prevents connection from occurring by removing all terminations from the CC pins.

The port should transition to the Disabled state from any other state when directed. When the port transitions to the Disabled state from Attached.SNK, it shall keep all terminations on the CC pins removed for a minimum of tErrorRecovery.

A port may choose not to support the Disabled state. If the Disabled state is not supported, the port shall be directed to either the Unattached.SNK or Unattached.SRC states after power-on.

4.5.2.2.1.1 Disabled State Requirements

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN, and shall present a high-impedance to ground (above zOPEN) on its CC1 and CC2 pins.

4.5.2.2.1.2 Exiting From Disabled State

A Sink shall transition to Unattached.SNK when directed.

A Source shall transition to Unattached.SRC when directed.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

A DRP shall transition to either Unattached.SNK or Unattached.SRC when directed.

4.5.2.2.2 ErrorRecovery State

This state appears in Figure 4-12, Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16 and Figure 4-17.

The ErrorRecovery state is where the port removes the terminations from the CC1 and CC2 pins for tErrorRecovery followed by transitioning to the appropriate Unattached.SNK or Unattached.SRC state based on port type. This is the equivalent of forcing a detach event and looking for a new attach.

The port should transition to the ErrorRecovery state from any other state when directed.

A port may choose not to support the ErrorRecovery state. If the ErrorRecovery state is not supported, the port shall be directed to the Disabled state if supported. If the Disabled state is not supported, the port shall be directed to either the Unattached.SNK or Unattached.SRC states.

4.5.2.2.2.1 ErrorRecovery State Requirements

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN, and shall present a high-impedance to ground (above zOPEN) on its CC1 and CC2 pins.

4.5.2.2.2.2 Exiting From ErrorRecovery State

A Sink shall transition to Unattached.SNK after tErrorRecovery.

A Source shall transition to Unattached.SRC after tErrorRecovery.

A DRP (Figure 4-15) and a DRP with Accessory and Try.SNK Support (Figure 4-17) shall transition to Unattached.SNK after tErrorRecovery.

A DRP with Accessory and Try.SRC Support (Figure 4-16) shall transition to Unattached.SRC after tErrorRecovery.

4.5.2.2.3 Unattached.SNK State

This state appears in Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 and Figure 4-18.

When in the Unattached.SNK state, the port is waiting to detect the presence of a Source.

A port with a dead battery shall enter this state while unpowered.

4.5.2.2.3.1 Unattached.SNK Requirements

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN.

Both CC1 and CC2 pins shall be independently terminated to ground through Rd.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS, and independently terminate its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins and Host-side port's CC pin to ground through Rd.

4.5.2.2.3.2 Exiting from Unattached.SNK State

If the port supports *USB PD* or accessories, the port shall transition to AttachWait.SNK when the SNK.Rp state is present on at least one of its CC pins.

The maximum times that a Port shall take to transition to AttachWait.SNK are the following:

- tNoToggleConnect when neither Port Partner is toggling

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- tOnePortToggleConnect when one Port Partner only is toggling

When both Port Partners are toggling, a Port should transition to AttachWait.SNK within tTwoPortToggleConnect. Note that when both Port Partners are DRPs it is indeterminate whether the local port will transition to AttachWait.SRC or AttachWait.SNK.

Note: The times tOnePortToggleConnect and tTwoPortToggleConnect relate to how long toggling ports may take to sync and detect a connection.

A *USB 2.0* only Sink that doesn't support accessories and is self-powered or requires only default power and does not support *USB PD* may transition directly to Attached.SNK when VBUS is detected.

A DRP shall transition to Unattached.SRC within tDRPTransition after the state of both CC pins is SNK.Open for tDRP – dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, or if directed.

A Sink with Accessory support shall transition to Unattached.Accessory within tDRPTransition after the state of both the CC1 and CC2 pins is SNK.Open for tDRP – dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, or if directed.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SRC within tDRPTransition after the state of the Host-side port's CC pin is SNK.Open for tDRP – dcSRC.DRP · tDRP and both of the following is detected on the Charge-Through port.

- SNK.Rp state is detected on exactly one of the CC1 or CC2 pins for at least tCCDebounce
- VBUS is detected

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Attached.SNK when a Source connection is detected, as indicated by the SNK.Rp state on its Host-side port's CC pin.

4.5.2.2.4 AttachWait.SNK State

This state appears in Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 and Figure 4-18.

When in the AttachWait.SNK state, the port has detected the SNK.Rp state on at least one of its CC pins and is waiting for VBUS.

When in the AttachWait.SNK state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device has detected the SNK.Rp state on its Host-side port's CC pin and is waiting for host-side VBUS.

4.5.2.2.4.1 AttachWait.SNK Requirements

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN.

Both the CC1 and CC2 pins shall be independently terminated to ground through Rd.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS, and independently terminate its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins and Host-side port's CC pin to ground through Rd.

It is strongly recommended that a USB 3.2 SuperSpeed device hold off VBUS detection to the device controller until the Attached.SNK state or the DebugAccessory.SNK state is reached, i.e. at least one CC pin is in the SNK.Rp state. Otherwise, it may connect as *USB 2.0* when attached to a legacy host or hub's DFP.

4.5.2.2.4.2 Exiting from AttachWait.SNK State

A Sink shall transition to Unattached.SNK when the state of both the CC1 and CC2 pins is SNK.Open for at least tPDDebounce.

A DRP shall transition to Unattached.SRC when the state of both the CC1 and CC2 pins is SNK.Open for at least tPDDebounce.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

The port shall transition to Attached.SNK after the state of only one of the CC1 or CC2 pins is SNK.Rp for at least tCCDebounce and VBUS is detected. Note the Source may initiate *USB PD* communications which will cause brief periods of the SNK.Open state on one of the CC pins with the state of the other CC pin remaining SNK.Open, but this event will not exceed tPDDebounce.

If the port is a VCONN-Powered Accessory or a VCONN-Powered USB Device, the port shall transition to Attached.SNK when either VCONN or VBUS is detected. The port may transition without waiting tCCDebounce on CC.

If the port supports Debug Accessory Mode, the port shall transition to DebugAccessory.SNK if the state of both the CC1 and CC2 pins is SNK.Rp for at least tCCDebounce and VBUS is detected. Note the DAM Source may initiate *USB PD* communications which will cause brief periods of the SNK.Open state on one of the CC pins with the state of the other CC pin remaining SNK.Rp, but this event will not exceed tPDDebounce.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Attached.SNK after the state of the Host-side port's CC pin is SNK.Rp for at least tCCDebounce and either host-side VCONN or VBUS is detected.

A DRP that strongly prefers the Source role may optionally transition to Try.SRC instead of Attached.SNK when the state of only one CC pin has been SNK.Rp for at least tCCDebounce and VBUS is detected.

4.5.2.2.5 Attached.SNK State

This state appears in Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 and Figure 4-18.

When in the Attached.SNK state, the port is attached and operating as a Sink. When the port initially enters this state it is also operating as a UFP. The power and data roles can be changed using *USB PD* commands.

A port that entered this state directly from Unattached.SNK due to detecting VBUS shall not determine orientation or availability of higher than Default USB Power and shall not use *USB PD*.

4.5.2.2.5.1 Attached.SNK Requirements

If the port needs to determine the orientation of the connector, it shall do so only upon entry to this state by detecting which of the CC1 or CC2 pins is connected through the cable (i.e., the CC pin that is in the SNK.Rp state).

If the port supports signaling on SuperSpeed USB pairs, it shall functionally connect the SuperSpeed USB pairs and maintain the connection during and after a *USB PD* PR_Swap.

If the port has entered the Attached.SNK state from the AttachWait.SNK or TryWait.SNK states, only one the CC1 or CC2 pins will be in the SNK.Rp state. The port shall continue to terminate this CC pin to ground through Rd.

If the port has entered the Attached.SNK state from the Attached.SRC state following a *USB PD* PR_Swap, the port shall terminate the connected CC pin to ground through Rd.

The port shall meet the Sink Power Sub-State requirements specified in Section 4.5.2.2.22.

If the port is a VCONN-Powered USB Device, it shall respond to *USB PD* cable identity queries on SOP'. It shall not send or respond to messages on SOP. It shall ensure there is sufficient capacitance on CC to meet cReceiver as defined in *USB PD*.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS, present a high-impedance to ground (above zOPEN) on its

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins and terminate its Host-side port's CC pin to ground through Rd.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall start a Charge-Through Support Timer when it enters the Attached.SNK state. If a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device fails to exit the Attached.SNK state before the Charge-Through Support Timer exceeds tAMETimeout, it shall present a USB Billboard Device Class interface indicating that it does not support Charge-Through.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall reset the Charge-Through Support Timer when it first receives any *USB PD* Structured VDM Command it supports. If a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device receives a Structured VDM Command multiple times, it shall only reset the Charge-Through Support Timer once. This ensures a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device will present a USB Billboard Device Class interface if it fails to exit Attached.SNK while receiving repeated or continuous Structured VDM Commands (e.g., Discover Identity).

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall reset the Charge-Through Support Timer when it receives any Data Message it supports. A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall hold the Charge-Through Support Timer in reset while it is in any *USB PD* BIST mode.

Except for a VCONN-Powered USB Device or Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device, the port may negotiate a *USB PD* PR_Swap, DR_Swap or VCONN_Swap.

If the port supports Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device, and an explicit *USB PD* contract has failed to be negotiated, the port shall query the identity of the cable via *USB PD* on SOP'.

By default, upon entry from AttachWait.SNK or Unattached.SNK, VCONN shall not be supplied in the Attached.SNK state. If Attached.SNK is entered from Attached.SRC as a result of a *USB PD* PR_Swap, it shall maintain VCONN supply state, whether on or off, and its data role/connections. A *USB PD* DR_Swap has no effect on which port sources VCONN.

The port may negotiate a *USB PD* VCONN_Swap. When the port successfully executes *USB PD* VCONN_Swap operation and was not sourcing VCONN, it shall start sourcing VCONN within tVCONNON. The port shall execute the VCONN_Swap in a make-before-break sequence in order to keep active USB Type-C to USB Type-C cables powered. When the port successfully executes *USB PD* VCONN_Swap operation and was sourcing VCONN, it shall stop sourcing VCONN within tVCONNOFF.

4.5.2.2.5.2 Exiting from Attached.SNK State

A port that is not a VCONN-Powered USB Device and is not in the process of a *USB PD* PR_Swap or a *USB PD* Hard Reset or a *USB PD* FR_Swap shall transition to Unattached.SNK within tSinkDisconnect when VBUS falls below vSinkDisconnect for VBUS operating at or below 5 V or below vSinkDisconnectPD when negotiated by *USB PD* to operate above 5 V.

A VCONN-Powered USB Device shall return to Unattached.SNK when VBUS has fallen below vSinkDisconnect and VCONN has fallen below vVCONNDisconnect.

A port that has entered into *USB PD* communications with the Source and has seen the CC voltage exceed vRd-USB may monitor the CC pin to detect cable disconnect in addition to monitoring VBUS.

A port that is monitoring the CC voltage for disconnect (but is not in the process of a *USB PD* PR_Swap or *USB PD* FR_Swap) shall transition to Unattached.SNK within tSinkDisconnect after the CC voltage remains below vRd-USB for tPDDebounce.

If supplying VCONN, the port shall cease to supply it within tVCONNOFF of exiting Attached.SNK.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTUnattached.VPD if VCONN is present and the state of its Host-side port's CC pin is SNK.Open for tVPDCTDD.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

A port that via SOP' has detected an attached Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to TryWait.SRC if implemented, or transition to Unattached.SRC or Unattached.Accessory if TryWait.SRC is not supported. This transition may be delayed until the device has sufficient battery charge needed to remain powered until it reaches the CTAttached.SNK state.

After receiving a *USB PD* PS_RDY from the original Source during a *USB PD* PR_Swap, the port shall transition directly to the Attached.SRC state (i.e., remove Rd from CC, assert Rp on CC and supply VBUS), but shall maintain its VCONN supply state, whether off or on, and its data role/connections.

4.5.2.2.6 UnattachedWait.SRC State

This state appears in Figure 4-12.

When in the UnattachedWait.SRC state, the port is discharging the CC pin that was providing VCONN in the previous Attached.SRC state.

4.5.2.2.6.1 UnattachedWait.SRC Requirements

The port shall not enable VBUS or VCONN.

The port shall complete the VCONN turn off initiated when leaving the previous Attached.SRC state.

The port shall continue to provide an Rp termination, as specified in Table 4-24, on the CC pin not being discharged.

The port shall not provide an Rp termination on the CC pin being discharged.

The port shall provide an Rdch termination on the CC pin being discharged.

The port shall discharge the CC pin being discharged below vVCONNDischarge.

4.5.2.2.6.2 Exiting from UnattachedWait.SRC State

The port shall transition to Unattached.SRC when both VCONN is turned off and the CC pin is below vVCONNDischarge.

4.5.2.2.7 Unattached.SRC State

This state appears in Figure 4-12, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 and Figure 4-18.

When in the Unattached.SRC state, the port is waiting to detect the presence of a Sink or an Accessory.

When in the Unattached.SRC state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device has detected a Source on its Charge-Through port and is independently monitoring its Host-side port to detect the presence of a Sink.

4.5.2.2.7.1 Unattached.SRC Requirements

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN.

The port shall source current on both the CC1 and CC2 pins independently.

The port shall provide a separate Rp termination on the CC1 and CC2 pins as specified in Table 4-24. Note: A Source with a captive cable or just a plug presents a single Rp termination on its CC pin (A5).

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS. The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall ensure that it is powered by VBUS from the Charge-Through port.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Upon entry into this state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall remove its Rd termination to ground on the Host-side port CC and provide an Rp termination instead advertising Default USB Power, as specified in Table 4-24, and continue to independently terminate its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins to ground through Rd.

4.5.2.2.7.2 Exiting from Unattached.SRC State

The port shall transition to AttachWait.SRC when:

- The SRC.Rd state is present on either the CC1 or CC2 pin or
- The SRC.Ra state is present on both the CC1 and CC2 pins.

The maximum times that a Port shall take to transition to AttachWait.SRC are the following:

- tNoToggleConnect when neither Port Partner is toggling
- tOnePortToggleConnect when one Port Partner only is toggling

When both Port Partners are toggling, a Port should transition to AttachWait.SRC within tTwoPortToggleConnect. Note that when both Port Partners are DRPs it is indeterminate whether the local port will transition to AttachWait.SRC or AttachWait.SNK.

Note: The times tOnePortToggleConnect and tTwoPortToggleConnect relate to how long toggling ports may take to sync and detect a connection.

Note: A cable without an attached device can be detected, when the SRC.Ra state is detected on one of the CC1 or CC2 pins and the other CC pin is SRC.Open. However in this case, the port shall not transition to AttachWait.SRC.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to AttachWait.SRC when host-side VBUS is vSafe0V and SRC.Rd state is detected on the Host-side port's CC pin.

A DRP shall transition to Unattached.SNK within tDRPTransition after dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, or if directed.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SNK within tDRPTransition after dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, or if Charge-Through VBUS is removed.

4.5.2.2.8 AttachWait.SRC State

This state appears in Figure 4-12, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 and Figure 4-18.

The AttachWait.SRC state is used to ensure that the state of both of the CC1 and CC2 pins is stable after a Sink is connected.

When in the AttachWait.SRC state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device ensures that the state of Host-side port's CC pin is stable after a Sink is connected.

4.5.2.2.8.1 AttachWait.SRC Requirements

The requirements for this state are identical to Unattached.SRC.

4.5.2.2.8.2 Exiting from AttachWait.SRC State

The port shall transition to Attached.SRC when VBUS is at vSafe0V and the SRC.Rd state is detected on exactly one of the CC1 or CC2 pins for at least tCCDebounce.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Try.SNK when the host-side VBUS is at vSafe0V and the SRC.Rd state is on the Host-side port's CC pin for at least tCCDebounce.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

If the port supports Audio Adapter Accessory Mode, it shall transition to AudioAccessory when the SRC.Ra state is detected on both the CC1 and CC2 pins for at least tCCDebounce.

If the port supports Debug Accessory Mode, it shall transition to UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC when VBUS is at vSafe0V and the SRC.Rd state is detected on both the CC1 and CC2 pins for at least tCCDebounce.

A Source shall transition to Unattached.SRC and a DRP to Unattached.SNK when the SRC.Open state is detected on both the CC1 and CC2 pins. The Source shall detect the SRC.Open state within tSRCDisconnect, but should detect it as quickly as possible.

A Source shall transition to Unattached.SRC and a DRP to Unattached.SNK when the SRC.Open state is detected on either the CC1 or CC2 pin and the other CC pin is SRC.Ra. The Source shall detect the SRC.Open state within tSRCDisconnect, but should detect it as quickly as possible.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SNK when the SRC.Open state is detected on the Host-side port's CC or if Charge-Through VBUS falls below vSinkDisconnect. The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall detect the SRC.Open state within tSRCDisconnect, but should detect it as quickly as possible.

A DRP that strongly prefers the Sink role may optionally transition to Try.SNK instead of Attached.SRC when VBUS is at vSafe0V and the SRC.Rd state is detected on exactly one of the CC1 or CC2 pins for at least tCCDebounce.

4.5.2.2.9 Attached.SRC State

This state appears in Figure 4-12, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 and Figure 4-18.

When in the Attached.SRC state, the port is attached and operating as a Source. When the port initially enters this state it is also operating as a DFP. Subsequently, the initial power and data roles can be changed using *USB PD* commands.

When in the Attached.SRC state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device has detected a Sink on its Host-side port and has connected the Charge-Through port VBUS to the Host-side port VBUS.

4.5.2.2.9.1 Attached.SRC Requirements

If the port needs to determine the orientation of the connector, it shall do so only upon entry to the Attached.SRC state by detecting which of the CC1 or CC2 pins is connected through the cable, i.e., which CC pin is in the SRC.Rd state.

If the port has entered this state from the AttachWait.SRC state or the Try.SRC state, the SRC.Rd state will be on only one of the CC1 or CC2 pins. The port shall source current on this CC pin and monitor its state.

If the port has entered this state from the Attached.SNK state as the result of a *USB PD* PR_Swap, the port shall source current on the connected CC pin and monitor its state.

The port shall provide an Rp as specified in Table 4-24.

The port shall supply VBUS current at the level it advertises on Rp.

The port shall supply VBUS within tVBUSON of entering this state, and for as long as it is operating as a power source.

The port shall not initiate any *USB PD* communications until VBUS reaches vSafe5V.

If the port supports signaling on SuperSpeed USB pairs, it shall:

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- Functionally connect the SuperSpeed USB pairs
- For VCONN, do one of two things:
    - Supply VCONN unconditionally to the CC pin not in the SRC.Rd state, or
    - Supply VCONN to the CC pin in the SRC.Ra state.

A port that does not support signaling on SuperSpeed USB pairs may supply VCONN in the same manner described above.

The port may negotiate a *USB PD* PR_Swap, DR_Swap or VCONN_Swap.

If the port supplies VCONN, it shall do so within tVCONNON.

The port may query the identity of the cable via *USB PD* on SOP'. If it detects that it is connected to a VCONN-Powered USB Device, the port may remove VBUS and discharge it to vSafe0V, while continuing to remain in this state with VCONN applied. The port may also initiate other SOP' communication.

The port shall not supply VCONN if it has entered this state as a result of a *USB PD* PR_Swap and was not previously supplying VCONN. A *USB PD* DR_Swap has no effect on which port sources VCONN.

The port may negotiate a *USB PD* VCONN_Swap. When the port successfully executes *USB PD* VCONN_Swap operation and was sourcing VCONN, it shall stop sourcing VCONN within tVCONNOFF. The port shall execute the VCONN_Swap in a make-before-break sequence in order to keep active USB Type-C to USB Type-C cables powered. When the port successfully executes *USB PD* VCONN_Swap operation and was not sourcing VCONN, it shall start sourcing VCONN within tVCONNON.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall continue to isolate its Host-side port's CC pin from its Charge-Through CC pins.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall maintain its Rp termination advertising Default USB Power on the Host-side port's CC pin, and continue to independently terminate its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins to ground through Rd.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall immediately connect the Charge-Through port's VBUS through to the Host-side port's VBUS.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall ensure that it is powered entirely by VBUS.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall only respond to *USB PD* Discover Identity queries on SOP' on its Host-side port and complete any active queries prior to exiting this state. It shall ensure there is sufficient capacitance on the Host-side port CC to meet cReceiver as defined in *USB PD*.

4.5.2.2.9.2 Exiting from Attached.SRC State

A Source that is supplying VCONN or has yielded VCONN source responsibility to the Sink through *USB PD* VCONN_Swap messaging shall transition to UnattachedWait.SRC when the SRC.Open state is detected on the monitored CC pin. The Source shall detect the SRC.Open state within tSRCDisconnect, but should detect it as quickly as possible.

A Source that is not supplying VCONN and has not yielded VCONN responsibility to the Sink through *USB PD* VCONN_Swap messaging shall transition to Unattached.SRC when the SRC.Open state is detected on the monitored CC pin. The Source shall detect the SRC.Open state within tSRCDisconnect, but should detect it as quickly as possible.

When the SRC.Open state is detected on the monitored CC pin, a DRP shall transition to Unattached.SNK unless it strongly prefers the Source role. In that case, it shall transition to TryWait.SNK. This transition to TryWait.SNK is needed so that two devices that both prefer the

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Source role do not loop endlessly between Source and Sink. In other words, a DRP that would enter Try.SRC from AttachWait.SNK shall enter TryWait.SNK for a Sink detach from Attached.SRC.

A DRP that supports Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTUnattached.SNK if the connected device identifies itself as a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device in its Discover Identity Command response. The DRP may delay this transition in order to perform further SOP' communication.

A port shall cease to supply VBUS within tVBUSOFF of exiting Attached.SRC.

A port that is supplying VCONN shall cease to supply it within tVCONNOFF of exiting Attached.SRC, unless it is exiting as a result of a *USB PD* PR_Swap or is transitioning into the CTUnattached.SNK state.

After a *USB PD* PR_Swap is accepted (i.e., either an Accept message is received or acknowledged), a DRP shall transition directly to the Attached.SNK state (i.e., remove Rp from CC, assert Rd on CC and stop supplying VBUS) and maintain its current data role, connection and VCONN supply state.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SNK when VBUS falls below vSinkDisconnect or the Host-side port's CC pin is SRC.Open. The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall detect the SRC.Open state within tSRCDisconnect, but should detect it as quickly as possible.

4.5.2.2.10 Try.SRC State

This state appears in Figure 4-16.

When in the Try.SRC state, the port is querying to determine if the port partner supports the Sink role.

Note: if both Try.SRC and Try.SNK mechanisms are implemented, only one shall be enabled by the port at any given time. Deciding which of these two mechanisms is enabled is product design-specific.

4.5.2.2.10.1 Try.SRC Requirements

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN.

The port shall source current on both the CC1 and CC2 pins independently.

The port shall provide an Rp as specified in Table 4-24.

4.5.2.2.10.2 Exiting from Try.SRC State

The port shall transition to Attached.SRC when the SRC.Rd state is detected on exactly one of the CC1 or CC2 pins for at least tTryCCDebounce.

The port shall transition to TryWait.SNK after tDRPTry and the SRC.Rd state has not been detected and VBUS is within vSafe0V, or after tTryTimeout and the SRC.Rd state has not been detected.

4.5.2.2.11 TryWait.SNK State

This state appears in Figure 4-16.

When in the TryWait.SNK state, the port has failed to become a Source and is waiting to attach as a Sink. Alternatively the port is responding to the Sink being removed while in the Attached.SRC state.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.2.11.1 TryWait.SNK Requirements

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN.

Both the CC1 and CC2 pins shall be independently terminated to ground through Rd.

4.5.2.2.11.2 Exiting from TryWait.SNK State

The port shall transition to Attached.SNK after tCCDebounce if or when VBUS is detected. Note the Source may initiate *USB PD* communications which will cause brief periods of the SNK.Open state on both the CC1 and CC2 pins, but this event will not exceed tPDDebounce.

The port shall transition to Unattached.SNK when the state of both of the CC1 and CC2 pins is SNK.Open for at least tPDDebounce.

4.5.2.2.12 Try.SNK State

This state appears in Figure 4-14, Figure 4-17 and Figure 4-18.

When in the Try.SNK state, the port is querying to determine if the port partner supports the Source role.

When in the Try.SNK state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device is querying to determine if the port partner on the Host-side port supports the Source role.

Note: if both Try.SRC and Try.SNK mechanisms are implemented, only one shall be enabled by the port at any given time. Deciding which of these two mechanisms is enabled is product design-specific.

4.5.2.2.12.1 Try.SNK Requirements

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN.

Both the CC1 and CC2 pins shall be independently terminated to ground through Rd.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS. The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall ensure that it is powered by VBUS from the Charge-Through port.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall remove its Rp termination (Default USB Power advertisement) on the Host-side port CC and provide an Rd termination to ground instead, as specified in Table 4-24 and remain to independently terminate its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins to ground through Rd.

4.5.2.2.12.2 Exiting from Try.SNK State

The port shall wait for tDRPTry and only then begin monitoring the CC1 and CC2 pins for the SNK.Rp state.

The port shall then transition to Attached.SNK when the SNK.Rp state is detected on exactly one of the CC1 or CC2 pins for at least tTryCCDebounce and VBUS is detected.

Alternatively, the port shall transition to TryWait.SRC if SNK.Rp state is not detected for tTryCCDebounce.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall wait for tDRPTry and only then begin monitoring the Host-side port's CC pin for the SNK.Rp state.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall then transition to Attached.SNK when the SNK.Rp state is detected on the Host-side port's CC pin for at least tTryCCDebounce and VBUS or VCONN is detected on Host-side port.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Alternatively, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to TryWait.SRC if Host-side SNK.Rp state is not detected for tTryCCDebounce.

A Sink with Accessory Support shall transition to Unsupported.Accessory if SNK.Rp state is not detected for tDRPTryWait.

Note: The Source may initiate *USB PD* communications which will cause brief periods of the SNK.Open state on both the CC1 and CC2 pins, but this event will not exceed tTryCCDebounce.

4.5.2.2.13 TryWait.SRC State

This state appears in Figure 4-17 and Figure 4-18.

When in the TryWait.SRC state, the port has failed to become a Sink and is waiting to attach as a Source.

When in the TryWait.SRC state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device has failed to become a Sink on its Host-side port and is waiting to attach as a Source on its Host-side port.

4.5.2.2.13.1 TryWait.SRC Requirements

The requirements for this state are identical to Unattached.SRC.

4.5.2.2.13.2 Exiting from TryWait.SRC State

The port shall transition to Attached.SRC when VBUS is at vSafe0V and the SRC.Rd state is detected on exactly one of the CC pins for at least tTryCCDebounce.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Attached.SRC when host-side VBUS is at vSafe0V and the SRC.Rd state is detected on the Host-side port's CC pin for at least tTryCCDebounce.

The port shall transition to Unattached.SNK after tDRPTry if neither of the CC1 or CC2 pins are in the SRC.Rd state.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SNK after tDRPTry if the Host-side port's CC pin is not in the SRC.Rd state.

4.5.2.2.14 Unattached.Accessory State

This state appears in Figure 4-14.

The Unattached.Accessory state allows accessory-supporting Sinks to connect to audio or VCONN-Powered Accessories.

This state is functionally equivalent to the Unattached.SRC state in a DRP, except that Attached.SRC is not supported.

4.5.2.2.14.1 Unattached.Accessory Requirements

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN.

The port shall source current on both the CC1 and CC2 pins independently.

The port shall provide an Rp as specified in Table 4-24.

4.5.2.2.14.2 Exiting from Unattached.Accessory State

A port that supports Audio Adapter Accessory Mode shall transition to AttachWait.Accessory when the state of both CC pins is SRC.Ra.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

A port that supports VCONN-Powered Accessories also shall transition to AttachWait.Accessory when the state of either CC1 or CC2 pin is SRC.Ra and the other CC pin is SRC.Rd.

The maximum time the local port shall take to transition from Unattached.Accessory to the AttachWait.Accessory state when an Audio Adapter Accessory or VCONN-Powered Accessory is present is tOnePortToggleConnect.

Otherwise, the port shall transition to Unattached.SNK within tDRPTransition after dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, or if directed.

4.5.2.2.15 AttachWait.Accessory State

This state appears in Figure 4-14.

The AttachWait.Accessory state is used to ensure that the state of both of the CC1 and CC2 pins is stable after a cable is plugged in.

4.5.2.2.15.1 AttachWait.Accessory Requirements

The requirements for this state are identical to Unattached.Accessory.

4.5.2.2.15.2 Exiting from AttachWait.Accessory State

If the port supports Audio Adapter Accessory Mode, it shall transition to AudioAccessory when the state of both the CC1 and CC2 pins is SRC.Ra for at least tCCDebounce.

The port shall transition to Unattached.SNK when the state of either the CC1 or CC2 pin is SRC.Open for at least tCCDebounce.

If the port supports VCONN-Powered Accessories, it shall transition to PoweredAccessory state if the state of either the CC1 or CC2 pin is SRC.Rd and the other CC pin is SRC.Ra concurrently for at least tCCDebounce.

4.5.2.2.16 AudioAccessory State

This state appears in Figure 4-12, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-16 and Figure 4-17.

The AudioAccessory state is used for the Audio Adapter Accessory Mode specified in Appendix A.

4.5.2.2.16.1 AudioAccessory Requirements

The port shall reconfigure its pins as detailed in Appendix A.

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN. A port that sinks current from the audio accessory over VBUS shall not draw more than 500 mA.

The port shall provide an Rp as specified in Table 4-24.

The port shall source current on at least one of the CC1 or CC2 pins and monitor to detect when the state is no longer SRC.Ra. If the port sources and monitors only one of CC1 or CC2, then it shall ensure that the termination on the unmonitored CC pin does not affect the monitored signal when the port is connected to an Audio Accessory that may short both CC1 and CC2 pins together.

4.5.2.2.16.2 Exiting from AudioAccessory State

If the port is a Sink, the port shall transition to Unattached.SNK when the state of the monitored CC1 or CC2 pin(s) is SRC.Open for at least tCCDebounce.

If the port is a Source or DRP, the port shall transition to Unattached.SRC when the state of the monitored CC1 or CC2 pin(s) is SRC.Open for at least tCCDebounce.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.2.17 UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC

This state appears in Figure 4-12, Figure 4-16 and Figure 4-17.

The UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC state is used for the Debug Accessory Mode specified in Appendix B.

4.5.2.2.17.1 UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC Requirements

This mode is for debug only and shall not be used for communicating with commercial products.

The port shall provide an Rp as specified in Table 4-24 on both the CC1 and CC2 pins and monitor to detect when the state of either is SRC.Open.

The port shall supply VBUS current at the level it advertises on Rp. The port shall not drive VCONN.

The port may connect any non-orientation specific debug signals for Debug Accessory Mode operation only after entry to this state.

4.5.2.2.17.2 Exiting from UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC State

If the port is a Source, the port shall transition to Unattached.SRC when the SRC.Open state is detected on either the CC1 or CC2 pin.

If the port is a DRP, the port shall transition to Unattached.SNK when the SRC.Open state is detected on either the CC1 or CC2 pin.

The port shall transition to OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC state if orientation is required and detected as described in Section B.2.6.1.2.

4.5.2.2.18 OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC State

This state appears in Figure 4-12, Figure 4-16 and Figure 4-17.

The OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC state is used for the Debug Accessory Mode specified in Appendix B.

4.5.2.2.18.1 OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC State Requirements

This mode is for debug only and shall not be used for communicating with commercial products.

The port shall provide an Rp as specified in Table 4-24 on both the CC1 and CC2 pins and monitor to detect when the state of either is SRC.Open.

The port shall supply VBUS current at the level it advertises on Rp. The port shall not drive VCONN.

The port shall connect any orientation specific debug signals for Debug Accessory Mode operation only after entry to this state. Any non-orientation specific debug signals for Debug Accessory Mode operation shall be connected or remain connected in this state.

If the port needs to establish *USB PD* communications, it shall do so only after entry to this state. The port shall not initiate any *USB PD* communications until VBUS reaches vSafe5V. In this state, the port takes on the initial *USB PD* role of DFP/Source.

4.5.2.2.18.2 Exiting from OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC State

If the port is a Source, the port shall transition to Unattached.SRC when the SRC.Open state is detected on either the CC1 or CC2 pin.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

If the port is a DRP, the port shall transition to Unattached.SNK when the SRC.Open state is detected on either the CC1 or CC2 pin.

4.5.2.2.19 DebugAccessory.SNK

This state appears in Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-16 and Figure 4-17.

The DebugAccessory.SNK state is used for the Debug Accessory Mode specified in Appendix B.

4.5.2.2.19.1 DebugAccessory.SNK Requirements

This mode is for debug only and shall not be used for communicating with commercial products.

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN.

The port shall provide an Rd as specified in Table 4-25 on both the CC1 and CC2 pins and monitor to detect when the state of either is SRC.Open.

If supported, orientation is determined as outlined in Section B.2.6.1.1. The port shall connect any debug signals for Debug Accessory Mode operation only after entry to this state.

4.5.2.2.19.2 Exiting from DebugAccessory.SNK State

The port shall transition to Unattached.SNK when VBUS is no longer present.

4.5.2.2.20 PoweredAccessory State

This state appears in Figure 4-14.

When in the PoweredAccessory state, the port is powering a VCONN–Powered Accessory or VCONN-Powered USB Device.

4.5.2.2.20.1 PoweredAccessory Requirements

If the port needs to determine the orientation of the connector, it shall do so only upon entry to the PoweredAccessory state by detecting which of the CC1 or CC2 pins is connected through the cable (i.e., which CC pin is in the SRC.Rd state).

The SRC.Rd state is detected on only one of the CC1 or CC2 pins. The port shall advertise either 1.5 A or 3.0 A (see Table 4-24) on this CC pin and monitor its state.

The port shall supply VCONN on the unused CC pin within tVconnON-PA of entering the PoweredAccessory state.

The port shall not drive VBUS.

When the port initially enters the PoweredAccessory state it shall operate as a *USB Power Delivery* Source with a DFP data role. In addition, the port shall support at least one of the following:

- Use *USB PD* to establish an explicit contract and then use Structured Vendor Defined Messages (Structured VDMs) to identify a VCONN–Powered Accessory and enter an Alternate Mode.
- Use *USB PD* to query the identity of a VCONN-Powered USB Device (that operates as a cable plug responding to SOP').

4.5.2.2.20.2 Exiting from PoweredAccessory State

The port shall transition to Unattached.SNK when the SRC.Open state is detected on the monitored CC pin.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

The port shall transition to Try.SNK if the attached device is not a VCONN–Powered Accessory or VCONN-Powered USB Device. For example, the attached device does not support *USB PD* or does not respond to *USB PD* commands required for a VCONN–Powered Accessory (e.g., Discover SVIDs, Discover Modes, etc.) or is a Sink or DRP attached through a Powered Cable.

The port shall transition to Unsupported.Accessory if the attached device is a VCONN–Powered Accessory but the port has not successfully entered an Alternate Mode within tAMETimeout (see Appendix E).

A port that supports Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTUnattached.SNK if the connected device identifies itself as a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device in its Discover Identity Command response. The port may delay this transition in order to perform further SOP' communication.

The port shall cease to supply VCONN within tVCONNOFF of exiting the PoweredAccessory state unless it is transitioning into the CTUnattached.SNK state.

4.5.2.2.21 Unsupported.Accessory State

This state appears in Figure 4-14.

If a VCONN–Powered Accessory does not enter an Alternate Mode, the Unsupported.Accessory state is used to wait until the accessory is unplugged before continuing.

4.5.2.2.21.1 Unsupported.Accessory Requirements

Only one of the CC1 or CC2 pins shall be in the SRC.Rd state. The port shall advertise Default USB Power (see Table 4-24) on this CC pin and monitor its voltage.

The port shall not drive VBUS or VCONN.

A Sink with either VCONN–Powered Accessory or VCONN-Powered USB Device support shall provide user notification that it does not recognize or support the attached accessory or device.

4.5.2.2.21.2 Exiting from Unsupported.Accessory

The port shall transition to Unattached.SNK when the SRC.Open state is detected on the monitored CC pin.

4.5.2.2.22 CTUnattached.VPD State

This state appears in Figure 4-18.

When in the CTUnattached.VPD state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device has detected SNK.Open on its host port for tVPDCTDD, indicating that it is connected to a Charge-Through capable Source, and is independently monitoring its Charge-Through port for the presence of a pass-through Power Source.

This state may also have been entered through detach of a Power Source on the Charge-Through port or detach of a sink from the CTVPD's Charge-through port.

4.5.2.2.22.1 CTUnattached.VPD Requirements

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS. The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall ensure that it is powered by VCONN, does not consume more than ICCS (*USB 3.2*) / ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) from VBUS

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

for monitoring, and is sufficiently isolated from VBUS to tolerate high voltages during Charge-Through operation.

Upon entry into this state, the device shall remove its Rd termination to ground (if present) on the Host-side port CC and provide an Rp termination advertising 3.0 A instead, as specified in Table 4-24. Note that because VBUS is not provided, the Rp termination signals continued connection to the port partner but does not carry with it any current advertisement.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall only respond to *USB PD* Discover Identity queries on SOP' on its Host-side port. It shall ensure there is sufficient capacitance on the Host-side port CC to meet cReceiver as defined in *USB PD*.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall independently terminate both the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins to ground through Rd.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall provide a bypass capacitance of CCTB on the Charge-Through Port's VBUS pins.

4.5.2.2.22.2 Exiting from CTUnattached.VPD

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTAttachWait.VPD when a Source connection is detected on the Charge-Through port, as indicated by the SNK.Rp state on exactly one of the Charge-Through port's CC pins.

Debug accessories are not supported on the Charge-Through port.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SNK if VCONN falls below vVCONNDisconnect.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTUnattached.Unsupported within tDRPTransition after the state of both the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins is SNK.Open for tDRP – dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, or if directed.

4.5.2.2.23 CTAttachWait.VPD State

This state appears in Figure 4-18.

When in the CTAttachWait.VPD state, the device has detected the SNK.Rp state on exactly one of its Charge-Through port's CC pins and is waiting for VBUS on the Charge-Through port.

4.5.2.2.23.1 CTAttachWait.VPD Requirements

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS. The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall ensure that it is powered by VCONN, does not consume more than ICCS (*USB 3.2*) / ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) from VBUS for monitoring, and is sufficiently isolated from VBUS to tolerate high voltages during Charge-Through operation.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall maintain its Rp termination advertising 3.0 A on the Host-side port's CC pin, as well as the independent terminations to ground through Rd on the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall only respond to *USB PD* Discover Identity queries on SOP' on its Host-side port, and complete any active queries prior to exiting this state. It shall ensure there is sufficient capacitance on the Host-side port CC to meet cReceiver as defined in *USB PD*.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.2.23.2 Exiting from CTAttachWait.VPD

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTUnattached.VPD when the state of both the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins are SNK.Open for at least tPDDebounce.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTAttached.VPD after the state of only one of the Charge-Through port's CC1 or CC2 pins is SNK.Rp for at least tCCDebounce and VBUS on the Charge-Through port is detected.

Note the Charge-Through Source may initiate *USB PD* communications which will cause brief periods of the SNK.Open state on one of the Charge-Through port's CC pins with the state of the Charge-Through port's other CC pin remaining SNK.Open, but this event will not exceed tPDDebounce.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTDisabled.VPD if VCONN falls below vVCONNDisconnect.

4.5.2.2.24 CTAttached.VPD State

This state appears in Figure 4-18.

When in the CTAttached.VPD state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device has detected a Power Source on its Charge-Through port and has connected the Charge-Through port's CC and VBUS pins directly to the Host-side port's CC and VBUS pins. Hence all power delivery, negotiation and *USB PD* communication are performed directly between the unit on Host-side port and the Power Source connected to the Charge-Through port.

4.5.2.2.24.1 CTAttached.VPD Requirements

Upon entry to this state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall detect which of the Charge-Through port's CC1 or CC2 pins is connected through the cable (i.e., the CC pin that is in the SNK.Rp state). The device shall then immediately, in the following order:

1. Remove or reduce any additional capacitance on the Host-side CC port that was introduced in order to meet cReceiver as defined in *USB PD* to present on CC a value equal to or less than two times the maximum value for cCablePlug_CC.
2. Disable the Rp termination advertising 3.0 A on the host port's CC pin.
3. Passively multiplex the detected Charge-Through port's CC pin through to the host port's CC pin with an impedance of less than RccCON.
4. Disable the Rd on the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins.
5. Connect the Charge-Through port's VBUS through to the host port's VBUS.

These steps shall be completed within tVPDDetach minimum of entering this state.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall ensure that it is powered by VCONN, does not consume more than ICCS (*USB 3.2*) / ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) from VBUS for monitoring, and is sufficiently isolated from VBUS to tolerate high voltages during Charge-Through operation.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall not respond to any *USB PD* communication on any CC pin in this state. Any active queries on SOP' shall have been completed prior to entering this state.

4.5.2.2.24.2 Exiting from CTAttached.VPD

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTUnattached.VPD when VBUS falls below vSinkDisconnect and the state of the passed-through CC pin is SNK.Open for tVPDCTDD.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTDisabled.VPD if VCONN falls below vVCONNDisconnect.

4.5.2.2.25 CTDisabled.VPD State

This state appears in Figure 4-18.

When in the CTDisabled.VPD state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device has detected the detach on its Host-side port but may still potentially be connected to a Power Source on the Charge-Through port, and is thus ensuring that the VBUS from the Power Source is removed.

4.5.2.2.25.1 CTDisabled.VPD Requirements

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS.

The device shall present a high-impedance to ground (above zOPEN) on the Host-side port's CC pin and on the Charge-Through port CC1 and CC2 pins.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall ensure that it is powered entirely by VBUS.

4.5.2.2.25.2 Exiting from CTDisabled.VPD

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SNK after tVPDDisable.

4.5.2.2.26 CTUnattached.SNK State

This state appears in Figure 4-14, Figure 4-16 and Figure 4-17.

When in the CTUnattached.SNK state, the port has detected that it is attached to a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device and is ready if a Power Source is attached to the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device.

This state may also have been entered through detach of a Charge-Through Power Source.

4.5.2.2.26.1 CTUnattached.SNK Requirements

Upon entry to this state, the port shall remove its Rp termination (if present) and terminate CC to ground through Rd.

The port shall continue to supply VCONN.

The port shall stop sourcing or sinking VBUS and discharge it.

In *USB PD* Version 2.0, the port shall act as a bus master for the purposes of initiating PD messages.

The port may query the state of the attached VCONN-Powered USB Device by sending SOP' messages on *USB PD* to read the VPD's eMarker.

4.5.2.2.26.2 Exiting from CTUnattached.SNK

The port shall transition to CTAttached.SNK when VBUS is detected. Note that by this point, the VCONN-Powered USB Device has already de-bounced the passed-through CC pin.

The port shall transition to Unattached.SNK if the state of the CC pin is SNK.Open for tVPDDetach after VBUS is vSafe0V.

4.5.2.2.27 CTAttached.SNK State

This state appears in Figure 4-14, Figure 4-16 and Figure 4-17.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

When in the CTAttached.SNK state, the port is connected to a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device, which in turn is passing through the connection to a Power Source.

4.5.2.2.27.1 CTAttached.SNK Requirements

The port shall continue to terminate CC to ground through Rd. Since there is now a Power Source connected through to VBUS and CC, the port shall operate in one of the Sink Power Sub-States shown in Figure 4-19, and remain within the Sink Power Sub-States, until either VBUS is removed or a *USB PD* contract is established with the source.

The port shall not negotiate a voltage on VBUS higher than the maximum voltage specified in the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device's Discover Identity Command response.

The port shall continue to supply VCONN.

The port shall reject a VCONN swap request.

The port shall not perform *USB BC 1.2* primary detection, as that will interfere with VPD functionality.

In *USB PD* Version 2.0, the port shall act as a bus slave for the purposes of initiating *USB PD* messages, although it remains a DFP for USB data.

The port shall neither initiate nor respond to any SOP' communication.

The port shall meet the Sink Power Sub-State requirements specified in Section 4.5.2.2.29.

The port shall meet the additional maximum current constraints described in Section 4.6.2.5.

The port shall follow the restrictions on *USB PD* messages described in Section 4.10.2.

The port shall alter its advertised capabilities to UFP role/sink only role as described in Section 4.10.2.

4.5.2.2.27.2 Exiting from CTAttached.SNK

A port that is not in the process of a *USB PD* Hard Reset shall transition to CTUnattached.SNK within tSinkDisconnect when VBUS falls below vSinkDisconnect for VBUS operating at or below 5 V or below vSinkDisconnectPD when negotiated by *USB PD* to operate above 5 V.

A port that has entered into *USB PD* communications with the Source and has seen the CC voltage exceed vRd-USB may monitor the CC pin to detect cable disconnect in addition to monitoring VBUS.

A port that is monitoring the CC voltage for disconnect shall transition to CTUnattached.SNK within tSinkDisconnect after the CC voltage remains below vRd-USB for tPDDebounce.

4.5.2.2.28 CTUnattached.Unsupported State

This state appears in Figure 4-18.

When in the CTUnattached.Unsupported state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device has previously detected SNK.Open on its host port for tVPDCTDD, indicating that it is connected to a Charge-Through Capable Source, and is now monitoring its Charge-Through port for the presence of an unsupported sink.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device does not support Sinks, Debug Accessory Mode, or Audio Adapter Accessory Mode.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.2.28.1 CTUnattached.Unsupported Requirements

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS. The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall ensure that it is powered by VCONN, does not consume more than ICCS (*USB 3.2*) / ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) from VBUS for monitoring, and is sufficiently isolated from VBUS to tolerate high voltages during Charge-Through operation.

Upon entry into this state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall maintain its Rp termination advertising 3.0 A on the Host-side port's CC pin, remove its Rd terminations to ground on the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins, and provide a Rp termination advertising Default USB Power instead.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall only respond to *USB PD* Discover Identity queries on SOP' on its Host-side port. It shall ensure there is sufficient capacitance on the Host-side port CC to meet cReceiver as defined in *USB PD*.

4.5.2.2.28.2 Exiting from CTUnattached.Unsupported

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTAttachWait.Unsupported when a Sink connection is detected on the Charge-Through port, as indicated by the SRC.Rd state on at least one of the Charge-Through port's CC pins or SRC.Ra state on both the CC1 and CC2 pins.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SNK if VCONN falls below vVCONNDisconnect.

Otherwise, a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTUnattached.VPD within tDRPTransition after dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, or if directed.

4.5.2.2.29 CTAttachWait.Unsupported State

This state appears in Figure 4-18.

The CTAttachWait.Unsupported state is used to ensure that the state of both the Charge-Through Port's CC1 and CC2 pins are stable for at least tCCDebounce.

4.5.2.2.29.1 CTAttachWait.Unsupported Requirements

The requirements for this state are identical to CTUnattached.Unsupported state.

4.5.2.2.29.2 Exiting from CTAttachWait.Unsupported

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTTry.SNK if the state of at least one of the Charge-Through port's CC pins is SRC.Rd, or if the state of both the CC1 and CC2 pins is SRC.Ra for at least tCCDebounce.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTUnattached.VPD when the state of either the Charge-Through Port's CC1 or CC2 pin is SRC.Open for at least tCCDebounce.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SNK if VCONN falls below vVCONNDisconnect.

4.5.2.2.30 CTTry.SNK State

This state appears in Figure 4-18.

When in the CTTry.SNK state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device is querying to determine if the port partner on the Charge-Through port supports the source role.

4.5.2.2.30.1 CTTry.SNK Requirements

The requirements for this state is identical to CTUnattached.VPD state.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.5.2.2.30.2 Exiting from CTTry.SNK

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall wait for tDRPTry and only then begin monitoring the Charge-Through port's CC pins for the SNK.Rp state.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall then transition to CTAttached.VPD when the SNK.Rp state is detected on the Charge-Through port's CC pins for at least tTryCCDebounce and VBUS is detected on Charge-Through port.

A Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTAttached.Unsupported if SNK.Rp state is not detected for tDRPTryWait.

Note: The Source may initiate *USB PD* communications which will cause brief periods of the SNK.Open state on both the CC1 and CC2 pins, but this event will not exceed tTryCCDebounce.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to Unattached.SNK if VCONN falls below vVCONNDisconnect.

4.5.2.2.31 CTAttached.Unsupported State

This state appears in Figure 4-18.

If the port partner to the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device's Charge-Through port either does not support the source power role, or failed to negotiate the source role, the CTAttached.Unsupported state is used to wait until that device is unplugged before continuing.

4.5.2.2.31.1 CTAttached.Unsupported Requirements

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall isolate its Host-side port from its Charge-Through port, including CCs and VBUS. The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall ensure that it is powered by VCONN, does not consume more than ICCS (*USB 3.2*) / ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) from VBUS for monitoring, and is sufficiently isolated from VBUS to tolerate high voltages during Charge-Through operation.

Upon entry into this state, the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall maintain its Rp termination advertising 3.0 A on the Host-side port's CC pin, remove its Rd terminations to ground on the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins, and provide a Rp termination advertising Default USB Power instead.

At least one of the CC1 or CC2 pins will be in the SRC.Rd state or both will be in the SRC.Ra state. The Charge-Through port shall advertise Default USB Power (see Table 4-24) on its CC pins and monitor their voltage.

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall present a USB Billboard Device Class interface indicating that it does not recognize or support the attached accessory or device.

4.5.2.2.31.2 Exiting from CTAttached.Unsupported

The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall transition to CTUnattached.VPD when SRC.Open state is detected on both the Charge-Through port's CC pins or the SRC.Open state is detected on one CC pin and SRC.Ra is detected on the other CC pin.

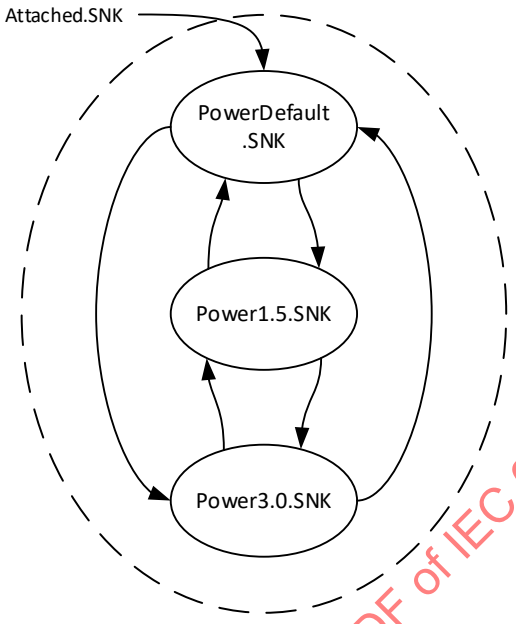
4.5.2.3 Sink Power Sub-State Requirements

When in the Attached.SNK or CTAttached.SNK states and the Source is supplying default VBUS, the port shall operate in one of the sub-states shown in Figure 4-19. The initial Sink Power Sub-State is PowerDefault.SNK. Subsequently, the Sink Power Sub-State is determined by Source's USB Type-C current advertisement. The port in Attached.SNK shall remain within the Sink Power Sub-States until either VBUS is removed or a *USB PD* contract is established with the Source.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Figure 4-19 Sink Power Sub-States



The Sink is only required to implement Sink Power Sub-State transitions if the Sink wants to consume more than default USB current.

Note that for the CTAttached.SNK state, there are further limitations on maximum current (see Section 4.6.2.5).

4.5.2.3.1 PowerDefault.SNK Sub-State

This sub-state supports Sinks consuming current within the lowest range (default) of Source-supplied current.

4.5.2.3.1.1 PowerDefault.SNK Requirements

The port shall draw no more than the default USB power from VBUS. See Section 4.6.2.1.

If the port wants to consume more than the default USB power, it shall monitor vRd to determine if more current is available from the Source.

4.5.2.3.1.2 Exiting from PowerDefault.SNK

For any change in vRd indicating a change in allowable power, the port shall not transition until the new vRd has been stable for at least tRpValueChange.

For a vRd in the vRd-1.5 range, the port shall transition to the Power1.5.SNK Sub-State.

For a vRd in the vRd-3.0 range, the port shall transition to the Power3.0.SNK Sub-State.

4.5.2.3.2 Power1.5.SNK Sub-State

This sub-state supports Sinks consuming current within the two lower ranges (default and 1.5 A) of Source-supplied current.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.3.2.1 Power1.5.SNK Requirements

The port shall draw no more than 1.5 A from VBUS.

The port shall monitor vRd while it is in this sub-state.

4.5.2.3.2.2 Exiting from Power1.5.SNK

For any change in vRd indicating a change in allowable power, the port shall not transition until the new vRd has been stable for at least tRpValueChange.

For a vRd in the vRd-USB range, the port shall transition to the PowerDefault.SNK Sub-State and reduce its power consumption to the new range within tSinkAdj.

For a vRd in the vRd-3.0 range, the port shall transition to the Power3.0.SNK Sub-State.

4.5.2.3.3 Power3.0.SNK Sub-State

This sub-state supports Sinks consuming current within all three ranges (default, 1.5 A and 3.0 A) of Source-supplied current.

4.5.2.3.3.1 Power3.0.SNK Requirements

The port shall draw no more than 3.0 A from VBUS.

The port shall monitor vRd while it is in this sub-state.

4.5.2.3.3.2 Exiting from Power3.0.SNK

For any change in vRd indicating a change in allowable power, the port shall not transition until the new vRd has been stable for at least tRpValueChange.

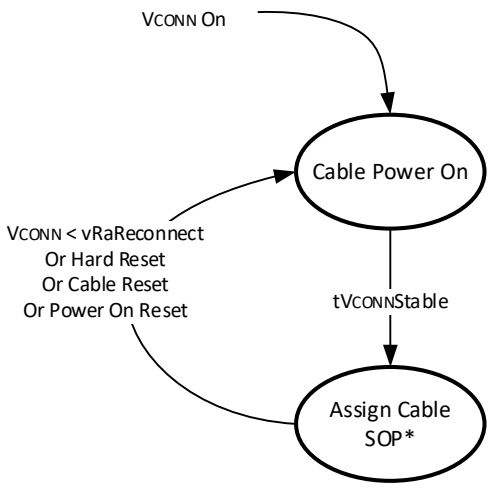
For a vRd in the vRd-USB range, the port shall transition to the PowerDefault.SNK Sub-State and reduce its power consumption to the new range within tSinkAdj.

For a vRd in the vRd-1.5 range, the port shall transition to the Power1.5.SNK Sub-State and reduce its power consumption to the new range within tSinkAdj.

4.5.2.4 Cable State Machine Requirements

Figure 4-20 illustrates the cable eMarker connection state diagram.

Figure 4-20 Cable eMarker State Diagram



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.4.1 Cable Power On State

This state appears in Figure 4-20. This is the initial power on state for each eMarker in the cable when VCONN is applied.

4.5.2.4.1.1 Cable Power On State Requirements

Each eMarker in the cable shall present Ra when no VCONN is applied.

Each eMarker in the cable shall power on and may continue to present Ra in this state.

The cable shall not respond to SOP' and SOP" commands in this state.

4.5.2.4.1.2 Exiting from Cable Power On State

Each eMarker in a passive or active cable shall transition to Assign Cable SOP* when it has completed its boot process. Each eMarker shall transition to Assign Cable SOP* within tVCONNStable.

4.5.2.4.2 Assign Cable SOP* State

This state appears in Figure 4-20.

Typically, a passive cable has only one eMarker powered at a time. This cable eMarker in a passive cable shall respond to SOP' in this state. If two eMarkers are powered at the same time in a passive cable, then one shall respond to a pre-set SOP' and the other to SOP''.

Each cable eMarker in an active cable shall respond to a pre-set SOP' or SOP''. If only one eMarker exists in the cable, it shall only respond to SOP'.

4.5.2.4.2.1 Assign Cable SOP* State Requirements

Each eMarker in the passive or active cable shall be able to respond to any *USB PD* communication sent to its pre-set SOP' or SOP''. For a passive cable, only one eMarker should be powered at a time and shall respond to SOP' only. If two eMarkers exist in a passive or active cable and are powered at the same time, then only one shall respond to SOP' and the other shall respond to SOP''. The assignment of SOP' and SOP'' is fixed for each eMarker in a cable and shall not be dynamically set when power is applied to VCONN.

Each eMarker in the cable shall weaken or remove Ra if it has not already done so.

Passive cables shall meet the Power for electronically marked passive cables defined in Table 4-6.

Active Cables shall meet the Power for Active cables in Table 4-6.

4.5.2.4.2.2 Exiting from Assign Cable SOP* State

Each eMarker in the cable shall transition to Cable Power On upon sensing VCONN less than vRaReconnect or upon a Power On Reset event.

Each eMarker in the cable shall transition to Cable Power On upon sensing a Hard Reset or Cable Reset.

4.5.2.5 Connection States Summary

Table 4-16 defines the mandatory and optional states for each type of port.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-16 Mandatory and Optional States

	SOURCE	SINK	DRP	USB PD Communication
Disabled	Optional	Optional	Optional	Not Permitted
ErrorRecovery	Mandatory[10]	Mandatory[10]	Mandatory[10]	Not Permitted
Unattached.SNK	N/A	Mandatory	Mandatory	Not Permitted
AttachWait.SNK	N/A	Mandatory[1]	Mandatory	Not Permitted
Attached.SNK	N/A	Mandatory	Mandatory	Permitted
UnattachedWait.SRC	Mandatory or N/A[7]	N/A	N/A	Not Permitted
Unattached.SRC	Mandatory	N/A	Mandatory	Not Permitted
AttachWait.SRC	Mandatory	N/A	Mandatory	Not Permitted
Attached.SRC	Mandatory	N/A	Mandatory	Permitted
Try.SRC[4]	N/A	N/A	Optional	Not Permitted
TryWait.SNK[2]	N/A	N/A	Optional	Not Permitted
Try.SNK[4, 8]	N/A	N/A	Optional	Not Permitted
TryWait.SRC[5, 8]	N/A	N/A	Optional	Not Permitted
AudioAccessory	Optional	Optional	Optional	Not Permitted
UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC	Optional[6]	N/A	Optional[6]	Not Permitted
OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC	Optional[6]	N/A	Optional[6]	Permitted
DebugAccessory.SNK	N/A	Optional	Optional	Permitted
Unattached.Accessory	N/A	Optional	N/A	Not Permitted
AttachWait.Accessory	N/A	Optional	N/A	Not Permitted
PoweredAccessory	N/A	Optional	N/A	Permitted
Unsupported.Accessory[3]	N/A	Optional	N/A	Not Permitted
CTUnattached.VPD	N/A	N/A	Optional	SOP' Permitted
CTAttachWait.VPD[8]	N/A	N/A	Optional	SOP' Permitted
CTAttached.VPD[8]	N/A	N/A	Optional	Not Permitted
CTDisabled.VPD[8]	N/A	N/A	Optional	Not Permitted
CTUnattached.SNK	N/A	N/A	Optional	SOP' Permitted
CTAttached.SNK[9]	N/A	N/A	Optional	Permitted
CTUnattached.Unsupported[8]	N/A	N/A	Optional	SOP' Permitted
CTAttachWait.Unsupported[8]	N/A	N/A	Optional	SOP' Permitted
CTTry.SNK[8]	N/A	N/A	Optional	SOP' Permitted
CTAttached.Unsupported[8]	N/A	N/A	Optional	SOP' Permitted
PowerDefault.SNK	N/A	Mandatory	Mandatory	Permitted
Power1.5.SNK	N/A	Optional	Optional	Permitted

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

	SOURCE	SINK	DRP	USB PD Communication
Power3.0.SNK	N/A	Optional	Optional	Permitted

Notes:

1. Optional for UFP applications that are USB 2.0-only, consume USB Default Power and do not support *USB PD* or accessories.
2. TryWait.SNK is mandatory when Try.SRC is supported.
3. Unsupported.Accessory is mandatory when PoweredAccessory is supported.
4. Try.SRC and Try.SNK shall not be supported at the same time, although an unattached device may dynamically choose between Try.SRC and Try.SNK state machines based on external factors.
5. TryWait.SRC is mandatory when Try.SNK is supported.
6. UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC is required for any Source or DRP that supports Debug Accessory Mode. OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC is only required if orientation detection is necessary in Debug Accessory Mode.
7. Mandatory for a DFP that was providing VCONN in the previous Attached.SRC state. N/A for a DFP that was not providing VCONN in the previous Attached.SRC state.
8. CTAttachWait.VPD, CTAttached.VPD, CTDisabled.VPD, Try.SNK, TryWait.SRC, CTUnattached.Unsupported, CTAttachWait.Unsupported, CTAttached.Unsupported, and CTTry.SNK are mandatory when CTUnattached.VPD is supported.
9. CTAttached.SNK is mandatory when CTUnattached.SNK is supported.
10. Optional for non-*USB4* implementations.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.3 USB Port Interoperability Behavior

This section describes interoperability behavior between USB Type-C to USB Type-C ports and between USB Type-C to legacy USB ports.

4.5.3.1 USB Type-C Port to USB Type-C Port Interoperability Behaviors

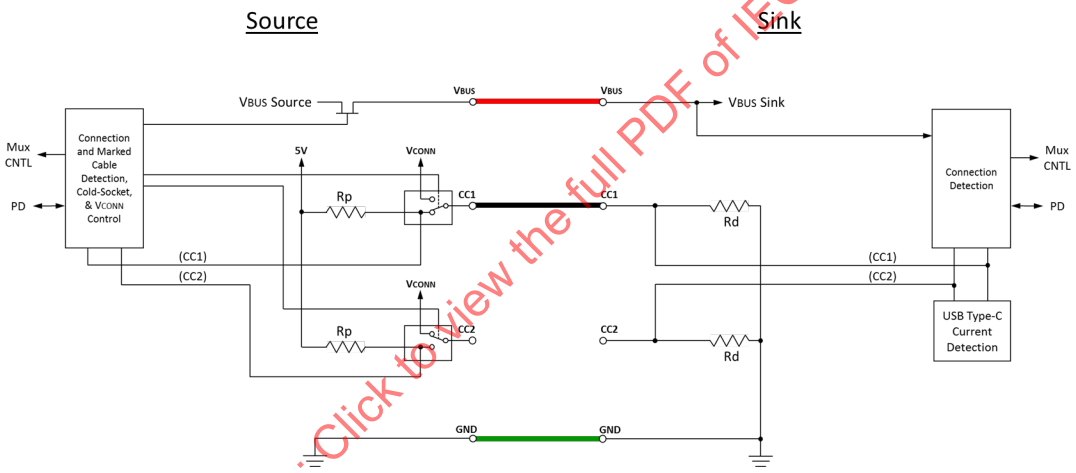
The following sub-sections describe typical port-to-port interoperability behaviors for the various combinations of USB Type-C Source, Sink and DRPs as presented in Table 4-9. In all of the described behaviors, the impact of *USB PD*-based swaps (PR_Swap, DR_Swap or VCONN_Swap) are not considered.

The figures in the following sections illustrate the CC1 and CC2 routing after the CC detection process is complete.

4.5.3.1.1 Source to Sink Behavior

Figure 4-21 illustrates the functional model for a Source connected to a Sink. The single CC wire that is in a standard cable is only shown in one of the four possible connection routes, CC1 to CC1.

Figure 4-21 Source to Sink Functional Model



The following describes the behavior when a Source is connected to a Sink.

1. Source and Sink in the unattached state
2. Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   - Source detects the Sink's pull-down on CC and enters Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   - Source turns on VBUS and VCONN
3. Sink transitions from Unattached.SNK to Attached.SNK through AttachWait.SNK. Sink may skip AttachWait.SNK if it is USB 2.0 only and does not support accessories.
   - Sink detects VBUS and enters Attached.SNK through AttachWait.SNK
4. While the Source and Sink are in the attached state:
   - Source adjusts Rp as needed to limit the current the Sink may draw
   - Sink detects and monitors vRd for available current on VBUS
   - Source monitors CC for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC
   - Sink monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

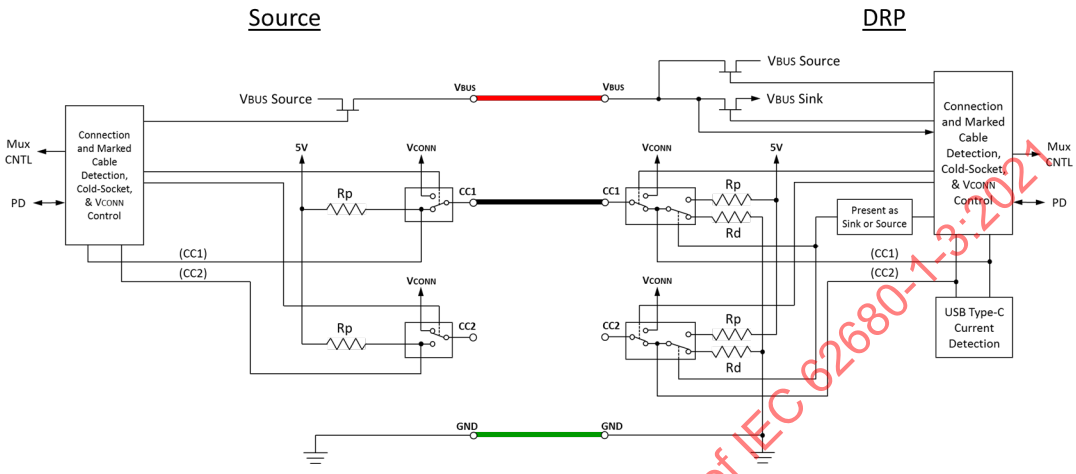
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.5.3.1.2 Source to DRP Behavior

Figure 4-22 illustrates the functional model for a Source connected to a DRP. The single CC wire that is in a standard cable is only shown in one of the four possible connection routes, CC1 to CC1.

Figure 4-22 Source to DRP Functional Model



The following describes the behavior when a Source is connected to a DRP.

1. Source and DRP in the unattached state
   - DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   - Source detects the DRP's pull-down on CC and enters AttachWait.SRC. After tCCDebounce it then enters Attached.SRC.
   - Source turns on VBUS and VCONN
3. DRP transitions from Unattached.SNK to Attached.SNK through AttachWait.SNK
   - DRP in Unattached.SNK detects pull up on CC and enters AttachWait.SNK. After that state persists for tCCDebounce and it detects VBUS, it enters Attached.SNK.
4. While the Source and DRP are in their respective attached states:
   - Source adjusts Rp as needed to limit the current the DRP (as Sink) may draw
   - DRP (as Sink) detects and monitors vRd for available current on VBUS
   - Source monitors CC for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC
   - DRP (as Sink) monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)

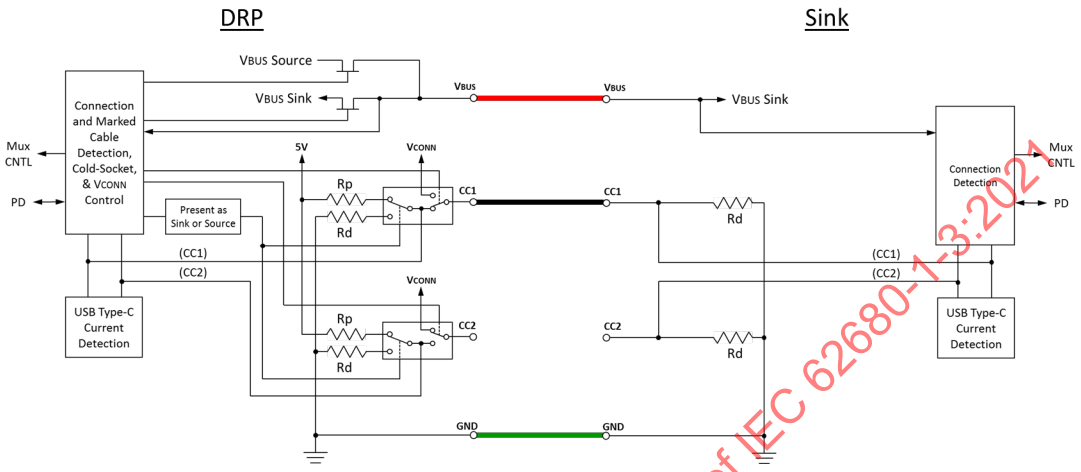
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.3.1.3 DRP to Sink Behavior

Figure 4-23 illustrates the functional model for a DRP connected to a Sink. The single CC wire that is in a standard cable is only shown in one of the four possible connection routes, CC1 to CC1.

Figure 4-23 DRP to Sink Functional Model



The following describes the behavior when a DRP is connected to a Sink.

1. DRP and Sink in the unattached state
   - DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DRP transitions from Unattached.SRC to AttachWait.SRC to Attached.SRC
   - DRP in Unattached.SRC detects one of the CC pull-downs of Sink which is in Unattached.SNK and DRP enters AttachWait.SRC
   - DRP in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce. It then enters Attached.SRC and turns on VBUS and VCONN
3. Sink transitions from Unattached.SNK to Attached.SNK through AttachWait.SNK if required.
   - Sink detects VBUS and enters Attached.SNK
4. While the DRP and Sink are in their respective attached states:
   - DRP (as Source) adjusts Rp as needed to limit the current the Sink may draw
   - Sink detects and monitors vRd for available current on VBUS
   - DRP (as Source) monitors CC for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)
   - Sink monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

4.5.3.1.4 DRP to DRP Behavior

Two behavior descriptions based on the connection state diagrams are provided below. In the first case, the two DRPs accept the resulting Source-to-Sink relationship achieved randomly whereas in the second case the DRP #2 chooses to drive the random result to the opposite result using the Try.SRC mechanism.

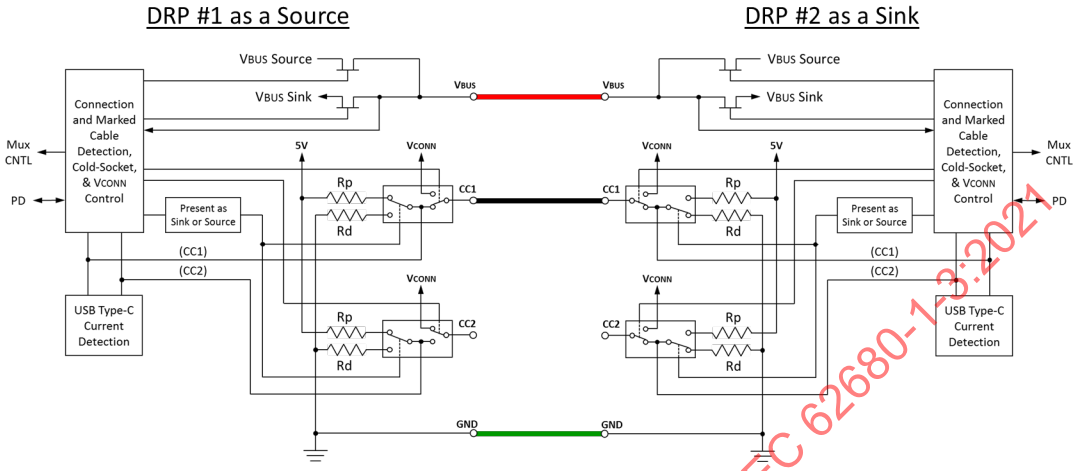
Figure 4-24 illustrates the functional model for a DRP connected to a DRP in the first case described. The single CC wire that is in a standard cable is only shown in one of the four possible connection

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

routes, CC1 to CC1. Port numbers have been arbitrarily assigned in the diagram to assist the reader to understand the process description.

Figure 4-24 DRP to DRP Functional Model – CASE 1



CASE 1: The following describes the behavior when a DRP is connected to another DRP. In this flow, the two DRPs accept the resulting Source-to-Sink relationship achieved randomly.

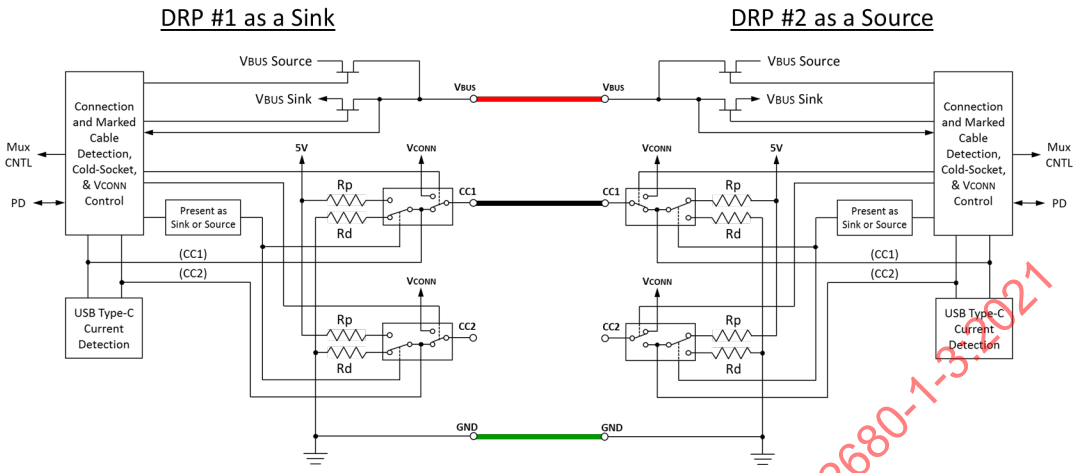
1. Both DRPs in the unattached state
   - DRP #1 and DRP #2 alternate between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DRP #1 transitions from Unattached.SRC to AttachWait.SRC
   - DRP #1 in Unattached.SRC detects a CC pull down of DRP #2 in Unattached.SNK and enters AttachWait.SRC
3. DRP #2 transitions from Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK
   - DRP #2 in Unattached.SNK detects pull up on a CC and enters AttachWait.SNK
4. DRP #1 transitions from AttachWait.SRC to Attached.SRC
   - DRP #1 in AttachWait.SRC continues to see CC pull down of DRP #2 for tCCDebounce, enters Attached.SRC and turns on VBUS and VCONN
5. DRP #2 transitions from AttachWait.SNK to Attached.SNK.
   - DRP #2 after having been in AttachWait.SNK for tCCDebounce and having detected VBUS, enters Attached.SNK
6. While the DRPs are in their respective attached states:
   - DRP #1 (as Source) adjusts Rp as needed to limit the current DRP #2 (as Sink) may draw
   - DRP #2 (as Sink) detects and monitors vRd for available current on VBUS
   - DRP #1 (as Source) monitors CC for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)
   - DRP #2 (as Sink) monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)

Figure 4-25 illustrates the functional model for a DRP connected to a DRP in the second case described.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-25 DRP to DRP Functional Model – CASE 2 & 3



CASE 2: The following describes the behavior when a DRP is connected to another DRP. In this flow, the DRP #2 chooses to drive the random result to the opposite result using the Try.SRC mechanism.

1. Both DRPs in the unattached state
   - DRP #1 and DRP #2 alternate between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DRP #1 transitions from Unattached.SRC to AttachWait.SRC
   - DRP #1 in Unattached.SRC detects a CC pull down of DRP #2 in Unattached.SNK and enters AttachWait.SRC
3. DRP #2 transitions from Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK
   - DRP #2 in Unattached.SNK detects pull up on a CC and enters AttachWait.SNK
4. DRP #1 transitions from AttachWait.SRC to Attached.SRC
   - DRP #1 in AttachWait.SRC continues to see CC pull down of DRP #2 for tCCDebounce, enters Attached.SRC and turns on VBUS and VCONN
5. DRP #2 transitions from AttachWait.SNK to Try.SRC.
   - DRP #2 in AttachWait.SNK has been in this state for tCCDebounce and detects VBUS but strongly prefers the Source role, so transitions to Try.SRC
   - DRP #2 in Try.SRC asserts a pull-up on CC and waits
6. DRP #1 transitions from Attached.SRC to Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK
   - DRP #1 in Attached.SRC no longer detects DRP #2's pull-down on CC and transitions to Unattached.SNK.
   - DRP #1 in Unattached.SNK turns off VBUS and VCONN and applies a pull-down on CC
   - DRP #1 in Unattached.SNK detects pull up on a CC and enters AttachWait.SNK
7. DRP #2 transitions from Try.SRC to Attached.SRC
   - DRP #2 in Try.SRC detects the DRP #1 in Unattached.SNK's pull-down on CC and enters Attached.SRC
   - DRP #2 in Attached.SRC turns on VBUS and VCONN
8. DRP #1 transitions from AttachWait.SNK to Attached.SNK

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- DRP #1 in AttachWait.SNK after tCCDebounce and detecting VBUS, enters Attached.SNK

9. While the DRPs are in their respective attached states:
   - DRP #2 (as Source) adjusts Rp as needed to limit the current DRP #1 (as Sink) may draw
   - DRP #1 (as Sink) detects and monitors vRd for available current on VBUS
   - DRP #2 (as Source) monitors CC for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)
   - DRP #1 (as Sink) monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)

CASE 3: The following describes the behavior when a DRP is connected to another DRP. In this flow, the DRP #1 chooses to drive the random result to the opposite result using the Try.SNK mechanism.

1. Both DRPs in the unattached state
   - DRP #1 and DRP #2 alternate between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DRP #1 transitions from Unattached.SRC to AttachWait.SRC
   - DRP #1 in Unattached.SRC detects a CC pull down of DRP #2 in Unattached.SNK and enters AttachWait.SRC
3. DRP #2 transitions from Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK
   - DRP #2 in Unattached.SNK detects pull up on a CC and enters AttachWait.SNK
4. DRP #1 transitions from AttachWait.SRC to Try.SNK
   - DRP #1 in AttachWait.SRC has been in this state for tCCDebounce and detects DRP #2's pull-down on CC but strongly prefers the Sink role, so transitions to Try.SNK
   - DRP #1 in Try.SNK asserts a pull down on CC and waits
5. DRP #2 transitions from AttachWait.SNK to Unattached.SRC to AttachWait.SRC.
   - DRP #2 in AttachWait.SNK no longer detects DRP #1's pull up on CC and transitions to Unattached.SRC
   - DRP #2 in Unattached.SRC applies a pull up on CC
   - DRP #2 in Unattached.SRC detects a pull down on a CC pin and enters AttachWait.SRC
   - DRP #1 detects DRP #2's pull up on CC and remains in Try.SNK
6. DRP #2 transitions from AttachWait.SRC to Attached.SRC
   - DRP #2 in AttachWait.SRC times out (tCCDebounce) and transitions to Attached.SRC
   - DRP #2 in Attached.SRC turns on VBUS and VCONN
7. DRP #1 transitions from Try.SNK to Attached.SNK
   - DRP #1 in Try.SNK after detecting VBUS, enters Attached.SNK
8. While the DRPs are in their respective attached states:
   - DRP #2 (as Source) adjusts Rp as needed to limit the current DRP #1 (as Sink) may draw
   - DRP #1 (as Sink) detects and monitors vRd for available current on VBUS
   - DRP #2 (as Source) monitors CC for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)
   - DRP #1 (as Sink) monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)

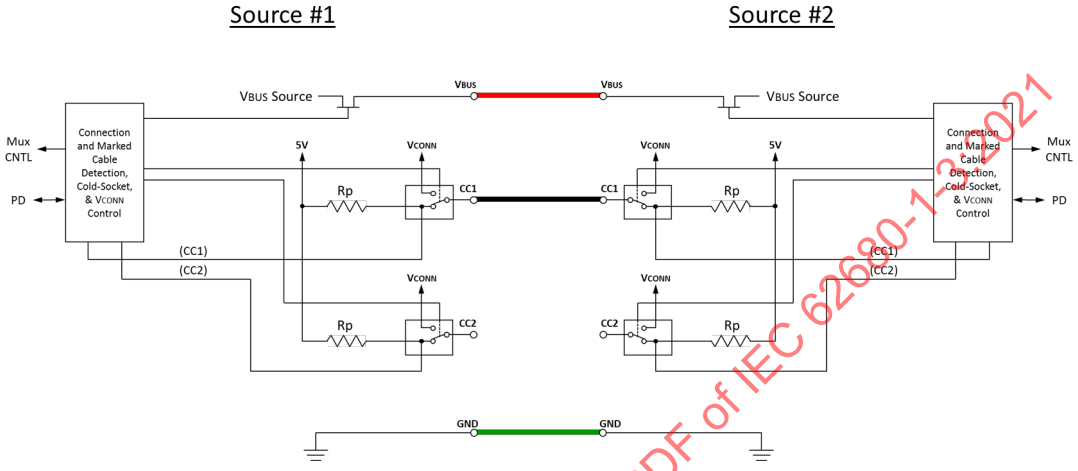
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.3.1.5 Source to Source Behavior

Figure 4-26 illustrates the functional model for a Source connected to a Source. The single CC wire that is in a standard cable is only shown in one of the four possible connection routes, CC1 to CC1. Port numbers have been arbitrarily assigned in the diagram to assist the reader to understand the process description.

Figure 4-26 Source to Source Functional Model



The following describes the behavior when a Source is connected to another Source.

1. Both Sources in the unattached state
   - Source #1 fails to detect a Sink's pull-down on CC and remains in Unattached.SRC
   - Source #2 fails to detect a Sink's pull-down on CC and remains in Unattached.SRC

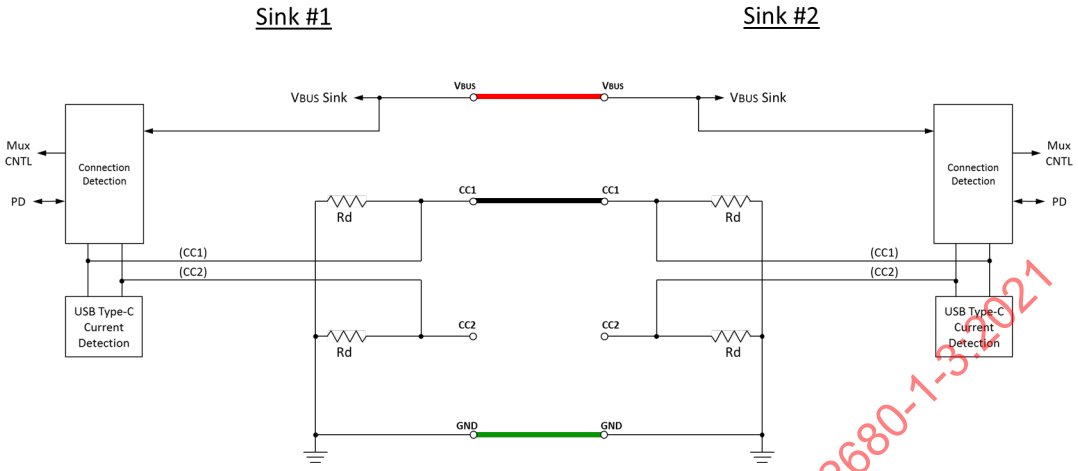
4.5.3.1.6 Sink to Sink Behavior

Figure 4-27 illustrates the functional model for a Sink connected to a Sink. The single CC wire that is in a standard cable is only shown in one of the four possible connection routes, CC1 to CC1. Port numbers have been arbitrarily assigned in the diagram to assist the reader to understand the process description.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-27 Sink to Sink Functional Model



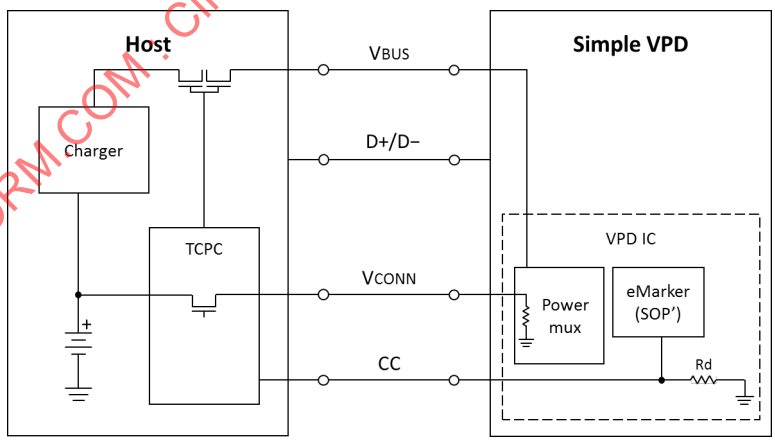
The following describes the behavior when a Sink is connected to another Sink.

1. Both Sinks in the unattached state
   - Sink #1 fails to detect pull up on CC or VBUS supplied by a Source and remains in Unattached.SNK
   - Sink #2 fails to detect pull up on CC or VBUS supplied by a Source and remains in Unattached.SNK

4.5.3.1.7 DRP to VCONN-Powered USB Device (VPD) Behavior

Figure 4-28 illustrates the functional model for a DRP connected to a VCONN-Powered USB Device that does not feature charge-through functionality.

Figure 4-28 DRP to VPD Model



The following describes the behavior when a DRP that supports VPDs is connected to a VPD.

1. DRP and VPD in the unattached state
   - DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DRP transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

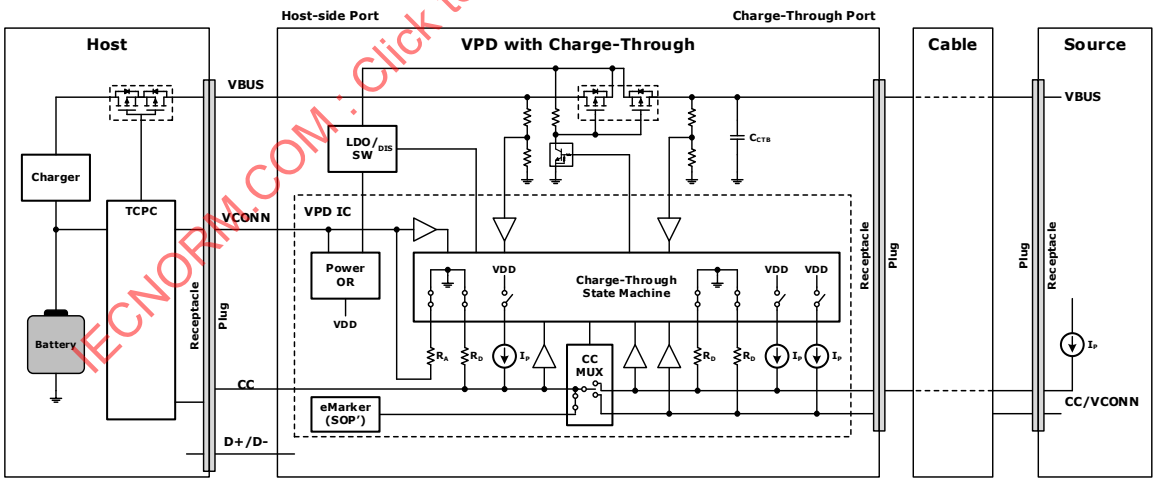
- DRP in Unattached.SRC detects the CC pull-down of VPD which is in Unattached.SNK and DRP enters AttachWait.SRC
- DRP in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull-down on CC persists for tCCDebounce. It then enters Attached.SRC and turns on VBUS and VCONN

3. VPD transitions from Unattached.SNK to Attached.SNK through AttachWait.SNK
   - VPD detects VCONN and enters Attached.SNK
4. While DRP and VPD are in their respective attached states, DRP discovers the VPD and removes VBUS
   - DRP (as Source) queries the cable identity via *USB PD* on SOP'.
   - VPD responds on SOP', advertising that it is a VCONN-Powered USB Device that does not support charge-through
   - DRP (as Source) removes VBUS
   - DRP (as Source) maintains its Rp
5. DRP and VPD for detach
   - DRP (as Source) monitors CC for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)
   - VPD monitors VCONN for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

4.5.3.1.8 DRP to Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device (CTVPD) Behavior

Figure 4-29 illustrates the functional model for a DRP connected to a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device, with a Source attached to the Charge-Through port on the VCONN-Powered USB Device.

Figure 4-29 Example DRP to Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device Model



CASE 1: The following describes the behavior when a DRP is connected to a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device (abbreviated CTVPD), with no Power Source attached to the Charge-Through port on the CTVPD.

1. DRP and CTVPD are both in the unattached state
   a. DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

b. CTVPD has applied Rd on its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins and Rd on the Host-side port's CC pin

2. DRP transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   a. DRP in Unattached.SRC detects a CC pull down of CTVPD which is in Unattached.SNK and DRP enters AttachWait.SRC
   b. DRP in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce, enters Attached.SRC and turns on VBUS and VCONN
3. CTVPD transitions from Unattached.SNK to Attached.SNK through AttachWait.SNK
   a. CTVPD detects the host-side CC pull-up of the DRP and CTVPD enters AttachWait.SNK
   b. CTVPD in AttachWait.SNK detects that pull up on the Host-side port's CC persists for tCCDebounce, VCONN present and enters Attached.SNK
   c. CTVPD present a high-impedance to ground (above zOPEN) on its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins
4. While DRP and CTVPD are in their respective attached states, DRP discovers the CTVPD and transitions to CTUnattached.SNK
   a. DRP (as Source) queries the device identity via *USB PD* (Device Identity Command) on SOP'
   b. CTVPD responds on SOP', advertising that it is a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device
   c. DRP (as Source) removes VBUS
   d. DRP (as Source) changes its Rp to a Rd
   e. DRP (as Sink) continues to provide VCONN and enters CTUnattached.SNK
5. CTVPD transitions to CTUnattached.VPD
   a. CTVPD detects VBUS removal, VCONN presence, the low Host-side CC pin and enters CTUnattached.VPD
   b. CTVPD changes its host-side Rd to a Rp advertising 3.0 A
   c. CTVPD isolates itself from VBUS
   d. CTVPD apply Rd on its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins
6. While the CTVPD in CTUnattached.VPD state and the DRP in CTUnattached.SNK state:
   a. CTVPD monitors Charge-Though CC pins for a source or sink; when a Power Source attach is detected, enters CTAttachWait.VPD; when a sink is detected, enters CTAttachWait.Unsupported
   b. CTVPD monitors VCONN for Host detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK
   c. DRP monitors VBUS and CC for CTVPD detach for tVPDDetach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK
   d. DRP monitors VBUS for Power Source attach and when detected, enters CTAttached.SNK

CASE 2: The following describes the behavior when a Power Source is connected to a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device (abbreviated CTVPD), with a Host already attached to the Host-side port on the CTVPD.

1. DRP is in CTUnattached.SNK state, CTVPD in CTUnattached.VPD, and Power Source in the unattached state

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

a. CTVPD has applied Rd on the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins and Rp termination advertising 3.0 A on the Host-side port's CC pin

2. Power Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   a. Power Source detects the CC pull-down of the CTVPD and enters AttachWait.SRC
   b. Power Source in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce, enters Attached.SRC and turns on VBUS
3. CTVPD transitions from CTUnattached.VPD through CTAttachWait.VPD to CTAttached.VPD
   a. CTVPD detects the Source's Rp on one of its Charge-Through CC pins, and transitions to CTAttachWait.VPD
   b. CTVPD finishes any active *USB PD* communication on SOP' and ceases to respond to SOP' queries
   c. CTVPD in CTAttachWait.VPD detects that the pull up on Charge-Through CC pin persists for tCCDebounce, detects VBUS and enters CTAttached.VPD
   d. CTVPD connects the active Charge-Through CC pin to the Host-side port's CC pin
   e. CTVPD disables its Rp termination advertising 3.0 A on the Host-side port's CC pin
   f. CTVPD disables its Rd on the Charge-Through CC pins
   g. CTVPD connects VBUS from the Charge-Through side to the Host side
4. DRP (as Sink) transitions to CTAttached.SNK
   a. DRP (as Sink) detects VBUS, monitors vRd for available current and enter CTAttached.SNK
5. While the devices are all in their respective attached states:
   a. CTVPD monitors VCONN for DRP detach and when detected, enters CTDisabled.VPD
   b. CTVPD monitors VBUS and CC for Power Source detach and when detected, enters CTUnattached.VPD within tVPDCTDD
   c. DRP (as Sink) monitors VBUS for Charge-Through Power Source detach and when detected, enters CTUnattached.SNK
   d. DRP (as Sink) monitors VBUS and CC for CTVPD detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)
   e. Power Source monitors CC for CTVPD detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC

CASE 3: The following describes the behavior when a Power Source is connected to a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device (abbreviated CTVPD), with no Host attached to the Host-side port on the CTVPD.

1. CTVPD and Power Source are both in the unattached state
   a. CTVPD has applied Rd on the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins and Rd on the Host-side port's CC pin
2. Power Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   a. Power Source detects the CC pull-down of the CTVPD and enters AttachWait.SRC
   b. Power Source in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce, enters Attached.SRC and turns on VBUS
3. CTVPD alternates between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

a. CTVPD detects the Source's Rp on one of its Charge-Through CC pins, detects VBUS for tCCDebounce and starts alternating between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK

4. While the CTVPD alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK state and the Power Source in Attached.SRC state:

a. CTVPD monitors the Host-side port's CC pin for device attach and when detected, enters AttachWait.SRC

b. CTVPD monitors VBUS for Power Source detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

c. Power Source monitors CC for CTVPD detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC

CASE 4: The following describes the behavior when a DRP is connected to a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device (abbreviated CTVPD), with a Power Source already attached to the Charge-Through side on the CTVPD.

1. DRP and CTVPD are in unattached state and Power Source in Attached.SRC state

a. DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK

b. CTVPD alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK

c. CTVPD has applied Rd on its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins

d. Power Source has applied VBUS

2. DRP transitions from Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK

a. DRP in Unattached.SNK detects the CC pull-up of CTVPD which is in Unattached.SRC and DRP enters AttachWait.SNK

3. CTVPD transitions from Unattached.SRC to Try.SNK through AttachWait.SRC

a. CTVPD in Unattached.SRC detects the CC pull-down of DRP which is in Unattached.SNK and CTVPD enters AttachWait.SRC

b. CTVPD in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce and enters Try.SNK

c. CTVPD disables Rp termination advertising Default USB Power on the Host-side port's CC pin

d. CTVPD enables Rd on the Host-side port's CC pin

4. DRP transitions from AttachWait.SNK to Attached.SRC through Unattached.SRC and AttachWait.SRC

a. DRP in AttachWait.SNK detects the CC pull-up removal of CTVPD which is in Try.SNK and DRP enters Unattached.SRC

b. DRP in Unattached.SRC detects the CC pull-down of CTVPD which is in Try.SNK and DRP enters AttachWait.SRC

c. DRP in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce. It then enters Attached.SRC and enable VBUS and VCONN

5. CTVPD transitions from Try.SNK to Attached.SNK

a. CTVPD detects the CC pull-up of the DRP persists for tTryCCDebounce

b. CTVPD detects VBUS on the Host-side port and enters Attached.SNK

6. While DRP and CTVPD are in their respective attached states, DRP discovers the Charge-Through CTVPD and transitions to CTUnattached.SNK

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

a. DRP (as Source) queries the device identity via *USB PD* (Discover Identity Command) on SOP'

b. CTVPD responds on SOP', advertising that it is a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device

c. DRP (as Source) removes VBUS

d. DRP (as Source) changes its Rp into an Rd

e. DRP (as Sink) continues to provide VCONN and enters CTUnattached.SNK

7. CTVPD transitions to CTUnattached.VPD

a. CTVPD detects VBUS removal, VCONN presence, and the low CC pin on its host port and enters CTUnattached.VPD

b. CTVPD changes its host-side Rd into an Rp termination advertising 3.0 A

c. CTVPD isolates itself from VBUS

8. CTVPD transitions from CTUnattached.VPD through CTAttachWait.VPD to CTAttached.VPD

a. CTVPD detects the Source's Rp on one of its Charge-Through CC pins, and transitions to CTAttachWait.VPD

b. CTVPD in CTAttachWait.VPD detects that the pull up on Charge-Through CC pin persists for tCCDebounce, detects VBUS and enters CTAttached.VPD

c. CTVPD finishes any active *USB PD* communication on SOP' and ceases to respond to SOP' queries

d. CTVPD connects the active Charge-Through CC pin to the Host-side port's CC pin

e. CTVPD disables its Rp termination advertising 3.0 A on the Host-side port's CC pin

f. CTVPD disables its Rd on the Charge-Through CC pins

g. CTVPD connects VBUS from the Charge-Through side to the Host side

9. DRP (as Sink) transitions to CTAttached.SNK

a. DRP (as Sink) detects VBUS and monitors vRd for available current and enter CTAttached.SNK

10. While the devices are all in their respective attached states:

a. CTVPD monitors VCONN for DRP detach and when detected, enters CTDisabled.VPD

b. CTVPD monitors VBUS and CC for Power Source detach and when detected, enters CTUnattached.VPD within tVPDCTDD

c. DRP (as Sink) monitors VBUS for Charge-Through Power Source detach and when detected, enters CTUnattached.SNK

d. DRP (as Sink) monitors VBUS and CC for CTVPD detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)

e. Power Source monitors CC for CTVPD detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC

CASE 5: The following describes the behavior when a Power Source is connected to a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device (abbreviated CTVPD), with a DRP (with dead battery) attached to the Host-side port on the CTVPD.

1. DRP, CTVPD and Power Source are all in the unattached state

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

a. DRP apply dead battery Rd

b. CTVPD apply Rd on the Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins and Rd on the Host-side port's CC pin

2. Power Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC

a. Power Source detects the CC pull-down of the CTVPD and enters AttachWait.SRC

b. Power Source in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce, enters Attached.SRC and turns on VBUS

3. CTVPD alternates between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC

a. CTVPD detects the Source's Rp on one of its Charge-Through CC pins, detects VBUS for tCCDebounce and starts alternating between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK

4. CTVPD transitions from Unattached.SRC to Try.SNK through AttachWait.SRC

a. CTVPD in Unattached.SRC detects the CC pull-down of DRP which is in Unattached.SNK and CTVPD enters AttachWait.SRC

b. CTVPD in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce and enters Try.SNK

c. CTVPD disables Rp termination advertising Default USB Power on the Host-side port's CC pin

d. CTVPD enables Rd on the Host-side port's CC pin

5. DRP in dead battery condition remains in Unattached.SNK

6. CTVPD transitions from Try.SNK to Attached.SRC through TryWait.SRC

a. CTVPD didn't detect the CC pull-up of the DRP for tTryCCDebounce after tDRPTry and enters TryWait.SRC

b. CTVPD disables Rp on the Host-side port's CC pin

c. CTVPD enables Rp termination advertising Default USB Power on the Host-side port's CC pin

d. CTVPD detects the CC pull-down of the DRP for tTryCCDebounce and enters Attached.SRC

e. CTVPD connects VBUS from the Charge-Through side to the Host side

7. DRP transitions from Unattached.SNK to Attached.SNK through AttachWait.SNK

a. DRP in Unattached.SNK detects the CC pull-up of CTVPD which is in Attached.SRC and DRP enters AttachWait.SNK

b. DRP in AttachWait.SNK detects that pull up on CC persists for tCCDebounce, VBUS present and enters Attached.SNK

8. While the devices are all in their respective attached states:

a. CTVPD monitors the Host-side port's CC pin for device attach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

b. CTVPD monitors VBUS for Power Source detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

c. Power Source monitors CC for CTVPD detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC

d. DRP monitors VBUS for CTVPD detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

e. Additionally, the DRP may query the identity of the cable via *USB PD* on SOP' when it has sufficient battery power and when a Charge-Through VPD is identified enters

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

TryWait.SRC if implemented, or enters Unattached.SRC if TryWait.SRC is not supported

CASE 6: The following describes the behavior when a DRP is connected to a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device (abbreviated CTVPD) and a Sink is attached to the Charge-Through port on the CTVPD.

1. DRP, CTVPD and Sink are all in the unattached state
    a. DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
    b. CTVPD has applied Rd on its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins and Rd on the Host-side port's CC pin
2. DRP transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
    a. DRP in Unattached.SRC detects the CC pull-down of CTVPD which is in Unattached.SNK and DRP enters AttachWait.SRC
    b. DRP in AttachWait.SRC detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce. It then enters Attached.SRC and enable VBUS and VCONN
3. CTVPD transitions from Unattached.SNK to Attached.SNK through AttachWait.SNK
    a. CTVPD detects the host-side CC pull-up of the DRP and CTVPD enters AttachWait.SNK
    b. CTVPD in AttachWait.SNK detects that pull up on the Host-side port's CC persists for tCCDebounce, VCONN present and enters Attached.SNK
    c. CTVPD present a high-impedance to ground (above zOPEN) on its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins
4. While DRP and CTVPD are in their respective attached states, DRP discovers the Charge-Through CTVPD and transitions to CTUnattached.SNK
    a. DRP (as Source) queries the device identity via *USB PD* (Discover Identity Command) on SOP'
    b. CTVPD responds on SOP', advertising that it is a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device
    c. DRP (as Source) removes VBUS
    d. DRP (as Source) changes its Rp into an Rd
    e. DRP (as Sink) continues to provide VCONN and enters CTUnattached.SNK
5. CTVPD transitions to CTUnattached.VPD
    a. CTVPD detects VBUS removal, VCONN presence, and the low CC pin on its host port and enters CTUnattached.VPD
    b. CTVPD changes its host-side Rd into an Rp termination advertising 3.0 A
    c. CTVPD isolates itself from VBUS
    d. CTVPD apply Rd on its Charge-Through port's CC1 and CC2 pins
6. CTVPD alternates between CTUnattached.VPD and CTUnattached.Unsupported
    a. CTVPD detects SRC.Open on its Charge-Through CC pins and starts alternating between CTUnattached.VPD and CTUnattached.Unsupported
7. CTVPD transitions from CTUnattached.Unsupported to CTTry.SNK through CTAttachWait.Unsupported
    a. CTVPD in CTUnattached.Unsupported detects the CC pull-down of the Sink which is in Unattached.SNK and CTVPD enters CTAttachWait.Unsupported

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

b. CTVPD in CTAttachWait.Unsupported detects that pull down on CC persists for tCCDebounce and enters CTTry.SNK

c. CTVPD disables Rp termination advertising Default USB Power on the Charge-Through port's CC pins

d. CTVPD enables Rd on the Charge-Through port's CC pins

8. CTVPD transitions from CTTry.SNK to CTAttached.Unsupported

a. CTVPD didn't detect the CC pull-up of the potential Source for tDRPTryWait after tDRPTry and enters CTAttached.Unsupported

9. While the CTVPD in CTAttached.Unsupported state, the DRP in CTUnattached.SNK state and the Sink in Unattached.SNK state:

a. CTVPD disables the Rd termination on the Charge-Through port's CC pins and applies Rp termination advertising Default USB Power

b. CTVPD exposes a USB Billboard Device Class to the DRP indicating that it is connected to an unsupported device on its Charge Through port

c. CTVPD monitors Charge-Though CC pins for Sink detach and when detected, enters CTUnattached.VPD

d. CTVPD monitors VCONN for Host detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

e. DRP monitors CC for CTVPD detach for tVPDDetach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

f. DRP monitors VBUS for CTVPD Charge-Through source attach and, when detected, enters CTAttached.SNK

4.5.3.2 USB Type-C port to Legacy Port Interoperability Behaviors

The following sub-sections describe port-to-port interoperability behaviors for the various combinations of USB Type-C Source, Sink and DRPs and legacy USB ports.

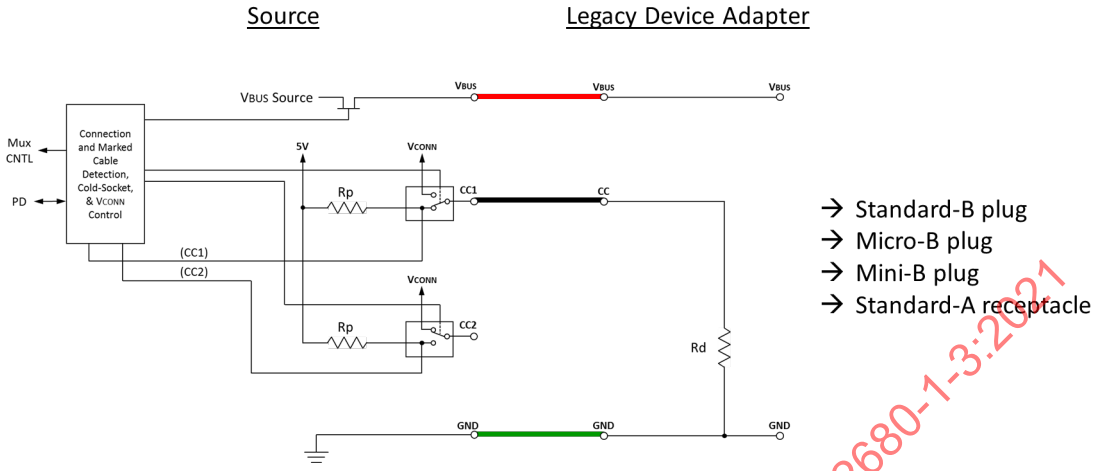
4.5.3.2.1 Source to Legacy Device Port Behavior

Figure 4-30 illustrates the functional model for a Source connected to a legacy device port. This model is based on having an adapter present as a Sink to the Source. This adapter has a USB Type-C plug on one end plugged into the Source and either a USB Standard-B plug, USB Micro-B plug, USB Mini-B plug, or a USB Standard-A receptacle on the other end.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-30 Source to Legacy Device Port Functional Model



The following describes the behavior when a Source is connected to a legacy device adapter that has an Rd to ground so as to mimic the behavior of a Sink.

1. Source in the unattached state
2. Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   - Source detects the Sink's pull-down on CC and enters AttachWait.SRC. After tCCDebounce, it enters Attached.SRC.
   - Source turns on VBUS and VCONN
3. While the Source is in the attached state:
   - Source monitors CC for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC

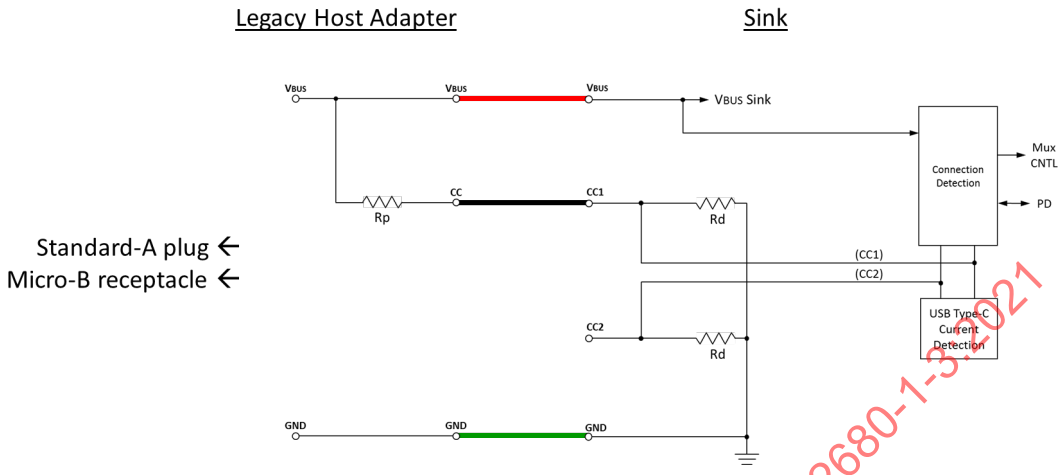
4.5.3.2.2 Legacy Host Port to Sink Behavior

Figure 4-31 illustrates the functional model for a legacy host port connected to a Sink. This model is based on having an adapter that presents itself as a Source to the Sink, this adapter is either a USB Standard-A legacy plug or a USB Micro-B legacy receptacle on one end and the USB Type-C plug on the other end plugged into a Sink.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-31 Legacy Host Port to Sink Functional Model



The following describes the behavior when a legacy host adapter that has an Rp to VBUS so as to mimic the behavior of a Source that is connected to a Sink. The value of Rp shall indicate an advertisement of Default USB Power (See Table 4-24), even though the cable itself can carry 3 A. This is because the cable has no knowledge of the capabilities of the power source, and any higher current is negotiated via *USB BC 1.2*.

1. Sink in the unattached state
2. Sink transitions from Unattached.SNK to Attached.SNK through AttachWait.SNK if needed.
   - While in Unattached.SNK, if device is not USB 2.0 only, supports accessories or requires more than default power, it enters AttachWait.SNK when it detects a pull up on CC and ignores VBUS. Otherwise, it may enter Attached.SNK directly when VBUS is detected.
   - Sink detects VBUS and enters Attached.SNK
3. While the Sink is in the attached state:
   - Sink monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

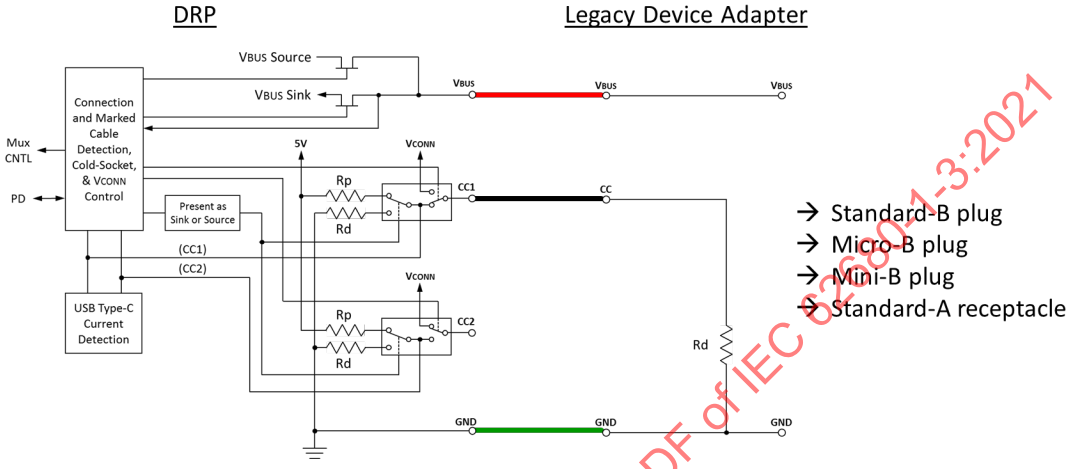
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.3.2.3 DRP to Legacy Device Port Behavior

Figure 4-32 illustrates the functional model for a DRP connected to a legacy device port. This model is based on having an adapter present as a Sink (Device) to the DRP. This adapter has a USB Type-C plug on one end plugged into a DRP and either a USB Standard-B plug, USB Micro-B plug, USB Mini-B plug, or a USB Standard-A receptacle on the other end.

Figure 4-32 DRP to Legacy Device Port Functional Model



The following describes the behavior when a DRP is connected to a legacy device adapter that has an Rd to ground so as to mimic the behavior of a Sink.

1. DRP in the unattached state
   - DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DRP transitions from Unattached.SRC to Attached.SRC
   - DRP in Unattached.SRC detects the adapter's pull-down on CC and enters AttachWait.SRC
   - DRP in AttachWait.SRC times out (tCCDebounce) and transitions to Attached.SRC
   - DRP in Attached.SRC turns on VBUS and VCONN
   - DRP in AttachWait.SRC may support Try.SNK and if so, may transition through Try.SNK and TryWait.SRC prior to entering Attached.SRC
3. While the DRP is in the attached state:
   - DRP monitors CC for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)

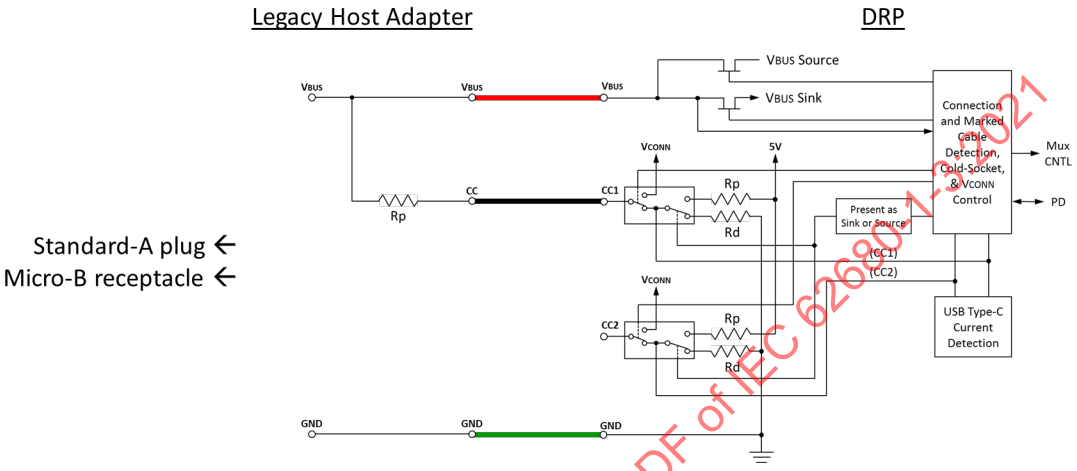
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.3.2.4 Legacy Host Port to DRP Behavior

Figure 4-33 illustrates the functional model for a legacy host port connected to a DRP operating as a Sink. This model is based on having an adapter that presents itself as a Source (Host) to the DRP operating as a Sink, this adapter is either a USB Standard-A legacy plug or a USB Micro-B legacy receptacle on one end and the USB Type-C plug on the other end plugged into a DRP.

Figure 4-33 Legacy Host Port to DRP Functional Model



The following describes the behavior when a legacy host adapter that has an Rp to VBUS so as to mimic the behavior of a Source is connected to a DRP. The value of Rp shall indicate an advertisement of Default USB Power (See Table 4-24), even though the cable itself can carry 3 A. This is because the cable has no knowledge of the capabilities of the power source, and any higher current is negotiated via *USB BC 1.2*.

1. DRP in the unattached state
   - DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DRP transitions from Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK to Attached.SNK
   - DRP in Unattached.SNK detects pull up on CC and enters AttachWait.SNK.
   - DRP in AttachWait.SNK detects VBUS and enters Attached.SNK
   - DRP in AttachWait.SNK may support Try.SRC and if so, may transition through Try.SRC and TryWait.SNK prior to entering Attached.SNK
3. While the DRP is in the attached state:
   - DRP monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.6 Power

Power delivery over the USB Type-C connector takes advantage of the existing USB methods as defined by: the *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* specifications, the *USB BC 1.2* specification and the *USB Power Delivery* specification. Power for *USB4* operation requires a *USB PD* explicit contract as defined in Section 5.3 and the *USB Power Delivery* specification. Prior to entering a *USB PD* explicit contract, a *USB4* port operates as a *USB 3.2* port regarding power.

The USB Type-C Current mechanism allows the Source to offer more current than defined by the *USB BC 1.2* specification. A USB power source shall not provide more than 20 V nominal on VBUS. *USB PD* power sources that deliver power over a USB Type-C connector shall follow the power rules as defined in Section 10 of the *USB Power Delivery* specification.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

All USB Type-C-based devices shall support USB Type-C Current and may support other USB-defined methods for power. The following order of precedence of power negotiation shall be followed: *USB BC 1.2* supersedes the *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* specifications, USB Type-C Current at 1.5 A and 3.0 A supersedes *USB BC 1.2*, and *USB Power Delivery* supersedes USB Type-C Current. Table 4-17 summarizes this order of precedence of power source usage.

Table 4-17 Precedence of power source usage

Precedence	Mode of Operation		Nominal Voltage	Maximum Current
Highest	*USB PD*		Configurable	5 A
	USB Type-C Current @ 3.0 A		5 V	3.0 A
	USB Type-C Current @ 1.5 A		5 V	1.5 A
↓	*USB BC 1.2*		5 V	Up to 1.5 A[1]
	Default USB Power	*USB 3.2*	5 V	See USB 3.2
Lowest		*USB 2.0*	5 V	See USB 2.0

Notes:

1. *USB BC 1.2* permits a power provider to be designed to support a level of power between 0.5 A and 1.5 A. If the *USB BC 1.2* power provider does not support 1.5 A, then it is required to follow power droop requirements. A *USB BC 1.2* power consumer may consume up to 1.5 A provided that the voltage does not drop below 2 V, which may occur at any level of power above 0.5 A.

For example, once the PD mode (e.g. a power contract has been negotiated) has been entered, the device shall abide by that power contract ignoring any other previously made or offered by the USB Type-C Current, *USB BC 1.2* or *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* specifications. When the PD mode is exited, the device shall fallback in order to the USB Type-C Current, *USB BC 1.2* or *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* specification power levels.

All USB Type-C ports shall tolerate being connected to USB power source supplying default USB power, e.g. a host being connected to a legacy USB charger that always supplies VBUS.

4.6.1 Power Requirements during USB Suspend

USB Type-C implementations with USB Type-C Current, *USB PD* and VCONN, along with active cables, requires the need to expand the traditional USB suspend definition.

4.6.1.1 VBUS Requirements during USB Suspend

The *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* specifications define the amount of current a Sink is allowed to consume during suspend.

USB suspend power rules shall apply when the USB Type-C Current is at the Default USB Power level or when *USB PD* is being used and the Suspend bit is set appropriately.

When USB Type-C Current is set at 1.5 A or 3.0 A, the Sink is allowed to continue to draw current from VBUS during USB suspend. During USB suspend, the Sink's requirement to track and meet the USB Type-C Current advertisement remains in force (See Section 4.5.2.3).

USB PD provides a method for the Source to communicate to the Sink whether or not the Sink has to follow the USB power rules for suspend.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.6.1.2 VCONN Requirements during USB Suspend

If the Source supplies VBUS power during USB suspend, it shall also supply VCONN and meet the requirements defined in Table 4-5.

Electronically Marked Cables shall meet the requirements in Table 4-6 during USB suspend.

VCONN powered accessories shall meet the requirements defined in Table 4-7 during USB suspend.

4.6.2 VBUS Power Provided Over a USB Type-C Cable

The minimum requirement for VBUS power supplied over the USB Type-C cable assembly matches the existing requirement for VBUS supplied over existing legacy USB cable assemblies. *USB Power Delivery* is intended to work over un-modified USB Type-C to USB Type-C cables, therefore any USB Type-C cable assembly that incorporates electrical components or electronics shall ensure that it tolerate, or be protected from, a VBUS voltage of 21 V.

4.6.2.1 USB Type-C Current

Default USB voltage and current are defined by the *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* specifications. All USB Type-C Current advertisements are at the USB VBUS voltage defined by these specifications.

The USB Type-C Current feature provides the following extensions:

- Higher current than defined by the *USB 2.0*, the *USB 3.2* or the *BC 1.2* specifications
- Allows the power source to manage the current it provides

The USB Type-C connector uses CC pins for configuration including an ability for a Source to advertise to its port partner (Sink) the amount of current it shall supply:

- Default is the as-configured for high-power operation current value as defined by the USB Specification (500 mA for USB 2.0 ports; 900 mA or 1,500 mA for *USB 3.2* ports in single-lane or dual-lane operation, respectively)
- 1.5 A
- 3.0 A

When a Source is advertising USB Type-C Default current, the Sink behavior is defined as follows:

- It connects as a *USB 2.0* or *USB 3.2* device, after which the Sink shall follow the appropriate USB specification.
- It enters a *USB PD* contract, after which the Sink shall follow the *USB PD* specification to determine the current (e.g., Rp will no longer be Default as it is superseded by the *USB PD* contract).
- It detects a USB BC 1.2 charging port, after which the Sink shall follow the USB BC 1.2 specification.
- It attaches as a USB Type-C Power Sinking Device (PSD), after which the Sink may draw up to 500 mA.

A PSD shall fully support USB Type-C Current operation, should support *USB PD* and may support USB BC 1.2. A PSD may be a Sink or a DRP operating in Sink mode. A PSD shall not have a USB or USB Type-C Alternate Mode communications function.

The relationship of USB Type-C Current and the equivalent *USB PD* Power (PDP) value is shown in Table 4-18.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-18 USB Type-C Current Advertisement and PDP Equivalent

USB Type-C Current		PDP Equivalent
Default	500 mA (*USB 2.0*)	2.5 W
	900 mA (*USB 3.2* single-lane)	4.5 W
	1,500 mA (*USB 3.2* dual-lane)	7.5 W
1.5 A		7.5 W
3.0 A		15 W

A Sink that takes advantage of the additional current offered (e.g., 1.5 A or 3.0 A) shall monitor the CC pins and shall adjust its current consumption within tSinkAdj to remain within the value advertised by the Source. While a *USB PD* contract is in place, a Sink is not required to monitor USB Type-C current advertisements and shall not respond to USB Type-C current advertisements.

The Source shall supply VBUS to the Sink within tVBUSON. VBUS shall be in the specified voltage range at the advertised current.

A Source (port supplying VBUS) shall protect itself from a Sink that draws current in excess of the port's USB Type-C Current advertisement.

The Source adjusts Rp (or current source) to advertise which of the three current levels it supports. See Table 4-24 for the termination requirements for the Source to advertise currents.

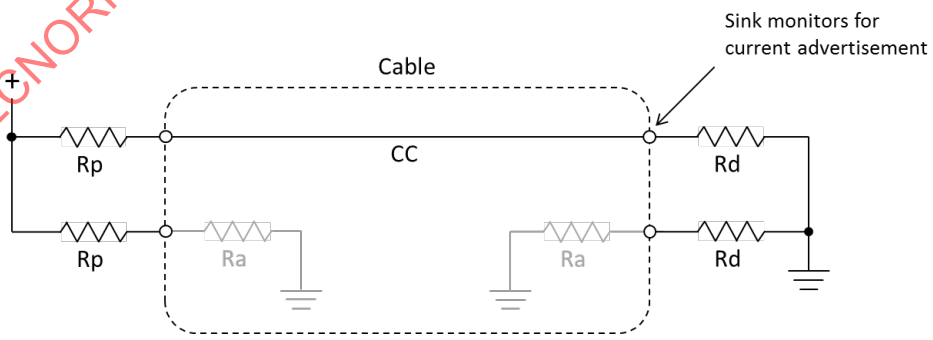
The value of Rp establishes a voltage (vRd) on CC that is used by the Sink to determine the maximum current it may draw.

Table 4-35 defines the CC voltage range observed by the Sink that only support default USB current.

If the Sink wants to consume more than the default USB current, it shall track vRd to determine the maximum current it may draw. See Table 4-36.

Figure 4-34 and Figure 4-35 illustrate where the Sink monitors CC for vRd to detect if the host advertises more than the default USB current.

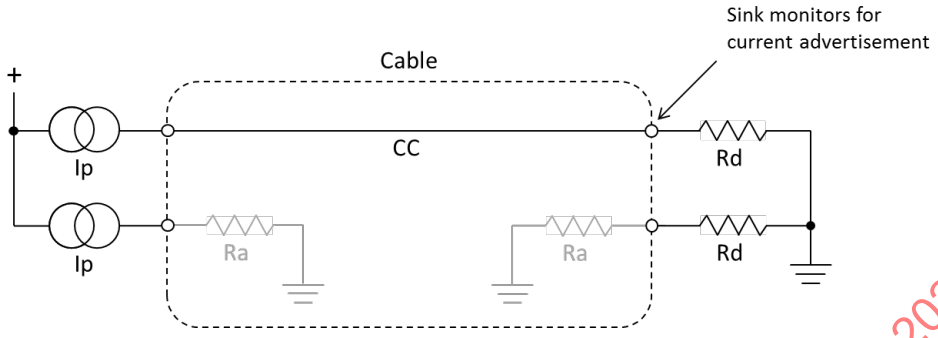
Figure 4-34 Sink Monitoring for Current in Pull-Up/Pull-Down CC Model



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-35 Sink Monitoring for Current in Current Source/Pull-Down CC Model



4.6.2.2 USB Battery Charging 1.2

USB Battery Charging Specification, Revision 1.2 defines a method that uses the USB 2.0 D+ and D– pins to advertise VBUS can supply up to 1.5 A. Support for *USB BC 1.2* charging is optional.

A USB Type-C port that implements *BC 1.2* that is capable of supplying at least 1.5 A shall advertise USB Type-C Current at the 1.5 A level within tVBUSON of entering the Attached.SRC state, otherwise the port shall advertise USB Type-C Current at the Default USB Power level. A USB Type-C port that implements *BC 1.2* that also supports USB Type-C Current at 3.0 A may advertise USB Type-C Current at 3.0 A.

If a Sink that supports *BC 1.2* detection, detects Rp at the Default USB Power level and does not discover a *BC 1.2*-compliant Source, then it shall limit its maximum current consumption to the standard USB levels based on Table 4-17. This will ensure maximum current limits are not exceeded when connected to a Source which does not support *BC 1.2*.

4.6.2.3 Proprietary Power Source

This section has been deprecated. Devices with USB Type-C connectors shall only employ signaling methods defined in USB specifications to negotiate power.

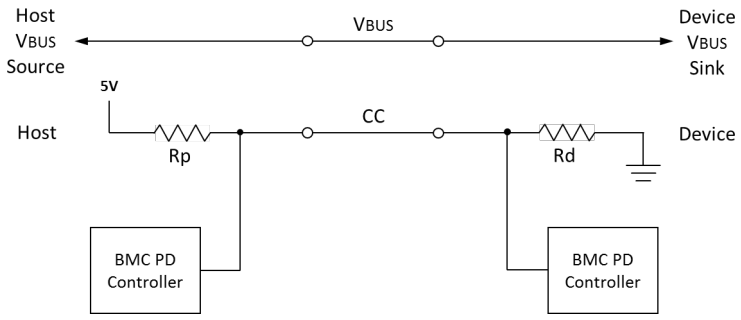
4.6.2.4 USB Power Delivery

USB Power Delivery is a feature on the USB Type-C connector. When *USB PD* is implemented, *USB PD* Bi-phase Mark Coded (BMC) carried on the CC wire shall be used for *USB PD* communications between USB Type-C ports.

At attach, VBUS shall be operationally stable prior to initiating *USB PD* communications.

Figure 4-36 illustrates how the *USB PD* BMC signaling is carried over the USB Type-C cable's CC wire.

Figure 4-36 USB PD over CC Pins

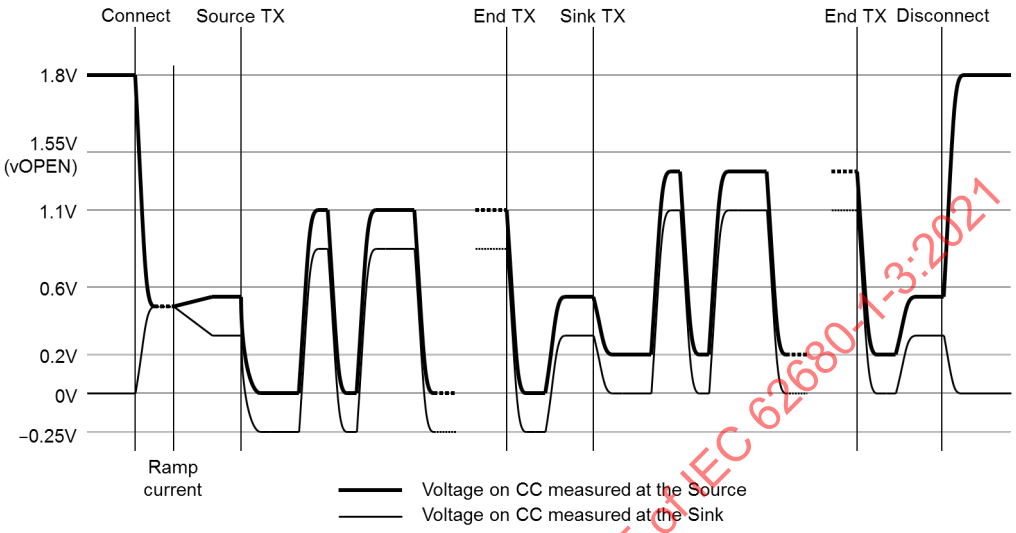


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-37 illustrates *USB PD* BMC signaling as seen on CC from both the perspective of the Source and Sink. The breaks in the signaling are intended to represent the passage of time.

Figure 4-37 USB PD BMC Signaling over CC



When not in an Explicit Contract, *USB PD* Sources that are, based on their PDP, capable of supplying:

- 5 V at 3 A or greater shall advertise USB Type-C Current at the 3 A level
- 5 V at 1.5A or greater but less than 3 A shall advertise USB Type-C Current at the 1.5 A level
- 5 V at less than 1.5A shall advertise USB Type-C Current at the Default USB Power level

within tVBUSON of entering the Attached.SRC state. For Multi-Port Shared Capacity Chargers, a *USB PD* Source capable of supplying 5 V at 3A or greater may initially offer USB Type-C Current at the 1.5 A level and subsequently increase the offer after attach (see Section 4.8.6.2). During USB Suspend a *USB PD* Source may set its Rp value to default to indicate that the Sink shall only draw USB suspend current as defined in Section 4.6.1.1.

While a *USB PD* Explicit Contract is in place, a Source compliant with *USB PD* Revision 2 shall advertise a USB Type-C Current of either 1.5 A or 3.0 A. The *USB PD* Revision 2 Source upon entry into an Explicit Contract shall advertise an Rp value of 1.5 A or 3.0 A after it receives the GoodCRC in response to the first PS_RDY Message.

While a *USB PD* Explicit Contract is in place, a Source compliant with USB PD Revision 3 shall set the Rp value according to the collision avoidance scheme defined in Section 5.7 of the *USB PD* Revision 3 specification. The *USB PD* Revision 3 Source upon entry into an Explicit Contract shall advertise an Rp value consistent with the *USB PD* Revision 3 collision avoidance scheme.

Refer to Section 1.6 of the *USB Power Delivery* specification for a definition of an Explicit Contract.

4.6.2.5 Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device (CTVPD) Current Limitations

Since Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Devices implement charging by passively connecting the Source's CC and VBUS to the Host, the VCONN-Powered USB Device is effectively increasing the impedance on VBUS, GND, and CC between the Power Source and the Host, resulting in impedances that can exceed the maximum allowed for cables. To avoid communication issues and false disconnects from the increased GND and VBUS drops, the following shall occur:

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

1. The Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall report its worst-case GND and VBUS impedance (including the extra mated connector pair and FETs) in its *USB PD* Discover Identity Command response on SOP'.
2. The Host that supports Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall use this information, along with inferred information about the cable, to limit its maximum current in the case where the Power Source advertises a current greater than what the Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device would allow.

The Host has no way to query the cable, as its VCONN source is consumed by the VCONN-Powered USB Device. Instead, the Host may assume the cable is 5 A for the purposes of calculating the Charge-Through current limit only if it receives a *USB PD* SourceCapability PDO of greater than 3 A (even if the Host ultimately does not Request that PDO, or if the host requests a current of 3 A or less).

The Host shall further limit its maximum current beyond that advertised by the Power Source, based on the reported GND impedance and the inferred cable capability. GND impedance is reported in the VPD Discover Identity Command Response in 1-milliohm steps and is used in the following formulas:

- GND-limited current with a 3A cable inferred = 0.25 V / (0.25 V / 3 A + VPD_GND_DCR)
- GND-limited current with a 5A cable inferred = 0.25 V / (0.25 V / 5 A + VPD_GND_DCR)

Some examples are in Table 4-19.

Table 4-19 Precedence of power source usage

Reported GND Impedance	3A Cable Inferred[1]	5A Cable Inferred[2]
0.010 Ω	2.679 A	4.167 A
0.015 Ω	2.542 A	3.846 A
0.020 Ω	2.419 A	3.571 A
0.025 Ω	2.308 A	3.333 A
0.030 Ω	2.206 A	3.125 A
0.035 Ω	2.113 A	2.941 A
0.040 Ω	2.027 A	2.778 A

Notes:
1. As calculated by 0.25 V / (0.25 V / 3 A + VPD_GND_DCR).
2. As calculated by 0.25 V / (0.25 V / 5 A + VPD_GND_DCR).

In addition, the increased VBUS impedance could result in a greater than 1 V VBUS drop as measured at the input to the Host. Based on the VBUS impedance reported in the VPD Discover Identity Command Response in 2-milliohm steps and the inferred cable capability, the Host shall either lower its VBUS detach threshold or further limit its maximum current based on the following formulas:

- VBUS and GND-limited current with a 3A cable inferred = 0.75 V / (0.75 V / 3 A + VPD_VBUS_DCR + VPD_GND_DCR)
- VBUS and GND-limited current with a 5A cable inferred = 0.75 V / (0.75 V / 5 A + VPD_VBUS_DCR + VPD_GND_DCR)

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-20 Example Charge-Through VPD Sink Maximum Currents based on VBUS Impedance and GND Impedance

Reported VBUS Impedance[4]	Reported GND Impedance[4]	3A Cable Inferred[1]	5A Cable Inferred[2]
0.020 Ω	0.010 Ω	2.679 A	4.167 A
0.030 Ω	0.015 Ω	2.542 A	3.846 A
0.040 Ω	0.020 Ω	2.419 A	3.571 A
0.050 Ω	0.025 Ω	2.308 A	3.333 A
0.060 Ω	0.030 Ω	2.206 A	3.125 A
0.070 Ω	0.035 Ω	2.113 A	2.941 A
0.080 Ω	0.040 Ω	2.027 A	2.778 A

Notes:

1. As calculated by 0.75 V / (0.75 V / 3 A + VPD_VBUS_DCR + VPD_GND_DCR).
2. As calculated by 0.75 V / (0.75 V / 5 A + VPD_VBUS_DCR + VPD_GND_DCR).
3. Table does not show all allowable combinations, only a subset provided for illustration.
4. The ratio of the reported VBUS impedance to the reported GND impedance is 2:1.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.7 USB Hubs

USB 2.0, *USB 3.2*, and *USB4* hubs are defined by the *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2*, and *USB4* specifications, respectively. USB hubs implemented with one or more USB Type-C connectors shall comply with these specification as relevant to a USB Type-C implementation. All the downstream facing USB Type-C ports on a USB hub should support the same functionality or shall be clearly marked as to the functionality supported.

USB hubs shall have an upstream facing port (to connect to a host or hub higher in the USB tree) that may be a Sourcing Device (See Section 4.8.4). The hub shall clearly identify to the user its upstream facing port. This may be accomplished by physical isolation, labeling or a combination of both.

USB hub's downstream facing ports shall not have Dual-Role-Data (DRD) capabilities. However, these ports may have Dual-Role-Power (DRP) capabilities.

CC pins are used for port-to-port connections and shall be supported on all USB Type-C connections on the hub.

For *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* hubs, downstream-facing ports shall not implement or pass-through Alternate or Accessory Modes and SBU pins shall not be connected (zSBUTermination) on any USB hub port. For *USB4* hubs, see Section 5.2.3.2 regarding support for Alternate Modes.

The USB hub's DFPs shall support power source requirements for a Source. See Section 4.8.1.

Additional requirements for *USB4* hubs are in Chapter 5.

4.8 Power Sourcing and Charging

This section defines requirements and recommendations related to using USB Type-C ports for delivering power. Any USB Type-C port that offers more than Default Current and/or supports USB Power Delivery shall meet the requirements as if it is a charger.

The following lists the most applicable subsections by USB Type-C ports on:

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- Host systems: 4.8.1 and 4.8.5. Note: 4.8.6 is not intended for host systems.
- Devices that can supply power: 4.8.4.
- Hubs:
  - Traditional hubs – Refer to USB 2.0/USB 3.2 base specifications and 4.8.1 as applicable if *USB BC 1.2* is supported.
  - Hubs that can supply power beyond the base specs – 4.8.1, 4.8.4, 4.8.5 and 4.8.6.
- Dedicated chargers:
  - Single-port chargers – 4.8.1.
  - Multi-port chargers – 4.8.1 and 4.8.6.

4.8.1 DFP as a Power Source

Sources (e.g. battery chargers, hub downstream ports and hosts) may all be used for battery charging. When a charger is implemented with a USB Type-C receptacle or a USB Type-C captive cable, it shall follow all the applicable requirements.

- A Source shall expose its power capabilities using the USB Type-C Current method and it may additionally support other USB-standard methods (*USB BC 1.2* or *USB-PD*).
- A Source advertising its current capability using *USB BC 1.2* shall meet the requirements in Section 4.6.2.2 regarding USB Type-C Current advertisement.
- A Source that has negotiated a *USB-PD* contract shall meet the requirements in Section 4.6.2.4 regarding USB Type-C Current advertisement.
- If a Source is capable of supplying a voltage greater than default VBUS, it shall fully conform to the *USB-PD* specification and shall negotiate its power contracts using only *USB-PD*.
- If a Source is capable of reversing source and sink power roles, it shall fully conform to the *USB-PD* specification and shall negotiate its power contracts using only *USB-PD*.
- If a Source is capable of supplying a current greater than 3.0 A, it shall use the *USB-PD* Discover Identity to determine the current carrying capacity of the cable.

4.8.1.1 USB-based Chargers with USB Type-C Receptacles

- A USB-based charger with a USB Type-C receptacle (Source) shall only apply power to VBUS when it detects a Sink is attached and shall remove power from VBUS when it detects the Sink is detached (vOPEN).
- A USB-based charger with a USB Type-C receptacle shall not advertise current exceeding 3.0 A except when it uses the *USB-PD* Discover Identity mechanism to determine the cable's actual current carrying capability and then it shall limit the advertised current accordingly.
- A USB-based charger with a USB Type-C receptacle (Source) which is not capable of data communication shall advertise USB Type-C Current of at least 1.5 A within tVBUSON of entering the Attached.SRC state and shall short D+ and D− together with a resistance less than 200 ohms. This will ensure backwards compatibility with legacy sinks which may use *USB BC 1.2* for charger detection.

4.8.1.2 USB-based Chargers with USB Type-C Captive Cables

- A USB-based charger with a USB Type-C captive cable that supports USB PD shall only apply power to VBUS when it detects a Sink is attached and shall remove power from VBUS when it detects the Sink is detached (vOPEN).
- A USB-based charger with a USB Type-C captive cable that does not support USB PD may supply VBUS at any time. It is recommended that such a charger only apply power to VBUS

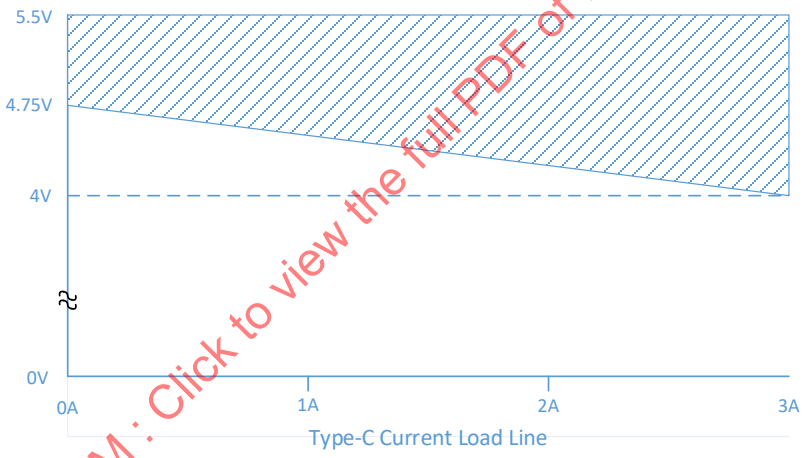
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

when it detects a Sink is present and remove power from VBUS when it detects the Sink is not present (vOPEN).

- A USB-based charger with a USB Type-C captive cable shall limit its current advertisement so as not to exceed the current capability of the cable (up to 5 A).
- A USB-based charger with a USB Type-C captive cable which is not capable of data communication shall advertise USB Type-C Current of at least 1.5 A. It is recommended that such a charger short D+ and D− together with a resistance less than 200 ohms.
- The voltage as measured at the plug of a USB-based charger with a USB Type-C captive cable may be up to 0.75 × I / 3 V (0 < I ≤ 3 A), or 0.75 × I / 5 V (0 < I ≤ 5 A) lower than the standard tolerance range for the chosen voltage, where I is the actual current being drawn.
    - A USB-based charger that advertises USB Type-C Current shall output a voltage in the range of 4.75 V – 5.5 V when no current is being drawn and between 4.0 V – 5.5 V at 3 A. The output voltage as a function of load up to the advertised USB Type-C Current (default, 1.5 A and 3 A) shall remain within the cross-hatched area shown in Figure 4-38.

Figure 4-38 USB Type-C Cable's Output as a Function of Load for Non-PD-based USB Type-C Charging

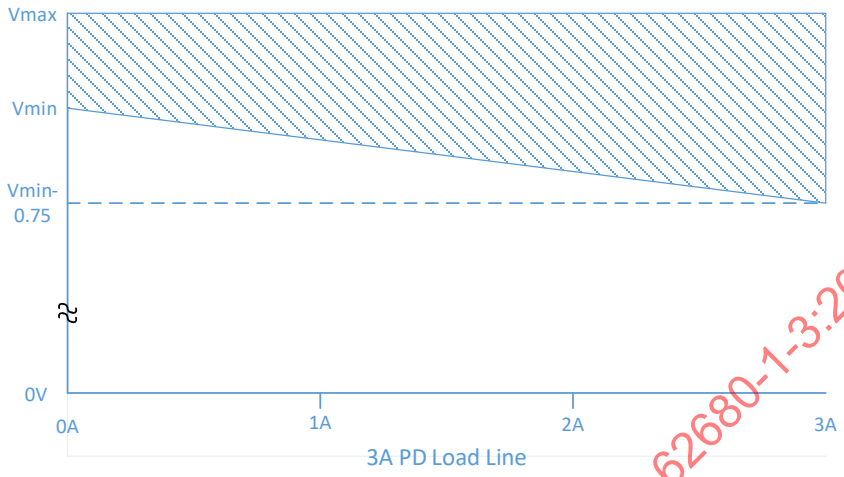


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

    - A USB PD-based charger that has negotiated a voltage V at ≤ 3 A shall output a voltage in the range of Vmax (V + 5%) and Vmin (V – 5%) when no current is being drawn and Vmax and Vmin – 0.75 V at 3 A. Under all loads, the output voltage shall remain within the cross-hatched area shown in Figure 4-39.

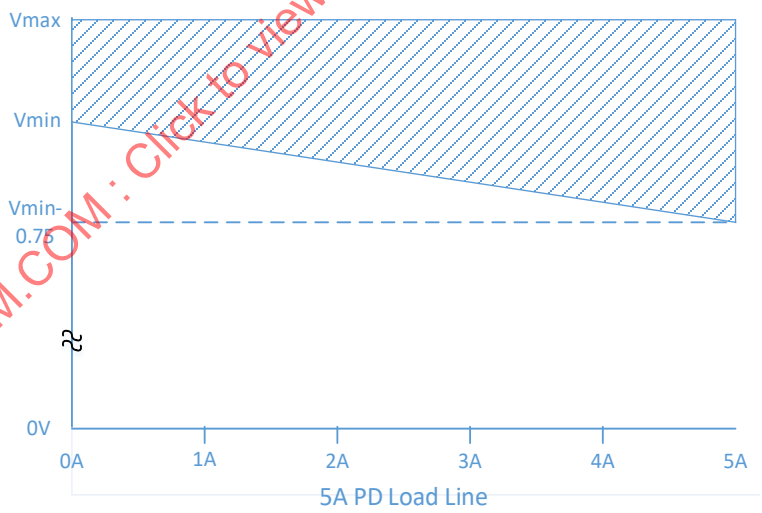
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-39 0 – 3 A USB PD-based Charger USB Type-C Cable's Output as a Function of Load



- A USB PD-based charger that has negotiated a voltage V at between 3 A and 5 A shall output a voltage in the range of Vmax (V + 5%) and Vmin (V – 5%) when no current is being drawn and Vmax and Vmin – 0.75 V at 5 A. Under all loads, the output voltage shall remain within the cross hatched area shown in Figure 4-40.

Figure 4-40 3 – 5 A USB PD-based Charger USB Type-C Cable's Output as a Function of Load



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- Note: The maximum allowable cable IR drop for ground is 250 mV (see Section 4.4.1). This is to ensure the signal integrity of the CC wire when used for connection detection and *USB PD* BMC signaling.

4.8.2 Non-USB Charging Methods

A product (Source and/or Sink) with a USB Type-C connector shall only employ signaling methods defined in USB specifications to negotiate power over its USB Type-C connector(s).

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.8.3 Sinking Host

A Sinking Host is a special sub-class of a DRP that is capable of consuming power, but is not capable of acting as a USB device. For example a hub's DFP or a notebook's DFP that operates as a host but not as a device.

The Sinking Host shall follow the rules for a DRP (See Section 4.5.1.4 and Figure 4-15). The Sinking DFP shall support *USB PD* and shall support the DR_Swap command in order to get the Sink into the DFP data role.

4.8.4 Sourcing Device

A Sourcing Device is a special sub-class of a DRP that is capable of supplying power, but is not capable of acting as a USB host. For example a hub's UFP or a monitor's UFP that operates as a device but not as a host.

The Sourcing Device shall follow the rules for a DRP (See Section 4.5.1.4 and Figure 4-15). It shall also follow the requirements for the Source as Power Source (See Section 4.8.1). The Sourcing Device shall support *USB PD* and shall support the DR_Swap command in order to enable the Source to assume the UFP data role.

4.8.5 Charging a System with a Dead Battery

A system that supports being charged by USB whose battery is dead shall apply Rd to both CC1 and CC2 and follow all Sink rules. When it is connected to a Source, DRP or Sourcing Device, the system will receive the default VBUS. It may use any allowed method to increase the amount of power it can use to charge its battery.

Circuitry to present Rd in a dead battery case only needs to guarantee the voltage on CC is pulled within the same range as the voltage clamp implementation of Rd in order for a Source to recognize the Sink and provide VBUS. For example, a 20% resistor of value Rd in series with a FET with VGTH(max) < VCLAMP(max) with the gate weakly pulled to CC would guarantee detection and be removable upon power up.

When the system with a dead battery has sufficient charge, it may use the *USB PD* DR_Swap message to become the DFP.

4.8.6 USB Type-C Multi-Port Chargers

A USB Type-C Multi-Port Charger is a product that exposes multiple USB Type-C Source ports for the purpose of charging multiple connected devices. A compliant USB Type-C charger may offer on each of its ports a mix of power options as defined in Section 4.6.

Multi-Port Chargers will generally fall into two categories as defined by the following.

1. Assured Capacity Chargers: a multi-port charger where the sum of the maximum capabilities of all of the exposed ports, as indicated to the user, is equal to the total power delivery capacity of the charger.
2. Shared Capacity Chargers: a multi-port charger where the sum of the maximum capabilities of all of the exposed ports, as indicated to the user, is less than the total power delivery capacity of the charger.

A Multi-Port Charger may offer in a single product separate visually identifiable groupings of charging ports. In this case, each group can independently offer either one of the two charging categories, either an Assured Capacity Charger or a Shared Capacity Charger.

This section defines the requirements and provides guidelines for the operation and behavior of a USB Type-C Multi-Port Charger.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.8.6.1 General Requirements

Individual source ports shall always comply with power negotiation and rules set forth by the USB Type-C and USB Power Delivery specifications, adjusted as needed when available resources change as other ports take more or less power.

The minimum capability of all individual USB Type-C ports of a USB Type-C Multi-Port Charger shall be 5V @ 1.5 A independent of how many of the other ports are in use.

When a USB Type-C Charger includes charging ports that are based on USB Standard-A receptacles, the following requirements shall be met.

- The USB Standard-A ports shall be implemented as an independent group, i.e. USB Standard-A ports shall not be included in a group of USB Type-C ports behaving as a Shared Capacity Charger. Any load change on a USB Type-A port shall not result in a voltage change on any of the USB Type-C ports and vice-versa.
- The minimum capability of each USB Standard-A port shall be 5V @ 500 mA independent of how many of the other ports are in use.

4.8.6.2 Multi-Port Charger Behaviors

Each Source port of Assured Capacity Chargers shall, by design, behave independently and be unaffected by the status and loading of the other ports. An exception to this behavior is allowed if the charger has to take any action necessary to meet an overall product operational safety requirement due to unexpected behavior on any port.

For Shared Capacity Chargers, the following behavioral rules shall apply:

- Each of the exposed Source Ports shall have the same power capabilities. Each port of the charger shall be capable of the same maximum capability, minimum capability, and be able to draw from the shared power equally.
- All exposed USB PD unattached Source Ports shall have the same power capabilities.
    - Ports shall have the ability to supply the available shared capacity power up to the port's maximum power.
        - A shared capacity charger's ports may offer less than this value, but shall increase the offer up to the required value when the Sink sets the Capabilities Mismatch bit in its response. This may be done in multiple steps, but all ports in the Shared Capacity Group shall reach the maximum power within three seconds.
    - Whenever a power contract is made or changed on any port, the available shared capacity shall be re-computed and the source shall send updated Source Capability messages as needed.
        - As ports of a Shared Capacity Group are connected, each remaining unattached Source Port shall be capable of advertising the lower of the Maximum Capability of the port OR the Total Shared Capacity – the contracted power for the attached ports – (the number of unattached ports – 1) * the minimum port power.
    - Ports shall offer at least 7.5 W.
    - When calculating the available shared capacity for ports in a Fixed Supply power contract, the shared capacity charger shall use the Voltage times the Maximum Current in the PDO as the power the port is supplying regardless of the actual Operating Current requested in the RDO request.
    - When calculating the available shared capacity for ports in a PPS power contract, the shared capacity charger shall use the Maximum Voltage times the Maximum Current

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

in the APDO as the power the port is supplying regardless of the actual voltage and current in the RDO request.

- Ports when not in a PD contract shall follow the rules for a shared USB Type-C Current source unless there is sufficient remaining power for each port to advertise 15 W.

- All exposed USB Type-C Current ports shall have the ability to offer the same power capabilities.
  - All ports shall initially offer 1.5 A.
  - Ports shall increase to 3 A after attach if they have sufficient available shared capacity within one second.
  - Ports shall never offer less than 1.5 A – e.g. shall not offer Default.

As Source ports are connected and begin providing power, the remaining Source ports will each have the same power capabilities. The maximum capability may be less than the previously connected ports due to less unused capacity of the total power delivery capacity of the charger. For example, if the total power delivery capacity of a USB Type-C two-port charger is 60 W with a port PDP of 35 W and the first connected Source port has established a 35 W power contract with its connected Sink, then the second Source port will only be able to offer a PDP of 25 W.

Each port should start by offering the minimum capability for the port and increase the offering to the Sink upon a connection. For example, if the maximum capability of a USB Type-C only Source port is 3 A, then all of the exposed Source ports will be able to offer 3 A. Each port should start by offering less than the max (such as 1.5 A) and then increase the offering to 3 A after an attach. This would happen for each port as it is connected until the unused shared capacity is exhausted, at which point no other ports would increase to 3 A offering. A sink, in this example, would see a starting advertisement of USB Type-C Current @ 1.5 A at attach and would then see the USB Type-C Current advertisement increase to 3 A. As another example, if the maximum capability of a USB Type-C Source port is to offer *USB PD* with a PDP of 35 W, then all of the exposed Source ports would also support *USB PD* 35 W. Each port would start by offering something less on initial connection, like 15 W, and then increase the offering with new Source Capabilities when it determines the Sink would like more power. If the Sink is not offered the power it requires, it will send a request with the Capability Mismatch bit set to indicate to the source it wants more power. This will happen for each port as it is connected until the unused shared capacity is exhausted, at which point no other ports would increase the power offering.

When establishing the remaining available capacity, a charger that supports policy-based power rebalancing may include the power that can be reclaimed from ports already in use:

1. by adjusting advertised source capabilities equivalent with a reduced PDP to one or more ports that are already in use; or
2. by issuing a *USB PD* GotoMin command to one or more ports already in use.

Policy-based power rebalancing should consider providing good user experience and preserving nominal USB functionality on impacted devices. Fixed rebalancing algorithms that do not factor in overall USB system policy may not be appropriate for power rebalancing implementations.

4.8.6.3 Multi-Port Charger Port Labeling

Multi-port chargers shall have OEM-designed port labeling consistent with the following rules.

- For Assured Capacity Chargers, each exposed Source port shall be labeled to indicate the PDP of the port. In this case, the user will be able to expect that each of the labeled ports will be able to meet power contracts consistent with the labeling independent of how many of the Source ports are in use.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- For Shared Capacity Chargers, each Source port shall be labeled to indicate the same PDP. Additionally, the charger shall have a label that, with a minimum of equal visual prominence, indicates the total power delivery capacity being shared across all of the ports identified as a group.

A Multi-Port Charger that offers in a single product separate groupings of charging ports, each grouping shall be clearly identified as a separate grouping and each grouping shall be individually labeled consistent with that group's behavior model, either as an Assured Capacity Charger or a Shared Capacity Charger.

Refer to the USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF) for USB Type-C Chargers certification along with further labeling guidelines.

4.8.6.4 Multi-Port Charger that include USB Data Hub Functionality

Multi-Port chargers that also incorporate USB data hub capabilities shall meet the same requirements as standalone chargers. These charging-capable hubs shall be self-powered and shall fully operate as a charger independent of the state of the USB data bus connections.

For hub-based Multi-Port Chargers that offer power to the upstream-facing port (to the host), this port may either behave as an Assured Capacity Charging port (e.g. be a dedicated charging port) or as a Shared Capacity Charging port (e.g. sharing capacity with downstream-facing ports). In either case, it should be clearly labeled consistent with its designed behavior, including identifying it as part of a group if it is sharing capacity with other ports.

When the upstream-facing port is sharing capacity with the downstream-facing ports, the PDP of the upstream-facing port can differ from the downstream-facing ports.

4.9 Electronically Marked Cables

All USB Full-Featured Type-C cables shall be electronically marked. USB 2.0 Type-C cables may be electronically marked. An eMarker is element in an Electronically Marked Cable that returns information about the cable in response to a *USB PD* Discover Identity command.

Electronically marked cables shall support *USB Power Delivery* Structured VDM Discover Identity command directed to SOP' (the eMarker). This provides a method to determine the characteristics of the cable, e.g. its current carrying capability, its performance, vendor identification, etc. This may be referred to as the USB Type-C Cable ID function.

Prior to an explicit *USB PD* contract, a Sourcing Device is allowed to use SOP' to discover the cable's identity. After an explicit *USB PD* contract has been negotiated, only the Source shall communicate with SOP' and SOP'' (see Section 6.2.1).

Passive cables that include an eMarker shall follow the Cable State Machine defined in Section 4.5.2.4 and Figure 4-20.

Electronically marked cables are generally powered from VCONN, although VBUS or another source may be used. Cables that include an eMarker shall meet the maximum power defined in Table 4-6.

Refer to Table 4-5 for the requirements of a Source to supply VCONN. When VCONN is not present, a powered cable shall not interfere with normal CC operation including Sink detection, current advertisement and *USB PD* operation.

Figure 4-41 illustrates a typical electronically marked cable. The isolation elements (Iso) shall prevent VCONN from traversing end-to-end through the cable. Ra is required in the cable to allow the Source to determine that VCONN is needed.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-41 Electronically Marked Cable with VCONN connected through the cable

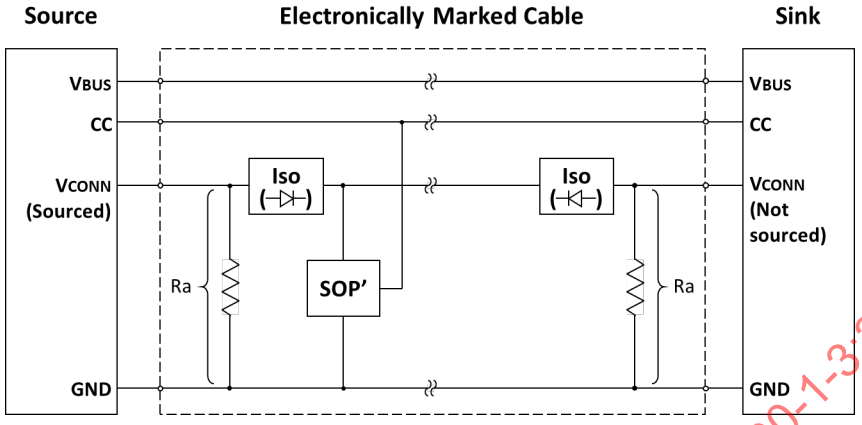
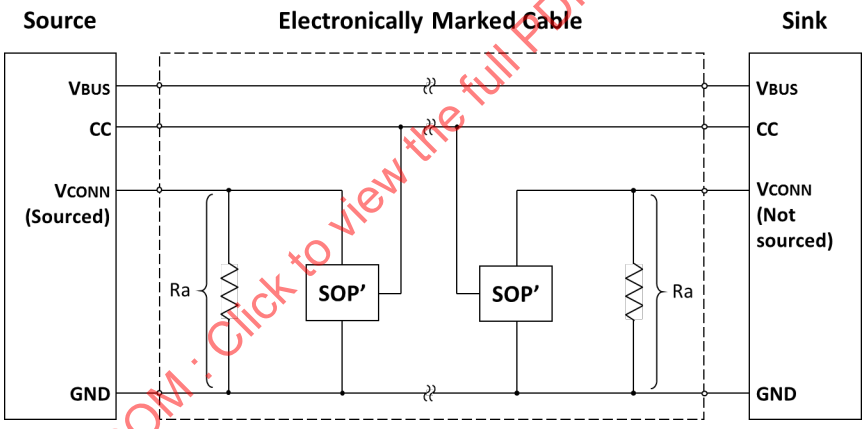


Figure 4-42 illustrates an electronically marked cable where the VCONN wire does not extend through the cable, therefore an SOP' (eMarker) element is required at each end of the cable. In this case, no isolation elements are needed.

Figure 4-42 Electronically Marked Cable with SOP' at both ends



For cables that only respond to SOP', the location of the responder is not relevant.

4.9.1 Parameter Values

Table 4-21 provides the power on timing requirements for the eMarker SOP' and SOP" to be ready to communicate.

Table 4-21 SOP' and SOP" Timing

	Maximum	Description
tVCONNStable	50 ms	The time between the application of VCONN until SOP' and SOP" shall be ready for communication.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.9.2 Active Cables

An active cable is an electronically marked cable that incorporates data bus signal conditioning circuits, for example to allow for implementing longer cables. Active cables with data bus signal conditioning in both plugs shall implement SOP' and may implement SOP". Active cables shall meet the power requirements defined in Table 4-6.

Active cables may support either one TX/RX pair or two TX/RX pairs. The eMarker in the cable shall identify the number of TX/RX lanes supported. Active cables may or may not require configuration management. Active cable configuration management is defined in Section 5.5.4.

4.10 VCONN-Powered Accessories (VPAs) and VCONN-Powered USB Devices (VPDs)

VCONN-Powered Accessories and VCONN-Powered USB Devices are both direct-attach Sinks that can operate with just VCONN.

Both expose a maximum impedance to ground of Ra on the VCONN pin and Rd on the CC pin.

The removal of VCONN when VBUS is not present shall be treated as a detach event.

4.10.1 VCONN-Powered Accessories (VPAs)

A VCONN-Powered Accessory implements an Alternate Mode (See Appendix E).

VCONN-Powered Accessories shall comply with Table 4-7.

When operating in the Sink role and when VBUS is not present, VCONN-Powered Accessories shall treat the application of VCONN as an attach signal, and shall respond to *USB Power Delivery* messages.

When powered by only VCONN, a VCONN-Powered Accessory shall negotiate an Alternate Mode. If it fails to negotiate an Alternate Mode within tAMETimeout, its port partner removes VCONN.

When VBUS is supplied, a VCONN-Powered Accessory is subject to all of the requirements for Alternate Modes, including presenting a *USB Billboard Device Class* interface if negotiation for an Alternate Mode fails.

Should a VCONN-Powered Accessory wish to provide charge-through functionality, it must do so by negotiating voltage and current independently on both the Host and charge-through ports, and possibly re-regulating the voltage from the Source before passing it through to the Sink. The Sink is able to take the full current that is advertised to it by the VCONN-Powered Accessory.

4.10.2 VCONN-Powered USB Devices (VPDs)

A VCONN-Powered USB Device shall implement a USB UFP endpoint.

VCONN-Powered USB Devices shall comply with Table 4-8.

When VBUS is not present, VCONN-Powered USB Devices shall treat the application of VCONN as an attach signal.

A VCONN-Powered USB Device shall respond to *USB PD* messaging on SOP', and shall not respond to other USB PD messaging. A VCONN-Powered USB Device shall respond to USB PD Hard Reset and Cable Reset signaling.

A Charge-Through VCONN -Powered USB Device shall discard all *USB PD* messages while a connection is enabled between the host port CC and Charge-Through port CC.

When VBUS is supplied by the Host, the VCONN-Powered USB Device shall behave like a normal UFP Sink, but still only respond to *USB PD* messaging on SOP'. If VBUS is subsequently removed while

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

VCONN remains applied, the VCONN-Powered USB Device shall remain connected, and use VCONN as the sole detach signal.

Since VCONN-Powered USB Devices do not respond to *USB PD* on SOP, they cannot enter Alternate Modes.

A VCONN -Powered USB Device may provide Charge-Through functionality via VPD Charge-Through. VCONN-Powered USB Devices shall not provide any data pass-through to the Charge-Through port other than the CC wire.

Since the power and CC negotiation is passed through directly, the Sink shall limit its maximum current based on the additional impedance introduced by the VCONN-Powered USB Device.

Additionally, since power can only flow from the Charge-Through port to the Host, VCONN must be provided by the host, and there is no data connection beyond the CC wire passed through to the connected source, there are limitations on what the Host can advertise and support via *USB PD*:

- The Host shall not negotiate or accept a PR_Swap or VCONN_Swap
- The Host shall not enable FR_Swap
- The Host may only negotiate a DR_Swap when using *USB PD* Revision 2.0, and only for the purpose of switching which side is the PD bus master. The Host will always remain a DFP for USB data.
- The Host shall not advertise dual-role data or dual-role power in its SourceCapability or SinkCapability messages – Host changes its advertised capabilities to UFP role/sink only role.
- The Host shall not negotiate any Alternate Modes that change the function of pins on the connector.
- The Host shall represent itself to the Charge-Through Source using *USB PD* as if it were a Sink-only, data-less device.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Table 4-22 Charge-Through VPD CC Impedance (RccCON) Requirements

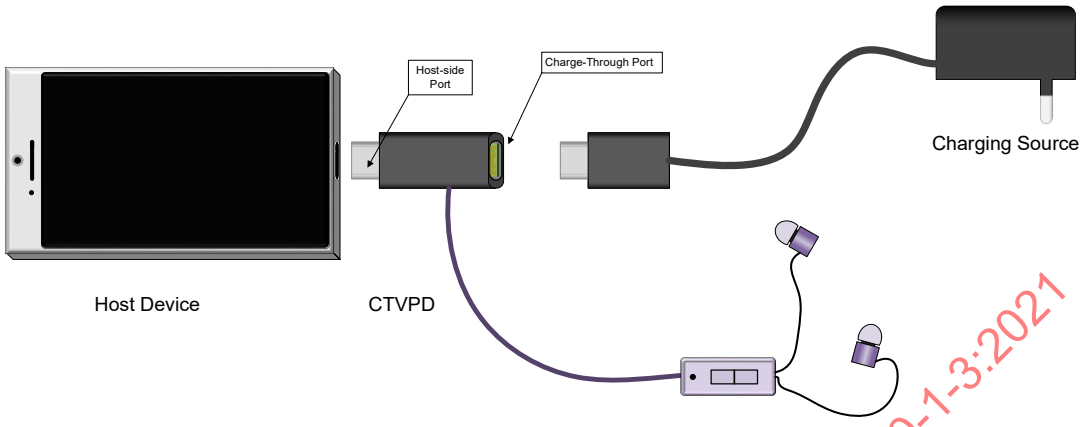
	Minimum	Maximum	Description
RccCON		15 Ω	Impedance in the Charge-Though VPD while a connection is enabled between the host port CC and Charge-Through port CC.
	zOPEN		Impedance between the host port CC and Charge-Through CC when a connection is disabled.

Table 4-23 CTVPD Charge-Through Port VBUS Bypass Requirements

	Minimum	Maximum	Description
CCTB	1 µF	10 µF	Bypass capacitance on Charge-Through port VBUS connection to support ADP max CADP_THR

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-43 Example Charge-Through VCONN-Power USB Device Use Case



4.11 Parameter Values

4.11.1 Termination Parameters

Table 4-24 provides the values that shall be used for the Source's Rp or current source. Other pull-up voltages shall be allowed if they remain less than 5.5 V and fall within the correct voltage ranges on the Sink side – see Table 4-32, Table 4-33 and Table 4-34. Note: when two Sources are connected together, they may use different termination methods which could result in unexpected current flow.

Table 4-24 Source CC Termination (Rp) Requirements

Source Advertisement	Current Source to 1.7 – 5.5 V	Resistor pull-up to 4.75 – 5.5 V	Resistor pull-up to 3.3 V ± 5%
Default USB Power	80 µA ± 20%	56 kΩ ± 20% (Note 1)	36 kΩ ± 20%
1.5 A @ 5 V	180 µA ± 8%	22 kΩ ± 5%	12 kΩ ± 5%
3.0 A @ 5 V	330 µA ± 8%	10 kΩ ± 5%	4.7 kΩ ± 5%

Notes:

1. For Rp when implemented in the USB Type-C plug on a USB Type-C to *USB 3.1* Standard-A Cable Assembly, a USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Standard-A Cable Assembly, a USB Type-C to *USB 2.0* Micro-B Receptacle Adapter Assembly or a USB Type-C captive cable connected to a USB host, a value of 56 kΩ ± 5% shall be used, in order to provide tolerance to IR drop on VBUS and GND in the cable assembly.

The Sink may find it convenient to implement Rd in multiple ways simultaneously (a wide range Rd when unpowered and a trimmed Rd when powered). Transitions between Rd implementations that do not exceed tCCDebounce shall not be interpreted as exceeding the wider Rd range. Transitions between Rd implementations shall not allow the voltage on CC to go outside the voltage band that defines a connection. Table 4-25 provides the methods and values that shall be used for the Sink's Rd implementation.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-25 Sink CC Termination (Rd) Requirements

Rd Implementation	Nominal value	Can detect power capability?	Max voltage on pin
± 20% voltage clamp[1]	1.1 V	No	1.32 V
± 20% resistor to GND	5.1 kΩ	No	2.18 V
± 10% resistor to GND	5.1 kΩ	Yes	2.04 V

Note:
1. The clamp implementation inhibits *USB PD* communication although the system can start with the clamp and transition to the resistor once it is able to do *USB PD*.

Table 4-26 provides the impedance value to ground on VCONN in powered cables.

Table 4-26 Powered Cable Termination Requirements

	Minimum Impedance	Maximum Impedance
Ra	800 Ω[1]	1.2 kΩ

Note:
1. The minimum impedance may be less when powering active circuitry.

Table 4-27 provides the minimum impedance value to ground on CC for a device (Sink or Source) to be undetected by a Source. This shall apply for ports in the Disabled state or ErrorRecovery state. This shall also apply for Sources when unpowered (for example a power brick unplugged from AC mains).

Table 4-27 CC Termination Requirements for Disabled state, ErrorRecovery state, and Unpowered Source

	Minimum Impedance to GND
zOPEN	126 kΩ

Table 4-28 provides the impedance value for an SBU to appear open.

Table 4-28 SBU Termination Requirements

	Termination	Notes
zSBUTermination	≥ 950 kΩ	Functional equivalent to an open circuit

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.11.2 Timing Parameters

Table 4-29 provides the timing values that shall be met for delivering power over VBUS and VCONN.

Table 4-29 VBUS and VCONN Timing Parameters

	Minimum	Maximum	Description
tVBUSON	0 ms	275 ms	From entry to Attached.SRC until VBUS reaches the minimum vSafe5V threshold as measured at the source's receptacle.
tVBUSOFF	0 ms	650 ms	From the time the Sink is detached until the Source removes VBUS and reaches vSafe0V (See *USB PD*).
tVCONNON	Note 1	2 ms	From the time the Source supplied VBUS in the Attached.SRC state. Measured from vSafe5V to the minimum VCONN voltage (see Table 4-5)
tVCONNON-PA	0 ms	100 ms	From the time a Sink with accessory support enters the PoweredAccessory state until the Sink sources minimum VCONN voltage (see Table 4-5)
tVCONNOFF	0 ms	35 ms	From the time that a Sink is detached or as directed until the VCONN supply is disconnected.
tSinkAdj	tRpValueChange (Min)	60 ms	Response time for a Sink to adjust its current consumption to be in the specified range due to a change in USB Type-C Current advertisement

Note:

1. VCONN may be applied prior to the application of VBUS

Figure 4-44 illustrates the timing parameters associated with the DRP toggling process. The tDRP parameter represents the overall period for a single cycle during which the port is exposed as both a Source and a Sink. The portion of the period where the DRP is exposed as a Source is established by dcSRC.DRP and the maximum transition time between the exposed states is dictated by tDRPTransition.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-44 DRP Timing

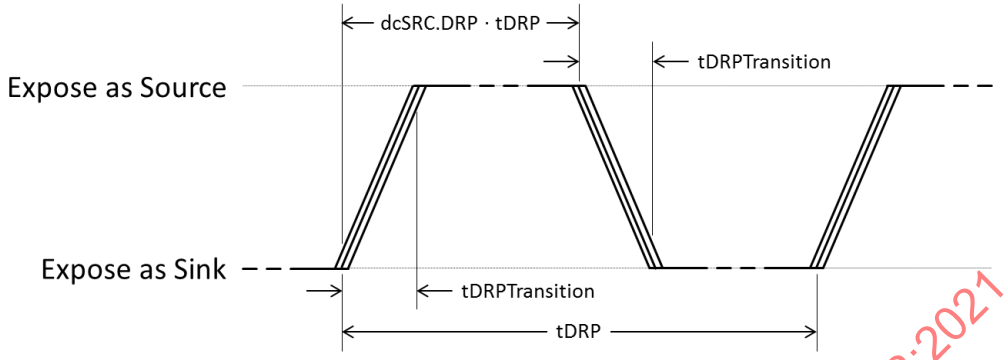


Table 4-30 provides the timing values that shall be met for DRPs. The clock used to control DRP swap should not be derived from a precision timing source such as a crystal, ceramic resonator, etc. to help minimize the probability of two DRP devices indefinitely failing to resolve into a Source-to-Sink relationship. Similarly, the percentage of time that a DRP spends advertising Source not be derived from a precision timing source.

Table 4-30 DRP Timing Parameters

	Minimum	Maximum	Description
tDRP	50 ms	100 ms	The period a DRP shall complete a Source to Sink and back advertisement
dcSRC.DRP	30%	70%	The percent of time that a DRP shall advertise Source during tDRP
tDRPTransition	0 ms	1 ms	The time a DRP shall complete transitions between Source and Sink roles during role resolution
tDRPTry	75 ms	150 ms	Wait time associated with the Try.SRC state.
tDRPTryWait	400 ms	800 ms	Wait time associated with the Try.SNK state.
tTryTimeout	550 ms	1100 ms	Timeout for transition from Try.SRC to TryWait.SNK.
tVPDDetach	10 ms	20 ms	Time for a DRP to detect that the connected Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device has been detached, after VBUS has been removed.

Table 4-31 provides the timing requirement for CC connection behaviors.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-31 CC Timing

	Minimum	Maximum	Description
tCCDebounce	100 ms	200 ms	Time a port shall wait before it can determine it is attached
tPDDebounce	10 ms	20 ms	Time a Sink port shall wait before it can determine it is detached due to the potential for *USB PD* signaling on CC as described in the state definitions.
tTryCCDebounce	10 ms	20 ms	Time a port shall wait before it can determine it is re-attached during the try-wait process.
tErrorRecovery	25 ms		Time a self-powered port shall remain in the ErrorRecovery state.
	240 ms		Time a source shall remain in the ErrorRecovery state if it was sourcing VCONN in the previous state.
tRpValueChange	10 ms	20 ms	Time a Sink port shall wait before it can determine there has been a change in Rp where CC is not BMC Idle or the port is unable to detect BMC Idle.
	0 ms	5 ms	Time a Sink port shall wait before it can determine that there has been a change in Rp when *USB PD* signaling can be detected by the port and CC line is BMC Idle.
tSRCDisconnect	0 ms	20 ms	Time a Source shall detect the SRC.Open state. The Source should detect the SRC.Open state as quickly as practical.
tNoToggleConnect	0 ms	5 ms	Time to detect connection when neither Port Partner is toggling.
tOnePortToggleConnect	0 ms	80 ms	Time to detect connection when one Port Partner is toggling (0ms … dcSRC.DRP max * tDRP max + 2 * tNoToggleConnect).
tTwoPortToggleConnect	0 ms	510 ms	Time to detect connection when both Port Partners are toggling (0ms … 5 * tDRP max + 2 * tNoToggleConnect).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

	Minimum	Maximum	Description
tVPDCTDD	30 µs	5 ms	Time for a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device to detect that the Charge-Through source has disconnected from CC after VBUS has been removed, transition to CTUnattached.VPD, and re-apply its Rp termination advertising 3.0 A on the host port CC.
tVPDDisable	25 ms		Time for a Charge-Through VCONN-Powered USB Device shall remain in CTDisabled.VPD state.

4.11.3 Voltage Parameters

Table 4-32, Table 4-33 and Table 4-34 provide the CC voltage values that a Source shall use to detect what is attached based on the USB Type-C Current advertisement (Default USB, 1.5 A @ 5 V, or 3.0 A @ 5 V) that the Source is offering.

Table 4-32 CC Voltages on Source Side – Default USB

	Minimum Voltage	Maximum Voltage	Threshold
Powered cable/adapter (vRa)	0.00 V	0.15 V	0.20 V
Sink (vRd)	0.25 V	1.50 V	1.60 V
No connect (vOPEN)	1.65 V		

Table 4-33 CC Voltages on Source Side – 1.5 A @ 5 V

	Minimum Voltage	Maximum Voltage	Threshold
Powered cable/adapter (vRa)	0.00 V	0.35 V	0.40 V
Sink (vRd)	0.45 V	1.50 V	1.60 V
No connect (vOPEN)	1.65 V		

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 4-34 CC Voltages on Source Side – 3.0 A @ 5 V

	Minimum Voltage	Maximum Voltage	Threshold
Powered cable/adapter (vRa)	0.00 V	0.75 V	0.80 V
Sink (vRd)	0.85 V	2.45 V	2.60 V
No connect (vOPEN)	2.75 V		

Table 4-35 provides the CC voltage values that shall be detected across a Sink's Rd for a Sink that does not support higher than default USB Type-C Current Source advertisements.

Table 4-35 Voltage on Sink CC Pins (Default USB Type-C Current only)

Detection	Min voltage	Max voltage	Threshold
vRa	−0.25 V	0.15 V	0.2 V
vRd-Connect	0.25 V	2.18 V	

Table 4-36 provides the CC voltage values that shall be detected across a Sink's Rd for a Sink that implements detection of higher than default USB Type-C Current Source advertisements. This table includes consideration for the effect that the IR drop across the cable GND has on the voltage across the Sink's Rd.

Table 4-36 Voltage on Sink CC pins (Multiple Source Current Advertisements)

Detection	Min voltage	Max voltage	Threshold
vRa	−0.25 V	0.15 V	0.2 V
vRd-Connect	0.25 V	2.04 V	
vRd-USB	0.25 V	0.61 V	0.66 V
vRd-1.5	0.70 V	1.16 V	1.23 V
vRd-3.0	1.31 V	2.04 V	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

5 USB4 Discovery and Entry

USB4™ discovery and operational entry differs significantly from *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2*. This chapter defines the process of discovering across a USB Type-C® connection that both port partners are *USB4*-capable (or not), having the DFP-side of the link make a decision regarding to enter *USB4* operation (or not), and how operational entry is accomplished.

5.1 Overview of the Discovery and Entry Process

The following provides an overview of the general process for discovery and entry into *USB4* operation.

1. USB Type-C CC Connection State Machines resolve Source/Sink and the initial data roles (DFP/UFP).
2. Initial VBUS and VCONN power is supplied.
3. *USB Power Delivery* protocol is used to establish a power contract between the port partners.
4. *USB PD* Discover Identity process is used by the DFP to identify port partner (SOP) capabilities.
5. *USB PD* Discover Identity process is used by the DFP to identify cable (SOP') capabilities.
6. If the cable and port partner both support USB4 operation, the DFP issues *USB PD* Enter_USB Messages to both the cable and port partner to enter USB4 operation.
7. If both port partners are Dual-Role-Data (DRD) capable, either the DFP or UFP can optionally initiate a data-role swap in order to exchange host (master) and device (slave) roles.

The first three steps above are the same as used for all USB connections for establishing port relationships and power between the port partners. Step 5 where the cable is queried for its capabilities may optionally occur during Step 3, this would most likely be done before if the Source needs to know if the cable supports supplying current beyond 3 A.

Depending on the resulting power source relationship after the first few steps, the use of *USB PD* DR_Swap may be necessary to establish the port partner that is closest to the host as the data role DFP. For example, a hub supplying power to a host and DR_Swap is used to correct the data roles between the hub and host.

After the port partner's capabilities are identified by the DFP, it may be appropriate based on what is discovered about the port partner to also query the port partner using the *USB PD* Alternate Mode SVID discovery process as an extension to Step 4. There are situations where a port partner supports Alternate Modes that may also be useable during *USB4* operation and this would be discovered during this additional query.

After the cable capabilities are identified by the DFP, it may be appropriate based on what is discovered about the cable to also query the cable using the *USB PD* Alternate Mode SVID discovery process as an extension to Step 5. There are situations where a cable that supports Thunderbolt™ 3 Alternate Mode may also be useable for *USB4* operation and this would be discovered during this additional query.

USB4 operation is entered using a *USB PD* USB Enter_USB Message. This message will be sent to both the cable (SOP' and SOP" if present) and the port partner (SOP), each of which will respond with an Accept message to confirm and establish when the cable or port partner is functionally ready for *USB4* operation. If the cable to be used will be operating in Thunderbolt 3 Alternate Mode, then the cable will be enabled using the *USB PD* Enter Mode Command instead of the *USB PD* USB Enter_USB Message (See Appendix F).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

USB4 functionally enables an ability for connecting two host platforms and establishing a data channel between the hosts, this is dependent on at least one of these host platforms being capable of Dual-Role-Data operation so that a proper USB Type-C DFP-to-UFP data relationship can be established between them. In most cases, both host platforms will be DRD-capable and once USB4 operation is established, either of these host platforms can choose to initiate a change of its role in the DFP-to-UFP relationship. To accomplish this, the *USB PD* DR_Swap process is used during Step 7 listed above.

5.2 USB4 Functional Requirements

The following functional requirements are for *USB4* hosts and devices.

5.2.1 USB4 Host Functional Requirements

USB4 hosts shall meet the following functional requirements:

- *USB4* hosts with dual-role-data (DRD) support shall respond to *USB PD* Discover Identity command with both DFP and UFP VDOs.

5.2.2 USB4 Device Functional Requirements

USB4 devices shall meet the following functional requirements:

- *USB4* devices shall respond to *USB PD* Discover Identity command with UFP VDOs.
- *USB4* devices shall provide a USB interface exposing a *USB Billboard Device Class* when it cannot connect as a *USB4* device within tUSB4Timeout.
- If the *USB4* device additionally supports Alternate Modes, the device shall complete the *USB4* discovery and entry process (successful or not) before falling back to *USB 3.2* or *USB 2.0* and exposing an appropriate *USB Billboard Device Class*.

5.2.3 USB4 Alternate Mode Support

The *USB4* specification enables products to be designed to support Alternate Modes, specifically *DisplayPort™ Alt Mode* and *Thunderbolt 3 Alt Mode*. Unlike *USB 3.2* and *USB 2.0* hubs, this also includes supporting specific Alternate Modes on *USB4* hubs.

5.2.3.1 USB4 Alternate Mode Support on Hosts

For *USB4* hosts that implement DisplayPort Tunneling, *DP Alt Mode* with Multi-function support (DP_BR 1 channel signaling combined with USB 3.2 Gen 1x1 support) as defined by the *DisplayPort Alt Mode* specification shall be implemented on all of its USB Type-C DFPs.

The *USB4* host shall support the first connected DisplayPort display on any of its USB Type-C ports. Support for subsequently connected DisplayPort displays is optional.

USB4 hosts may optionally implement *TBT3* compatibility support as defined by the *USB4* specification on its USB Type-C DFPs.

5.2.3.2 USB4 Alternate Mode Support on Hubs and USB4-based Docks

USB4 hubs and *USB4*–based docks shall implement *DP Alt Mode* with Multi-function support (DP_BR 1 channel signaling combined with USB 3.2 Gen 1x1 support) as defined by the *DisplayPort Alt Mode* specification on all of its USB Type-C DFPs.

USB4 hubs shall support the first connected DisplayPort display on any of its USB Type-C DFPs. Support for subsequently connected DisplayPort displays is optional.

USB4-based docks shall support the first connected display on any of its USB Type-C DFPs or non-USB display connectors (if present, collectively). Support for subsequently connected displays is optional.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

USB4 hubs shall implement *TBT3* compatibility support as defined by the *USB4* specification on its USB Type-C DFPs. *USB4*–based docks shall implement *TBT3* compatibility support as defined by the *USB4* specification on its USB Type-C UFP and USB Type-C DFPs.

For *USB4* hubs, downstream-facing ports shall not implement Alternate Modes that do not have a USB-IF Standard ID (SID) or Accessory Modes.

5.3 USB4 Power Requirements

USB4 requires that the power connection between the port partners be established and maintained using *USB PD* prior to and through-out *USB4* operation. A *USB4* port, prior to entering *USB4* operation, shall operate as a *USB 3.2* port with regarding power (See Section 4.6). *USB4* does not use the USB device protocols defined in *USB 2.0* and *USB 3.2* for managing device power.

5.3.1 Source Power Requirements

For USB Type-C ports that support *USB4* data bus operation, the following requirements shall be met.

- *USB4* ports shall be minimally capable of supplying at least 7.5 W (i.e. 5 V @ 1.5 A) on VBUS to bus-powered *USB4* devices.
- The minimum capability for powering bus powered devices on data-capable ports shall be independently met on each USB Type-C port of a multi-port host or hub.

5.3.2 Sink Power Requirements

For *USB4* devices that rely on bus power to operate (independent of any charging needs), the following requirements shall be met.

- *USB4* devices shall draw only up to 250 mA on VBUS when the Source advertises Default USB power (see Section 4.11.1) prior to a *USB PD* power contract being made between the device and its port partner.
    - *USB4* devices may draw higher levels of power prior to a *USB PD* power contract being made if the Source advertises USB Type-C Current at either 1.5 A or 3.0 A.
- *USB4* devices shall be minimally capable of operating with a Source that only delivers up to 7.5 W (i.e. 5 V @ 1.5 A).
- *USB4* devices shall not enter into *USB4* data bus operation until after a *USB PD* power contract has been established, and while in *USB4* operation, the device shall adhere to *USB PD* power behavioral requirements at all times including appropriately responding to changes in Source capabilities.

In cases where the full functional capabilities or the highest performance of the *USB4* device requires more than the power being offered by the host, the device shall be minimally capable of providing the user with basic functionality as expected for the type and listed functions of the device. This allows for making available a higher level of operation or performance when a higher level of power is supplied, e.g. 15 W for full functionality versus 7.5 W for basic functionality. In this case, the device shall expose a Billboard that indicates functionality is limited by the available power.

5.3.3 Device Power Management Requirements

For *USB4*, device power management is enabled using a combination of *USB PD* capabilities that operate in conjunction with the *USB4* link states of the device's UFP connection.

The connection between the device's UFP and its DFP port partner can be put into a suspend state based on the value of the USB Suspend Supported Flag in the Source-Capabilities Message used in the *USB PD* explicit power contract.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

When the USB Suspend Supported Flag is set by the Source, the Sink shall meet the Suspend power requirement when the *USB4* link is in the CLd state. Prior to the entry of the link into CLd state, it is expected that the host will have placed all of the device's functions into an appropriate suspend state.

Suspend power is defined based on the capabilities of the *USB4* device:

- *USB4* Device that is not capable of remote wake or has remote wake disabled: 25 mW
- *USB4* Device that supports remote wake and has remote wake enabled: 50 mW

If the Source clears the USB Suspend Supported Flag, the Sink shall follow Explicit Contract power requirements regardless of the *USB4* link state. For *USB4*, the use of *USB PD* zero negotiated current is not a valid Suspend entry method since it is not coordinated with the host operating system and the function device drivers.

5.4 USB4 Discovery and Entry Flow Requirements

This section provides the detailed requirements for *USB4* discovery and entry. Additional requirements related to *USB4* operation are in the *USB4 Specification*.

Prior to entering and during *USB4* operation, the functional requirements of Chapter 4 shall be met including all functional interface and configuration channel (CC) requirements.

5.4.1 USB Type-C Initial Connection

For a *USB4*-capable port, prior to initiating *USB4* cable and device discovery, a valid Source-to-Sink connection shall exist and the USB Type-C connection state machine of the port shall either be in the Attached.SRC or Attached.SNK state.

When two *USB4* dual-role-data (DRD) products are connected together, e.g. two *USB4* hosts, USB Type-C connection process will establish the initial data roles between the port partners.

Once the initial data roles are established, the USB Type-C connection will proceed to train the link for both *USB 3.2* and *USB 2.0*. Once the *USB4* DFP completes the training of the links, it shall hold off on enabling the *USB 3.2* and *USB 2.0* enumeration of the attached UFP to allow for the completion of the *USB4* discovery and entry process. Once the *USB4* discovery and entry process has completed, the DFP will enable USB device enumeration on the *USB 3.2* (either via the *USB4* SuperSpeed USB tunnel or natively depending on if the port connection is *USB4* or *USB 3.2*, respectively) and *USB 2.0* data paths that are established with its UFP port partner at that time.

5.4.2 USB Power Delivery Contract

Prior to initiating *USB4* device discovery, the port partners shall negotiate a *USB PD* Explicit Contract.

During the process of establishing a stable *USB PD* Explicit Contract, the Source or Sink may have initiated power-role and VCONN swaps. Prior to moving on to USB4 discovery, the functional data role shall be properly established (e.g. a self-powered hub upstream facing port is a DRP and comes up as a Source where DR_Swap is then required to the correct data role to the hub) and the DFP shall be the source of VCONN.

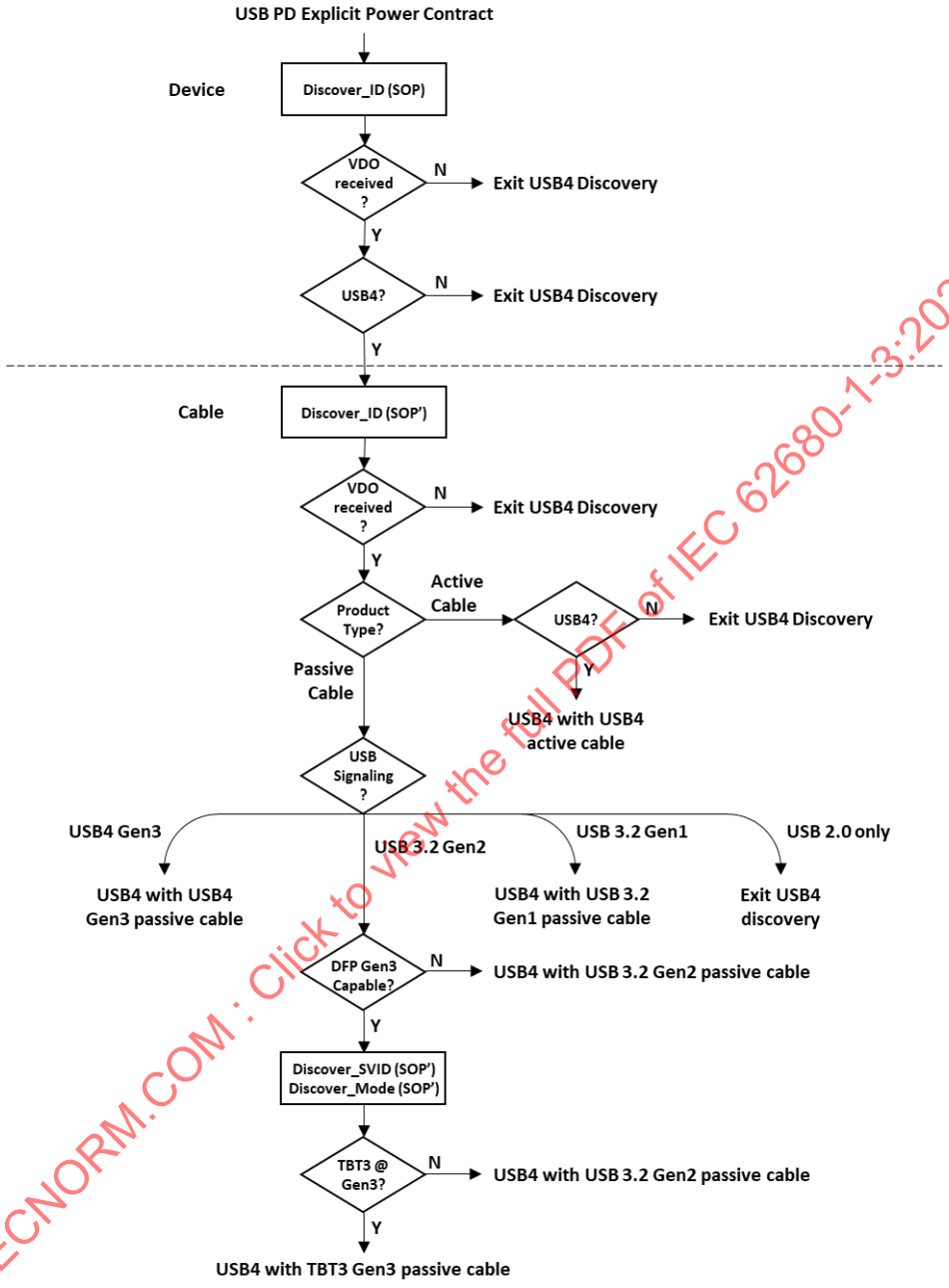
5.4.3 USB4 Discovery and Entry Flow

Figure 5-1 illustrates the basic flow model for *USB4* discovery and entry.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 5-1 USB4 Discovery and Entry Flow Model



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

5.4.3.1 USB4 Device Discovery (SOP)

USB4 device discovery shall occur only after having a negotiated *USB PD* Explicit Contract.

USB4 device discovery involves the use of the *USB PD* Discover ID process between the DFP and its port partner (SOP).

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

5.4.3.2 USB4 Cable Discovery (SOP')

The DFP shall determine that the attached cable is *USB4*-compatible prior to entering into *USB4* operation. In cases where the *USB4* device is directly connected or has a captive cable, the *USB4* device shall respond to *USB4* cable discovery on SOP' as a captive passive cable and indicating the appropriate USB Signaling support.

Table 5-1 summarizes the list of cables that are intended to support *USB4*-compatible operation. Regarding Active Cables, this list does not include Optically-Isolated Active Cables (OIACs) which are are to be handled as a special case given that these cables do not support *USB 2.0* and power delivery over the cable (See Chapter 6).

Table 5-1 Certified Cables Where USB4-compatible Operation is Expected

	Cable Signaling	USB4 Operation	Notes
USB Type-C Full-Featured Cables (Passive)	*USB 3.2* Gen1	20 Gbps	This cable will indicate support for *USB 3.2* Gen1 (001b) in the USB Signaling field of its Passive Cable VDO response. Note: even though this cable isn't explicitly tested, certified or logo'ed for *USB 3.2* Gen2 operation, *USB4* Gen2 operation will generally work.
	USB 3.2 Gen2 (*USB4* Gen2)	20 Gbps	This cable will indicate support for *USB 3.2* Gen2 (010b) in the USB Signaling field of its Passive Cable VDO response.
	USB4 Gen3	40 Gbps	This cable will indicate support for *USB4* Gen3 (011b) in the USB Signaling field of its Passive Cable VDO response.
Thunderbolt™ 3 Cables (Passive)	TBT3 Gen2	20 Gbps	This cable will indicate support for *USB 3.2* Gen1 (001b) or *USB 3.2* Gen2 (010b) in the USB Signaling field of its Passive Cable VDO response.
	TBT3 Gen3	40 Gbps	In addition to indicating support for *USB 3.2* Gen2 (010b) in the USB Signaling field of its Passive Cable VDO response, this cable will indicate that it supports TBT3 Gen3 in the Discover Mode VDO response.
USB Type-C Full-Featured Cables (Active)[1]	*USB4* Gen2	20 Gbps	This cable will indicate support for *USB4* Gen2 (010b) in the USB Signaling field of its Active Cable VDO response.
	USB4 Gen3	40 Gbps	This cable will indicate support for *USB4* Gen3 (011b) in the USB Signaling field of its Active Cable VDO response.

Note:

1. SuperSpeed USB active cables do not support *USB4*–compatible operation.

Determining if the cable is *USB4*-compatible starts the use of the *USB PD* Discover ID process between the DFP and the attached cable (SOP'). If no response is received when the DFP issues a *USB PD* Discover ID command to the cable, then the *USB4* discovery process shall be exited and the DFP shall proceed to establish a functional connection to its UFP port partner following traditional *USB 2.0* process.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

USB4-compatible support is generally determined based on the USB Signaling Support indicated in the cable VDO responses appropriate for the type of cable it is, passive or active, with compatible passive cables being those that indicate USB signaling support for Gen1 or higher and with compatible active cables being those that indicate USB signaling support for Gen2 or higher.

When a passive cable is identified as a *USB 3.2* Gen2 cable and the DFP is Gen3 capable, the DFP needs to check further using *USB PD* Alternate Mode process to determine if the cable is a Thunderbolt 3 passive cable supporting Gen3.

Some existing Thunderbolt 3 active cables may support *USB4* operation, such cables will indicate that it supports rounded data rates in the Discover Mode VDO response – discovery and use of this cable is optional.

5.4.3.2.1 Discovering Passive Cables

The *USB PD* specification defines the Passive Cable VDO responses to the Discover Identity Command sent by the DFP to a *USB4*-compatible passive cable.

If the USB Signaling field [B2…0] in the Passive Cable VDO response is 011b (*USB4* Gen3), the *USB4* discovery process is complete and *USB4* operation up to as high as 40 Gbps is supported. In Chapter 3 of this specification, these cable assemblies are those with the following cable references: CC4G3-3 and CC4G3-5 indicated in Table 3-1.

If the USB Signaling field [B2…0] in the Passive Cable VDO response is 000b (*USB 2.0* only), the the *USB4* discovery process will be exited and the DFP shall proceed to establish a functional connection to its UFP port partner following traditional USB 2.0 process.

If the USB Signaling field [B2…0] in the Passive Cable VDO response is either 010b (*USB 3.2* Gen2) or 001b (*USB 3.2* Gen1), the *USB4* discovery process is complete if the DFP is limited to *USB4* Gen2. In Chapter 3 of this specification, these cable assemblies are those with the following cable references: CC3G2-3, CC3G2-5, CC3G1-3, and CC3G1-3 indicated in Table 3-1. Note that *USB 3.2* Gen1 cables, while not tested and certified to be used for *USB 3.2* Gen2 operation, are expected to work for *USB4* Gen2 operation.

If the USB Signaling field [B2…0] in the Passive Cable VDO response is 010b (*USB 3.2* Gen2) but the DFP is capable of *USB4* Gen3 operation, then the DFP shall use the *USB PD* Alternate Mode process to determine if the cable also can be identified as a TBT3 Gen3 cable. Refer to Section 5.4.3.2.3 for TBT3 cable discovery process. If the Cable Speed field of the Discover Modes VDO response is set to 011b, then the *USB4* discovery process is complete and *USB4* operation up to as high as Gen3 is supported using the TBT3 passive cable (see Table F-11).

5.4.3.2.2 Discovering Active Cables

The *USB PD* specification defines the Active Cable VDO responses to the Discover Identity Command sent by the DFP to a *USB4*-compatible active cable.

If the USB Signaling Support field [B2…0] in the Active Cable VDO 1 response is 011b (USB4 Gen3), the *USB4* discovery process is complete and *USB4* operation up to as high as Gen3 is supported.

Optionally, discovery and use of existing TBT3 active cables that indicate support for rounded data rate operation is allowed if the active cable isn't explicitly identified as *USB4*-compatible.

Failure to identify that the attached active cable is *USB4*-compatible will result in exiting the *USB4* discovery process and reverting to following traditional *USB 3.2* and *USB 2.0* process.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

5.4.3.2.3 Process for Discovering Thunderbolt 3 Cables

The *USB PD* specification defines the process for discovering Alternate Mode-enabled cables. The following summarizes this process specific to discovering Thunderbolt 3 cables for purposes of determining *USB4*-compatibility. Prior to performing these steps, the *USB PD* Discover Identity process will have already been used to establish if the cable is passive or active.

The following steps are used for discovering Thunderbolt 3 cables and the cable's capabilities using the *USB PD* Alternate Mode process.

1. DFP issues the Discover SVIDs command to the cable SOP'.
2. If the cable's Discover SVID response indicates 0x8087 (Intel/TBT3) as one of its SVIDs, then proceed to next step, otherwise the cable is not a Thunderbolt 3 cable (see Section F.2.4).
3. DFP issues the Discover Modes command with its SVID set to 0x8087 to the cable's SOP'.
4. If this discovery is part of the *USB4*-compatible passive cable discovery process, from the cable's Discover Modes VDO responses (see Section F.2.6), extract the value in the Cable Speed field to complete the process.
5. If this discovery is part of the *USB4*-compatible active cable discovery process, from the cable's Discover Modes VDO responses (see Section F.2.6), extract the value in the TBT_Rounded_Support field to complete the process. [Note: discovery and use of *USB4*-compatible TBT3 active cables is an optional feature that also would require use of *USB PD* Enter Mode command to enable the cable for *USB4* operation.]

5.4.3.3 USB4 Operational Entry

USB4 operational entry shall occur only after having established that the attached cable, if present, and the port partner are *USB4*-capable.

USB4 operational entry involves the use of the *USB PD* Enter_USB Message process between the DFP and both the attached *USB4*-compatible cable and the *USB4*-capable port partner – sending this message is order specific: SOP' first, SOP" second if present, and SOP third.

When using the *USB PD* Enter_USB Message for enabling *USB4* operation, the DFP shall indicate 010b (*USB4*) in the USB Mode field of the Enter_USB Data Object. The remaining fields shall be set appropriately by the DFP based on the capabilities of the DFP and attached cable.

5.4.4 USB4 Post-Entry Operation

5.4.4.1 During USB4 Operation

While in *USB4* operation, the following are allowed:

- The *USB PD* explicit power contract may be re-negotiated.
- Issue an *USB PD* Data_Reset command to change the mode of operation, e.g. from *USB4* to *USB 3.2* or an Alternate Mode.
- Enable Alternate Modes that do not reconfigure the port interface and operate in parallel with *USB4*.

5.4.4.2 Exiting USB4 Operation

The *USB PD* Data_Reset process causes USB data connections to be reset and Alternate Modes to be exited. This process does not change the existing power contract and data roles between the port partners. The Data_Reset process shall include the following steps:

- Issue a *USB PD* Data_Reset command to the SOP port partner to reset the data bus, reset the cable, and exit any Alternate Modes while preserving the power on VBUS.
- The tUSB4Timeout and tAMETimeout timers within the UFP shall be reset upon sending or receiving a *USB PD* Data_Reset command.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- Re-enter the *USB4* Discovery and Entry process (Section 5.4.3).

5.5 USB4 Hub Connection Requirements

USB4 hub behavior with regard to managing its DFP connections has *USB4*-specific dependencies on the connection status and capabilities of its single UFP. Additionally, hubs have *USB4*-specific responsibilities for communicating the capabilities of the *USB4* host to downstream-connected *USB4* hubs. This section provides both requirements and guidance for *USB4* hub port connection behavior.

5.5.1 USB4 Hub Port Initial Connection Requirements

The following requirements apply to all hub ports.

1. Run the USB Type-C Connection process,
2. Establish an initial *USB PD* explicit contract,
3. If desired, use PR_Swap to establish the preferred power role, and
4. Use DR_Swap to establish data role to be consistent with the port's position in the USB tree if needed.

5.5.2 USB4 Hub UFP and Host Capabilities Discovery

The *USB4* hub DFPs capabilities are ultimately based on the capabilities seen at its UFP (once it has established a connection to the host). If the *USB4* hub's UFP is connected to an upstream *USB4* hub, then the capabilities over the connection between the two hubs may not initially represent the capabilities all the way back to the host.

The following summarizes the general principles regarding how UFP and host capabilities impact DFP connections.

- The downstream connection to a device or hub that is attached to the *USB4* hub's DFP is based on the capabilities of the hub.
- Once the *USB4* hub's UFP has established a connection, the hub's capabilities are limited to the capabilities of that UFP connection.
- When the *USB4* hub's UFP connection indicates that a host is not present, once the hub is notified that a host becomes present, the hub will limit its capabilities as needed to match those of the host.
    - Any connections on the *USB4* hub's DFPs that existed prior to the host being present are adjusted to align with changes in capabilities if needed.
- Once a host becomes present in a *USB4* tree, all intermediary hubs will update their connections to align with the host capabilities as the host present status is propagated to the downstream connected *USB4* hubs.

The capabilities seen by the hub's UFP are based on one of the following:

- An *USB PD* Enter_USB message is received which indicates the USB operation (*USB4*, *USB 3.2* or *USB 2.0*) and associated characteristics supported (*USB4* PCIe-supported, *USB4* DP supported, etc.) by the upstream port partner.
- An *USB PD* Enter Mode command is received to start a supported Alternate Mode (Thunderbolt 3, DisplayPort).
- No *USB PD* Enter_USB message is received within the tUSB4Timeout or *USB PD* Enter Mode message is received within the tAMETimeout indicating only *USB 3.2* and *USB 2.0* are available.

If the *USB4* hub's UFP is connected to an upstream *USB4* hub, then the capabilities reported in the received *USB PD* Enter_USB message shall only be considered the host's capabilities if the Host

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Present bit is set. If the Host Present bit is reset, then the hub shall wait for a subsequent *USB PD* Enter_USB message to be received with the Host Present bit set. Once the Host Present bit is set, the capabilities as represented in the *USB PD* Enter_USB message can be used as the host's capabilities for the purpose of establishing final DFP connections.

If the *USB4* hub's UFP receives an *USB PD* Enter_USB message which indicates the USB operation as either *USB 3.2* or *USB 2.0*, the *USB4* hub shall not wait for the completion of the tUSB4Timeout before proceeding to establish its UFP and DFP connections following *USB 3.2* or *USB 2.0* hub requirements, respectively.

5.5.3 Hub DFP Connection Requirements

5.5.3.1 Speculative Connections

When a device is attached to the DFP of a *USB4* hub prior to the hub's UFP being connected and the host capabilities are known, the hub will speculatively connect to the attached device based on the following requirements.

- Use *USB PD* Discover ID and the *USB PD* Alternate Mode process to determine the full capabilities of the attached cable and device.
- Based on the discovered capabilities, establish the most capable connection based on the capabilities of the *USB4* hub's DFP in the following priority order:
    1. *USB4*
    2. Thunderbolt 3 Alt Mode
    3. DP Alt Mode
    4. *USB 3.2*
    5. *USB 2.0*
- Inhibit port status notifications and data paths upstream from the *USB4* hub's DFPs while waiting for the *USB4* hub's UFP connection to be established.

5.5.3.2 Operational Connections

Once the *USB4* hub's UFP connection is established and the host capabilities are determined (see Section 5.5.2), the hub shall evaluate each existing DFP connection based on the capabilities associated with the hub's UFP connection and perform one of the following actions.

- If the DFP connection properly aligns with the capabilities of the UFP connection, enable the status notifications and data path for that port.
- If the DFP connection does not properly align with the capabilities of the UFP connection, the DFP connection shall do one of the following:
    - If the UFP remains in *USB4* and the DFP connection is with a downstream *USB4* hub, send a revised *USB PD* Enter_USB message with the Host Present bit set.
    - If the UFP changed to *USB 3.2* or *USB 2.0* and the DFP connection is with a downstream *USB4* hub, the DFP shall be reset the connection using *USB PD* Data_Reset followed by sending a revised *USB PD* Enter_USB message indicating *USB 3.2* or *USB 2.0* and the Host Present bit set.
    - Otherwise, the DFP shall enter the ErrorRecovery state to reset the connection and establish a new connection that aligns with the hub's UFP capabilities.

5.5.4 Hub Ports Connection Behavior Flow Model

This section illustrates a number of connection flows that assume that the hub's DFP connection is established prior to the hub's UFP connection. In these cases, the host capabilities are unknown at the time that the hub's DFP is connecting with the attached device. Given this, the initial connection established by the hub's DFP is speculatively based only on the hub and device's capabilities and

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

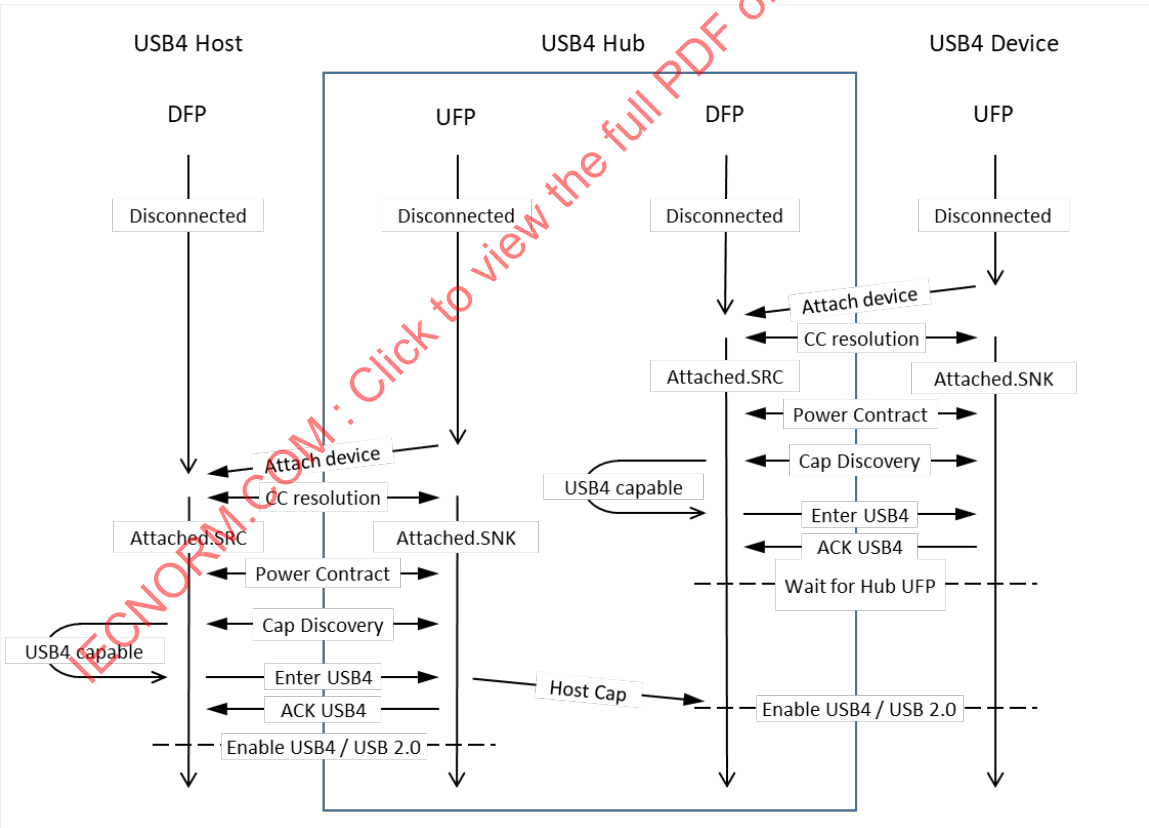
may have to be revised once the host capabilities are known if there is a functional mismatch. When the hub's UFP connection is fully established prior to devices appearing on the hub's DFP, the connection can be established with full knowledge of the host's capabilities – flows associated with this relationship are not illustrated.

For the illustrated flows in this section, the Source/Sink power roles remain as initially resolved by the CC connection state machine with no PR_Swap or DR_Swap activity.

All of the flows intend to minimize the total connection time for enabling the functionality of the device connected to the hub's DFP. This is accomplished by establishing the highest functional connection based on mutual capabilities between the hub and the device even as the hub's UFP capabilities are unknown or not ready for operation. If the speculatively established connection turns out to be valid once the hub's UFP capabilities are established, then the DFP's connection will be enabled as is. If the speculatively established connection turns out to be invalid, the DFP connection shall be reset and a connection that aligns with the hub's UFP capabilities shall be established.

Figure 5-2 Illustrates the connection flow model aligned across the combination of a *USB4* host, hub and device. The expected result is the successful enabling of end-to-end *USB4* operation.

Figure 5-2 USB4 Hub with USB4 Host and Device Connection Flow Alignment



In the illustrated flow, Cap Discovery includes all *USB PD* message exchanges needed between the DFP and its UFP port partner to discover the UFP's USB capabilities along with TBT3-compatibility and DP Alt Mode capabilities. For the *USB4* hub's DFP, Cap Discovery is done on a speculative basis whenever it does not already know of the capabilities of the host that will eventually be connected via the hub's UFP.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

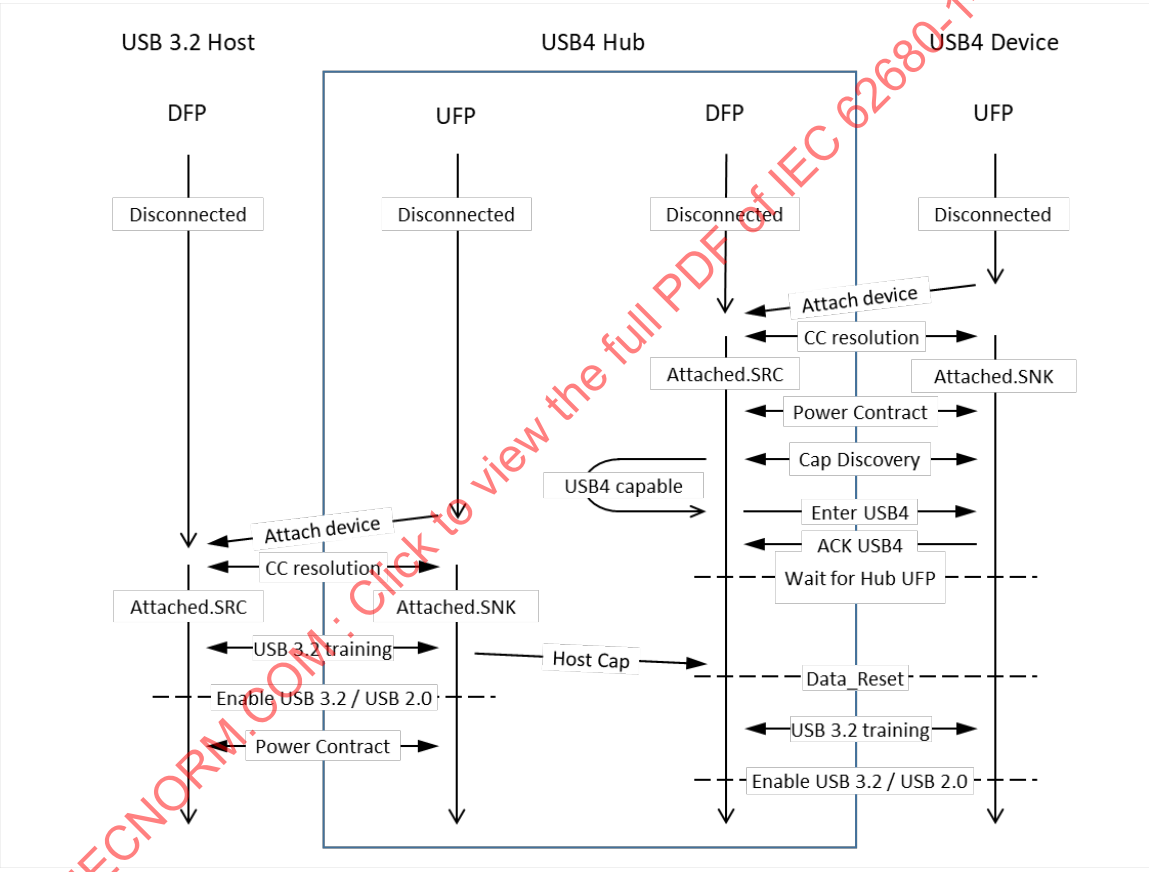
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Upon completion of Cap Discovery between the hub's DFP and its UFP port partner, the hub DFP will establish the highest functional connection and then wait for the hub UFP to complete its connection. Once the hub's UFP connection is established, the host capabilities available is used to make a determination of what should be done to complete the hub DFP connection to the UFP port partner.

Host Cap is based on the resulting configuration (e.g. data bus protocol and speed) of the *USB4* Hub's UFP and the Host capabilities information received in the *USB PD* Enter_USB Message from its DFP port partner (see Section 5.5.2). The *USB4* hub uses Host Cap to set the available capabilities of the hub's DFPs.

Figure 5-3 illustrates the connection flow model aligned across the combination of a *USB 3.2* host, a *USB4* hub and a *USB4* device.

Figure 5-3 USB4 Hub with USB 3.2 Host and USB4 Device Host Connection Flow Model



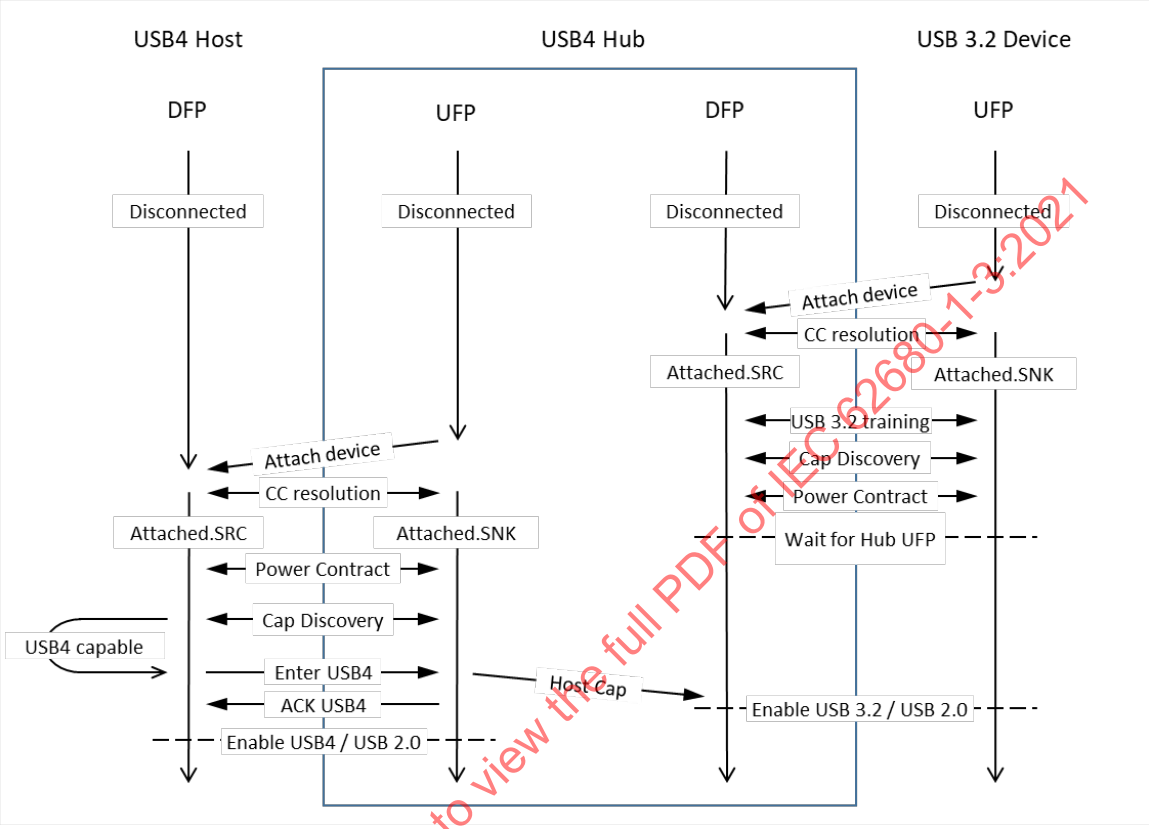
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

In the flow above, once connected to a *USB 3.2* host, the Host Cap reflects that the hub can only support *USB 3.2* on its DFPs and the speculatively established *USB4* connection on the DFP is exited with the *USB4* hub now operating as a traditional *USB 3.2* hub.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 5-4 illustrates the connection flow model aligned across the combination of a *USB4* hub with a *USB4* host and *USB 3.2* device.

Figure 5-4 USB4 Hub with USB4 Host and USB 3.2 Device Connection Flow Model



While *USB 3.2* devices won't necessarily respond to the Discover ID (SOP), the *USB4* hub's DFP will attempt to discover the capabilities of the attached device.

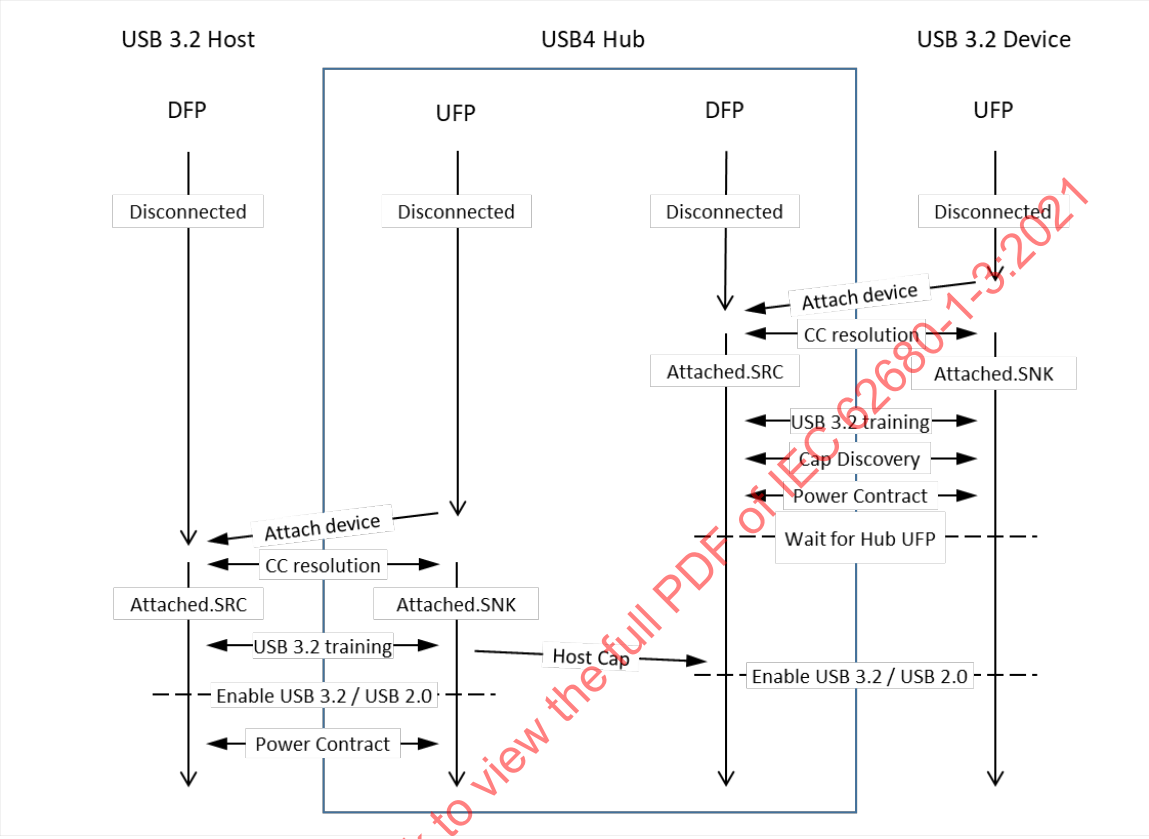
In the flow above, after the *USB4* connection of the hub's UFP is established, the DFP connection remains valid with the *USB 3.2* data path of the DFP being serviced by the *USB4* Enhanced SuperSpeed tunnel.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 5-5 illustrates the connection flow model aligned across the combination of a *USB4* hub with a *USB 3.2* host and device.

Figure 5-5 USB4 Hub with USB 3.2 Host and Device Connection Flow Model



While *USB 3.2* devices won't necessarily respond to the Discover ID (SOP), the *USB4* hub's DFP will attempt to discover the capabilities of the attached device.

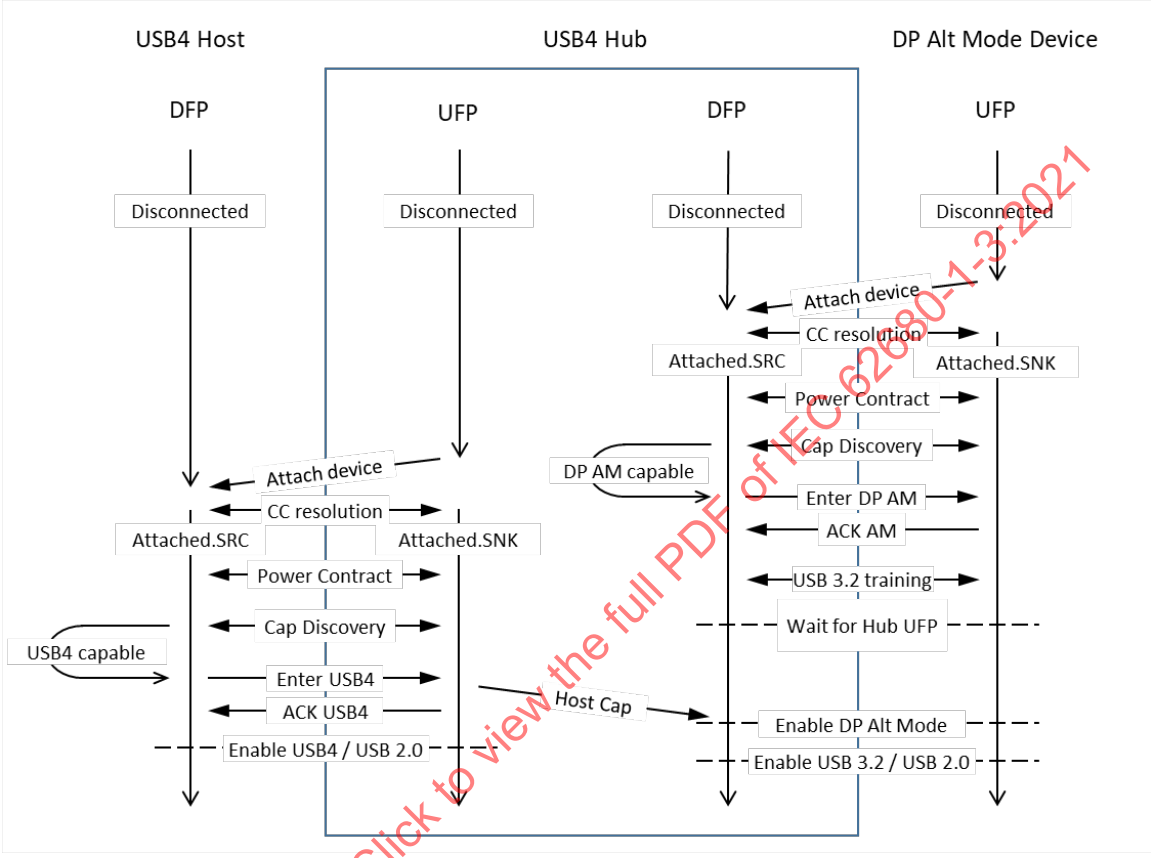
In the flow above, after the *USB 3.2* connection of the hub's UFP is established, the DFP connection remains valid with the *USB4* hub now operating as a traditional *USB 3.2* hub.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 5-6 illustrates the connection flow model aligned across the combination of a *USB4* host, *USB4* hub and a DP Alt Mode device (operating in Multi-function mode). In this case, the expected result is the enabling of the DP Alt Mode as bridged from *USB4* DisplayPort tunneling.

Figure 5-6 USB4 Hub with USB4 Host and DP Alt Mode Device Connection Flow Model



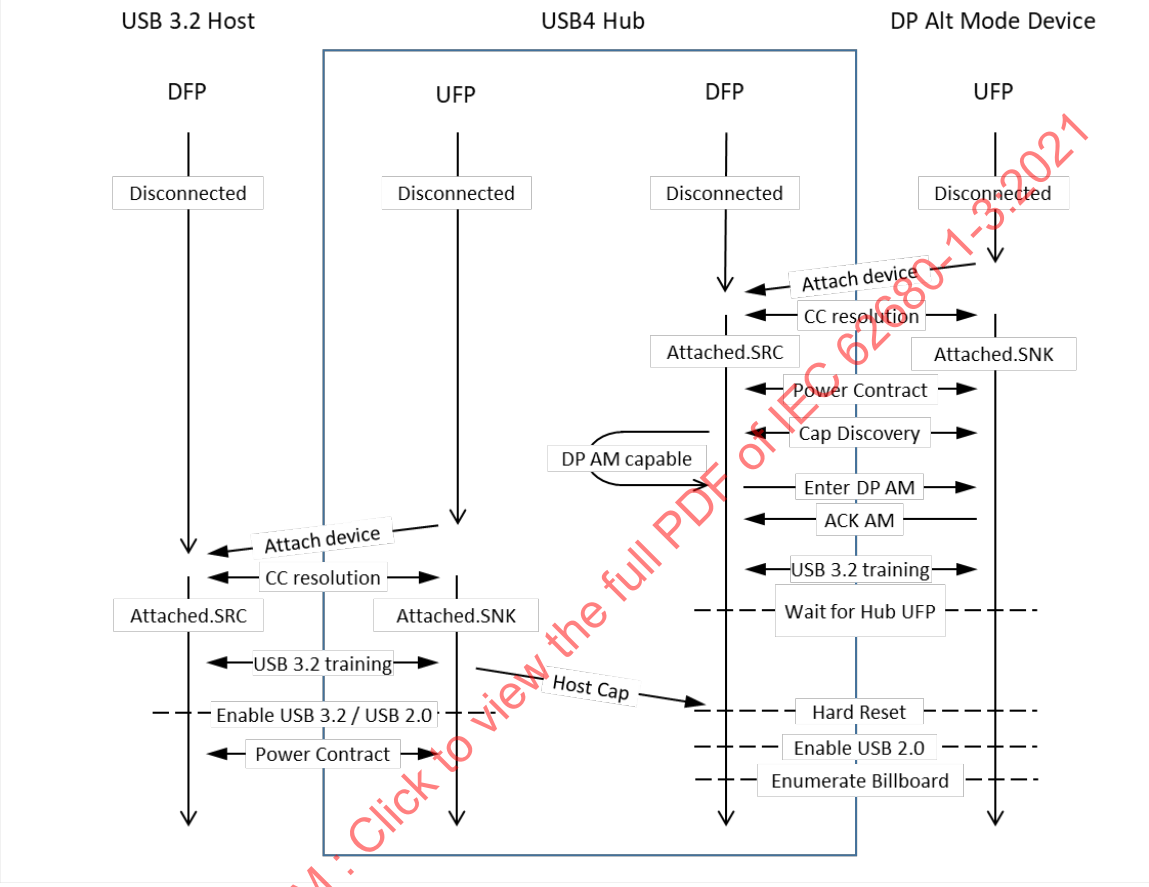
In the flow above, after the *USB4* connection of the hub's UFP is established, the DFP connection remains valid with the DisplayPort and *USB 3.2* data paths of the DFP being serviced by the *USB4* DisplayPort and Enhanced SuperSpeed tunnels.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 5-7 illustrates the connection flow model aligned across the combination of a *USB 3.2* host, a *USB4* hub and a DP Alt Mode device (operating in Multi-function mode). The expected result in this case is that the DP Alt Mode will not be enabled and a Billboard exposed by the device since the host doesn't support *USB4*.

Figure 5-7 USB4 Hub with USB 3.2 Host and DP Alt Mode Device Connection Flow Model



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

In the flow above, after the *USB 3.2* connection of the hub's UFP is established, the DFP connection is no longer valid with the *USB4* hub now operating as a traditional *USB 3.2* hub. The hub's DFP shall then reset the port which will lead to a *USB 2.0* connection and the exposure of the Billboard device.

5.5.5 Connecting to Downstream USB4 Hubs

When a *USB4* hub is attached on its DFP to the UFP of another *USB4* hub, the *USB4* hub shall use the Host Present bit of the *USB PD* Enter_USB message to inform the downstream hub if the *USB4* capabilities listed in the message reflects the host's capabilities or not. If an initial connection is made with the downstream hub with the Host Present bit reset in the *USB PD* Enter_USB message, the *USB4* hub shall subsequently send a revised *USB PD* Enter_USB message with the Host Present bit set after its UFP has been fully established (see Section 5.5.2).

5.5.6 Fallback Functional Requirements for USB4 Hubs

When a *USB4* hub is attached on its UFP to a non-*USB4* DFP, the *USB4* hub shall seamlessly fall back to functioning as and meeting the requirements for a *USB 3.2* hub.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

5.6 USB4 Device Connection Requirements

5.6.1 Fallback Mapping of USB4 Peripheral Functions to USB Device Class Types

USB4 peripheral devices provide functions based on data transferred over one or more of the protocol tunnels of *USB4*: Enhanced SuperSpeed USB, DisplayPort and PCI Express. For all peripheral functions that use the Enhanced SuperSpeed USB protocol tunnel, the mapping of those functions to USB device class specifications is clear but for those based on the other tunneled protocols, this mapping doesn't apply since those functions don't rely on USB device class drivers to operate.

Each function of a *USB4* device shall be mapped to an equivalent USB device class when possible. *USB4* devices that contain mapped USB device class functions shall support operation at *USB 3.2* or *USB 2.0* when connected to non-*USB4* hosts. This requirement is exempted for those functions that rely on DisplayPort or PCIe tunnels for *USB4* data transfer that don't reasonably map to an existing USB device class, e.g. a PCIe graphics adapter.

The performance of the function when mapped to a lower speed connection is expected to scale appropriately while still providing the functional equivalent of the primary capabilities of the peripheral function.

Table 5-2 lists USB Device Class types and the mapping requirements for *USB4* device peripheral functions as it relates to fallback when operating over *USB 3.2* or *USB 2.0*.

Table 5-2 Fallback Mapping USB4 Peripheral Functions to USB Device Class Types

Device Class Category	USB4 Peripheral Function Mapping	Comments
Audio	Required	
Video	Required	
Mass Storage	Required	
Comms/Networking	Required	
Printer	Required	
HID	Required	Only required when an equivently HID subclasss or report usage is defined.
Media Transfer Protocol	Required	
Smart Card	Required	
Still Image Capture	Required	
Monitor Device	Required	Only required in conjunction with providing associated display applications.

For all *USB4* peripheral functions based on DisplayPort and PCIe protocol tunneling that do not map to USB device class equivalents when operating over *USB 3.2* or *USB 2.0*, an appropriate USB Billboard Device Class shall be exposed to enable user notifications by the operating system of the host platform.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

5.7 Parameter Values

5.7.1 Timing Parameters

Table 5-3 provides the timeout requirement for a device that supports *USB4* to enable a *USB Billboard Device Class* interface when the device cannot connect as a *USB4* device during the discovery and entry process (Section 5.4).

Table 5-3 USB Billboard Device Class Availability Following USB4 Device Entry Failure

	Maximum	Description
tUSB4Timeout	1000 ms	The time between (1) a Sink attach or (2) the data connection is reestablished in the *USB PD* Data Reset process until the *USB Billboard Device Class* interface is exposed when *USB4* device entry is not successful.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6 Active Cables

Active cables shall minimally support *USB 3.2* Gen 2x1 and may support *USB 3.2* Gen 1x2 or Gen 2x2. As multi-lane *USB 3.2* and multi-lane *USB 3.2* repeaters become common, all active cables will be required to support two lanes. Active cables shall support *USB PD* eMarkers and may support Alternate Modes and advertise them as defined in Section 6.7.

Short active cables supporting lengths up to 5 meters are designed to 'just work' like passive cables with no discernable difference from the user's perspective.

Optically Isolated Active Cables (OIACs) support longer lengths up to 50 meters and provide electrical isolation between the two ends of the cable. OIACs are targeted for Industrial, Machine Vision, Remote Sensor, Pro Video, and Medical applications. OIACs do not 'just work' unlike short active cables. Long OIACs may not function correctly with Hosts, Devices, and Hubs that are not compliant to the *USB 3.2* Specification. Table 6-1 shows the limitations of OIACs with short active cables. Legacy USB3 devices may require using an adapter between the device and the OIAC. This adapter is defined in Section 6.6.4.3.1.

Since no power runs through an OIAC, they can only be used to connect a Source DRD to a Source DRD or a Source DRD to a DFP. *USB PD* Revision 3 must be supported on both port partners for an OIAC to function. Each cable plug of an OIAC is locally powered from VCONN and/or optionally from VBUS. OIACs shall function for *USB 3.2* when VCONN only is provided and may optionally use VBUS if provided. OIACs may require VBUS for Alternate Mode support. OIACs have no functionality when either cable plug is connected to a Sink/UFP only device (Sink/UFP devices are unable to provide power to the cable plug). OIACs require at least one end of the cable plug to be connected to a DRD (DRP and capable of accepting a DR_Swap to USB Device Role).

If a connection to a *USB 2.0* Device is required at the end of an OIAC, an adapter with a *USB 3.2* to *USB 2.0* transaction translator and VBUS/VCONN Source may be connected at the Device side of the cable to convert the *USB 3.2* signals to *USB 2.0* and provide power to the *USB 2.0* Device and the OIAC.

If an OIAC supports Alternate Modes that require the use of SBUs, the SBUs shall be optically isolated.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 6-1 Comparison of Active Cables

	Short Active Cable	Optically Isolated Active Cable
USB 3.2 Support	*USB 3.2* Repeater	*USB 3.2* Repeater
USB 2.0 Support	Passive Connection	No end-to-end electrical connection. An OIAC Legacy Adapter (Section 6.6.4.3.1) required for *USB 2.0* support.
SBU Support	Passive Connection	Optional normative support in Alternate Modes only
USB PD Communication	All messages supported	Only a subset of messages is supported.
Bus Powered Devices	Supported	Not supported unless a VBUS/VCONN Source is connected between OIAC and Bus Powered Device. An OIAC Legacy Adapter (Section 6.6.4.3.1) is an example of a VBUS/VCONN Source.
End-to-End Electrical Connection	Yes	No
End-to-End Ground and VBUS Connections	Yes	No

Table 6-2 Summary of Active Cable Features

Cable Type	Length	USB PD	VBUS	VCONN Wiring	CC	*USB 2.0*	*USB 3.2* (All required)	SBU
Short	< 5 m	SOP' Required (SOP" Optional)	3 A or 5 A	Same as passive cable	Same as passive cable	Same as passive cable	Gen 1x1 Gen 2x1 Gen 1x2 Gen 2x2	Passive
Optically Isolated	*USB 3.2* Latency[1]	SOP' and SOP" Required	0 A	Local cable plug only	Optical	Not Allowed	Gen 1x1 Gen 2x1 Gen 1x2 Gen 2x2	Optional normative support in Alternate Modes only

Note 1: Length is set by the latency requirement in *USB 3.2*.

All active cables, regardless of length, shall be compliant with this specification, the *USB 3.2* including Appendix E, and the *USB 3.2* Active Cable CTS.

6.1 USB Type-C State Machine

OIAC cable plugs behave as Sinks on an initial cable connection. OIACs use *USB PD* Revision 3 to configure one plug as the DFP and one as the UFP as described in Section 6.2.1.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

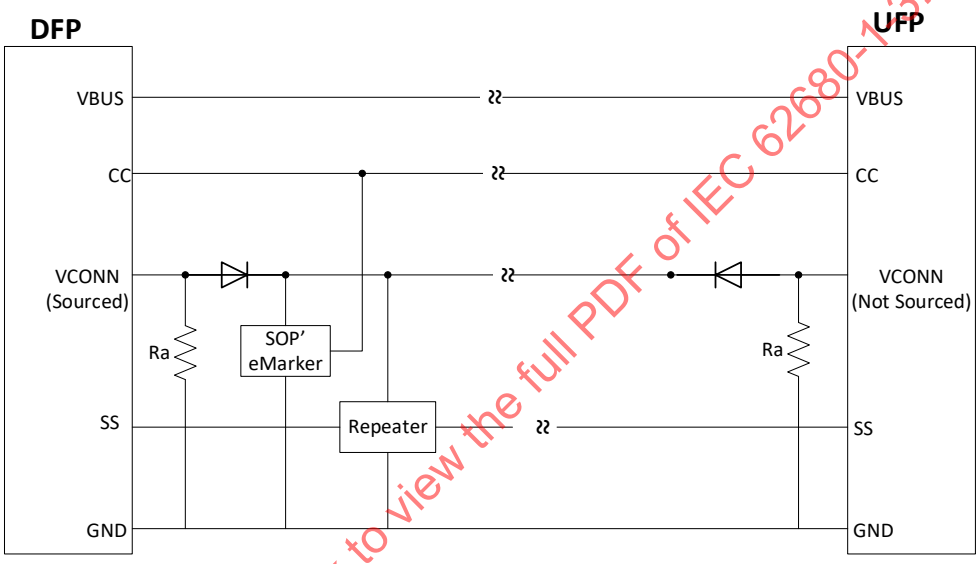
6.2 USB PD Requirements

This specification uses the USB Type-C® terminology for connection states and not the *USB PD* specification terminology.

Active cables shall be electronically marked and wired per Figure 6-1, Figure 6-2, or Figure 6-3.

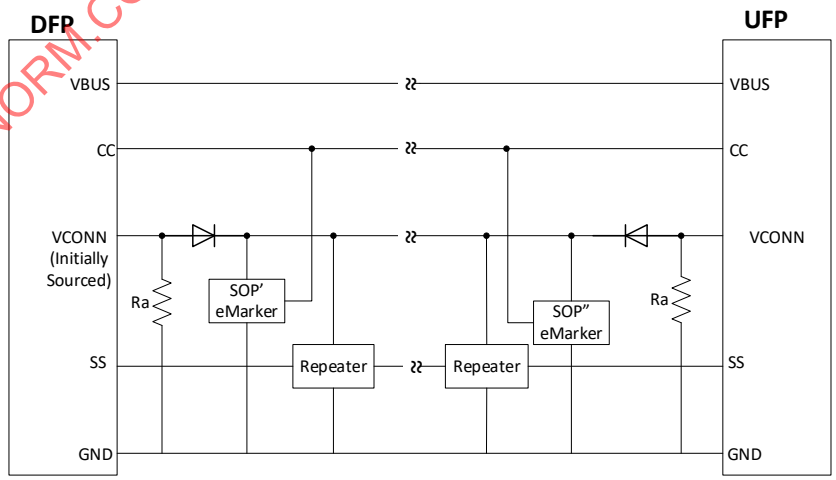
- The temperature sensor shall be co-located with the repeater for accurate thermal reporting.
- An active cable that contains two repeaters shall support both SOP' and SOP".
- An active cable that only contains one repeater internal to the active able (not in the cable plugs) shall implement SOP' and is not required to implement SOP".

Figure 6-1 Electronically Marked Short Active Cable with SOP' Only



Short active cables may optionally be electronically marked on both ends of the cable as illustrated in Figure 6-2.

Figure 6-2 Electronically Marked Short Active Cable with SOP' and SOP"

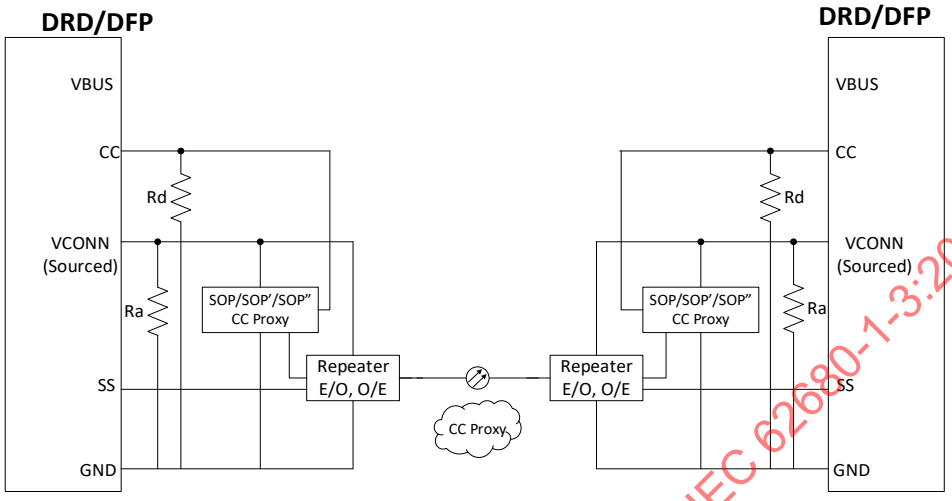


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Optically isolated active cables shall be electronically marked on both ends of the cable as illustrated in Figure 6-3

Figure 6-3 Electronically Marked Optically Isolated Active Cable



6.2.1 Active Cable USB PD Requirements

Active cables shall support *USB PD* Revision 3, Version 1.2 or later. Active cables shall support *USB PD* Structured VDMs.

6.2.1.1 SOP' and SOP" Requirements

Active cables shall respond to ***Discover_Identity*** and ***Get_Status*** on SOP'. When the SOP'' Controller Present bit is set in the Active Cable VDO, they shall respond ***Get_Status*** on SOP'' as well.

OIACs have a different definition for SOP". SOP" is always the far-end cable plug relative to the message initiator.

6.2.1.2 Discovering Cable Characteristics

The *USB PD* ***Discover_Identity*** Command is used to discover the characteristics of the active cable. This command shall only be sent to SOP'. All active cables shall respond to the ***Discover_Identity*** Command with Active Cable VDOs that returns information about the cable. Note the active cable shall respond using either *USB PD* Revision 2 or *USB PD* Revision 3 following the *USB PD* Interoperability rules.

6.2.1.3 Cable Status

The *USB PD* ***Get_Status*** Command is used to discover the current state of the active cable. Cable status shall be reported on SOP' and shall also be reported on SOP" when the SOP'' Controller Presence bit is set in the Active Cable VDO.

6.2.2 USB PD Messages for OIAC

The following sections outline the *USB PD* Messages for an OIAC.

6.2.2.1 USB PD Message Handling on Initial Connection

The OIAC shall not forward *USB PD* messages until after determining the DFP to UFP Connection in the Active State and the Active Cable is configured (Phase 3 complete). The OIAC shall process *USB PD* messages locally in the USB Type-C plug as defined in Table 6-3 on an initial connection before the disconnect/reconnect and data role establishment.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 6-3 OIAC USB PD Message Behavior on Initial Connection

Message Type	Local Cable Plug SOP	Local Cable Plug SOP'/SOP"	Local Cable Plug SOP	Local Cable Plug SOP'	Local Cable Plug SOP"
Control Messages	**Transmitted Message**		**Received Message**		
Accept	Normative	Normative	Normative	Ignore	Ignore
DR_Swap	Normative	Not Allowed	Wait	Ignore	Ignore
FR_Swap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Reject	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Country_Codes	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Get_PPS_Status	Not Supported	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Sink_Cap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Sink_Cap_Extended	Not Supported	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Source_Cap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Source_Cap_Extended	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Status	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Normative	Ignore
GoodCRC	Normative	Normative	Normative	Normative	Ignore
GotoMin	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Not_Supported	Normative	Normative	Normative	Normative	Normative
Ping	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Ignore	Ignore	Ignore
PR_Swap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
PS_RDY	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore	Ignore
Reject	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore	Ignore
Soft_Reset	Normative	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore	Ignore
Vconn_Swap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Wait	Normative	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore	Ignore
Data Messages	**Transmitted Message**		**Received Message**		
Source_Capabilities	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore	Ignore
Request	Normative	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Country_Info	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Not Supported	Not Supported
BIST	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Normative	Ignore
Sink_Capabilities	Normative	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Battery_Status	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Alert	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Ignore	Ignore	Ignore

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 6-3 OIAC USB PD Message Behavior on Initial Connection, cont.

Message Type	Local Cable Plug SOP	Local Cable Plug SOP'/SOP"	Local Cable Plug SOP	Local Cable Plug SOP'	Local Cable Plug SOP"
Extended Messages	**Transmitted Message**		**Received Message**		
Battery_Capabilities	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Country_Codes	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Country_Info	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Firmware_Update_Request	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Firmware_Update_Response	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Battery_Cap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Battery_Status	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Get_Manufacturer_Info	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Manufacturer_Info	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
PPS_Status	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Security_Response	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Security_Request	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Sink_Capabilities_Extended	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Source_Capabilities_Extended	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Status	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore	Ignore
Vendor Defined Messages	**Transmitted Message**		**Received Message**		
Discover Identity	Normative	Not Allowed	NAK	Normative	NAK
Discover SVIDs	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	NAK	Conditional Normative/ NAK	NAK
Discover Modes	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	NAK	Conditional Normative/ NAK	NAK
Enter Mode	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	NAK	NAK	NAK
Exit Mode	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	NAK	NAK	NAK
Attention	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Ignore	NAK	NAK

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.2.2.2 USB PD Message Handling in the Active State

There are some *USB PD* SOP and SOP" messages that invalid in an OIAC, therefore the next two sections explicitly define all *USB PD* messages that do not traverse the cable either because the message is targeted to SOP' or are invalid and all *USB PD* messages that do traverse the cable to SOP" and SOP.

6.2.2.2.1 USB PD Messages Which Do Not Traverse the Cable in the Active State

The *USB PD* messages which do not traverse the OIAC when Active are defined in Table 6-4. Section 6.2.2.2.2 describes the messages which traverse the OIAC in Active.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 6-4 OIAC USB PD Messages Which Do Not Traverse in Active State

Message Type	Cable Plug SOP	Cable Plug SOP'/SOP"	Cable Plug SOP	Cable Plug SOP'/SOP"
Control Messages	**Transmitted Message**		**Received Message**	
Accept	Normative	Normative	Normative	Ignore[1]
FR_Swap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Reject	Ignore[1]
Get_PPS_Status	Not Supported	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]
Get_Sink_Cap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Normative[3]	Ignore[1]
Get_Sink_Cap_Extended	Not Supported	Not Allowed	Normative[3]	Ignore[1]
Get_Source_Cap	Normative	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]
Get_Source_Cap_Extended	Normative	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]
GoodCRC	Normative	Normative	Normative	Normative[2]/ Ignore[1]
GotoMin	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Ignore	Ignore[1]
Ping	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Ignore	Ignore[1]
PR_Swap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]
PS_RDY	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore[1]
Reject	Normative	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore[1]
Soft_Reset	Normative	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore[1]
Vconn_Swap	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]
Wait	Normative[4]	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore[1]
Data Messages	**Transmitted Message**		**Received Message**	
Source_Capabilities	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Normative	Ignore[1]
Request	Normative	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]
BIST	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Normative[2]/ Ignore[1]
Sink_Capabilities	Normative	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]
Extended Messages	**Transmitted Message**		**Received Message**	
PPS_Status	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]
Sink_Capabilities_Extended	Normative	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]
Source_Capabilities_Extended	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Supported	Ignore[1]

Note:
1. SOP" message may be dropped and not forwarded across the cable.
2. Normative for SOP' and Ignore for SOP".
3. See Section 6.4.2.
4. See Section 6.2.2.5.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.2.2.2.2 USB PD Messages Which Do Traverse the Cable in the Active State

All *USB PD* SOP messages defined in Table 6-5 are forwarded across the cable on SOP. The messages are sent by the Initiator, forwarded optically through the cable, and then driven on CC from the far side cable plug to the Receiver.

The timing of the message forwarding is defined in Table 6-6. The GoodCRC is generated locally to the cable plug and returned within tTransmit on a valid Message. The OIAC shall be able to handle messages received with a minimum spacing of tInterFrameGap.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

The message Initiator expects a response within tSenderResponse and will perform error recovery if no response is received within this time unless the message is a Firmware_Update_Request/Response or a Security_Request/Response. The message Receiver responds within tReceiverResponse unless there is an error. The OIAC shall decide to respond locally or forward the message, send the message across the fiber, and drive the message on the far side plug CC pin within tForward as shown in Figure 6-4 unless the message is Firmware_Update_Request/Response or a Security_Request/Response. The *USB PD* handler shall forward the messages addressed to SOP defined in Table 6-4. The *USB PD* Handler shall only forward to the far-end plug any message addressed to SOP" which are defined below:

- Firmware_Update_Request, Firmware_Update_Response
- Security_Request, Security_Response
- Status
- Enter Mode, Exit Mode, Attention (if the Alternate Modes are supported by the OIAC)

The OIAC shall not forward *USB PD* messages until it completes Phase 3. The cable plug shall send no response if a GoodCRC is not received from the Responder.

Some implementations may implement local copies of the SOP" information on the local cable plug and use an internal mechanism to send/receive responses.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 6-5 OIAC USB PD Messages Addressed to SOP Which Traverse the OIAC in the Active State

Message Type	SOP
Control Messages	**Forward Message**
DR_Swap	Normative
Get_Country_Codes	Normative
Get_Status	Normative
Not_Supported	Normative
Wait	Normative
Data Messages	**Forward Message**
Get_Country_Info	Normative
Battery_Status	Normative
Alert	Normative
Extended Messages	**Forward Message**
Battery_Capabilities	Normative
Country_Codes	Normative
Country_Info	Normative
Firmware_Update_Request	Normative
Firmware_Update_Response	Normative
Get_Battery_Cap	Normative
Get_Battery_Status	Normative
Get_Manufacturer_Info	Normative
Manufacturer_Info	Normative
Security_Request	Normative
Security_Response	Normative
Status	Normative
Vendor Defined Messages	**Forward Message**
Discover Identity	Normative
Discover SVIDs	Normative
Discover Modes	Normative
Enter Mode	Normative
Exit Mode	Normative
Attention	Normative

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-4 OIAC USB PD Message Forwarding

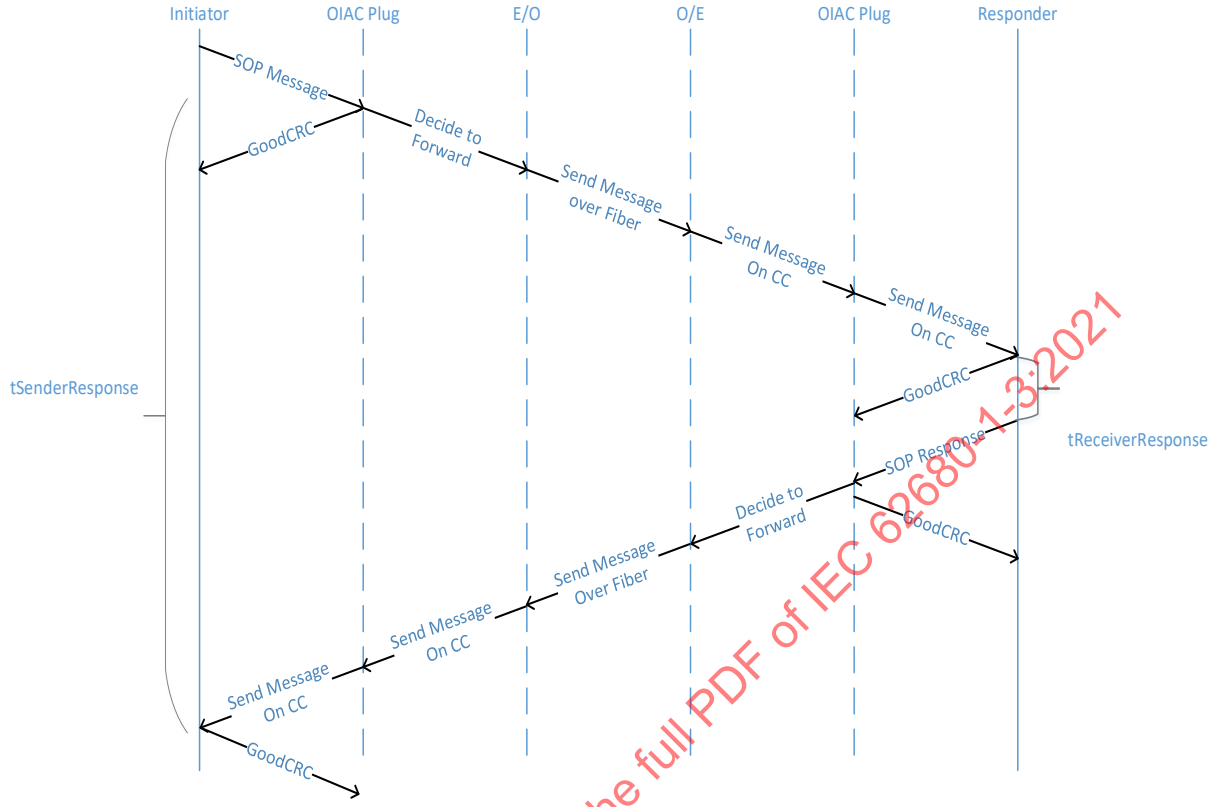


Table 6-6 OIAC USB PD Message Timing

Timer	Value (Min)	Value (Max)	Units	Reference
tDRSwapWait	100		ms	Time to wait if WAIT received before sending another DR_Swap. Defined in the *USB PD* Specification.
tForward		4	ms	Time to forward SOP Message one direction in OIAC.
tTransmit		195	µs	Time to send the GoodCRC. Defined in the *USB PD* Specification.
tInterFrameGap	25		µs	Time from the end of last bit of a Frame until the start of the first bit of the next Preamble. Defined in the *USB PD* Specification.
tReceiverResponse		15	ms	Time for SOP Receiver to respond. Defined in the *USB PD* Specification.
tSenderResponse	24	30	ms	Time for SOP Initiator to receive response. Defined in the *USB PD* Specification.
tBootupCRCHoldoff		50	ms	Hold off on GoodCRC until ready to respond with Operational RDO in Phase 3.

Note: The *USB PD* specification revision shall take precedence over this table if any discrepancies exist.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.2.2.3 USB PD Reset Handling

The *USB PD* Reset handling by OIAC is defined in Table 6-7.

The OIAC shall:

1. Detect the Hard Reset ordered set
2. Forward it to the remote plug and remote port
3. Reset its state machine.

Table 6-7 OIAC SOP Messages Which Terminate at the Cable Plug

Ordered Sets	Note
Hard Reset	Resets port partners at each end of the cable and the cable itself
Cable Reset	OIAC shall ignore a Cable reset

A Hard Reset signal can occur at any time during normal operation of the cable and also during the cable initialization. This signal will take precedent over the initialization state machine and immediately forward the Hard Reset Message to the remote plug, using an internal cable message.

6.2.2.4 Internal Cable Messages

All SOP" and SOP messages shall be forwarded or terminated as defined in Section 6.2.2 and will not be further described in this section.

The messages defined in this section provide informative guidance on internal messages for OIACs. The actual definition and implementation of each message is left to the implementer.

In this section and Section 6.3, there is a defined Master/Slave Plug for *USB PD* communication at time of manufacture. These designations are completely internal to the cable, but are used to simplify the cable initialization and internal messaging.

6.2.2.4.1 MSG_Keep_Alive

A low duty cycle message that is meant to inform the remote cable plug that the local cable plug is still operational.

A simple example is that the only the master plug will send MSG_Keep_Alive and the slave must respond with MSG_Keep_Alive_ACK. Each end will have its own timeout for MSG_Keep_Alive and MSG_Keep_Alive_ACK.

6.2.2.4.2 MSG_Keep_Alive_ACK

Acknowledgement message to the MSG_Keep_Alive.

A simple example is that the only the master plug will send MSG_Keep_Alive and the slave must respond with MSG_Keep_Alive_ACK. Each end will have its own timeout for MSG_Keep_Alive and MSG_Keep_Alive_ACK.

6.2.2.4.3 MSG_Port_Capabilities

This message contains all relevant local port capabilities including but not limited to:

- Chunked/Unchunked capability
- DRD/DFP/UFP capabilities

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.2.2.4.4 MSG_Cable_Config

This message contains the final cable configuration based on known system capabilities.

It will contain both relevant ports' capabilities and the final DFP/UFP roles for the system.

This message will also serve as the signal in Phase 2 for the cable plug to start the reboot process.

6.2.2.4.5 MSG_Release_Remote_SourceCap_GoodCRC

This is a synchronization message to attempt to bring up both ports at the same time.

It is used in Phase 3 and is the signal to release the GoodCRC message to the Source Capabilities message from the attached port. At the beginning of Phase 3, after each plug has been rebooted, and depending on the final DFP/UFP role, each plug should wait for MSG_Release_Remote_SourceCap_GoodCRC before it is allowed to release a GoodCRC in response to a Source_Capabilities message from the port.

6.2.2.4.6 MSG_DR_Swap_Init

Initial DR_Swap sent by the Master Plug to Slave plug to perform a DR_Swap.

6.2.2.4.7 MSG_DR_Swap_Reject

This is message from the slave plug to report that the initial DR_Swap was rejected by its attached port.

This is needed by the master plug to attempt to re-configure the cable such that the slave port can remain a DFP. This is part of the DR_Swap test in Phase 1, shown in the state diagram transition from M3 to M4 (or M3 to M5). It is also possible that this may be needed in Phase 3, if the Slave port rejects the DR_Swap.

6.2.2.4.8 MSG_DR_Swap_Accept

This is message from the slave plug to report that the initial DR_Swap was accepted by its attached port.

This is needed by the master plug to continue (M3 → M6 transition) in Phase 1 in the cable initialization.

6.2.2.4.9 MSG_Force_Detach

This message is to request the remote plug to disconnect from its attached port. The disconnect method can be done by raising the voltage on the CC line to above vRd-Connect or removing Rd.

This will cause the remote port to remove VCONN from the remote plug all the circuitry should be powered down, therefore resetting any action taken by the plug on the CC line to cause the disconnect.

6.2.2.4.10 MSG_Hard_Reset

This message is to forward a Hard_Reset signal to the remote plug and port.

An internal Hard Reset message should be responded to with an Acknowledgement.

6.2.2.4.11 MSG_Acknowledgement

This message is to acknowledge that a message was received.

This message has been explicitly defined in a few specific cases but can be used more broadly.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

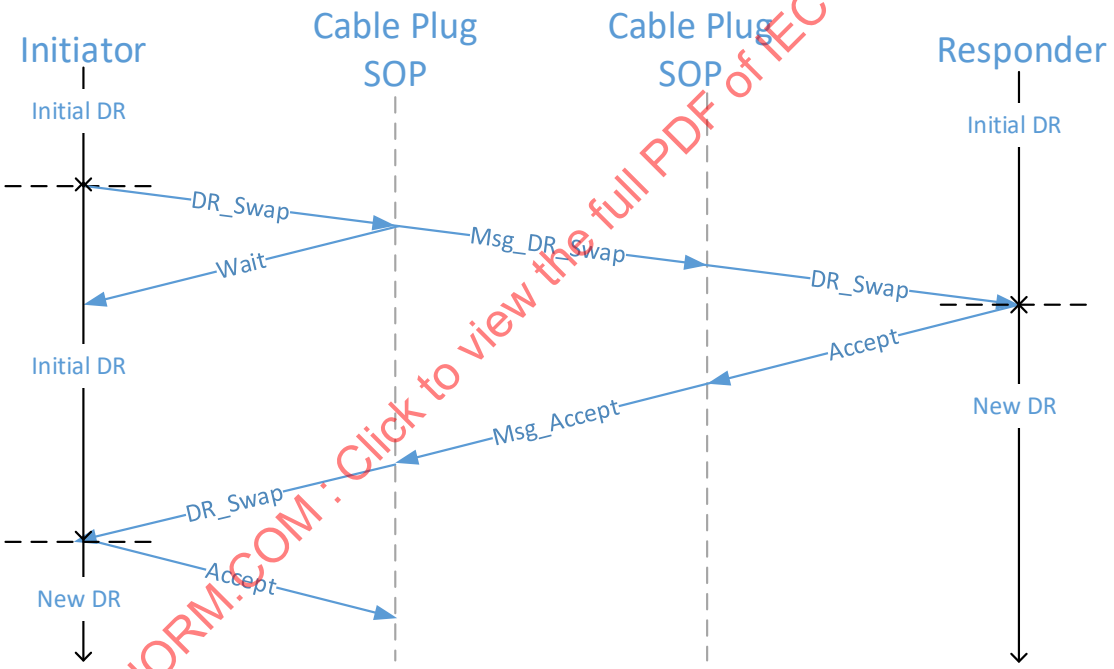
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.2.2.5 Data Role Swap in Active State

OIACs shall support Data Role Swaps on SOP. Each OIAC plug discovers its plug port partner and determines if it is capable of a Data Role Swap during the initialization process described in Section 6.3. OIAC cable plugs generate internal messages to communicate the DR_Swap, Accept, Reject, and Wait to the far side of the cable.

- The flow of a successful DR_Swap is shown in Figure 6-5.
- The flow of a Responder rejecting a DR_Swap is shown in Figure 6-6.
- The flow of a Responder issuing a Wait to a DR_Swap is shown in Figure 6-7. Note: The *USB PD* Wait and Retry timers shall follow all timing requirements in *USB PD*.
- The flow of an Initiator rejecting a cable plug DR_Swap due to an Accept from the Responder is shown in Figure 6-8.
- The flow of an Initiator issuing a Wait to a cable plug DR_Swap due to an Accept from the Responder is shown in Figure 6-9. Note: This does not follow the *USB PD* Wait timing, because a Hard Reset is initiated

Figure 6-5 OIAC Successful Data Role Swap



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-6 OIAC Rejected Data Role Swap

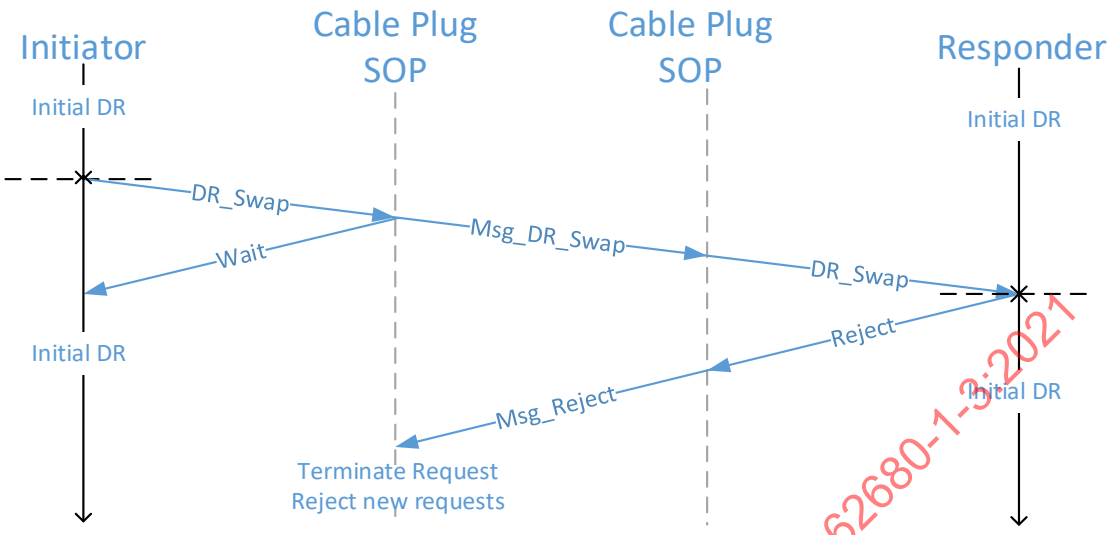
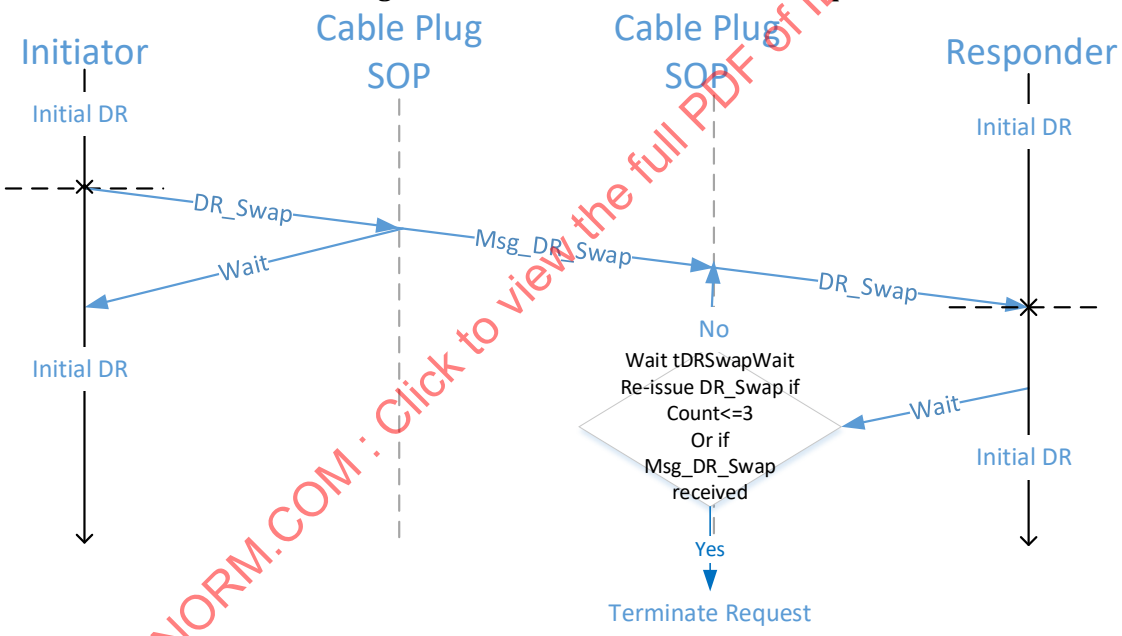


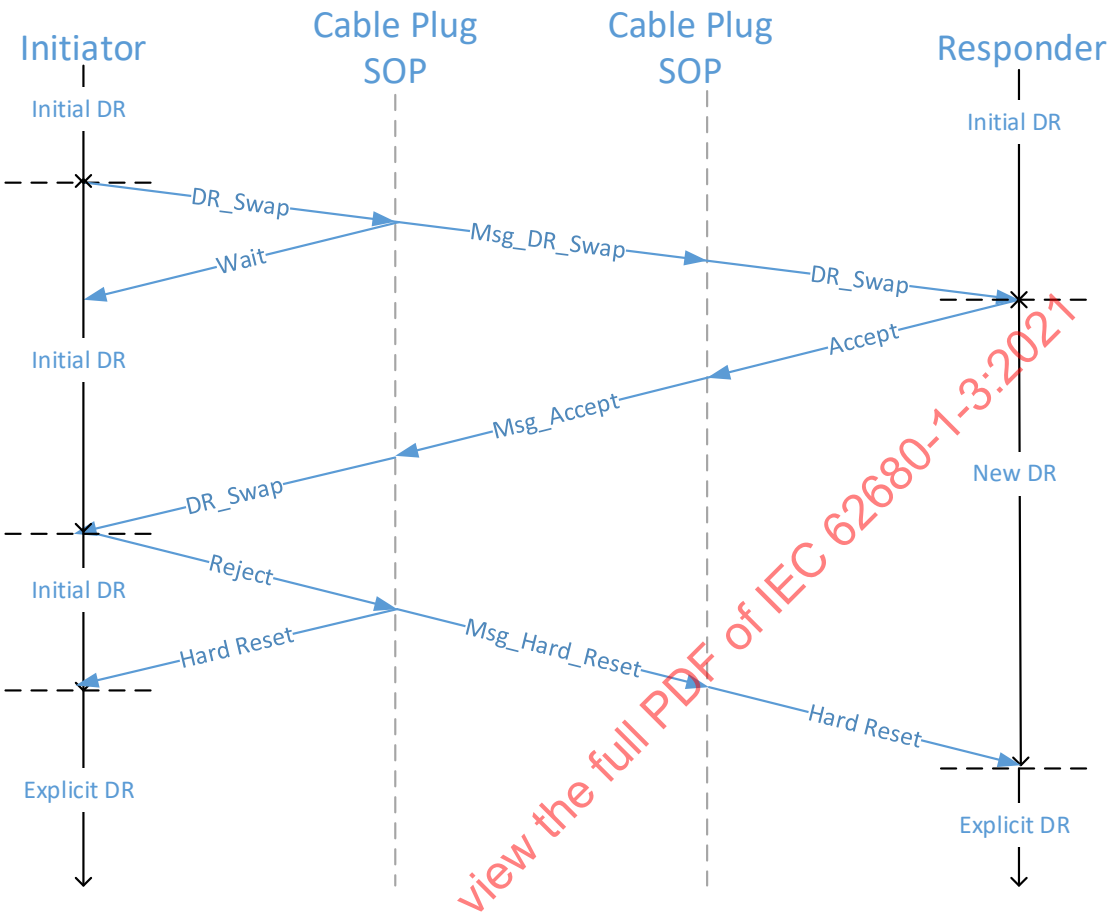
Figure 6-7 OIAC Wait Data Role Swap



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

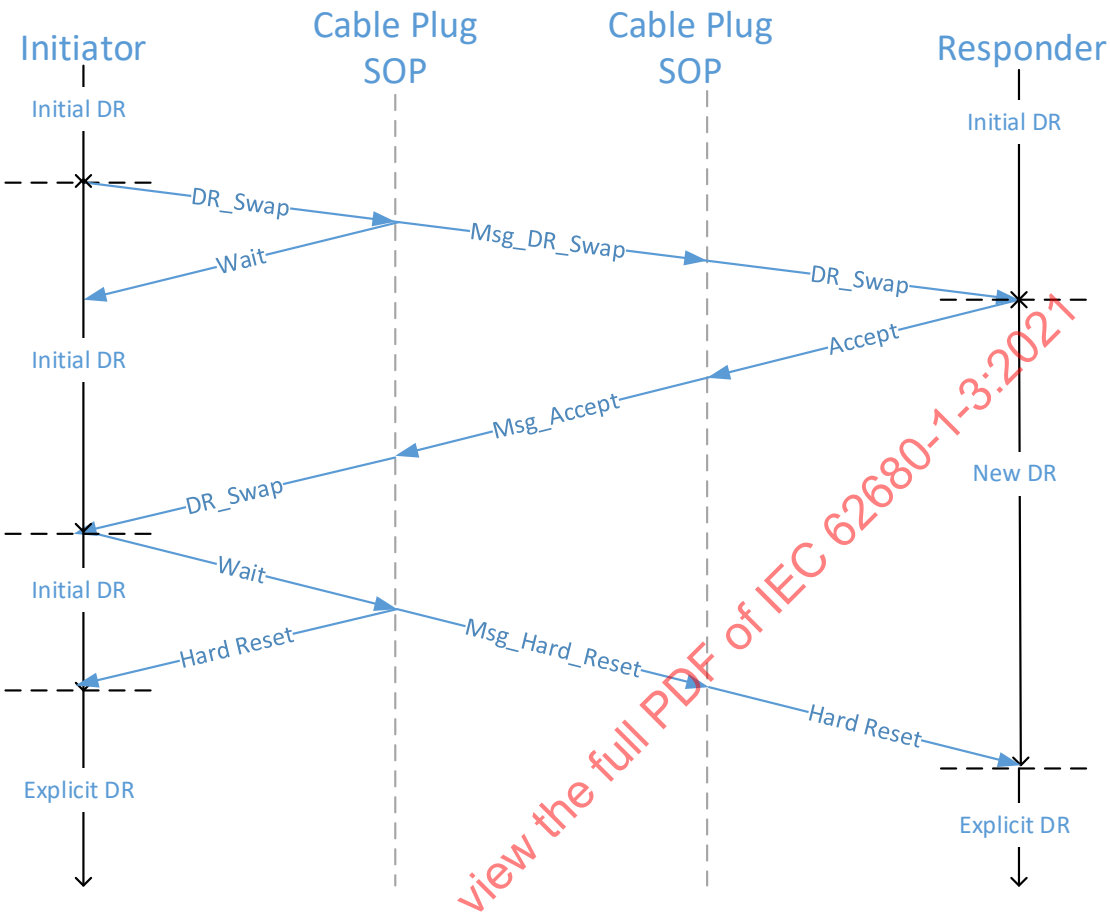
Figure 6-8 OIAC Initiator Reject Data Role Swap



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-9 OIAC Initiator Wait Data Role Swap



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.2.3 Short Active Cable Behaviors in Response to Power Delivery Events

Each cable plug of the short active cable shall be capable of communicating on SOP' and SOP" if reported in the Discover_Identity Command.

6.2.3.1 Data Role Swap

Short active cables are transparent to the *USB PD* Data Role swap.

6.2.3.2 Power Role Swap

Short active cables shall maintain *USB 3.2* signaling during a *USB PD* Power Role swap. The source of VCONN is not affected by a Power Role Swap.

6.2.3.3 VCONN Swap

Short active cables shall maintain *USB 3.2* signaling during a *USB PD* VCONN swap. During a VCONN Swap, the original VCONN Source continues to supply VCONN for some time after the new VCONN Source begins to supply VCONN. This ensures that VCONN is never dropped.

6.2.3.4 Fast Role Swap

Short active cables will drop *USB 3.2* signaling as a side-effect of a Fast Role Swap if VCONN is not maintained during the Fast Role Swap.

6.3 OIAC Connection Flow and State Diagrams

This section defines the connection state diagrams for the OIAC.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

OIAC plug defined at time of manufacture as either a Master or Slave for *USB PD* communication. This in no way indicates the plug has more or less capability, rather it allows for a consistent behavior when making the initial end to end connection.

The OIAC communicates using *USB PD* with its plug partners to determine the partner capabilities. The OIAC performs a series of connect/disconnects to establish the correct UFP/DFP data role for the cable plug. The possible combinations for Master Port, Slave Port, and cable plugs is defined in Table 6-8.

The connection and establishment of data roles is performed in three phases.

Table 6-8 Port and Plug Capabilities

Host/Device Port Capabilities	Cable Configuration		Host/Device Port Capabilities
	Master Plug Role	Slave Plug Role	
DRD	DFP	UFP	DRD
DFP	UFP	DFP	DRD
DRD	DFP	UFP	DFP
DFP	Billboard		DFP
Any	Billboard if possible		UFP
UFP	Billboard if possible		Any

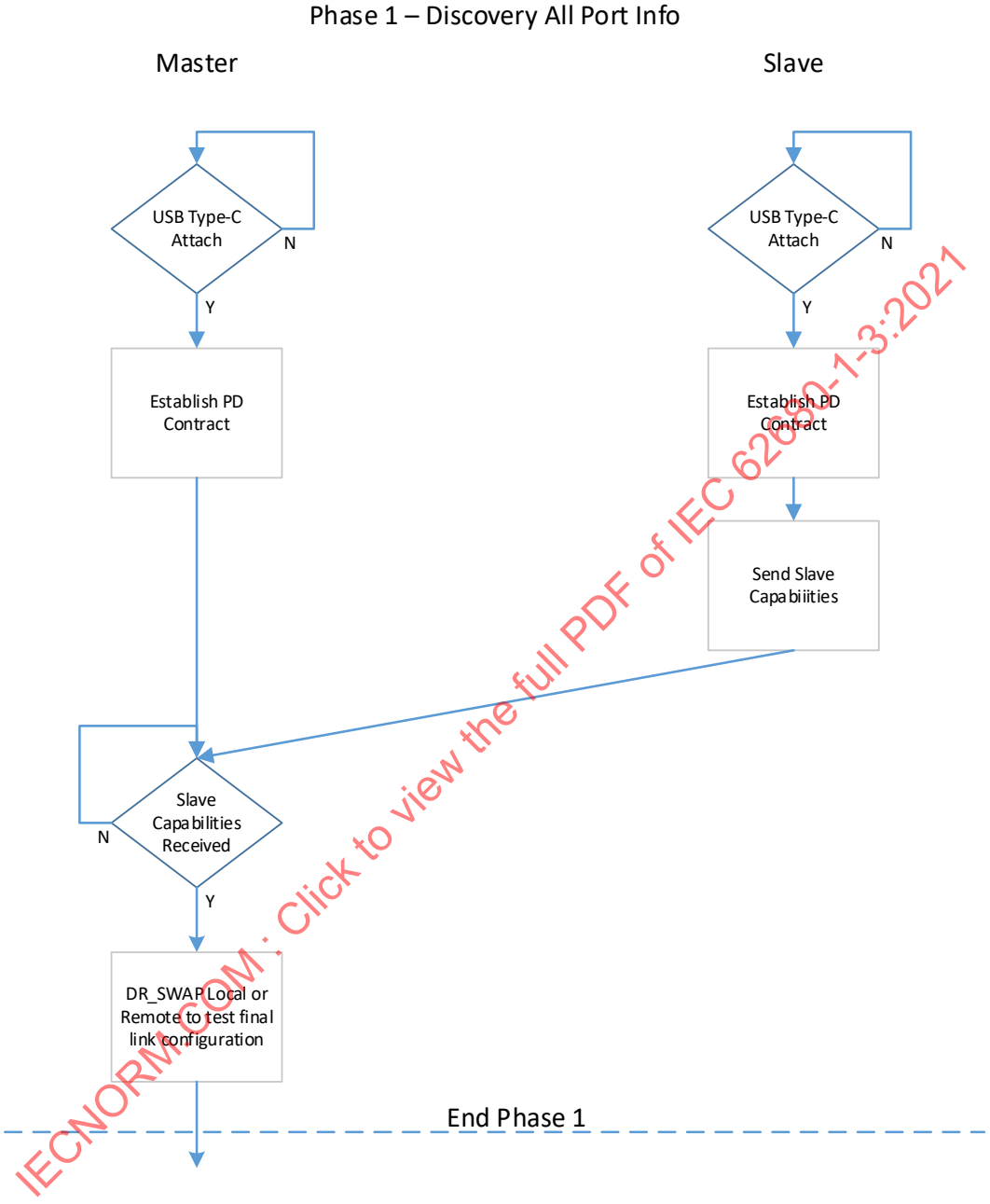
6.3.1 OIAC Connection Flow – Discovery – Phase 1

The OIAC cable plugs discover the capabilities of their port partners in the Discovery Phase.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-10 OIAC Discovery – Phase 1



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.3.2 OIAC Connection Flow – Reboot – Phase 2

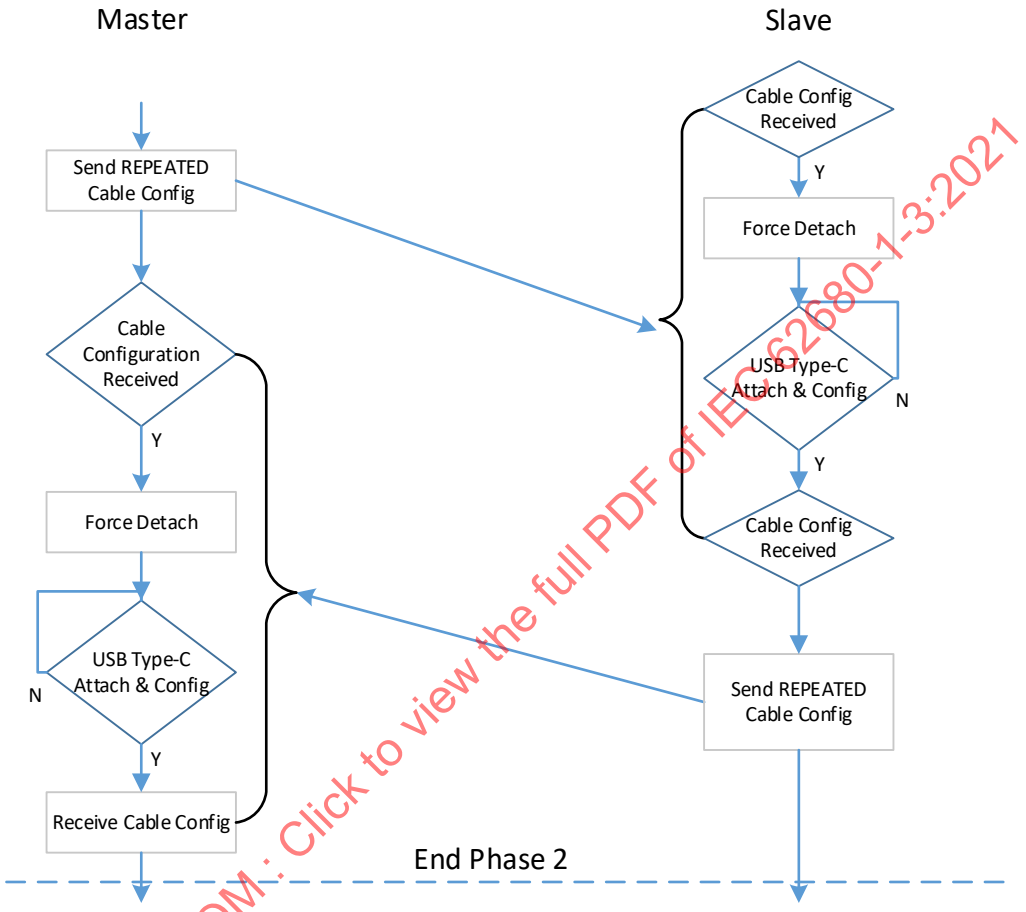
The OIAC cable plugs forward the capabilities of their plug partners and perform disconnect/reconnect.

- Master will always start with repeating sending “MSG_Cable_Config” to slave to start reboot.
- Slave Reboot.
- Slave sees “MSG_Cable_Config” and holds off on SourceCap GoodCRC until it is allowed to release it.
- Slave send “MSG_Cable_Config” to the master.
- Master Reboots.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- Master see “MSG_Cable_Config” and holds off on SourceCap GoodCRC until it is allowed to release it.

Figure 6-11 OIAC Reboot – Phase 2



6.3.3 OIAC Connection Flow – Configuration – Phase 3

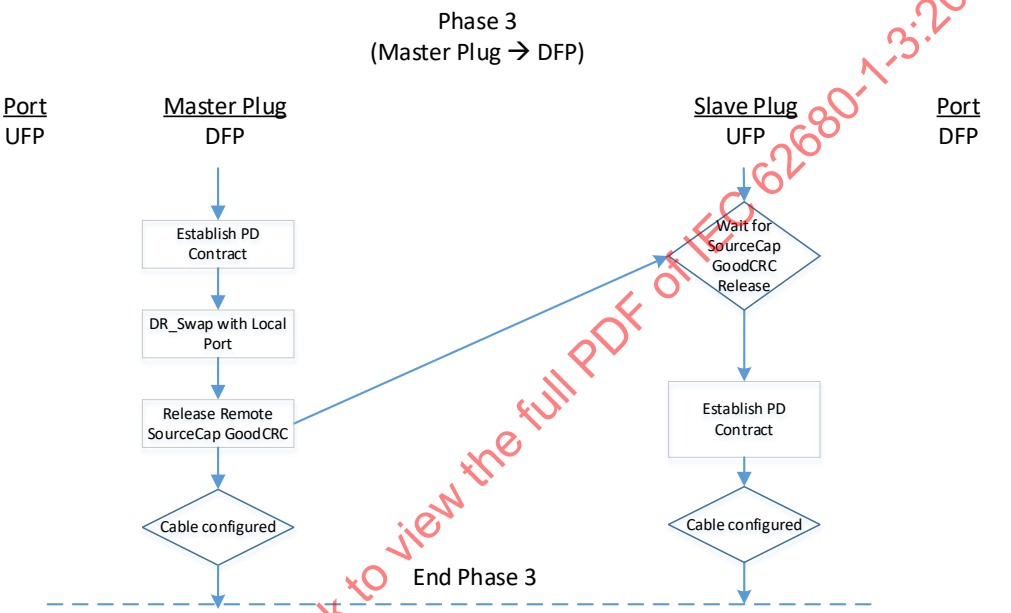
The OIAC master plug determines DFP/UFP roles for the master and slave plugs. The master release the PLUG to be configured as the DFP and initiates a DR_Swap. The side that issues the DR_Swap send a DR_Swap and releases the other side SourceCap GoodCRC.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-12 OIAC Master Plug Configure as DFP – Phase 3

Host/Device Port		Cable			Host/Device Port
		Master Plug	Slave Plug		
DRD		DFP	UFP		DRD
DFP		UFP	DFP		DRD
DRD		DFP	UFP		DFP
DFP		Billboard			DFP
Any		Billboard if Possible			UFP
UFP		Billboard if Possible			Any

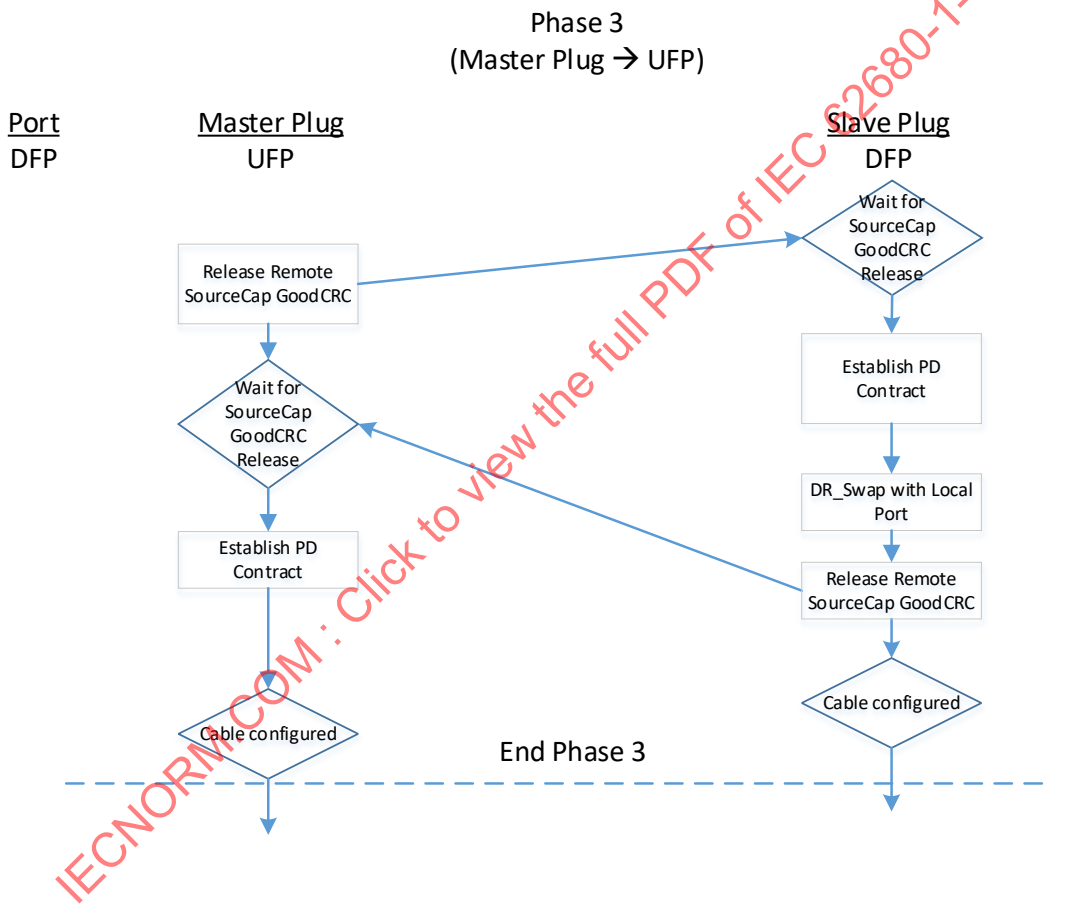


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-13 OIAC Master Plug Configure as UFP – Phase 3

Host/Device Port		Cable			Host/Device Port
		Master Plug	Slave Plug		
DRD		DFP	UFP		DRD
DFP		UFP	DFP		DRD
DRD		DFP	UFP		DFP
DFP		Billboard			DFP
Any		Billboard if Possible			UFP
UFP		Billboard if Possible			Any

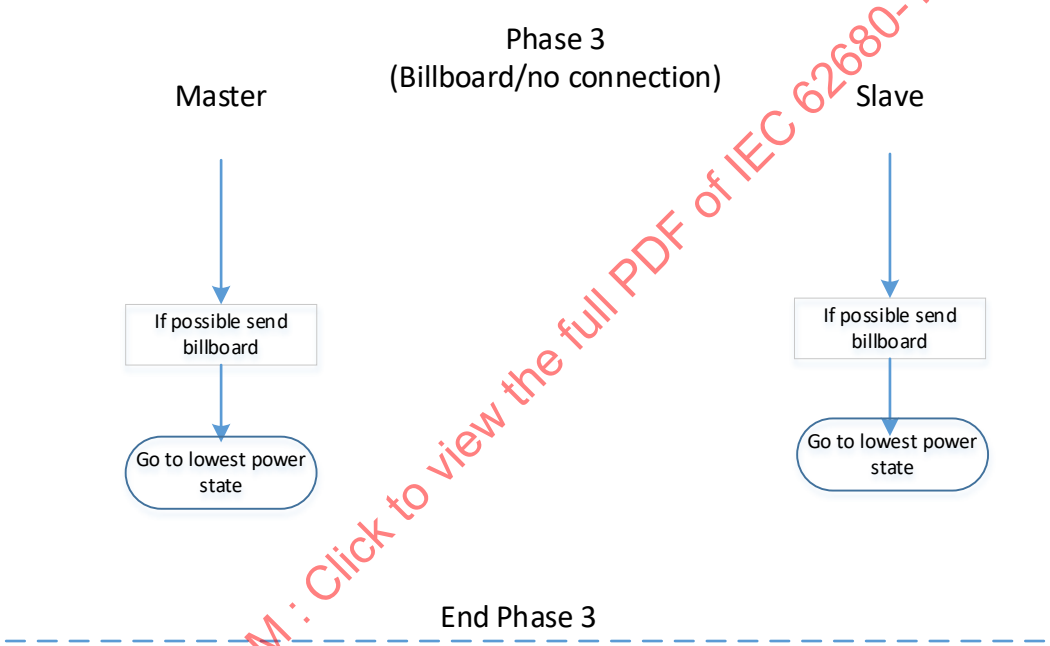


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-14 OIAC Master Plug No Connection Possible Billboard – Phase 3

Host/Device Port		Cable			Host/Device Port
		Master Plug	Slave Plug		
DRD		DFP	UFP		DRD
DFP		UFP	DFP		DRD
DRD		DFP	UFP		DFP
DFP		Billboard			DFP
Any		Billboard if Possible			UFP
UFP		Billboard if Possible			Any



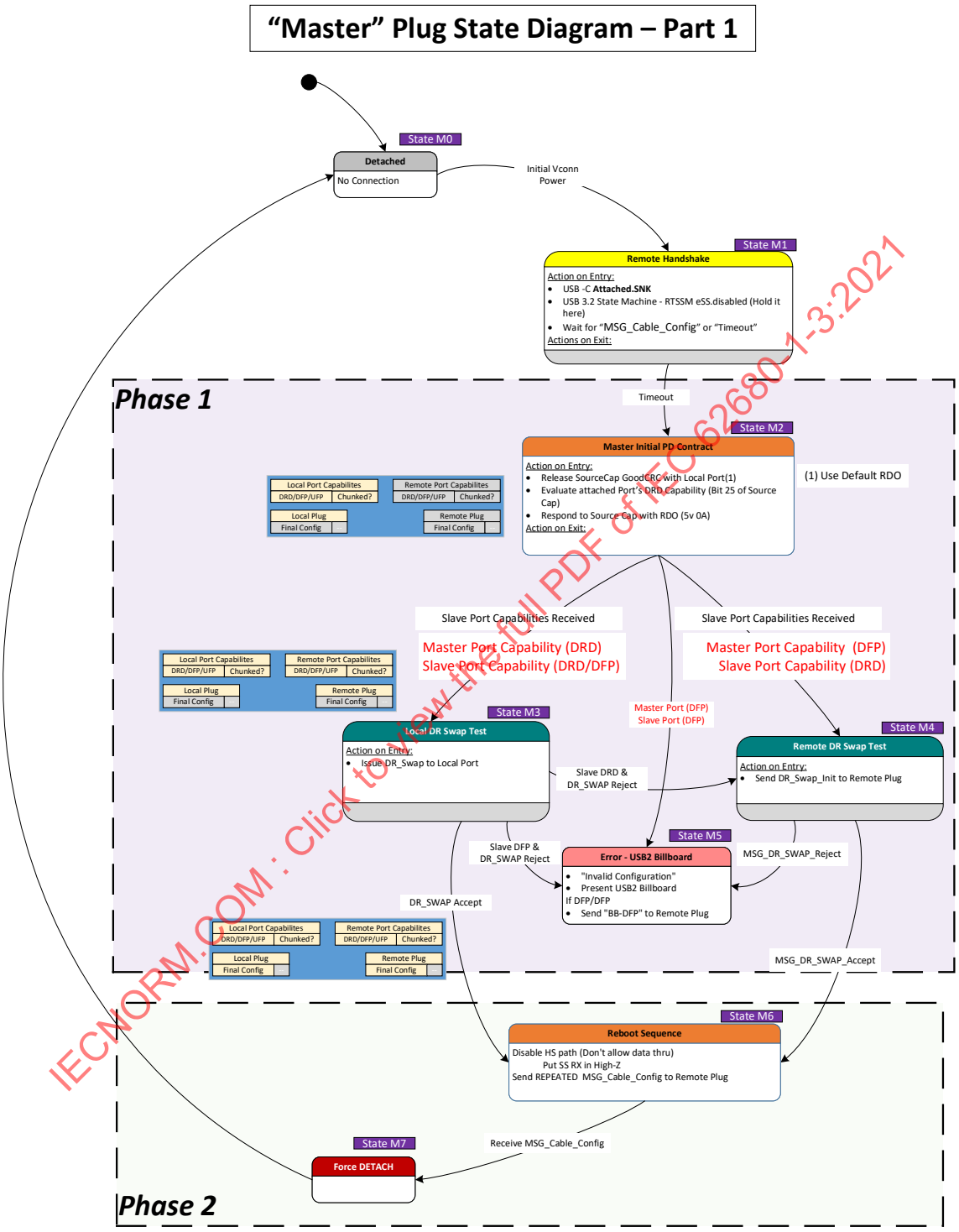
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.3.4 OIAC Connection State Diagram Master

The following sections details a possible OIAC state diagram for the Master Plug.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

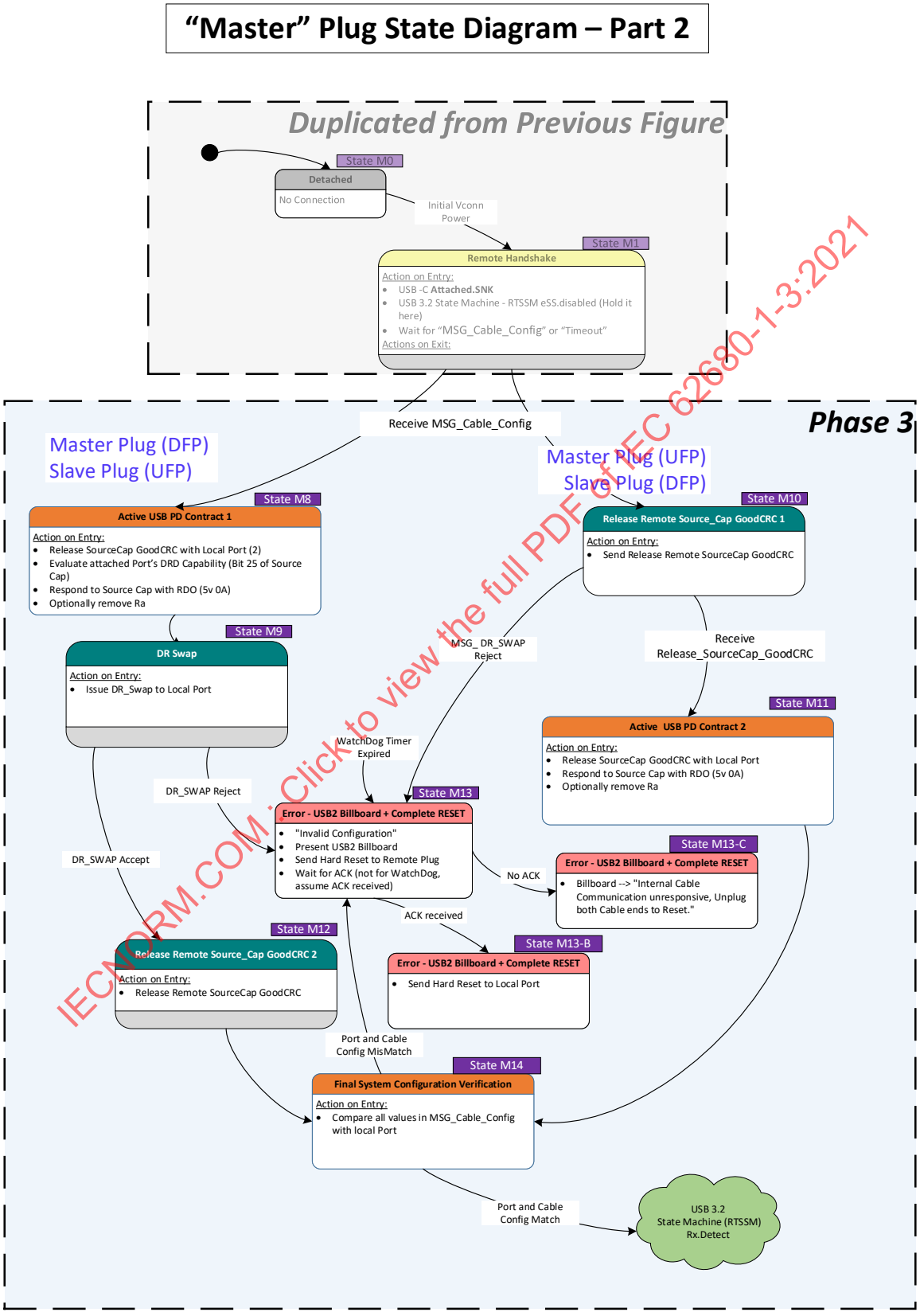
Figure 6-15 OIAC Master Plug State Diagram Part 1 (Phase 1 and 2)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-16 OIAC Master Plug State Diagram Part 2 (Phase 3)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.3.4.1 Detached State (M0)

The plug is in ***Detached*** (M0) when no power is applied. The plug transitions to ***Remote Handshake*** (M1) when VCONN is applied.

6.3.4.2 Remote Handshake State (M1)

The plug is waiting for the "Timeout" timer expiration or a "MSG_Cable_Config" message from the slave plug.

Recommended Timeout time = ~100ms

The Timeout time is dependent on the duty cycle of the Slave Plug's Repeat Port Capabilities messages and the maximum cable latency.

The plug starts in the *USB 3.2* RTSSM eSS.Disabled and remains in eSS.Disabled until cable initialization is complete at the end of Phase 3.

6.3.4.2.1 Entry to Remote Handshake

The plug enters Attached.SNK followed by entry to ***Remote Handshake*** (M1).

6.3.4.2.2 Exit from Remote Handshake

The plug transitions to:

- ***Master Initial PD Contract*** (M2) when the "Timeout" timer has expired,
- ***Active USB PD Contract 1*** (M8) upon receipt of a "MSG_Cable_Config" message when the Master Plug resolves to a DFP and the Slave Plug will resolve to a UFP, or
- ***Release Remote Source_Cap GoodCRC 1*** (M10) upon receipt of a "MSG_Cable_Config" message when the Master Plug resolves to a UFP and the Slave Plug will resolve to a DFP.

6.3.4.3 Master Initial PD Contract State (M2)

When the plug is in ***Master Initial PD Contract***, the plug has established an initial *USB PD* contract and evaluated its local port's DRD capability.

6.3.4.3.1 Entry to Master Initial DP Contract

On Entry to ***Master Initial PD Contract***, the plug shall:

1. Send a GoodCRC in response to a Source Capabilities message from the local attached port
2. Evaluate the local attached port's DRD capability (Bit 25 of the Source Capabilities message)
3. Respond to the Source Capabilities message with the "default" RDO specified in Table 6-10.

6.3.4.3.2 Exit from Master Initial DP Contract

The OIAC plug shall transition to:

- ***Local DR Swap Test*** (M3) upon receipt of a MSG_Port_Capabilities where the Master Port is a DRD and the Slave Port is either a DRD or DFP,
- ***Remote DR Swap Test*** (M4) upon receipt of a MSG_Port_Capabilities where the Master Port is a DFP and the Slave Port is DRD, or
- ***Error – USB2 Billboard*** (M5) upon determination both Master and Slave plugs are connected to DFPs.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.3.4.4 Local DR Swap Test State (M3)

The ***Local DR Swap Test*** is a test to ensure that the Master Port that is defined as a DRD will accept a DR_Swap request.

6.3.4.4.1 Entry to Local DR Swap Test

On entry to ***Local DR Swap Test***, the plug shall issue DR_Swap request to its local port.

If the local port responds to the DR Swap with "Wait," then the plug shall follow the tDRSwapWait timer and retry up to 3 times, after which it will error out and transition to state ***Error – USB2 Billboard*** (M5).

6.3.4.4.2 Exit from Local DR Swap Test

The OIAC plug shall transition to:

- ***Remote DR Swap Test*** (M4) upon receipt of a Reject and the Slave port reported that it is a DRD,
- ***Error – USB2 Billboard*** (M5) upon receipt of a Reject and the Slave port reported that it is a DFP, or
- ***Reboot Sequence*** (M6) upon receipt of an Accept.

6.3.4.5 Remote DR Swap Test State (M4)

The ***Remote DR Swap Test*** is a test to ensure that the Slave Port that is defined as a DRD will accept a DR_Swap request.

6.3.4.5.1 Entry to Remote DR Swap Test

On entry to ***Remote DR Swap Test***, the plug shall issue a DR_Swap_Init to the remote plug.

6.3.4.5.2 Exit from Remote DR Swap Test

The OIAC plug shall transition to:

- ***Reboot Sequence*** (M6) upon receipt of a MSG_DR_Swap_Accept, or
- ***Error – USB2 Billboard*** (M5) upon receipt of a MSG_DR_Swap_Reject.

6.3.4.6 Error – USB2 Billboard (M5)

The plug presents a Billboard indicating an Invalid Configuration is present. For example: "Error: A DFP only device connected to one of the plugs."

6.3.4.6.1 Entry to Error – USB2 Billboard

On entry ***Error – USB2 Billboard***, the plug shall issue present a Billboard message over *USB 2.0* and then power down to its lowest possible state.

6.3.4.6.2 Exit from Error – USB2 Billboard

The only means of exiting this Error state, is either from a Reset that disconnects VCONN power or a disconnect event which also disconnects VCONN power.

6.3.4.7 Reboot Sequence State (M6)

When the plug is in the ***Reboot Sequence***, it will disable the High Speed Data path and start to initiate a remote plug reboot.

6.3.4.7.1 Entry to Reboot Sequence

On entry to Reboot Sequence, the plug shall:

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

1) Disable the HS path by changing the SS RX termination to High-Z;
2) Determine and store the final System Configuration for this link.
    a. The System Configuration will contain:
        i. Host/Device Port information
        ii. Final Master/Slave Plug roles
            1. If coming from State M3
                a. Master Plug → DFP (DR_Swap)
                b. Slave Plug → UFP
            2. If coming from State M4
                a. Master Plug → UFP
                b. Slave Plug → DFP (DR_Swap)
            3. If coming from State M9
                a. Master Plug → UFP
                b. Slave Plug → DFP (DR_Swap)
3) Continuously send "MSG_Cable_Config" message to the remote plug.

6.3.4.7.2 Exit from Reboot Sequence

The OIAC plug shall transition to the ***Force Detach*** (M7) when a "MSG_Cable_Config" message is received that matches the final configuration that the Master Plug sent to the Slave Plug.

6.3.4.8 Force Detach State (M7)

The plug shall transition to SRC.Open on both CC and VCONN and maintain this state for at least tSRCDisconnect.

6.3.4.8.1 Entry to Force Detach

On entry to ***Force Detach***, the plug shall raise the voltage on the CC-wire above vRd-Connect.

6.3.4.8.2 Exit from Force Detach

The plug transitions to ***Detached*** upon exit from ***Force Detach***.

6.3.4.9 Active USB PD Contract 1 State (M8)

Active USB Contract 1 is where OIAC Master Plug creates at *USB PD* contract with the local port.

6.3.4.9.1 Entry to Active USB PD Contract 1

The OIAC plug shall follow the steps listed below:

1. Begin responding to *USB PD* messages from its port partner with GoodCRCs.
2. Evaluate b25 in the Fixed 5V PDO in the Source Capabilities message to check if its port partner is a DRD.
3. Request for a 5 V @ 0 A power contract.
4. May remove Ra to save power.

6.3.4.9.2 Exit from Active USB PD Contract 1

The plug transitions to the ***DR Swap*** (M9) when it receives an Accept followed by a PS_RDY message from its port partner.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.3.4.10 DR Swap State (M9)

The ***DR Swap*** is used to set the final data role of the OIAC's Master Plug and signal to the OIAC Slave Plug to complete its configuration.

6.3.4.10.1 Entry to DR Swap

The OIAC plug shall issue a DR_Swap to its port partner.

If the local port responds to the DR_Swap with "Wait," then the plug shall follow the tDRSwapWait timer and retry up to 3 times, after which it will error out and transition to state ***Error – USB2 Billboard*** (M5).

6.3.4.10.2 Exit from DR Swap

If the DR_Swap message is responded to with:

- An Accept, it shall transition to the ***Release Remote Source_Cap GoodCRC 2 State*** (M12), or
- A Reject it shall transition to the ***Error - USB2 Billboard + Complete Reset*** (M13).

6.3.4.11 Release Remote Source_Cap GoodCRC 1 State (M10)

The OIAC is waiting to for Release_Remote_Source_Cap_GoodCRC to better synchronize the power on of the two OIAC plug ends.

6.3.4.11.1 Entry to Release Remote Source_Cap GoodCRC 1

The OIAC plug shall release the Remote SourceCap GoodCRC.

6.3.4.11.2 Exit from Release Remote Source_Cap GoodCRC 1

The OIAC plug shall transition to:

- ***Active USB PD Contract 2 State*** (M11), when a "MSG_ Release_Remote_SourceCap_GoodCRC" message is received, or
- ***Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete Reset*** (M13) upon receipt of a MSG_DR_Swap_Reject.

6.3.4.12 Active USB PD Contract 2 State (M11)

Active USB Contract 2 is where OIAC Master Plug creates at *USB PD* contract with the local port and should end with viable link.

6.3.4.12.1 Entry to Active USB PD Contract 2

The OIAC plug shall follow the steps listed below:

1. Begin responding to USB PD messages from its port partner with GoodCRCs.
2. Request a 5 V @ 0 A power contract.
3. May remove Ra to save power.

6.3.4.12.2 Exit from Active USB PD Contract 2

The plug shall transition to ***Final System Configuration Verification*** (M13) for final system verification.

6.3.4.13 Release Remote Source_Cap GoodCRC 2 State (M12)

OIAC Source Plug configuration is completed and the *USB 3.2* begins looking for a connection.

6.3.4.13.1 Entry to Release Remote Source_Cap GoodCRC 2

The OIAC plug shall release the Remote SourceCap GoodCRC.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.3.4.13.2 Exit from Release Remote Source_Cap GoodCRC 2

The plug shall transition to ***Final System Configuration Verification*** (M13) for final system verification.

6.3.4.14 Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete Reset (M13)

The plug presents a Billboard indicating an Invalid Configuration is present. For example: "Error: An invalid configuration occurred. Full link will be reset."

6.3.4.14.1 Entry to Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete Reset (M13)

On entry Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete Reset, the plug shall:

1) Present a USB2 Billboard message
2) Send a MSG_Hard_Reset to the remote Plug
3) Wait for Hard Reset Ack from Remote Plug (Unless entry is from an expired WatchDog Timer, in which case, go directly to M13-B)

   Received ACK (State M13-B):

4) Send Hard Reset to the Local Port

   Did NOT receive ACK (State M13-C):

5) Present USB2 Billboard Message: "Error: Internal Cable Communication Error. Unplug both cable ends to reset."

6.3.4.14.2 Exit from Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete Reset (M13 B/C)

The only means of exiting this Error state, is either from a Reset that disconnects VCONN power or a disconnect event which also disconnects VCONN power from each port.

6.3.4.14.3 WatchDog Timer Entry

A watchdog timer should be implemented for internal cable messages that require a response. The watchdog timer will also provide an entry to an ***Error State*** (M13) if the far end plug is unresponsive for any reason.

There are a few states where the watchdog timer shall NOT be implemented including but not limited to M2, where it is possible that only a single end of the OIAC is connected and M6, where the reboot sequence can take a few seconds.

6.3.4.15 Final System Configuration Verification (M14)

Final System Configuration Verification is used to do one final check there were no unforeseen changes the local port and the final cable configuration defined by the master plug.

6.3.4.15.1 Entry to Final System Configuration Verification

The OIAC plug shall check all values in the MSG_Cable_Config match that of the current local port's configuration.

6.3.4.15.2 Exit from Final System Configuration Verification

The plug shall transition to:

- ***Rx.Detect***, and start far-end receiver termination detection and the *USB 3.2* RTSSM State Machine after a successful match of the MSG_Cable_Config and the local port's configuration, or
- ***Error - USB2 Billboard + Complete RESET*** (State M14) after unsuccessful match of the MSG_Cable_Config and the local port's configuration.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

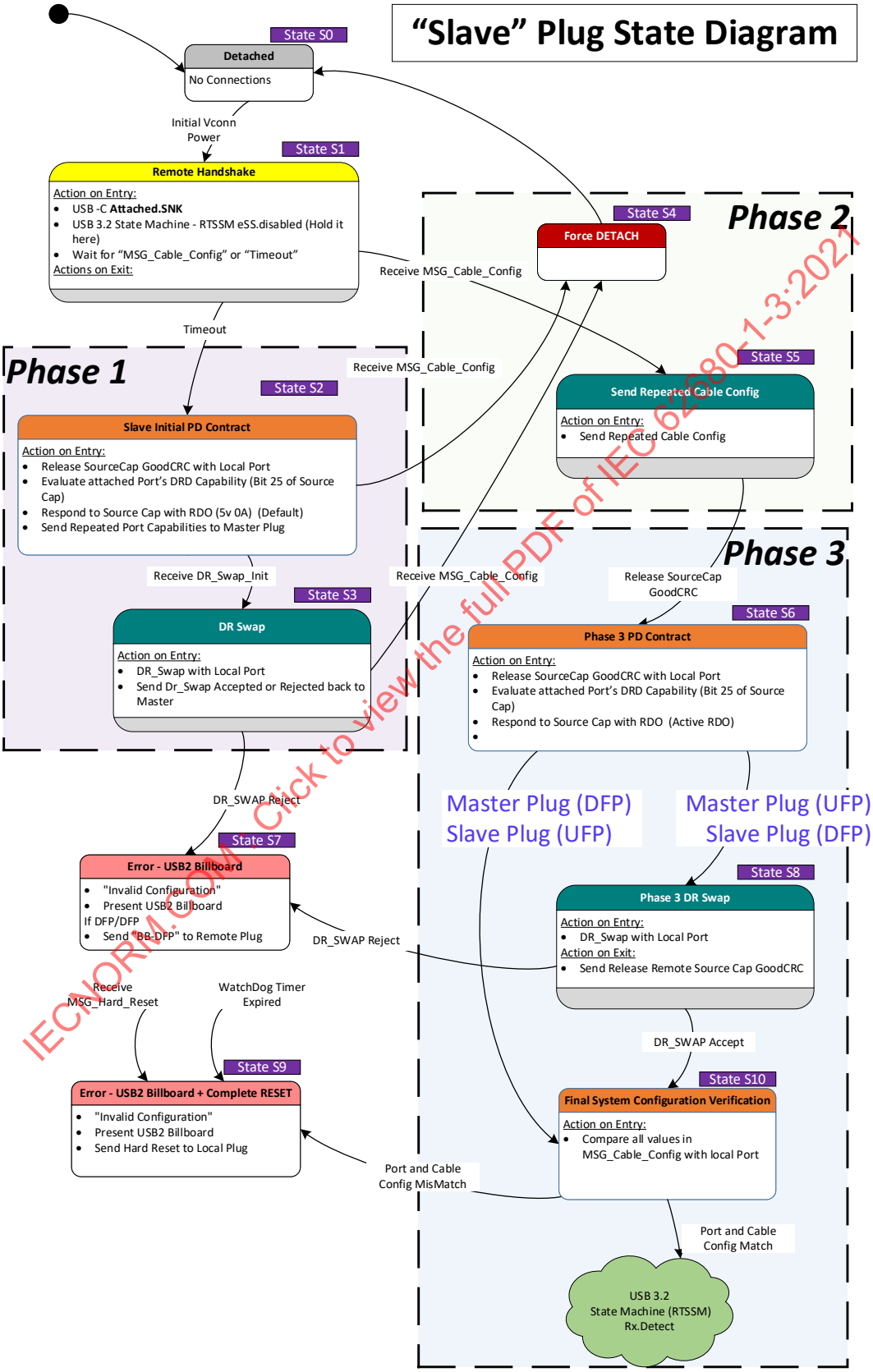
6.3.5 OIAC Connection State Diagram Slave

The following sections details a possible OIAC state diagram for the Slave Plug.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-17 OIAC Slave Plug State Diagram



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.3.5.1 Detached State (S0)

The plug is in ***Detached*** (S0) when no power is applied. The plug transitions to ***Remote Handshake*** (S1) when VCONN is applied.

6.3.5.2 Remote Handshake State (S1)

The plug is waiting for the "Timeout" timer expiration or a "MSG_Cable_Config" message from the master plug.

Recommended Timeout time = ~100ms

The Timeout time is dependent on the duty cycle of the Master Plug's Repeat MSG_Cable_Config messages and the maximum cable latency.

6.3.5.2.1 Entry to Remote Handshake

The plug enters Attached.SNK followed by entry to ***Remote Handshake*** (S1).

The plug starts in the USB 3.2 RTSSM eSS.Disabled and remains in eSS.Disable until cable initialization is complete at the end of Phase 3.

6.3.5.2.2 Exit from Remote Handshake

The plug transitions to:

- ***Slave Initial PD Contract*** (S2) when the "Timeout" timer has expired, or
- ***Send Repeated Cable Config*** (S5) upon receipt of a "MSG_Cable_Config" message.

6.3.5.3 Slave Initial DP Contract (S2)

The plug takes the following actions in the order defined:

1. Send a GoodCRC in response to a Source Capabilities message from the local attached port.
2. Evaluate the local attached port's DRD Capability (Bit 25 of the Source Capabilities message).
3. Send the initial RDO (5 V/0 A) and negotiate an explicit power contract.
4. Send "MSG_Port_Capabilities" to the master plug. The plug shall continue to send "MSG_Port_Capabilities" until it exits this state.

6.3.5.3.1 Entry to Slave Initial DP Contract

The plug enters ***Slave Initial PD Contract*** (S2) upon "Timeout" timer expiration.

6.3.5.3.2 Exit from Slave Initial DP Contract

The plug transitions to:

- ***DR Swap*** (S3) upon receipt of a "DR_Swap_Init" message from the master plug, or
- ***Force Detach*** (S4) upon receipt of a "MSG_Cable_Config" message from the master plug.

6.3.5.4 DR Swap (S3)

The plug determines if a DR_Swap can be performed with the local attached port or the master plug configured itself.

6.3.5.4.1 Entry to DR Swap

Upon entry into DR Swap (S3) the plug shall:

1. Send DR_Swap message to the local attached port.
2. Send MSG_DR_Swap_Accept when the plug receives Accept message from the local attached port.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3. Send MSG_DR_Swap_Reject when the plug receives Reject message from the local attached port.

If the local port responds to the DR Swap with "Wait," then the plug shall follow the tDRSwapWait timer and retry up to 3 times, after which it will error out and transition to state ***Error – USB2 Billboard*** (S7).

6.3.5.4.2 Exit from DR Swap

The plug shall transition to:

- ***Error – USB2 Billboard*** (S7) upon rejection of the local attached port DR_Swap, or
- ***Force Detach*** (S4) upon receipt of a "MSG_Cable_Config" message from the master plug.

6.3.5.5 Force Detach (S4)

The plug shall transition to SRC.Open on both CC and VCONN and maintain this state for at least tSRCDisconnect.

6.3.5.5.1 Entry to Force Detach

The plug enters ***Force Detach*** (S4) upon receipt of a "MSG_Cable_Config"" message from the master plug.

6.3.5.5.2 Exit from Force Detach

The plug transitions to ***Detached*** (S0) upon exit from ***Force Detach***.

6.3.5.6 Send Repeated Cable Config (S5)

The plug repeatedly sends "MSG_Cable_Config" messages in this state to inform the master plug of the configuration of the local attached port.

6.3.5.6.1 Entry to Send Repeated Cable Config

The plug enters ***Repeated Cable Config*** (S5) upon receipt of a "MSG_Cable_Config" message from the master plug.

6.3.5.6.2 Exit from Send Repeated Cable Config

The plug transitions to ***Phase 3 PD Contract*** (S6) upon receipt of a "Release SourceCap GoodCRC" message from the master port.

6.3.5.7 Phase 3 PD Contract (S6)

The plug performs the following actions in this state:

1. Send a GoodCRC in response to a Source Capabilities message from the local attached port.
2. Evaluate the attached local attached port's DRD Capability (Bit 25 of the Source Capabilities message).
3. Send the initial RDO (5 V/0 A) in response to the Source Capabilities message and negotiate an explicit power contract.

6.3.5.7.1 Entry to Phase 3 PD Contract

The plug enters ***Phase 3 PD Contract*** upon receipt of a "Release SourceCap GoodCRC" message from the master plug.

6.3.5.7.2 Exit from Phase 3 PD Contract

The plug transitions to:

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- ***Final System Configuration Verification*** (S10) for final system verification upon determination the master plug is acting as a DFP and it is acting as a UFP, or
- ***Phase 3 DR Swap*** (S8) upon determination the master plug is acting as a UFP and it is acting as a DFP.

6.3.5.8 Error – USB2 Billboard (S7)

The plug presents a Billboard indicating an Invalid Configuration is present. For example: "Error: A DFP only device connected to one of the plugs."

6.3.5.8.1 Entry to Error – USB2 Billboard

The plug transitions to this state upon rejection of a DR_Swap by the local attached port.

6.3.5.8.2 Exit from Error – USB2 Billboard

The only means of exiting this Error state, is either from a Reset that disconnects VCONN power or a disconnect event which also disconnects VCONN power.

6.3.5.9 Phase 3 DR Swap State (S8)

The plug issues a DR_Swap with its local attached port in this state.

6.3.5.9.1 Entry to Phase 3 DR Swap

The plug enters ***Phase 3 DR Swap*** upon determination the master plug is connected as a UFP and the slave plug should connect as a DFP.

6.3.5.9.2 Exit from Phase 3 DR Swap

The plug shall transition to:

- ***Final System Configuration Verification*** (S10) for final system verification after successful completion of the DR_Swap with the local attached port, or
- ***Error – USB2 Billboard*** (S7) after unsuccessful completion of the DR_Swap with the local attached port.

6.3.5.10 Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete RESET (S9)

The plug presents a Billboard indicating an Invalid Configuration is present. For example: "Error: An invalid configuration occurred. Full link will be reset."

6.3.5.10.1 Entry to Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete RESET

On entry ***Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete RESET***, the plug shall:

1. Present a USB2 Billboard message.
2. Send Hard_Reset to the Local Plug.

6.3.5.10.2 Exit from Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete RESET

The only means of exiting this Error state, is either from a Reset that disconnects VCONN power or a disconnect event which also disconnects VCONN power.

6.3.5.10.3 WatchDog Timer Entry

A watchdog timer should be implemented for internal cable messages that require a response. The watchdog timer will also provide an entry to an ***Error State*** (M13) if the far end plug is unresponsive for any reason.

There are a few states where the watchdog timer shall NOT be implemented including but not limited to S5, where the reboot sequence can take a few seconds.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.3.5.11 Final System Configuration Verification (S10)

The ***Final System Configuration Verification*** is used to one final check there were no unforeseen changes the local port and the final cable configuration defined by the master plug.

6.3.5.11.1 Entry to Final System Configuration Verification

The OIAC plug shall check all values in the MSG_Cable_Config match that of the current local port's configuration.

6.3.5.11.2 Exit from Final System Configuration Verification

The plug shall transition to:

- ***Rx.Detect***, and start far-end receiver termination detection and the *USB 3.2* RTSSM State Machine after a successful match of the MSG_Cable_Config and the local port's configuration, or
- ***Error – USB2 Billboard + Complete RESET*** (State S9) after unsuccessful match of the MSG_Cable_Config and the local port's configuration.

6.4 Active Cable Power Requirements

6.4.1 VBUS Requirements

Short active cables shall meet the limits of the IR Drop on VBUS and ground defined in Section 4.4.1.

Short active cables shall provide VBUS and support at least 3 A and optionally 5 A current.

6.4.2 OIAC VBUS Requirements

The OIAC cable plugs have two power contracts. The first contract is defined at first connection of the cable. The second contract is after the data role establishment in the Active state.

6.4.2.1 OIAC VBUS Requirements on Initial Connection

The OIAC cable plugs shall negotiate a power contract with their plug partners as defined in this section on Initial Connection. The *USB PD* Sink Capabilities PDO presented by the OIAC cable plug (SOP) on Initial Connection is defined in Table 6-9. The Sink RDO (SOP) before data role establishment is defined in Table 6-10.

The OIAC cable plug (SOP) shall wait tTypeCSinkWaitCap after VBUS is presented before issuing a Hard Reset to restart sending of the Source_Capabilities.

Table 6-9 OIAC Sink_Capabilities PDO (SOP) on Initial Connection

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
B31..30	00b	Fixed Supply
B29	0b	Not Dual-Role Power
B28	0b	Not higher capability
B27	0b	Not unconstrained power
B26	X	USB Communications Capable – Don't care
B25	X	Dual-Role Data – Don't care
B24..23	00b	Fast Role Swap not supported
B22..20	000b	Reserved
B19..10	0001100100b	5V in 50mV units
B9..0	Design defined	Operational current in 10mA units

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 6-10 OIAC Sink_Capabilities_Extended PDO (SOP) on Initial Connection

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
0	VID	2	Numeric	Vendor ID (assigned by the USB-IF)
2	PID	2	Numeric	Product ID (assigned by the manufacturer)
4	XID	4	Numeric	Value provided by the USB-IF assigned to the product
8	FW Version	1	Numeric	Firmware version number
9	HW Version	1	Numeric	Hardware version number
10	SKEDB Version	1	Numeric	SKEDB Version (not the specification Version): Version 1.0 = 1 Values 0 and 2-255 are Reserved and shall not be used.
11	Load Step	1	Bit Field	0x00
12	Sink Load Characteristics	2	Bit field	0x00
14	Compliance	1	Bit Field	0x00
15	Touch Temp	1	Value	0
16	Battery Info	1	Byte	0x00
17	Sink Modes	1	Bit field	0x00
18	Sink Minimum PDP	1	Byte	0x00
19	Sink Operational PDP	1	Byte	0x00
20	Sink Maximum PDP	1	Byte	0x00

Table 6-11 OIAC Sink RDO (SOP) on Initial Connection

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
B31	0b	Reserved
B20..28	001b	Object Position
B27	0b	No GiveBack flag
B26	0b	No Capabilities Mismatch
B25	1b	USB Communication Capable
B24	1b	No USB Suspend
B23	0b	Unchunked Extended Messages Not Supported
B22..20	000b	Reserved
B19..10	0	Operating Current in 10 mA units
B9..0	0	Maximum current in 10 mA units

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.4.3 USB PD Rules in Active State

The OIAC cable plugs shall negotiate a power contract with their plug partners as defined in this section in the Active State. The OIAC shall follow the message applicability rules defined in Table 6-3 until entry to the Active State.

The minimum USB PD Sink Capabilities PDO presented by the OIAC cable plug (SOP) is defined in Table 6-12. The OIAC may request additional Sink Capabilities (higher voltages and currents) for

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

performance optimization. The minimum Sink RDO is provided as an example in Table 6-13. The OIAC shall function when receiving the minimum Source PDO.

The OIAC cable plug (SOP) shall wait tTypeCSinkWaitCap after VBUS is presented before issuing a Hard Reset to restart sending of the Source_Capabilities

Table 6-12 OIAC Active Sink RDO (SOP)

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
B31	0b	Reserved
B20..28	As required	Object Position
B27	0b	No GiveBack flag
B26	0b	No Capabilities Mismatch
B25	1b	USB Communication Capable
B24	1b	USB Suspend
B23	As reported from remote end	Unchunked Extended Messages
B22..20	000b	Reserved
B19..10	Design Defined	Operating Current in 10 mA units[1]
B9..0	Design Defined	Maximum current in 10 mA units[1]

Note 1: Thermal design must be considered.

Table 6-13 OIAC Sink_Capabilities PDO (SOP) in Active

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
B31..30	00b	Fixed Supply
B29	0b	Not Dual-Role Power
B28	0b	Not higher capability
B27	0b	Not unconstrained power
B26	1b	USB Communications Capable
B25	As reported from Remote End	Dual-Role Data[1]
B24..23	00b	Fast Role Swap not supported
B22..20	000b	Reserved
B19..10	0001100100b	5 V in 50 mV units
B9..0	Design defined	Operational current in 10 mA units[2]

Notes: 1. Reflection of far side connection; 2. Thermal design must be considered.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.4.4 VCONN Requirements

Active Cables shall:

- Meet the VCONN sink requirement defined in Table 4-6 and Table 6-19.
- Connect VCONN as shown in Figure 2-1 or Figure 2-2.

Short Active Cables shall be capable of being powered from VCONN from only one port.

OIAC shall be powered from VCONN from each port.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.5 Mechanical

All active cables shall meet the mechanical requirements defined in the Section 3.8.

6.5.1 Thermal

6.5.1.1 Thermal Shutdown

All active cables shall implement a temperature sensor and place the *USB 3.2* signals in the eSS.Disabled state when the plug skin temperature reaches the maximum defined in Table 6-14. Active cables shall indicate they are in thermal shutdown if queried via the *USB PD* ***Get_Status*** command.

OIACs shall billboard in shutdown. For example: “Error: The Optical Cable has experienced a thermal shutdown.”

The Thermal Shutdown is cleared by the following events:

- Disconnect
- *USB PD* Hard Reset

6.5.1.2 Maximum Skin Temperature

Active cable plug’s skin temperature shall not exceed a maximum operating temperature of 30 °C above the ambient temperature for a plastic/rubber housing and 15 °C for a metal housing in any operating mode.

6.5.1.3 Thermal Reporting

Active cables shall implement reporting their maximum internal operating temperature in the *USB PD* ***Discover_ID*** Command. Active cables shall implement reporting their current internal operating temperature in the *USB PD* ***Get_Status*** Command on SOP’ and SOP” when supported. Active cables shall update their reported Internal Temperature at least every 500 ms.

The plug’s Internal Temperature is reported in °C and shall be monotonic. It is not the plug’s skin temperature, but cable manufacturers shall correlate the maximum internal operating temperature with the maximum plug skin temperature to ensure shutdown when the maximum plug skin temperature is reached.

Sources and/or Sinks may take action to reduce VBUS current to reduce the cable plug internal operating temperature to below the reported maximum operating temperature. It is recommended Sources and/or Sinks poll the plug’s Internal Temperature every 2 seconds.

Table 6-14 Cable Temperature Requirements

Temperature Requirements	
Maximum Internal to Skin Temperature Offset	Design Specific
Maximum Internal Operating Temperature	Design Specific
Maximum Skin Temperature Plastic/Rubber[1]	80 °C
Maximum Skin Temperature Metal[1]	55 °C

Note 1: IEC 69950-1 reduced by 5 °C

6.5.2 Plug Spacing

Active cables will support the USB Type-C vertical and horizontal spacing defined Section 3.10.2 when functioning in *USB 3.2* x1 operation. However, this spacing may impose thermal constraints. Appendix D provides system design guidance to minimize the thermal impact due to connector

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

spacing. It is recommended that products designed for *USB 3.2* x2 operation with multiple adjacent USB Type-C connectors follow the design guidance in Appendix D to minimize the likelihood the active cable will go into thermal shutdown.

6.6 Electrical Requirements

6.6.1 Shielding Effectiveness Requirement

All active cables shall meet the shielding effectiveness requirement defined in Section 3.7.7 and Figure 3-65.

6.6.2 Low Speed Signal Requirement

6.6.2.1 CC Channel Requirements

Active cables shall meet the Low-Speed Signal Requirements in Section 3.7.2.4.

6.6.2.2 SBU Requirements

6.6.2.2.1 Short Active Cables

Short active cables SBU wires shall meet the requirements defined in Table 6-15 and shall meet the crosstalk requirements both near-end and far-end between the low speed signals as defined in Section 3.7.2.4.

SBUs have no guaranteed performance when Vconn is not provided to the cable. The Host or Device shall not provide any signal beyond what is defined in Table 6-15 when VCONN has not been provided.

Table 6-15 Summary of Active Cable Features

Name	Description	Min	Max	Units
zCable_SBU	Cable characteristic impedance on the SBU wires	32	53	Ω
tCableDelay_SBU	Cable propagation delay on the SBU wire		26	ns
rCable_SBU	DC resistance of SBU wires in the cable in USB		40	Ω
vCable_SBU	Cable voltage swing on SBU wires	−0.3	4.0	V
Insertion Loss[1]	Cable insertion Loss		5 @ 0.5 MHz 7 @ 1 MHz 12 @ 10 MHz 13 @ 25 MHz 15 @ 50 MHz 16 @ 100 MHz	dB
iCableSBU	Maximum end-to-end current	−25	+25	mA

Note 1. Measurement referenced to 50 Ohms.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.6.2.2.2 Optically Isolated Cables

OIACs are not required to support SBU1/2 for *USB 3.2* support. SBUs are not usable until the cable has entered an Alternate Mode. OIACs which choose to support SBU signals shall meet the requirements of the Alternate Mode(s) they support. Definition of the SBU requirements for Alternate Modes is outside the scope of this document.

6.6.3 USB 2.0

The *USB 2.0* support depends on the type of active cable.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.6.3.1 Short Active Cables

Short active cables shall meet the *USB 2.0* requirements defined in Section 3.7.2.4 and 3.7.2.6.

Note: Active Cables greater than 5m report the number of hub hops consumed in the Active Cable VDOs.

6.6.3.2 Optically Isolated Active Cables

OIACs forward *USB 3.2* and do not forward *USB 2.0*. The OIAC will take action to reset the link when the USB Device drops from *USB 3.2* to *USB 2.0*.

During the initial connection the OIAC shall present as a *USB 2.0* DFP and provide a 15K Ohm pull down on the D+/D– pins on both ends of the cable. The cable plug shall not issue a *USB 2.0* Reset in this state.

The OIAC cable plug shall issue a *USB 2.0* Reset upon detecting a *USB 2.0* connection on D+/D– (LS, FS, or HS *USB 2.0* connection). The cable plug shall issue a *USB 2.0* Bus Reset by pulling D+ and D– low for at least 50 ms.

The OIAC shall implement a tDisableCount counter to determine how many times the cable has transitioned from *USB 3.2* to *USB 2.0*. The tDisableCount counter shall be reset to zero on either condition:

- Power on Reset of the OIAC, or
- Successful transition to *USB 3.2* U0.

The OIAC shall present and latch a *USB 2.0* billboard when tDisableCount counter reaches three.

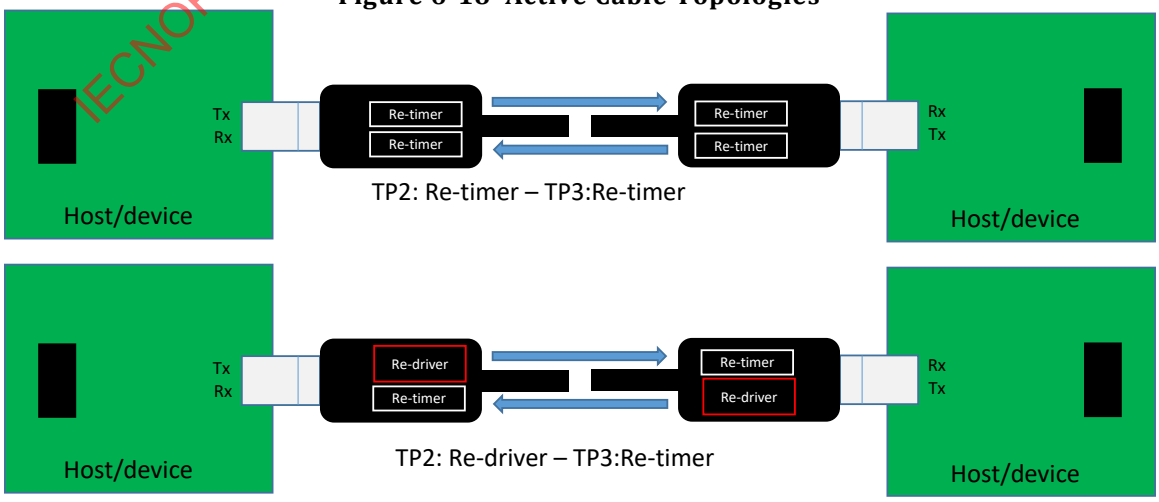
6.6.4 USB 3.2

Active cables shall meet the requirements in this section regardless of length. Active cables shall incorporate AC-coupling from the plug to repeater on both the *USB 3.2* TX and RX signals. Active cables shall provide a discharge path for discharging the AC-coupling capacitors in the cable on unplug per *USB 3.2*.

6.6.4.1 USB 3.2 Active Cable Architectures

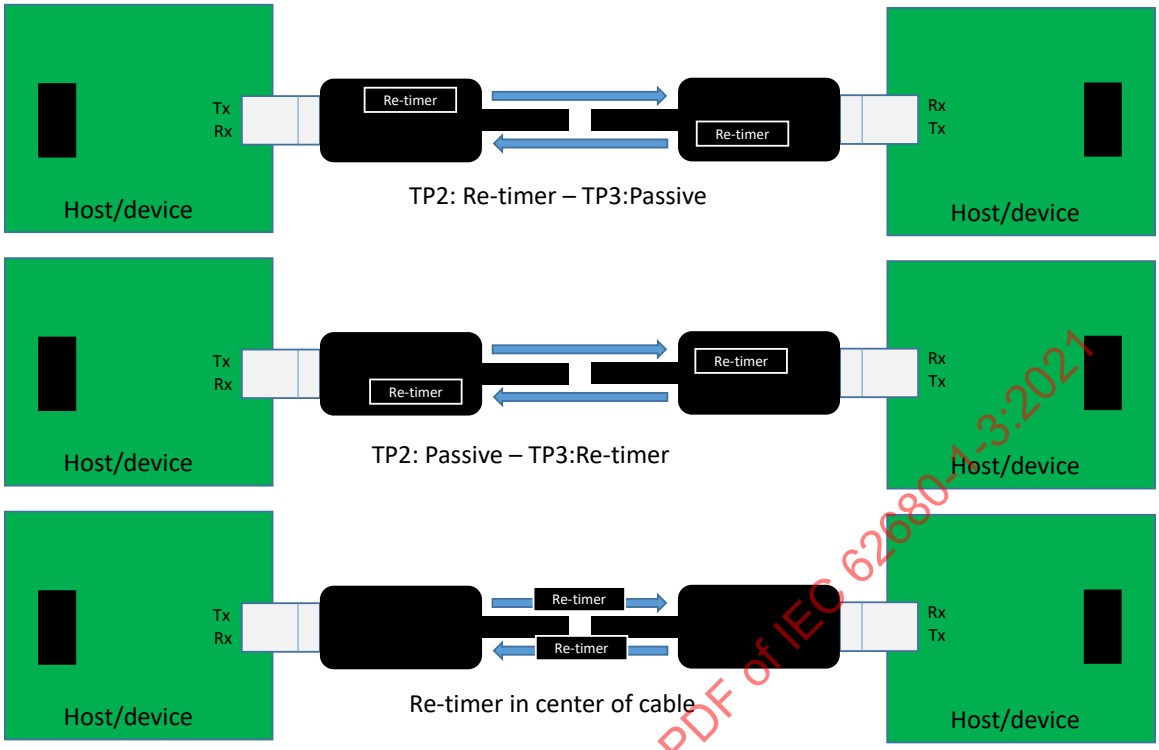
Active cables may have the combinations of re-timers and re-drivers as illustrated in Figure 6-18. Active cables without at least one re-timer are out of scope. Active cables without re-timers connected to TP3 are out of scope. Active cables shall support the features defined in Table 6-2.

Figure 6-18 Active Cable Topologies



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.



6.6.4.2 USB 3.2 Power-on and Rx.Detect

Active cables shall present a high impedance to ground of $Z_{RX\text{-}HIGH\text{-}IMP\text{-}DC\text{-}POS}$ when not powered. Active cables shall present a high impedance to ground of $Z_{RX\text{-}HIGH\text{-}IMP\text{-}DC\text{-}POS}$ at initial power-on. The active cable shall perform far-end receiver termination detection on both cable ends upon receiving V_{CONN}. Upon detecting a far-end low-impedance receiver termination ($R_{RX\text{-}DC}$), the active cable shall enable its low-impedance receiver termination ($R_{RX\text{-}DC}$) to mirror the presence of the Host/Device. The active cable shall perform far-end receiver termination detection for Repeaters per *USB 3.2* including in low power states U2/U3.

An active cable shall complete power-on and far-end receiver termination detection through the cable within $t_{FWD_RX.DETECT}$.

Table 6-16 Active Cable Power-on Requirements

Name	Minimum	Maximum	Units
$Z_{RX\text{-}HIGH\text{-}IMP\text{-}DC\text{-}POS}$	Per *USB 3.2*	Per *USB 3.2*	
$R_{RX\text{-}DC}$	Per *USB 3.2*	Per *USB 3.2*	
$t_{FWD_RX.DETECT}$		42[1]	Ms

Note 1: 84 ms – (2 * 12 ms + 18 ms) worst case.

Active cables including OIACs shall reflect the receiver terminations across the cable to replicate the behavior of a passive cable.

6.6.4.3 USB 3.2 U0 Delay

All active cables shall meet the *USB 3.2* delay defined in Table 6-17.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table 6-17 OIAC Maximum USB 3.2 U0 Delay

USB 3.2 Gen	Cable Maximum U0 Delay	Description
Gen1	3000 ns	Active cables with *USB 3.2* Gen1 latency larger than 125 ns may not function correctly when used in conjunction with host, devices, and hubs which do not support the extended timers required in the USB 3.1 Specification Revision 1.0 (July 26, 2013) and USB 3.1 Pending_HP_Timer ECN.
Gen2	3000 ns	Active cables with *USB 3.2* Gen2 latency larger than 305 ns may not function correctly when used in conjunction with host, devices, and hubs which do not support the extended timers required in the USB 3.1 Specification Revision 1.0 (July 26, 2013) and USB 3.1 Pending_HP_Timer ECN.

6.6.4.3.1 OIAC Legacy Adapter

Table 6-18 defines the all scenarios in which an OIAC will not function without an OIAC legacy adapter between the OIAC and the Legacy Device, Hub, or Host.

The OIAC Adapter requires the following capabilities:

1. USB Type-C DRP/Source on the upward facing port connected to the OIAC,
2. *USB PD* on the upward facing port connected to the OIAC,
3. *USB 3.2* Hub incorporating the Pending_HP_Timer ECN, and
4. Optional: *USB 2.0* to *USB 3.2* transaction translator on the downstream facing port (only needed if connecting to *USB 2.0*-only devices, hubs, or hosts).

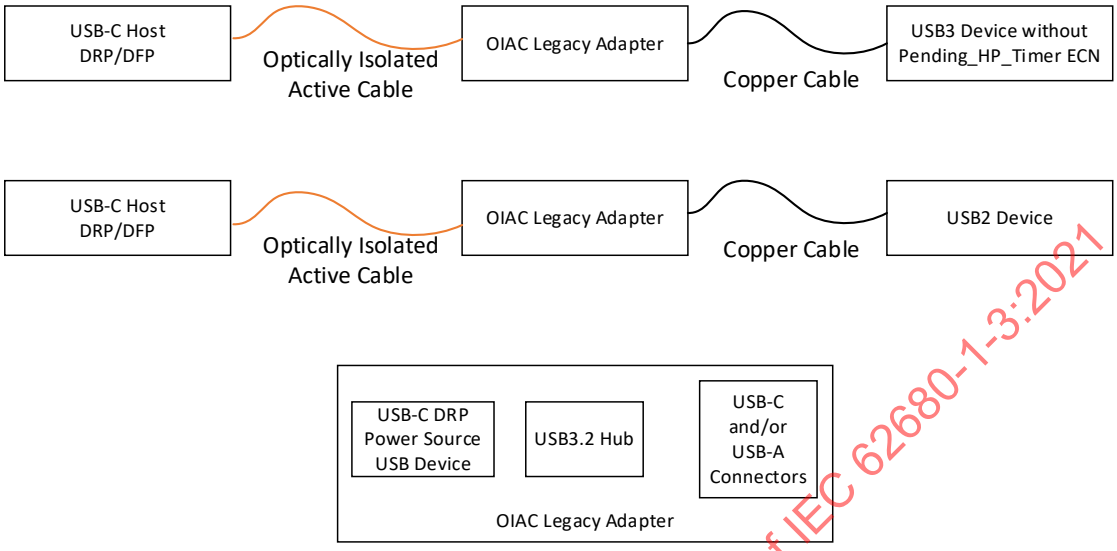
Table 6-18 Usages for OIAC That Require an Adapter or Hub

USB Device, Hub, or Host Scenarios which require an OIAC Adapter					
Connector	**Power Role**	**Data Role**	**USB PD**	**USB 3.2 Generation**	**USB 2.0**
USB Type-C	Sink only	-	-	-	-
	-	UFP only	-	-	-
	DRP	UFP only DRD	No USB PD	-	-
			USB PD R2/R3	USB 3.2 without the Pending_HP_Timer ECN	-
			-	-	USB 2.0 only
Any non-USB Type-C	-	-	-	-	-

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-19 Illustrations of Usages for OIAC That Require an Adapter or Hub



6.6.4.4 USB 3.2 U-State Power Requirements

Active cables shall meet the VCONN power requirements in Table 6-19. These requirements are for the entire cable not just a cable plug.

Table 6-19 USB 3.2 U-State Requirements

State	Maximum Power Consumption VCONN	Target Power Consumption VCONN	Power Consumption Notes
U0	1.0 W single-lane 1.5 W dual-lane		Applies to POLLING.LFPS, TRAINING, and RECOVERY states.
U1	≤ U0 power		Forwarding LFPS is required
U2	≤ U1 power		Forwarding LFPS is required
U3	5 mW	2 mW	eMarker in sleep.
Rx.Detect	5 mW	2 mW	Rx.Detect period may be lengthened when no *USB 3.2* terminations have been detected. eMarker in sleep.
eSS.Disabled	5 mW	1 mW	*USB 3.2* is disabled. eMarker in sleep.

Note: Ra must be completely removed or very high impedance to meet the power requirements in U3, Rx.Detect, and eSS.Disabled.

6.6.4.5 USB 3.2 U-State Exit Latency

Active cables shall meet the U-state exit latency defined in *USB 3.2* Appendix E.

6.6.4.6 USB 3.2 Signal Swing

An active cable transmitter only has to drive 8.5 dB insertion loss at 5 GHz to the Host/Device controller receiver for *USB 3.2* Gen2, if the transmitter is located in the cable plug next to the receiving port.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

A Host/Device controller transmitter must drive a total loss of 23 dB at 5 GHz to the far side for *USB 3.2* Gen2. The difference in loss budget allows the active cable transmitter swing to be reduced. An active cable receiver can assume a larger receiver swing than in the Host/Device for the same reason.

Figure 6-20 defines the SuperSpeed electrical test points and is copied from the *USB 3.2* specification. Figure 6-21 indicates the test points and test equipment connections.

Figure 6-20 SuperSpeed USB Electrical Test Points

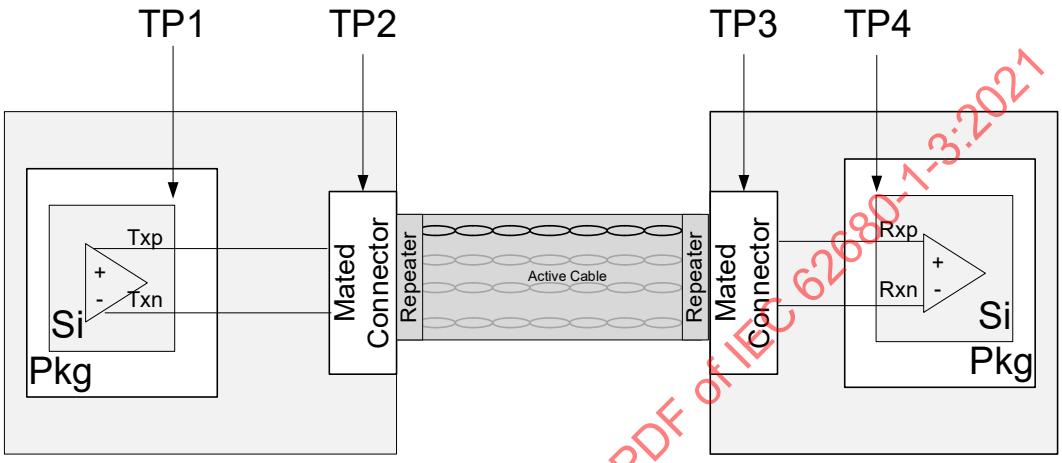
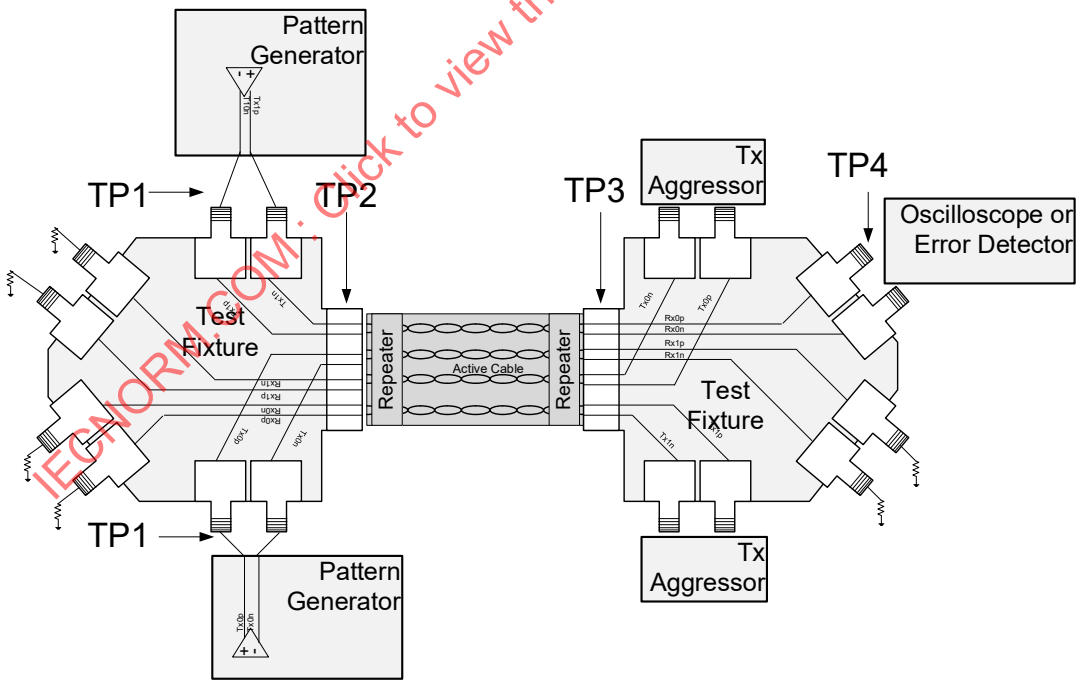


Figure 6-21 SuperSpeed USB Compliance Test Setup



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.6.4.6.1 TP1 – Active Cable Input Stressed Source

The active cable input stressed source is generated at TP1 per Table 6-20 for amplitude and per Table 6-21 for jitter. SSC shall be present in the stressed signal at TP1. Table 6-20 is a subset of the *USB 3.2* Table 6-18. Table 6-21 is a subset of *USB 3.2* Table 6-28. If any discrepancy exists between this specification and the *USB 3.2* specification, the *USB 3.2* specification shall take precedence.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

The maximum swing with the maximum de-emphasis and pre-shoot shall be tested with the minimum loss compliance test board. The minimum swing with the minimum de-emphasis and pre-shoot shall be tested with the maximum loss compliance test board. The input jitter composition is the same for both the minimum and maximum swing stressed sources.

The active cable shall function over the range of parameter in *USB 3.2* Table 6-17 and Table 6-20.

Table 6-20 Active Cable USB 3.2 Stressed Source Swing, TP1

Symbol	Parameter	Gen1 (5.0 GT/s)	Gen2 (10 GT/s)	Units	Comments
$V_{TX-DIFF-PP}$	Differential p-p TX voltage swing	0.8 (min) 1.2 (max)	0.8 (min) 1.2 (max)	V	Nominal is 1 V p-p
$V_{TX-DE-RATIO}$	TX de-emphasis	*USB 3.2* Table 6-17	−3.1 ± 1.0	dB	Nominal is 3.5 dB for Gen1 operation. Gen2 transmitter equalization requirements are described in *USB 3.2* Section 6.7.5.2.
$V_{PRESHOOT}$	TX Preshoot	*USB 3.2* Table 6-17	2.2 ± 1.0	dB	Gen2 transmitter equalization requirements are described in *USB 3.2* Section 6.7.5.2.

Table 6-21 Active Cable USB 3.2 Stressed Source Jitter, TP1

Symbol	Parameter	Gen1 (5.0 GT/s)	Gen2 (10 GT/s)	Units	Notes
f1	Tolerance corner	4.9	7.5	MHz	
J_{Rj}	Random Jitter	0.0121	0.0100	UI rms	1
J_{Rj_p-p}	Random Jitter peak-peak at 10^{-12}	0.17	0.14	UI p-p	1,4
J_{Pj_500kHZ}	Sinusoidal Jitter	2	4.76	UI p-p	1,2,3
J_{Pj_1Mhz}	Sinusoidal Jitter	1	2.03	UI p-p	1,2,3
J_{Pj_2MHz}	Sinusoidal Jitter	0.5	0.87	UI p-p	1,2,3
J_{Pj_4MHz}	Sinusoidal Jitter	N/A	0.37	UI p-p	1,2,3
J_{Pj_f1}	Sinusoidal Jitter	0.2	0.17	UI p-p	1,2,3
J_{Pj_50MHz}	Sinusoidal Jitter	0.2	0.17	UI p-p	1,2,3
J_{Pj_100MHz}	Sinusoidal Jitter	N/A	0.17	UI p-p	1,2,3

Notes:

1. All parameters measured at TP1. The test point is shown in Figure 6-20 and Figure 6-21.
2. Due to time limitations at compliance testing, only a subset of frequencies can be tested. However, the RX is required to tolerate Pj at all frequencies between the compliance test points.
3. During the RX tolerance test, SSC is generated by test equipment and present at all times. Each JPj source is then added and tested to the specification limit one at a time.
4. Random jitter is also present during the RX tolerance test.
5. The JTOL specs for Gen2 comprehend jitter peaking with re-timers in the system and has a 25 dB/decade slope.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6.6.4.6.2 TP2 – Active Cable Input (Informative)

The values in Table 6-22 indicate the informative input signal swings at TP2 for an active cable. Table 6-22 is included to provide guidance beyond the normative requirements of Table 6-20 and Table 6-21. An active cable can be fully compliant with the normative requirements of this

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

specification and not meet all the values in Table 6-22. Similarly, an active cable that meets all the values in Table 6-22, is not guaranteed to be in fully compliance with the normative part of this specification.

Table 6-22 Active Cable USB 3.2 Input Swing at TP2 (Informative)

Symbol	Parameter	Gen1 (5.0 GT/s)	Gen2 (10 GT/s)	Units	Comments
$V_{TX-DIFF-PP}$	Differential p-p TX voltage swing	250 (min) 1000 (max)	250 (min) 850 (max)	mV	Nominal is 550 mV p-p
$V_{TX-DE-RATIO}$	TX de-emphasis	0 (min) 4.0 (max)	2.1 (min) 4.1 (max)	dB	There is no de-emphasis requirement for Gen1.
$V_{PRESHOOT}$	TX Preshoot	NA	1.2 (min) 3.2 (max)	dB	Applicable to *USB 3.2* Gen2 operation only.

6.6.4.6.3 TP3 – Active Cable Output (Informative)

The values in Table 6-23 indicate the informative output signal swings at TP3 for an active cable. Table 6-23 is included to provide guidance beyond the normative requirements of Table 6-20 and Table 6-21. An active cable can be fully compliant with the normative requirements of this specification and not meet all the values in Table 6-23. Similarly, an active cable that meets all the values in Table 6-23, is not guaranteed to be in full compliance with the normative part of this specification.

Table 6-23 Active Cable USB 3.2 Output Swing at TP3 (Informative)

Symbol	Parameter	Gen1 (5.0 GT/s)	Gen2 (10 GT/s)	Units	Comments
$V_{TX-DIFF-PP}$	Differential RX peak-to-peak voltage	300 (min) 850 (max)	300 (min) 850 (max)	mV	Measured after the RX EQ function Nominal is 0.5 V p-p
$V_{TX-DE-RATIO-GEN1}$	TX de-emphasis	0 (min) 4.0 (max)	NA	dB	No pre-shoot allowed
$V_{TX-DE-RATIO}$ + $V_{PRESHOOT-GEN2}$	TX de-emphasis + TX Preshoot	NA	0 (min) 3.0 (max)	dB	Sum of the de-emphasis and pre-shoot. There is no de-emphasis and pre-shoot requirement.

6.6.4.6.4 TP4 – Active Cable Output

The active cable transmitter output is defined at TP4 for both high and low loss channels. The requirements for TP4 are defined in the *USB 3.2* specification Table 6-20. The input signal for the test shall be applied at TP1 as defined in the *USB 3.2* specification.

The low loss test board shall be used to test the maximum output swing. The maximum loss test board shall be used to test the minimum output swing. Jitter must be met with both test boards.

The active cable bit-error-rate shall be tested at TP4 and meet or exceed a BER of 10^{-12}. The error detector used shall have the ability to remove SKP ordered sets.

6.6.5 Return Loss

Return loss is defined in the *USB 3.2* specification.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.7 Active Cables That Support Alternate Modes

Active cables may support Alternate Modes. Active cables that support Alternate Modes shall be discoverable via *USB PD*. They shall use the standard *USB PD* mechanisms to discover, enter and exit Alternate Modes.

6.7.1 Discover SVIDs

Active cables that support an Alternate Mode shall report support for SVIDs on SOP' only.

6.7.2 Discover Modes

Active cables that support an Alternate Mode shall report support for Modes on SOP' only.

6.7.3 Enter/Exit Modes

Enter and ***Exit*** mode shall be communicated on SOP' and on SOP'' when the SOP'' Controller Present bit is set in the Active Cable. It is recommended that ***Enter Mode*** be sent initially to SOP' and then SOP" if supported and then SOP. It is recommended ***Exit Mode*** be sent initially to SOP and then to SOP" if supported and then SOP'.

6.7.4 Power in Alternate Modes

The power dissipation in an active cable's Alternate Mode shall maintain the plug's Maximum Skin Temperature below the requirement defined in Table 6-14.

Alternate Modes should reduce power in active cables in sleep states for best user experience.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

A Audio Adapter Accessory Mode

A.1 Overview

Analog audio headsets are supported by multiplexing four analog audio signals onto pins on the USB Type-C® connector when in the Audio Adapter Accessory Mode. The four analog audio signals are the same as those used by a traditional 3.5 mm headset jack. This makes it possible to use existing analog headsets with a 3.5 mm to USB Type-C adapter. The audio adapter architecture allows for an audio peripheral to provide up to 500 mA back to the system for charging.

An analog audio adapter could be a very basic USB Type-C adapter that only has a 3.5 mm jack or it could be an analog audio adapter with a 3.5 mm jack and a USB Type-C receptacle to enable charge-through. The analog audio headset shall not use a USB Type-C plug to replace the 3.5 mm plug.

A USB host that implements support for USB Type-C Analog Audio Adapter Accessory mode shall also support USB Type-C Digital Audio (TCDA) with nominally equivalent functionality and performance. A USB device that implements support for USB Type-C Analog Audio Adapter Accessory mode should also support TCDA with nominally equivalent audio functionality and performance.

A.2 Detail

An analog audio adapter shall use a captive cable with a USB Type-C plug or include an integrated USB Type-C plug.

The analog audio adapter shall identify itself by presenting a resistance to GND of ≤ Ra on both A5 (CC) and B5 (VCONN) of the USB Type-C plug. If pins A5 and B5 are shorted together, the effective resistance to GND shall be less than Ra/2.

A DFP that supports analog audio adapters shall detect the presence of an analog audio adapter by detecting a resistance to GND of less than Ra on both A5 (CC) and B5 (VCONN).

Table A-1 shows the pin assignments at the USB Type-C plug that shall be used to support analog audio.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table A-1 USB Type-C Analog Audio Pin Assignments

Plug Pin	USB Name	Analog Audio Function	Location on 3.5 mm Jack	Notes
A5	CC			Connected to digital GND with resistance ≤ Ra. System uses for presence detect.
B5	VCONN			Connected to digital GND with resistance ≤ Ra. System uses for presence detect.
A6/B6	Dp	Right	Ring 1	Analog audio right channel A6 and B6 shall be shorted together in the adapter.
A7/B7	Dn	Left	Tip	Analog audio left channel A7 and B7 shall be shorted together in the adapter.
A8	SBU1	Mic/AGND	Ring 2	Analog audio microphone (OMTP & YD/T) or Audio GND (CTIA).
B8	SBU2	AGND/Mic	Sleeve	Audio GND (OMTP & YD/T or analog audio microphone (CTIA).
A1/A12 B1/B12	GND			Digital GND (DGND) used as the ground reference and current return for CC1, CC2, and VBUS.
A4/A9 B4/B9	VBUS			Not connected unless the audio adapter uses this connection to provide 5 V @ 500 mA for charging the system's battery.
Others				Other pins shall not be connected.

The analog audio signaling presented by the headset on the 3.5 mm jack is expected to comply with at least one of the following:

- The traditional American headset jack pin assignment, with the jack sleeve used for the microphone signal, supported by CTIA-The Wireless Association
- "Local Connectivity: Wired Analogue Audio" from the Open Mobile Terminal Forum (OMTP) forum
- "Technical Requirements and Test Methods for Wired Headset Interface of Mobile Communication Terminal" (YT/D 1885-2009) from the China Communications Standards Association

When in the Audio Adapter Accessory Mode, the system shall not provide VCONN power on either CC1 or CC2. Failure to do this may result in VCONN being shorted to GND when an analog audio peripheral is present.

The system shall connect A6/B6, A7/B7, A8 and B8 to an appropriate audio codec upon entry into the Audio Adapter Accessory Mode. The connections for A8 (SBU1) and B8 (SBU2) pins are dependent on the adapter's orientation. Depending on the orientation, the microphone and analog ground pins may be swapped. These pins are already reversed between the two major standards for headset jacks and support for this is built into the headset connection of many codecs or can be implemented using an autonomous audio headset switch. The system shall work correctly with either configuration.

A.3 Electrical Requirements

The maximum ratings for pin voltages are referenced to GND (pins A1, A12, B1, and B12). The non-GND pins on the plug shall be isolated from GND on the USB Type-C connector and shall be isolated from the USB plug shell. To minimize the possibility of ground loops between systems, AGND shall

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

be connected to GND only within the system containing the USB Type-C receptacle. Both the system and audio device implementations shall be able to tolerate the Right, Left, Mic, and AGND signals being shorted to GND. The current provided by the amplifier driving the Right and Left signals shall not exceed ±150 mA per audio channel, even when driving a 0 Ω load.

Table A-2 shows allowable voltage ranges on the pins in the USB Type-C plug that shall be met.

Table A-2 USB Type-C Analog Audio Pin Electrical Parameter Ratings

Plug Pin	USB Name	Analog Audio Function	Min	Max	Units	Notes
A6/B6	Dp	Right	−3.0	3.0	V	A6 and B6 shall be shorted together in the analog audio adapter
A7/B7	Dn	Left	−3.0	3.0	V	A7 and B7 shall be shorted together in the analog audio adapter
A8	SBU1	Mic/AGND	−0.4	3.3	V	
B8	SBU2	AGND/Mic	−0.4	3.3	V	

The maximum voltage ratings for Left and Right signals are selected to encompass a 2 Vrms sine wave (2.828 Vp = 5.657 Vpp = 6 dBV) which is a common full-scale voltage for headset audio output.

Headset microphones operate on a positive bias voltage provided by the system's audio codec and AC-couple the audio signal onto it. Some headsets may produce an audio signal level up to 0.5 Vrms (0.707 Vp = 1.414 Vpp = -6 dBV) but this is biased so that the voltage does not swing below GND. The bias voltage during operation is typically around 1.25 V but it varies quite a bit depending on the specifics of the manufacturer's design, therefore the maximum voltage rating for the SBU pins is selected to allow a variety of existing solutions.

While one SBU pin carries the Mic signal, the other SBU pin serves as AGND carrying the return current for Left, Right, and Mic. If we assume a worst-case headset speaker impedance of 16 Ω per speaker, then the worst-case return current for the speakers is ± 0.2 A. If we assume that the worst-case resistance from the AGND pin to GND within the USB Type-C system is 1 Ω (due to FET R_{ON} within the signal multiplexer, contact, and trace resistances), then the voltage of the AGND pin with respect to USB Type-C GND can vary between ± 0.2 V. The minimum voltage rating for the SBU pins has been selected to allow for this scenario with some additional margin to account for Mic signal return current and tolerances.

The system shall exhibit no more than -48 dB linear crosstalk between the Left and Right audio channels and exhibit no more than -51 dB linear crosstalk from the Left or Right channel to the Mic channel. Crosstalk measurements shall be made using a measurement adapter plug that supports USB Type-C analog audio connections according to Table A-1. In the measurement adapter, the Left and Right channels are terminated with 32 Ω resistors to AGND, the Mic channel is terminated with 2k Ω resistor to AGND; AGND is connected to USB Type-C Plug Pin A8, and the Mic channel is connected to USB Type-C Plug Pin B8.

Crosstalk shall be measured by using the system to drive a sine wave signal to the Left output channel and zero signal to the Right output channel. The system shall configure the Mic channel according to the default Mic operating mode supported by the system. AC voltage levels at the Left, Right and Mic channels are measured across the corresponding termination resistors using a third-octave filter at the sine signal frequency. Left – Right crosstalk is reported as ratio of the Right channel voltage to the Left channel voltage expressed in decibels. Similarly, the Left – Mic crosstalk is reported. The measurements shall be conducted at 31.5, 63, 125, 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000 and 16000 Hz frequencies. The measurements shall be repeated so that the sine wave signal is driven to the Right channel and Right – Left and Right – Mic crosstalk results are obtained. Both USB Type-C plug orientations shall be measured."

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

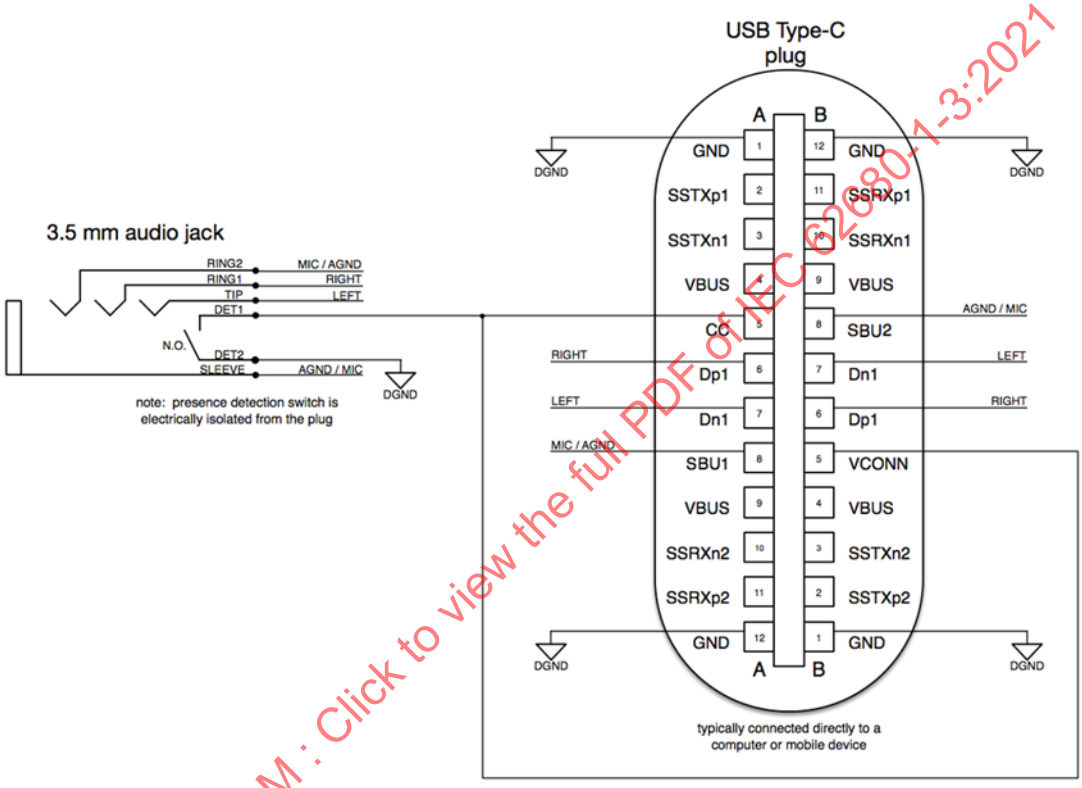
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

A.4 Example Implementations

A.4.1 Passive 3.5 mm to USB Type-C Adapter – Single Pole Detection Switch

Figure A-1 illustrates how a simple 3.5 mm analog audio adapter can be made. In this design, there is an audio plug that contains a single-pole detection switch that is used to completely disconnect the CC and VCONN pins from digital GND when no 3.5 mm plug is inserted. This has the effect of triggering the USB Type-C presence detect logic upon insertion or removal of either the 3.5 mm plug or the audio adapter itself.

Figure A-1 Example Passive 3.5 mm to USB Type-C Adapter



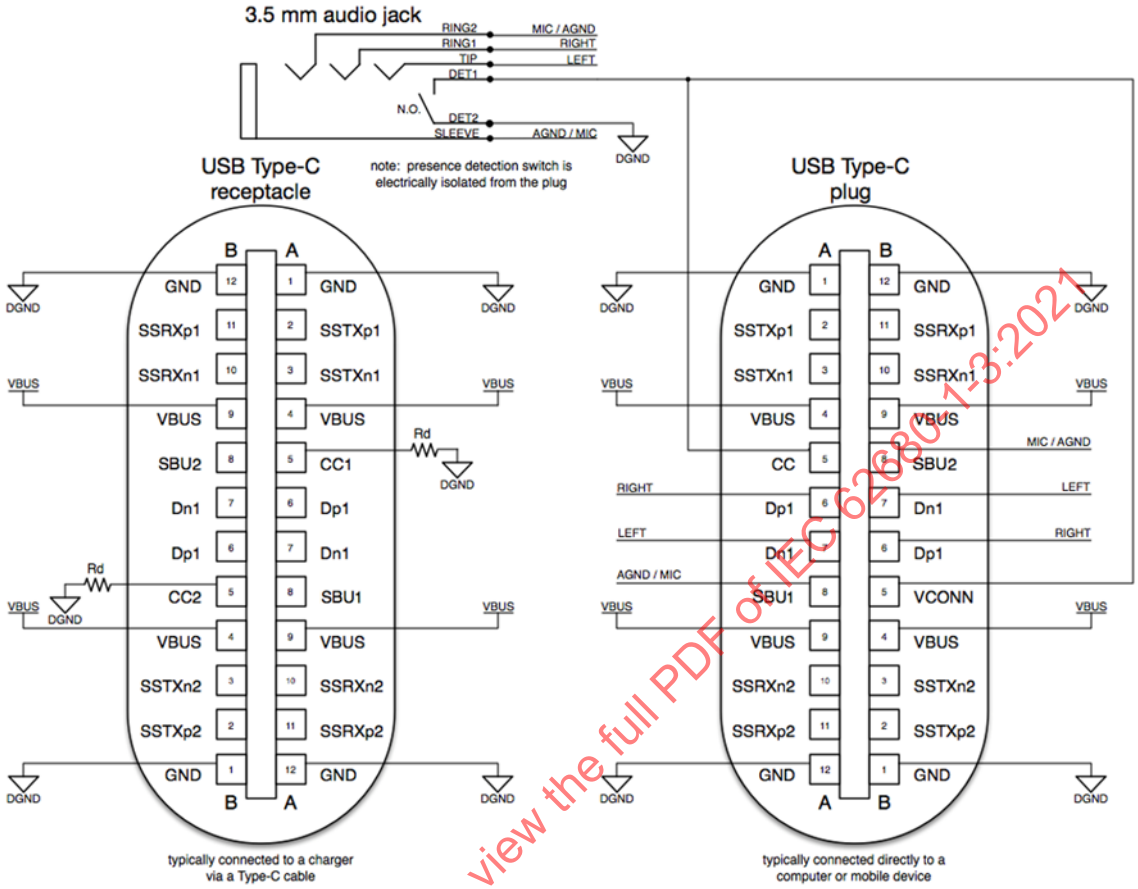
A.4.2 3.5 mm to USB Type-C Adapter Supporting 500 mA Charge-Through

Figure A-2 illustrates a 3.5 mm analog audio adapter that supports charge-through operation. Charging power comes into the adapter through a USB Type-C receptacle and is routed directly to the adapter's USB Type-C plug, which is plugged into the device being charged. This design is limited to providing 500 mA of charge-through current since it has no way to advertise greater current-sourcing capability. The USB Type-C receptacle presents Rd on both of its CC pins because a CC pull-down must be present for the receptacle to indicate that it wants to consume VBUS current. USB Type-C systems that support analog audio should ensure that charging is not interrupted by insertion or removal of the 3.5 mm audio plug and that audio is not interrupted by insertion or removal of the cable connected to the audio adapter's USB Type-C receptacle by using the system's presence detection logic monitoring the states of both the CC1 and CC2 pins and VBUS.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure A-2 Example 3.5 mm to USB Type-C Adapter Supporting 500 mA Charge-Through



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

B Debug Accessory Mode

B.1 Overview

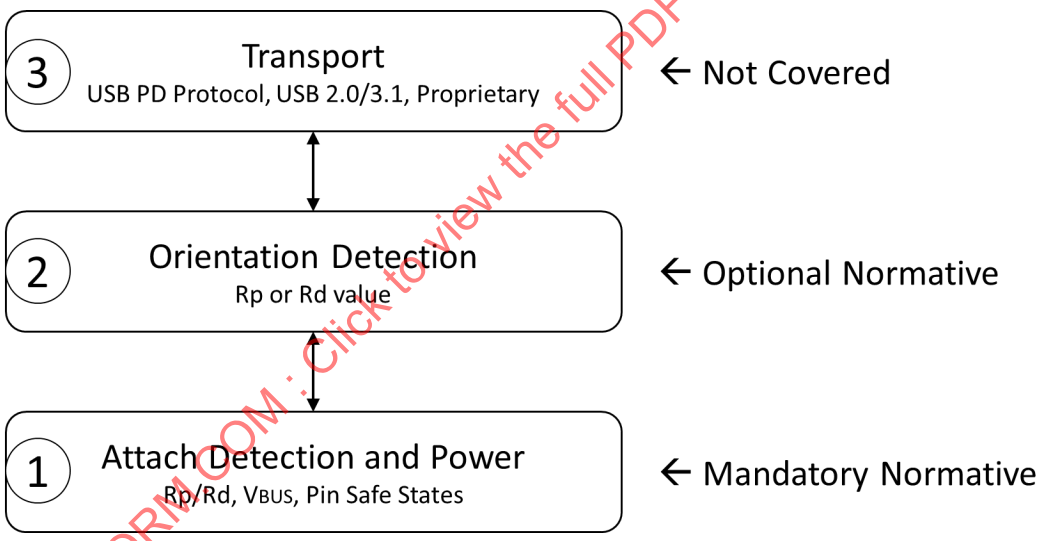
This appendix covers the functional requirements for the USB Type-C® Debug Accessory Mode (DAM), Debug and Test System (DTS), and Target System (TS). The USB Type-C connector is ideal for debug of closed-chassis, form-factor devices. Debug covers many areas, ranging from detailed JTAG Test Access Port (TAP)-level debug in a lab to high-level debug of software applications in production. Lab debug requires early debug access to hardware registers soon after reset, whereas software debug uses kernel debuggers, etc. to access software state. Debug Accessory Mode in USB Type-C enables debug of closed-chassis, form-factor devices by re-defining the USB Type-C ports for debug purposes.

Basic debug requirements are defined as a standard feature, and additional debug features may be added as per vendor specifications.

B.2 Functional

The USB Type-C Debug Accessory Mode follows a layered structure as shown in Figure B-1, defining the minimum physical layer for Attach, Detection and Power. Orientation detection is optional normative. The transport layer is left proprietary and is not covered in this document.

Figure B-1 USB Type-C Debug Accessory Layered Behavior



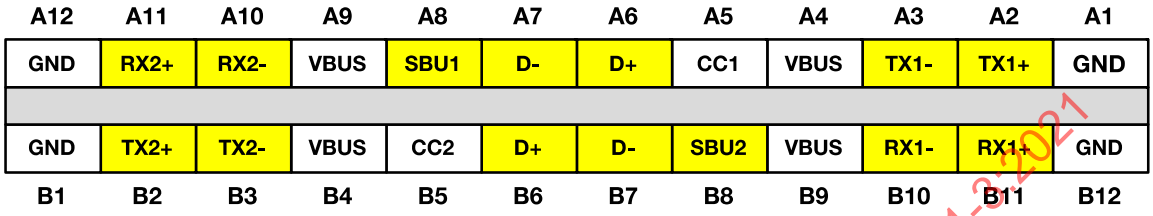
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

B.2.1 Signal Summary

Figure B-2 shows the pin assignments of the DTS plug that are used to support DAM. The pins highlighted in yellow are those available to be configured for debug signals. Both CC1 and CC2 are used for current advertisement and optional orientation detection.

Figure B-2 DTS Plug Interface



The DTS and TS must follow the USB Safe State as defined in the *USB PD* specification at all times (whether in DAM or not).

B.2.2 Port Interoperability

Table B-1 summarizes the expected results when interconnecting a DTS Source, Sink or DRP port to a TS Source, Sink or DRP port.

Table B-1 DTS to TS Port Interoperability

	DTS Source	DTS Sink	DTS DRP
TS Sink	Functional	Non-functional[1]	Functional
TS Sink w/ Accessory Support	Functional	Non-functional[1]	Functional
TS DRP	Functional	Functional	Functional
TS Source	Non-functional[1]	Functional	Functional

1. In the cases where no function results, neither port shall be harmed by this connection. Following the USB Safe State ensures this.

B.2.3 Debug Accessory Mode Entry

The typical flow for the configuration of the interface in the general case of a DTS to a TS is as follows:

1. Detect a valid connection between the DTS (Source, Sink, or DRP) and TS (Source, Sink, or DRP)
2. Optionally determine orientation of the plug in the receptacle
3. Optionally establish *USB PD* communication over CC for advanced power delivery negotiation and Alternate Modes. *USB PD* communication is allowed only if the optional orientation of the plug is determined.
4. Establish test access connections with the available USB Type-C signals

The DTS DRP will connect as either a Source or a Sink, but its state diagram gives preference to the Source role.

B.2.3.1 Detecting a Valid DTS-to-TS Connection

The general concept for setting up a valid connection between a DTS and TS is based on being able to detect the typical USB Type-C termination resistances. However, detecting a Debug Accessory Mode

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

connection requires that both CC pins must detect a pull-up (Rp) or pull-down (Rd) termination. A USB Type-C Cable does not pass both CC wires so a receptacle to receptacle Debug Accessory Mode connection cannot be detected.

A DTS is only allowed to connect to a TS that is presenting either Rp/Rp or Rd/Rd. Otherwise, the TS does not support Debug Accessory Mode.

To detect either an Rp/Rp or Rd/Rd, the DTS must be a captive cable or a direct-attach device with a USB Type-C plug and the TS must have a USB Type-C receptacle.

B.2.4 Connection State Diagrams

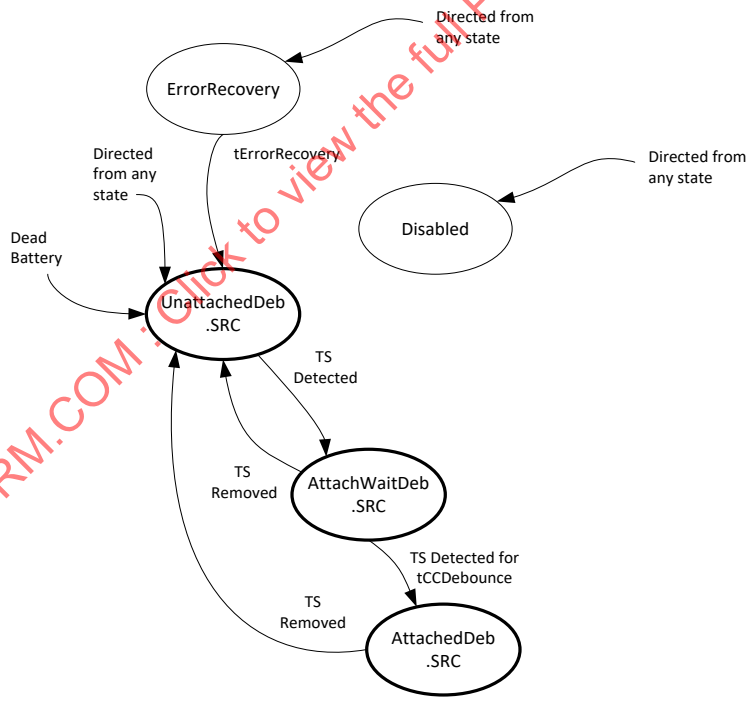
This section provides reference connection state diagrams for CC-based behaviors of the DTS. The TS connection state diagrams are found in Section 4.5.2.

Refer to Section B.2.4.1 for the specific state transition requirements related to each state shown in the diagrams.

Refer to Section B.2.4.3 for a description of which states are mandatory for each port type and a list of states where *USB PD* communication is permitted.

Figure B-3 illustrates a connection state diagram for a DTS Source.

Figure B-3 Connection State Diagram: DTS Source

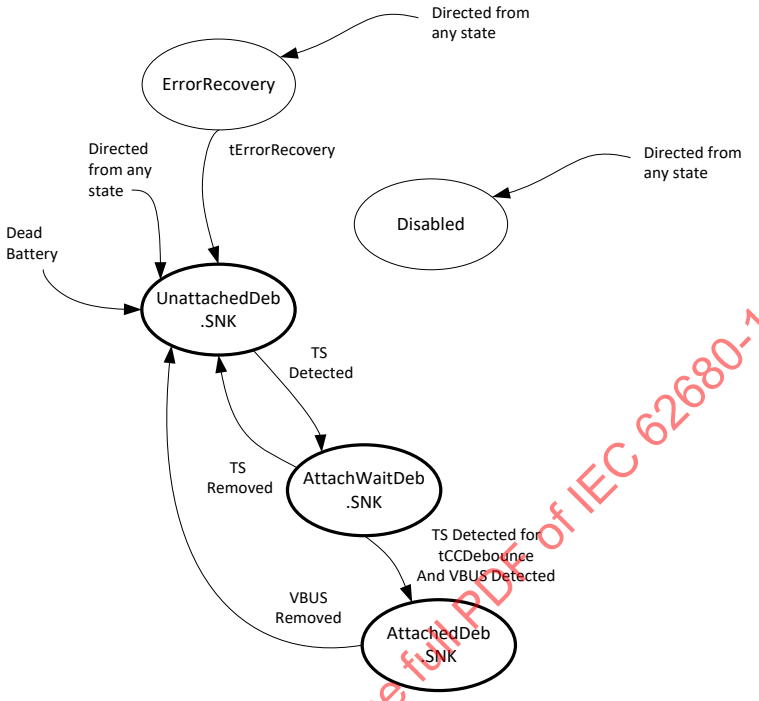


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure B-4 illustrates a connection state diagram for a simple DTS Sink.

Figure B-4 Connection State Diagram: DTS Sink

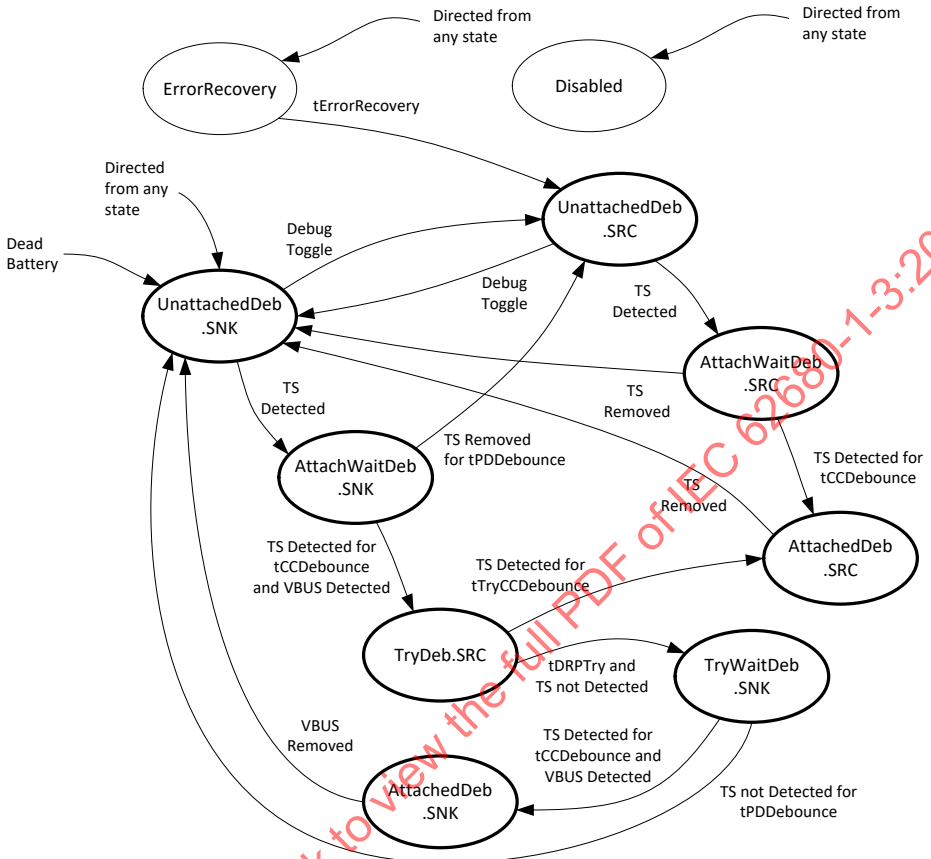


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure B-5 illustrates a connection state diagram for a DTS DRP.

Figure B-5 Connection State Diagram: DTS DRP



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

B.2.4.1 Connection State Machine Requirements

The DTS state machine requirements follow those outlined in Section 4.5.2.2 for the general USB Type-C state machines with the additional following states defined.

Note, VCONN shall not be driven by any DTS or TS port in any state.

B.2.4.1.1 Exiting From ErrorRecovery State

This state appears in Figure B-3, Figure B-4, and Figure B-5.

The ErrorRecovery state is where the DTS cycles its connection by removing all terminations from the CC pins for tErrorRecovery followed by transitioning to the appropriate UnattachedDeb.SNK or UnattachedDeb.SRC state based on DTS type.

The DTS should transition to the ErrorRecovery state from any other state when directed.

A DTS may choose not to support the ErrorRecovery state. If the ErrorRecovery state is not supported, the DTS shall be directed to the Disabled state if supported. If the Disabled state is not supported, the DTS shall be directed to either the UnattachedDeb.SNK or UnattachedDeb.SRC states.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

A DTS Sink shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SNK after tErrorRecovery.

A DTS Source shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SRC after tErrorRecovery.

A DTS DRP shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SRC after tErrorRecovery.

B.2.4.1.2 UnattachedDeb.SNK State

This state appears in Figure B-4 and Figure B-5.

When in the UnattachedDeb.SNK state, the DTS is waiting to detect the presence of a TS Source.

A DTS with a dead battery shall enter this state while unpowered.

B.2.4.1.2.1 UnattachedDeb.SNK Requirements

The DTS shall not drive VBUS.

Both CC pins shall be independently terminated to ground through Rd.

B.2.4.1.2.2 Exiting from UnattachedDeb.SNK State

The DTS shall transition to AttachWaitDeb.SNK when a TS Source connection is detected, as indicated by the SNK.Rp state on both of its CC pins.

A DTS DRP shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SRC within tDRPTransition after the state of one or both CC pins is SNK.Open for tDRP – dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, or if directed.

B.2.4.1.3 AttachWaitDeb.SNK State

This state appears in Figure B-4 and Figure B-5.

When in the AttachWaitDeb.SNK state, the DTS has detected the SNK.Rp state on both CC pins and is waiting for VBUS.

B.2.4.1.3.1 AttachWaitDeb.SNK Requirements

The requirements for this state are identical to UnattachedDeb.SNK.

B.2.4.1.3.2 Exiting from AttachWaitDeb.SNK State

A DTS Sink shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SNK when the state of one or both CC pins is SNK.Open for at least tPDDebounce.

A DTS DRP shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SRC when the state of one or both CC pins is SNK.Open for at least tPDDebounce.

A DTS Sink shall transition to AttachedDeb.SNK when neither CC pin is SNK.Open after tCCDebounce and VBUS is detected.

A DTS DRP shall transition to TryDeb.SRC when neither CC pin is SNK.Open after tCCDebounce and VBUS is detected.

B.2.4.1.4 AttachedDeb.SNK State

This state appears in Figure B-4 and Figure B-5.

When in the AttachedDeb.SNK state, the DTS is attached and operating as a DTS Sink.

B.2.4.1.4.1 AttachedDeb.SNK Requirements

This mode is for debug only

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

The port shall not drive VBUS.

The port shall provide an Rd as specified in Table 4-15 on both CC pins if orientation is not needed. See Section B.2.6 for orientation detection.

The port shall monitor to detect when VBUS is removed.

If the DTS needs to establish a *USB PD* communications, it shall do so only after entry to this state. In this state, the DTS takes on the initial *USB PD* role of UFP/Sink.

The DTS shall connect the debug signals for Debug Accessory Mode operation only after entry to this state.

The DTS may follow the DAM Sink Power Sub-State behavior specified in Section 4.5.2.3.

B.2.4.1.4.2 Exiting from AttachedDeb.SNK State

A DTS shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SNK when VBUS is no longer present.

B.2.4.1.5 UnattachedDeb.SRC State

This state appears in Figure B-3 and Figure B-5.

When in the UnattachedDeb.SRC state, the DTS is waiting to detect the presence of a TS Sink

B.2.4.1.5.1 UnattachedDeb.SRC Requirements

The DTS shall not drive VBUS.

The DTS shall source current on both CC pins independently.

The DTS shall provide a unique Rp value on each CC pin as specified in Section 4.5.2.3.

B.2.4.1.5.2 Exiting from UnattachedDeb.SRC State

The DTS shall transition to AttachWaitDeb.SRC when the SRC.Rd state is detected on both CC pins.

A DTS DRP shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SNK within tDRPTransition after dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, or if directed.

B.2.4.1.6 AttachWaitDeb.SRC State

This state appears in Figure B-3 and Figure B-5.

The AttachWaitDeb.SRC state is used to ensure that the state of both of the CC pins is stable after a TS Sink is connected.

B.2.4.1.6.1 AttachWaitDeb.SRC Requirements

The requirements for this state are identical to UnattachedDeb.SRC.

B.2.4.1.6.2 Exiting from AttachWaitDeb.SRC State

The DTS shall transition to AttachedDeb.SRC when VBUS is at vSafe0V and the SRC.Rd state is detected on both of the CC pins for at least tCCDebounce.

A DTS Source shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SRC and a DTS DRP to UnattachedDeb.SNK when the SRC.Open state is detected on either of the CC pins.

B.2.4.1.7 AttachedDeb.SRC State

This state appears in Figure B-3 and Figure B-5.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

When in the AttachedDeb.SRC state, the DTS is attached and operating as a DTS Source.

B.2.4.1.7.1 AttachedDeb.SRC Requirements

The DTS shall provide a unique Rp value on each CC pin as specified in Section B.2.4.2.

The DTS shall supply VBUS current at the level it advertises. See Section B.2.6.1.1 for advertising current level.

The DTS shall supply VBUS within tVBUSON of entering this state, and for as long as it is operating as a power source.

If the DTS needs to establish *USB PD* communications, it shall do so only after entry to this state. The DTS shall not initiate any *USB PD* communications until VBUS reaches vSafe5V. In this state, the DTS takes on the initial *USB PD* role of DFP/Source.

The DTS shall connect the debug signals for Debug Accessory Mode operation only after entry to this state.

B.2.4.1.7.2 Exiting from AttachedDeb.SRC State

A DTS Source shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SRC when the SRC.Open state is detected on either CC pin.

A DTS DRP shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SNK when SRC.Open is detected on either CC pin.

A DTS shall cease to supply VBUS within tVBUSOFF of exiting AttachedDeb.SRC.

B.2.4.1.8 TryDeb.SRC State

This state appears in Figure B-5.

When in the TryDeb.SRC state, the DTS DRP is querying to determine if the TS is also a DRP, to favor the DTS taking the Source role.

B.2.4.1.8.1 TryDeb.SRC Requirements

The DTS shall not drive VBUS.

The DTS shall source current on both CC pins independently.

The DTS shall provide a unique Rp value on each CC pin as specified in Section B.2.4.2.

B.2.4.1.8.2 Exiting from TryDeb.SRC State

The DTS shall transition to AttachedDeb.SRC when the SRC.Rd state is detected on both CC pins for at least tTryCCDebounce.

The DTS shall transition to TryWaitDeb.SNK after tDRPTry if the state of both CC pins is not SRC.Rd.

B.2.4.1.9 TryWaitDeb.SNK State

This state appears in Figure B-5.

When in the TryWaitDeb.SNK state, the DTS has failed to become a DTS Source and is waiting to attach as a DTS Sink.

B.2.4.1.9.1 TryWaitDeb.SNK Requirements

The DTS shall not drive VBUS.

Both CC pins shall be independently terminated to ground through Rd.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

B.2.4.1.9.2 Exiting from TryWaitDeb.SNK State

The DTS shall transition to AttachedDeb.SNK when neither CC pin is SNK.Open after tCCDebounce and VBUS is detected.

The DTS shall transition to UnattachedDeb.SNK when the state of one of the CC pins is SNK.Open for at least tPDDebounce or if VBUS is not detected within tPDDebounce.

B.2.4.2 Power Sub-State Requirements

B.2.4.2.1 TS Sink Power Sub-State Requirements

When in the DebugAccessory.SNK state and the DTS Source is supplying default VBUS, the TS Sink shall operate in one of the sub-states shown in Figure B-6. The initial TS Sink Power Sub-State is PowerDefaultDeb.SNK. Subsequently, the TS Sink Power Sub-State is determined by the DTS Source's USB Type-C current advertisement determined by the Rp value on each CC pin as shown in Table B-2. The TS Sink in the attached state shall remain within the TS Sink Power Sub-States until either VBUS is removed or a *USB PD* contract is established with the Source.

The TS Sink is only required to implement TS Sink Power Sub-State transitions if the TS Sink wants to consume more than default USB current.

Note, a TS Source will not use the values in Table B-2. A TS Source will present the same Rp on each CC pin using the standard Rp value for the desired current advertisement.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Figure B-6 TS Sink Power Sub-States

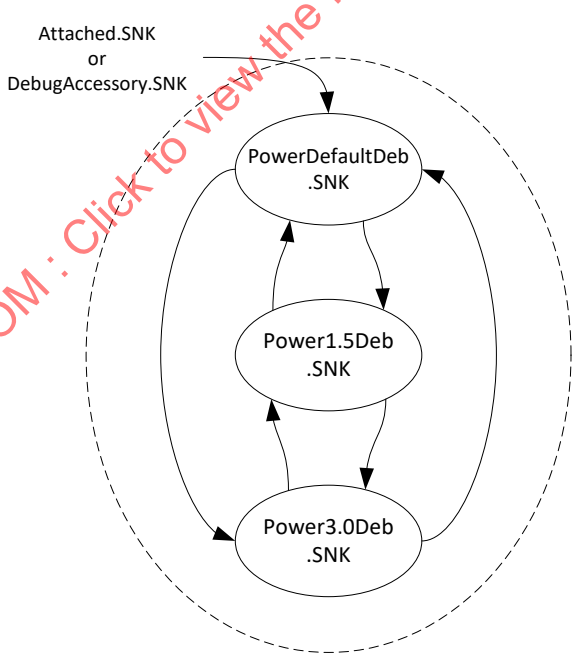


Table B-2 Rp/Rp Charging Current Values for a DTS Source

Mode of Operation	CC1	CC2

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Default USB Power	Rp for 3 A	Rp for 1.5 A
USB Type-C Current @ 1.5 A	Rp for 1.5 A	Rp for Default
USB Type-C Current @ 3 A	Rp for 3 A	Rp for Default

B.2.4.2.2 PowerDefaultDeb.SNK Sub-State

This sub-state supports DAM Sinks consuming current within the lowest range (default) of Source-supplied current.

B.2.4.2.2.1 PowerDefaultDeb.SNK Requirements

The port shall draw no more than the default USB power from VBUS. See Section 4.6.2.1.

If the DTS Sink wants to consume more than the default USB power, it shall monitor vRd on both CC pins to determine if more current is available from the Source.

B.2.4.2.2.2 Exiting from PowerDefaultDeb.SNK

For any change on CC indicating a change in allowable power, the DAM Sink shall not transition until the new vRd voltages on each CC pin have been stable for at least tRpValueChange.

For vRd voltages on the CC pins indicating 1.5 A mode, the DAM Sink shall transition to the Power1.5Deb.SNK Sub-State.

For vRd voltages on the CC pins indicating 3 A mode, the DAM Sink shall transition to the Power3.0Deb.SNK Sub-State.

B.2.4.2.3 Power1.5Deb.SNK Sub-State

This sub-state supports DAM Sinks consuming current within the two lower ranges (default and 1.5 A) of DAM Source-supplied current.

B.2.4.2.3.1 Power1.5Deb.SNK Requirements

The DAM Sink shall draw no more than 1.5 A from VBUS.

The DAM Sink shall monitor both vRd voltages while it is in this sub-state.

B.2.4.2.3.2 Exiting from Power1.5Deb.SNK

For any change on the CC pins indicating a change in allowable power, the DAM Sink shall not transition until the new vRd voltages on both CC pins have been stable for at least tRpValueChange.

For vRd voltages on the CC pins indicating Default USB Power mode, the port shall transition to the PowerDefaultDeb.SNK Sub-State and reduce its power consumption to the new range within tSinkAdj.

For vRd voltages on the CC pins indicating 3 A mode, the port shall transition to the Power3.0Deb.SNK Sub-State.

B.2.4.2.4 Power3.0Deb.SNK Sub-State

This sub-state supports DAM Sinks consuming current within all three ranges (default, 1.5 A and 3.0 A) of DAM Source-supplied current.

B.2.4.2.4.1 Power3.0Deb.SNK Requirements

The port shall draw no more than 3.0 A from VBUS.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

The port shall monitor both vRd voltages while it is in this sub-state.

B.2.4.2.4.2 Exiting from Power3.0Deb.SNK

For any change on the CC pins indicating a change in allowable power, the port shall not transition until the new vRd voltages on both CC pins have been stable for at least tRpValueChange.

For vRd voltages on the CC pins indicating Default USB Power mode, the port shall transition to the PowerDefaultDeb.SNK Sub-State and reduce its power consumption to the new range within tSinkAdj.

For vRd voltages on the CC pins indicating 1.5 A mode, the DAM Sink shall transition to the Power1.5Deb.SNK Sub-State.

B.2.4.2.5 DTS Sink Power Sub-State Requirements

A DTS Sink follows the same power sub-states defined in Section 4.5.2.2.22. The TS Source will be advertising current with a standard Rp value that is the same for each CC pin. If optional orientation detection is performed, the DTS Sink will only be able to determine the Rp value from the CC pin that is set for *USB PD* communication.

B.2.4.3 Connection States Summary

Table B-3 defines the mandatory and optional states for each type of port. For states allowing *USB PD* communication, DAM connections requiring *USB PD* communication shall determine orientation by the steps described in Section B.2.6.

Table B-3 Mandatory and Optional States

	DTS Source	DTS SINK	DTS DRP	USB PD Communication and/or Debug Signal Activity
UnattachedDeb.SNK	N/A	Mandatory	Mandatory	Not Permitted
AttachWaitDeb.SNK	N/A	Mandatory	Mandatory	Not Permitted
AttachedDeb.SNK	N/A	Mandatory	Mandatory	Permitted
UnattachedDeb.SRC	Mandatory	N/A	Mandatory	Not Permitted
AttachWaitDeb.SRC	Mandatory	N/A	Mandatory	Not Permitted
AttachedDeb.SRC	Mandatory	N/A	Mandatory	Permitted
TryDeb.SRC	N/A	N/A	Mandatory	Not Permitted
TryWaitDeb.SNK	N/A	N/A	Mandatory	Not Permitted

B.2.5 DTS Port Interoperability Behavior

This section describes interoperability behavior between DTS ports and TS ports.

B.2.5.1 DTS Port to TS Port Interoperability Behaviors

The following sub-sections describe typical port-to-port interoperability behaviors for the various combinations of DTS and TS Sources, Sinks and DRPs as presented in Table B-1.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

B.2.5.1.1 DTS Source to TS Sink Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS Source is connected to a TS Sink.

1. DTS Source and TS Sink in the unattached state
2. DTS Source transitions from UnattachedDeb.SRC to AttachedDeb.SRC through AttachWaitDeb.SRC
   - DTS Source detects the TS Sink's pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SRC. After tCCDebounce it then enters AttachedDeb.SRC
   - DTS Source turns on VBUS
3. TS Sink transitions from Unattached.SNK to DebugAccessory.SNK through AttachWait.SNK
   - TS Sink in Unattached.SNK detects the DTS Source's pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SNK. After that state persists for tCCDebounce and it detects VBUS, it enters DebugAccessory.SNK
4. While the DTS Source and TS Sink are in the attached state:
   - DTS Source adjusts both Rp values as needed for offered current
   - TS Sink detects and monitors vRd on the CC pins for available current on VBUS and performs any orientation required
   - DTS Source monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected on either pin, enters UnattachedDeb.SRC
   - TS Sink monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

B.2.5.1.2 DTS Source to TS DRP Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS Source is connected to a TS DRP.

1. DTS Source and TS DRP in the unattached state
   - TS DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DTS Source transitions from UnattachedDeb.SRC to AttachedDeb.SRC through AttachWaitDeb.SRC
   - DTS Source detects the TS DRP's pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SRC. After tCCDebounce it then enters AttachedDeb.SRC
   - DTS Source turns on VBUS
3. TS DRP transitions from Unattached.SNK to DebugAccessory.SNK through AttachWait.SNK
   - TS DRP in Unattached.SNK detects the DTS Source's pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SNK. After that state persists for tCCDebounce and it detects VBUS, it enters DebugAccessory.SNK
4. While the DTS Source and TS DRP are in their respective attached states:
   - DTS Source adjusts both Rp values as needed for offered current
   - TS DRP detects and monitors vRd on both CC pins for available current on VBUS and performs any orientation required
   - DTS Source monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters UnattachedDeb.SRC
   - TS DRP monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK (and resumes toggling between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.SRC)

B.2.5.1.3 DTS Sink to TS Source Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS Sink is connected to a TS Source.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

1. TS Source and DTS Sink in the unattached state
2. TS Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   - TS Source detects the DTS Sink's pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SRC. After tCCDebounce, it enters UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC.
   - TS Source turns on VBUS
3. DTS Sink transitions from UnattachedDeb.SNK to AttachedDeb.SNK through AttachWaitDeb.SNK.
   - DTS Sink in UnattachedDeb.SNK detects the TS Source's pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SNK.
   - DTS Sink in AttachWaitDeb.SNK detects that the pull-ups on both CC pins persist for tCCDebounce and it detects VBUS. It enters AttachedDeb.SNK
   - DTS sink determines advertised current from vRd on either CC pin.
4. If orientation supported, DTS Sink adjusts Rd on the non-CC communication pin as needed for orientation detection.
5. If orientation supported, TS Source detects change in vRd of one of the CC pins and transitions from UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC to OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC and performs any orientation required.
6. While the TS Source and DTS Sink are in the attached state:
   - If orientation is supported, DTS sink determines any change in advertised current from vRd of the CC pin that has been set as the CC communication pin.
   - TS Source monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC
   - DTS Sink monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters UnattachedDeb.SNK

B.2.5.1.4 DTS Sink to TS DRP Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS Sink is connected to a TS DRP.

1. DTS Sink and TS DRP in the unattached state
   - TS DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. TS DRP transitions from Unattached.SRC to UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   - TS DRP in Unattached.SRC detects both CC pull-downs of DTS Sink in UnattachedDeb.SNK and enters AttachWait.SRC
   - TS DRP in AttachWait.SRC detects that the pull-downs on both CC pins persist for tCCDebounce. It then enters UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC and turns on VBUS
3. DTS Sink transitions from UnattachedDeb.SNK to AttachedDeb.SNK through AttachWaitDeb.SNK.
   - DTS Sink in UnattachedDeb.SNK detects the TS DRP's pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SNK. After that state persists for tCCDebounce and it detects VBUS, it enters AttachedDeb.SNK
   - DTS sink determines advertised current from vRd on either CC pin.
7. If orientation is supported, DTS Sink adjusts Rd on the non-CC communication pin as needed for orientation detection.
8. If orientation supported, TS DRP detects change in vRd on one of the CC pins and transitions to OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC and performs the required orientation.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

9. While the TS DRP and DTS Sink are in the attached state:
    - If orientation is supported, DTS sink determines any change in advertised current from vRd of the CC pin that has been set as the CC communication pin.
    - TS DRP monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK
    - DTS Sink monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters UnattachedDeb.SNK

B.2.5.1.5 DTS DRP to TS Sink Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS DRP is connected to a TS Sink.

1. DTS DRP and TS Sink in the unattached state
    - DTS DRP alternates between UnattachedDeb.SRC and UnattachedDeb.SNK
2. DTS DRP transitions from UnattachedDeb.SRC to AttachedDeb.SRC through AttachWaitDeb.SRC
    - DTS DRP in UnattachedDeb.SRC detects both of the CC pull-downs of TS Sink enters AttachWaitDeb.SRC
    - DTS DRP in AttachWaitDeb.SRC detects that the pull-downs on both CC pins persist for tCCDebounce. It then enters AttachedDeb.SRC
    - DTS DRP turns on VBUS
3. TS Sink transitions from Unattached.SNK to DebugAccessory.SNK through AttachWait.SNK
    - TS Sink in Unattached.SNK detects the DTS DRP's pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SNK
    - TS Sink in AttachWait.SNK detects that the pull-ups on both CC pins persist for tCCDebounce and it detects VBUS. It enters DebugAccessory.SNK
4. While the DTS DRP and TS Sink are in their respective attached states:
    - DTS DRP adjusts Rp as needed for offered current
    - TS Sink detects and monitors vRd on the CC pins for available current on VBUS and performs any orientation required
    - DTS DRP monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters UnattachedDeb.SNK
    - TS Sink monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

B.2.5.1.6 DTS DRP to TS DRP Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS DRP is connected to TS DRP.

Case #1:

1. Both DRPs in the unattached state
    - DTS DRP alternates between UnattachedDeb.SRC and UnattachedDeb.SNK
    - TS DRP alternate between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DTS DRP transitions from UnattachedDeb.SRC to AttachWaitDeb.SRC
    - DTS DRP in UnattachedDeb.SRC detects both CC pull-downs of TS DRP in Unattached.SNK and enters AttachWaitDeb.SRC
3. TS DRP transitions from Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK
    - TS DRP in Unattached.SNK detects both CC pull-ups of DTS DRP and enters AttachWait.SNK
4. DTS DRP transitions from AttachWaitDeb.SRC to AttachedDeb.SRC

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- DTS DRP in AttachWaitDeb.SRC continues to see both CC pull-downs of TS DRP for tCCDebounce, enters AttachedDeb.SRC and turns on VBUS

5. TS DRP transitions from AttachWait.SNK to DebugAccessory.SNK
   - TS DRP detects DTS DRP's pull-ups on both CC pins for tCCDebounce and detects VBUS and enters DebugAccessory.SNK
   - TS DRP detects and monitors vRd on the CC pins for available current on VBUS and performs any orientation required
6. While the TS DRP and DTS DRP are in the attached state:
   - TS DRP monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK
   - DTS DRP monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters UnattachedDeb.SNK

Case #2:

1. Both DRPs in the unattached state
   - DTS DRP alternates between UnattachedDeb.SRC and UnattachedDeb.SNK
   - TS DRP alternate between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DTS DRP transitions from UnattachedDeb.SNK to AttachWaitDeb.SNK
   - DTS DRP in UnattachedDeb.SNK detects both CC pull-ups of TS DRP in Unattached.SRC and enters AttachWaitDeb.SNK
3. TS DRP transitions from Unattached.SRC to UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   - TS DRP in Unattached.SRC detects both CC pull-downs of DTS DRP and enters AttachWait.SRC
   - TS DRP in AttachWait.SRC continues to see both CC pull-downs of TS DRP for tCCDebounce, enters UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC and turns on VBUS
4. DTS DRP transitions from AttachWaitDeb.SNK to TryDeb.SRC
   - DTS DRP in AttachWaitDeb.SNK continues to see both CC pull-ups of TS DRP for tCCDebounce and detects VBUS, enters TryDeb.SRC
5. TS DRP transitions from UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC to Unattached.SNK
   - TS DRP in UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC detects the removal of both CC pull-downs of DTS DRP and enters Unattached.SNK
6. TS DRP transitions from Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK
   - TS DRP in Unattached.SNK detects both CC pull-ups of DTS DRP and enters AttachWait.SNK
7. DTS DRP transitions from TryDeb.SRC to AttachedDeb.SRC
   - DTS DRP in TryDeb.SRC detects both CC pull-downs of TS DRP for tTryCCDebounce and enters AttachedDeb.SRC
   - DTS DRP turns on VBUS
8. TS DRP transitions from AttachWait.SNK to DebugAccessory.SNK
   - TS DRP detects DTS DRP's pull-ups on both CC pins for tCCDebounce and detects VBUS and enters DebugAccessory.SNK
9. While the DTS DRP and TS DRP are in their respective attached states:
   - DTS DRP adjusts Rp as needed for offered current

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- TS DRP detects and monitors vRd on the CC pins for available current on VBUS and performs any orientation required
- DTS DRP monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters UnattachedDeb.SNK
- TS DRP monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

B.2.5.1.7 DTS DRP to TS Source Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS DRP is connected to TS Source.

1. DTS DRP and TS Source in the unattached state
   - DTS DRP alternates between UnattachedDeb.SRC and UnattachedDeb.SNK
   - TS Source in Unattached.SRC
2. DTS DRP transitions from UnattachedDeb.SNK to AttachWaitDeb.SNK
   - DTS DRP in UnattachedDeb.SNK detects pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SNK
3. TS Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC through AttachWait.SRC
   - TS Source in Unattached.SRC detects both CC pull-downs of DTS DRP and enters AttachWait.SRC
   - TS Source in AttachWait.SRC continues to see both CC pull-downs of DTS DRP for tCCDebounce, enters UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC and turns on VBUS
4. DTS DRP transitions from AttachWaitDeb.SNK to TryDeb.SRC
   - DTS DRP in AttachWaitDeb.SNK continues to see both CC pull-ups of TS DRP for tCCDebounce and detects VBUS, enters TryDeb.SRC
5. TS Source transitions from UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC to Unattached.SRC
   - TS Source in UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC detects the removal of both CC pull-downs of DTS DRP and enters Unattached.SRC
6. DTS DRP transitions from TryDeb.SRC to TryWaitDeb.SNK
   - After tDRPTry, DTS DRP does not see pull-downs on both CC pin and enters TryWaitDeb.SNK
7. TS Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC
   - TS Source in Unattached.SRC detects pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SRC
   - TS Source continues to detect pull-downs on both CC pins for tCCDebounce and enters UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC and outputs VBUS
8. DTS DRP transitions from TryWaitDeb.SNK to AttachedDeb.SNK
   - DTS DRP sees pull-ups on both CC pins for tCCDebounce and detects VBUS and enters AttachedDeb.SNK
   - If orientation required, DTS DRP adjusts Rd on the non-CC communication pin as needed for orientation detection
9. If orientation supported, TS Source detects change in vRd on one of the CC pins and transitions to OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC and performs the required orientation.
10. While the TS Source and DTS DRP are in the attached state:
    - If orientation is supported, DTS DRP determines any change in advertised current from vRd of the CC pin that has been set as the CC communication pin.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- TS Source monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC
- DTS DRP monitors VBUS for detach and when detected, enters UnattachedDeb.SNK

B.2.5.2 DTS Port to non-DAM TS Port Interoperability Behaviors

The following sub-sections describe the non-functional port-to-port interoperability behaviors for the various combinations of DTS and TS Sources, Sinks, and DRPs that do not support DAM.

B.2.5.2.1 DTS Source to non-DAM TS Sink Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS Source is connected to a non-DAM TS Sink.

1. DTS Source and TS Sink in the unattached state
2. DTS Source transitions from UnattachedDeb.SRC to AttachedDeb.SRC through AttachWaitDeb.SRC
   - DTS Source detects the non-DAM TS Sink's pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SRC. After tCCDebounce it then enters AttachedDeb.SRC
   - DTS Source turns on VBUS
3. Non-DAM TS Sink transitions from Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK.
   - Non-DAM TS Sink in Unattached.SNK detects the DTS Source's pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SNK.
   - Non-DAM TS Sink continues to detect pull-ups on both CC pins and stays in AttachWait.SNK because it does not support DAM (will not enter Attached.SNK because it does not detect SNK.Open on either pin)
4. While the DTS Source and non-DAM TS Sink are in their final state:
   - DTS Source adjusts Rp as needed for offered current
   - Non-DAM TS Sink may draw USB default current from DTS Source as permitted by Section 4.5.2.2 but will not enter DAM
   - DTS Source monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters UnattachedDeb.SRC
   - Non-DAM TS Sink monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK

B.2.5.2.2 DTS Source to non-DAM TS DRP Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS Source is connected to a non-DAM TS DRP.

1. DTS Source and non-DAM TS DRP in the unattached state
   - Non-DAM TS DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
2. DTS Source transitions from UnattachedDeb.SRC to AttachedDeb.SRC through AttachWaitDeb.SRC
   - DTS Source detects the non-DAM TS Sink's pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SRC. After tCCDebounce it then enters AttachedDeb.SRC
   - DTS Source turns on VBUS
3. Non-DAM TS DRP transitions from Unattached.SNK to AttachWait.SNK.
   - Non-DAM TS DRP in Unattached.SNK detects the DTS Source's pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SNK.
   - Non-DAM TS DRP continues to detect pull-downs on both CC pins and stays in AttachWait.SNK because it does not support DAM (will not enter Attached.SNK because it does not detect SNK.Open on either pin)

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4. While the DTS Source and non-DAM TS DRP are in their final state:
    - DTS Source adjusts Rp as needed for offered current
    - Non-DAM TS DRP may draw USB default current from DTS Source as permitted by Section 4.5.2.2 but will not enter DAM
    - DTS Source monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters UnattachedDeb.SRC
    - Non-DAM TS DRP monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC

B.2.5.2.3 DTS Sink to non-DAM TS Source Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS Sink is connected to a non-DAM TS Source.

1. Non-DAM TS Source and DTS Sink in the unattached state
2. Non-DAM TS Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to AttachWait.SRC
    - Non-DAM TS Source detects the DTS Sink's pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SRC.
    - Non-DAM TS Source continues to detect pull-downs on both CC pins and stays in AttachWait.SRC because it does not support DAM (will not enter Attached.SRC because it does not detect SRC.Rd on only one CC pin)
3. DTS Sink transitions from UnattachedDeb.SNK to AttachWaitDeb.SNK.
    - DTS Sink in UnattachedDeb.SNK detects the non-DAM TS Source's pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SNK
    - DTS Sink remains in AttachWaitDeb.SNK because it does not detect VBUS
4. While the non-DAM TS Source and DTS Sink are in their final state:
    - Non-DAM TS Source monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC
    - DTS Sink monitors VBUS for attach and both CC pins for detach and enters UnattachedDeb.SNK when both CC pins go to SNK.Open

B.2.5.2.4 DTS Sink to non-DAM TS DRP Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS Sink is connected to a non-DAM TS DRP.

1. DTS Sink and non-DAM TS DRP in the unattached state
    - Non-DAM TS DRP alternates between Unattached.SRC and Unattached.SNK
    - DTS Sink in UnattachedDeb.SNK
2. Non-DAM TS DRP transitions from Unattached.SRC to AttachWait.SRC
    - Non-DAM TS DRP detects the DTS Sink's pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SRC.
    - Non-DAM TS DRP continues to detect pull-downs on both CC pins and stays in AttachWait.SRC because it does not support DAM (will not enter Attached.SRC because it does not detect SRC.Rd on only one CC pin)
3. DTS Sink transitions from UnattachedDeb.SNK to AttachWaitDeb.SNK.
    - DTS Sink in UnattachedDeb.SNK detects the non-DAM TS DRP's pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SNK
    - DTS Sink remains in AttachWaitDeb.SNK because it does not detect VBUS
4. While the non-DAM TS DRP and DTS Sink are in their final state:

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- Non-DAM TS DRP monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK
- DTS Sink monitors VBUS for attach and both CC pins for detach and enters UnattachedDeb.SNK when both CC pin go to SNK.Open

B.2.5.2.5 DTS DRP to non-DAM TS Sink Behavior

The DTS DRP to non-DAM TS Sink behavior follows the flow in Section B.2.5.2.1.

B.2.5.2.6 DTS DRP to non-DAM TS DRP Behavior

The DTS DRP to non-DAM TS DRP behavior follows the flows in Section B.2.5.2.2 and Section B.2.5.2.4 depending on the role forced by the non-DAM TS DRP

B.2.5.2.7 DTS DRP to non-DAM TS Source Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS DRP is connected to non-DAM TS Source.

1. DTS DRP and non-DAM TS Source in the unattached state
   - DTS DRP alternates between UnattachedDeb.SRC and UnattachedDeb.SNK
   - Non-DAM TS Source in Unattached.SRC
2. DTS DRP transitions from UnattachedDeb.SNK to AttachWaitDeb.SNK
   - DTS DRP in UnattachedDeb.SNK detects pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SNK
3. Non-DAM TS Source transitions from Unattached.SRC to AttachWait.SRC
   - Non-DAM TS Source in Unattached.SRC detects pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.SRC
   - Non-DAM TS Source continues to detect pull-downs on both CC pins and stays in AttachWait.SRC because it does not support DAM (will not enter Attached.SRC because it does not detect SRC.Rd on only one CC pin)
   - DTS Sink remains in AttachWaitDeb.SNK because it does not detect VBUS
4. While the non-DAM TS Source and DTS DRP are in their final state:
   - Non-DAM TS Source monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SRC
   - DTS DRP monitors VBUS for attach and both CC pins for detach and enters UnattachedDeb.SRC when both CC pin go to SNK.Open

B.2.5.2.8 DTS Sink to non-DAM TS Sink with Accessory Support Behavior

The following describes the behavior when a DTS Sink is connected to a non-DAM USB Type-C TS Sink with Accessory Support.

1. DTS Sink and non-DAM TS Sink with Accessory Support (“non-DAM TS Sink” for the remainder of this flow) in the unattached state
   - Non-DAM TS Sink alternates between Unattached.SNK and Unattached.Accessory
   - DTS Sink in UnattachedDeb.SNK
2. Non-DAM TS Sink transitions from Unattached.Accessory to AttachWait.Accessory
   - Non-DAM TS Sink detects the DTS Sink’s pull-downs on both CC pins and enters AttachWait.Accessory

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- Non-DAM TS Sink continues to detect pull-downs on both CC pins and enters USB Type-C Debug Accessory Mode

3. DTS Sink transitions from UnattachedDeb.SNK to AttachWaitDeb.SNK.
   - DTS Sink in UnattachedDeb.SNK detects the non-DAM TS Sinks pull-ups on both CC pins and enters AttachWaitDeb.SNK
   - DTS Sink remains in AttachWaitDeb.SNK because it does not detect VBUS
4. While the non-DAM TS DRP and DTS Sink are in their final state:
   - Non-DAM TS Sink monitors both CC pins for detach and when detected, enters Unattached.SNK
   - DTS Sink monitors both CC pins for detach and enters UnattachedDeb.SNK when both CC pins go to SNK.Open

B.2.6 Orientation Detection

Orientation detection is optional normative. A USB Type-C port supporting Debug Accessory Mode is not required to perform orientation detection. If orientation detection is required, this method shall be followed.

B.2.6.1 Orientation Detection using Rd and/or Rp Values

In this optional normative flow, the DTS shall always initiate an orientation detection sequence, independent of its role as Source, Sink, or DRP. This means that the TS must detect this orientation sequence and perform multiplexing to orient and connect the port signals to the proper channels as well as determine the proper CC pin for *USB-PD* communication.

B.2.6.1.1 Orientation Detection with DTS as a Source

When the DTS is presenting an Rp, it shall present asymmetric Rp values (Rp1/Rp2) on CC1/CC2 to indicate orientation to the TS. The DTS as a source shall indicate a weaker resistive value on CC2. Table B-2 shows the values of Rp resistance on each CC pin to indicate orientation and advertise the USB Type-C current available on VBUS. See Table 4-24 for the Rp resistance ranges.

Once the TS sink enters the DebugAccessory.SNK state, after the vRd on both CC pins is stable for tRpValueChange, it will orient its signal multiplexor based on the detected orientation indicated by the relative voltages of the CC pins. The CC pin with the greater voltage is the plug CC pin, which establishes the orientation of the DTS plug in the TS receptacle and also indicates the *USB-PD* CC communication wire. The TS Sink cannot perform *USB-PD* communication or connect any orientation-sensitive debug signals until orientation is determined.

B.2.6.1.2 Orientation Detection with DTS as a Sink

When the DTS is a sink, it shall follow a two-step approach.

1. The DTS sink shall present Rd/Rd on the CC pins of the debug accessory plug. This will put the system into debug accessory mode

2. Once the DTS sink enters AttachedDeb.SNK state, it shall present a resistance to GND of ≤ Ra on B5 (CC2)

The asymmetric signaling is detected by the TS Source in the UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC state. Once Detected, the TS Source will move to the OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC. Once the TS source enters the OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC state, after the SRC.Ra level is detected on one of the CC pins, it will orient its signal multiplexor based on the detected orientation indicated by the relative voltages of the CC pins. The CC pin with the greater voltage is the plug CC pin, which establishes the orientation of the DTS plug in the TS receptacle and also indicates the *USB-PD* CC communication

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

wire. The TS Source cannot perform *USB-PD* communication or connect any orientation-sensitive debug signals until orientation is determined.

B.3 Security/Privacy Requirements:

Debug port(s) typically provide system access beyond the normal operation of USB hardware and protocol. Additional protection against unintended use is needed. The design must incorporate appropriate measures to prohibit unauthorized access or modification of the unit under test and to prevent exposure of private user data on the unit under test. The method of protection is not explicitly defined in this specification.

The vendor shall assert as part of USB compliance certification that:

- The device has met the requirement to protect the system's security and user's privacy in its vendor-specific implementation of the port, and
- The device requires the user to take an explicit action to authorize access to or modification of the unit.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

C USB Type-C Digital Audio

C.1 Overview

One of the goals of USB Type-C® is to help reduce the number of I/O connectors on a host platform. One connector type that could be eliminated is the legacy 3.5 mm audio device jack. While USB Type-C does include definition of an analog audio adapter accessory (see Appendix A), that solution requires a separate adapter that can be readily lost and the host implementation in support of analog audio is technically challenging. To best serve the user experience, a simplified USB Type-C digital audio solution based on native USB protocol is simpler/more interoperable with both the host platform and audio device being connected directly without the need for adapters and operates seamlessly through existing USB topologies (e.g. through hubs and docks).

This appendix is for the optional normative definition of digital audio support on USB Type-C-based products. Any USB Audio Class product, having either a USB Type-C plug or receptacle, and whether it is a host system, typically an audio source, and an audio device, typically an audio sink, shall meet the requirements of this appendix in addition to all other applicable USB specification requirements.

C.2 USB Type-C Digital Audio Specifications

USB Type-C Digital Audio (TCDA), when implemented per this specification, shall be compliant with either the USB Audio Device Class 1.0, 2.0 or 3.0 specifications as listed below. While allowed, basing a TCDA on USB Audio Device Class 1.0 is not recommended. Given the number of benefits in terms of audio profile support, simplified enumeration and configuration, and improved low-power operation, use of the USB Audio Device Class 3.0 is *strongly recommended*.

USB Audio Device Class 1.0 including:

- USB Device Class Definition for Audio Devices, Release 1.0
- USB Device Class Definition for Audio Data Formats, Release 1.0
- USB Device Class Definition for Audio Terminal Types, Release 1.0

USB Audio Device Class 2.0 including:

- USB Device Class Definition for Audio Devices, Release 2.0
- USB Device Class Definition for Audio Data Formats, Release 2.0
- USB Device Class Definition for Audio Terminal Types, Release 2.0

USB Audio Device Class 3.0 including:

- USB Device Class Definition for Audio Devices, Revision 3.0
- USB Device Class Definition for Audio Data Formats, Release 3.0
- USB Device Class Definition for Audio Terminal Types, Release 3.0
- USB Device Class Definition for Basic Audio Functions, Release 3.0

USB Audio Device Class 3.0 specifications now include the definition of basic audio function profiles (Basic Audio Device Definition, BADD). TCDA devices based on USB Audio Device Class 3.0 will implement one of the defined profiles. TCDA-capable hosts based on USB Audio Device Class 3.0 will recognize and typically implement all of the profiles that are relevant to the capabilities and usage models for the host.

TCDA devices shall fall into one of the following two configurations:

- a traditional VBUS-powered USB device that has a USB Type-C receptacle for use with a standard USB Type-C cable, or

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- a VCONN-Powered USB Device (VPD) that has a captive cable with a USB Type-C plug (including thumb drive style products).

USB Type-C plug-based TCDA devices shall not be implemented as a variant of the USB Type-C Analog Audio Adapter Accessory (Appendix A).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

D Thermal Design Considerations for Active Cables

D.1 Introduction

USB Type C® active cables use active circuitry to realize a longer link than passive cables and to maintain the electrical performance at high speed data transmission (*USB 3.2* Gen2 single-lane or *USB 3.2* Gen1 or Gen2 dual-lane). The additional power dissipation due to active components in the plug over-mold, creates a thermal challenge to passively dissipate power from its active components off limited outer surface area of cable over-mold. Furthermore, the VBUS current, up to 5 A for power delivery, generates joule heat from the conductors along VBUS and GND lines, including copper wires, solder joints, contact pins insides connectors and copper traces on paddle board.

This appendix provides some case studies to show the thermal impacts of certain factors affecting the maximum over-mold surface temperature TS such as IC power inside over-mold (PO), thermal boundary, VBUS current level, and port to port spacing. The case study provided is for a specific mechanical design of the cable. When a different mechanical design (geometry or material, etc.) are used, these impacts need further investigation. The methodology of the study is thermal modelling. The modeling results has been validated for some cases (1.5 W PO and 5A VBUS) with lab test results within ± 3 °C, but not for all cases. Note that this appendix is not a full factorial or complete Design of Experiment (DOE) study and whether there is interaction among any of these factors are not covered here.

To meet thermal requirements specified in Section 5.2.4.1, as well as the junction temperature T_J requirement of any active components, an active cable should be carefully designed to facilitate the desired heat flow paths. A desirable thermal resistance between powered IC to over-mold surface is achieved when neither T_S nor T_J exceeds their specifications. This appendix focuses solely on T_S as output of the study, as the T_J requirement varies depending on the IC requirements.

It is recommended that system integrator such as host or device designer should take into consideration the heat transferred to or from an active cable in the system level thermal analysis.

Nomenclature used in this appendix:

- T_A = ambient temperature (°C)
- T_J = junction temperature (°C)
- T_S = plug over-mold outer surface maximum temperature (°C)
- T_{MB} = motherboard/thermal boundary temperature (°C)
- P_O = active component power (W) inside the over-mold that directly plugged in the host or device at each end of cable.

D.2 Model

D.2.1 Assumptions

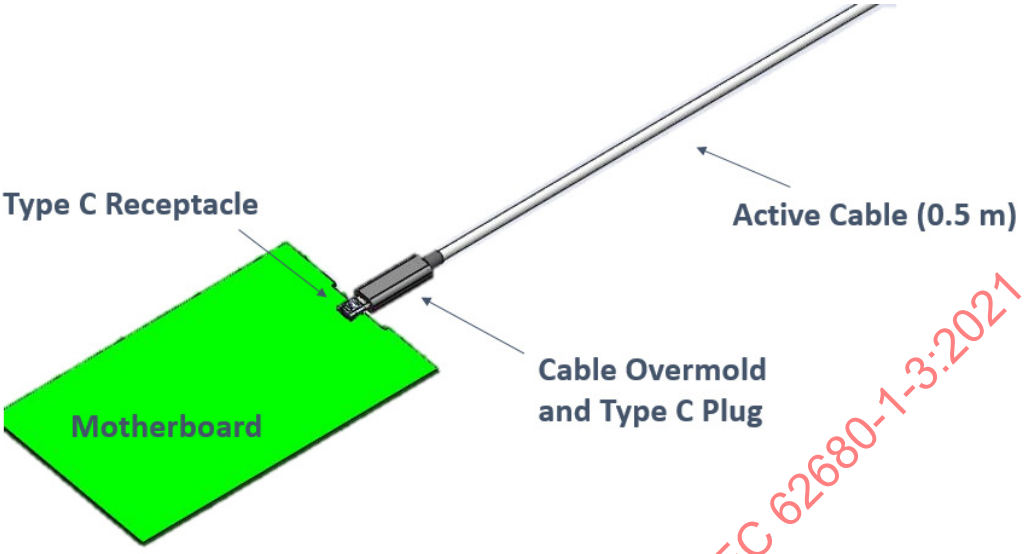
A system model was built which includes a half active cable with one over-mold on the end, a mated pair of connectors (plug and receptacle) and a motherboard as its host or device side thermal boundary. The model assumes the cable is symmetric with VCONN power to be equally divided and each end of cable consumes half of VCONN power for the active components.

It is a Computational Fluid Dynamics (CFD) model with heat transfer of conduction, natural convection and radiation. Emissivity of the plug over-mold and cable jacket is assumed to be 0.92 and the connector metal surfaces is assumed to be 0.05.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

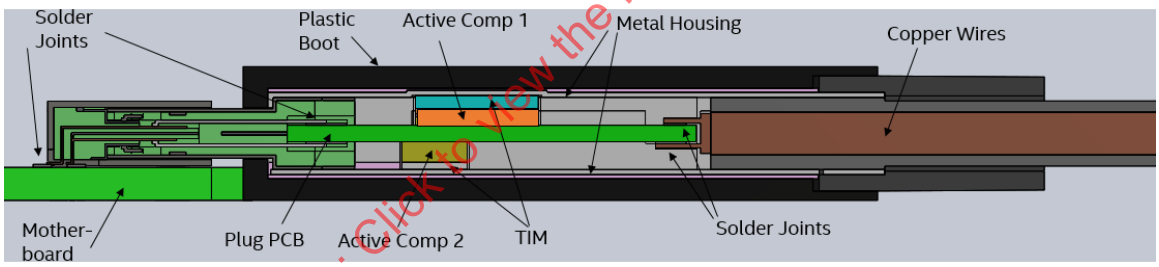
Figure D-1 Active Cable Model (Single Port, Top Mount Receptacle)



D.2.2 Model Architecture

The specific system and cable architecture used in the model is shown below.

Figure D-2 Model Architecture



The simplified cable model uses a pure copper cable, representing a typical short active cable, with total cross section of the copper conductors being about 3.8 mm^2.

The cable model incorporates a plastic boot for the over-mold which allows a higher surface temperature threshold than some other materials such as metal or glass. The over-mold length in the study was 35 mm.

In this specific cable design, two active components are surface mounted on plug PCB (or paddle board). Thermal Interface Material (TIM) are placed between “hot components” and “heat spreading material” such as metal housings to reduce thermal resistance between component junctions to ambient. Metal shells help to reduce T_S by spreading heat across the over-mold surface and avoid hot spots.

The plug PCB and motherboard are assumed to be FR4 based material. The motherboard is a bulk model assumed to be at a constant temperature without a point heat source on it. The receptacle is top mounted on the motherboard in single port and horizontal stacked cases, Figure D-6; and is vertically mounted in vertical stack up cases, Figure D-4 and Figure D-5.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

D.2.3 Heat Sources

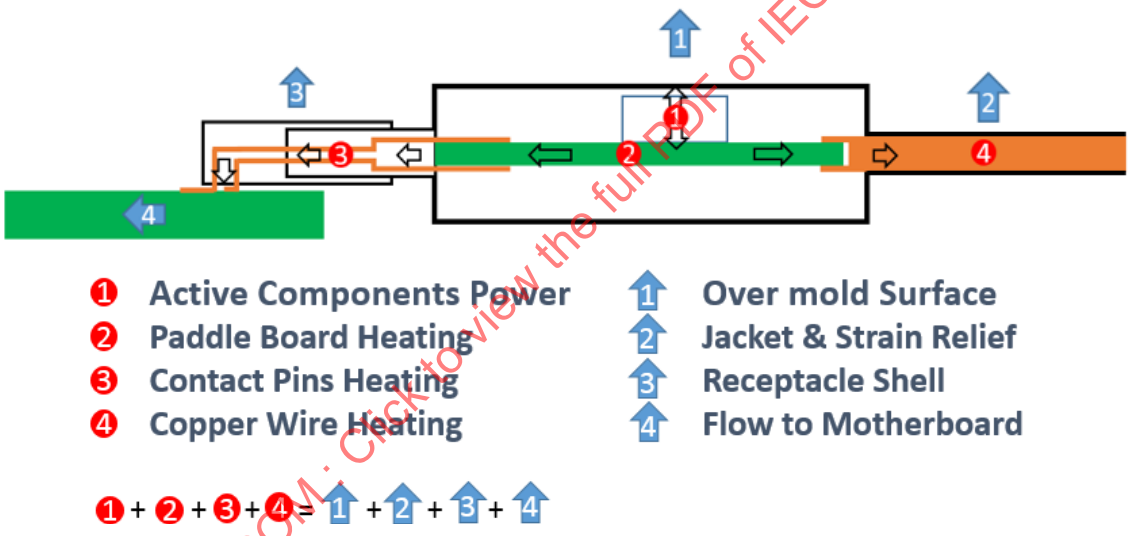
Main heat sources include:

- Active component power such as re-timer, voltage regulator, etc.; the overall power inside over-mold is P_O, which is about half of VCONN power consumed by the full cable;
- Joule heat from the any conductor that carries high current, e.g. raw cable VBUS and GND copper wire, the plug PCB copper traces, contact pins of connectors, etc.

D.2.4 Heat Flow

The main power sources and heat flow paths are illustrated in Figure D-3. The overall heat generated from the cable is mainly dissipated from over-mold surfaces, cable jacket and path to motherboard. The higher thermal resistance of one heat path, the more heat it will "push off" to other heat paths and the more risk that active component junction is overheated. Since heat flow to motherboard is not a desired path from the perspective of system design, cable and over-mold design are critical to achieve balanced heat dissipation paths so not to violate either T_S or T_J requirements.

Figure D-3 Heat Sources and Heat Flow Paths



The overall heat generated from the cable should be consistent with the overall power dissipated by the cable. An example of half a 1.0 m active cable consuming 1.5 W and sourcing 5 A VBUS is shown below:

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table D-1 Heat Sources and Heat Dissipation Example (1.5 W cable and 5 A)

(a) Heat Sources

Index	Heat Source	Power (W)
1	Active Components	0.750
2	Pin Heating	0.330
3	PCB Heating	0.135
4	Cable Heating	0.805
	Total Power Generation:	2.020

(b) Heat Dissipation

Index	Heat Source	Power (W)
1	Plug Surface	0.500
2	Cable & SR	1.120
3	Receptacle	0.050
4	Flow to Motherboard	0.350
	Total Power Dissipation:	2.020

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

D.3 USB 3.2 Single Lane Active Cable

Based on the assumption that V_{CONN} power consumption is equally split between two ends of the cable and the 1 W maximum V_{CONN} power dissipation in the USB Type-C active cable (See Table 4-5), active component power in each end or over-mold power (P_O) can go up to 0.5 W in a *USB 3.2* active cable.

D.3.1 USB 3.2 Single-Lane Active Cable Design Considerations

The active cable designer should design for T_S less than 30 °C above T_A in the condition where thermal boundary T_{MB} is of 25 °C above T_A per Section 5.5.4.

D.3.1.1 USB 3.2 Single-Lane Active Cable in a Single Port Configuration

An active cable connected to a single port in a host or device can take full advantage of the overall plug surface area for heat dissipation. Table D-2 shows that when P_O is 0.5 W, it is achievable to keep the plug over-mold surface temperature T_S of a single cable below the requirement, at both 3 A and 5 A V_{BUS}, assuming the motherboard temperature is no higher than (T_A +25) °C.

Table D-2 USB 3.2 Active Cable Design Single Port Case Study at 35 °C Ambient and 60 °C Thermal Boundary (Single Lane)

	3 A V_{BUS}	5 A V_{BUS}
T_S (°C)	57	60

D.3.1.2 USB 3.2 Single-Lane Active Cable in a Multiple Port Configuration

When multi-port connector spacing is small, there is heat transfer between cables resulting in heat dissipation through natural convection being less effective than in the single port case. Radiation is also less effective due to the proximity of hot surfaces. This section lists a few typical 3-port configuration to show the impacts of receptacle spacing to the thermal performance of an active

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

cable. For Figure D-4 and Figure D-5 minimum spacing center to center is 7 mm; for Figure D-6 it is 12.85 mm.

Figure D-4 Vertically Stacked Horizontal Connectors 3x1 Configuration (VERT)

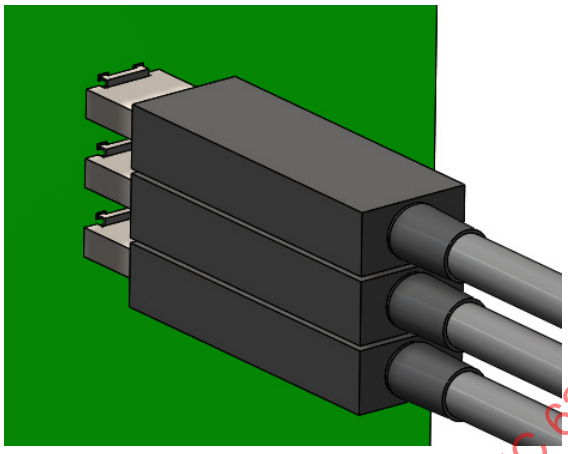


Figure D-5 Horizontally Stacked Vertical Connectors 1x3 Configuration (HZ90)

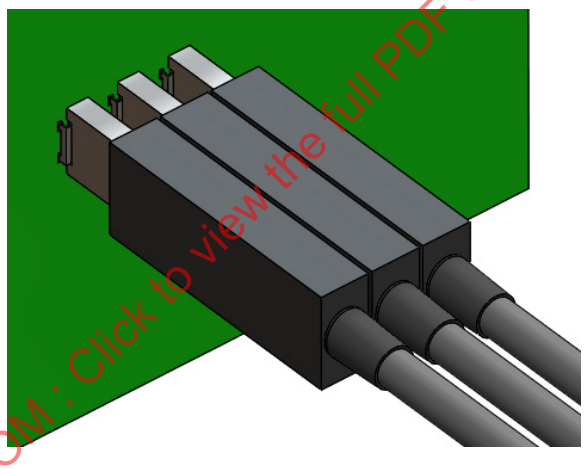
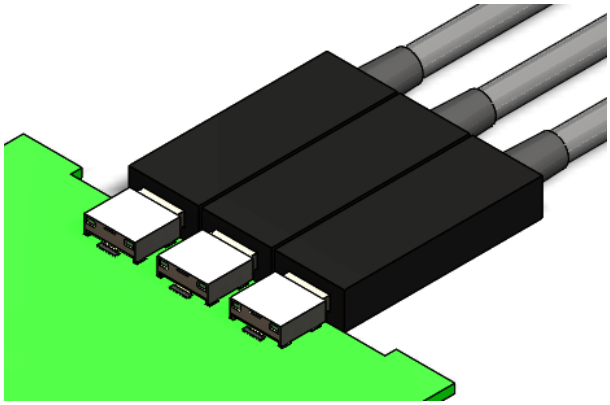


Figure D-6 Horizontally Stacked Horizontal Connector 1x3 Configuration (HORZ)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

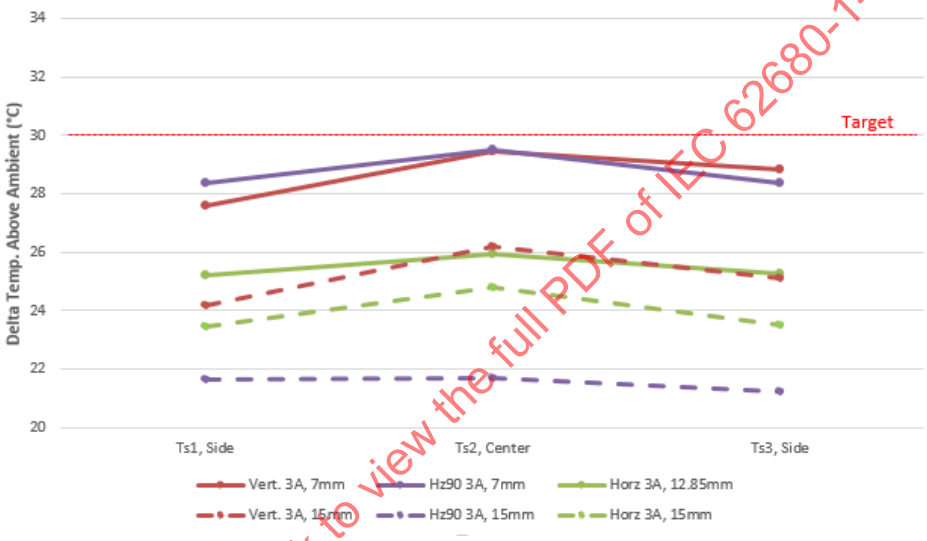
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

D.3.1.2.1 USB 3.2 Single-Lane 3A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration

When three active cables are stacked up, the port in the center position is usually in the worst situation for heat transfer. Figure D-7 shows the temperature difference between maximum over-mold surface temperature T_S of three ports and the ambient temperature T_A when three *USB 3.2* 3A cables are plugged on a 60 °C motherboard in 35°C ambient.

In all 3-port configurations shown in Figure D-4, Figure D-5, and Figure D-6, it is achievable to keep the all three plug over-mold surface temperature T_S below the requirement, at 3 A V_{BUS}, assuming the motherboard temperature is no higher than (T_A +25) °C. Specific cable design should be tested and validated because the margin of center port in VERT and HZ90 is less than 1 °C at minimum port spacing in thermal modeling.

Figure D-7 USB 3.2 Single-Lane 3A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration



D.3.1.2.2 USB 3.2 Single-Lane 5A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration

Figure D-8 shows the temperature difference between maximum over-mold surface temperature T_S of three ports and the ambient temperature T_A when three *USB 3.2* 5A cables are plugged on a 60 °C motherboard in 35 °C ambient.

All solid lines indicate the minimum spacing cases and dash lines the enlarged spacing cases. Center port is the worst case in all configurations. Three 5A cables at VERT and HZ90 configurations at minimum spacing could exceed the (T_A +30 °C) specification by up to 5 °C. HORZ configuration marginally meet spec on side ports but failed on center port.

Enlarging spacing between ports greatly reduce T_S. Especially in HZ90 configuration, spacing from 7 mm to 15 mm reduced T_S by about 8 °C.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure D-8 USB 3.2 Single-Lane 5A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration



D.4 Dual-Lane Active Cables

USB 3.2 defines two lanes of SuperSpeed USB data and in dual-lane operation typically has higher active component power consumption than *USB 3.2* single-lane Gen2 active cables. Higher power could heat up the over-mold and raise T_S above user comfort zone when plugging or unplugging the cable.

USB 3.2 dual-lane active cable may consume up to 1.5 W of power from V_{CONN}. This compares with the 1 W allowed for *USB 3.2* single-lane active cables.

Section D.4.1 shows T_S resulting from 0.75 W over-mold power P_O in a 1.5 W dual-lane *USB 3.2* active cable for a certain design, in both single-port and multiple-port configurations. Results reveals that thermal solution is necessary to meeting cable design requirements especially in multiple-port configuration.

Both over-mold power P_O and thermal boundary of the cable T_{MB} have impacts on T_S. The correlation of three are studied in Section D.4.1.2 which helps system and cable designer to take both factors into consideration.

D.4.1 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane Active Cable Design Considerations

The cable designer should design for T_S of the over-mold less than 30 °C above T_A in the condition where thermal boundary T_{MB} is of 25 °C above T_A per Section 5.5.4.

D.4.1.1 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane Active Cable in a Single Port Configuration

An active cable connected to a single port in a host or device can take full advantage of the overall plug surface area for heat dissipation. Table D-3 shows that when P_O is 0.75 W, it is achievable to keep the plug over-mold surface temperature T_S of a single cable below (T_A +30) °C at both 3 A and 5 A V_{BUS}, assuming the motherboard temperature is no higher than (T_A +25) °C.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table D-3 USB 3.2 Active Cable Design Single Port Case Study at 35 °C Ambient and 60 °C Thermal Boundary (Dual Lane)

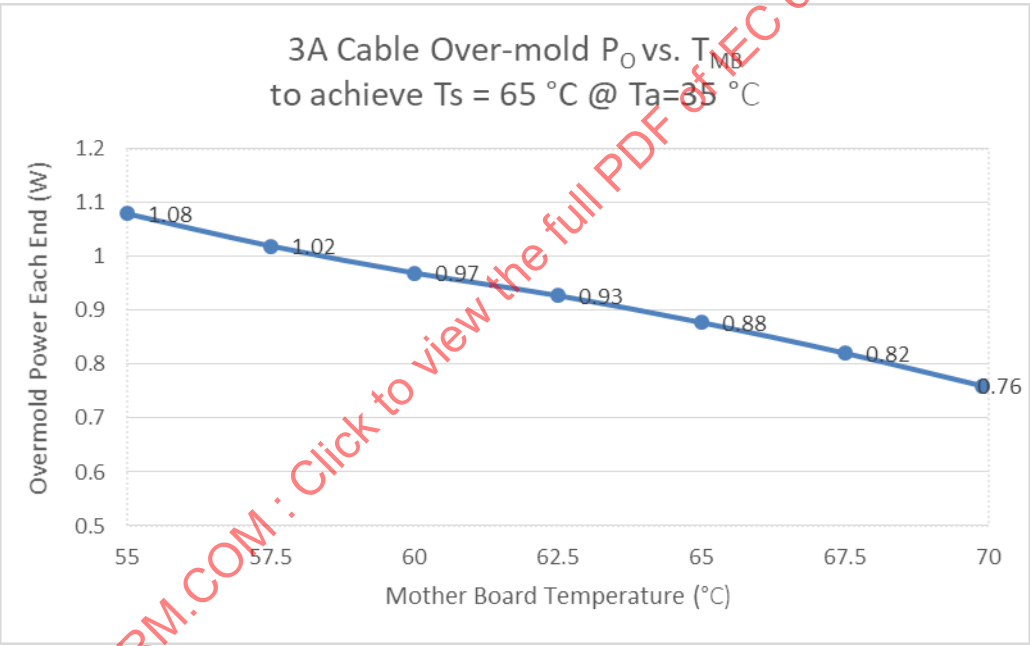
	3 A VBUS	5 A VBUS
T_S (°C)	61	64

In 5 A VBUS case, T_S is much closer to specified limit than 3 A VBUS case (Section D.3.1.1), so test and verification of thermal design is highly recommended.

D.4.1.2 Impact of Over-mold Power P_O and Thermal Boundary Temperature T_{MB}

In Figure D-9, the area under graph indicate the combination of over-mold power P_O and thermal boundary temperature T_{MB} that can achieve $T_S < (T_A + 30)$ °C in a single port configuration in a 3 A VBUS application.

Figure D-9 Impact of Over-mold Power P_O and Thermal Boundary Temperature T_{MB} at 3 A VBUS in a Single Port Configuration

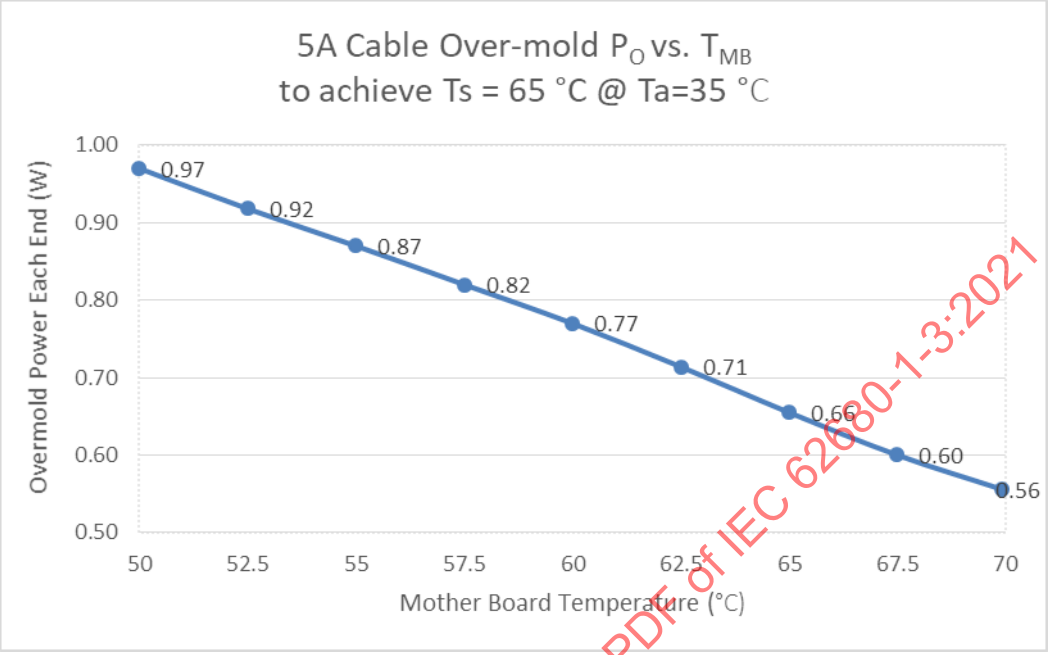


In Figure D-10, the area under graph indicate the combination of over-mold power P_O and thermal boundary temperature T_{MB} that can achieve $T_S < (T_A + 30)$ °C in a single port configuration in a 5 A VBUS application.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure D-10 Impact of Over-mold Power P_O and Thermal Boundary Temperature T_{MB} at 5 A V_{BUS} in a Single Port Configuration



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

D.4.1.3 Dongle Cable

When overall active component power is higher than the maximum over-mold power P_O that could meet T_S requirement, cable may be re-designed to move the thermal load away from the USB Type-C plug over-mold such as in a dongle cable as illustrated in Figure D-11.

Figure D-11 USB 3.2 Active Cable Dongle Design (One End Shown)



The cable should be designed so that the over-mold directly plugged in the host or device dissipates no more than maximum P_O and extra heat is migrated to another part of the cable such as a dongle, so neither extra heat will flow into host and device, nor over-mold surface temperature is too hot for users to touch.

D.4.2 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane Active Cable in a Multi-Port Configuration

Multi-port connector spacing results in less effective heat dissipation by natural convection and radiation. This section lists a few typical 3-port configuration to show the impacts of receptacle spacing to the thermal performance of *USB 3.2* active cables. Naming of configurations used in this section are the same as in Section D.3.1.2.

D.4.2.1 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane 3A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration

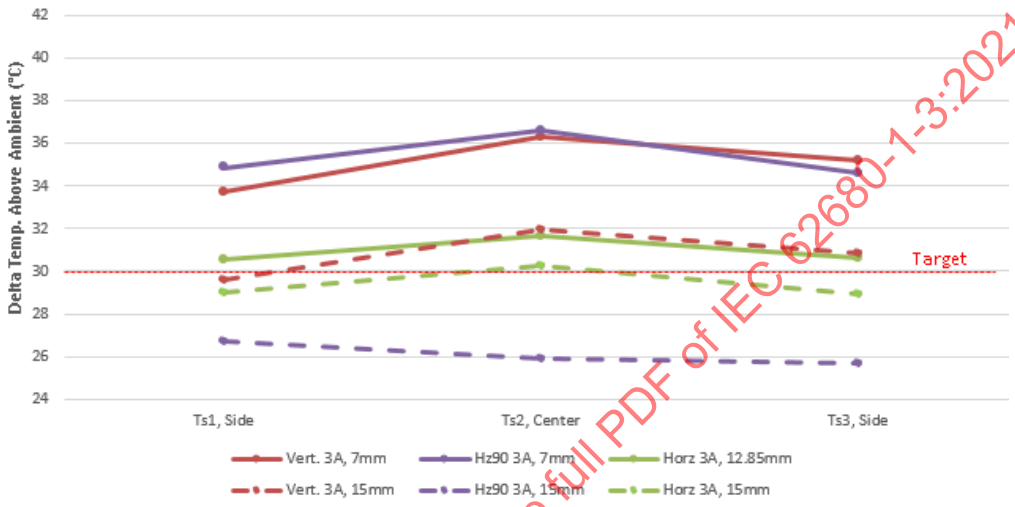
Figure D-12 shows the temperature difference between maximum over-mold surface temperature T_S of three ports and the ambient temperature T_A when three *USB 3.2* dual-lane 3A V_{BUS} and 1.5 W cables are plugged on a 60 °C motherboard in 35 °C ambient. The port in the center position is usually in the worst situation for heat transfer.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

All solid lines indicate the minimum spacing cases and dash lines the enlarged spacing cases. Center port is the worst case in all configurations. T_S of center port in VERT and HZ90 configurations at minimum spacing could be more than 6 °C over the (T_A +30 °C) specification and in HORZ configuration about 2 °C over specification.

Enlarging spacing between ports could greatly reduce T_S. Especially in HZ90 configuration, spacing from 7 mm to 15 mm reduced T_S by about 11 °C, which help to reduce T_S to meet specification.

Figure D-12 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane 3A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

D.4.2.2 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane 5A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration

Figure D-13 shows the temperature difference between maximum over-mold surface temperature T_S of three ports and the ambient temperature T_A when three USB 3.2 dual-lane 5 A V_{BUS} and 1.5 W cables are plugged on a 60 °C motherboard in 35 °C ambient. The T_S port in the center position is still the highest of all three in all cases.

In all 3-port configurations listed in Figure D-4, Figure D-5, and Figure D-6, plug over-mold surface temperature T_S of all three ports have exceeded the requirement, at 5 A V_{BUS}, assuming the motherboard temperature is at (T_A +25) °C. T_S of center port in VERT and HZ90 configurations at minimum spacing are the highest, near 12 °C over the (T_A +30 °C) specification and in HORZ configuration about 6 °C over specification.

Enlarging spacing between ports could help reduce T_S. The largest reduction is seen in HZ90 configuration, which is near 12 °C and it brings T_S back close to target, when spacing is enlarged from 7 mm to 15 mm. However, when port spacing is not sufficient to bring T_S down to desired range, further design options in cable and host/device should be investigated.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure D-13 USB 3.2 Dual-Lane 5A Active Cable in a 3-Port Configuration



D.5 USB 3.2 Host and Device Design Considerations

Multi-port *USB 3.2* systems should follow the connector minimum spacing requirement defined in Section 3.10.2.

From heat flow schematics (Section D.2.4), when flow path 1 (over-mold surface dissipation) is less effective due to the limited spacing between cables, more heat would flow to motherboard and cable. It is recommended that system designer evaluate the heat flow to the system in a system level thermal analysis and provide a heat solution at the system level to reduce the motherboard temperature at these ports if necessary.

D.5.1 Heat Spreading or Heat Sinking from Host or Device

Proper thermal solutions may be needed on host or device to meet cable thermal requirements. Below are examples of placement of thermal interface material on host or device USB Type-C receptacle connector to spread heat or conduct heat away from chassis. This is to help either direct heat away from active components inside cable plug or limit amount of heat from flowing from host or device into the cable plug. Both would prevent the increased junction temperature of active components and increased cable plug surface temperature over the finger touch temperature limit. The heat management solution shown below are not limited to certain type or size.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure D-14 Example: Additional Heat Spreader on Receptacle in Host or Device

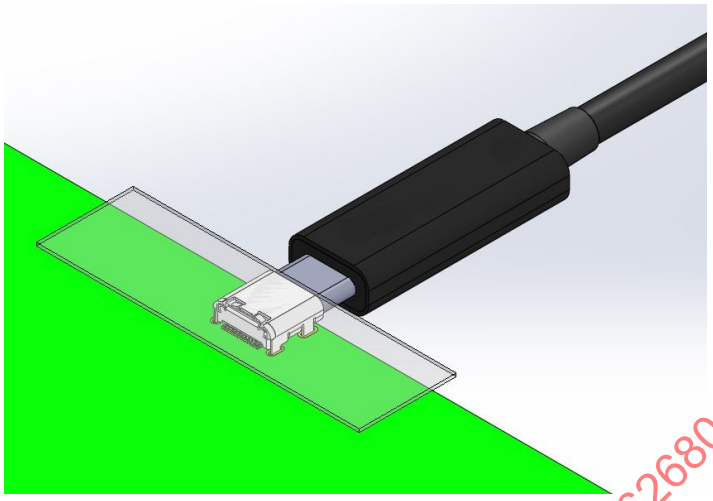
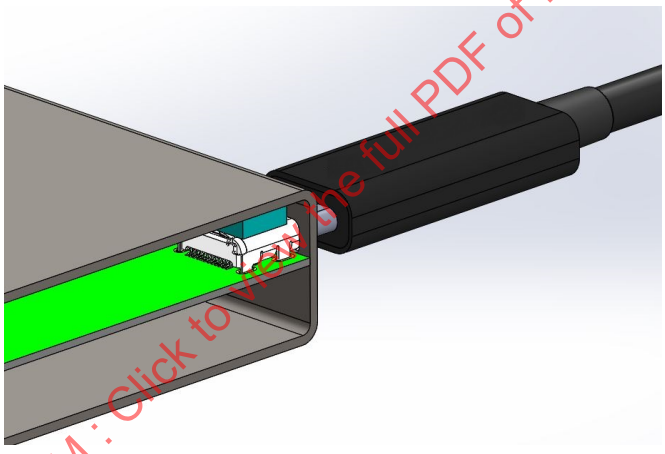


Figure D-15 Example: Heat Sinking by Chassis of Host or Device



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

D.5.2 Motherboard Temperature Control

Motherboard as a thermal boundary for the cable, could impact the thermal performance of cable greatly. Lowered mother temperature especially the area local around the receptacles could help reduce plug surface temperature T_S and component junction temperature T_J. See more discussion in Section D.4.1.1.

D.5.3 Wider Port Spacing for Multi-Port Applications

Wider spacing between receptacle connectors, especially when no additional heat sinking is available, is recommended for multiport application. Section D.3.1.2.1 and section D.3.1.2.2 show the impact from adjustment of port spacing.

D.5.4 Power Policies

To be added in a future update.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

E Alternate Modes

All hosts and devices (except chargers and clearly marked charge-through ports) using a USB Type-C® receptacle shall expose a USB interface (minimally *USB 2.0*). In the case where the host or device optionally supports Alternate Modes:

- The host and device shall use *USB Power Delivery* Structured Vendor Defined Messages (Structured VDMs) to discover, configure and enter/exit modes to enable Alternate Modes.
- The device is strongly encouraged to provide equivalent USB functionality where such exists for best user experience.
- Where no equivalent USB functionality is implemented, the device shall provide a USB interface exposing a *USB Billboard Device Class* used to provide information needed to identify the device. A device is not required to provide a USB interface exposing a *USB Billboard Device Class* for non-user facing modes (e.g., diagnostic modes).

As Alternate Modes do not traverse the USB hub topology, they shall only be used between a host connected directly to a device.

There are Alternate Mode devices that look like a USB hub – the downstream facing ports of such devices are USB Type-C receptacles that support Alternate Modes. These devices are referred to as Alternate Mode expanders:

- The Alternate Mode port expander's downstream facing USB Type-C receptacles shall expose a USB 2.0 interface.

An Alternate Mode port expander with the capability to pass SuperSpeed USB through its upstream facing port should expose SuperSpeed USB on its downstream facing USB Type-C receptacles.

E.1 Alternate Mode Architecture

The *USB Power Delivery* Structured VDMs are defined to extend the functionality a device exposes. Only Structured VDMs shall be used to alter the USB functionality or reconfigure the pins the USB Type-C Connector exposes. Structured VDMs provide a standard method to identify the modes a device supports and to command the device to enter and exit a mode. The use of Structured VDMs are in addition to the normal *USB PD* messages used to manage power. Structured VDMs may be interspersed within the normal *USB PD* messaging stream, however they shall not be inserted in the middle of an ongoing PD power negotiation.

The Structured VDMs consist of a request followed by a response. The response is either a successful completion of the request (ACK), an indication that the device needs time before it can service a request (BUSY), or a rejection of the request (NAK). A host and device do not enter a mode when either a NAK or BUSY is returned.

Multiple modes may exist and/or function concurrently. For example, a Structured VDM may be used to manage an active cable at the same time that another Structured VDM is used to manage the device so that both the cable and device are operating in a compatible mode.

E.2 Alternate Mode Requirements

The host and device shall negotiate a *USB PD* Explicit Contract before Structured VDMs may be used to discover or enter an Alternate Mode.

The ACK shall be sent after switching to the Alternate Mode has been completed by the UFP for Enter Mode and Exit Mode requests. See Section 6.4.4 in the *USB Power Delivery Specification*.

If a device fails to successfully enter an Alternate Mode within tAMETimeout then the device shall minimally expose a *USB 2.0* interface (*USB Billboard Device Class*) that is powered by VBUS. If the device additionally supports *USB4*, then the device should defer exposing a *USB 2.0* interface (*USB*

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Billboard Device Class) due to an Alternate Mode timeout until the *USB4* discovery and entry process has completed (See Section 5.2.2).

When a device offers multiple modes, especially where multiple Alternate Mode definitions are needed in order to be compatible with multiple host-side implementations, successfully entering an Alternate Mode may be predicated on only one of the available modes being successfully recognized by a host. In this case, the device is not required to expose but may still expose a *USB Billboard Device Class* interface to indicate to the host the availability and status of the modes it supports.

The host may send an Enter Mode after tAMETimeout. If the device enters the mode, it shall respond with an ACK and discontinue exposing the *USB Billboard Device Class* interface. The device may expose the *USB Billboard Device Class* interface again with updated capabilities.

The current supplied over VCONN may be redefined by a specific Alternate Mode but the power shall not exceed the current rating of the pin (See Section 3.7.8.4).

E.2.1 Alternate Mode Pin Reassignment

Figure E-1 illustrates the only pins that shall be available for functional reconfiguration in a full-featured cable. The pins highlighted in yellow are the only pins that shall be reconfigured.

Figure E-1 Pins Available for Reconfiguration over the Full-Featured Cable

A12	A11	A10	A9	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1
GND	RX2+	RX2−	VBUS	SBU1	D−	D+	CC	VBUS	TX1−	TX1+	GND
GND	TX2+	TX2−	VBUS	VCONN			SBU2	VBUS	RX1−	RX1+	GND
B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B8	B9	B10	B11	B12

Figure E-2 illustrates the only pins that shall be available for functional reconfiguration in direct connect applications such as a cradle dock, captive cable or a detachable notebook. The pins highlighted in yellow are the only pins that shall be reconfigured. Five additional pins are available because this configuration is not limited by the cable wiring.

Figure E-2 Pins Available for Reconfiguration for Direct Connect Applications

A12	A11	A10	A9	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1
GND	RX2+	RX2−	VBUS	SBU1	D−	D+	CC	VBUS	TX1−	TX1+	GND
GND	TX2+	TX2−	VBUS	VCONN			SBU2	VBUS	RX1−	RX1+	GND
B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B8	B9	B10	B11	B12

The *USB 2.0* data pins (A6, A7) shall remain connected to the USB host controller during entry, while in and during exit of an Alternate Mode except in the case of a direct connect application that remaps A6 and A7. Direct connect applications that remap A6 and A7 through the use of an Alternate Mode shall provide a USB Billboard Class device that is presented if the remapped Alternate Mode is not entered within tAMETimeout.

E.2.2 Alternate Mode Electrical Requirements

Signaling during the use of Alternate Modes shall comply with all relevant cable assembly, adapter assembly and electrical requirements of Chapter 3.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Several requirements are specified in order to minimize risk of damage to the SuperSpeed USB transmitters and receivers in a USB host or device when operating in an Alternate Mode:

- If pin pairs B11, B10 (RX1) and A11, A10 (RX2) are used on a captive cable, they shall be AC coupled either before or in the USB Type-C plug.
- If pin pairs B11, B10 (RX1) and A11, A10 (RX2) are used on a USB Type-C receptacle, they may be AC coupled and discharged per *USB 3.2* before the receptacle.
- AC coupling on pin pairs A2, A3 (TX1) and B2, B3 (TX2) as defined for SuperSpeed USB signaling per *USB 3.2* shall be used for Alternate Mode signaling.
- Signals being received at the USB Type-C receptacle shall not exceed the value specified for $V_{TX\text{-}DIFF\text{-}PP}$ in Table 6-18 of the *USB 3.2* specification.
- Direct Connect applications that remap pins A6 and A7 shall place pins A6 and A7 in a hi-Z state before transmitting the *USB PD* Enter_Mode command to the Sink. The Source shall not enable the alternate use of the A6 and A7 pins until an ACK has been received by the Source. In the event of a failure to enter the Alternate Mode after transmission of the *USB PD* Enter_Mode command, the Source shall restore pins A6 and A7 to the normative *USB 2.0* operation.

Direct connect applications shall ensure that any stubs introduced by repurposing the extra D+/D− pair do not interfere with USB communication with compliant hosts that short the pairs of pins together on the receptacle. This can be ensured by placing the Alternate Mode switch close to the plug, by adding inductors to eliminate the stubs at *USB 2.0* frequencies, by AC-terminating the long stubs to remove reflections at the cost of attenuated signal, or by other means.

When in an Alternate Mode, activity on the SBU lines shall not interfere with *USB PD* BMC communications or interfere with detach detection.

The AC coupling requirement are the same as defined in the *USB 3.2* specification. The TX signals shall be AC coupled within the system before the physical connector. The RX signals may be DC coupled or AC coupled and discharged within the system.

It should be noted that the AC coupling capacitor is placed in the system next to the USB Type-C receptacle, so that the system components (the orientation switch, the Alternate Mode selection multiplexer, and other system components) operate within the common mode limits set by the local PHY. This applies, in the SuperSpeed USB operation, to both the transmit path and the receive path within the local system. The receive path is isolated from the common mode of the port partner by the AC coupling capacitors that are implemented on the TX path in the port partner.

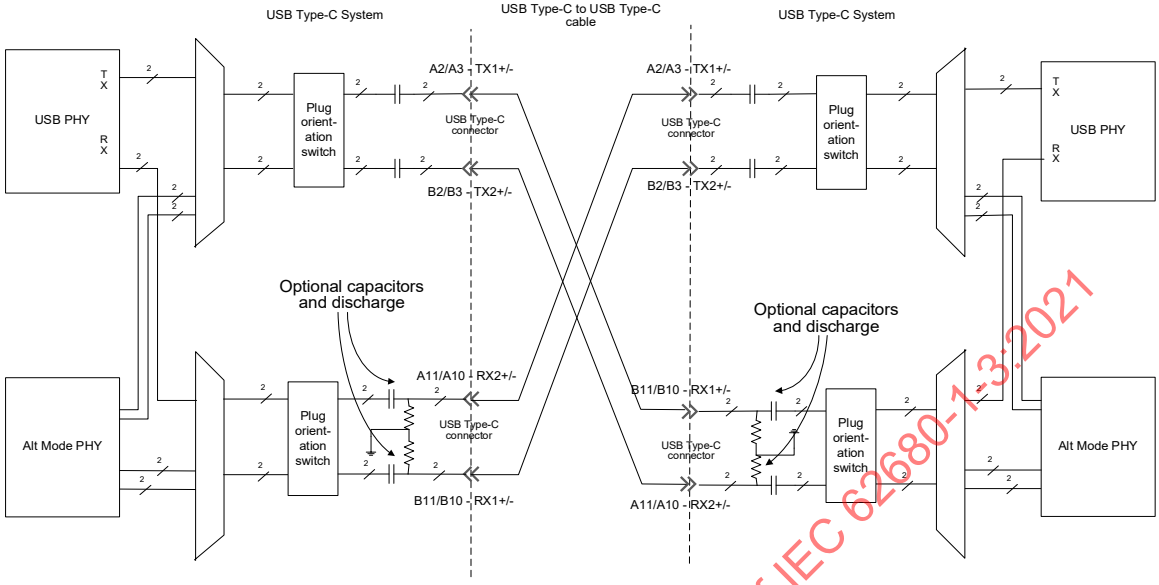
Figure E-3 shows the key components in a typical Alternate Mode implementation using a USB Type-C to USB Type-C full featured cable. This implementation meets the AC coupling requirements, as the capacitors required to be in or before the USB Type-C plug are implemented behind the TX pins in the port partner.

It should be noted that the AC coupling capacitor is placed in the system next to the USB Type-C receptacle, so that the system components (the orientation switch, the Alternate Mode selection multiplexer, and other system components) operate within the common mode limits set by the local PHY. This applies, in the SuperSpeed USB operation, to both the transmit path and the receive path within the local system. The receive path is isolated from the common mode of the port partner by the AC coupling capacitors that are implemented on the TX path in the port partner.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure E-3 Alternate Mode Implementation using a USB Type-C to USB Type-C Cable



In the case where the Alternate Mode System is required to implement DC blocking capacitors within the system between active system components and the Alternate Mode connector, then this provides the necessary isolation and further capacitors in the USB Type-C to Alternate Mode adapter cable are not necessary, and may indeed impair signal integrity.

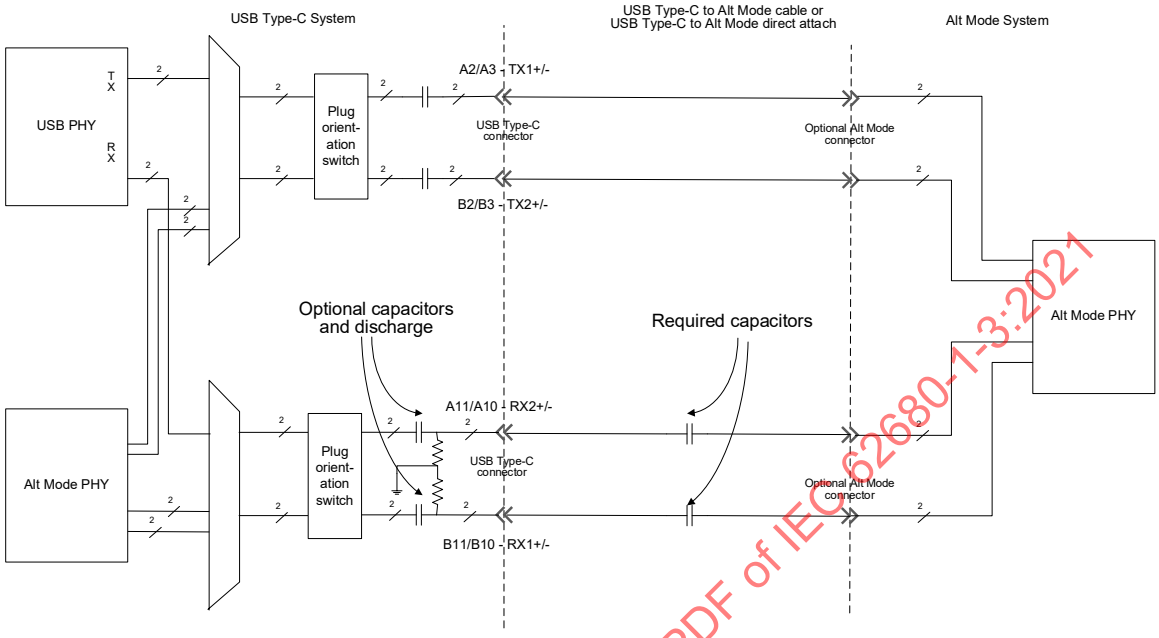
Figure E-4 shows the key components in a typical Alternate Mode implementation using either a USB Type-C to Alternate Mode connector cable, or a USB Type-C Alternate Mode Direct Attach device. In both cases it is necessary that the system path behind the RX pins on the USB receptacle be isolated from external common mode. This requirement is met by incorporating capacitors in or behind the USB Type-C plug on the Alternate Mode cable or Alternate Mode device.

In the case where the Alternate Mode System is required to implement DC blocking capacitors within the system between active system components and the Alternate Mode connector, then this provides the necessary isolation and further capacitors in the USB Type-C to Alternate Mode adapter cable are not necessary, and may indeed impair signal integrity.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure E-4 Alternate Mode Implementation using a USB Type-C to Alternate Mode Cable or Device



The USB Safe State is defined by the *USB PD* specification. The USB Safe State defines an electrical state for the SBU1/2 and TX/RX for DFPs, UFPs, and Active Cables when transitioning between USB and an Alternate Mode. SBU1/2 and TX/RX must transition to the USB Safe State before entering to or exiting from an Alternate Mode. Table E-1 defines the electrical requirements for the USB Safe State. See the *USB-PD* Specification for more detail on entry/exit mechanisms to the USB Safe State.

Table E-1 USB Safe State Electrical Requirements

	SBU1/2	TX[1,2]	RX[2]	A6/A7/B6/B7[4]
Common-mode voltage	0 to 1.5 V	0 to 1.5 V	0 to 1.5 V	0 to 1.5 V
Impedance to ground[3]	< 4 MΩ	< 4 MΩ	25 KΩ – 4 MΩ	< 4 MΩ

Notes:

1. TX common-mode voltage is defined on the integrated circuit side of the AC coupling capacitors.
2. Unused TX and RX signals should transition to USB Safe State if wired to the connector but not used.
3. The DFP and UFP shall provide a discharge path to ground in USB Safe State when a connection to the USB Type-C receptacle is present.
4. Applies to docking solutions/direct connect applications that redefine pins A6, A7, B6 and B7.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

E.3 Parameter Values

Table E-2 provides the timeout requirement for a device that supports Alternate Modes to enable a *USB Billboard Device Class* interface when none of the modes supported by the device are successfully recognized and configured by the DFP to which the device is attached.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table E-2 USB Billboard Device Class Availability Following Alternate Mode Entry Failure

	Maximum	Description
tAMETimeout	1000 ms	The time between a Sink attach until a *USB Billboard Device Class* interface is exposed when an Alternate Mode is not successfully entered

While operating in an Alternate Mode, the signaling shall not cause noise ingression onto USB signals operating concurrently that exceeds the Vnoise parameters given in Table E-3.

Table E-3 Alternate Mode Signal Noise Ingression Requirements

	Limit	Bandwidth
Vnoise on BMC during BMC Active	30 mV	100 ns time constant filter
Vnoise on BMC during BMC Idle	100 mV	100 ns time constant filter
Vnoise on D+/D– (Single-ended)	40 mV	500 MHz
Vnoise on D+/D– (Differential)	10 mV	500 MHz

Note: Each Vnoise parameter is the max noise ingression level allowed onto the respective interface that is due to two SBU aggressors from the Alternate Mode signaling, under respective worse case scenarios. The coupling between SBU_A/SBU_B and CC within a USB Type-C cable shall meet the requirement described in Section 3.7.2.5.4. The coupling between SBU_A/SBU_B and USB D+/D– within a USB Type-C cable shall meet the requirement described in Section 3.7.2.5.5.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

E.4 Example Alternate Mode – USB DisplayPort™ Dock

This example illustrates the use of Structured VDMs to expose and access functionality beyond the basic functionality defined by the USB Type-C Connector. The device uses its USB Type-C connector to make connection when placed in a cradle dock. This example only illustrates the functional connections.

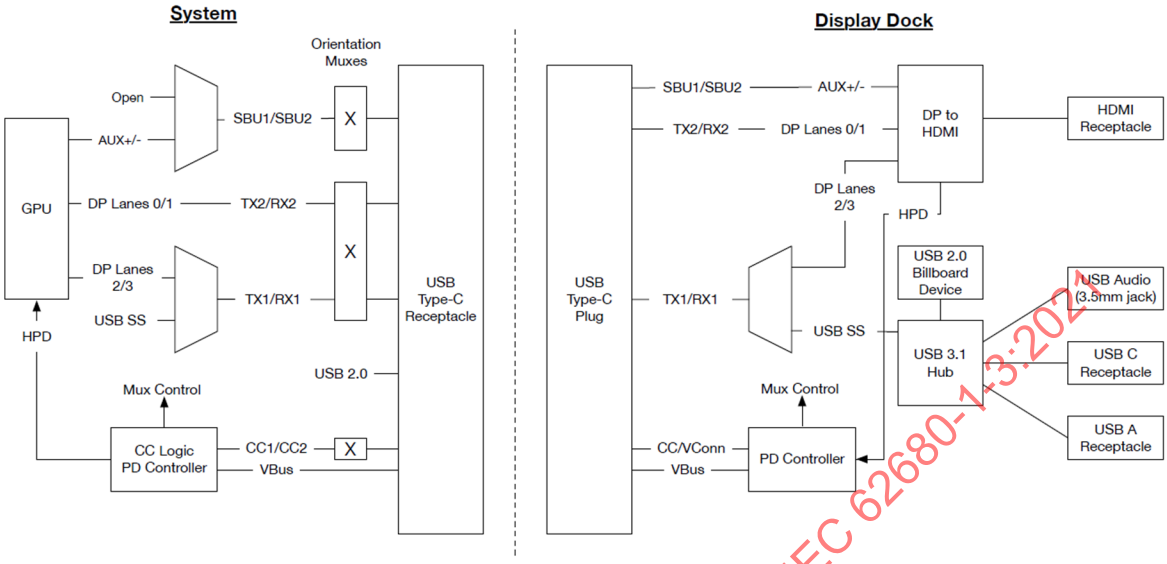
E.4.1 USB DisplayPort™ Dock Example

- The cradle dock provides mechanical alignment and attachment in addition to those provided by the USB Type C connector allowing for only one orientation eliminating the need for an orientation MUX in the dock.
- The dock and system use *USB PD* to manage charging and power.
- The dock uses DisplayPort to drive a DisplayPort-to-HDMI adapter to support connecting an HDMI monitor.
- The dock has a USB hub that exposes two external USB ports and attached internal USB Devices, e.g. a USB audio Device (a 3.5 mm audio jack), and a USB Billboard Device.

Figure E-5 illustrates the USB DisplayPort Dock example in a block diagram form.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure E-5 USB DisplayPort Dock Example



The system uses *USB PD* Structured VDMs to communicate with the dock to discover that it supports a compatible Alternate Mode. The system then uses a Structured VDM to enter the dock mode. Since *USB PD* is used, it may also be used to negotiate power for the system and dock. In this example, the SuperSpeed USB signals allow the dock to work as a USB-only dock when attached to a system that does not fully support the dock or even *USB PD*.

E.4.2 Functional Overview

The following summarizes the behavior resulting from attaching the example USB DisplayPort Dock for three likely host system cases.

1. Host system does not support *USB PD* or supports *USB PD* without Structured VDMs
   - The host does not support *USB PD*, or supports *USB PD* but not Structured VDMs, so it will not look for SVIDs using the Structured VDM method.
   - The host will discover the USB hub and operates as it would when connected to any USB hub.
   - Since the host will not send an Enter Mode command, after tAMETimeout the dock will expose a *USB Billboard Device Class* interface that the host will enumerate. The host then reports to the user that an unsupported Device has been connected, identifying the type of Device from the *USB Billboard Device Class* information.
2. Host system supports *USB PD* and Structured VDMs but does not support this specific USB DisplayPort Dock
   - The host discovers the USB hub and operates as it would when connected to any USB hub.
   - The Host looks for SVIDs that it recognizes. The VID associated with this USB DisplayPort Dock may or may not be recognized by the Host.
   - If that VID is recognized by the Host, the Host then requests the modes associated with this VID. The mode associated with this USB DisplayPort Dock is not recognized by the Host.
   - Since the host does not recognize the mode as being supported hence will not send the Enter Mode command, after tAMETimeout the dock will expose a *USB Billboard Device Class* interface that the host will enumerate. The host then reports to the user

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

that an unsupported Device has been connected, identifying the type of Device from the *USB Billboard Device Class* information.

3. Host system supports this specific USB DisplayPort Dock
    - The Host looks for SVIDs that it recognizes. The VID associated with this USB DisplayPort Dock is recognized by the Host.
    - The Host then requests the modes associated with this VID. The mode associated with this USB/Display Dock is recognized by the Host.
    - Since this mode is recognized as supported, the Host uses the Enter Mode command to reconfigure the USB Type-C receptacle and enter the USB DisplayPort Dock mode.
    - The USB DisplayPort Dock may optionally expose the *USB Billboard Device Class* interface to provide additional information to the OS.

E.4.3 Operational Summary

The following summarizes the basic process of discovery through configuration when the USB DisplayPort Dock is attached to the Host.

1. Host detects presence of a device (CC pins) and connector orientation
2. Host applies default VBUS
3. Host applies VCONN because the dock presents Ra
4. Host uses *USB PD* to make power contract with the USB DisplayPort Dock
5. Host runs the Discover Identify process
    a. Sends Discover Identity message
    b. Receives an ACK message with information identifying the cable
6. Host runs the Discover SVIDs process
    a. Sends Discover SVID message
    b. Receives an ACK message with list of SVIDs for which the Dock device has modes
7. Host runs the Discover Modes process
    a. Sends Discover Modes VDM for the VIDs previously discovered
    b. Receives an ACK message with a list of modes associated with each VID
    c. If USB DisplayPort Dock mode not found, dock will timeout and present the *USB Billboard Device Class* interface and the OS will inform the user of the error - done
    d. Else
8. Host runs the Enter Mode process
    a. Sends Enter Mode VDM with VID and USB DisplayPort Dock mode
    b. Receives an ACK message – Host is now attached to the USB DisplayPort Dock and supports DisplayPort signaling to interface additional functions in combination with USB signaling
9. Host stays in the USB DisplayPort Dock mode until
    a. Explicitly exited by an Exit Mode VDM
    b. System physically disconnected from the USB DisplayPort Dock
    c. Hard Reset on *USB PD*
    d. VBUS is removed

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

F Thunderbolt 3 Compatibility Discovery and Entry

The *USB4™* specification includes defined support for compatibility between *USB4* products that are designed to interoperate with existing Thunderbolt™ 3 (TBT3) products. This appendix documents the normative methodology to discover and enter into TBT3 between two port partners – this methodology relys on Alternate Mode protocol as defined in Appendix E of this specification and the USB Power Delivery specification.

Thunderbolt 3 technology is organized into two primary product categories; hosts and devices. Most TBT3 devices include at least one upstream and one downstream port although a TBT3 device may include more than one downstream port in a manner similar to a hub or no downstream ports in a manner similar to a peripheral.

F.1 TBT3 Compatibility Mode Functional Requirements

In order to successfully interoperate with existing TBT3 products, the functional requirements in the following subsections must be met.

F.1.1 TBT3-Compatible Power Requirements

Before two TBT3-compatible port partners can enter TBT3 mode, a *USB PD* explicit power contract shall be established.

F.1.2 TBT3-Compatible Host Requirements

All TBT3-compatible host ports shall meet the following requirements.

- Support DRP operation
- If resolved to a UFP, use *USB PD* DR_Swap to attempt to switch into the DFP data role when DFP is preferred
- If resolved to a DFP, do not accept *USB PD* DR_Swap to remain in the DFP data role when DFP is preferred

F.1.3 TBT3-Compatible Device Upstream Requirements

F.1.3.1 Self-Powered Device

The TBT3-compatible upstream port of a self-powered device shall meet the following requirements.

- Support DRP operation
- Prefer Sink/UFP through the implementation and use of Try.SNK as needed
- If resolved to a DFP, accept *USB PD* DR_Swap to switch into the UFP data role

F.1.3.2 Bus-Powered Device

The TBT3-compatible upstream port of a bus-powered device shall meet the following requirements.

- Support Sink/UFP operation
- Reject *USB PD* DR_Swap to remain in the UFP data role

F.1.4 TBT3-Compatible Device Downstream Requirements

F.1.4.1 Self-Powered Device

The TBT3-compatible downstream stream port of a self-powered device shall meet the following requirements.

- Support DRP operation
- Prefer Source/DFP through the implementation and use of Try.SRC as needed
- If resolved to a DFP, do not accept *USB PD* DR_Swap and remain in the DFP data role

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

F.1.4.2 Bus-Powered Device

The TBT3-compatible downstream port of a bus-powered device shall meet the following requirements.

- Support Sink

F.1.5 TBT3-Compatible Self-Powered Device Without Predefined Upstream Port Rules

A TBT3-compatible device port may behave as either a downstream or upstream port based on its connection state to a TBT3-compatible host as described below.

- When no TBT3-compatible host is connected, the USB Type-C® ports shall:
  - Prefer to be configured as a UFP
  - Implement and use Try.SNK as needed to get into the UFP state
  - If resolved to a DFP, initiate or accept *USB PD* DR_Swap to switch to the UFP data role
  - Accept *USB PD* DR_Swap to switch to the DFP data role
  - When resolved to a UFP, identify this port as being connected to the host
- When a TBT3-compatible host is initially connected, the remaining downstream USB Type-C ports shall:
  - Implement and use Try.SRC as needed to get into the DFP state
  - Issue a Hard Reset if a *USB PD* DR_Swap is received when both a connection is present and an Alternate Mode is in place
  - Issue a *USB PD* DR_Swap to switch to the DFP data role if a connection is present but no Alternate Mode has been entered (this includes performing a disconnect/reconnect on the port)
  - Accept *USB PD* DR_Swap to switch to the DFP data role if a connection is present but no Alternate Mode has been entered (this includes performing a disconnect/reconnect on the port)
- When a TBT3-compatible host is disconnected, the downstream USB Type-C ports shall:
  - Perform a disconnect/reconnect on the port
  - Behave as if no host is connected

F.1.6 TBT3-Compatible Devices with a Captive Cable

TBT3-compatible devices with a captive cable shall respond to *USB PD* messages both SOP and SOP'.

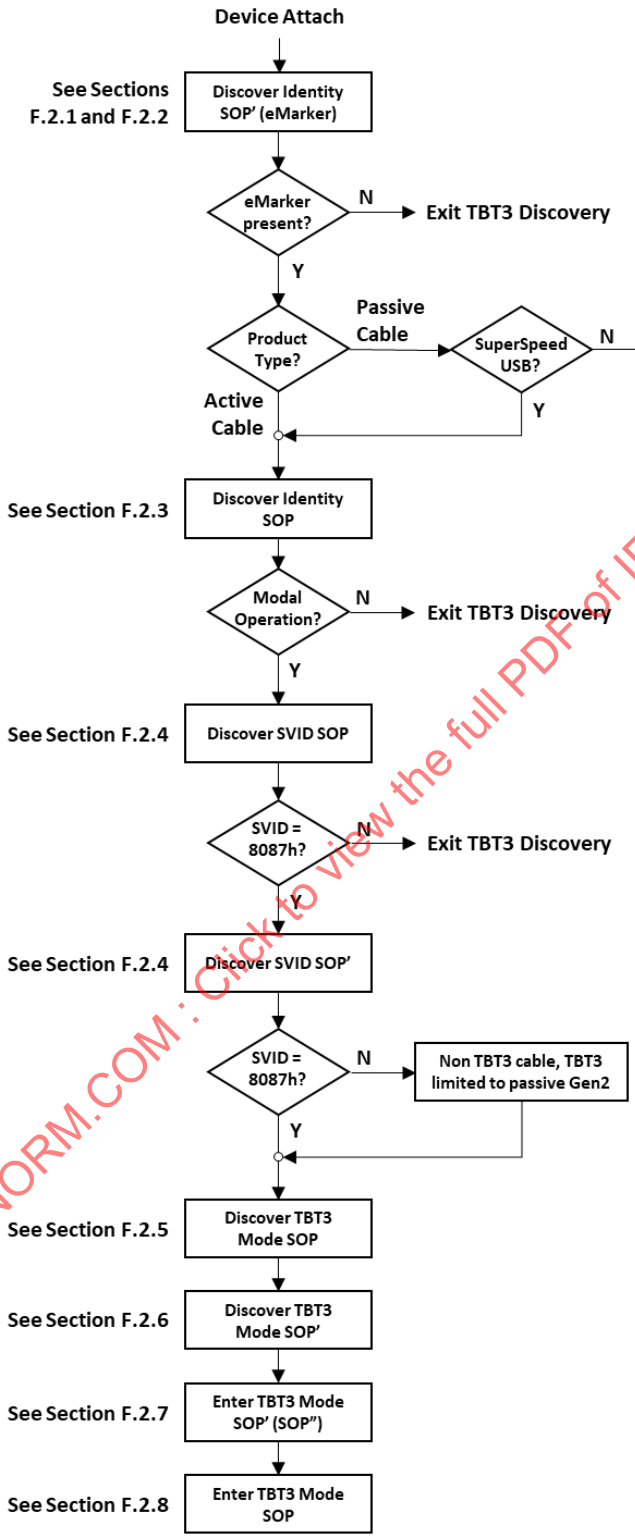
F.2 TBT3 Discovery and Entry Flow

Figure F-1 describes the flow for a TBT3-compatible DFP port to discover and enter into the TBT3 Compatibility Mode of USB4 with a connected UFP. For each functional block, refer to the sub-sections identified for additional details.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure F-1 TBT3 Discovery Flow



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

F.2.1 TBT3 Passive Cable Discover Identity Responses

Table F-1, along with Table F-2 and Table F-3, defines the expected Discover Identity VDO responses for a TBT3 passive cable. In fields where multiple values are listed, cable responses may vary to match the specific connected cable's capabilities.

Table F-1 TBT3 Passive Cable Discover Identity VDO Responses

Message Header						
Rsvd	**Number of Objects**	**Message ID**	**Cable Plug**	**Spec Revision**	**Rsvd**	**Message Type**
0	5…6	0…7	1 = Cable Plug	10b or 01b	0	1111b
VDM Header						
SVID	**VDM Type**	**VDM Version**	**Rsvd**	**Object Position**	**Command Type**	**Rsvd**	**Command**
0xFF00	1	01b	0	000b	001b	0	00001b

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
ID Header VDO		
B31	0	USB Communications Capable as USB Host
B30	0	USB Communications Capable as a USB Device
B29…27	011b = Passive Cable	Product Type (Cable Plug)
B26	1 = Modal Operation	Modal Operation Supported
B25…23	000b	Product Type (DFP)
B22…16	0	***Reserved***
B15…0	Per vendor	USB Vendor ID
Cert Stat VDO		
B31…0	0x00000000…0xFFFFFFFF	XID assigned by USB-IF
Product VDO		
B31…16	0x0000…0xFFFF	USB Product ID
B15…0	0x0000…0xFFFF	bcdDevice
Passive Cable VDO		
Depending on USB PD Specification Revision: See Table F-2 for USB PD Revision 2.0 or Table F-3 for USB PD Revision 3.0		

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table F-2 TBT3 Passive Cable VDO for USB PD Revision 2.0, Version 1.3

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
B31…28	0000b…1111b	HW Version
B27…24	0000b…1111b	Firmware Version
B23…20	0	***Reserved***
B19…18	10b = USB Type-C	USB Type-C plug to USB Type-C/Captive
B17	0	***Reserved***
B16…13	0001b – <10ns (~1m) 0010b – 10ns to 20ns (~2m)	Cable Latency
B12…11	00b = VCONN not required	Cable Termination Type
B10	0 = Fixed	SSTX1 Directionality Support
B9	0 = Fixed	SSTX2 Directionality Support
B8	0 = Fixed	SSRX1 Directionality Support
B7	0 = Fixed	SSRX2 Directionality Support
B6…5	01b = 3A 10b = 5A	VBUS Current Handling Capacity
B4	1 = Yes	VBUS through cable
B3	0 = No	SOP" controller present
B2…0	010b = [USB 3.1] Gen1 and Gen2	SuperSpeed USB Signaling Support

Table F-3 TBT3 Passive Cable VDO for USB PD Revision 3.0, Version 1.2

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
B31…28	0000b…1111b	HW Version
B27…24	0000b…1111b	Firmware Version
B23…21	000b = Version 1.0	VDO Version
B20	0	***Reserved***
B19…18	10b = USB Type-C	USB Type-C plug to USB Type-C/Captive
B17	0	***Reserved***
B16…13	0001b – <10ns (~1m) 0010b – 10ns to 20ns (~2m)	Cable Latency
B12…11	00b = VCONN not required	Cable Termination Type
B10…9	00b = 20V	Maximum VBUS Voltage
B8…7	00b	***Reserved***
B6…5	01b = 3A 10b = 5A	VBUS Current Handling Capacity
B4…3	00b	***Reserved***
B2…0	010b = [USB 3.2] Gen1 and Gen2	SuperSpeed USB Signaling Support

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

F.2.2 TBT3 Active Cable Discover Identity Responses

Table F-4, along with Table F-5, Table F-6 and Table F-7, defines the expected Discover Identity VDO responses for a TBT3 active cable. In fields where multiple values are listed, cable responses may vary to match the specific connected cable's capabilities.

Table F-4 TBT3 Active Cable Discover Identity VDO Responses

Message Header						
Rsvd	**Number of Objects**	**Message ID**	**Cable Plug**	**Spec Revision**	**Rsvd**	**Message Type**
0	5…6	0…7	1 = Cable Plug	10b or 01b	0	1111b
VDM Header						
SVID	**VDM Type**	**VDM Version**	**Rsvd**	**Object Position**	**Command Type**	**Rsvd**	**Command**
0xFF00	1	01b	0	000b	001b	0	00001b

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
ID Header VDO		
B31	0	USB Communications Capable as USB Host
B30	0	USB Communications Capable as a USB Device
B29…27	100b = Active Cable	Product Type (Cable Plug)
B26	1 = Modal Operation Supported	Modal Operation Supported
B25…23	000b	Product Type (DFP)
B22…16	0	***Reserved***
B15…0	Per vendor	USB Vendor ID
Cert Stat VDO		
B31…0	0x00000000…0xFFFFFFFF	XID assigned by USB-IF
Product VDO		
B31…16	0x0000…0xFFFF	USB Product ID
B15…0	0x0000…0xFFFF	bcdDevice
Active Cable VDO 1		
Depending on USB PD Specification Revision: See Table F-5 for USB PD Revision 2.0 or Table F-6 for USB PD Revision 3.0		
Active Cable VDO 2		
Applicable only for USB PD Revision 3.0 – See Table F-7		

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table F-5 TBT3 Active Cable VDO for USB PD Revision 2.0, Version 1.3

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
B31…28	0000b…1111b	HW Version
B27…24	0000b…1111b	Firmware Version
B23…20	0	***Reserved***
B19…18	10b = USB Type-C	USB Type-C plug to USB Type-C/Captive
B17	0	***Reserved***
B16…13	0001b – <10ns (~1m)	Cable Latency
B12…11	11b = Both ends Active, VCONN required	Cable Termination Type
B10	0 = Fixed	SSTX1 Directionality Support
B9	0 = Fixed 1= Configurable	SSTX2 Directionality Support
B8	0 = Fixed 1 = Configurable	SSRX1 Directionality Support
B7	0 = Fixed 1 = Configurable	SSRX2 Directionality Support
B6…5	01b = 3A 10b = 5A	VBUS Current Handling Capacity
B4	1 = Yes	VBUS through cable
B3	0 = No 1 = Yes	SOP' controller present
B2…0	010b = [USB 3.1] Gen1 and Gen2	SuperSpeed USB Signaling Support

Table F-6 TBT3 Active Cable VDO 1 for USB PD Revision 3.0, Version 1.2

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
B31…28	0000b…1111b	HW Version
B27…24	0000b…1111b	Firmware Version
B23…21	010b = Version 1.2	VDO Version
B20	0	***Reserved***
B19…18	10b = USB Type-C	USB Type-C plug to USB Type-C/Captive
B17	0	***Reserved***
B16…13	xxxxb (e.g., 0010b – 10ns to 20ns (~2m))	Cable Latency
B12…11	11b = Both ends Active, VCONN required	Cable Termination Type
B10…9	00b = 20V	Maximum VBUS Voltage
B8	1 = Yes	SBU Supported
B7	0 = Passive 1 = Active	SBU Type
B6…5	01b = 3A 10b = 5A	VBUS Current Handling Capacity
B4	0 = No 1 = Yes	VBUS through cable
B3	0 = No 1= Yes	SOP' controller present
B2…0	010b = [USB 3.2] Gen1 and Gen2	SuperSpeed USB Signaling Support

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Table F-7 TBT3 Active Cable VDO 2 for USB PD Revision 3.0, Version 1.2

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
B31…24	xxxxxxxxb (e.g., 10101010b = 170 °C)	Maximum Operating Temperature
B23…16	xxxxxxxxb (e.g., 11010010b = 210 °C)	Shutdown Temperature
B15	0	***Reserved***
B14…12	000b ≥ 10 mW	U3 Power
B11	0	U3 to U0 Transition mode
B10…8	000b	***Reserved***
B7…6	00b	USB 2.0 Hub Hops Consumed
B5	0 = Supported	USB 2.0 Supported
B4	0 = Supported	SuperSpeed Supported
B3	1 = two lanes	SuperSpeed Lanes Supported
B2	0	***Reserved***
B1…0	00b = Gen1 01b = Gen2	SuperSpeed Signaling

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

F.2.3 TBT3 Device Discover Identity Responses

Table F-8 defines the expected Discover Identity VDO responses for a TBT3 device. In fields where multiple values are listed, device responses may vary to match the specific connected device's capabilities.

Table F-8 TBT3 Device Discover Identity VDO Responses

Message Header						
Rsvd	**Number of Objects**	**Message ID**	**Cable Plug**	**Spec Revision**	**Rsvd**	**Message Type**
0	4	0…7	0 = UFP	10b or 01b	0	1111b

VDM Header							
SVID	**VDM Type**	**VDM Version**	**Rsvd**	**Object Position**	**Command Type**	**Rsvd**	**Command**
0xFF00	1	01b	0	000b	001b	0	00001b

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
ID Header VDO		
B31	0 or 1	USB Communications Capable as USB Host
B30	0 or 1	USB Communications Capable as a USB Device
B29…27	001b = PDUSB Hub 010b = PDUSB Peripheral 101b = Alternate Mode Adapter (AMA) 110b = VCONN-Powered USB Device (VPD)	Product Type (UFP)
B26	1 = Modal Operation Supported	Modal Operation Supported
B25…23	001b = PDUSB Hub 010b = PDUSB Host 100b = Alternate Mode Controller (AMC)	Product Type (DFP)
B22…16	0	***Reserved***
B15…0	Per vendor	USB Vendor ID
Cert Stat VDO		
B31…0	0x00000000…0xFFFFFFFF	XID assigned by USB-IF
Product VDO		
B31…16	0x0000…0xFFFF	USB Product ID
B15…0	0x0000…0xFFFF	bcdDevice

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

F.2.4 TBT3 Discover SVID Responses

Table F-9 defines the expected Discover SVID VDO responses for a TBT3 device or cable.

Table F-9 TBT3 Discover SVID VDO Responses

Message Header						
Rsvd	**Number of Objects**	**Message ID**	**Cable Plug**	**Spec Revision**	**Rsvd**	**Message Type**
0	3	0…7	0 = UFP	10b or 01b	0	1111b

VDM Header							
SVID	**VDM Type**	**VDM Version**	**Rsvd**	**Object Position**	**Command Type**	**Rsvd**	**Command**
0xFF00	1	01b	0	000b	001b	0	00010b

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
VDO 1		
B31…16	0x8087 = Intel/TBT3	SVID 0
B15…0	0xFF01 = VESA DP (if supported)	SVID 1
VDO 2		
B31…16	0x0000 – 0xFFFF (normally the cable manufacturer VID)	SVID 2
B15…0	0x0000 (normally)	SVID 3

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

F.2.5 TBT3 Device Discover Mode Responses

Table F-10 defines the expected Discover Mode VDO responses for a TBT3 device. In fields where multiple values are listed, device responses may vary to match the specific connected device's capabilities.

Table F-10 TBT3 Device Discover Mode VDO Responses

Message Header						
Rsvd	**Number of Objects**	**Message ID**	**Cable Plug**	**Spec Revision**	**Rsvd**	**Message Type**
0	2	0…7	0 = UFP	10b or 01b	0	1111b

VDM Header							
SVID	**VDM Type**	**VDM Version**	**Rsvd**	**Object Position**	**Command Type**	**Rsvd**	**Command**
0x8087	1	01b	0	000b	001b	0	00011b

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
TBT3 SOP VDO		
B31	0 = Not supported 1 = Supported	Vendor specific B1
B30	0 = Not supported 1 = Supported	Vendor specific B0
B29…27	000b	***Reserved***
B26	0 = Not supported 1 = Supported	Intel specific B0
B25…17	000000000b	***Reserved***
B16	0b = TBT2 Legacy Adapter 1b = TBT3 Adapter	TBT Adapter
B15…0	0x0001 = TBT Mode	TBT Alternate Mode

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

F.2.6 TBT3 Cable Discover Mode Responses

Table F-11 defines the expected Discover Mode VDO responses for a TBT3 cable. In fields where multiple values are listed, cable responses may vary to match the specific connected cable's capabilities.

Table F-11 TBT3 Cable Discover Mode VDO Responses

Message Header						
Rsvd	**Number of Objects**	**Message ID**	**Cable Plug**	**Spec Revision**	**Rsvd**	**Message Type**
0	2	0…7	1 = Cable Plug	10b or 01b	0	1111b

VDM Header							
SVID	**VDM Type**	**VDM Version**	**Rsvd**	**Object Position**	**Command Type**	**Rsvd**	**Command**
0x8087	1	01b	0	000b	001b	0	00011b

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
TBT3 SOP' VDO		
B31…24	00000000b	***Reserved***
B23	0 = Active with bi-directional LSRX[1] communication or when Passive 1 = Active with uni-directional LSRX[1] communication	Active Cable Plug Link Training
B22	0 = Not re-timer 1 = Re-timer	Re-timer
B21	0b = Non-Optical 1b = Optical	Cable Type
B20…19	00b = 3rd Gen Non-Rounded TBT 01b = 3rd & 4th Gen Rounded and Non-Rounded TBT 10b…11b = Reserved	TBT_Rounded_Support
B18…16	000b = Reserved 001b = USB3.1 Gen1 Cable (10 Gbps TBT support) 010b = 10 Gbps (USB 3.2 Gen1 and Gen2 passive cables) 011b = 10 Gbps and 20 Gbps (TBT 3rd Gen active cables and 20 Gbps passive cables) 100b…111b = Reserved	Cable Speed
B15…0	0x0001 = TBT Mode	TBT Alternate Mode

Notes:
1. LSRX in TBT3 is the same communication channel as SBRX in USB4.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

F.2.7 TBT3 Cable Enter Mode Command

Table F-12 defines the Enter Mode Command that shall be sent to the SOP' (and if needed the SOP") of an active TBT3 cable to enable the cable for TBT3 operation.

Table F-12 TBT3 Cable Enter Mode Command

Message Header							
Rsvd	**Number of Objects**	**Message ID**	**Cable Plug**		**Spec Revision**	**Rsvd**	**Message Type**
0	1	0…7	1 = Cable Plug		10b or 01b	0	1111b
VDM Header							
SVID	**VDM Type**	**VDM Version**	**Rsvd**	**Object Position**	**Command Type**	**Rsvd**	**Command**
0x8087	1	01b	0	000b	000b	0	00100b

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

F.2.8 TBT3 Device Enter Mode Command

Table F-13 defines the Enter Mode Command that shall be sent to the SOP of a TBT3 device to enable the device for TBT3 operation.

Table F-13 TBT3 Device Enter Mode Command

Message Header						
Rsvd	**Number of Objects**	**Message ID**	**Cable Plug**	**Spec Revision**	**Rsvd**	**Message Type**
0	2	0…7	0 = UFP	10b or 01b	0	1111b

VDM Header							
SVID	**VDM Type**	**VDM Version**	**Rsvd**	**Object Position**	**Command Type**	**Rsvd**	**Command**
0x8087	1	01b	0	000b	000b	0	00100b

Bit(s)	Value	Parameter
TBT3 SOP VDO		
B31	0 = Not supported 1 = Supported	Vendor specific B1
B30	0 = Not supported 1 = Supported	Vendor specific B0
B29…27	000b	***Reserved***
B26	0 = Not supported 1 = Supported	Intel specific B0
B25	0b	***Reserved***
B24	0 = Passive cable 1= Active cable	Active_Passive
B23	0 = Active with bi-directional LSRX[1] communication or when Passive 1 = Active with uni-directional LSRX[1] communication	Active Cable Link Training
B22	0 = Not re-timer 1 = Re-timer	Re-timer
B21	0b = Non-Optical 1b = Optical	Cable Type
B20…19	00b = 3rd Gen Non-Rounded TBT 01b = 3rd & 4th Gen Rounded and Non-Rounded TBT 10b…11b = Reserved	TBT_Rounded_Support
B18…16	000b = Reserved 001b = USB3.1 Gen1 Cable (10 Gbps TBT support) 010b = 10 Gbps (USB 3.2 Gen1 and Gen2 passive cables) 011b = 10 Gbps and 20 Gbps (TBT 3rd Gen active cables and 20 Gbps passive cables) 100b…111b = Reserved	Cable Speed
B15…0	0x0001 = TBT Mode	TBT Alternate Mode

Notes:
1. LSRX in TBT3 is the same communication channel as SBRX in USB4.

The values to be used when sending the TBT3 Device Enter Mode command to the SOP of a TBT3 device are determined based on information retained from earlier in the discovery flow as follows:

- B31 and B30: return the values received in the B31 and B30 fields of the TBT3 Device Discover Mode Response.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- B26: return the value received in the B26 field of the TBT3 Device Discover Mode Response.
- B23: if using a TBT3 cable, return the value received in the B23 field of the TBT3 Cable Discover Mode Response, otherwise set to 0.
- B22: if using a TBT3 cable, return the value received in the B22 field of the TBT3 Cable Discover Mode Response, otherwise set to 0.
- B21: if using a TBT3 cable, return the value received in the B21 field of the TBT3 Cable Discover Mode Response, otherwise set to 0.
- B20…19: if using a TBT3 cable, return the value received in the B20…19 field of the TBT3 Cable Discover Mode Response, otherwise set to 00b.
- B18…16: if using a TBT3 cable, return the value received in the B18…16 field of the TBT3 Cable Discover Mode Response, otherwise set to 010b.

F.2.9 TBT3 Cable Functional Difference Summary

Table F-14 provides a summary of existing TBT3 cables and the unique functional differences between them.

Table F-14 TBT3 Cable Functional Difference Summary

Cable	Function					SOP' Configuration				
						ID Header VDO	Discover Mode (8087)			
	USB2	USB3	TBT3-Limit	USB4	DP	Passive/ Active B29…27	Re-timer B22	Uni/Bi Directional LSRX[1] B23	Rounded /none B20…19	Optical /none B21
Passive	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	011	0	N/A (0)	N/A (0)	0
TBT3 Re-timer	Yes	No	Legacy	No	No	100	1	0	00	0
Re-Timer	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	100	1	1	01	0
Re-Driver	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	100	0	1	01	0
Limit Optical	No	No	Yes No CLx No CC	No	No	100	0	1	00	1
Linear Optical Re-Driver	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	100	0	1	01	1

Notes:
1. LSRX in TBT3 is the same communication channel as SBRX in USB4.

Notes:

1. TBT3 Re-timer cables only supports TBT3 and does not support USB4 operation.
2. All other re-timer cables are as defined in Chapter 6.
3. Limit Optical cables are as defined in Chapter 6 as optically-isolated active cables.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

COMMISSION ÉLECTROTECHNIQUE INTERNATIONALE

_____

INTERFACES DE BUS UNIVERSEL EN SÉRIE POUR LES DONNÉES ET L'ALIMENTATION ÉLECTRIQUE –

Partie 1-3: Composants communs – Spécification des câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C®

AVANT-PROPOS

1) La Commission Electrotechnique Internationale (IEC) est une organisation mondiale de normalisation composée de l'ensemble des comités électrotechniques nationaux (Comités nationaux de l'IEC). L'IEC a pour objet de favoriser la coopération internationale pour toutes les questions de normalisation dans les domaines de l'électricité et de l'électronique. A cet effet, l'IEC – entre autres activités – publie des Normes internationales, des Spécifications techniques, des Rapports techniques, des Spécifications accessibles au public (PAS) et des Guides (ci-après dénommés "Publication(s) de l'IEC"). Leur élaboration est confiée à des comités d'études, aux travaux desquels tout Comité national intéressé par le sujet traité peut participer. Les organisations internationales, gouvernementales et non gouvernementales, en liaison avec l'IEC, participent également aux travaux. L'IEC collabore étroitement avec l'Organisation Internationale de Normalisation (ISO), selon des conditions fixées par accord entre les deux organisations.
2) Les décisions ou accords officiels de l'IEC concernant les questions techniques représentent, dans la mesure du possible, un accord international sur les sujets étudiés, étant donné que les Comités nationaux de l'IEC intéressés sont représentés dans chaque comité d'études.
3) Les Publications de l'IEC se présentent sous la forme de recommandations internationales et sont agréées comme telles par les Comités nationaux de l'IEC. Tous les efforts raisonnables sont entrepris afin que l'IEC s'assure de l'exactitude du contenu technique de ses publications; l'IEC ne peut pas être tenue responsable de l'éventuelle mauvaise utilisation ou interprétation qui en est faite par un quelconque utilisateur final.
4) Dans le but d'encourager l'uniformité internationale, les Comités nationaux de l'IEC s'engagent, dans toute la mesure possible, à appliquer de façon transparente les Publications de l'IEC dans leurs publications nationales et régionales. Toutes divergences entre toutes Publications de l'IEC et toutes publications nationales ou régionales correspondantes doivent être indiquées en termes clairs dans ces dernières.
5) L'IEC elle-même ne fournit aucune attestation de conformité. Des organismes de certification indépendants fournissent des services d'évaluation de conformité et, dans certains secteurs, accèdent aux marques de conformité de l'IEC. L'IEC n'est responsable d'aucun des services effectués par les organismes de certification indépendants.
6) Tous les utilisateurs doivent s'assurer qu'ils sont en possession de la dernière édition de cette publication.
7) Aucune responsabilité ne doit être imputée à l'IEC, à ses administrateurs, employés, auxiliaires ou mandataires, y compris ses experts particuliers et les membres de ses comités d'études et des Comités nationaux de l'IEC, pour tout préjudice causé en cas de dommages corporels et matériels, ou de tout autre dommage de quelque nature que ce soit, directe ou indirecte, ou pour supporter les coûts (y compris les frais de justice) et les dépenses découlant de la publication ou de l'utilisation de cette Publication de l'IEC ou de toute autre Publication de l'IEC, ou au crédit qui lui est accordé.
8) L'attention est attirée sur les références normatives citées dans cette publication. L'utilisation de publications référencées est obligatoire pour une application correcte de la présente publication.
9) L'attention est attirée sur le fait que certains des éléments de la présente Publication de l'IEC peuvent faire l'objet de droits de brevet. L'IEC ne saurait être tenue pour responsable de ne pas avoir identifié de tels droits de brevets et de ne pas avoir signalé leur existence.

La Norme internationale IEC 62680-1-3 a été établie par le domaine technique 18: Systèmes multimédias domestiques et applications pour réseaux d'utilisateurs finaux, du comité d'études 100 de l'IEC: Systèmes et équipements audio, vidéo et services de données.

Le texte de la présente norme a été établi par l'USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF). Les règles structurelles et rédactionnelles utilisées dans la présente publication reflètent les pratiques en vigueur au sein de l'organisme responsable de sa soumission.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Le texte de cette Norme internationale est issu des documents suivants:

CDV	Rapport de vote
100/3439/CDV	100/3501/RVC

Le rapport de vote indiqué dans le tableau ci-dessus donne toute information sur le vote ayant abouti à l'approbation de cette Norme internationale.

Ce document a été rédigé selon les Directives ISO/IEC, Partie 2.

Le comité a décidé que le contenu de ce document ne sera pas modifié avant la date de stabilité indiquée sur le site web de l'IEC sous "http://webstore.iec.ch" dans les données relatives au document recherché. A cette date, le document sera

- reconduit,
- supprimé,
- remplacé par une édition révisée, ou
- amendé.

IMPORTANT – Le logo *"colour inside"* qui se trouve sur la page de couverture de ce document indique qu'il contient des couleurs qui sont considérées comme utiles à une bonne compréhension de son contenu. Les utilisateurs devraient, par conséquent, imprimer ce document en utilisant une imprimante couleur.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

INTRODUCTION

La série IEC 62680 repose sur un ensemble de spécifications qui ont été élaborées à l'origine par l'USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF). Ces spécifications ont été soumises à l'IEC dans le cadre d'un accord particulier conclu entre l'IEC et l'USB-IF.

La présente norme est la publication de l'USB-IF relative à la Spécification des câbles et connecteurs Universal Serial Bus de Type-C, révision 2.0.

L'USB Implementers Forum, Inc. (USB-IF) est un organisme à but non lucratif fondé par le groupe de sociétés qui a développé la spécification du bus universel en série. L'USB-IF a été créé dans le but de fournir une plateforme de soutien et un forum pour favoriser le développement et l'adoption de la technologie du bus universel en série. Le forum facilite le développement de périphériques (appareils) USB compatibles et de haute qualité et promeut les avantages de la technologie USB et la qualité des produits qui ont été validés par des essais de conformité.

TOUTES LES SPÉCIFICATIONS USB VOUS SONT FOURNIES "EN L'ÉTAT", SANS GARANTIE D'AUCUNE SORTE, Y COMPRIS TOUTE GARANTIE DE QUALITÉ MARCHANDE, DE NON-VIOLATION OU D'ADÉQUATION À UN USAGE PARTICULIER. L'USB IMPLEMENTERS FORUM ET LES AUTEURS DE L'ENSEMBLE DES SPÉCIFICATIONS USB DÉCLINENT TOUTE RESPONSABILITÉ, Y COMPRIS TOUTE RESPONSABILITÉ RELATIVE À LA VIOLATION DE DROITS DE PROPRIÉTÉ, EN CE QUI CONCERNE L'UTILISATION OU LA MISE EN ŒUVRE DES INFORMATIONS CONTENUES DANS LA PRÉSENTE SPÉCIFICATION.

LA MISE À DISPOSITION D'UNE SPÉCIFICATION USB, QUELLE QU'ELLE SOIT, N'IMPLIQUE L'OCTROI D'AUCUNE LICENCE, EXPRESSE OU IMPLICITE, PAR PERCLUSION OU AUTRE, SUR AUCUN DROIT DE PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE.

La conclusion des accords des adoptants de l'USB peut toutefois permettre à une société signataire de participer à un accord de licence réciproque RAND-Z pour les produits conformes. Pour plus d'informations, se rendre sur:

https://www.usb.org/documents

L'IEC NE PREND PAS POSITION SUR LA QUESTION DE SAVOIR S'IL EST PERTINENT QUE VOUS CONCLUIEZ UN QUELCONQUE ACCORD USB ADOPTERS AGREEMENT OU QUE VOUS PARTICIPIEZ À L'USB IMPLEMENTERS FORUM.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Bus universel en série Spécification des câbles et connecteurs de Type-C®

Edition 2.0
Août 2019

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright © 2014-2019, USB 3.0 Promoter Group:
Apple Inc., Hewlett-Packard Inc., Intel Corporation, Microsoft Corporation, Renesas, STMicroelectronics, and Texas Instruments.
All rights reserved.

NOTE: Les adoptants ne peuvent utiliser que les câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C® pour mettre en œuvre une fonctionnalité USB ou tierce, comme expressément décrit dans la présente Spécification; toutes les autres utilisations sont interdites.

LICENCE LIMITÉE DE DROITS D'AUTEUR: Les Promoteurs de l'USB 3.0 délivrent une licence conditionnelle de droits d'auteur sous les droits inclus dans la spécification des câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C afin d'utiliser et de reproduire la Spécification dans le seul but, et uniquement si nécessaire, d'évaluer la pertinence de la mise en œuvre de la Spécification aux produits avec des produits conformes à la spécification. Nonobstant ce qui précède, l'utilisation de la Spécification en vue de déposer ou de modifier une demande de brevet relative à la Spécification ou à des produits conformes USB n'est pas autorisée. Hormis cette licence explicite de droits d'auteur, aucun autre droit ou licence n'est accordé, ce sans limitation des licences de brevets. Pour obtenir d'autres licences de propriété intellectuelle ou des engagements concernant les droits associés à la Spécification, une partie doit exécuter l'accord des adoptants de l'USB 3.0. NOTE: En utilisant la Spécification, vous acceptez les termes de cette licence en votre nom et, si vous le faites en qualité d'employé, au nom de votre employeur.

DENI DE RESPONSABILITÉ CONCERNANT LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

LA PRÉSENTE SPÉCIFICATION VOUS EST FOURNIE "EN L'ÉTAT", SANS GARANTIE D'AUCUNE SORTE, Y COMPRIS TOUTE GARANTIE DE QUALITÉ MARCHANDE, DE NON-VIOLATION OU D'ADÉQUATION À UN USAGE PARTICULIER. LES AUTEURS DE LA PRÉSENTE SPÉCIFICATION DÉCLINENT TOUTE RESPONSABILITÉ, Y COMPRIS TOUTE RESPONSABILITÉ RELATIVE À LA VIOLATION DE DROITS DE PROPRIÉTÉ, EN CE QUI CONCERNE L'UTILISATION OU LA MISE EN ŒUVRE DES INFORMATIONS CONTENUES DANS LA PRÉSENTE SPÉCIFICATION. LA MISE À DISPOSITION DE LA PRÉSENTE SPÉCIFICATION N'IMPLIQUE L'OCTROI D'AUCUNE LICENCE, EXPRESSE OU IMPLICITE, PAR PERCLUSION OU AUTRE, SUR AUCUN DROIT DE PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE.

L'ensemble des exemples d'implémentation et des conceptions de référence contenus dans la présente Spécification est inclus dans le cadre de la licence de brevet limitée pour les sociétés qui appliquent USB 3.0 Adopters Agreement.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

USB Type-C®, USB-C®, USB 2.0 Type-C™ et USB4™ sont des marques de l'Universal Serial Bus Implementers Forum (USB-IF). DisplayPort™ est une marque de VESA. Tous les noms de produits sont des marques, des marques déposées ou des marques de service de leurs propriétaires respectifs.

Thunderbolt™ est une marque commerciale d'Intel Corporation. La marque ou le logo Thunderbolt™ ne peut être utilisé qu'avec des produits conçus selon cette spécification, qui ont reçu la certification appropriée et sont utilisés dans le cadre d'une licence de la marque Thunderbolt™ – voir usb.org/compliance pour plus d'informations.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

SOMMAIRE

Présidence du groupe de travail/Editeurs de la spécification 384
Contributeurs du groupe de travail de la spécification 384
Sociétés du secteur qui ont apporté leurs commentaires au stade révision de la version initiale 389
Historique des révisions 390
1 Introduction 391
1.1 Objet 391
1.2 Domaine d'application 391
1.3 Documents connexes 392
1.4 Conventions 392
1.4.1 Ordre de priorité 392
1.4.2 Mots-clés 392
1.4.3 Numérotation 393
1.5 Termes et abréviations 393
2 Vue d'ensemble 399
2.1 Introduction 399
2.2 Connecteurs mâles, connecteurs femelles et câbles USB Type-C 400
2.3 Processus de configuration 401
2.3.1 Détection des branchements/débranchements entre la source et le collecteur 402
2.3.2 Détection de l'orientation du connecteur mâle ou des câbles torsadés 402
2.3.3 Détection de l'alimentation initiale (source-collecteur) et établissement de la relation avec les données (hôte-dispositif) 402
2.3.4 Détection et utilisation du courant VBUS USB Type-C 403
2.3.5 Communication USB PD 404
2.3.6 Extensions fonctionnelles 404
2.4 VBUS 404
2.5 VCONN 405
2.6 Hubs 405
3 Mécanique 406
3.1 Vue d'ensemble 406
3.1.1 Connecteurs conformes 406
3.1.2 Ensembles câble-connecteurs conformes 406
3.1.3 Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant conformes 407
3.1.4 Ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers existant conformes 407
3.2 Interfaces de couplage des connecteurs USB Type-C 408
3.2.1 Définition de l'interface 408
3.2.2 Schémas de référence 435
3.2.3 Affectation des broches et descriptions 445
3.3 Construction des câbles et affectation des fils 447
3.3.1 Construction des câbles (informative) 447
3.3.2 Affectation des fils 450
3.3.3 Calibres de fil et diamètres de câble (informatifs) 451

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.4 Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés 453
3.4.1 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C Complet 453
3.4.2 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB 2.0 Type-C 454
3.4.3 Ensembles câble-connecteurs captifs USB Type-C 455
3.5 Ensembles câble-connecteurs existants 455
3.5.1 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-A 456
3.5.2 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-A 458
3.5.3 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-B 459
3.5.4 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-B 461
3.5.5 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Mini-B 462
3.5.6 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Micro-B 463
3.5.7 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Micro-B 465
3.6 Ensembles adaptateurs existants 466
3.6.1 Ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A 466
3.6.2 Ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B 468
3.7 Caractéristiques électriques 469
3.7.1 Câble brut (informatif) 469
3.7.2 Ensembles câble-connecteurs passifs USB Type-C vers Type-C (normatifs) 470
3.7.3 Connecteur couplé (informatif – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2) 491
3.7.4 Connecteur couplé (normatif – USB4 Gen 3) 496
3.7.5 Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant (normatifs) 497
3.7.6 Ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers USB existant (normatifs) 501
3.7.7 Exigences concernant l'efficacité de l'écrantage (normatives) 503
3.7.8 Exigences électriques en courant continu (normatives) 506
3.8 Exigences mécaniques et environnementales (normatives) 510
3.8.1 Exigences mécaniques 510
3.8.2 Exigences environnementales 516
3.9 Applications d'accueil (informatives) 518
3.10 Notes relatives à la mise en œuvre et guides de conception 519
3.10.1 Gestion de la CEM (informative) 519
3.10.2 Espacement physique des connecteurs empilés et adjacents (informatif) 523
3.10.3 Remarques sur le couplage des câbles (informatives) 523
4 Exigences fonctionnelles 525
4.1 Récapitulatif des signaux 525
4.2 Description des broches de signal 525
4.2.1 Broches USB SuperSpeed 525
4.2.2 Broches USB 2.0 526
4.2.3 Broches de signal auxiliaire 526
4.2.4 Broches d'alimentation et de terre 526
4.2.5 Broches de configuration 526
4.3 Utilisation en bande latérale (SBU) 526
4.4 Alimentation et terre 527
4.4.1 Chute de tension ohmique 527
4.4.2 VBUS 528

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.4.3 VCONN 530
4.5 Canal de configuration (CC) 535
4.5.1 Vue d'ensemble de l'architecture 535
4.5.2 Exigences fonctionnelles et comportementales des broches CC 551
4.5.3 Comportement d'interopérabilité des ports USB 590
4.6 Alimentation 614
4.6.1 Exigences relatives à l'alimentation pendant la veille USB 615
4.6.2 Alimentation de la VBUS par câble USB Type-C 615
4.7 Hubs USB 622
4.8 Alimentation et charge 622
4.8.1 DFP comme source d'alimentation 622
4.8.2 Méthodes de charge non USB 625
4.8.3 Hôte collecteur 625
4.8.4 Dispositif d'alimentation 625
4.8.5 Charge d'un système avec une batterie déchargée 626
4.8.6 Chargeurs multiports USB Type-C 626
4.9 Câbles avec marquage électronique 629
4.9.1 Valeurs de paramètres 631
4.9.2 Câbles actifs 631
4.10 Accessoires alimentés par VCONN (VPA) et dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN (VPD) 631
4.10.1 Accessoires alimentés par VCONN (VPA) 631
4.10.2 Dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN (VPD) 632
4.11 Valeurs de paramètres 634
4.11.1 Paramètres de terminaison 634
4.11.2 Paramètres de temporisation 636
4.11.3 Paramètres de tension 639
5 Découverte et mise en service USB4 641
5.1 Présentation du processus de découverte et de mise en service 641
5.2 Exigences fonctionnelles concernant l'USB4 642
5.2.1 Exigences fonctionnelles concernant les hôtes USB4 642
5.2.2 Exigences fonctionnelles concernant les dispositifs USB4 642
5.2.3 Prise en charge du mode alternatif USB4 642
5.2.3.1 Prise en charge des modes alternatifs USB4 sur les hôtes 642
5.2.3.2 Prise en charge du mode alternatif USB4 sur les hubs et les stations d'accueil USB4 643
5.3 Exigences concernant l'alimentation USB4 643
5.3.1 Exigences concernant l'alimentation de la source 643
5.3.2 Exigences concernant l'alimentation du collecteur 643
5.3.3 Exigences concernant la gestion de l'alimentation d'un dispositif 644
5.4 Exigences concernant le processus de découverte et de mise en service de l'USB4 644
5.4.1 Connexion USB Type-C initiale 644
5.4.2 Contrat d'alimentation USB 645
5.4.3 Processus de découverte et de mise en service de l'USB4 645
5.4.3.1 Découverte de dispositifs USB4 (SOP) 647

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

5.4.3.2 Découverte de câbles USB4 (SOP')....647
5.4.3.3 Mise en service de l'USB4....650
5.4.4 Fonctionnement après mise en service de l'USB4....650
5.4.4.1 Pendant le fonctionnement USB4....650
5.4.4.2 Sortie du fonctionnement USB4....651
5.5 Exigences concernant la connexion des hubs USB4....651
5.5.1 Exigences concernant la connexion initiale des ports d'un hub USB4....651
5.5.2 Découverte des capacités de l'hôte et de l'UFP d'un hub USB4....651
5.5.3 Exigences concernant la connexion au DFP d'un hub....652
5.5.3.1 Connexions spéculatives....652
5.5.3.2 Connexions fonctionnelles....652
5.5.4 Modèle de processus de comportement de connexion des ports d'un hub....653
5.5.5 Connexion aux hubs USB4 en aval....661
5.5.6 Exigences fonctionnelles concernant le repli des hubs USB4....661
5.6 Exigences concernant la connexion des dispositifs USB4....661
5.6.1 Mappage de repli des fonctions périphériques USB4 vers les types de classes de dispositifs USB....661
5.7 Valeurs de paramètres....662
5.7.1 Paramètres de temporisation....662
6 Câbles actifs....664
6.1 Diagramme d'états USB Type-C....666
6.2 Exigences concernant l'USB PD....666
6.2.1 Exigences concernant les câbles actifs USB PD....667
6.2.2 Messages USB PD des câbles OIAC....668
6.2.3 Comportements des câbles actifs courts en réponse aux événements d'alimentation....682
6.3 Processus et diagrammes d'états de connexion des câbles OIAC....683
6.3.1 Processus de connexion des câbles OIAC – Découverte – Phase 1....683
6.3.2 Processus de connexion des câbles OIAC – Réamorçage – Phase 2....685
6.3.3 Processus de connexion des câbles OIAC – Configuration – Phase 3....686
6.3.4 Diagramme d'états de connexion du connecteur mâle maître d'un câble OIAC....689
6.3.5 Diagramme d'états de connexion du connecteur mâle esclave d'un câble OIAC....699
6.4 Exigences concernant l'alimentation des câbles actifs....705
6.4.1 Exigences concernant la VBUS....705
6.4.2 Exigences concernant la VBUS d'un câble OIAC....705
6.4.3 Règles USB PD à l'état actif....707
6.4.4 Exigences concernant la VCONN....708
6.5 Exigences mécaniques....708
6.5.1 Exigences thermiques....708
6.5.2 Espacement des connecteurs mâles....709
6.6 Exigences électriques....709
6.6.1 Exigence concernant l'efficacité de l'écrantage....709
6.6.2 Exigence concernant les signaux à basse vitesse....709
6.6.3 USB 2.0....710

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

6.6.4 USB 3.2 711
6.6.5 Facteur d'adaptation 719
6.7 Câbles actifs qui prennent en charge les modes alternatifs 719
6.7.1 Découverte des SVID 719
6.7.2 Découverte des modes 719
6.7.3 Modes Enter/Exit 720
6.7.4 Alimentation en modes alternatifs 720
A Mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio 721
A.1 Vue d'ensemble 721
A.2 Description 721
A.3 Exigences électriques 723
A.4 Exemples de mise en œuvre 724
A.4.1 Adaptateur passif 3,5 mm-USB Type-C – Commutateur de détection à pôle unique 724
A.4.2 Adaptateur 3,5 mm-USB Type-C assumant une charge de 500 mA 725
B Mode accessoire de débogage 727
B.1 Vue d'ensemble 727
B.2 Fonctionnel 727
B.2.1 Récapitulatif des signaux 728
B.2.2 Interopérabilité des ports 728
B.2.3 Entrée en mode accessoire de débogage 728
B.2.4 Diagrammes d'états de connexion 729
B.2.5 Comportement d'interopérabilité des ports d'un DTS 738
B.2.6 Détection de l'orientation 748
B.3 Exigences de sécurité/confidentialité 749
C Audio numérique USB Type-C 750
C.1 Vue d'ensemble 750
C.2 Spécifications USB Type-C audio numérique 750
D Considérations relatives à la conception thermique des câbles actifs 752
D.1 Introduction 752
D.2 Modèle 752
D.2.1 Hypothèses 752
D.2.2 Architecture du modèle 753
D.2.3 Sources de chaleur 754
D.2.4 Flux thermique 754
D.3 Câble actif USB 3.2 à voie unique 756
D.3.1 Considérations relatives à la conception des câbles actifs USB 3.2 à voie unique 756
D.4 Câbles actifs à double voie 759
D.4.1 Considérations relatives à la conception des câbles actifs USB 3.2 à double voie 759
D.4.2 Câble actif USB 3.2 à double voie en configuration à plusieurs ports 762
D.5 Considérations relatives à la conception des hôtes et des dispositifs USB 3.2 763
D.5.1 Diffusion thermique ou refroidissement à partir de l'hôte ou du dispositif 764
D.5.2 Contrôle de la température de la carte mère 765

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

D.5.3 Espacement élargi des ports pour les applications à plusieurs ports 765
D.5.4 Stratégies d'alimentation 765
E Modes alternatifs 766
E.1 Architecture des modes alternatifs 766
E.2 Exigences relatives aux modes alternatifs 766
E.2.1 Réaffectation des broches en mode alternatif 767
E.2.2 Exigences électriques relatives aux modes alternatifs 768
E.3 Valeurs de paramètres 771
E.4 Exemple de mode alternatif – Station d'accueil USB DisplayPort™ 772
E.4.1 Exemple de station d'accueil USB DisplayPort™ 772
E.4.2 Vue d'ensemble fonctionnelle 774
E.4.3 Récapitulatif fonctionnel 774
F Découverte de compatibilité et mise en service de Thunderbolt™ 3 776
F.1 Exigences fonctionnelles concernant le mode de compatibilité TBT3 776
F.1.1 Exigences concernant les alimentations compatibles TBT3 776
F.1.2 Exigences concernant les hôtes compatibles TBT3 776
F.1.3 Exigences en amont concernant les dispositifs compatibles TBT3 776
F.1.4 Exigences en aval concernant les dispositifs compatibles TBT3 777
F.1.5 Dispositif autoalimenté compatible TBT3 sans règles prédéfinies pour les ports en amont 777
F.1.6 Dispositifs compatibles TBT3 avec câble captif 777
F.2 Processus de découverte et de mise en service TBT3 778
F.2.1 Réponses de découverte d'identité d'un câble passif TBT3 780
F.2.2 Réponses de découverte d'identité d'un câble actif TBT3 782
F.2.3 Réponses de découverte d'identité d'un dispositif TBT3 785
F.2.4 Réponses de découverte de SVID TBT3 786
F.2.5 Réponses de découverte de mode d'un dispositif TBT3 787
F.2.6 Réponses de découverte de mode d'un câble TBT3 788
F.2.7 Commande Enter Mode d'un câble TBT3 789
F.2.8 Commande Enter Mode d'un dispositif TBT3 790
F.2.9 Récapitulatif des différences fonctionnelles entre les câbles TBT3 791

FIGURES

Figure 2-1 — Interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C (vue de face) 400
Figure 2-2 — Interface d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet (vue de face) 400
Figure 3-1 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C 411
Figure 3-2 — Schéma de référence des zones de contact d'un ressort CEM externe pour un connecteur mâle USB Type-C 416
Figure 3-3 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet 417
Figure 3-4 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C monté à la verticale (informative) 421
Figure 3-5 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C monté à angle droit, en surface et sur deux rangées (informative) 422
Figure 3-6 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C hybride monté à angle droit (informative) 423
Figure 3-7 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C monté en surface, au centre et sur deux rangées (informative) 425

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-8 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C hybride monté au centre (informative) ... 426
Figure 3-9 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB 2.0 Type-C à insérer monté à angle droit (informative) ... 427
Figure 3-10 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB 2.0 Type-C monté à angle droit sur une rangée (informative) ... 428
Figure 3-11 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C ... 431
Figure 3-12 — Exigences concernant la pointe du ressort d'écrantage CEM d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C ... 434
Figure 3-13 — Schéma de référence de la plaque médiane du connecteur femelle ... 436
Figure 3-14 — Schéma de référence du verrou latéral ... 437
Figure 3-15 — Représentation du verrou soudé à la terre de la carte d'accès ... 437
Figure 3-16 — Schéma de référence du ressort CEM interne d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet ... 438
Figure 3-17 — Schéma de référence du ressort CEM interne d'un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C ... 440
Figure 3-18 — Schéma de référence d'une plaque CEM interne ... 441
Figure 3-19 — Schéma de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C équipé de ressorts CEM externes ... 443
Figure 3-20 — Conception de référence de la carte d'accès d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet ... 444
Figure 3-21 — Représentation d'une coupe d'un câble USB Type-C Complet, exemple de fil coaxial avec VCONN ... 447
Figure 3-22 — Représentation d'une coupe d'un câble USB Type-C Complet, exemple de fil coaxial sans VCONN ... 448
Figure 3-23 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C Complet normalisé ... 453
Figure 3-24 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB 3.1 Standard-A ... 456
Figure 3-25 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-A ... 458
Figure 3-26 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-B ... 459
Figure 3-27 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-B ... 461
Figure 3-28 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Mini-B ... 462
Figure 3-29 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Micro-B ... 463
Figure 3-30 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Micro-B ... 465
Figure 3-31 — Ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A ... 466
Figure 3-32 — Ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B ... 468
Figure 3-33 — Représentation des points d'essai pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs couplé ... 470
Figure 3-34 — Exigence concernant la perte d'insertion différentielle recommandée (USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2) ... 471
Figure 3-35 — Exigence concernant le facteur d'adaptation différentiel recommandé ... 472
Figure 3-36 — Exigence concernant la diaphonie différentielle recommandée ... 472
Figure 3-37 — Exigence concernant la paradiaphonie et la télédiaphonie différentielles recommandées entre la paire USB D+/D− et les paires TX/RX ... 473
Figure 3-38 — Exigence concernant la perte d'insertion différentielle recommandée (USB4 Gen 3) ... 474
Figure 3-39 — Représentation de l'ajustement de la perte d'insertion à la fréquence de Nyquist ... 475
Figure 3-40 — Spectre d'une impulsion en entrée ... 476
Figure 3-41 — Limite d'IMR en fonction de ILfitatNq ... 477
Figure 3-42 — Limite d'IRL en fonction de ILfitatNq ... 479
Figure 3-43 — Exigence concernant la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun ... 480
Figure 3-44 — Limite d'IMR en fonction de ILfit à 10 GHz (USB4 Gen 3) ... 481
Figure 3-45 — Définition du port, de la victime et de l'agresseur ... 482
Figure 3-46 — Limite IXT_DP et IXT_USB en fonction de ILfit à 10 GHz (USB4 Gen 3) ... 482
Figure 3-47 — Limite d'IRL en fonction de ILfitatNq (USB4 Gen 3) ... 483
Figure 3-48 — Exigence concernant la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (USB4 Gen 3) ... 483
Figure 3-49 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs dans le système ... 484
Figure 3-50 — Exigence concernant le couplage différentiel entre le fil CC et le fil D+/D− ... 487
Figure 3-51 — Exigence concernant le couplage asymétrique entre le fil CC et le fil D− dans les câbles USB 2.0 Type-C ... 487
Figure 3-52 — Exigence concernant le couplage asymétrique entre le fil CC et le fil D− dans les câbles USB Type-C Complet ... 488

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-53 — Exigence concernant le couplage différentiel entre VBUS et D+/D− ... 488
Figure 3-54 — Exigence concernant le couplage asymétrique entre SBU_A et SBU_B ... 489
Figure 3-55 — Exigence concernant le couplage asymétrique entre SBU_A/SBU_B et CC ... 490
Figure 3-56 — Exigence concernant le couplage entre SBU_A et D+/D− en mode différentiel, et entre SBU_B et D+/D− en mode différentiel ... 490
Figure 3-57 — Représentation du connecteur couplé USB Type-C ... 492
Figure 3-58 — Limites d'impédance recommandées d'un connecteur couplé USB Type-C ... 492
Figure 3-59 — Dimensions recommandées des vides de terre pour un connecteur femelle USB Type-C ... 493
Figure 3-60 — Limites recommandées pour la paradiaphonie et la télédiaphonie différentielles entre la paire D+/D− et les paires TX/RX ... 495
Figure 3-61 — Limites recommandées pour la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun ... 496
Figure 3-62 — Limite d'IMR en fonction de ILfitatNq pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant ... 500
Figure 3-63 — Limite d'IRL en fonction de ILfitatNq pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant ... 501
Figure 3-64 — Essai d'efficacité de l'écrantage d'un ensemble câble-connecteurs ... 504
Figure 3-65 — Critères de réussite/échec pour l'efficacité de l'écrantage ... 505
Figure 3-66 — Diagramme de mesure de la LLCR ... 506
Figure 3-67 — Point de mesure de la température ... 508
Figure 3-68 — Exemple de configuration de la trace de montage pour l'essai du courant assigné ... 509
Figure 3-69 — Exemple de montage d'essai de continuité sur quatre axes ... 511
Figure 3-70 — Exemple de montage d'essai de résistance à l'arrachement pour les connecteurs mâles sans surmoulage ... 514
Figure 3-71 — Montage d'essai de continuité/résistance à l'arrachement de référence ... 515
Figure 3-72 — Exemple de point de défaillance mécanique pour l'essai de résistance à l'arrachement ... 516
Figure 3-73 — Essai de résistance à l'arrachement avec un câble dans le montage ... 516
Figure 3-74 — Exemple de collerette pour un connecteur femelle de câble USB Type-C ... 519
Figure 3-75 — Lignes directrices concernant la CEM pour les verrous latéraux et la plaque médiane ... 520
Figure 3-76 — Connexions du doigt CEM sur l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle ... 521
Figure 3-77 — Connexions de la plaque CEM sur l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle ... 522
Figure 3-78 — Exemples d'ouvertures de connecteur ... 522
Figure 3-79 — Espacement minimal recommandé entre les connecteurs ... 523
Figure 3-80 — Espace minimal recommandé pour le surmoulage du connecteur mâle ... 523
Figure 3-81 — Surmoulage du connecteur mâle du câble et surface inclinée ... 524
Figure 4-1 —Chute de tension ohmique d'un câble ... 527
Figure 4-2 — Chute de tension ohmique des câbles alimentés ... 528
Figure 4-3 — Modèle logique du routage du bus de données à voie unique sur les ports USB Type-C ... 537
Figure 4-4 — Modèle logique des ports USB Type-C du dispositif à voie unique et connexion directe ... 538
Figure 4-5 — Modèle CC de polarisation/dépolarisation ... 540
Figure 4-6 — Modèle CC de source de courant/dépolarisation ... 540
Figure 4-7 — Modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'une source ... 543
Figure 4-8 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une source prenant en charge USB PD PR_Swap ... 544
Figure 4-9 — Modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'un collecteur ... 545
Figure 4-10 — Modèle fonctionnel d'un collecteur prenant en charge l'USB PD PR_Swap et VCONN_Swap ... 546
Figure 4-11 — Modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'une DRP ... 547
Figure 4-12 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: source ... 552
Figure 4-13 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: collecteur ... 553
Figure 4-14 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: collecteur avec prise en charge des accessoires ... 554
Figure 4-15 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: DRP ... 555
Figure 4-16 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: DRP avec prise en charge de l'état Try.SRC et des modes accessoires ... 556
Figure 4-17 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: DRP avec prise en charge de l'état Try.SNK et des modes accessoires ... 558
Figure 4-18 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: VPD de charge ... 560
Figure 4-19 — Sous-états Sink Power ... 585
Figure 4-20 — Diagramme d'états de connexion par câble avec marqueur électronique ... 587

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-21 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une source branchée à un collecteur 590
Figure 4-22 —Modèle fonctionnel d'une source branchée à une DRP 591
Figure 4-23 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à un collecteur 593
Figure 4-24 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à une DRP – CAS n° 1 594
Figure 4-25 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à une DRP – CAS n° 2 et 3 596
Figure 4-26 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une source branchée à une source 598
Figure 4-27 — Modèle fonctionnel d'un collecteur branché à un collecteur 599
Figure 4-28 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à un VPD 600
Figure 4-29 — Exemple de modèle de DRP branchée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge 601
Figure 4-30 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une source branchée à un port de dispositif existant 609
Figure 4-31 — Modèle fonctionnel d'un port hôte existant branché à un collecteur 610
Figure 4-32 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à un port de dispositif existant 611
Figure 4-33 — Modèle fonctionnel d'un port hôte existant branché à une DRP 613
Figure 4-34 — Surveillance du courant par le collecteur avec les modèles de broches CC à polarisation/dépolarisation 617
Figure 4-35 — Surveillance du courant par le collecteur avec les modèles de broches CC à source de courant/dépolarisation 617
Figure 4-36 — USB PD sur les broches CC 618
Figure 4-37 — Signalisation BMC USB PD sur les broches CC 619
Figure 4-38 — Sortie d'un câble USB Type-C en tant que fonction de charge USB Type-C non PD 624
Figure 4-39 — Sortie d'un câble USB Type-C de chargeur USB PD de 0 A à 3 A en tant que fonction de charge 624
Figure 4-40 — Sortie d'un câble USB Type-C de chargeur USB PD de 3 A à 5 A en tant que fonction de charge 625
Figure 4-41 — Câble avec marquage électronique, VCONN étant connectée par le câble 630
Figure 4-42 — Câble avec marquage électronique, avec SOP' à chaque extrémité 630
Figure 4-43 — Exemple de cas d'utilisation d'un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN 633
Figure 4-44 — Temporisation des DRP 637
Figure 5-1 — Modèle du processus de découverte et de mise en service de l'USB4 646
Figure 5-2 — Alignement du processus de connexion d'un hub USB4 sur un hôte et un dispositif USB4 654
Figure 5-3 — Modèle de processus de connexion d'un hub USB4 avec un hôte USB 3.2 et un dispositif USB4 655
Figure 5-4 — Alignement du processus de connexion d'un hub USB4 sur un hôte USB4 et un dispositif USB 3.2 656
Figure 5-5 — Modèle de processus de connexion d'un hub USB4 avec un hôte et un dispositif USB 3.2 658
Figure 5-6 — Modèle de processus de connexion d'un hub USB4 avec un hôte USB4 et un dispositif en mode alternatif DP 659
Figure 5-7 — Modèle de processus de connexion d'un hub USB4 avec un hôte USB 3.2 et un dispositif en mode alternatif DP 660
Figure 6-1 — Câble actif court avec marquage électronique, avec SOP' uniquement 666
Figure 6-2 — Câble actif court avec marquage électronique, avec SOP' et SOP" 667
Figure 6-3 — Câble actif à isolation optique avec marquage électronique 667
Figure 6-4 — Transfert des messages USB PD des câbles OIAC 675
Figure 6-5 — Permutation de rôles de données de câbles OIAC réussie 679
Figure 6-6 — Permutation de rôles de données de câbles OIAC rejetée 679
Figure 6-7 — Permutation de rôles de données de câbles OIAC en attente 680
Figure 6-8 — Permutation de rôles de données de câbles OIAC rejetée par l'initiateur 681
Figure 6-9 — Permutation de rôles de données de câbles OIAC mise en attente par l'initiateur 682
Figure 6-10 — Découverte des câbles OIAC – Phase 1 684
Figure 6-11 — Réamorçage du câble OIAC – Phase 2 685
Figure 6-12 — Configuration du connecteur mâle maître du câble OIAC en tant que DFP – Phase 3 686
Figure 6-13 — Configuration du connecteur mâle maître du câble OIAC en tant qu'UFP – Phase 3 687
Figure 6-14 — Aucune connexion possible du connecteur mâle maître du câble OIAC avec le billboard – Phase 3 688
Figure 6-15 — Diagramme d'états du connecteur mâle maître d'un câble OIAC – Partie 1 (Phase 1 et Phase 2) 690

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 6-16 — Diagramme d'états du connecteur mâle maître d'un câble OIAC – Partie 2 (Phase 3) 692
Figure 6-17 — Diagramme d'états du connecteur mâle esclave d'un câble OIAC 700
Figure 6-18 — Topologies des câbles actifs 711
Figure 6-19 — Exemples d'utilisation d'un câble OIAC qui exige un adaptateur ou un hub 714
Figure 6-20 — Points d'essai électrique USB SuperSpeed 716
Figure 6-21 — Montage d'essai de conformité USB SuperSpeed 716
Figure A-1 — Exemple d'adaptateur passif 3,5 mm-USB Type-C 725
Figure A-2 — Exemple d'adaptateur 3,5 mm-USB Type-C assumant une charge de 500 mA 726
Figure B-1 — Comportement par couche du mode accessoire de débogage USB Type-C 727
Figure B-2 — Interface du connecteur mâle d'un DTS 728
Figure B-3 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: source d'un DTS 729
Figure B-4 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: collecteur d'un DTS 730
Figure B-5 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: DRP d'un DTS 731
Figure B-6 — Sous-états TS Sink Power 736
Figure D-1 — Modèle de câble actif (port unique, connecteur femelle à montage supérieur) 753
Figure D-2 — Architecture du modèle 753
Figure D-3 — Sources de chaleur et voies thermiques 754
Figure D-4 — Configuration des connecteurs horizontaux à empilage vertical 3 x 1 (VERT) 756
Figure D-5 — Configuration des connecteurs verticaux à empilage horizontal 1 x 3 (HZ90) 757
Figure D-6 — Configuration des connecteurs horizontaux à empilage horizontal 1 x 3 (HORZ) 757
Figure D-7 — Câble actif USB 3.2 à voie unique de 3 A en configuration à trois ports 758
Figure D-8 — Câble actif USB 3.2 à voie unique de 5 A en configuration à trois ports 759
Figure D-9 — Impact de la puissance du surmoulage P_O et de la température de limite thermique T_{MB} à une V_{BUS} de 3 A en configuration à port unique 760
Figure D-10 — Impact de la puissance du surmoulage P_O et de la température de limite thermique T_{MB} à une V_{BUS} de 5 A en configuration à port unique 761
Figure D-11 — Conception de câbles dongles actifs USB 3.2 (une extrémité représentée) 761
Figure D-12 — Câble actif USB 3.2 à double voie de 3 A en configuration à trois ports 762
Figure D-13 — Câble actif USB 3.2 à double voie de 5 A en configuration à trois ports 763
Figure D-14 — Exemple: diffuseur de chaleur supplémentaire sur le connecteur femelle de l'hôte ou du dispositif 764
Figure D-15 – Exemple: refroidissement par le châssis de l'hôte ou du dispositif 764
Figure E-1 — Broches disponibles pour une reconfiguration dans un câble complet 767
Figure E-2 — Broches disponibles pour une reconfiguration dans des applications à connexion directe 767
Figure E-3 — Mise en œuvre en mode alternatif avec un câble USB Type-C vers USB Type-C 769
Figure E-4 — Mise en œuvre en mode alternatif avec un câble ou un dispositif USB Type-C vers mode alternatif 770
Figure E-5 — Exemple de station d'accueil USB DisplayPort 773
Figure F-1 — Processus de découverte TBT3 778

TABLEAUX

Tableau 2-1 — Récapitulatif des options d'alimentation 405
Tableau 3-1 — Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés 406
Tableau 3-2 — Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant 407
Tableau 3-3 — Ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers existant 408
Tableau 3-4 — Affectation des broches de l'interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C 445
Tableau 3-5 — Affectation des broches de l'interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C pour la prise en charge d'USB 2.0 uniquement 446
Tableau 3-6 — Affectation des fils pour un câble USB Type-C normalisé 450
Tableau 3-7 — Affectation des fils d'un câble USB Type-C pour les câbles/adaptateurs existants 451
Tableau 3-8 — Calibres de fil de référence pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés 452
Tableau 3-9 — Calibres de fil de référence pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant 452
Tableau 3-10 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C Complet normalisé 454
Tableau 3-11 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs *USB 2.0* Type-C normalisé 455
Tableau 3-12 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-A 457

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-13 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-A 458
Tableau 3-14 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-B 460
Tableau 3-15 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-B 461
Tableau 3-16 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Mini-B 462
Tableau 3-17 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Micro-B 464
Tableau 3-18 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Micro-B 465
Tableau 3-19 — Câblage de l'ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A 467
Tableau 3-20 — Câblage de l'ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B 468
Tableau 3-21 — Exemples de perte d'insertion différentielle pour TX/RX avec une construction en paire torsadée 469
Tableau 3-22 — Exemples de perte d'insertion différentielle pour USB TX/RX avec une construction coaxiale 470
Tableau 3-23 — Paramètres clés du fichier de configuration de la COM 485
Tableau 3-24 — Exigences électriques concernant les fils CC et SBU 486
Tableau 3-25 — Matrice de couplage des signaux à basse vitesse 486
Tableau 3-26 — Inductance mutuelle maximale (M) entre VBUS et les lignes de signaux à basse vitesse 489
Tableau 3-27 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal USB D+/D− pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs passifs USB Type-C vers USB Type-C 491
Tableau 3-28 — Caractéristiques recommandées d'intégrité de signal pour les connecteurs couplés USB Type-C (informatives) 494
Tableau 3-29 — Caractéristiques d'intégrité de signal pour un connecteur couplé USB Type-C pour USB4 Gen 3 (normatives) 496
Tableau 3-30 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal USB D+/D− pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB existant 498
Tableau 3-31 — Objectifs de conception pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Gen 2 existant (informatifs) 499
Tableau 3-32 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Gen 2 existant (normatives) 499
Tableau 3-33 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal USB D+/D− pour les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers USB existant (normatives) 502
Tableau 3-34 — Objectifs de conception pour les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-A (informatifs) 502
Tableau 3-35 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal pour un ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A (normatives) 503
Tableau 3-36 — PCB d'essai du courant assigné 508
Tableau 3-37 — Exigence concernant la résistance en courant continu maximale (normative) 510
Tableau 3-38 — Exigences concernant la force et le moment 513
Tableau 3-39 — Conditions d'essai environnementales 517
Tableau 3-40 — Matériaux de référence 518
Tableau 4-1 — Liste des signaux utilisés sur les connecteurs USB Type-C 525
Tableau 4-2 — Caractéristiques d'une source VBUS 529
Tableau 4-3 — Caractéristiques d'un collecteur VBUS 529
Tableau 4-4 — Récapitulatif des exigences de tension VCONN du port Source USB Type-C 531
Tableau 4-5 — Caractéristiques d'une source VCONN 532
Tableau 4-6 — Caractéristiques d'un collecteur VCONN de câble 533
Tableau 4-7 — Caractéristiques d'un collecteur VPA (accessoire alimenté par VCONN) 534
Tableau 4-8 — Caractéristiques d'un collecteur VPD 535
Tableau 4-9 — Interopérabilité d'un port USB Type-C 539
Tableau 4-10 — Point de vue de la source 541
Tableau 4-11 — Comportements de la source (hôte) et du collecteur (dispositif) par état 542
Tableau 4-12 — Récapitulatif du comportement d'échange des ports USB PD 549
Tableau 4-13 — Récapitulatif du modèle comportemental des rôles d'alimentation 550
Tableau 4-14 — Etats des broches CC d'un port source 562
Tableau 4-15 — Etats des broches CC d'un port collecteur 562
Tableau 4-16 — Etats obligatoires et facultatifs 588

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-17 — Ordre de priorité pour l'utilisation des sources d'alimentation 614
Tableau 4-18 — Annonce de courant USB Type-C et équivalent PDP 616
Tableau 4-19 — Ordre de priorité pour l'utilisation des sources d'alimentation 621
Tableau 4-20 — Exemples de courant maximal entre le VPD de charge et le collecteur selon l'impédance sur les broches VBUS et GND 621
Tableau 4-21 — Temporisation SOP' et SOP" 631
Tableau 4-22 — Exigences relatives à l'impédance CC du VPD de charge (RccCON) 633
Tableau 4-23 — Exigences relatives au découplage de la VBUS du port de charge du CTVPD 633
Tableau 4-24 — Exigences relatives aux terminaisons CC de la source (Rp) 634
Tableau 4-25 — Exigences relatives aux terminaisons CC du collecteur (Rd) 634
Tableau 4-26 — Exigences relatives aux terminaisons des câbles alimentés 635
Tableau 4-27 — Exigences relatives aux terminaisons CC pour les états Disabled, ErrorRecovery et Unpowered Source 635
Tableau 4-28 — Exigences relatives aux terminaisons SBU 635
Tableau 4-29 — Paramètres de temporisation de la VBUS et de la VCONN 636
Tableau 4-30 — Paramètres de temporisation des DRP 637
Tableau 4-31 — Paramètres de temporisation des broches CC 638
Tableau 4-32 — Tensions CC côté source – USB par défaut 639
Tableau 4-33 — Tensions CC côté source – 1,5 A à 5 V 640
Tableau 4-34 — Tensions CC côté source – 3,0 A à 5 V 640
Tableau 4-35 — Tension sur les broches CC d'un collecteur (courant USB Type-C par défaut uniquement) 640
Tableau 4-36 — Tension sur les broches CC d'un collecteur (annonces de courant de plusieurs sources) 640
Tableau 5-1 — Câbles certifiés lorsqu'un fonctionnement compatible USB4 est attendu 648
Tableau 5-2 — Mappage de repli des fonctions périphériques USB4 vers les types de classes de dispositifs USB 662
Tableau 5-3 — Disponibilité USB Billboard Device Class à l'issue d'un échec de mise en service d'un dispositif USB4 663
Tableau 6-1 — Comparaison des câbles actifs 665
Tableau 6-2 — Récapitulatif des fonctionnalités des câbles actifs 665
Tableau 6-3 — Comportement des messages USB PD des câbles OIAC lors de la connexion initiale 669
Tableau 6-4 — Messages USB PD des câbles OIAC qui ne traversent pas les câbles à l'état actif 672
Tableau 6-5 — Messages USB PD des câbles OIAC adressés à SOP qui traversent les câbles OIAC à l'état actif 674
Tableau 6-6 — Temporisation des messages USB PD des câbles OIAC 676
Tableau 6-7 — Messages SOP des câbles OIAC qui se terminent sur le connecteur mâle du câble 676
Tableau 6-8 — Capacités des ports et des connecteurs mâles 683
Tableau 6-9 — PDO Sink_Capabilities d'un câble OIAC (SOP) lors de la connexion initiale 705
Tableau 6-10 — PDO Sink_Capabilities_Extended d'un câble OIAC (SOP) lors de la connexion initiale 706
Tableau 6-11 — RDO Sink d'un câble OIAC (SOP) lors de la connexion initiale 707
Tableau 6-12 — RDO Active Sink d'un câble OIAC (SOP) 707
Tableau 6-13 — PDO Sink_Capabilities d'un câble OIAC (SOP) à l'état actif 708
Tableau 6-14 — Exigences concernant la température des câbles 709
Tableau 6-15 — Récapitulatif des fonctionnalités des câbles actifs 710
Tableau 6-16 — Exigences concernant la mise sous tension des câbles actifs 713
Tableau 6-17 — Délai USB 3.2 U0 maximal pour un câble OIAC 713
Tableau 6-18 — Utilisations avec un câble OIAC qui exige un adaptateur ou un hub 714
Tableau 6-19 — Exigences concernant les états U de l'USB 3.2 715
Tableau 6-20 — Oscillation de la source contrainte USB 3.2 d'un câble actif, TP1 717
Tableau 6-21 — Gigue de la source contrainte USB 3.2 d'un câble actif, TP1 718
Tableau 6-22 — Oscillation de l'entrée USB 3.2 d'un câble actif au niveau du TP2 (informative) 718
Tableau 6-23 — Oscillation de la sortie USB 3.2 d'un câble actif au niveau du TP3 (informative) 719
Tableau A-1 — Affectation des broches audio analogiques USB Type-C 722
Tableau A-2 — Paramètres électriques assignés des broches audio analogiques USB Type-C 723
Tableau B-1 — Interopérabilité des ports des DTS-TS 728
Tableau B-2 — Valeurs du courant de charge Rp/Rp pour la source d'un DTS 736
Tableau B-3 — Etats obligatoires et facultatifs 738

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau D-1 — Exemples de source de chaleur et de dissipation thermique (câble de 1,5 W et 5 A) 755
Tableau D-2 — Etude de cas de conception de câbles actifs USB 3.2 à port unique avec une température ambiante de 35 °C et une limite thermique de 60 °C (voie unique) 756
Tableau D-3 — Etude de cas de conception de câbles actifs USB 3.2 à port unique avec une température ambiante de 35 °C et une limite thermique de 60 °C (double voie) 760
Tableau E-1 — Exigences électriques concernant l'USB Safe State 771
Tableau E-2 — Disponibilité USB Billboard Device Class à l'issue d'un échec d'entrée en mode alternatif 771
Tableau E-3 — Exigences relatives à l'introduction de bruits sur les signaux en mode alternatif 772
Tableau F-1 — Réponses de VDO de découverte d'identité d'un câble passif TBT3 780
Tableau F-2 — VDO d'un câble passif TBT3 pour l'USB PD Révision 2.0, Version 1.3 781
Tableau F-3 — VDO d'un câble passif TBT3 pour l'USB PD Révision 3.0, Version 1.2 781
Tableau F-4 — Réponses de VDO de découverte d'identité d'un câble actif TBT3 782
Tableau F-5 — VDO d'un câble actif TBT3 pour l'USB PD Révision 2.0, Version 1.3 783
Tableau F-6 — VDO 1 d'un câble actif TBT3 pour l'USB PD Révision 3.0, Version 1.2 784
Tableau F-7 — VDO 2 d'un câble actif TBT3 pour l'USB PD Révision 3.0, Version 1.2 784
Tableau F-8 — Réponses de VDO de découverte d'identité d'un dispositif TBT3 785
Tableau F-9 — Réponses de VDO de découverte de SVID TBT3 786
Tableau F-10 — Réponses de VDO de découverte de mode d'un dispositif TBT3 787
Tableau F-11 — Réponses de VDO de découverte de mode d'un câble TBT3 788
Tableau F-12 — Commande Enter Mode d'un câble TBT3 789
Tableau F-13 — Commande Enter Mode d'un dispositif TBT3 790
Tableau F-14 — Récapitulatif des différences fonctionnelles entre les câbles TBT3 791

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Présidence du groupe de travail/Editeurs de la spécification

Intel Corporation (USB Promoter company)	Yun Ling – Mechanical WG co-chair, Mechanical Chapter Co-editor Brad Saunders – Plenary/Functional WG chair, Specification Co-author
Renesas Electronics Corp. (USB Promoter company)	Bob Dunstan – Functional WG co-chair, Specification Co-author
Seagate	Alvin Cox, Mechanical WG co-chair, Mechanical Chapter Co-editor

Contributeurs du groupe de travail de la spécification

Note: Pour des raisons historiques, la liste ci-dessous inclut également les contributeurs qui étaient membres du groupe de travail et associés aux affiliations à la société au moment de la version 1.0 initiale et de la version 2.0.

Advanced-Connectek, Inc. (ACON)	Victory Chen	Conrad Choy	Alan Tsai
	Glen Chandler	Vicky Chuang	Wayne Wang
	Dennis Cheung	Jessica Feng	Stephen Yang
	Jeff Chien	Aven Kao	Sunney Yang
	Lee (Dick Lee) Ching	Danny Liao	
Advanced Micro Devices	Steve Capezza	Jason Hawken	Joseph Scanlon
	Walter Fry	Tim Perley	Peter Teng
	Will Harris		
Allion Labs, Inc.	Howard Chang	Brian Shih	Chester Tsai
	Minoru Ohara		
Amphenol AssembleTech (Xiamen) Co., Ltd.	Louis Chan	Martin Li	Alan Yang
	Jesse Jaramillo	Lino Liu	
	Terry Ke	Shawn Wei	
Amphenol Corporation	Zhinenng Fan		
Agilent Technologies, Inc.	James Choate		
Analogix Semiconductor, Inc.	Mehran Badii	Haijian Sui	Yueke Tang
	Greg Stewart		
Apple Inc. (USB Promoter company)	Colin Abraham	Zheng Gao	James Orr
	Mahmoud Amini	Derek Iwamoto	Keith Porthouse
	Sree Anantharaman	Scott Jackson	Breton Saunders
	Brian Baek	Girault Jones	Reese Schreiber
	Paul Baker	Keong Kam	Sascha Tietz
	Michael Bonham	Kevin Keeler	Jennifer Tsai
	Carlos Calderon	Min Kim	Colin Whitby-Strevens
	Jason Chung	Woopoung Kim	Jeff Wilcox
	David Conroy	Alexei Kosut	Eric Wiles
	Bill Cornelius	Christine Krause	Dan Wilson
	Christophe Daniel	Chris Ligtenberg	Dennis Yarak
	William Ferry	Matthew Mora	
	Brian Follis	Nathan Ng	
Bizlink Technology, Inc.	Alex Chou	Morphy Hsieh	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Cadence Design Systems, Inc.	Marcin Behrendt	Dariusz Kaczmarczyk	Neelabh Singh
	Huzaifa Dalal	Tomasz Klimek	Michal Staworko
	Pawel Eichler	Jie Min	Fred Stivers
	Sathish Kumar Ganesan	Asila Nahas	Mark Summers
		Uyen Nguyen	Claire Ying
Canova Tech	Piergiorgio Beruto	Michael Marioli	Paola Pilla
	Andrea Maniero	Antonio Orzelli	Nicola Scantamburlo
Cirrus Logic Inc.	Sean Davis	Darren Holding	Brad Lambert
Corning Optical Communication LLC	Wojciech Giziewicz	Ian McKay	Jamie Silva
Cosemi Technologies Inc.	Samir Desai	Devang Parekh	
Cypress Semiconductor	Mark Fu	Benjamin Kropf	Jagadeesan Raj
	Naman Jain	Venkat Mandagulathur	Sanjay Sancheti
	Rushil Kadakia	Anup Nayak	Subu Sankaran
Dell	Mohammed Hijazi	Ernesto Ramirez	Thomas Voor
	David Meyers	Siddhartha Reddy	Merle Wood
	Sean O'Neal		
Dialog Semiconductor (UK) Ltd.	Yimin Chen		
Diodes Incorporated	Kay Annamalai	Bob Lo	Qun Song
	Justin Lee	Jaya Shukla	Ada Yip
	Paul Li		
DisplayLink (UK) Ltd.	Pete Burgers		
DJI Technology Co., Ltd.	Steve Huang		
Electronics Testing Center, Taiwan	Sophia Liu		
Elka International Ltd.	Roy Ting		
Ellisys	Abel Astley	Mario Pasquali	Tim Wei
	Rick Bogart	Chuck Trefts	
Etron Technology, Inc.	Chien-Cheng Kuo		
Feature Integration Technologies Inc.	Jacky Chan	KungAn Lin	Paul Yang
	Chen Kris	Yuchi Tsao	Amanda Ying
	Yulin Lan		
Foxconn/Hon Hai	Patrick Casher	Bob Hall	Pei Tsao
	Asroc Chen	Chien-Ping Kao	AJ Yang
	Joe Chen	Ji Li	Yuan Zhang
	Allen Cheng	Ann Liu	Jessica Zheng
	Jason Chou	Terry Little	Jie Zheng
	Edmond Choy	Steve Sedio	Andy Yao
	Fred Fons	Christine Tran	
Foxlink/Cheng Uei Precision Industry Co., Ltd.	Robert Chen	Armando Lee	Steve Tsai
	Sunny Chou	Dennis Lee	Wen Yang
	Carrie Chuang	Justin Lin	Wiley Yang
	Wen-Chuan Hsu	Robert Lu	Junjie Yu
	Alex Hsue	Tse Wu Ting	
Fresco Logic Inc.	Bob McVay	Christopher Meyers	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Google	Alec Berg	Nithya Jagannathan	Adam Rodriguez
	Joshua Boilard	Lawrence Lam	David Schneider
	Alec Berg	Adam Langley	Stephan Schooley
	Todd Broch	Ingrid Lin	Toshak Singhal
	Jim Guerin	Richard Palatin	Ken Wu
	Jeffrey Hayashida	Vincent Palatin	
	Mark Hayter	Dylan Reid	
Granite River Labs	Yung Han Ang	Alan Chuang	Krishna Murthy
	Sandy Chang	Mike Engbretson	Johnson Tan
	Allen Chen	Caspar Lin	Chin Hun Yaep
	Swee Guan Chua		
Hewlett Packard Inc. (USB Promoter company)	Lee Atkinson	Robin Castell	Jim Mann
	Srinath Balaraman	Steve Chen	Linden McClure
	Roger Benson	Michael Krause	Mike Pescetto
	Alan Berkema	Rahul Lakdawala	Asjad Shamim
Hirose Electric Co., Ltd.	Jeremy Buan	William MacKillop	Eungsoo Shin
	William Kysiak	Gourgen Oganessyan	Sid Tono
	Sang-Muk Lim		
Hosiden Corporation	Takahisa Otsuji	Fumitake Tamaki	
I-PEX (Dai-ichi Seiko)	Alan Kinningham	Ro Richard	Tetsuya Tagawa
Infineon Technologies	Tue Fatt David Wee		
Intel Corporation (USB Promoter company)	Dave Ackelson	Ziv Kabiry	Sridharan Ranganathan
	Mike Bell	Vijaykumar Kadgi	Rajaram Regupathy
	Brad Berlin	Luke Johnson	Brad Saunders
	Pierre Bossart	Jerzy Kolinski	Ehud Shoor
	Kuan-Yu Chen	Rolf Kuhnis	Amit Srivastava
	Hengju Cheng	Henrik Leegaard	Einat Surijan
	Jhuda Dayan	Edmond Lau	Ron Swartz
	Paul Durley	Xiang Li	David Thompson
	Saranya Gopal	Yun Ling	Karthi Vadivelu
	Howard Heck	Guobin Liu	Tsion Vidal
	Hao-Han Hsu	Steve McGowan	Stephanie Wallick
	Seppo Ingalsuo	Sankaran Menon	Rafal Wielicki
	Abdul (Rahman) Ismail	Chee Lim Nge	Devon Worrell
	James Jaussi	Sagar Pawar	Li Yuan
Japan Aviation Electronics Industry Ltd. (JAE)	Kenji Hagiwara	Tadashi Okubo	Masaaki Takaku
	Hiroaki Ikeda	Kazuhiro Saito	Jussi Takaneva
	Masaki Kimura	Kimiaki Saito	Tomohiko Tamada
	Toshio Masumoto	Yuichi Saito	Kentaro Toda
	Kenta Minejima	Mark Saubert	Kouhei Ueda
	Toshiyuki Moritake	Toshio Shimoyama	Takakazu Usami
	Joe Motojima	Tatsuya Shioda	Masahide Watanabe
	Ron Muir	Atsuo Tago	Youhei Yokoyama
JPC/Main Super Inc.	Sam Tseng	Ray Yang	
LeCroy Corporation	Daniel H. Jacobs	Tyler Joe	
Lenovo	Rob Bowser	Jianye Li	Howard Locker
	Tomoki Harada	Wei Liu	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

LG Electronics Inc.	Do Kyun Kim		
Lintes Technology Co., Ltd.	Tammy Huang	Max Lo	JinYi Tu
	Charles Kaun	CT Pien	Jason Yang
	RD Lintes		
Lotes Co., Ltd.	Ariel Delos Reyes	Charles Kaun	John Lynch
	Ernest Han	Chi-Chang Lin	JinYi Tu
	Mark Ho	Max Lo	Jason Yang
	Regina Liu-Hwang		
LSI Corporation	Dave Thompson		
Luxshare-ICT	Josue Castillo	Alan Kinningham	Sean O'Neal
	Daniel Chen	Gorden Lin	Scott Shuey
	Lisen Chen	John Lin	James Stevens
	Sally Chiu	Stone Lin	Pat Young
	CY Hsu	Alan Liu	
Maxim Integrated Products	Forrest Christo	Sang Kim	Michael Miskho
	Ken Helfrich	Jeff Lo	Jacob Scott
MCCI Corporation	Terry Moore		
MediaTek Inc.	Alex YC Lin		
MegaChips Corporation	Alan Kobayashi	Satoru Kumashiro	
Microchip (SMSC)	Josh Averyt	Matthew Kalibat	John Sisto
	Mark Bohm	Donald Perkins	Anthony Tarascio
	Shannon Cash	Richard Petrie	Kiet Tran
	Thomas Farkas	Mohammed Rahman	Christopher Twigg
	Fernando Gonzalez	Andrew Rogers	Prasanna Vengateshan
Microsoft Corporation (USB Promoter company)	Randy Aull	Teemu Helenius	Toby Nixon
	Jim Belesiu	Dan Iatco	Rahul Ramadas
	Michelle Bergeron	Kai Inha	Srivatsan Ravindran
	Fred Bhesania	Jayson Kastens	Nathan Sherman
	Anthony Chen	Andrea Keating	Bala Sivakumar
	Philip Froese	Shoaib Khan	Timo Toivola
	Vivek Gupta	Eric Lee	David Voth
	David Hargrove	Ivan McCracken	Andrew Yang
	Robbie Harris	Arvind Murching	Panu Ylihaavisto
	Robert Hollyer	Gene Obie	
Molex LLC	Adib Al Abaji	Alan MacDougall	
Monolithic Power Systems	Di Han	Chris Sporck	
MQP Electronics Ltd.	Sten Carlsen	Pat Crowe	
NEC Corporation	Kenji Oguma		
Newnex Technology Corp.	Sam Liu	Nimrod Peled	
Nokia Corporation	Daniel Gratiot	Samuli Makinen	Timo Toivola
	Pekka Leinonen	Pekka Talmola	Panu Ylihaavisto
NXP Semiconductors	Mahmoud EL Sabbagh	Ken Jaramillo	Guru Prasad
	Dennis Ha	Vijendra Kuroodi	Krishnan TN
Oculus VR LLC	Amish Babu	Marty Evans	Joaquin Fierro
ON Semiconductor	Eduardo De Reza	Christian Klein	Michael Smith
	Oscar Freitas	Amir Lahooti	
Parade Technologies, Inc.	Jian Chen	Paul Xu	Alan Yuen
	Craig Wiley		

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Power Integrations	Shruti Anand	Aditya Kulkarni	Amruta Patra
	Rahul Joshi	Akshay Nayaknur	
Qualcomm, Inc.	Lior Amarilio	Philip Hardy	Jack Pham
	Aris Balatsos	Will Kun	Vamsi Samavedam
	Tomer Ben Chen	Jonathan Luty	Matthew Sienko
	Richard Burrows	Lalan Mishra	Dmitrii Vasilchenko
	Amit Gil	George Paparrizos	Joshua Warner
	James Goel	Vatsal Patel	Chris Wiesner
	Amit Gupta		
Realtek Semiconductor Corp.	Marco Chiu	Ty Kingsmore	Terry Lin
	Tsung-Peng Chuang	Ray Lee	Chuting Su
	Charlie Hsu	Jay Lin	Changhung Wu
	Fan-Hau Hsu	Ryan Lin	
Renesas Electronics Corp. (USB Promoter company)	Kai Bao	Philip Leung	Hajime Nozaki
	Bob Dunstan	Kiichi Muto	Yosuke Sasaki
	Nobuo Furuya	Ziba Nami	Toshifumi Yamaoka
Richtek Technology Corp.	Roger Lo		
Rohm Co., Ltd.	Mark Aaldering	Yusuke Kondo	Yoshinori Ohwaki
	Kris Bahar	Arun Kumar	Takashi Sato
	Ruben Balbuena	Chris Lin	Hiroshi Yoshimura
	Nobutaka Itakura	Kazuomi Nagai	
Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.	Jaedeok Cha	Sangju Kim	Jun Bum Lee
	KangSeok Cho	Soondo Kim	Jinyoung Oh
	Wooin Choi	Woonki Kim	Chahoon Park
	Yeongbok Choi	Jagoun Koo	Chulwoo Park
	Cheolyoon Chung	Termi Kwon	Youngjin Park
	JaeRyong Han	Cheolho Lee	Jung Waneui
	Jaehyeok Jang	Edward Lee	Sunggeun Yoon
	Wonseok Jang		
Seagate	Alvin Cox	Tony Priborsky	Dan Smith
	Emmanuel Lemay	Tom Skaar	
Shenzhen Deren Electronic Co., Ltd.	Smark (Zhudong) Huo	Yang Lirong	Lucy Zhang
	Wen Fa Lei		
Silicon Line Gmbh	Ian Jackson		
SiliConch Systems Private Limited	Jaswanth Ammineni	Shubham Paliwal	Vishnu Pusuluri
	Pavitra Balasubramanian	Jinisha Patel	Abhishek Sardeshpande
	Kaustubh Kumar	Vinay Patel	Satish Anand Verkila
	Aniket Mathad	Rakesh Polasa	
Simula Technology Inc.	John Chang	Jung Lin	CK Wang
	Voss Cheng	Jyunming Lin	Alice Yu
	Thomas Li	Doris Liu	
Softnautics LLP	Bhavesh Desai	Dipakkumar Modi	Ujjwal Talati
	Hetal Jariwala	Ishita Shah	
Sony Corporation	Shinichi Hirata	Shigenori Tagami	
Spectra7 Microsystems Corp.	Andrew Kim	James McGrath	John Mitchell
Specwerkz	Amanda Hosler	Diane Lenox	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

STMicroelectronics (USB Promoter company)	Jerome Bach	Gregory Cosciniak	Pascal Legrand
	Nathalie Ballot	Chekib Hammami	Richard O'Connor
	Filippo Bonaccorso	Joel Huloux	Massimo Panzica
	Christophe Cochard	Christophe Lorin	Legrand Pascal
	Nicolas Florenchie	Patrizia Milazzo	Nicolas Perrin
	Cedric Force	Federico Musarra	
Sumitomo Electric Ind., Ltd.	Takeshi Inoue	Wataru Sakurai	Masaki Suzuki
	Yasuhiro Maeda	Sainer Siagian	Mitsuaki Tamura
Synaptics Inc.	Daniel Bogard	Jeff Lukanc	Prashant Shamarao
Synopsys, Inc.	Subramaniam Aravindhan	Morten Christiansen	Satya Patnala
		Nivin George	
Tektronix, Inc.	Randy White		
Texas Instruments (USB Promoter company)	Jawaid Ahmad	Win Maung	Sai Karthik Rajaraman
	Mike Campbell	Shafiuddin Mohammed	Wes Ray
	Greg Collins	Lauren Moore	Dafydd Roche
	Gary Cooper	Brian Parten	Anwar Sadat
	GP Gopalakrishnan	Martin Patoka	Cory Stewart
	Craig Greenberg	Jason Peck	Sue Vining
	Richard Hubbard	John Perry	Bill Waters
	Nate Johnson	Louis Peryea	Deric Waters
	Michael Koltun IV	Brian Quach	Gregory Watkins
	Yoon Lee		Roy Wojciechowski
	Grant Ley		
Total Phase	Chris Yokum		
Tyco Electronics Corp. (TE Connectivity Ltd.)	Max Chao	Mike Lockyer	Hiroshi Shirai
	Robert E. Cid	Jeff Mason	Hidenori Taguchi
	Calvin Feng	Takeshi Nakashima	Nathan Tracy
	Kengo Ijiro	Luis A. Navarro	Bernard Vetten
	Eiji Ikematsu	Masako Saito	Ryan Yu
	Joan Leu	Yoshiaki Sakuma	Noah Zhang
	Clark Li	Gavin Shih	Sjoerd Zwartkruis
UL LLC	Michael Hu		
Varjo Technologies	Kai Inha		
Ventev Mobile	Brad Cox	Colin Vose	
VIA Technologies Inc.	Terrance Shih	Jay Tseng	Fong-Jim Wang
Weltrend Semiconductor	Hung Chiang	Wayne Lo	Eric Wu
	Jeng Cheng	Ho Wen Tsai	
Xiaomi Communications Co., Ltd.	Xiaoxing Yang	Juejia Zhou	

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Sociétés du secteur qui ont apporté leurs commentaires au stade révision de la version initiale

Aces	JST Mfg. Co., Ltd.	Pericom
Fairchild Semiconductor	Korea Electric Terminal	Semtech Corporation
Fujitsu Ltd.	Marvell Semiconductor	Silicon Image
Industrial Technology Research Institute (ITRI)	Motorola Mobility LLC	SMK Corporation
Joinsoon Electronics Mfg. Co. Ltd.	PalCONN/PalNova (Palpilot International Corp.)	Toshiba Corporation

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Historique des révisions

Révision	Date	Description
1.0	11 août 2014	Version initiale.
1.1	3 avril 2015	Réédition papier comprenant l'incorporation de l'ensemble des ECN approuvés à la date de révision, ainsi que les corrections rédactionnelles.
1.2	25 mars 2016	Réédition papier comprenant l'incorporation de l'ensemble des ECN approuvés à la date de révision, ainsi que les corrections rédactionnelles.
1.3	14 juillet 2017	Réédition papier comprenant l'incorporation de l'ensemble des ECN approuvés à la date de révision, ainsi que les corrections rédactionnelles.
1.4	29 mars 2019	Réédition papier comprenant l'incorporation de l'ensemble des ECN approuvés à la date de révision, ainsi que les corrections rédactionnelles.
2.0	Août 2019	Nouvelle version essentiellement destinée à l'application de la spécification USB4 aux câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C. Comprend également l'incorporation de l'ensemble des ECN approuvés à la date de révision, ainsi que les corrections rédactionnelles.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

1 Introduction

Face au succès continu de l'interface USB, il est devenu nécessaire d'adapter la technologie USB aux nouvelles plateformes et aux nouveaux dispositifs informatiques dont la conception est de plus en plus compacte, fine et légère. Un grand nombre de ces plateformes et dispositifs récents ont atteint un stade auquel les connecteurs mâles et femelles USB actuellement en usage constituent un frein à l'innovation, en particulier en raison de leur taille relativement importante et des contraintes de volume interne des versions Standard-A et Standard-B des connecteurs USB. De plus, avec l'évolution des modèles d'utilisation de ces plateformes, les exigences de convivialité et de robustesse ont également évolué. Or, à l'origine, les connecteurs USB existants n'ont pas été conçus pour répondre à ces nouvelles exigences. La présente spécification vise à établir un nouvel écosystème de connecteurs USB, qui répond aux besoins évolutifs des plateformes et dispositifs tout en conservant tous les avantages fonctionnels de la norme USB, qui constituent le fondement de l'interface d'interconnexion informatique la plus populaire.

1.1 Objet

La présente spécification définit les connecteurs mâles et femelles, ainsi que les câbles USB Type-C®.

La spécification des câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C est guidée par les principes suivants:

- favoriser des critères de forme d'hôtes et dispositifs innovants et agréables, où la taille, la conception industrielle et le style constituent des paramètres importants;
- interagir en toute fluidité avec les solutions d'hôtes et de dispositifs USB silicium actuelles;
- améliorer la facilité d'utilisation pour la connexion des dispositifs USB, en réduisant autant que possible le risque de confusion lors de l'insertion des connecteurs et des câbles.

La spécification des câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C définit de nouvelles techniques de connexion et de détection des ports et câbles USB, qui sont compatibles avec les spécifications électriques et fonctionnelles d'interface USB existantes. La présente spécification couvre les aspects suivants, qui sont nécessaires à la production et à l'utilisation de cette nouvelle solution de câble/connecteur USB pour les plateformes et dispositifs récents, et qui interagissent avec les plateformes et dispositifs actuels:

- les connecteurs femelles USB Type-C, notamment la description électromécanique et les exigences de performance;
- les connecteurs mâles et les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C, notamment la description électromécanique et les exigences de performance;
- les ensembles câble-connecteurs et les adaptateurs USB Type-C pour la connexion avec les solutions existantes;
- la configuration d'interface et la détection des dispositifs USB Type-C, notamment la prise en charge des solutions de connexion existantes;
- la technologie d'alimentation électrique USB optimisée pour les connecteurs USB Type-C.

La spécification des câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C définit une technique normalisée qui prend en charge les modes alternatifs, comme la reconversion du connecteur pour un usage spécifiquement lié au branchement.

1.2 Domaine d'application

La présente spécification complète les spécifications *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2*, *USB4™* et *USB Power Delivery* existantes. Elle ne s'applique qu'aux éléments exigés pour l'implémentation et la prise en charge des connecteurs mâles et femelles USB, ainsi que des câbles USB Type-C.

Des informations normatives sont fournies pour assurer l'interopérabilité des composants conçus selon cette spécification. Lorsqu'elles sont fournies, des exemples de mise en œuvre peuvent être fournis à titre informatif.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

1.3 Documents connexes

USB 2.0 *Universal Serial Bus Specification, Révision 2.0*
Inclut l'édition intégrale du document.

USB 3.2 *Universal Serial Bus Specification, Révision 3.2*
Inclut l'édition intégrale du document.
USB 3.1 Legacy Cable and Connector Specification, Révision 1.0

USB4 *USB4™ Specification, Version 1.0, août 2019*
(y compris les errata et ECN publiés)

TBT3 Chapitre 13 du document *USB4™ Specification, Version 1.0, août 2019*

USB PD *USB Power Delivery Specification, Révision 2.0, Version 1.3, 12 janvier 2017*
USB Power Delivery Specification, Révision 3.0, Version 2.0, août 2019 (y compris les errata et ECN publiés)

USB BB *USB Billboard Device Class Specification, Révision 1.21, 8 septembre 2016*

USB BC *Battery Charging Specification, Révision 1.2 (y compris les errata et ECN publiés jusqu'au 15 mars 2012), 15 mars 2012*

DP AM *DisplayPort™ Alt Mode on USB Type-C Standard, Version 1.0b, 3 novembre 2017*

Tous les documents relatifs à l'USB sont disponibles pour téléchargement à l'adresse http://www.usb.org/documents. La spécification DisplayPort Alt Mode est disponible sur le site web de VESA (http://www.vesa.org).

1.4 Conventions

1.4.1 Ordre de priorité

En cas de contradiction entre les textes, les figures et les tableaux, l'ordre suivant doit prévaloir: tableaux, puis figures, puis textes.

1.4.2 Mots-clés

Les mots-clés suivants permettent de différencier les niveaux d'exigences et d'options.

1.4.2.1 Informatif(ve)

Le mot-clé Informatif(ve) est utilisé pour décrire les informations de la présente spécification qui visent à traiter et clarifier les exigences et fonctionnalités (et non à les rendre obligatoires).

1.4.2.2 Pouvoir/Peut/Peuvent

Les mots-clés Pouvoir/Peut/Peuvent sont utilisés pour indiquer un choix sans préférence implicite.

1.4.2.3 N/A

Le mot-clé N/A est utilisé pour indiquer qu'un champ (ou une valeur) n'est pas applicable, qu'il n'a pas de valeur définie et qu'il ne doit pas être vérifié ou utilisé par le destinataire.

1.4.2.4 Normatif(ve)

Le mot-clé Normatif(ve) est utilisé pour décrire les fonctionnalités obligatoires de la présente spécification.

1.4.2.5 Facultatif(ve)

Le mot-clé Facultatif(ve) décrit des fonctionnalités non exigées par la présente spécification. Toutefois, lorsqu'une fonctionnalité facultative est mise en œuvre, elle doit respecter la présente spécification (normative facultative).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

1.4.2.6 Réservé

Le mot-clé Réservé est utilisé pour indiquer les valeurs réservées d'un bit, d'un octet, d'un mot, d'un champ ou d'un code, qui sont mises de côté pour une normalisation future. Leur utilisation et leur interprétation peuvent être spécifiées par de futurs compléments à la présente spécification; sauf indication contraire, elles ne doivent pas être utilisées ou modifiées par la mise en œuvre d'un fournisseur. Un bit, octet, mot ou champ réservé doit être réglé sur zéro par l'envoyeur et doit être ignoré par le récepteur. Les valeurs d'un champ Réservé ne doivent pas être envoyées par l'envoyeur. S'il les reçoit, le destinataire doit les ignorer.

1.4.2.7 Devoir/Doit/Doivent

Les mots-clés Devoir/Doit/Doivent indiquent une exigence obligatoire (normative). Les concepteurs sont tenus de mettre en œuvre l'ensemble de ces exigences afin de garantir l'interopérabilité avec les autres dispositifs conformes.

1.4.2.8 Il convient de/que

Le mot-clé Il convient de/que est utilisé pour indiquer la latitude concernant un choix avec alternative préférentielle. Il équivaut à la phrase "Il est recommandé de/que".

1.4.3 Numérotation

Les nombres immédiatement suivis de la lettre "b" en minuscule (01b, par exemple) sont des valeurs binaires. Les nombres immédiatement suivis de la lettre "B" en majuscule sont des valeurs exprimées en octets. Les nombres immédiatement suivis de la lettre "h" en minuscule (3Ah, par exemple) sont des valeurs hexadécimales. Les nombres qui ne sont pas immédiatement suivis des lettres "b", "B" ou "h" sont des valeurs décimales.

1.5 Termes et abréviations

Terme	Description
Mode accessoire	Reconfiguration du connecteur en fonction de la présence de Rd/Rd ou Ra/Ra respectivement sur le CC1/CC2.
Câble actif	Les câbles actifs sont des câbles USB Type-C Complets qui intègrent des répéteurs dans le chemin de données *USB 3.2*. Il est attendu que tous les câbles actifs, quelle que soit leur longueur, respectent cette spécification, l'Annexe E de la spécification *USB 3.2* et le CTS de câble actif *USB 3.2*. Les câbles actifs peuvent incorporer des répéteurs sur les deux extrémités du câble, sur une extrémité ou n'importe où dans le câble.
Mode alternatif	Opération définie par un fournisseur ou un organisme de normalisation, associée à un SVID attribué par USB-IF. L'entrée et la sortie du mode alternatif sont contrôlées par les commandes Enter Mode et Exit Mode des VDM dont la structure est définie par l'*USB PD*.
Adaptateur de mode alternatif (AMA, *Alternate Mode Adapter*)	Dispositif *USB PD* qui prend en charge les modes alternatifs et joue le rôle d'UFP.
Mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio	Mode accessoire défini en fonction de la présence de Ra/Ra respectivement sur le CC1/CC2. Voir Annexe A.
BMC (Biphase Mark Coding)	Codage de marques biphase utilisé pour la communication *USB PD* par le biais du fil en courant continu.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Terme	Description
Port de câble partenaire	DRP, source ou collecteur USB Type-C connecté à la fiche d'un câble.
Câble captif	Câble terminé à une extrémité par un connecteur mâle USB Type-C et dont l'extrémité opposée est composée d'un moyen de connexion spécifique au fournisseur (câblée ou amovible personnalisée).
CC (Configuration Channel, canal de configuration)	Canal de configuration (CC) utilisé dans la découverte, la configuration et la gestion des connexions par le biais d'un câble USB Type-C.
VPD de charge (CTVPD, *Charge-Through VPD*)	Dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN dont la technologie permet de transmettre l'alimentation et la communication CC d'un port vers un autre, sans aucun reparamétrage de réglementation.
Voie de configuration	La voie de configuration USB 3.2 est utilisée pour établir et gérer le fonctionnement d'USB SuperSpeed à double voie. La voie de configuration est spécifiquement le signal différentiel SuperSpeed USB TX1/RX1 dans le câble/connecteur mâle.
DAM (Debug Accessory Mode, mode accessoire de débogage)	Mode auxiliaire défini par la présence de Rd/Rd ou Rp/Rp respectivement sur le CC1/CC2. Voir Annexe B.
DTS (Debug and Test System, système de débogage et d'essai)	Système matériel et logiciel combiné qui offre à un développeur de système une visibilité et un contrôle sur le débogage, lorsqu'il est connecté à un système cible en mode accessoire de débogage.
VBUS PAR DEFAUT	Tension VBUS définie par les spécifications *USB 2.0* et *USB 3.2*. Note: lorsqu'elle est mentionnée, une tension de 5 V porte la même signification.
DFP (Downstream Facing Port, port orienté en aval)	Port orienté en aval, spécifiquement associé au flux de données dans une connexion USB. Il s'agit généralement des ports placés sur un hôte ou sur un hub, auxquels les dispositifs sont connectés. Dans un premier temps, le DFP alimente VBUS et VCONN, et prend en charge les données. Un DFP dédié uniquement à la charge n'alimente que VBUS.
Dispositif à connexion directe	Dispositif qui comporte un câble captif ou un connecteur mâle USB Type-C uniquement (par exemple, une clé USB).
DRD (Dual-Role Data, données double fonction)	Acronyme utilisé dans la présente spécification pour se référer à un port USB qui peut fonctionner comme DFP (hôte) ou UFP (dispositif). Le rôle joué initialement par le port est déterminé par la fonction d'alimentation du port lors du branchement. Un port source prend le rôle de données d'un DFP et un port collecteur prend le rôle de données d'un UFP. Le rôle de données du port peut être modifié dynamiquement avec la technique d'échange de rôle des données (Data Role Swap) de l'*USB PD*.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Terme	Description
DRP (Dual-Role Power, alimentation double fonction)	Acronyme utilisé dans la présente spécification pour se référer à un port USB qui peut fonctionner comme source ou collecteur. Le rôle joué par le port peut être fixe (source ou collecteur) ou peut alterner entre ces deux états. Lors de son fonctionnement initial en tant que source, le port prend également le rôle de données d'un DFP. Lorsqu'il fonctionne en tant que collecteur, il prend aussi le rôle de données d'un UFP. Le rôle d'alimentation du port peut être modifié de manière dynamique avec le mécanisme d'échange de rôle d'alimentation (Power Role Swap) de l'*USB PD*.
DR_Swap	Mécanisme d'échange de rôle de données (Data Role Swap) de l'*USB PD*.
Double voie (x2)	Le fonctionnement USB 3.2 à double voie est défini comme la signalisation simultanée sur les deux ensembles de paires différentielles d'émission et de réception USB SuperSpeed (TX1/RX1 et TX2/RX2 dans le câble/connecteur mâle).
Câble avec marquage électronique	Câble USB Type-C qui utilise l'*USB PD* pour fournir les caractéristiques du câble.
Marqueur électronique	Elément d'un câble avec marquage électronique qui renvoie des informations sur le câble en réponse à une commande Discover Identity de l'*USB PD*.
Initiateur	Port qui initie un message défini par le fournisseur (VDM, *Vendor Defined Message*). Il ne dépend pas du rôle PD du port (par exemple, fournisseur, consommateur, fournisseur/consommateur ou consommateur/fournisseur). Dans la plupart des cas, l'initiateur est un hôte.
Température interne	En référence à un câble actif, température mesurée à l'intérieur d'un connecteur mâle. Il ne s'agit pas de la température externe. Il existe une relation entre la température interne et la température externe du connecteur mâle, mais cette relation dépend de la conception.
Connecteur mâle local	Connecteur mâle du câble associé.
Câble actif à isolation optique (OIAC, *Optically Isolated Active Cable*)	Câble avec un connecteur mâle USB Type-C à chaque extrémité et dont un connecteur mâle prend en charge SOP' et l'autre SOP". Ce câble est isolé électriquement entre les deux connecteurs mâles.
Câble passif	Câble qui ne comporte aucun composant électronique pour conditionner les signaux de chemin de données. Un câble passif peut avoir ou ne pas avoir de marquage électronique.
Port partenaire	Se rapporte à un port (dispositif ou hôte) auquel un autre port est branché.
Batterie d'alimentation	Dispositif équipé d'une batterie, dont la fonction principale est de charger ou d'étendre la durée de fonctionnement d'autres dispositifs USB Type-C.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Terme	Description
Dispositif collecteur d'alimentation (PSD, *Power Sinking Device*)	Collecteur qui puise du courant, mais n'a pas d'autre fonction de communication USB ou mode alternatif; par exemple, un éclairage alimenté par USB.
Câble alimenté	Câble dont le connecteur mâle comporte des composants électroniques et qui exige que la tension VCONN soit indiquée par la présence de Ra entre la broche VCONN et la terre.
PR_Swap	Mécanisme de permutation de rôles d'alimentation *USB PD*.
Réachemineur	Un réachemineur désigne un composant analogique qui fonctionne sur le signal sans le retemporiser. Il peut inclure l'égalisation, l'amplification et l'émetteur. Un réachemineur ne comprend pas de circuit de récupération des données d'horloge (CDR). Les réachemineurs ne relèvent pas du domaine d'application du présent document.
Connecteur mâle distant	Le connecteur mâle distant d'un câble, dans le contexte des connecteurs mâles OIAC, est le connecteur mâle situé à l'autre extrémité du câble actif à isolation optique.
Répéteur	Un répéteur désigne tout composant actif qui agit sur un signal afin d'augmenter la longueur physique et/ou la perte d'interconnexion sur laquelle le signal peut être transmis avec succès. La catégorie des répéteurs englobe les retemporisateurs et les réachemineurs.
Répondeur	Port qui répond à l'initiateur d'un message défini par le fournisseur (VDM, *Vendor Defined Message*). Il ne dépend pas du rôle PD du port (par exemple, fournisseur, consommateur, fournisseur/consommateur ou consommateur/fournisseur). Dans la plupart des cas, le répondeur est un dispositif.
Retemporisateur	Un retemporisateur désigne un composant qui contient un circuit de récupération des données d'horloge (CDR) qui "retemporise" le signal. Un retemporisateur verrouille le signal dans un élément de mémoire synchrone avant de le retransmettre. Il est utilisé pour étendre la longueur physique du système sans accumuler de gigue haute fréquence en créant des domaines d'horloge séparés de part et d'autre du retemporisateur. Les retemporisateurs sont définis dans l'Annexe E de la spécification *USB 3.2* et dans la spécification *USB4*.
SBU (Sideband Use)	Utilisation en bande latérale.
Câble actif court (SAC, *Short Active Cable*)	Câble avec un connecteur mâle USB Type-C à chaque extrémité dont au moins l'une d'entre elles est le connecteur mâle d'un câble qui prend en charge SOP'. Câble jusqu'à 5 m de longueur.
SID (Standard ID)	Un identifiant normalisé est une valeur unique à 16 bits, attribuée par l'USB-IF pour identifier une norme industrielle.
Voie unique (x1)	Le fonctionnement USB 3.2 à voie unique est défini comme la signalisation sur un seul ensemble de paires différentielles d'émission et de réception USB SuperSpeed (TX1/RX1 dans le câble/connecteur mâle).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Terme	Description
Collecteur	Port marqué par Rd sur le CC qui, lorsqu'il est branché, consomme l'alimentation de VBUS. Dans la plupart des cas, il s'agit d'un dispositif.
Température externe	En référence à un câble actif, température du surmoulage d'un connecteur mâle.
Source	Port marqué par Rp sur le CC qui, lorsqu'il est branché, fournit de l'alimentation par VBUS. Dans la plupart des cas, il s'agit d'un hôte ou d'un hub DFP.
SVID	Référence générale à un SID ou à un VID. Utilisé par les VDM structurés *USB PD* lors d'une demande de SID et de VID auprès d'un dispositif.
Système cible (TS, *Target System*)	Système en cours de débogage en mode accessoire de débogage.
Type-A	Référence générale à l'ensemble des versions des connecteurs mâles et femelles USB "A".
Type-B	Référence générale à l'ensemble des versions des connecteurs mâles et femelles USB "B".
Connecteur mâle Type-C	Connecteur mâle USB conforme aux exigences électriques et mécaniques définies dans la présente spécification.
Port Type-C	Port USB associé à un connecteur femelle USB Type-C. Cela inclut la signalisation USB, la logique du CC, les multiplexeurs et autres logiques associées.
Connecteur femelle Type-C	Connecteur femelle USB conforme aux exigences électriques et mécaniques définies dans la présente spécification.
UFP (Upstream Facing Port, port orienté en amont)	Port orienté en amont, spécifiquement associé au flux de données dans une connexion USB. Ce port se trouve sur un dispositif ou un hub et se connecte à un hôte ou au DFP d'un hub. A l'état initial, l'UFP reçoit la tension VBUS et prend en charge les données.
Câble USB 2.0 Type-C	Câble USB Type-C vers Type-C qui prend uniquement en charge l'exploitation des données *USB 2.0*. Ce câble n'inclut pas les fils *USB 3.2* ou SBU.
Connecteur mâle USB 2.0 Type-C	Connecteur mâle USB Type-C spécifiquement conçu pour implémenter le câble *USB 2.0* Type-C.
Câble USB Type-C Complet	Câble USB Type-C vers Type-C qui prend en charge l'exploitation des données *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2* et *USB4*. Ce câble comprend les fils SBU et est un câble avec marquage électronique.
Connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet	Connecteur mâle USB Type-C, spécifiquement conçu pour implémenter le câble USB Type-C Complet.
Hub USB4	Un hub USB4 est utilisé pour l'extension de port USB. Il comprend uniquement les ports USB en amont et en aval. Il ne comprend aucune capacité supplémentaire qui expose d'autres types de connecteurs ou d'autres fonctions, à l'exception de celles définies au 5.2.3 (Modes alternatifs).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Terme	Description
Station d'accueil USB4	Une station d'accueil USB4 associe un hub USB4 (qui comprend au moins un port USB Type-C exposé en aval) avec des capacités supplémentaires qui exposent d'autres types de connecteurs et/ou incluent d'autres fonctions visibles par l'utilisateur comme le stockage, la mise en réseau, etc. Les exemples de fonctions qui ne s'interprètent pas comme visibles par l'utilisateur englobent la mise à jour de microprogramme et l'authentification de dispositif.
Etat de sécurité USB	Etat USB Safe State défini par la spécification *USB PD*.
Accessoire alimenté par VCONN (VPA)	Accessoire alimenté par la tension VCONN pour fonctionner en mode alternatif. Les VPA ne peuvent pas appliquer la technique de charge décrite pour les VPD. Ils doivent, en lieu et place, négocier le déclenchement de l'alimentation électrique par USB avec l'hôte connecté et la source afin d'assurer une fonctionnalité similaire.
Dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN (VPD, *VCONN-Powered USB Device*)	Dispositif USB à connexion directe ou à câble captif qui peut être alimenté exclusivement par la tension VCONN ou VBUS. Les VPD peuvent éventuellement prendre en charge la capacité de charge par VPD.
VCONN_Swap	Mécanisme de permutation VCONN *USB PD*.
VDM (Vendor Defined Message)	Message défini par le fournisseur, défini par la spécification *USB PD*.
VID	Un identifiant de fournisseur (Vendor ID) est une valeur unique à 16 bits attribuée par l'USB-IF pour identifier un fournisseur.
vSafe0V	Tension VBUS de "0 V" définie par la spécification *USB PD*.
vSafe5V	Tension VBUS de "5 V" définie par la spécification *USB PD*.
x1	Voir Voie unique.
x2	Voir Double voie.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

2 Vue d'ensemble

2.1 Introduction

Les connecteurs mâles et femelles ainsi que le câble USB Type-C® offrent une alternative plus petite, plus fine et plus robuste aux interconnexions USB existantes (câbles et connecteurs Standard et Micro-SB). Cette solution est prévue pour une utilisation sur des plateformes très fines (des ordinateurs portables ultrafins aux smartphones), sur lesquelles les connecteurs femelles Standard-A et Micro-AB existants sont jugés trop imposants, difficilement utilisables ou pas suffisamment robustes. Les principales améliorations sont les suivantes:

- le connecteur femelle USB Type-C peut être utilisé sur des plateformes très fines, compte tenu de la hauteur totale du dispositif après montage, qui est inférieure à 3 mm;
- le connecteur mâle USB Type-C est plus facile à utiliser, puisqu'il est enfichable face vers le haut ou face vers le bas;
- le câble USB Type-C est plus facile à utiliser, puisqu'il est enfichable dans le dispositif et l'hôte dans les deux sens.

L'interconnexion USB Type-C ne fait plus la distinction physique entre les connecteurs de type A ou de type B d'un câble, tandis que l'interface USB maintient cette relation logique entre l'hôte et le dispositif. La détermination de cette relation entre hôte et dispositif est réalisée par le biais d'un canal de configuration (CC) connecté par le câble. Le canal de configuration permet également de configurer et de gérer l'alimentation et les modes alternatif et accessoire.

A l'aide du canal de configuration, l'interconnexion USB Type-C définit une solution simplifiée pour la charge et l'alimentation, avec une tension VBUS de 5 V, qui vient compléter la *spécification USB 3.2*. Les fonctionnalités plus avancées d'alimentation et de charge de batterie au moyen de l'interconnexion USB Type-C reposent sur la *spécification USB Power Delivery*. Autre amélioration concernant l'implémentation du produit, l'interconnexion USB Type-C permet au protocole de communication *USB PD*, auparavant communiqué par VBUS, d'être distribué sur le canal de configuration USB Type-C.

Il est prévu que la conception même des connecteurs mâles et femelles, ainsi que celle du câble USB Type-C, prenne en charge les futures extensions fonctionnelles USB. A ce titre, une attention particulière a été accordée aux performances de gradation des fréquences, à la disposition des broches et aux mécanismes de configuration lors du développement de cette solution. La définition des futures extensions fonctionnelles USB ne relève pas du domaine d'application de la présente spécification; elle sera fournie dans les futures éditions de la spécification USB de base, c'est-à-dire ultérieures à la *spécification USB4™* existante.

La Figure 2-1 représente le plan intégral des signaux fonctionnels pour le connecteur femelle USB Type-C Complet. Tous les signaux représentés ne sont pas exigés sur toutes les plateformes ou tous les dispositifs. Comme indiqué, la liste des signaux du connecteur femelle alimente de manière fonctionnelle les bus de données *USB 2.0* (D+ et D−), et *USB 3.2* ou *USB4* (paires TX et RX), l'alimentation USB (VBUS), la terre (GND), les signaux du canal de configuration (CC1 et CC2) et deux broches de signaux d'utilisation en bande latérale (SBU). Cet agencement, qui comprend plusieurs emplacements pour les signaux de bus de données USB, facilite la capacité à mettre les signaux USB en correspondance de manière fonctionnelle, quelle que soit l'orientation du connecteur mâle dans le connecteur femelle. Les broches de signal sont étiquetées à titre de référence. Pour le connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Type-C, les signaux *USB 3.2* et *USB4* sont mis implémentés.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 2-1 — Interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C (vue de face)

A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	A9	A10	A11	A12
GND	TX1+	TX1−	VBUS	CC1	D+	D−	SBU1	VBUS	RX2−	RX2+	GND
GND	RX1+	RX1−	VBUS	SBU2	D−	D+	CC2	VBUS	TX2−	TX2+	GND
B12	B11	B10	B9	B8	B7	B6	B5	B4	B3	B2	B1

La Figure 2-2 représente le plan complet des signaux fonctionnels pour le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Une seule broche CC est connectée par le biais du câble pour établir l'orientation du signal; l'autre broche CC est refonctionnalisée comme VCONN pour alimenter les composants électroniques du connecteur femelle USB Type-C. De plus, un seul ensemble de fils *USB 2.0* D+/D− est implémenté dans un câble USB Type-C. Pour les câbles USB Type-C qui prennent uniquement en charge la fonctionnalité *USB 2.0*, les signaux TX/RX et SBU ne sont pas implémentés. Seuls neuf contacts sont mis en œuvre pour prendre en charge les broches CC, VBUS et GND dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C d'alimentation uniquement (destinée uniquement aux applications de collecteur USB Type-C).

Figure 2-2 — Interface d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet (vue de face)

A12	A11	A10	A9	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1
GND	RX2+	RX2−	VBUS	SBU1	D−	D+	CC	VBUS	TX1−	TX1+	GND
GND	TX2+	TX2−	VBUS	VCONN			SBU2	VBUS	RX1−	RX1+	GND
B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B8	B9	B10	B11	B12

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

2.2 Connecteurs mâles, connecteurs femelles et câbles USB Type-C

Les câbles et les connecteurs, notamment les câbles et adaptateurs USB Type-C vers USB, sont définis de manière explicite par la présente spécification. Il s'agit des seuls connecteurs et câbles autorisés par les termes de la licence de la présente spécification. Tous les câbles et connecteurs sous licence doivent satisfaire aux exigences de conformité et de certification établies et gérées par l'USB-IF.

Les connecteurs mâles et femelles USB Type-C suivants sont définis:

- connecteur femelle USB Type-C Complet pour les plateformes et dispositifs *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2*, *USB4* Complet;
- connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Type-C pour les plateformes et dispositifs *USB 2.0*;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet;
- connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C d'alimentation uniquement.

Les câbles USB Type-C suivants sont définis:

- câble USB Type-C Complet avec connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet à chaque extrémité pour les applications *USB 3.2*, *USB4* Complet;
- câble *USB 2.0* Type-C avec un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C aux deux extrémités pour les applications *USB 2.0*;
- câble captif équipé d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet ou *USB 2.0* Type-C à une extrémité;

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- câbles actifs définis à l'Article 6.

Tous les connecteurs mâles et femelles, ainsi que les câbles USB Type-C définis (hors OIAC) prennent en charge les applications de charge par USB, y compris l'implémentation facultative spécifique USB Type-C de la *spécification USB Power Delivery* (voir 4.6.2.4).

Tous les câbles USB Type-C Complets ont un marquage électronique. Les câbles *USB 2.0* Type-C peuvent avoir un marquage électronique. Voir 4.9 sur les exigences concernant les câbles avec marquage électronique.

Les câbles et adaptateurs USB Type-C vers USB suivants sont définis:

- câble *USB 3.2* Type-C vers un hôte existant avec un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet à une extrémité et un connecteur mâle *USB 3.1* Standard-A à l'autre extrémité – *ce câble prend en charge l'utilisation d'un dispositif USB Type-C avec un port USB existant;*
- câble *USB 2.0* Type-C vers hôte existant avec un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C à une extrémité et un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Standard-A à l'autre extrémité – *ce câble prend en charge l'utilisation d'un dispositif USB Type-C avec un hôte USB 2.0 existant (notamment pour les applications mobiles de synchronisation et de charge);*
- câble *USB 3.2* Type-C vers dispositif existant avec un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet à une extrémité et un connecteur mâle *USB 3.1* Standard-B à l'autre extrémité – *ce câble prend en charge l'utilisation de hubs et dispositifs USB 3.1 existants avec un hôte USB Type-C;*
- câble *USB 2.0* Type-C vers dispositif existant avec un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C à une extrémité et un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Standard-B à l'autre extrémité – *ce câble prend en charge l'utilisation de hubs et dispositifs USB 2.0 existants avec un hôte USB Type-C;*
- câble *USB 2.0* Type-C vers mini-dispositif existant avec un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C à une extrémité et un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Mini-B à l'autre extrémité – *ce câble prend en charge l'utilisation de dispositifs existants avec un hôte USB 2.0 Type-C;*
- câble *USB 3.2* Type-C vers microdispositif existant avec un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet à une extrémité et un connecteur mâle *USB 3.1* Micro-B à l'autre extrémité – *ce câble prend en charge l'utilisation de hubs et de dispositifs USB 3.1 existants avec un hôte USB Type-C;*
- câble *USB 2.0* Type-C vers microdispositif existant avec un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C à une extrémité et un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Micro-B à l'autre extrémité – *ce câble prend en charge l'utilisation de hubs et de dispositifs USB 2.0 existants avec un hôte USB Type-C;*
- adaptateur *USB 3.2* Type-C vers connecteur Standard-A existant avec un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet à une extrémité et un connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A à l'autre extrémité – *cet adaptateur prend en charge l'utilisation d'un dispositif de type "clés USB" existantes ou d'un dispositif USB ThinCard existant avec un hôte USB 3.2 Type-C;*
- adaptateur *USB 2.0* Type-C vers connecteur Micro-B existant avec un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C à une extrémité et un connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B à l'autre extrémité – *cet adaptateur prend en charge la charge d'un dispositif mobile USB Type-C avec des chargeurs existants USB Micro-B, avec un câble captif ou conjointement avec un câble USB 2.0 Standard-A vers Micro-B existant.*

Les adaptateurs pour connecteurs femelles USB Type-C vers des connecteurs USB existants ne sont explicitement ni définis ni admis. Ces adaptateurs permettent de nombreux câblages non valides et potentiellement dangereux par les utilisateurs.

2.3 Processus de configuration

La solution des connecteurs mâles et femelles, ainsi que du câble USB Type-C, intègre un processus de configuration qui permet de détecter une connexion entre un port en aval et un port en amont

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

(source-collecteur), dans le cadre de la gestion de la tension VBUS et la détermination des relations entre l'hôte et le dispositif connecté.

Le processus de configuration de port USB Type-C permet de réaliser les tâches suivantes:

- détection des branchements/débranchements entre la source et le collecteur;
- détection de l'orientation du connecteur mâle ou des câbles torsadés;
- détection de l'alimentation initiale (source-collecteur) et établissement de la relation avec les données (hôte-dispositif);
- définition de l'exigence relative à la VCONN du câble;
- détection et utilisation du courant VBUS USB Type-C;
- communication *USB PD*;
- découverte et configuration des extensions fonctionnelles.

A ce titre, deux broches sont utilisées sur le connecteur femelle USB Type-C: CC1 et CC2. Dans un câble USB Type-C normalisé, une seule position de broche CC pour chaque connecteur du câble est connectée par le biais du câble.

2.3.1 Détection des branchements/débranchements entre la source et le collecteur

Initialement, la liaison source-collecteur est détectée par un port hôte ou hub (source) lorsque l'une des broches CC de son connecteur femelle USB Type-C détecte une résistance spécifiée à la GND. Par la suite, la fin de liaison source-collecteur est détectée lorsque la broche CC qui a été branchée à son connecteur femelle USB Type-C n'est plus reliée à la GND.

L'alimentation n'est pas appliquée au connecteur femelle hôte ou hub USB Type-C (VBUS ou VCONN), tant que la source ne détecte pas la présence d'un port de dispositif (collecteur) branché. Lorsqu'un branchement source-collecteur est détecté, il est prévu que la source alimente le connecteur femelle et poursuive son fonctionnement USB normal avec le dispositif branché. Lorsqu'une fin de liaison source-collecteur est détectée, le port qui fournit la tension VBUS coupe l'alimentation.

2.3.2 Détection de l'orientation du connecteur mâle ou des câbles torsadés

Le connecteur mâle USB Type-C peut être inséré dans un connecteur femelle dans les deux sens. De fait, les broches CC autorisent la détection de l'orientation du connecteur mâle afin de déterminer l'ordre des voies des paires de signaux de données USB SuperSpeed qui sont connectées de manière fonctionnelle par le câble et identifient la voie de configuration en fonctionnement à double voie, lorsque celui-ci est pris en charge. Ceci permet d'établir, si nécessaire, le routage des signaux au sein d'un hôte ou d'un dispositif pour assurer la connexion.

2.3.3 Détection de l'alimentation initiale (source-collecteur) et établissement de la relation avec les données (hôte-dispositif)

Contrairement aux connecteurs mâles et femelles USB Type-A et USB Type-B, les caractéristiques mécaniques des connecteurs mâles et femelles USB Type-C n'établissent pas en eux-mêmes la relation entre les hôtes USB et les ports de dispositifs. Les broches CC sur le connecteur femelle servent également à établir des relations d'alimentation initiale (source-collecteur) et de données (hôte-dispositif) avant le processus d'énumération USB normal.

Dans le but de définir la manière dont les broches CC sont utilisées pour établir la relation d'alimentation initiale, les modes de comportement suivants sont définis pour l'alimentation du port:

1. Source uniquement – dans ce mode, le port se comporte exclusivement comme une source;
2. Collecteur uniquement – dans ce mode, le port se comporte exclusivement comme un collecteur;

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3. alimentation double fonction (DRP) – dans ce mode, le port peut se comporter comme une source ou comme un collecteur.

Par ailleurs, lorsqu'un port prend en charge l'exploitation des données USB, les modes de comportement suivants des données d'un port sont définis:

1. DFP uniquement – dans ce mode, le port se comporte exclusivement comme un DFP;
2. UFP uniquement – dans ce mode, le port se comporte exclusivement comme un UFP;
3. données double fonction (DRD) – dans ce mode, le port peut se comporter comme un DFP ou comme un UFP.

Le comportement des ports DFP uniquement et UFP uniquement est mis en correspondance avec les comportements types des ports respectivement USB hôte et dispositif, mais peuvent ne pas nécessairement établir une communication avec les données USB. Lorsque le port d'un hôte est branché à un port de dispositif, le comportement du point de vue de l'utilisateur suit le modèle classique de l'hôte USB vers le port du dispositif. Toutefois, la technique du connecteur USB Type-C n'empêche pas les connexions physiques entre hôtes ou entre dispositifs. Dans ce cas, la connexion entre hôtes ou entre dispositifs établie est certes sécurisée, mais n'est pas fonctionnelle.

Lors de la connexion initiale, la source alimente en tension VBUS et se comporte comme un DFP, tandis que le collecteur consomme de la tension VBUS et se comporte comme un UFP. Lorsqu'elle est prise en charge par les deux ports, l'*USB PD* peut ensuite être utilisée pour échanger les rôles d'alimentation et de données des ports de manière indépendante.

Un port est un DRP lorsqu'il prend en charge une double fonction, c'est à dire lorsqu'il peut basculer vers le mode de connexion approprié selon qu'il est branché à un port Source uniquement ou Collecteur uniquement. Dans le cas particulier d'un DRP branché à un autre DRP, un protocole d'initialisation des broches CC permet d'établir la relation initiale entre l'hôte et le dispositif. Sans l'intervention de l'échange de rôle, la détermination du DFP ou de l'UFP est aléatoire du point de vue de l'utilisateur.

Deux ensembles indépendants de mécanismes sont définis pour permettre à un DRP USB Type-C d'effectuer un échange fonctionnel des rôles entre l'alimentation et les données. Lorsque l'*USB PD* est prise en charge, l'échange entre le rôle d'alimentation et le rôle de données est réalisé après le processus de connexion initiale. Pour les mises en œuvre ne prenant pas en charge PD, l'échange des rôles alimentation/données peut éventuellement être traité dans le cadre du processus de connexion initiale. Dans le but d'améliorer l'expérience utilisateur lors de la connexion de dispositifs de types différents, des matériels peuvent être développés avec intégration d'un rôle préférentiel DFP ou UFP, de sorte que la détermination du DFP/UFP soit prévisible dès la connexion. Pour plus d'informations sur les mécanismes d'échange disponibles, voir 4.5.1.4.

Outre l'échange de rôles, un DRP USB Type-C peut également proposer une fonctionnalité utile: exposer une pile CDC/réseau (de préférence TCP/IP) lorsqu'il fonctionne en tant qu'hôte, ou exposer une interface CDC/réseau lorsqu'il fonctionne en tant que dispositif.

Les hubs USB possèdent deux types de ports: un UFP connecté à un DFP (hôte ou autre hub) qui fonctionne initialement comme un collecteur, ainsi qu'un ou plusieurs DFP pour la connexion d'autres dispositifs qui fonctionnent initialement en tant que sources.

2.3.4 Détection et utilisation du courant VBUS USB Type-C

Avec la technique du connecteur USB Type-C, une source (port hôte ou hub en aval) peut appliquer un courant source plus élevé sur VBUS afin de charger plus rapidement les dispositifs mobiles ou les dispositifs de puissance supérieure. Tous les ports USB hôte et hub annoncent, par le biais des broches CC, le niveau de courant actuellement disponible. Le port du dispositif USB doit gérer sa charge pour s'aligner sur le niveau de courant fourni par l'hôte ou le hub. Il doit notamment réduire

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

dynamiquement la charge si le port hôte ou hub annonce un niveau plus faible par le biais des broches CC.

Trois annonces de niveau de courant à une tension VBUS de 5 V sont définies par le courant USB Type-C:

- la valeur par défaut est celle configurée pour une valeur de courant en fonctionnement sous tension élevée et définie par une spécification USB (500 mA pour les ports USB 2.0; 900 mA/1 500 mA pour les ports USB 3.2 respectivement à voie unique/double voie);
- courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A;
- courant USB Type-C de 3,0 A.

Il existe une distinction fonctionnelle évidente entre l'annonce par défaut et le courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A ou 3,0 A.

- La valeur par défaut est prévue pour que l'hôte fonctionne et fournisse l'alimentation du bus à un dispositif connecté, où l'hôte gère la consommation de courant du dispositif pour les états de faible puissance, de haute puissance et de suspension définis dans les spécifications USB de base.
- Le courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A ou 3,0 A est essentiellement destiné aux applications de charge. Le collecteur peut varier son appel de courant jusqu'à la limite annoncée. Il est permis de fournir un courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A ou 3,0 A dans le cas d'un hôte qui fournit l'alimentation du bus à un dispositif. Il est nécessaire que l'hôte prenne pour hypothèse que le dispositif puise continuellement le courant à la limite proposée.

Les niveaux supérieurs de courant USB Type-C qui peuvent être déclarés permettent aux hôtes et aux dispositifs qui n'appliquent pas l'*USB PD* d'utiliser un courant de charge supérieur.

2.3.5 Communication USB PD

USB Power Delivery est une fonctionnalité intégrée aux matériels (hôtes, hubs et dispositifs). Les communications *USB PD* sont utilisées pour:

- établir des contrats d'alimentation qui permettent de délivrer des valeurs de tension et de courant supérieures aux spécifications de bus de données USB existantes;
- modifier le port qui alimente la tension VBUS;
- modifier le port qui alimente la tension VCONN;
- échanger les rôles DFP et UFP;
- communiquer par l'intermédiaire de câbles.

Les communications BMC *USB PD* sont établies sur le fil CC du câble USB Type-C.

2.3.6 Extensions fonctionnelles

Les extensions fonctionnelles (voir Article E) sont établies par le biais d'un canal de communications sur le CC, selon les méthodes définies dans la *spécification USB Power Delivery*.

2.4 VBUS

VBUS fournit un chemin qui permet de déclencher l'alimentation entre un hôte et un dispositif, ou entre un chargeur USB et un hôte/dispositif. Une capacité d'alimentation simplifiée sous tension élevée est définie pour les hôtes et les chargeurs qui disposent de l'option de prise en charge de niveaux de courant supérieurs aux spécifications *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2* et *USB4*. La *spécification USB Power Delivery* est prise en charge.

Le Tableau 2-1 récapitule les options d'alimentation disponibles depuis le dispositif équipé du connecteur USB Type-C. Tous les ports hôte ou hub ne permettent pas au dispositif d'accéder à

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

toutes les options. Seules les deux premières options répertoriées correspondent aux obligations des spécifications USB de base et constituent le fondement du courant USB Type-C au niveau de puissance USB par défaut.

Tableau 2-1 — Récapitulatif des options d'alimentation

Mode de fonctionnement	Tension	Courant	Notes
USB 2.0	5 V	Voir *USB 2.0*	
USB 3.2	5 V	Voir *USB 3.2*	
USB4	5 V	1,5 A	Voir 5.3
USB BC 1.2	5 V	1,5 A[1]	Charge existante
Courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A	5 V	1,5 A	Prend en charge les dispositifs d'alimentation supérieure
Courant USB Type-C à 3,0 A	5 V	3 A	Prend en charge les dispositifs d'alimentation supérieure
USB PD	Paramétrable jusqu'à 20 V	Paramétrable jusqu'à 5 A	Commande directionnelle et gestion du niveau d'alimentation

Notes:

1. Lorsque la spécification *USB BC 1.2* permet de concevoir un fournisseur d'alimentation qui prend en charge un niveau d'alimentation compris entre 0,5 A et 1,5 A, la spécification USB Type-C exige qu'un port source prenant en charge l'*USB BC 1.2* soit capable de fournir un courant d'au moins 1,5 A et d'annoncer un courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A en plus de prendre en charge la terminaison du fournisseur d'alimentation *USB BC 1.2*.

Le connecteur femelle USB Type-C est spécifié pour une capacité électrique de 5 A, alors que le courant assigné des ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés est de 3 A. Une valeur assignée plus élevée pour le connecteur femelle permet aux systèmes de délivrer davantage d'alimentation, par le biais de solutions d'accueil directement branchées, ou avec des chargeurs adaptés avec des câbles captifs lors de la mise en œuvre de l'*USB PD*. Par ailleurs, il est admis que les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C, conçus pour l'*USB PD* et dûment identifiés par un marquage électronique, prennent en charge jusqu'à 5 A.

2.5 VCONN

Après avoir établi la connexion entre l'hôte et le dispositif, la broche CC (CC1 ou CC2) du connecteur femelle qui n'est pas connectée par le fil CC au sein du câble normalisé est refonctionnalisée pour alimenter VCONN et donc les circuits du connecteur mâle nécessaires à la mise en œuvre des câbles avec marquage électronique (voir 4.9), des accessoires alimentés par VCONN et des dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN. A l'origine, la source alimente VCONN et la source de VCONN peut être échangée au moyen du mécanisme VCONN_Swap de l'*USB PD*.

Les câbles avec marquage électronique peuvent utiliser VBUS à la place de VCONN, puisque VBUS est disponible par le câble. Sur le plan fonctionnel, VCONN diffère de VBUS dans le sens où il est isolé de l'autre extrémité du câble. VCONN est indépendant de VBUS et, contrairement à VBUS qui peut utiliser l'*USB PD* pour prendre en charge des tensions plus élevées, la tension VCONN reste dans la plage comprise entre 3,0 V et 5,5 V (voir vVCONNValid).

2.6 Hubs

Les hubs USB implémentés avec des connecteurs femelles USB Type-C doivent identifier clairement le port orienté en amont. Cette exigence est nécessaire, car un utilisateur ne peut plus savoir quel port d'un hub est orienté en amont et quels ports sont orientés en aval en fonction du type des connecteurs femelles visibles. En d'autres termes, USB Type-B est le port orienté en amont et USB Type-A est un port orienté en aval.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3 Mécanique

3.1 Vue d'ensemble

Le présent article définit les ensembles de câbles filaires et de connecteurs USB Type-C®. Les câbles qui incluent les éléments actifs dans le chemin de données sont définis à l'Article 6 (Câbles actifs).

3.1.1 Connecteurs conformes

La spécification USB Type-C définit les connecteurs normalisés suivants:

- connecteur femelle USB Type-C Complet;
- connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Type-C;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet;
- connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C d'alimentation uniquement.

3.1.2 Ensembles câble-connecteurs conformes

Le Tableau 3-1 récapitule les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés, ainsi que les principales caractéristiques qui les différencient. Tous les câbles USB Type-C Complets doivent prendre en charge l'émission de signaux indépendante et simultanée sur les deux bus de données *USB 3.2* et *USB4™* (paires TX et RX). Les longueurs de câble répertoriées dans le tableau sont données à titre informatif et représentent les longueurs fonctionnelles, en se basant sur les exigences de performance des câbles. Tous les câbles, qu'ils soient complets et/ou assignés à un courant supérieur à 3 A, sont des câbles avec marquage électronique.

Tableau 3-1 — Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés

Réf. du câble	Connecteur mâle 1	Connecteur mâle 2	Version USB	Longueur du câble	Courant assigné	USB Power Delivery	Câble USB Type-C avec marquage électronique
CC2-3	C	C	USB 2.0	≤ 4 m	3 A	Pris en charge	Facultatif
CC2-5					5 A		Exigé
CC3G1-3	C	C	USB 3.2 Gen 1 et USB4 Gen 2	≤ 2 m	3 A	Pris en charge	Exigé
CC3G1-5					5 A		
CC3G2-3	C	C	USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2	≤ 1 m	3 A	Pris en charge	Exigé
CC3G2-5					5 A		
CC4G3-3	C	C	USB4 Gen 3	≤ 0,8 m	3 A	Pris en charge	Exigé
CC4G3-5					5 A		

Les produits USB Type-C peuvent disposer d'un câble captif. Voir 3.4.3.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.1.3 Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant conformes

Le Tableau 3-2 récapitule les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant, ainsi que les principales caractéristiques qui les différencient. Les longueurs de câble répertoriées dans le tableau sont données à titre informatif et représentent les longueurs fonctionnelles, en se basant sur les exigences de performance des câbles. Les ensembles câble-connecteurs *USB 3.2* Type-C vers existant, dont les performances se limitent à l'*USB 3.1* Gen 1, ne sont pas admis par la présente spécification. Tous les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant sont uniquement et spécifiquement définis pour l'*USB 2.0* et l'*USB 3.2*, car il n'existe pas de câble USB Type-C qui s'applique exclusivement à l'*USB4*.

Pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant qui intègrent la terminaison Rp, la valeur de cette borne doit être spécifiée au réglage par défaut du courant USB Type-C, y compris lorsque les ensembles câble-connecteurs ont une valeur assignée de 3 A. Il est prévu que la terminaison Rp de ces câbles représente le courant maximal d'un port hôte USB existant conforme, et non le courant assigné du câble en lui-même. Dans la mesure où de nombreux chargeurs non normalisés ne se limitent pas aux niveaux par défaut établis par les spécifications *USB 2.0* et *USB 3.1*, le courant assigné du câble est intentionnellement réglé sur un niveau plus élevé.

Tableau 3-2 — Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant

Réf. du câble	Connecteur mâle 1[3]	Connecteur mâle 2[3]	Version USB	Longueur du câble	Courant assigné
AC2-3	USB 2.0 Standard-A	USB 2.0 Type-C[1]	USB 2.0	≤ 4 m	3 A
AC3G2-3	USB 3.1 Standard-A	USB Type-C Complet[1]	USB 3.1 Gen 2	≤ 1 m	3 A
CB2-3	USB 2.0 Type-C[2]	USB 2.0 Standard-B	USB 2.0	≤ 4 m	3 A
CB3G2-3	USB Type-C Complet[2]	USB 3.1 Standard-B	USB 3.1 Gen 2	≤ 1 m	3 A
CmB2	USB 2.0 Type-C[2]	USB 2.0 Mini-B	USB 2.0	≤ 4 m	500 mA
CuB2-3	USB 2.0 Type-C[2]	USB 2.0 Micro-B	USB 2.0	≤ 2 m	3 A
CuB3G2-3	USB Type-C Complet[2]	USB 3.1 Micro-B	USB 3.1 Gen 2	≤ 1 m	3 A

Notes:

1. Les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C associés à l'extrémité "B" d'un câble d'adaptateur existant doivent intégrer une terminaison Rp (56 kΩ ±5 %) dans l'ensemble de connecteurs mâles (voir 4.5.3.2.2).
2. Les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C associés à l'extrémité "A" d'un câble d'adaptateur existant doivent intégrer une terminaison Rd (5,1 kΩ ±20 %) dans l'ensemble de connecteurs mâles (voir 4.5.3.2.1).
3. Pour plus d'informations sur la résistance après branchement et l'échauffement exigés pour les connecteurs mâles existants, voir 3.7.5.3.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.1.4 Ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers existant conformes

Le Tableau 3-3 récapitule les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers existant, ainsi que les principales caractéristiques qui les différencient. Les longueurs de câble répertoriées dans le tableau sont données à titre informatif et représentent les longueurs fonctionnelles, en se basant sur les exigences de performance des câbles. Tous les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers existant sont uniquement et spécifiquement définis pour l'*USB 2.0* et l'*USB 3.2*, car il n'existe pas d'adaptateur USB Type-C vers existant qui s'applique exclusivement à l'*USB4*.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-3 — Ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers existant

Réf. de l'adaptateur	Connecteur mâle	Connecteur femelle[3]	Version USB	Longueur du câble	Courant assigné
CμBR2-3	USB 2.0 Type-C[1]	USB 2.0 Micro-B	USB 2.0	≤ 0,15 m	3 A
CAR3G1-3	USB Type-C Complet[2]	USB 3.1 Standard-A	USB 3.1 Gen 1	≤ 0,15 m	3 A

Notes:

1. Les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C associés à l'extrémité "B" d'un adaptateur existant doivent intégrer une terminaison Rp (56 kΩ ±5 %) dans l'ensemble de connecteurs mâles (voir 4.5.3.2.2).
2. Les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C associés à l'extrémité "A" d'un adaptateur existant doivent intégrer une terminaison Rd (5,1 kΩ ±20 %) dans l'ensemble de connecteurs mâles (voir 4.5.3.2.1).
3. Pour plus d'informations sur la résistance après branchement et l'échauffement exigés pour les connecteurs femelles existants, voir 3.7.6.3.

3.2 Interfaces de couplage des connecteurs USB Type-C

Le présent paragraphe définit les interfaces de couplage des connecteurs, notamment les schémas d'interface des connecteurs, l'affectation des broches et leurs descriptions. Toutes les dimensions mentionnées dans les figures sont données en millimètres.

3.2.1 Définition de l'interface

La Figure 3-1 et la Figure 3-3 représentent respectivement les dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C et d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet.

La Figure 3-11 représente les dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C. Les dimensions qui régissent l'interopérabilité du couplage sont spécifiées. Toutes les dimensions référencées sont fournies à titre indicatif uniquement et ne constituent pas des exigences strictes.

Les principales fonctionnalités, options de configuration et domaines de conception qu'il est nécessaire de prendre en compte sont les suivants:

1. La Figure 3-1 représente un connecteur femelle monté à la verticale. D'autres types de montages de PCB, comme le montage à angle droit et le montage central, sont admis.
2. Une plaque médiane est exigée à l'intérieur de la languette du connecteur femelle, entre les signaux supérieur et inférieur, afin de gérer la diaphonie dans les applications complètes. La plaque médiane doit être reliée à la terre du PCB en au moins deux points de mise à la terre. Le 3.2.2.1 fournit un schéma de référence de la plaque médiane.
3. Le maintien de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs au sein du connecteur femelle est assuré par un dispositif latéral de fermeture installé sur les côtés de la languette du connecteur femelle. Ce verrou latéral est exigé pour l'ensemble des connecteurs mâles, à l'exception des connecteurs sans fil utilisés pour les stations d'accueil. Il doit être relié à la terre à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle. Un schéma de référence pour le verrou latéral est fourni au 3.2.2.2, avec son diagramme de mise à la terre. Les applications d'accueil peuvent ne pas comporter de verrou latéral et nécessitent une attention particulière à la compatibilité électromagnétique (CEM).
4. Des ressorts d'écrantage CEM sont exigés à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle du câble. Le ressort d'écrantage doit être connecté à l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle. La pointe du ressort d'écrantage CEM du connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet, ou du connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C, ne doit pas être visible par l'ouverture du boîtier du connecteur mâle USB Type-C non couplé (voir Figure 3-12). Le 3.2.2.3 contient des schémas de référence du ressort CEM.
5. Il n'est pas permis de court-circuiter le ressort de signal ou d'alimentation par contact sur l'enveloppe métallique du connecteur mâle. Il convient que le ressort, lorsqu'il est fléchi, ne

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

soit pas en contact avec l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle. Il est recommandé d'utiliser une couche d'isolation (par exemple, ruban en Kapton apposé sur l'enveloppe du connecteur) pour empêcher tout court-circuit accidentel dû à la déformation de l'enveloppe du connecteur.

6. Le connecteur femelle USB Type-C doit fournir un chemin de retour à la terre CEM par le biais de l'une des options suivantes:

   - un système de points de contact spécifiques sur l'enveloppe externe du connecteur femelle (par exemple, doigts de ressort ou doigts de ressort et saillies);
   - des plaques CEM internes; ou
   - une combinaison de points de contact sur l'enveloppe externe du connecteur femelle et de plaques CEM internes.

   Si des points de contact sont utilisés sur le connecteur femelle, ils doivent être en contact avec le connecteur mâle couplé à l'intérieur des zones de contact définies à la Figure 3-2. Au moins quatre points de contact distincts sont exigés. Des points de contact supplémentaires sont admis. Pour accéder au schéma de référence de l'enveloppe externe du connecteur femelle, voir 3.2.2.4. Le schéma de référence inclut quatre doigts de ressort utilisés comme points de contact. Les autres configurations peuvent inclure des doigts de ressort côté contact A et des saillies (par exemple des encoches) côté contact B, ou inversement. Des doigts de ressort sont exigés sur un côté au moins, afin que l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle soit ajustée par pression sur le côté opposé. Des saillies supplémentaires peuvent être utilisées; toutefois, si elles se trouvent sur des faces opposées de l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle, la distance minimale entre les saillies doit être supérieure aux dimensions maximales définies pour l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle.

   Si des plaques CEM internes figurent dans le connecteur femelle, elles doivent satisfaire aux exigences définies à la Figure 3-1. Les plaques d'écrantage doivent être connectées à l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle. Si l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle a été retirée, celui-ci doit disposer d'un moyen de relier la plaque d'écrantage à la terre. Pour accéder au schéma de référence de la plaque d'écrantage et de la connexion à la terre, voir 3.2.2.3.

7. La présente spécification établit la longueur de l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle USB Type-C à 6,20 mm, à titre de dimension de référence. Le connecteur femelle USB Type-C, dont la longueur d'enveloppe est de 6,20 mm ± 0,20 mm, est conçu pour assurer un couplage mécanique et électrique correct avec le connecteur mâle (par exemple, connecteur mâle correctement encastré dans le connecteur femelle, languette du connecteur femelle protégée lors de l'insertion/du retrait). Au niveau du système, il convient d'intégrer le connecteur femelle USB Type-C de manière à ce que la longueur effective de son enveloppe intégrée à la machine physique soit de 6,20 mm ± 0,20 mm.

8. L'interface de couplage du connecteur USB Type-C est définie de sorte que la connexion électrique puisse être établie sans l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle. Pour éviter un mauvais alignement du connecteur mâle lors de son insertion ou de son retrait du connecteur femelle, il convient que le boîtier soit équipé d'outils pour guider le connecteur mâle lors de son insertion et de son retrait, lorsque l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle a été modifiée. Si la dimension spécifiée pour l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle USB Type-C a été modifiée, la dimension recommandée pour l'entrée de la languette du connecteur femelle au point d'entrée du connecteur mâle est alors de 1,5 mm au minimum lors du montage dans le système.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

La présente spécification admet les configurations de connecteur femelle comprenant une enveloppe conductrice, une enveloppe non conductrice ou aucune enveloppe. Les exigences suivantes s'appliquent aux dimensions de contact du connecteur femelle représentées en COUPE A-A et en COUPE ALTERNATIVE A-A à la Figure 3-1:

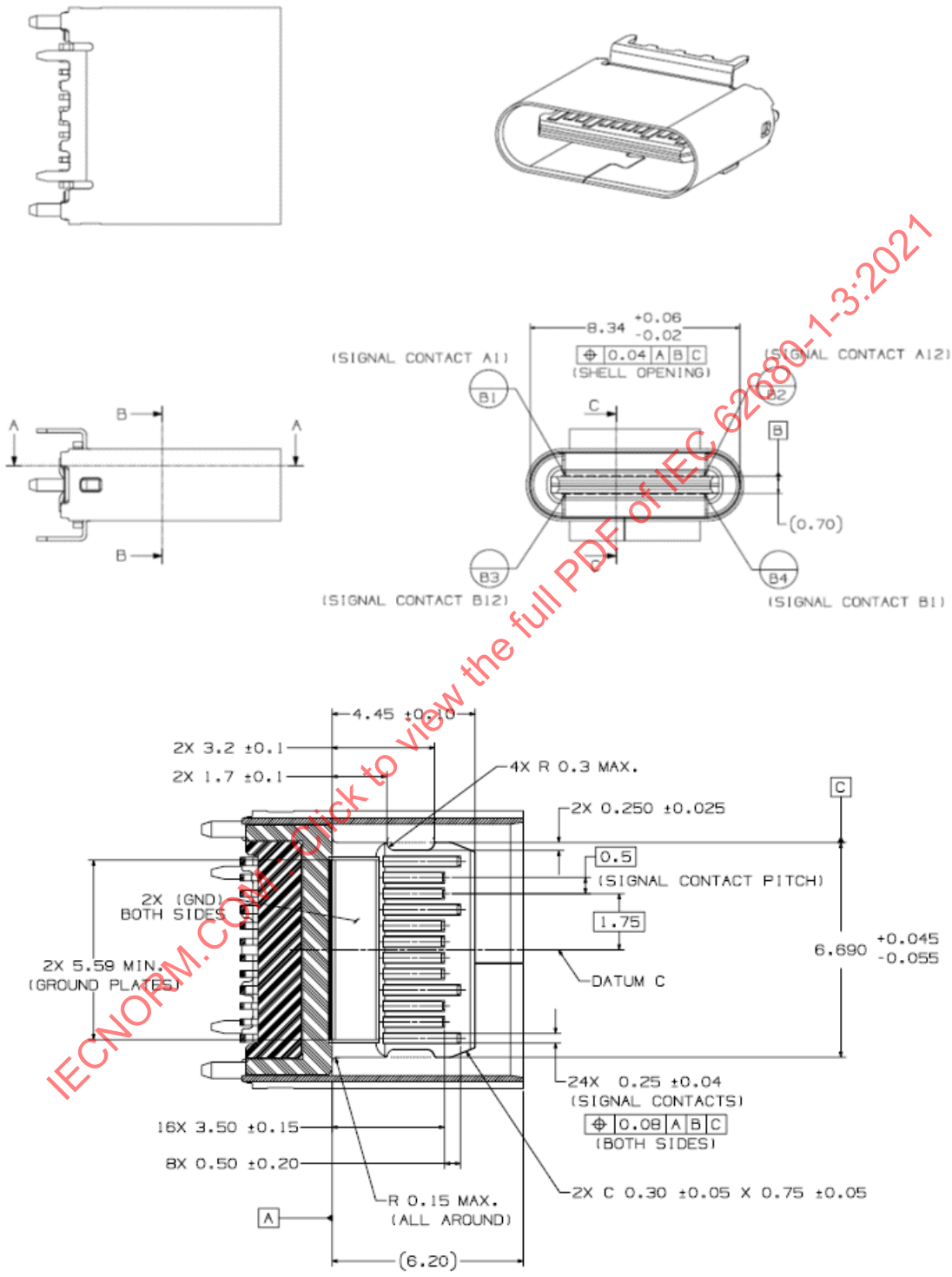
- si l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle est conductrice, les dimensions de contact du connecteur femelle représentées en COUPE A-A ou en COUPE ALTERNATIVE A-A à la Figure 3-1 doivent être utilisées;
- si l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle n'est pas conductrice, les dimensions de contact du connecteur femelle représentées en COUPE ALTERNATIVE A-A à la Figure 3-1 doivent être utilisées. Les dimensions de contact représentées en COUPE A-A ne sont pas admises;
- si le connecteur femelle ne comporte aucune enveloppe, les dimensions de contact du connecteur femelle représentées en COUPE A-A ou en COUPE ALTERNATIVE A-A à la Figure 3-1 doivent être utilisées. Si le connecteur femelle ne comporte aucune enveloppe et qu'elle est utilisée dans une mise en œuvre qui ne fournit pas d'enveloppe conductrice, il convient alors d'utiliser un connecteur femelle dont les dimensions de contact sont représentées en COUPE ALTERNATIVE A-A à la Figure 3-1.

9. Une carte d'accès (un circuit imprimé nu par exemple) peut être utilisée dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C pour gérer les terminaisons de fils et les performances électriques. Le 3.2.2.5 fournit les lignes directrices et un exemple de schéma d'une carte d'accès.
10. La présence spécification ne définit pas les empreintes normalisées. La Figure 3-4 représente un exemple d'empreinte SMT (montage en surface) pour le connecteur femelle vertical représenté à la Figure 3-1. Des empreintes de référence supplémentaires et des configurations de montage sont données à la Figure 3-5, à la Figure 3-6, à la Figure 3-7, à la Figure 3-8, à la Figure 3-9 et à la Figure 3-10.
11. L'enveloppe du connecteur femelle doit être reliée au plan de masse du PCB.
12. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
13. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
14. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble au niveau du connecteur femelle USB Type-C lorsqu'il est à l'état monté (par exemple, toutes les broches VBUS connectées en bus ensemble dans le PCB).
15. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble au niveau du connecteur femelle USB Type-C lorsqu'il est à l'état monté (par exemple, toutes les broches de retour à la terre connectées en bus ensemble dans le PCB).
16. Le connecteur mâle USB Type-C d'alimentation uniquement est une version vide du connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet ou *USB 2.0* Type-C. Les dimensions d'interface doivent être conformes à la Figure 3-3 ou à la Figure 3-11. Les contacts des broches CC, VBUS et GND (à savoir A1, A4, A5, A9, A12, B1, B4, B9 et B12) doivent être présents. La présence physique de contacts dans les 15 autres points de contact est facultative. Le connecteur mâle USB Type-C d'alimentation uniquement ne doit être utilisé que sur une application à câble captif qui n'est pas un chargeur. La mise en œuvre de la communication Rp ou CC sur la broche A5 est exigée dans l'application.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-1 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C



LONGUEUR DE RÉFÉRENCE – VOIR NOTE 7.

SECTION A-A

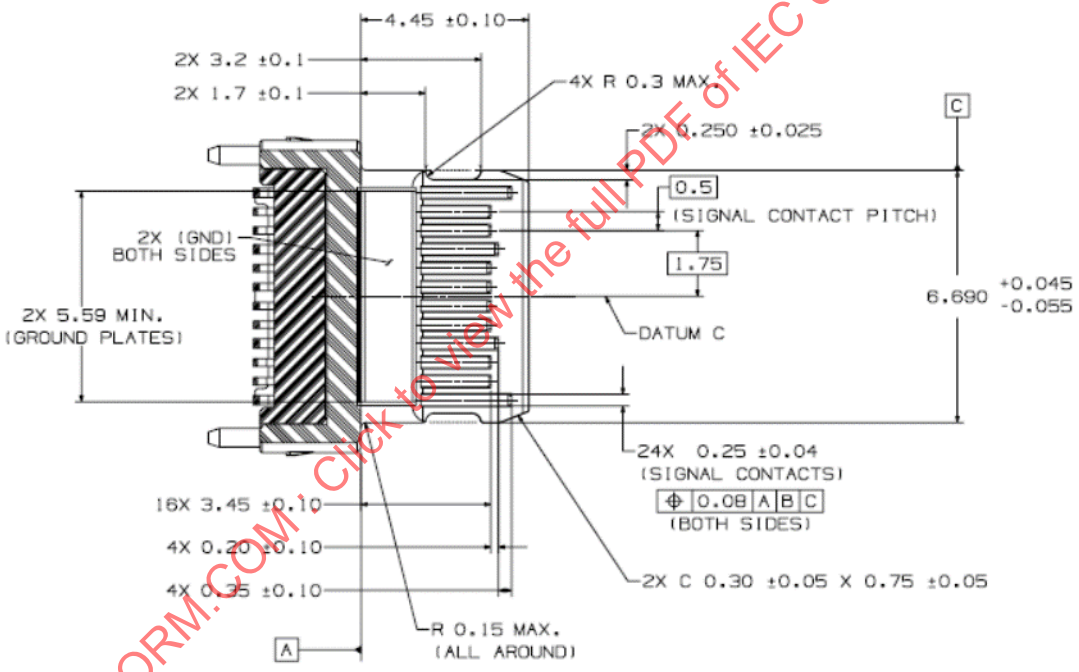
Anglais	Français

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

SIGNAL CONTACT	CONTACT DE SIGNAL
SHELL OPENING	OUVERTURE DE L'ENVELOPPE
BOTH SIDES	DES DEUX CÔTÉS
GROUND PLATES	PLANS DE MASSE
SIGNAL CONTACT PITCH	PAS DU CONTACT DE SIGNAL
DATUM C	PLAN DE RÉFÉRENCE C
SIGNAL CONTACTS	CONTACTS DE SIGNAL
ALL AROUND	TOUT AUTOUR
SECTION AA	COUPE AA

Figure 3-1 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C (suite)

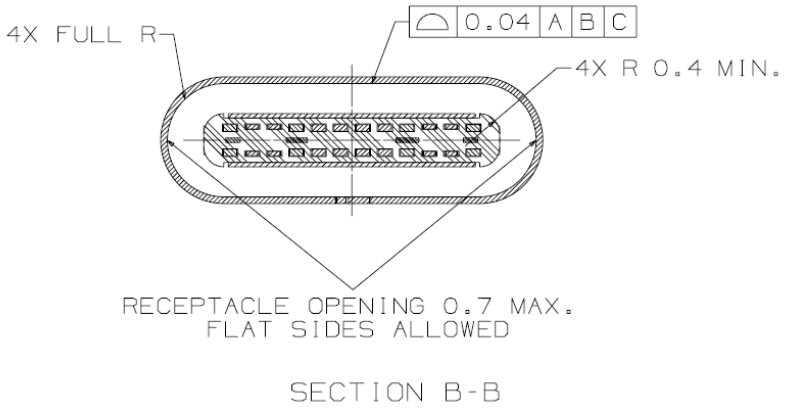


Les dimensions données en COUPE ALTERNATIVE A-A peuvent être utilisées si l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle n'est pas conductrice ou si elle est absente. Cette configuration n'est pas admise pour les connecteurs femelles équipés d'une enveloppe conductrice. Consulter la description pour obtenir les exigences complètes.

ALTERNATE SECTION A-A

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

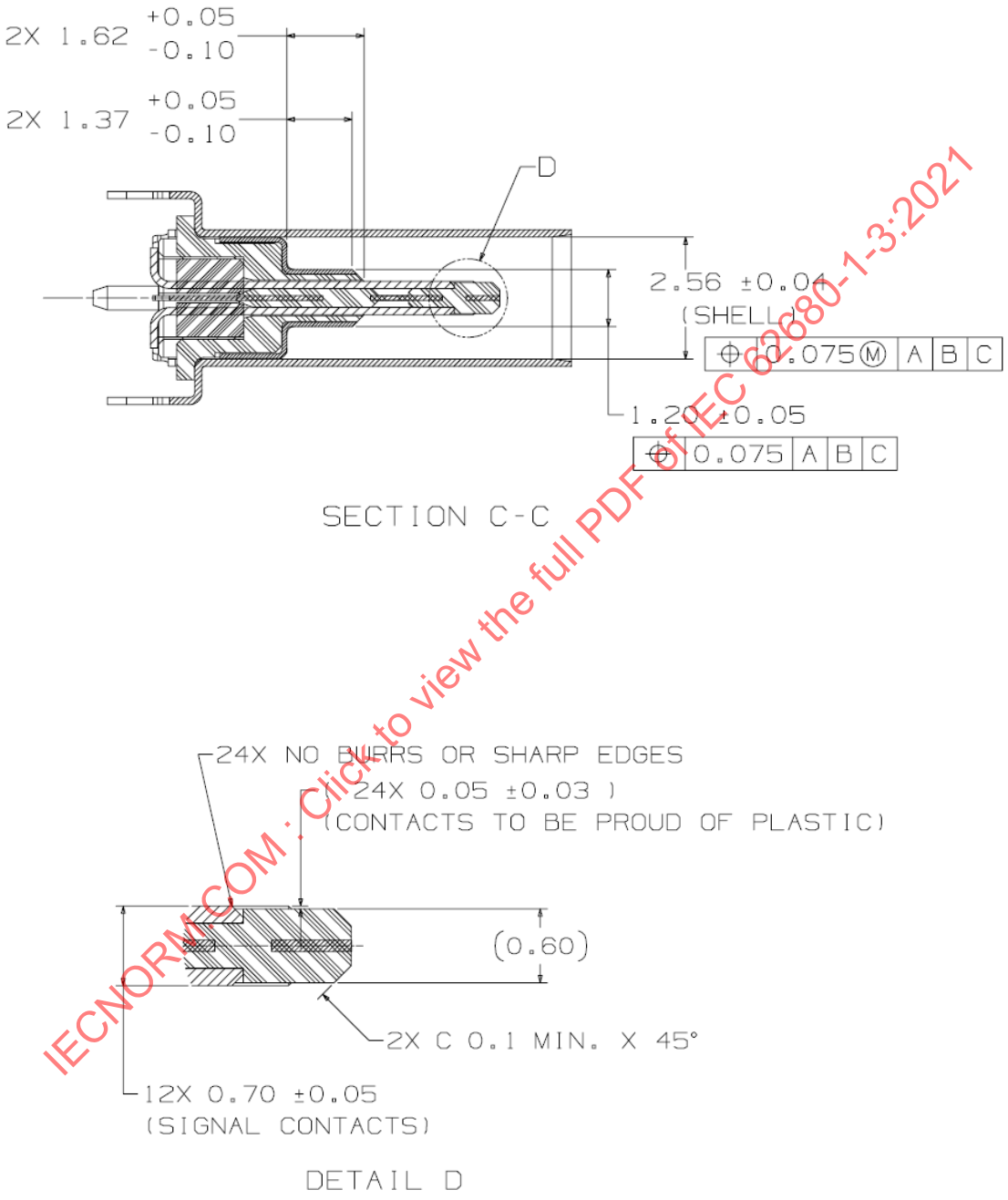


Anglais	Français
BOTH SIDES	DES DEUX CÔTÉS
GROUND PLATES	PLANS DE MASSE
SIGNAL CONTACT PITCH	PAS DU CONTACT DE SIGNAL
DATUM C	PLAN DE RÉFÉRENCE C
SIGNAL CONTACTS	CONTACTS DE SIGNAL
ALL AROUND	TOUT AUTOUR
ALTERNATE SECTION A-A	COUPE ALTERNATIVE A-A
RECEPTACLE OPENING 0.7 MAX	OUVERTURE DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE 0,7 MAX.
FLAT SIDES ALLOWED	CÔTÉS PLATS ADMIS
SECTION B-B	COUPE B-B
FULL R	R TOTAL

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-1 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C (suite)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

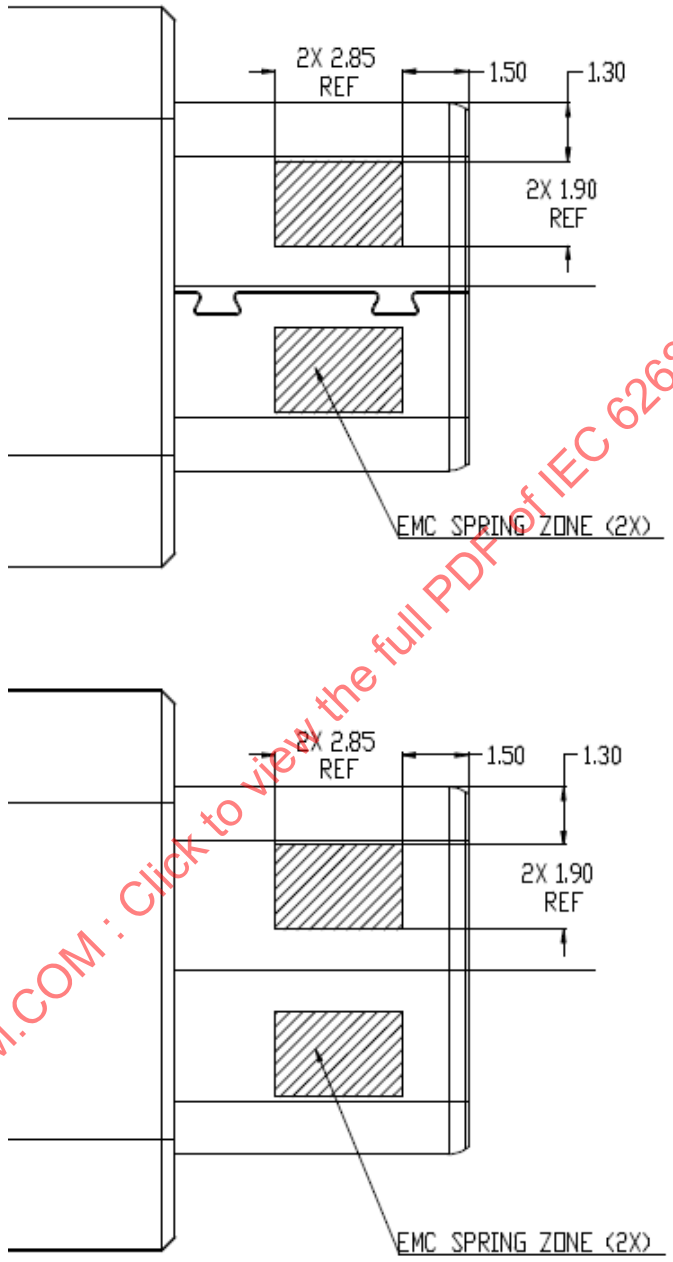
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Anglais	Français
SECTION C-C	COUPE C-C
SHELL	ENVELOPPE
NO BURRS OR SHARP EDGES	AUCUNE BAVURE NI ARÊTE COUPANTE
CONTACTS TO BE PROUD OF PLASTIC	CONTACTS DONT LA CONCEPTION DOIT ÊTRE EN PLASTIQUE
SIGNAL CONTACTS	CONTACTS DE SIGNAL
DETAIL D	ÉLÉMENT D

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-2 — Schéma de référence des zones de contact d'un ressort CEM externe pour un connecteur mâle USB Type-C

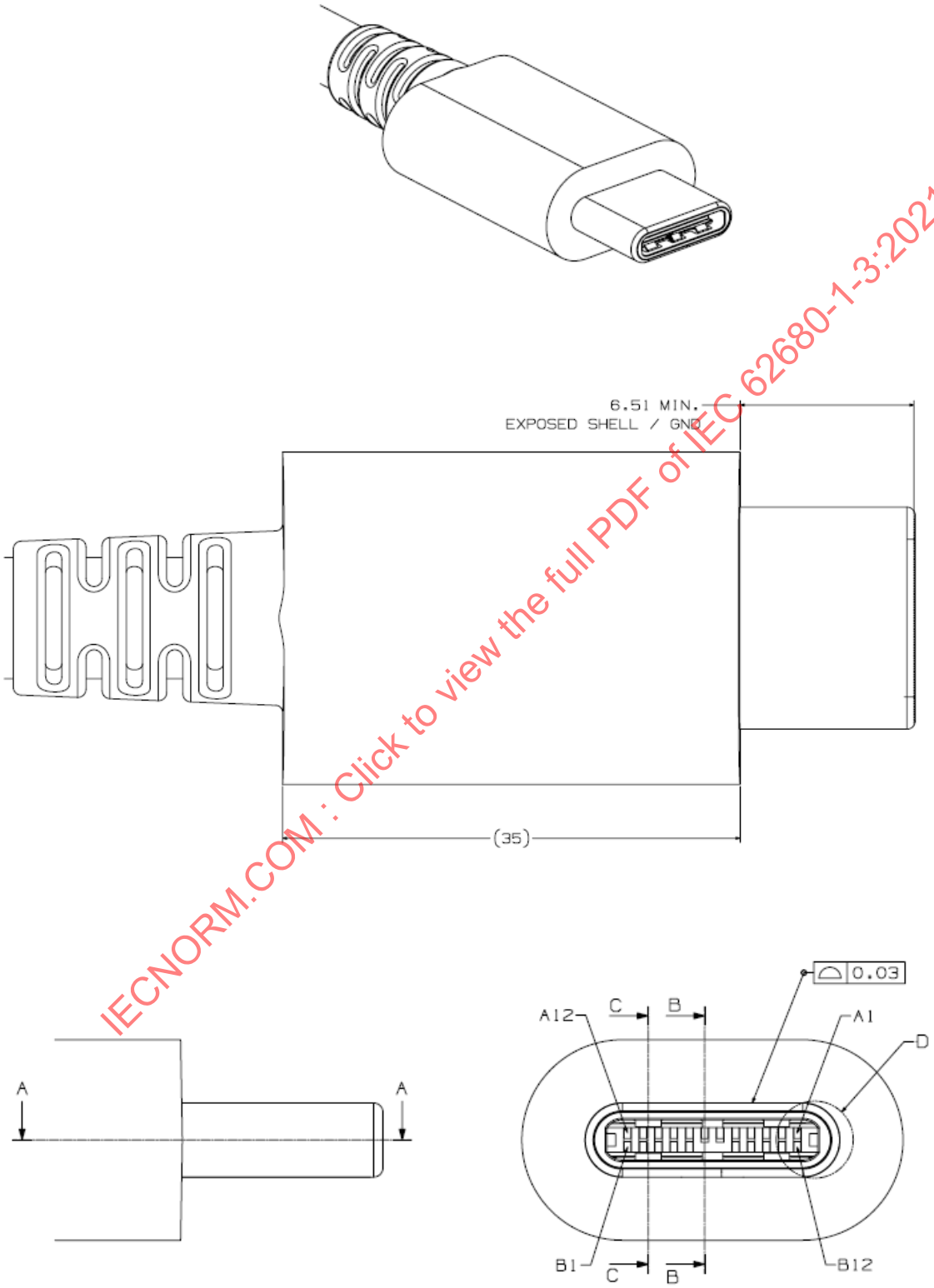


Anglais	Français
EMC SPRING ZONE (2X)	ZONE DE RESSORT CEM (X2)

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-3 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet

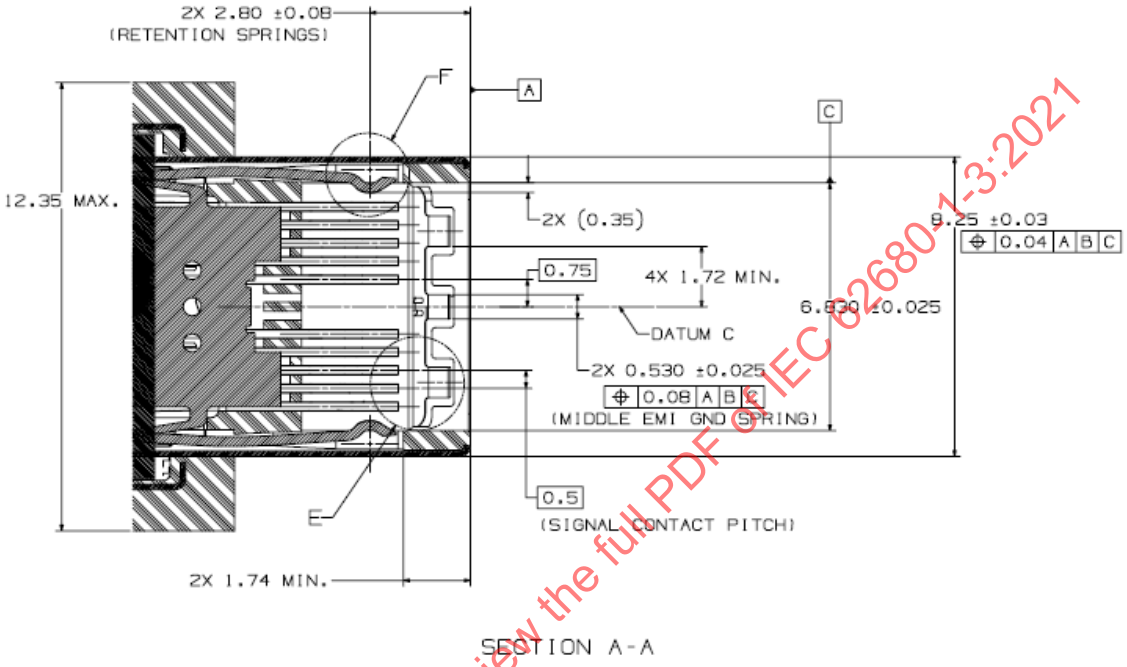


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

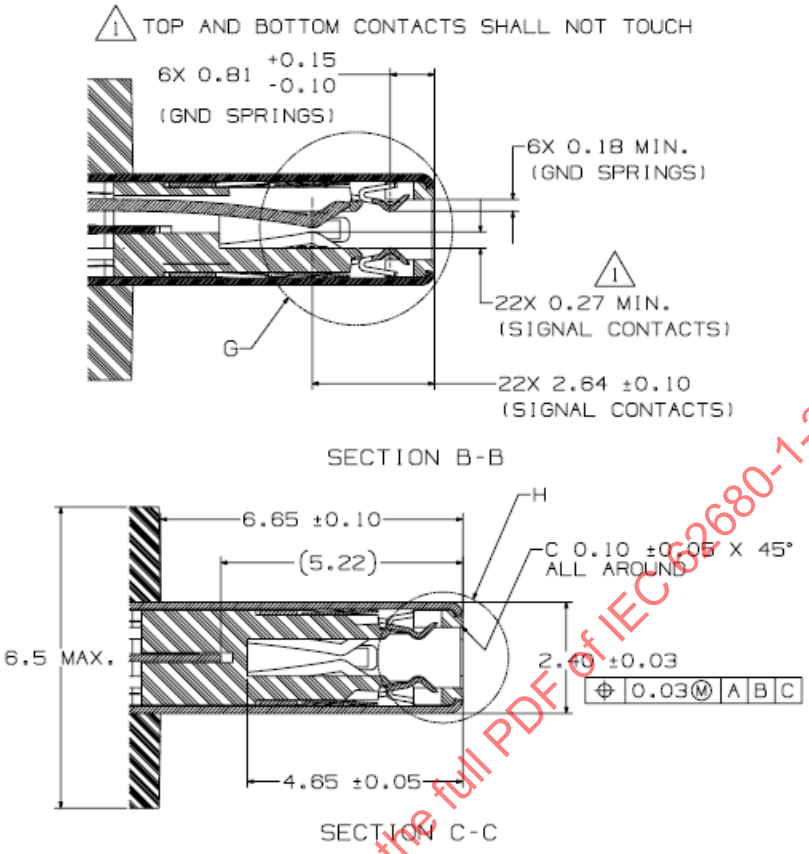
Anglais	Français
EXPOSED SHELL / GND	ENVELOPPE/GND EXPOSÉES

Figure 3-3 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet (suite)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

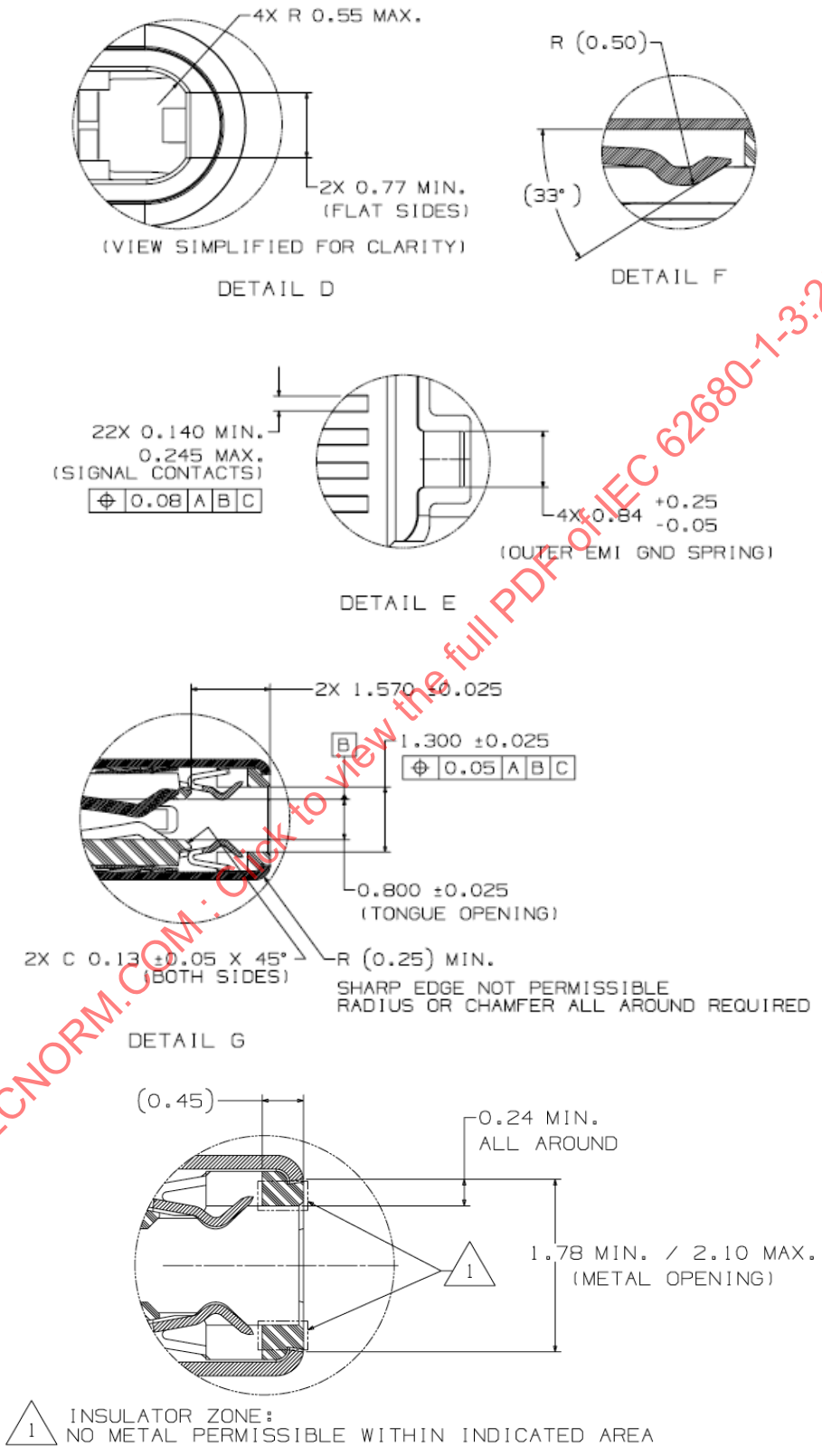


Anglais	Français
RETENTION SPRINGS	RESSORTS DE MAINTIEN
DATUM C	PLAN DE RÉFÉRENCE C
MIDDLE EMI GDN SPRING	RESSORT GND EMI CENTRAL
SIGNAL CONTACT PITCH	PAS DU CONTACT DE SIGNAL
SECTION A-A	COUPE A-A
TOP AND BOTTOM CONTACTS SHALL NOT TOUCH	LES CONTACTS SUPÉRIEURS ET INFÉRIEURS NE DOIVENT PAS SE TOUCHER
GND SPRINGS	RESSORTS GND
SIGNAL CONTACTS	CONTACTS DE SIGNAL
SECTION B-B	COUPE B-B
ALL AROUND	TOUT AUTOUR
SECTION C-C	COUPE C-C

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-3 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet (suite)



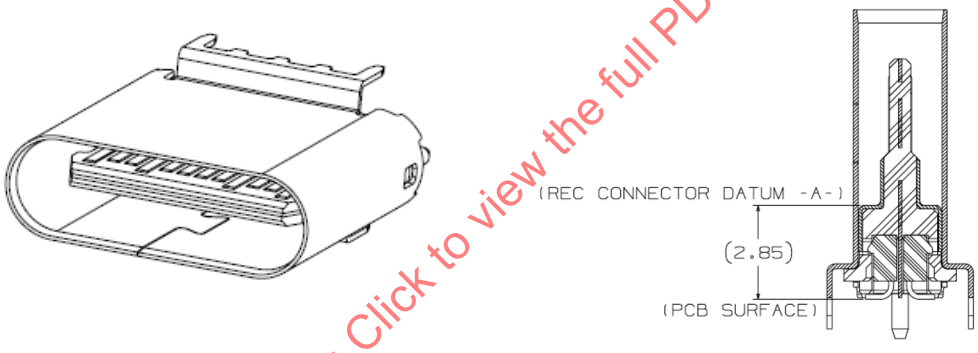
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Anglais	Français

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

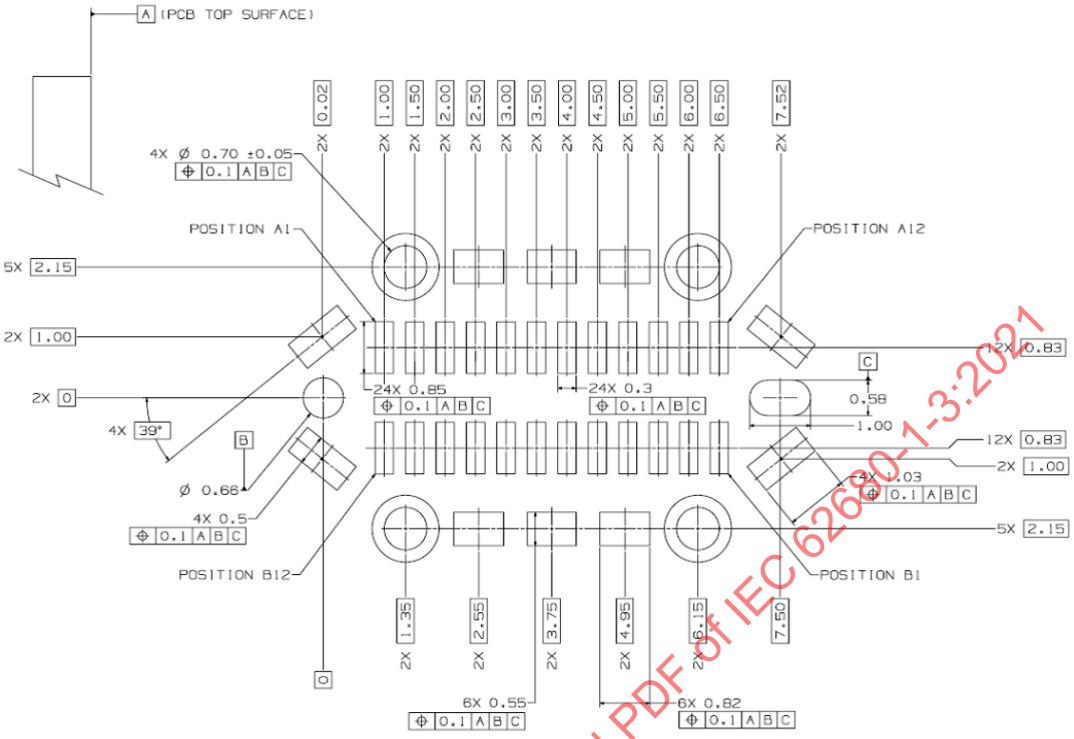
FLAT SIDES	CÔTÉS PLATS
VIEW SIMPLIFIED FOR CLARITY	VUE SIMPLIFIÉE POUR UNE MEILLEURE LISIBILITÉ
DETAIL	ÉLÉMENT
SIGNAL CONTACTS	CONTACTS DE SIGNAL
OUTER EMI GDN SPRING	RESSORT GND EMI EXTÉRIEUR
TONGUE OPENING	OUVERTURE DE LA LANGUETTE
BOTH SIDES	DES DEUX CÔTÉS
SHARP EDGE NOT PERMISSIBLE	ARÊTES TRANCHANTES NON ADMISES
RADIUS OR CHAMFER ALL AROUND REQUIRED	FRAISAGE OU CHANFREIN EXIGÉ TOUT AUTOUR
ALL AROUND	TOUT AUTOUR
METAL OPENING	OUVERTURE MÉTALLIQUE
INSULATOR ZONE	ZONE D'ISOLATION
NO METAL PERMISSIBLE WITHIN INDICATED AREA	AUCUN MÉTAL ADMIS DANS LA ZONE INDIQUÉE

Figure 3-4 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C monté à la verticale (informative)



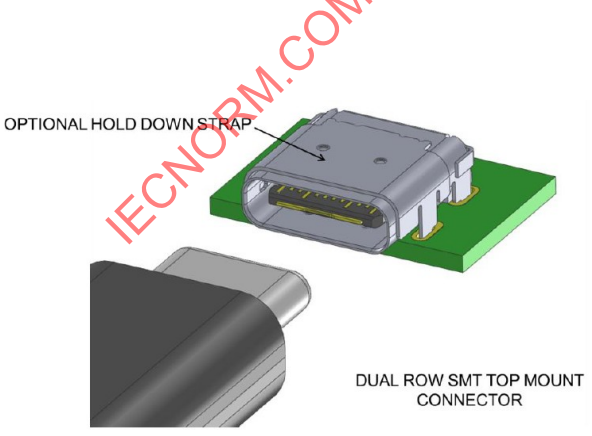
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

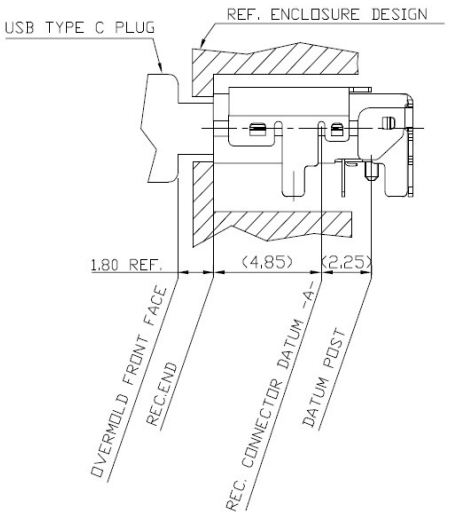
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.



Anglais	Français
REC CONNECTOR DATUM -A-	CONNECTEUR FEMELLE RÉF -A-
PCB SURFACE	SURFACE PCB
PCB TOP SURFACE	SURFACE PCB SUPÉRIEURE

Figure 3-5 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C monté à angle droit, en surface et sur deux rangées (informative)



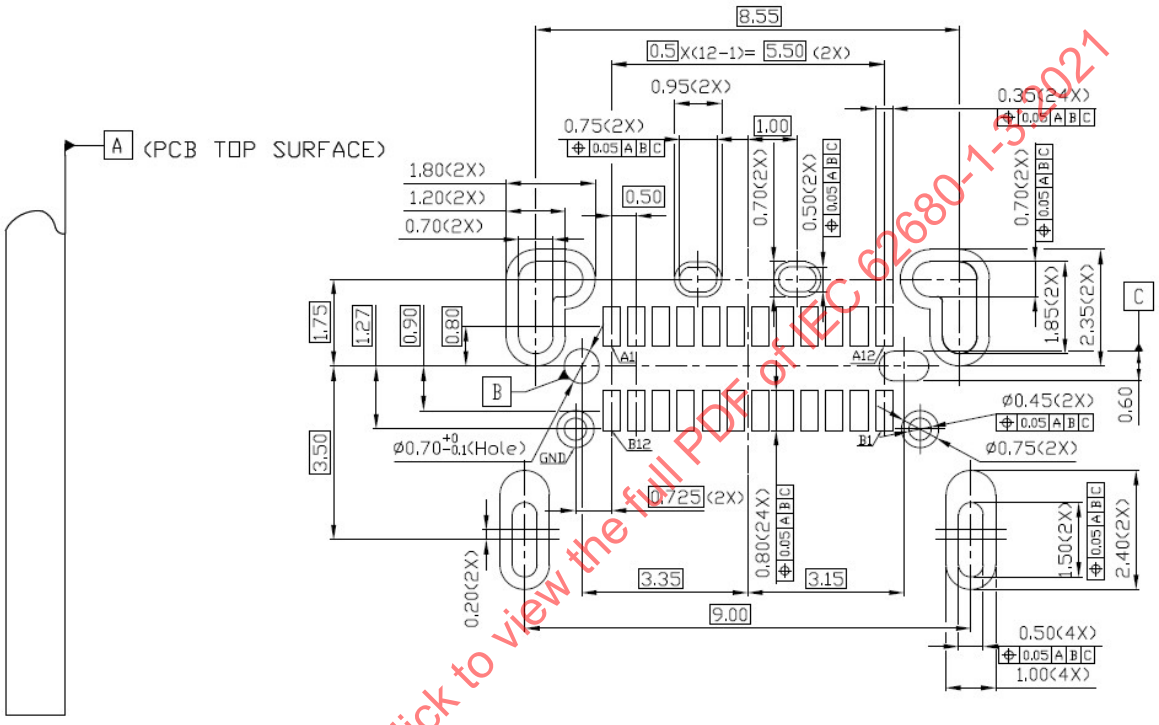


Anglais	Français
OPTIONAL HOLD DOWN STRAP	BRIDE DE MAINTIEN FACULTATIVE
DUAL ROW SMT TOP MOUNT CONNECTOR	CONNECTEUR POUR FIXATION EN DOUBLE ANNEAU

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

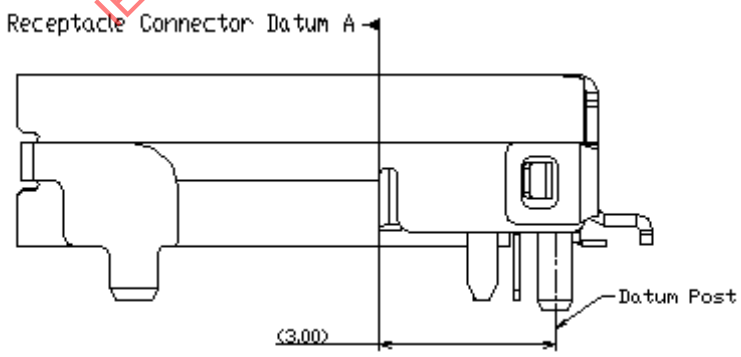
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

USB TYPE C PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE USB TYPE-C
REF. ENCLOSURE DESIGN	RÉF CONCEPTION DE L'ENVELOPPE
OVERMOLD FRONT FACE	FACE AVANT DU SURMOULAGE
RECEND	TERMINAISON DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE
REC. CONNECTOR DATUM –A-	CONNECTEUR FEMELLE RÉF A
DATUM POST	RÉF SUPPORT



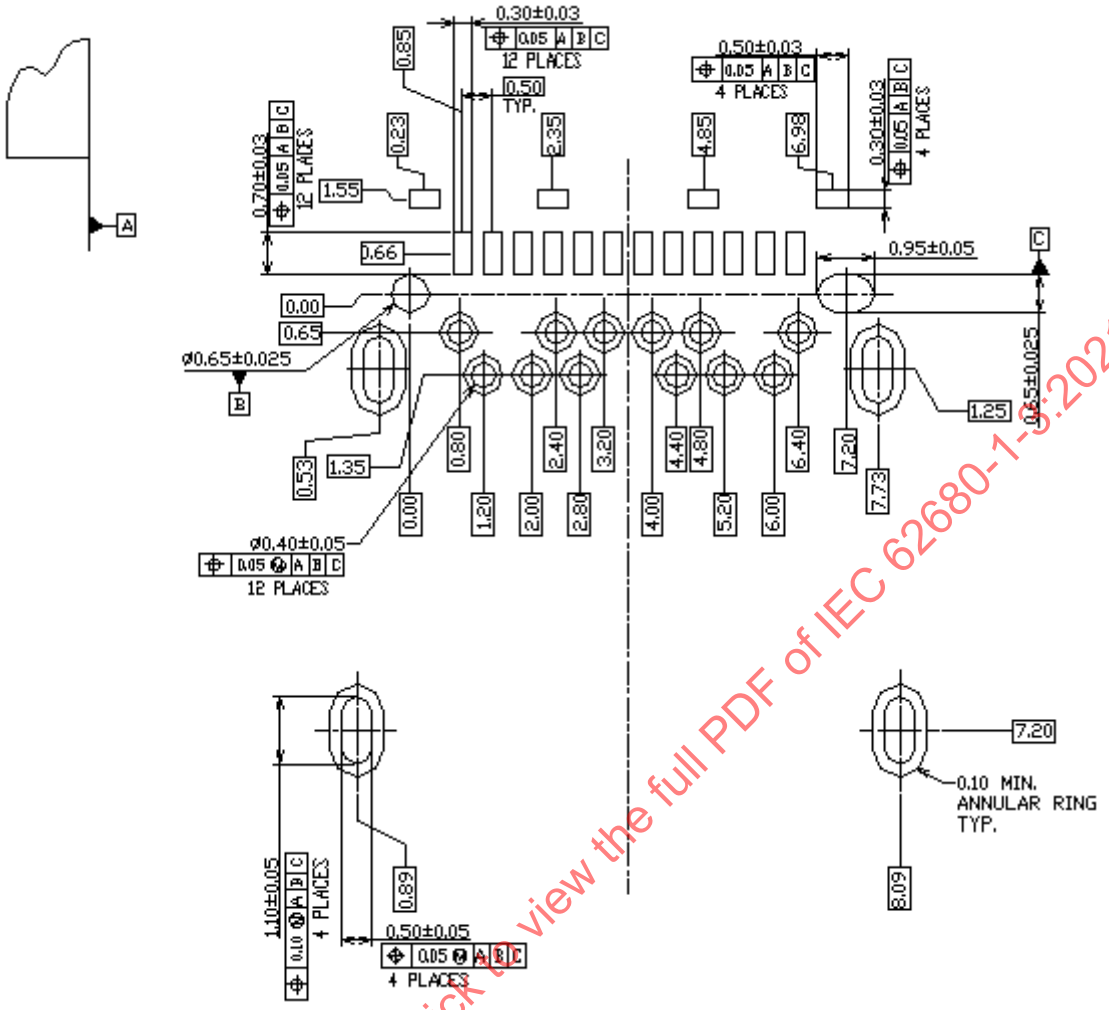
Anglais	Français
PCB TOP SURFACE	SURFACE PCB SUPÉRIEURE
HOLE	TROU

Figure 3-6 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C hybride monté à angle droit (informative)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

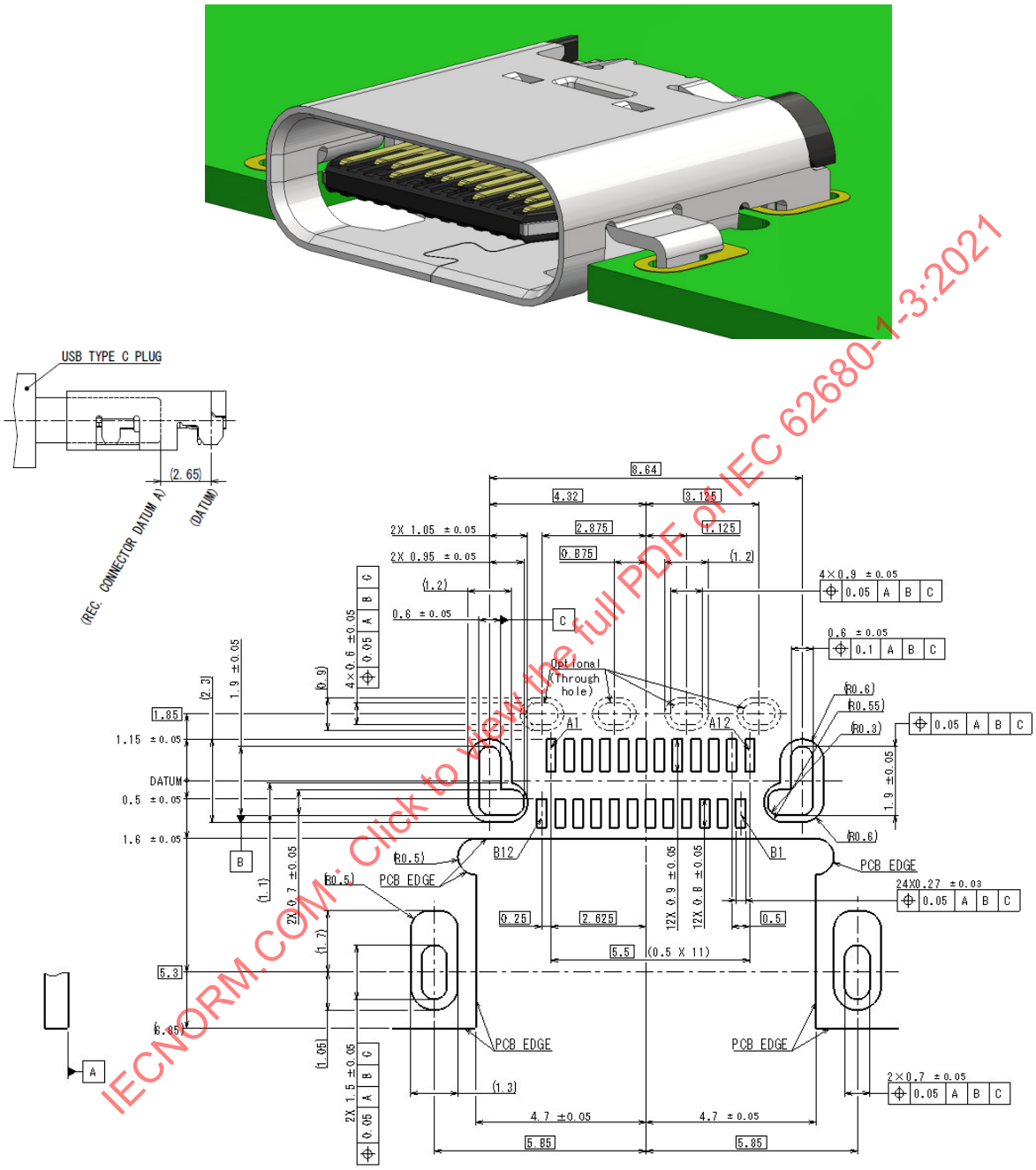


Anglais	Français
RECEPTACLE CONNECTOR DATUM A	CONNECTEUR FEMELLE RÉF A
DATUM POST	RÉF SUPPORT
PLACES	EMPLACEMENTS
0.10 MIN. ANNULAR RING TYP.	BAGUE ANNULAIRE TYPE 0,10 MIN

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-7 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C monté en surface, au centre et sur deux rangées (informative)

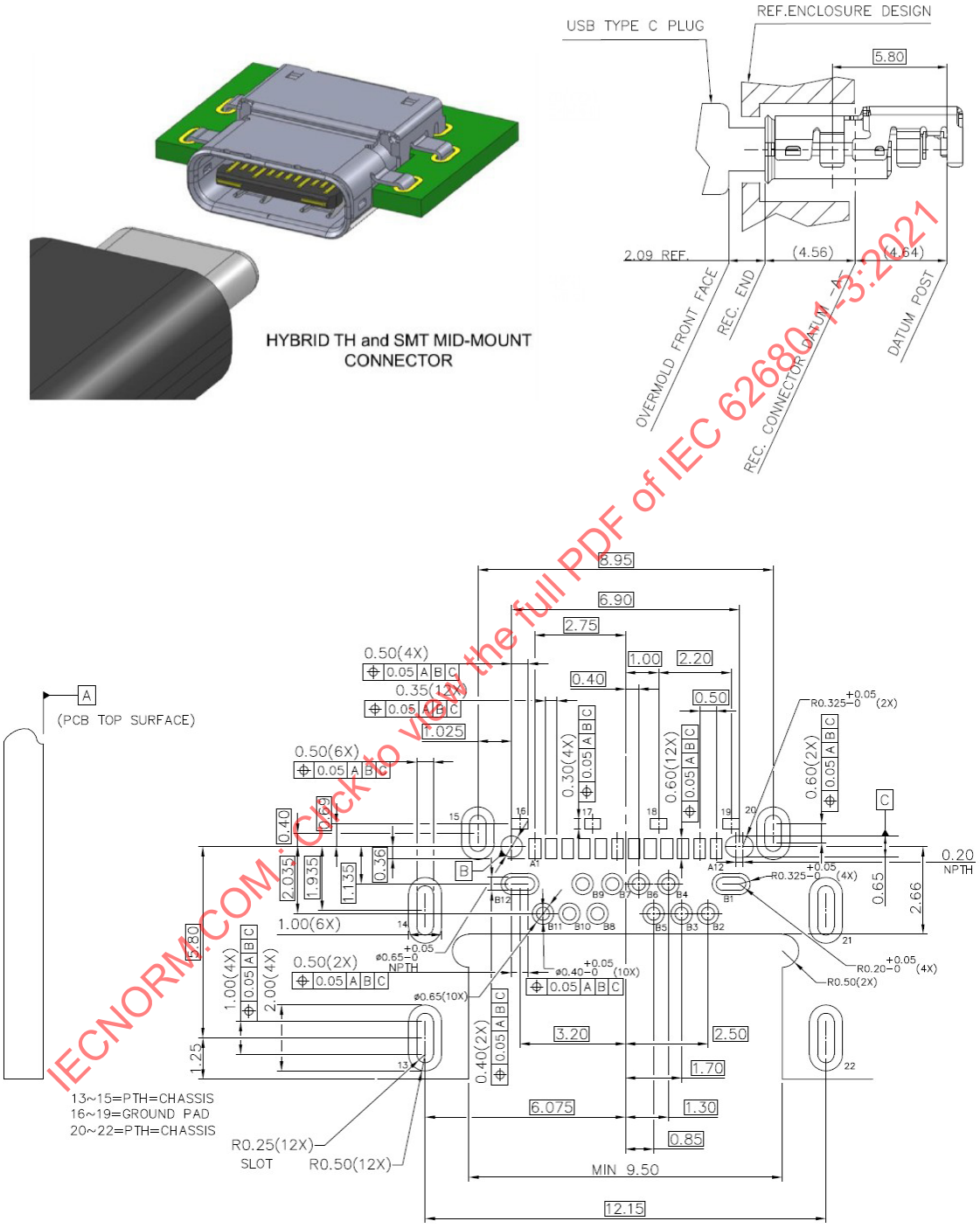


Anglais	Français
USB TYPE C PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE USB TYPE-C
REC. CONNECTOR DATUM A	CONNECTEUR FEMELLE RÉF A
DATUM	PLAN DE RÉFÉRENCE
OPTIONAL (THROUGH HOLE)	FACULTATIF (TROU MÉTALLISÉ)
PCB EDGE	ARÊTE PCB

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-8 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C hybride monté au centre (informative)



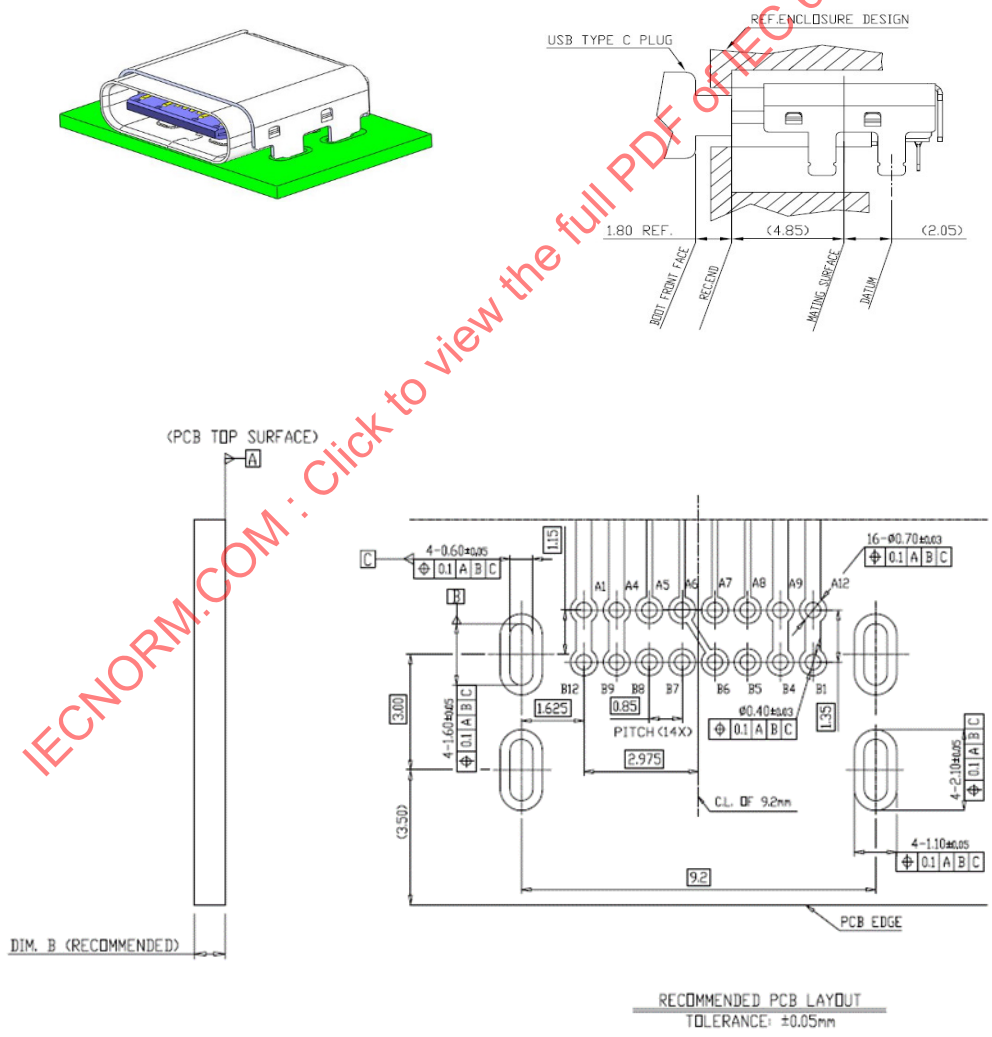
Anglais	Français
HYBRID TH and SMT MID-MOUNT CONNECTOR	CONNECTEUR TH HYBRIDE ET CONNECTEUR SMT POUR MONTAGE CENTRAL
USB TYPE C PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE USB TYPE-C
REF. ENCLOSURE DESIGN	RÉF CONCEPTION DE L'ENVELOPPE

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

OVERMOLD FRONT FACE	FACE AVANT DU SURMOULAGE
REC. END	TERMINAISON DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE
REC. CONNECTOR DATUM -A-	CONNECTEUR FEMELLE RÉF -A-
DATUM POST	RÉF SUPPORT
PCB TOP SURFACE	SURFACE PCB SUPÉRIEURE
PTH=CHASSIS	TROU MÉTALLISÉ = CHÂSSIS
GROUND PAD	PASTILLE MASSE
SLOT	LOGEMENT

Figure 3-9 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB 2.0 Type-C à insérer monté à angle droit (informative)



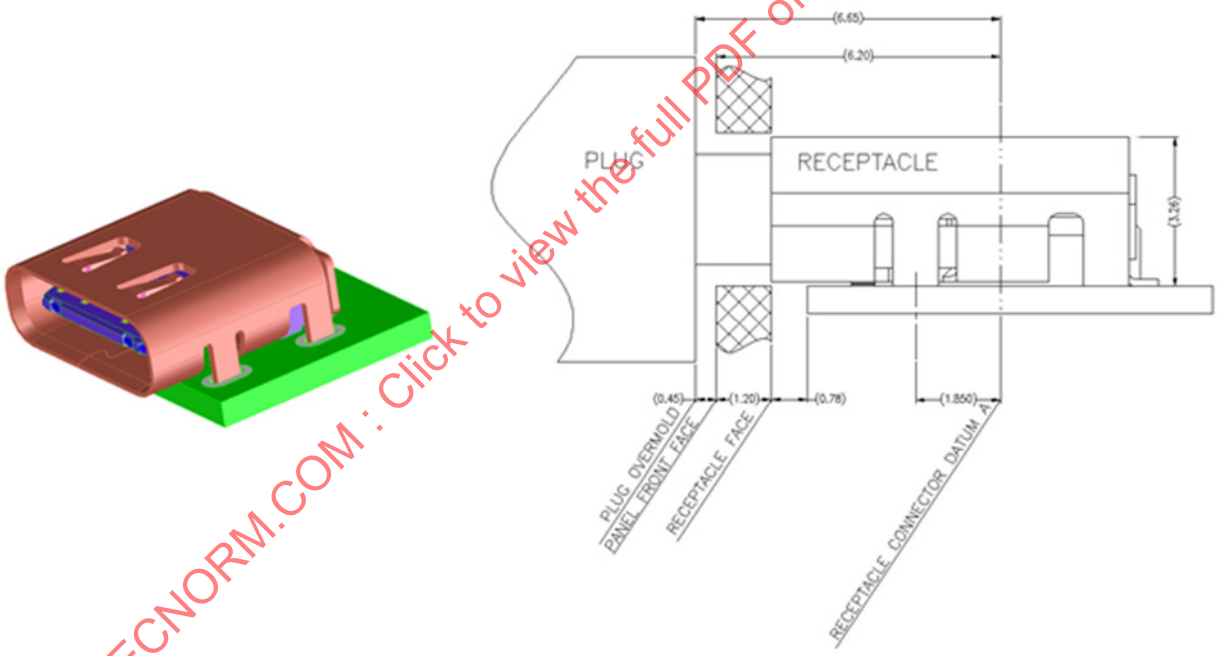
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Anglais	Français

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

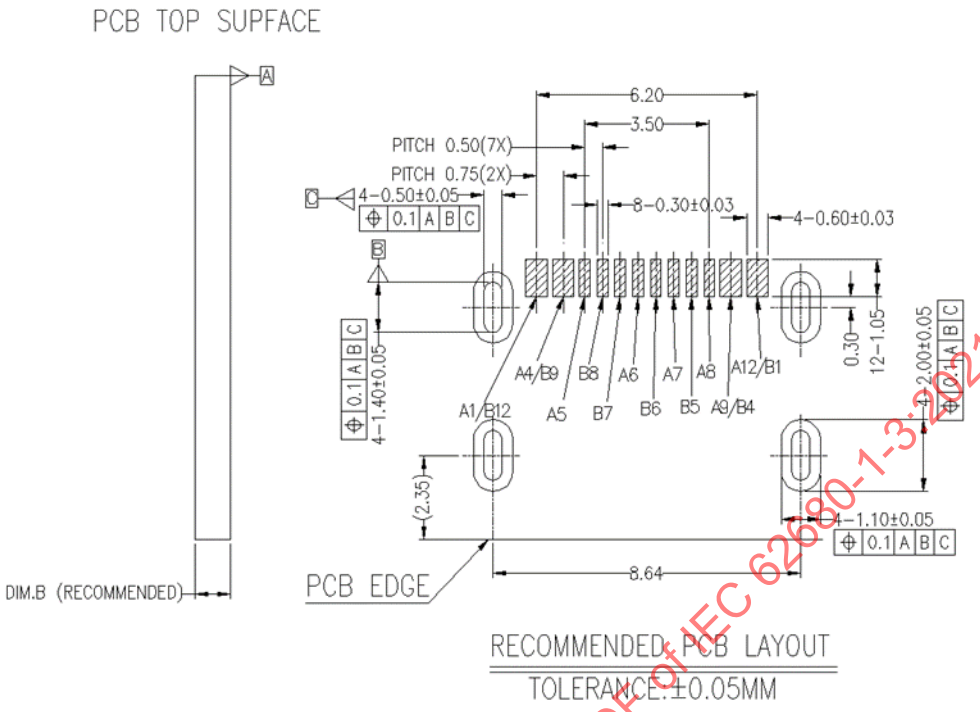
USB TYPE C PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE USB TYPE-C
REF ENCLOSURE DESIGN	RÉF CONCEPTION DE L'ENVELOPPE
BOOT FRONT FACE	FACE AVANT D'AMORÇAGE
REC. END	TERMINAISON DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE
MATING SURFACE	SURFACE DE COUPLAGE
DATUM	PLAN DE RÉFÉRENCE
PCB TOP SURFACE	SURFACE PCB SUPÉRIEURE
DIM. B (RECOMMENDED)	DIM. B (RECOMMANDÉE)
RECOMMENDED PCB LAYOUT	MONTAGE PCB RECOMMANDÉ
TOLERANCE	TOLÉRANCE

Figure 3-10 — Empreinte de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB 2.0 Type-C monté à angle droit sur une rangée (informative)



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.



Anglais	Français
PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE
RECEPTACLE	CONNECTEUR FEMELLE
PLUG OVERMOLD	SURMOULAGE DU CONNECTEUR MÂLE
PANEL FRONT FACE	FACE AVANT DU PANNEAU
RECEPTACLE FACE	FACE DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE
RECEPTACLE CONNECTOR DATUM -A-	CONNECTEUR FEMELLE RÉF -A-
PCB TOP SURFACE	SURFACE PCB SUPÉRIEURE
PITCH	PAS
DIM.B (RECOMMENDED)	DIM. B (RECOMMANDÉE)
PCB EDGE	ARÊTE PCB
RECOMMENDED PCB LAYOUT	MONTAGE PCB RECOMMANDÉ
TOLERANCE	TOLÉRANCE

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

La présente spécification exige que tous les contacts soient présents dans l'interface de couplage du connecteur femelle USB Type-C Complet et que tous les contacts, à l'exception des signaux *USB 3.2* ou *USB4* (à savoir A2, A3, A10, A11, B2, B3, B10 et B11), soient présents dans l'interface de couplage du connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Type-C; elle permet toutefois au connecteur mâle d'inclure uniquement les contacts exigés pour la fonctionnalité *USB PD* et *USB 2.0* des applications qui ne prennent en charge que l'*USB 2.0*. Le connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C est représenté à la Figure 3-11. Les simplifications de conception suivantes ne peuvent être appliquées que si l'*USB 2.0* est prise en charge:

- Seuls les contacts nécessaires à la prise en charge de l'*USB PD* et de l'*USB 2.0* sont exigés pour le connecteur mâle. Tous les autres emplacements de broche peuvent être vidés. Voir Tableau 3-5. Tous les contacts doivent être présents dans l'interface de couplage du connecteur femelle USB Type-C.

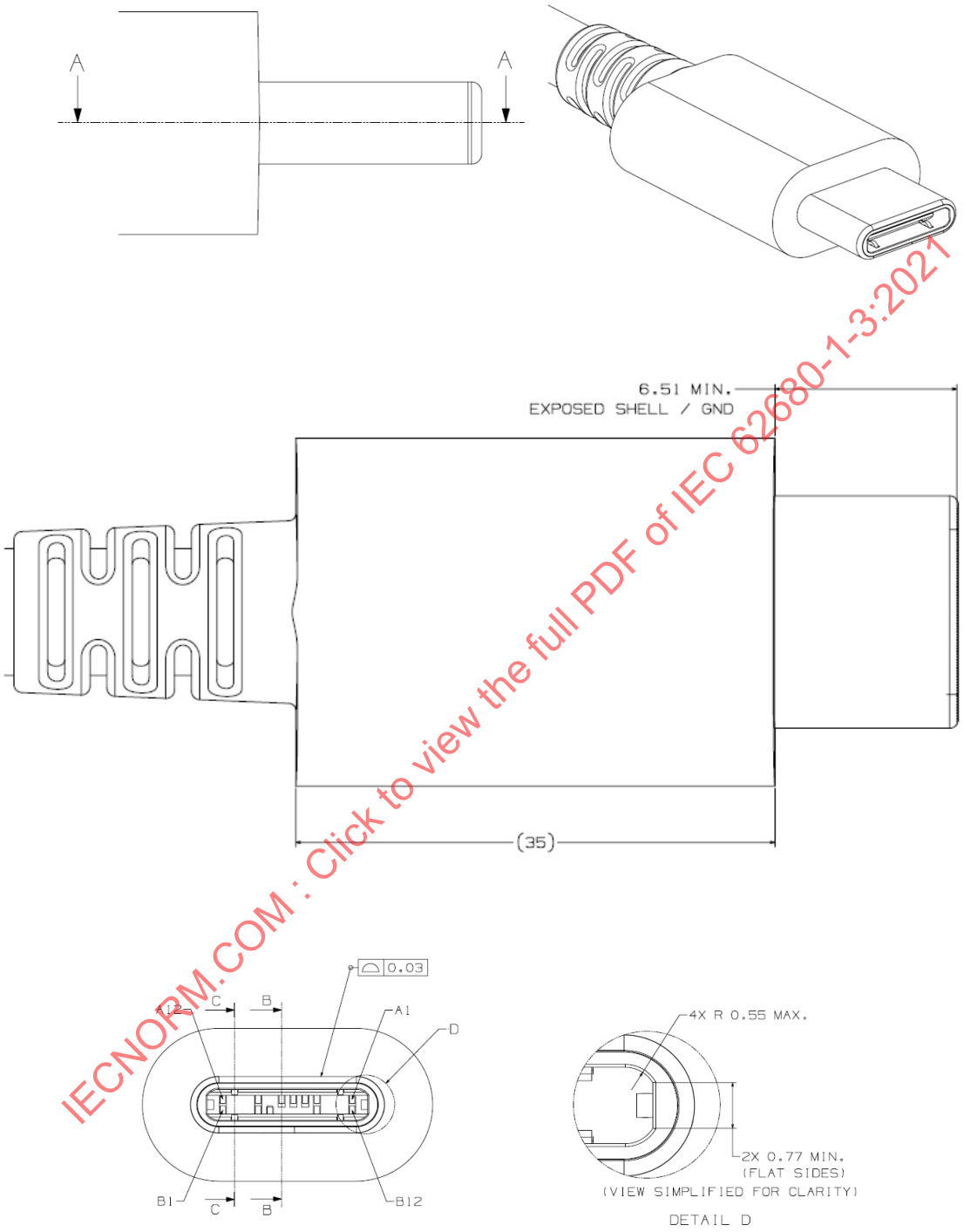
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- Contrairement au connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet, les ressorts CEM internes peuvent être formés à partir de la même bande que les contacts de signal, d'alimentation et de terre. Les ressorts CEM internes sont en contact avec la surface interne de l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle et sont couplés avec les plaques CEM du connecteur femelle lorsque le connecteur mâle est inséré dans le connecteur femelle. Sinon, le connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C peut utiliser la même configuration de ressort CEM que celle définie pour le connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet. Les quatre emplacements du ressort CEM pour le connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C sont définis à la Figure 3-11. La configuration alternative qui utilise les six emplacements de ressort est définie à la Figure 3-1. Pour plus de précisions, se référer aussi aux schémas de référence en 3.2.2.3.
- Une carte d'accès peut ne pas être nécessaire à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle si les fils sont directement branchés aux broches de contact.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-11 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C

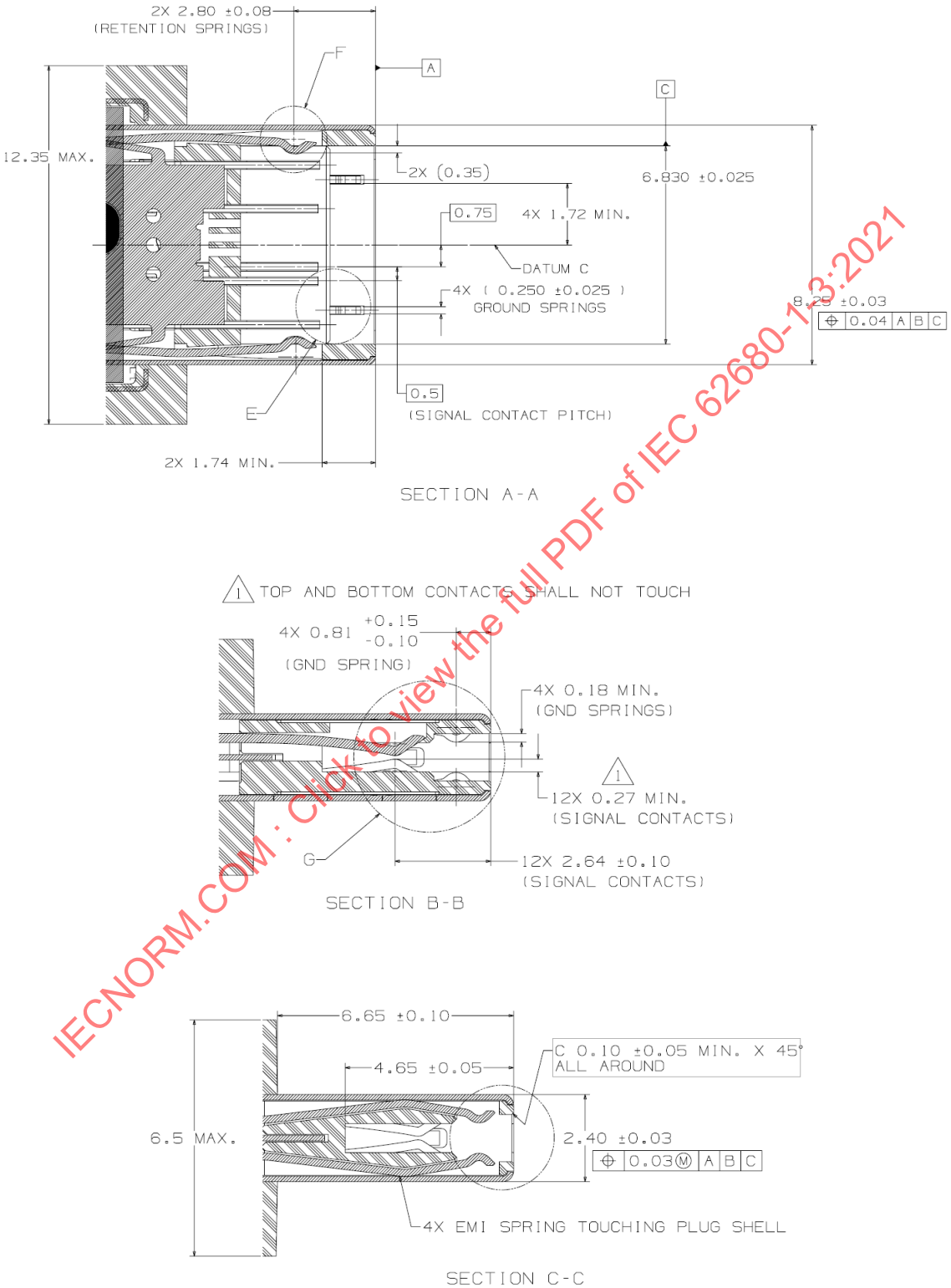


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Anglais	Français
EXPOSED SHELL / GND	ENVELOPPE/GND EXPOSÉES
FLAT SIDES	CÔTÉS PLATS
VIEW SIMPLIFIED FOR CLARITY	VUE SIMPLIFIÉE POUR UNE MEILLEURE LISIBILITÉ
DETAIL D	ÉLÉMENT D

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-11 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C (suite)



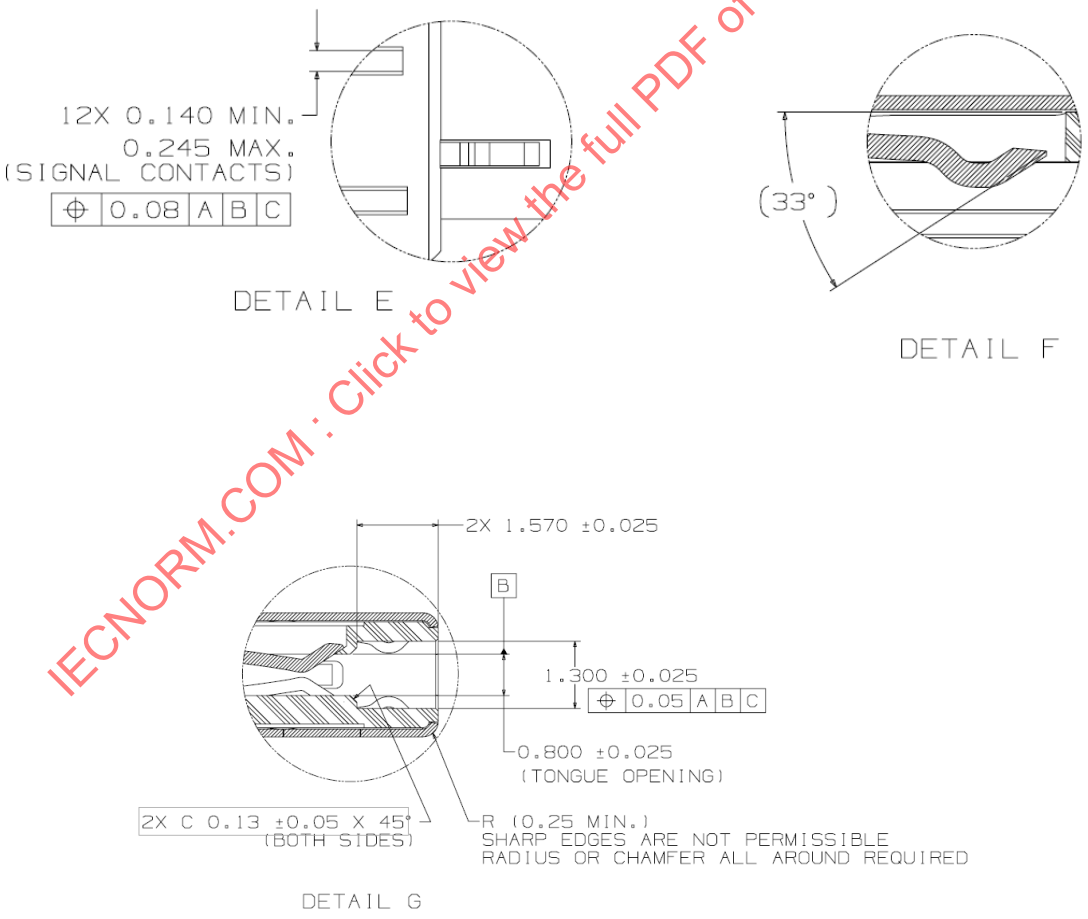
Anglais	Français
RETENTION SPRINGS	RESSORTS DE MAINTIEN
GROUND SPRINGS	RESSORTS GND

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

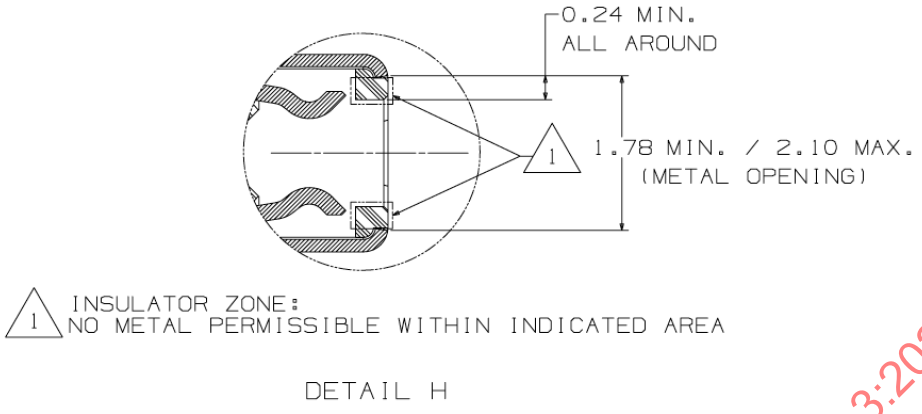
SIGNAL CONTACT PITCH	PAS DU CONTACT DE SIGNAL
SECTION A-A	COUPE A-A
TOP AND BOTTOM CONTACTS SHALL NOT TOUCHE	LES CONTACTS SUPÉRIEURS ET INFÈRIEURS NE DOIVENT PAS SE TOUCHER
GND SPRING	RESSORT GND
GND SPRINGS	RESSORTS GND
SIGNAL CONTACTS	CONTACTS DE SIGNAL
SECTION B-B	COUPE B-B
EMI SPRING TOUCHING PLUG SHELL	RESSORT EMI EN CONTACT AVEC L'ENVELOPPE DU CONNECTEUR MÂLE
ALL AROUND	TOUT AUTOUR
SECTION C-C	COUPE C-C

Figure 3-11 — Dimensions d'interface d'un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C (suite)



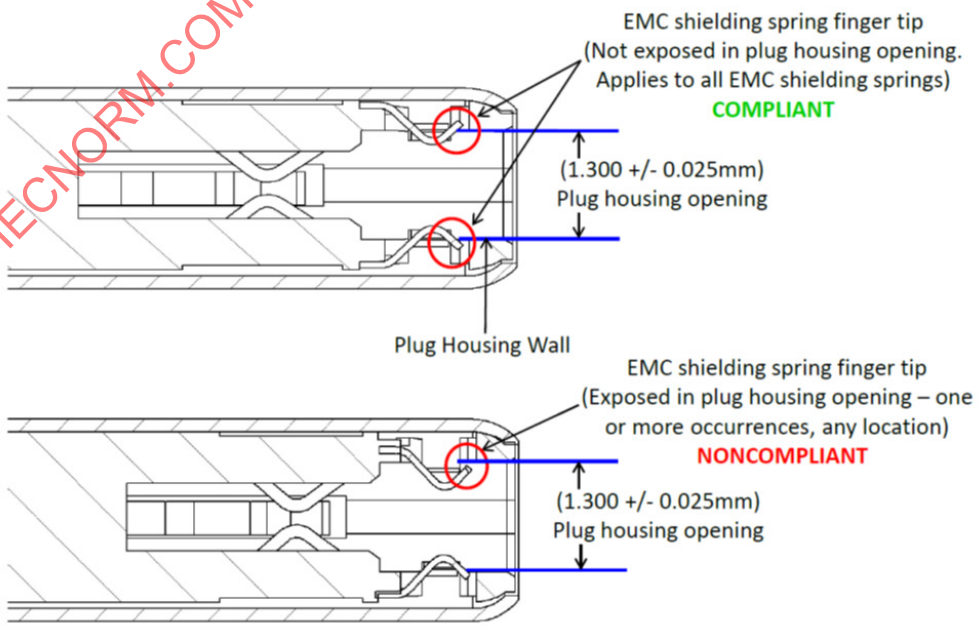
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.



Anglais	Français
SIGNAL CONTACTS	CONTACTS DE SIGNAL
DETAIL	ÉLÉMENT
TONGUE OPENING	OUVERTURE DE LA LANGUETTE
BOTH SIDES	DES DEUX CÔTÉS
DETAIL G	ÉLÉMENT G
SHARP EDGE ARE NOT PERMISSIBLE	ARÊTES TRANCHANTES NON ADMISES
RADIUS OR CHAMFER ALL AROUND REQUIRED	FRAISAGE OU CHANFREIN EXIGÉ TOUT AUTOUR
ALL AROUND	TOUT AUTOUR
METAL OPENING	OUVERTURE MÉTALLIQUE
INSULATOR ZONE	ZONE D'ISOLATION
NO METAL PERMISSIBLE WITHIN INDICATED AREA	AUCUN MÉTAL ADMIS DANS LA ZONE INDIQUÉE

Figure 3-12 — Exigences concernant la pointe du ressort d'écrantage CEM d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Anglais	Français
EMC shielding spring finger tip (not exposed in plug housing opening. Applies to all EMC shielding springs)	Pointe du ressort d'écrantage CEM (non exposée par l'ouverture du boîtier du connecteur mâle - s'applique à tous les ressorts d'écrantage CEM)
COMPLIANT	CONFORME
Plug housing opening	Ouverture du boîtier du connecteur mâle
Plug Housing Wall	Paroi du boîtier du connecteur mâle
EMC shielding spring finger tip (Exposed in plug housing opening – one or more occurrences, any location)	Pointe du ressort d'écrantage CEM (exposée par l'ouverture du boîtier du connecteur mâle - une ou plusieurs occurrences, n'importe quel emplacement)
NON COMPLIANT	NON CONFORME

3.2.2 Schémas de référence

Le présent paragraphe fournit des schémas de référence pour certaines caractéristiques essentielles du connecteur USB Type-C. Les schémas de référence sont fournis à des fins d'exemple de conception admise. Elles ne sont pas normatives.

3.2.2.1 Plaque médiane du connecteur femelle (informative)

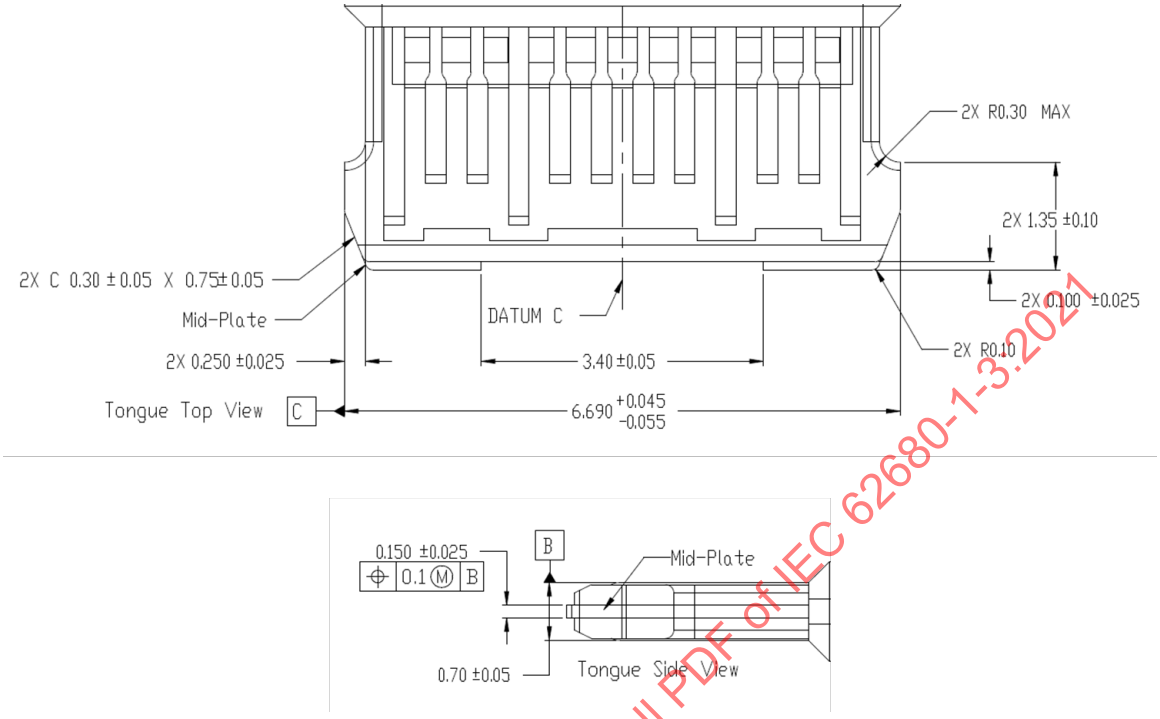
Les signaux situés entre la partie supérieure et la partie inférieure de la languette du connecteur femelle sont isolés par une plaque médiane à l'intérieur de la languette. La Figure 3-13 représente un schéma de référence de la plaque médiane. Il est important de prêter attention aux caractéristiques suivantes de la plaque médiane:

- il convient de contrôler avec précision la distance entre les contacts de signal et la plaque médiane, car la variation de cette distance peut avoir un impact significatif sur l'impédance du connecteur;
- dans ce schéma, la plaque médiane dépasse légèrement de la surface avant de la languette. Cela permet de protéger la surface avant de la languette contre tout dommage provoqué par une mauvaise insertion de petits objets dans le connecteur femelle;
- la plaque médiane doit être reliée directement à la terre du PCB en au moins deux points de mise à la terre;
- les côtés de la plaque médiane sont couplés avec le verrou latéral du connecteur mâle, ce qui permet de réduire les perturbations électromagnétiques par un raccordement à la terre. Des finitions de surface adéquates sont nécessaires sur les surfaces où se trouvent le verrou latéral et les connexions de la plaque médiane.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-13 — Schéma de référence de la plaque médiane du connecteur femelle



Anglais	Français
Mid-Plate	Plaque médiane
Tongue Top View	Vue supérieure de la languette
DATUM C	PLAN DE RÉFÉRENCE C
Tongue Side View	Vue latérale de la languette

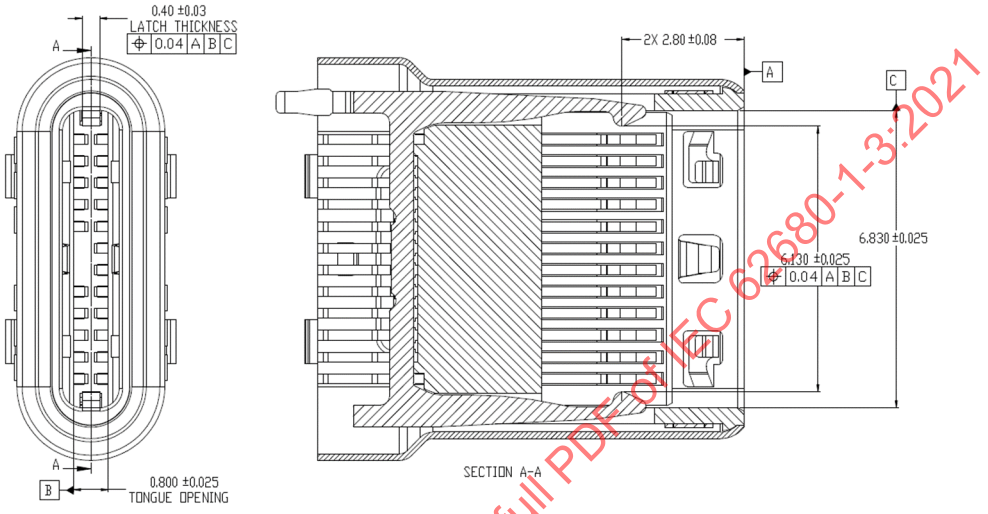
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.2.2.2 Verrou latéral (informatif)

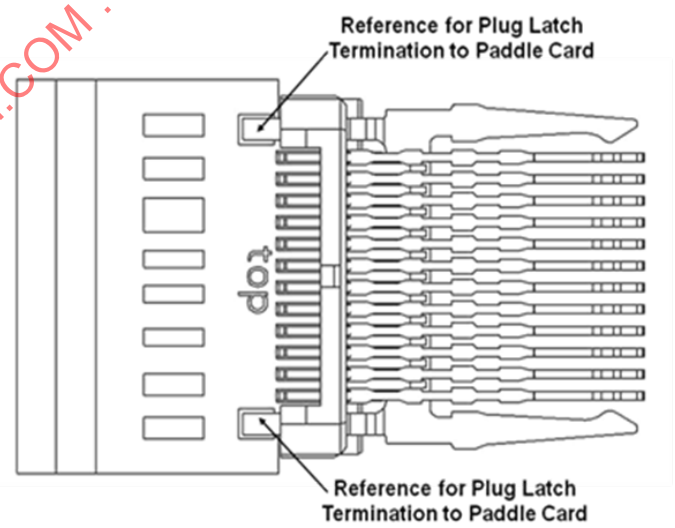
Les verrous latéraux (verrous de maintien) se situent à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle. La Figure 3-14 représente un schéma de référence d'un verrou latéral. Il convient que le verrou latéral du connecteur mâle soit en contact avec la plaque médiane du connecteur femelle, afin de fournir un chemin de retour à la terre supplémentaire.

Figure 3-14 — Schéma de référence du verrou latéral



Anglais	Français
LATCH THICKNESS	ÉPAISSEUR DU VERROU
TONGUE OPENING	OUVERTURE DE LA LANGUETTE
SECTION A-A	COUPE A-A

Figure 3-15 — Représentation du verrou soudé à la terre de la carte d'accès



Anglais	Français
Reference for Plug Latch Termination to Paddle Card	Référence pour la terminaison du verrou de connecteur vers la carte d'accès

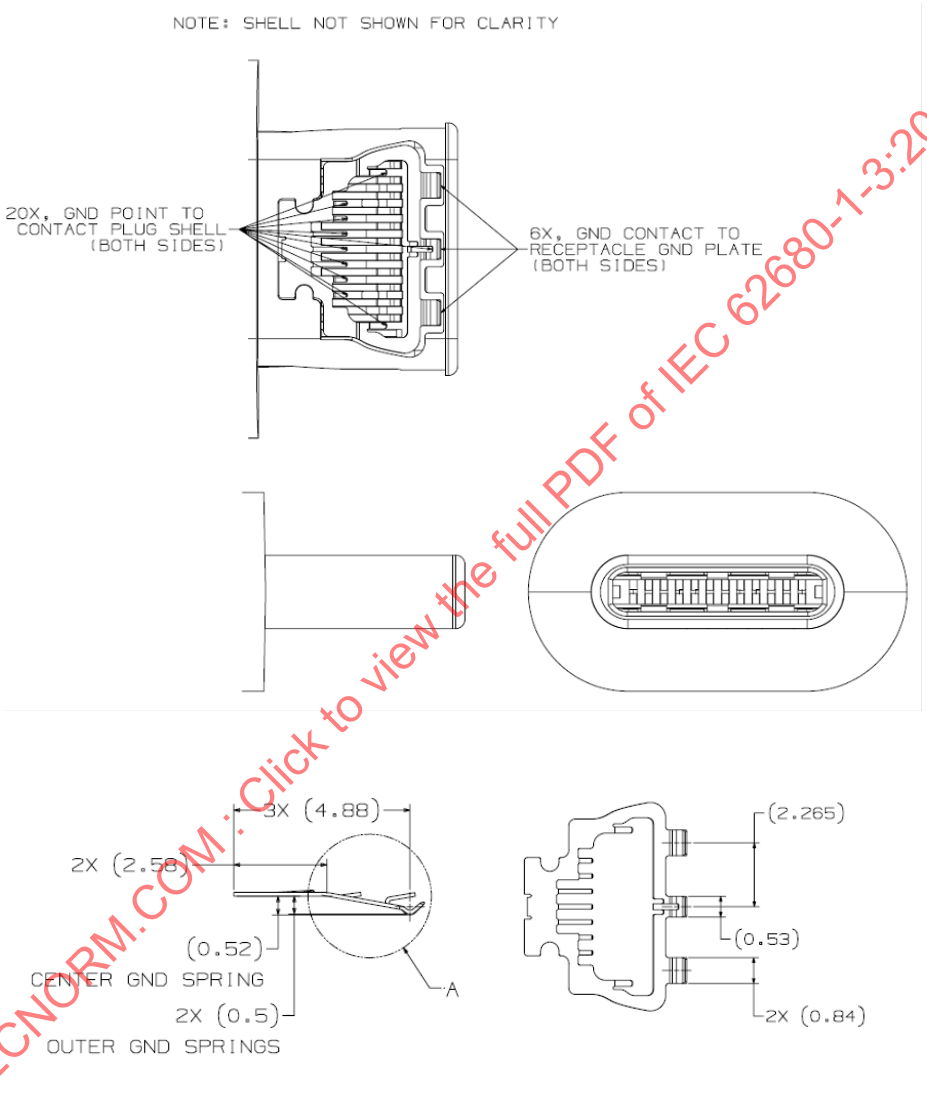
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.2.2.3 Ressorts et plaques CEM internes (informatifs)

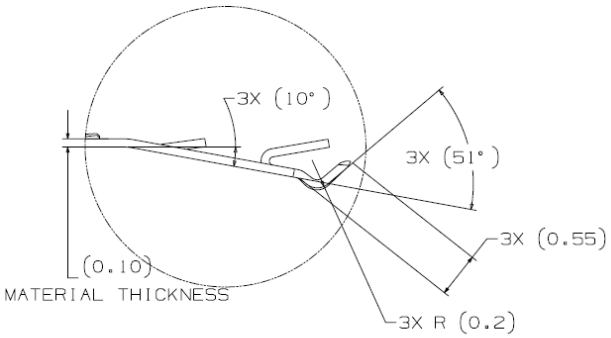
La Figure 3-16 est un schéma de référence du ressort CEM interne, situé à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet. La Figure 3-17 est un schéma de référence du ressort CEM interne situé à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C.

Figure 3-16 — Schéma de référence du ressort CEM interne d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet

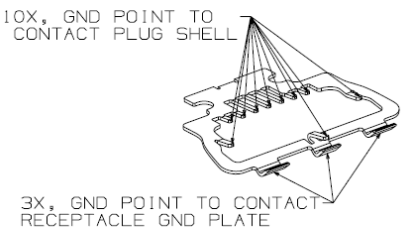


IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.



DETAIL A

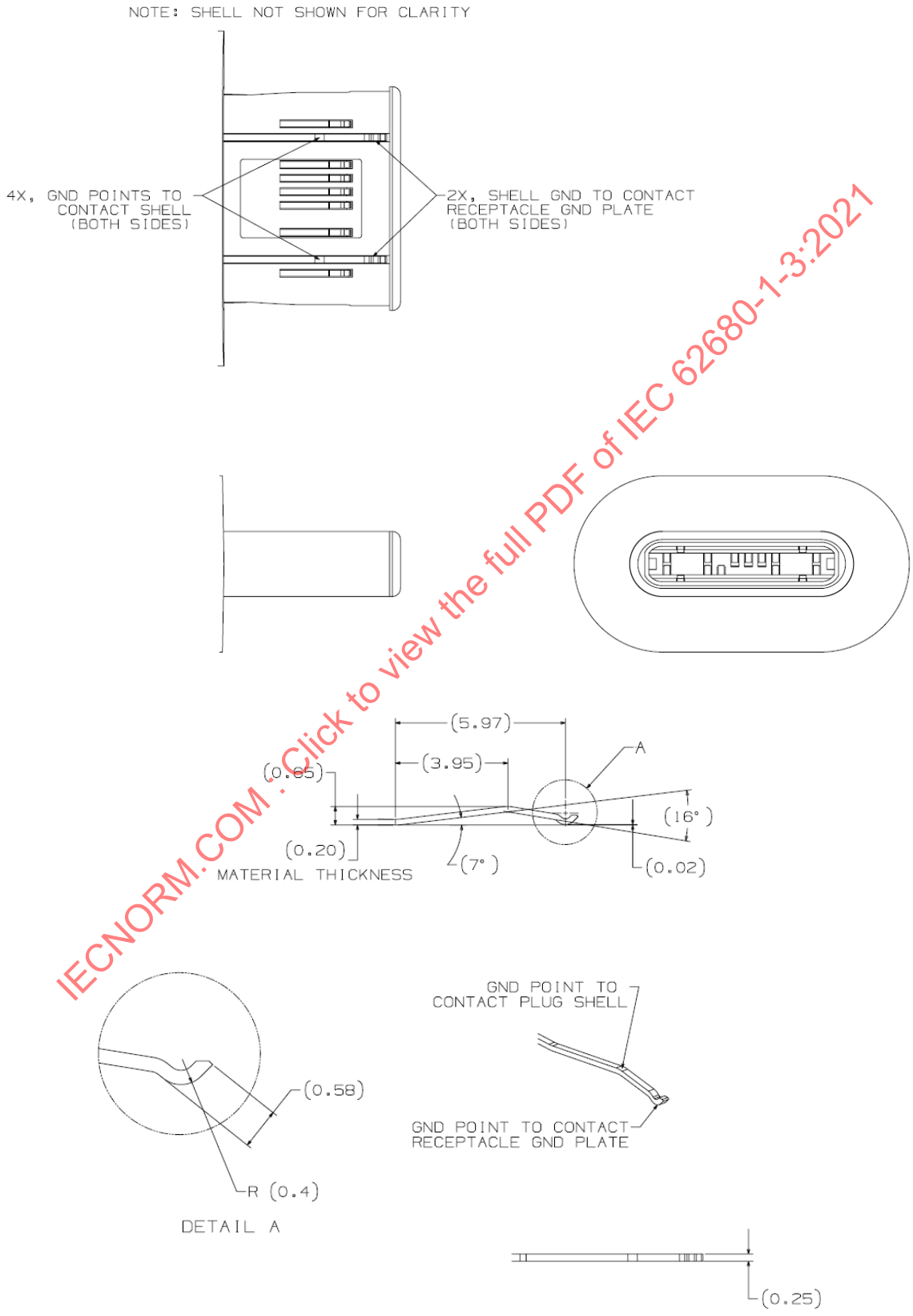


Anglais	Français
NOTE: SHELL NO SHOWN FOR CLARITY	NOTE: ENVELOPPE NON REPRÉSENTÉE POUR UNE MEILLEURE LISIBILITÉ
20X, GND POINT TO CONTACT PLUG SHELL (BOTH SIDES)	20X, CONTACT GND VERS CONTACT DE L'ENVELOPPE DU CONNECTEUR MÂLE (DES DEUX CÔTÉS)
6X, GND CONTACT TO RECEPTACLE GND PLATE (BOTH SIDES)	6X, CONTACT GND VERS PLAN DE MASSE DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE (DES DEUX CÔTÉS)
CENTER GND SPRINGS	RESSORTS GND CENTRAUX
OUTER GND SPRINGS	RESSORTS GND EXTÉRIEURS
MATERIAL THICKNESS	ÉPAISSEUR DU MATÉRIAU
DETAIL A	ÉLÉMENT A
10X, GND POINT TO CONTACT PLUG SHELL	10X, CONTACT GND VERS CONTACT DE L'ENVELOPPE DU CONNECTEUR MÂLE
3X, GND POINT TO CONTACT RECEPTACLE GND PLATE	3X, CONTACT GND VERS CONTACT DU PLAN DE MASSE DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-17 — Schéma de référence du ressort CEM interne d'un connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

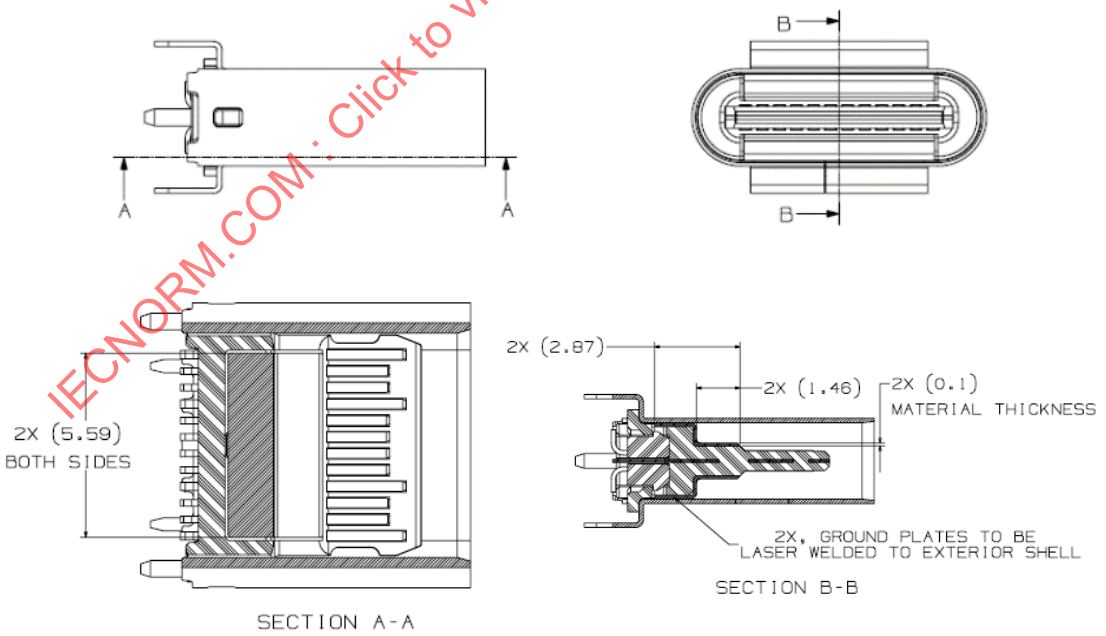
Anglais	Français
NOTE: SHELL NO SHOWN FOR CLARITY	NOTE: ENVELOPPE NON REPRÉSENTÉE POUR UNE MEILLEURE LISIBILITÉ
4X, GND POINT TO CONTACT SHELL (BOTH SIDES)	4X, CONTACT GND VERS CONTACT DE L'ENVELOPPE (DES DEUX CÔTÉS)
2X, SHELL GND TO CONTACT RECEPTACLE GND PLATE (BOTH SIDES)	2X, GND DE L'ENVELOPPE VERS CONTACT DU PLAN DE MASSE DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE (DES DEUX CÔTÉS)
MATERIAL THICKNESS	ÉPAISSEUR DU MATÉRIAU
GND POINT TO CONTACT PLUG SHELL	CONTACT GND VERS CONTACT DE L'ENVELOPPE DU CONNECTEUR MÂLE
GND POINT TO CONTACT RECEPTACLE GND PLATE	CONTACT GND VERS CONTACT DU PLAN DE MASSE DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE
DETAIL A	ÉLÉMENT A

Il est essentiel que le ressort CEM interne soit en contact avec l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle au plus près possible de l'interface de couplage du ressort CEM, afin de réduire le plus possible la longueur du chemin de retour.

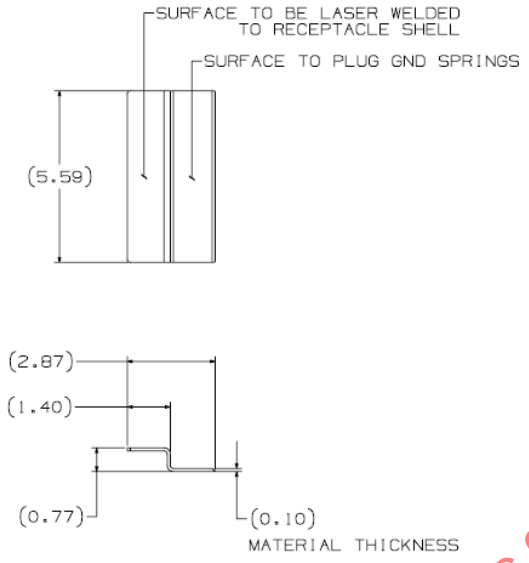
La plaque CEM interne (à savoir le plan de masse) représentée à la Figure 3-18 se trouve à l'intérieur du connecteur femelle. Elle est couplée avec le ressort CEM dans le connecteur mâle. Pour assurer un retour à la terre efficace, il convient que les plaques CEM disposent de plusieurs connexions à l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Figure 3-18 — Schéma de référence d'une plaque CEM interne



Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.



Anglais	Français
BOTH SIDES	DES DEUX CÔTÉS
SECTION A-A	COUPE A-A
MATERIAL THICKNESS	ÉPAISSEUR DU MATÉRIAU
2X, GROUND PLATES TO BE LASER WELDED TO EXTERIOR SHELL	2X, PLANS DE MASSE À SOUDER PAR LASER À L'ENVELOPPE EXTERNE
SECTION B-B	COUPE B-B
SURFACE TO BE LASER WELDED TO RECEPTACLE SHELL	SURFACE À SOUDER PAR LASER À L'ENVELOPPE DU CONNECTEUR FEMELLE
SURFACE TO PLUG GND SPRINGS	RESSORTS GND ENTRE LA SURFACE ET LE CONNECTEUR MÂLE

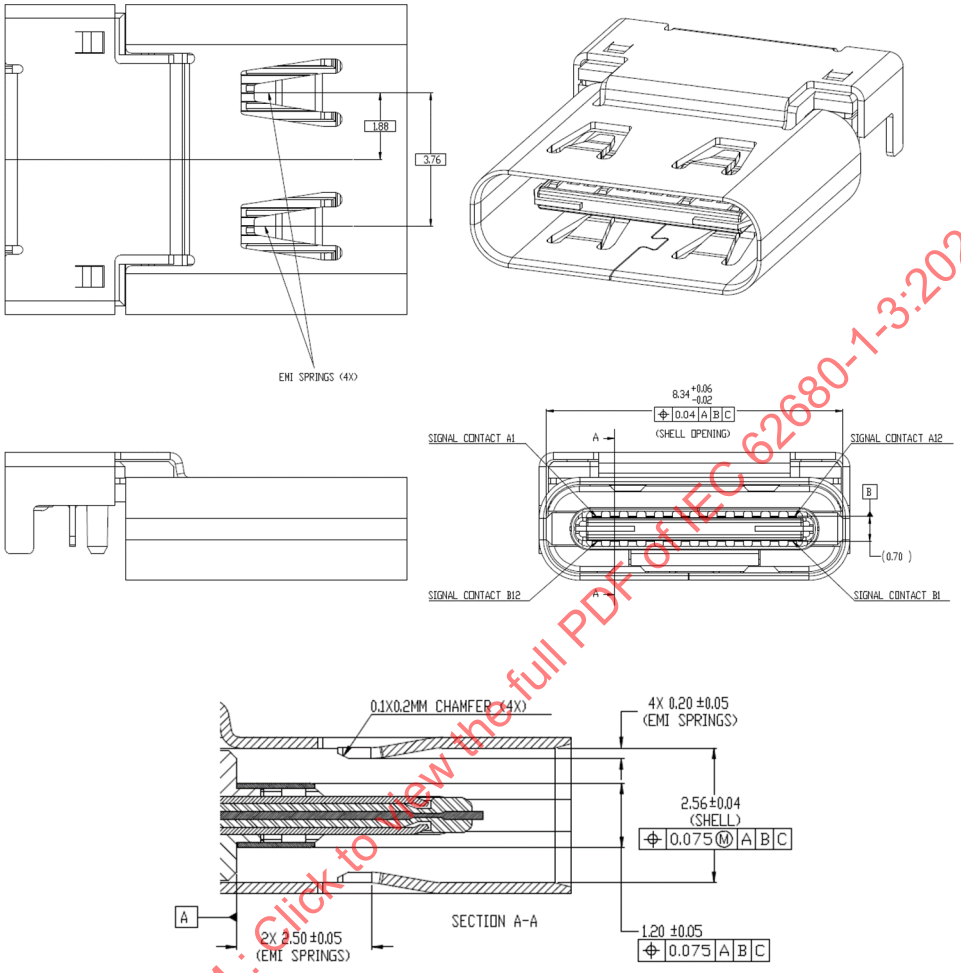
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.2.2.4 Ressorts CEM externes facultatifs d'un connecteur femelle (informatifs)

Certaines applications peuvent utiliser des connecteurs femelles équipés de ressorts CEM qui sont en contact avec la partie externe de l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle. La Figure 3-19 représente un schéma de référence d'un connecteur femelle équipé de ressorts CEM externes. Les zones de contact du ressort CEM à l'état complètement couplé sont normatives et définies au 3.2.1.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-19 — Schéma de référence d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C équipé de ressorts CEM externes



Anglais	Français
EMI SPRINGS X40)	RESSORTS EMI
SIGNAL CONTACT A1	CONTACT DE SIGNAL A1
SIGNAL CONTACT B12	CONTACT DE SIGNAL B12
SIGNAL CONTACT B1	CONTACT DE SIGNAL B1
SIGNAL CONTACT A12	CONTACT DE SIGNAL A12
SHELL OPENING	OUVERTURE DE L'ENVELOPPE
CHAMFER (X4)	CHANFREIN (X4)
SECTION A-A	COUPE A-A
(SHELL)	(ENVELOPPE)

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

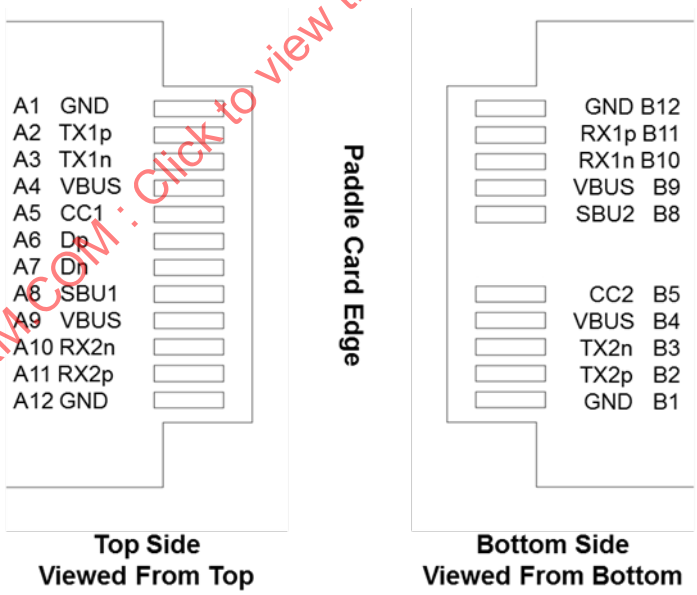
3.2.2.5 Carte d'accès d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet (informative)

L'utilisation d'une carte d'accès est prévue dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet. La Figure 3-20 représente l'affectation des broches de la carte d'accès et l'emplacement de connexion du ressort de contact d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet. Les lignes directrices suivantes s'appliquent à la conception de la carte d'accès:

- il convient que la carte d'accès utilise un matériau de substrat hautes performances. Il convient d'appliquer une tolérance inférieure ou égale à ± 10 % sur l'épaisseur recommandée de la carte d'accès;
- il convient que les traces USB SuperSpeed soient aussi courtes que possible et possèdent une impédance caractéristique différentielle nominale de 85 Ω;
- il convient que le raccordement filaire possède deux paires différentielles à grande vitesse d'un côté et deux autres paires différentielles à grande vitesse de l'autre côté, aussi éloignées que possible l'une de l'autre, dans les limites admises en pratique;
- il est recommandé de choisir un guide d'ondes coplanaire (CPWG) mis à la terre en tant que méthode de ligne de transmission;
- il convient de réduire le plus possible l'emploi de liaisons;
- il convient de connecter en bus les broches VBUS ensemble sur la carte d'accès;
- il convient de connecter en bus les broches GND ensemble sur la carte d'accès.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Figure 3-20 — Conception de référence de la carte d'accès d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet



Anglais	Français
Paddle Card Edge	Arête de la carte d'accès
Top Side Viewed From Top	Vue latérale de dessus
Bottom Side Viewed From Bottom	Vue latérale de dessous

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.2.3 Affectation des broches et descriptions

L'utilisation et l'affectation des 24 broches de l'interface du connecteur femelle USB Type-C sont définies dans le Tableau 3-4.

Tableau 3-4 — Affectation des broches de l'interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C

Broche	Nom du signal	Description	Séquence de couplage	Broche	Nom du signal	Description	Séquence de couplage
A1	GND	Retour à la terre	En premier	B12	GND	Retour à la terre	En premier
A2	TXp1	Moitié positive de la première paire différentielle TX	En second	B11	RXp1	Moitié positive de la première paire différentielle RX	En second
A3	TXn1	Moitié négative de la première paire différentielle TX	En second	B10	RXn1	Moitié négative de la première paire différentielle RX	En second
A4	VBUS	Alimentation de bus	En premier	B9	VBUS	Alimentation de bus	En premier
A5	CC1	Canal de configuration	En second	B8	SBU2	Utilisation en bande latérale (SBU)	En second
A6	Dp1	Moitié positive de la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* – Position 1	En second	B7	Dn2	Moitié négative de la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* – Position 2	En second
A7	Dn1	Moitié négative de la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* – Position 1	En second	B6	Dp2	Moitié positive de la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* – Position 2	En second
A8	SBU1	Utilisation en bande latérale (SBU)	En second	B5	CC2	Canal de configuration	En second
A9	VBUS	Alimentation de bus	En premier	B4	VBUS	Alimentation de bus	En premier
A10	RXn2	Moitié négative de la seconde paire différentielle RX	En second	B3	TXn2	Moitié négative de la seconde paire différentielle TX	En second
A11	RXp2	Moitié positive de la seconde paire différentielle RX	En second	B2	TXp2	Moitié positive de la seconde paire différentielle TX	En second
A12	GND	Retour à la terre	En premier	B1	GND	Retour à la terre	En premier

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Broche	Nom du signal	Description	Séquence de couplage	Broche	Nom du signal	Description	Séquence de couplage

Notes:

1. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. La face latérale du connecteur femelle doit prendre en charge la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* présente sur Dp1/Dn1 ou Dp2/Dn2. L'orientation du connecteur mâle détermine la paire active. Dans une mise en œuvre, Dp1 et Dp2 peuvent être court-circuités sur l'hôte/le dispositif aussi près du connecteur femelle que possible, afin de réduire autant que possible la longueur de broche; Dn1 et Dn2 peuvent également être court-circuités. Il convient que la longueur maximale de raccourcissement de la trace ne dépasse pas 3,5 mm.
2. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle USB Type-C et au niveau du connecteur femelle USB Type-C, lorsque ce dernier est à l'état monté (par exemple, toutes les broches VBUS connectées en bus ensemble sur le PCB).
3. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle USB Type-C et au niveau du connecteur femelle USB Type-C, lorsque ce dernier est à l'état monté (par exemple, toutes les broches de retour à la terre connectées en bus ensemble sur le PCB).
4. Si les dimensions de contact représentées en COUPE ALTERNATIVE A-A à la Figure 3-1 sont utilisées, les contacts VBUS (A4, A9, B4 et B9) sont couplés alors dans un second temps, puis les contacts de signal (A2, A3, A5, A6, A7, A8, A10, A11, B2, B3, B5, B6, B7, B8, B10 et B11) en troisième position.

L'utilisation et l'affectation des signaux nécessaires pour la prise en charge de l'*USB 2.0* uniquement avec l'interface de couplage USB Type-C sont définies dans le Tableau 3-5.

Tableau 3-5 — Affectation des broches de l'interface d'un connecteur femelle USB Type-C pour la prise en charge d'USB 2.0 uniquement

Broche	Nom du signal	Description	Séquence de couplage	Broche	Nom du signal	Description	Séquence de couplage
A1	GND	Retour à la terre	En premier	B12	GND	Retour à la terre	En premier
A2				B11			
A3				B10			
A4	VBUS	Alimentation de bus	En premier	B9	VBUS	Alimentation de bus	En premier
A5	CC1	Canal de configuration	En second	B8	SBU2	Utilisation en bande latérale (SBU)	En second
A6	Dp1	Moitié positive de la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* – Position 1	En second	B7	Dn2	Moitié négative de la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* – Position 2	En second
A7	Dn1	Moitié négative de la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* – Position 1	En second	B6	Dp2	Moitié positive de la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* – Position 2	En second
A8	SBU1	Utilisation en bande latérale (SBU)	En second	B5	CC2	Canal de configuration	En second
A9	VBUS	Alimentation de bus	En premier	B4	VBUS	Alimentation de bus	En premier
A10				B3			
A11				B2			
A12	GND	Retour à la terre	En premier	B1	GND	Retour à la terre	En premier

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Broche	Nom du signal	Description	Séquence de couplage	Broche	Nom du signal	Description	Séquence de couplage

Notes:

1. Les emplacements de contact inutilisés doivent être isolés électriquement des contacts d'alimentation, de terre ou de signal (à savoir non connectés).
2. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. La face latérale du connecteur femelle doit prendre en charge la paire différentielle *USB 2.0* présente sur Dp1/Dn1 ou Dp2/Dn2. L'orientation du connecteur mâle détermine la paire active. Dans une mise en œuvre, Dp1 et Dp2 peuvent être court-circuités sur l'hôte/le dispositif aussi près du connecteur femelle que possible, afin de réduire autant que possible la longueur de broche; Dn1 et Dn2 peuvent également être court-circuités. Il convient que la longueur maximale de raccourcissement de la trace ne dépasse pas 3,5 mm.
3. Les contacts A8 et B8 (SBU1 et SBU2) ne doivent pas être connectés, sauf si cela est exigé dans un but précis (par exemple, mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio).
4. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle USB Type-C et au niveau du connecteur femelle USB Type-C, lorsque ce dernier est à l'état monté (par exemple, toutes les broches VBUS connectées en bus ensemble sur le PCB).
5. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle USB Type-C et au niveau du connecteur femelle USB Type-C, lorsque ce dernier est à l'état monté (par exemple, toutes les broches de retour à la terre connectées en bus ensemble sur le PCB).
6. Si les dimensions de contact représentées en COUPE ALTERNATIVE A-A à la Figure 3-1 sont utilisées, les contacts VBUS (A4, A9, B4 et B9) sont couplés alors dans un second temps, puis les contacts de signal (A5, A6, A7, A8, B5, B6, B7 et B8) en troisième position.

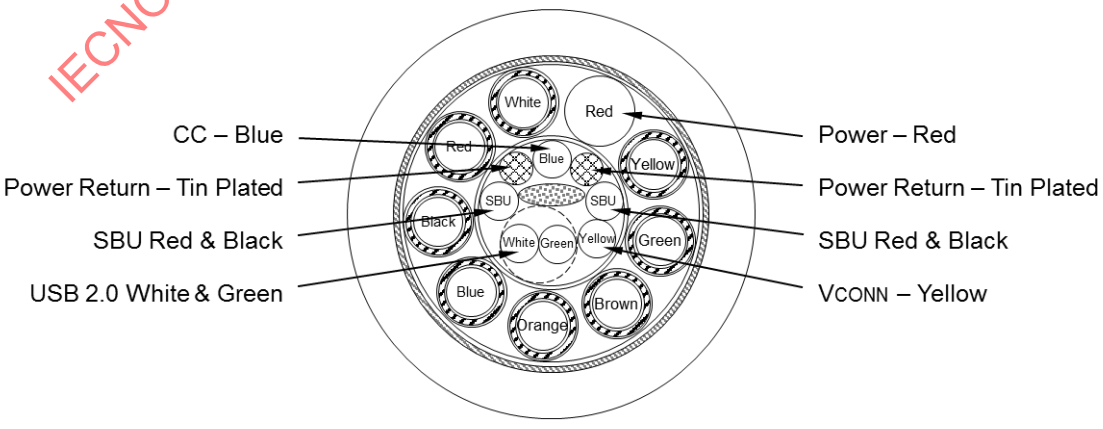
3.3 Construction des câbles et affectation des fils

Le présent paragraphe traite des câbles USB Type-C, notamment de leur construction, de l'affectation des fils et des calibres de fil.

3.3.1 Construction des câbles (informative)

La Figure 3-21 représente un exemple de coupe d'un câble USB Type-C Complet, avec des fils microcoaxiaux pour les paires TX/RX. Il existe quatre groupes de fils: USB D+/D− (généralement des paires torsadées non écrantées (UTP)), paires de signaux TX/RX (fils coaxiaux, fils coaxiaux doubles ou paires torsadées écrantées), fils de signal en bande latérale et fils d'alimentation et de terre. Dans cet exemple, le fil VCONN facultatif est représenté, alors que sur la Figure 3-22, le fil VCONN n'apparaît pas: cela dépend de l'approche de mise en œuvre choisie pour les câbles avec marquage électronique (voir 4.9).

Figure 3-21 — Représentation d'une coupe d'un câble USB Type-C Complet; exemple de fil coaxial avec VCONN



OD = 4.8mm

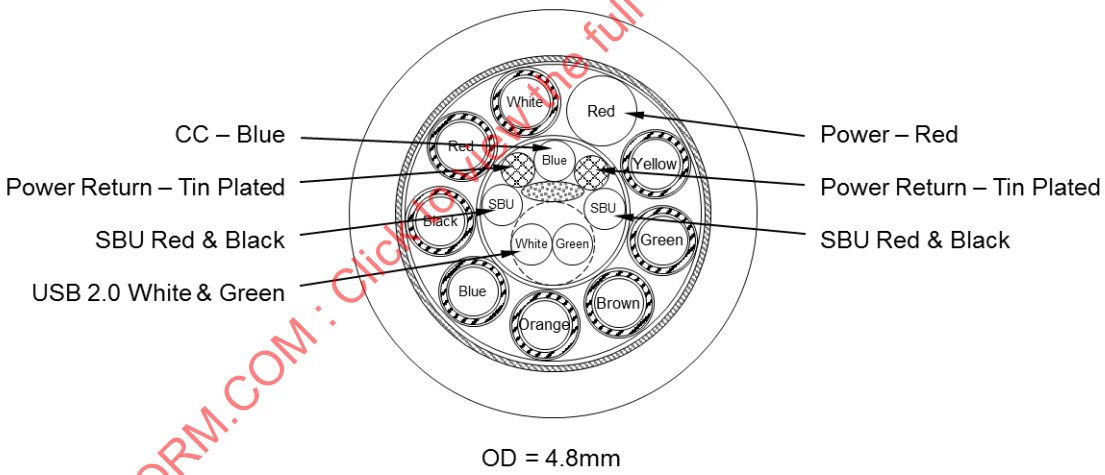
Les fils coaxiaux sont des paires TX/RX; ces paires spécifiques ne sont pas définies dans le câble.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Anglais	Français
CC - Blue	CC – bleu
Power Return – Tin Plated	Retour d'alimentation – plaqué étain
SBU Red & Black	SBU rouge et noir
USB 2.0 White & Green	USB 2.0 blanc et vert
Power – Red	Alimentation – rouge
VCONN – Yellow	VCONN – jaune
OD = 4,8 mm	Diamètre extérieur = 4,8 mm
White	Blanc
Red	Rouge
Blue	Bleu
Green	Vert
Brown	Marron
Yellow	Jaune
Black	Noir

Figure 3-22 — Représentation d'une coupe d'un câble USB Type-C Complet; exemple de fil coaxial sans VCONN



Les fils coaxiaux sont des paires TX/RX; ces paires spécifiques ne sont pas définies dans le câble.

Anglais	Français
CC - Blue	CC – bleu
Power Return – Tin Plated	Retour d'alimentation – plaqué étain
SBU Red & Black	SBU rouge et noir
USB 2.0 White & Green	USB 2.0 blanc et vert
Power – Red	Alimentation – rouge
OD = 4,8 mm	Diamètre extérieur = 4,8 mm
White	Blanc
Red	Rouge
Blue	Bleu
Green	Vert

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Brown	Marron
Yellow	Jaune
Black	Noir

Il est prévu que la paire de signaux USB D+/D− transmette les signaux *USB 2.0* à basse vitesse, à vitesse intégrale et à grande vitesse, alors que les paires de signaux TX/RX sont utilisées pour transmettre les signaux *USB 3.2* ou *USB4*. L'écrantage est nécessaire pour les paires différentielles TX/RX afin d'assurer l'intégrité des signaux et les performances CEM.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.3.2 Affectation des fils

Le Tableau 3-6 décrit l'ensemble complet des fils possibles nécessaires à la production des ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés. Pour certains ensembles câble-connecteurs, tous ces fils ne sont pas utilisés. Par exemple, un câble USB Type-C qui ne fournit que la fonctionnalité *USB 2.0* n'inclut pas les fils 6 à 15.

Tableau 3-6 — Affectation des fils pour un câble USB Type-C normalisé

Numéro de fil	Nom du signal	Description
1	GND_PWRrt1	Terre pour le retour à l'alimentation
2	PWR_VBUS1	Alimentation de VBUS
3	CC	Canal de configuration
4	UTP_Dp	Paire torsadée non écrantée, positive
5	UTP_Dn	Paire torsadée non écrantée, négative
6	SDPp1	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 1, positive
7	SDPn1	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 1, négative
8	SDPp2	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 2, positive
9	SDPn2	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 2, négative
10	SDPp3	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 3, positive
11	SDPn3	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 3, négative
12	SDPp4	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 4, positive
13	SDPn4	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 4, négative
14	SBU_A	Utilisation en bande latérale (SBU)
15	SBU_B	Utilisation en bande latérale (SBU)
16	GND_PWRrt2	Terre pour le retour à l'alimentation (facultatif)
17	PWR_VBUS2	Alimentation de VBUS (facultative)
18	PWR_VCONN	Alimentation de VCONN (facultative, voir 4.9)
Tresse	Blindage	Tresse externe du câble

Note:

1. Ce tableau repose sur l'hypothèse que l'ensemble des SDP utilisent des fils coaxiaux et qu'il n'existe pas de fils de continuité. Le retour à la terre du signal passe par l'écrantage des fils coaxiaux. Si des paires coaxiales doubles ou torsadées écrantées sont utilisées, des fils de continuité sont alors nécessaires.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Le Tableau 3-7 décrit l'ensemble complet des fils possibles nécessaires à la production des ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant. Pour certains ensembles câble-connecteurs, tous ces fils ne sont pas nécessaires. Par exemple, un câble USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-B n'inclut pas les fils 5 à 10.

Tableau 3-7 — Affectation des fils d'un câble USB Type-C pour les câbles/adaptateurs existants

Numéro de fil	Nom du signal	Description
1	GND_PWRrt1	Terre pour le retour à l'alimentation
2	PWR_VBUS1	Alimentation de VBUS
3	UTP_Dp	Paire torsadée non écrantée, positive
4	UTP_Dn	Paire torsadée non écrantée, négative
5	SDPp1	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 1, positive
6	SDPn1	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 1, négative
7	SDP1_Drain	Fil de continuité pour SDPp1 et SDPn1
8	SDPp2	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 2, positive
9	SDPn2	Paire différentielle écrantée n° 2, négative
10	SDP2_Drain	Fil de continuité pour SDPp2 et SDPn2
Tresse	Blindage	Tresse externe du câble

Note:

a. Ce tableau repose sur l'hypothèse qu'une paire torsadée écrantée est utilisée pour l'ensemble des SDP et qu'il existe des fils de continuité. Si des fils coaxiaux sont utilisés, aucun fil de continuité n'est alors nécessaire et le retour à la terre du signal passe par l'écrantage des fils coaxiaux.

3.3.3 Calibres de fil et diamètres de câble (informatifs)

La présente spécification ne spécifie pas le calibre des fils. Le Tableau 3-8 et le Tableau 3-9 répertorient les calibres de fil classiques à titre de référence uniquement. Un fil de grand calibre entraîne moins de perte, mais au détriment du diamètre de câble et de la flexibilité. Plusieurs fils peuvent être utilisés pour un seul fil, comme pour VBUS ou le fil de terre par exemple. Il est recommandé d'utiliser les plus petits calibres de fil possible qui satisfont aux exigences électriques et mécaniques des ensembles câble-connecteurs.

Pour optimiser la flexibilité du câble, il convient de câbler l'ensemble des fils et de réduire le diamètre externe du câble le plus possible. Un diamètre externe de câble USB Type-C Complet classique peut être compris entre 4 mm et 6 mm, alors qu'un diamètre externe de câble *USB 2.0* Type-C classique peut être compris entre 2 mm et 4 mm. Un diamètre externe classique de câble USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* existant peut être compris entre 3 mm et 5 mm.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-8 — Calibres de fil de référence pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés

Numéro de fil	Nom du signal	Calibre de fil (AWG)
1	GND_PWRrt1	20 à 28
2	PWR_VBUS1	20 à 28
3	CC	32 à 34
4	UTP_Dp	28 à 34
5	UTP_Dn	28 à 34
6	SDPp1	26 à 34
7	SDPn1	26 à 34
8	SDPp2	26 à 34
9	SDPn2	26 à 34
10	SDPp3	26 à 34
11	SDPn3	26 à 34
12	SDPp4	26 à 34
13	SDPn4	26 à 34
14	SBU_A	32 à 34
15	SBU_B	32 à 34
16	GND_PWRrt2	20 à 28
17	PWR_VBUS2	20 à 28
18	PWR_VCONN	32 à 34

Tableau 3-9 — Calibres de fil de référence pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant

Numéro de fil	Nom du signal	Calibre de fil (AWG)
1	GND_PWRrt1	20 à 28
2	PWR_VBUS1	20 à 28
3	UTP_Dp	28 à 34
4	UTP_Dn	28 à 34
5	SDPp1	26 à 34
6	SDPn1	26 à 34
7	SDP1_Drain	28 à 34
8	SDPp2	26 à 34
9	SDPn2	26 à 34
10	SDP2_Drain	28 à 34

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.4 Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés

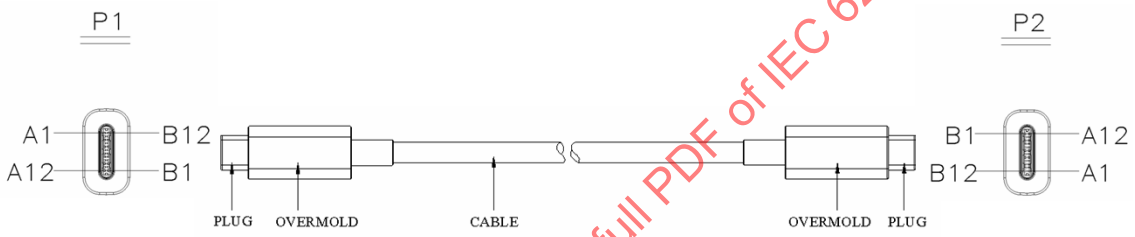
Deux ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés sont définis et admis par la présente spécification. De plus, les câbles captifs sont admis (voir 3.4.3). L'écrantage (tresse) est exigé pour entourer l'ensemble des fils dans le câble USB Type-C. L'écran doit être branché aux enveloppes en métal du connecteur mâle. Il convient de connecter physiquement l'écran à l'enveloppe en métal du connecteur mâle sous un angle qui approche autant que possible les 360°, afin de contrôler la CEM.

Note: Jusqu'à la version 1.4 de la présente spécification, les signaux TX et RX utilisés étaient nommés SSTX et SSRX. Avec l'introduction de l'USB4, ces signaux ont été renommés afin qu'ils puissent s'appliquer de façon générique à la signalisation USB SuperSpeed comme à la signalisation USB4. Il est prévu que les noms des signaux TX et RX soient un synonyme des noms SSTX et SSRX d'origine pour les mises en œuvre antérieures à la version 2.0 de la présente spécification.

3.4.1 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C Complet

La Figure 3-23 représente un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C Complet normalisé.

Figure 3-23 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C Complet normalisé



Anglais	Français
PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE
OVERMOLD	SURMOULAGE
CABLE	CÂBLE

Le Tableau 3-10 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C Complet normalisé.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-10 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C Complet normalisé

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C n° 1		Fil		Connecteur mâle USB Type-C n° 2	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Numéro de fil**	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1 [16]	GND_PWRrt1 [GND_PWRrt2]	A1, B1, A12, B12	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2 [17]	PWR_VBUS1 [PWR_VBUS2]	A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS
A5	CC	3	CC	A5	CC
B5	VCONN	18	PWR_VCONN (voir 4.9)	B5	VCONN
A6	Dp1	4	UTP_Dp	A6	Dp1
A7	Dn1	5	UTP_Dn	A7	Dn1
A2	TXp1	6	SDPp1	B11	RXp1
A3	TXn1	7	SDPn1	B10	RXn1
B11	RXp1	8	SDPp2	A2	TXp1
B10	RXn1	9	SDPn2	A3	TXn1
B2	TXp2	10	SDPp3	A11	RXp2
B3	TXn2	11	SDPn3	A10	RXn2
A11	RXp2	12	SDPp4	B2	TXp2
A10	RXn2	13	SDPn4	B3	TXn2
A8	SBU1	14	SBU_A	B8	SBU2
B8	SBU2	15	SBU_B	A8	SBU1
Enveloppe	Blindage	Ecrantage externe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. Ce tableau repose sur l'hypothèse que l'ensemble des SDP utilisent des fils coaxiaux et qu'il n'existe pas de fils de continuité. L'écrantage des fils coaxiaux est connecté aux broches de terre. Si une paire torsadée écrantée est utilisée, des fils de continuité sont alors nécessaires et doivent être connectés aux broches GND.
2. La broche B5 (VCONN) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être utilisée dans les versions marquées électroniquement de ce câble. Voir 4.9.
3. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
4. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Un condensateur de découplage de 10 nF (tension assignée minimale de 30 V) est exigé pour la broche VBUS à chaque extrémité du câble complet. Il convient de placer le condensateur de découplage aussi près que possible de la plaque d'alimentation.
5. Toutes les broches GND doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
6. L'écrantage et la broche GND doivent être connectés dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C aux deux extrémités de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.4.2 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB 2.0 Type-C

Un ensemble câble-connecteurs *USB 2.0* Type-C normalisé possède le même facteur de forme que celui représenté à la Figure 3-23.

Le Tableau 3-11 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs *USB 2.0* Type-C normalisé.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-11 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs *USB 2.0* Type-C normalisé

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C n° 1		Fil		Connecteur mâle USB Type-C n° 2	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Numéro de fil**	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	A1, B1, A12, B12	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS
A5	CC	3	CC	A5	CC
B5	VCONN	18	PWR_VCONN (voir 4.9)	B5	VCONN
A6	Dp1	4	UTP_Dp	A6	Dp1
A7	Dn1	5	UTP_Dn	A7	Dn1
Enveloppe	Blindage	Ecrantage externe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. La broche B5 (VCONN) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être utilisée dans les versions marquées électroniquement de ce câble. Voir 4.9.
2. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
3. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Aucun condensateur de découplage n'est exigé pour la broche VBUS dans le câble *USB 2.0* Type-C.
4. Toutes les broches GND doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
5. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).
6. L'écrantage et la broche GND doivent être connectés dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C aux deux extrémités de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.

3.4.3 Ensembles câble-connecteurs captifs USB Type-C

Un ensemble câble-connecteurs captif est un ensemble câble-connecteurs terminé à une extrémité par un connecteur mâle USB Type-C et qui comporte un moyen de connexion spécifique au fournisseur (câblé ou amovible personnalisé) à l'extrémité opposée. L'ensemble câble-connecteurs qui est câblé n'est pas détachable du dispositif.

Le câblage des ensembles câble-connecteurs captifs USB Type-C utilise les mêmes affectations de câbles que les ensembles câble-connecteurs normalisés (voir Tableau 3-10 et Tableau 3-11), à l'exception du branchement câblé côté dispositif qui remplace l'extrémité du connecteur mâle USB Type-C n° 2.

Le fil CC d'un câble captif doit être raccordé et avoir un comportement adapté à la fonction du produit pour lequel il est captif (par exemple, hôte ou dispositif).

La présente spécification ne définit pas la manière dont le branchement câblé est physiquement établi côté dispositif.

3.5 Ensembles câble-connecteurs existants

Pour assurer l'interopérabilité entre les produits USB Type-C et les produits USB existants, les ensembles câble-connecteurs existants normalisés suivants sont définis. Seuls les câbles définis dans la présente spécification sont admis.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

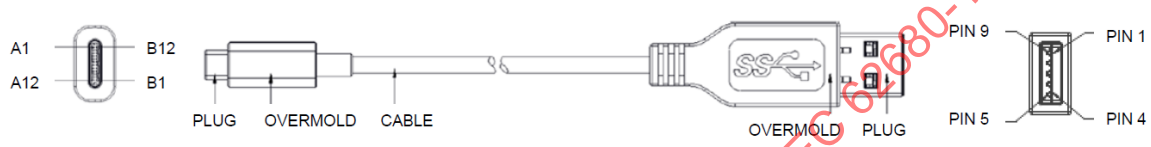
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Les ensembles câble-connecteurs existants qui assurent l'alimentation d'un connecteur USB Type-C (par exemple, un ensemble câble-connecteurs mâles USB Type-C vers USB Standard-A et un ensemble adaptateur connecteur mâle USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle USB Micro-B) doivent utiliser la résistance Rp de courant USB Type-C par défaut (56 kΩ). La valeur de Rp est utilisée pour informer le collecteur de la quantité de courant qui peut être fournie par la source. Etant donné que l'ensemble câble-connecteurs existant ne comprend pas la capacité de la source à laquelle il est connecté, il est uniquement admis d'annoncer le courant USB Type-C par défaut défini par les spécifications *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.1* et *USB BC 1.2*. Aucune autre valeur Rp n'est admise, car cela peut entraîner un collecteur USB Type-C à surcharger une alimentation existante.

3.5.1 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-A

La Figure 3-24 représente un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-A.

Figure 3-24 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB 3.1 Standard-A



Anglais	Français
PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE
OVERMOLD	SURMOULAGE
CABLE	CÂBLE
PIN	BROCHE

Le Tableau 3-12 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-A.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-12 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-A

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C		Fil		Connecteur mâle USB 3.1 Standard-A	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Numéro de fil**	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1 7, 10	GND_PWRrt1 SDP1_Drain, SDP2_Drain	4 7	GND GND_DRAIN
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	Voir Note 2			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D−
A2	TXp1	5	SDPp1	6	StdA_SSRX+
A3	TXn1	6	SDPn1	5	StdA_SSRX−
B11	RXp1	8	SDPp2	9	StdA_SSTX+
B10	RXn1	9	SDPn2	8	StdA_SSTX−
Enveloppe	Blindage	Ecrantage externe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. Ce tableau repose sur l'hypothèse qu'une paire torsadée écrantée est utilisée pour l'ensemble des SDP et qu'il existe des fils de continuité. Si des fils coaxiaux sont utilisés, aucun fil de continuité n'est présent et l'écrantage des fils coaxiaux est connecté aux broches de terre.
2. La broche A5 (CC) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être connectée à VBUS par une résistance Rp (56 kΩ ± 5 %). Pour obtenir une description fonctionnelle et la valeur de Rp, voir 4.5.3.2.2 et Tableau 4-24.
3. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
4. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Un condensateur de découplage est exigé entre les broches VBUS et de terre du côté connecteur mâle USB Type-C du câble. Le condensateur de découplage doit être de 10 nF ± 20 % dans les câbles qui intègrent un connecteur mâle USB Standard-A. Le condensateur de découplage doit être placé aussi près que possible de la plaque d'alimentation.
5. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
6. L'écran et la broche GND doivent être connectés dans les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C et *USB 3.1* Standard-A aux deux extrémités de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.
7. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).

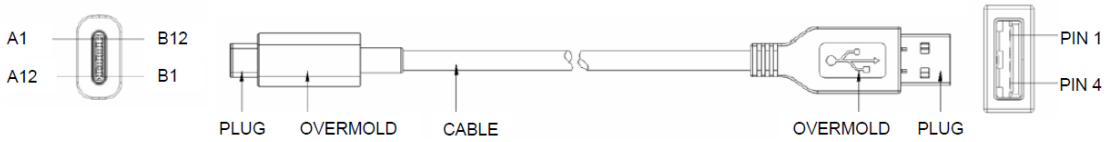
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.2 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-A

La Figure 3-25 représente un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-A.

Figure 3-25 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-A



Anglais	Français
PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE
OVERMOLD	SURMOULAGE
CABLE	CÂBLE
PIN	BROCHE

Le Tableau 3-13 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-A.

Tableau 3-13 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-A

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C		Fil		Connecteur mâle USB 2.0 Standard-A	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Numéro de fil**	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	4	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	Voir Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D–
Enveloppe	Blindage	Ecrantage externe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. La broche A5 (CC) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être connectée à VBUS par une résistance Rp (56 kΩ ± 5 %). Pour obtenir une description fonctionnelle et la valeur de Rp, voir 4.5.3.2.2 et Tableau 4-24.
2. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
3. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Aucun condensateur de découplage n'est exigé pour les broches VBUS de ce câble.
4. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
5. L'écran et la broche GND doivent être connectés dans les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C et *USB 2.0* Standard-A aux deux extrémités de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.
6. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).

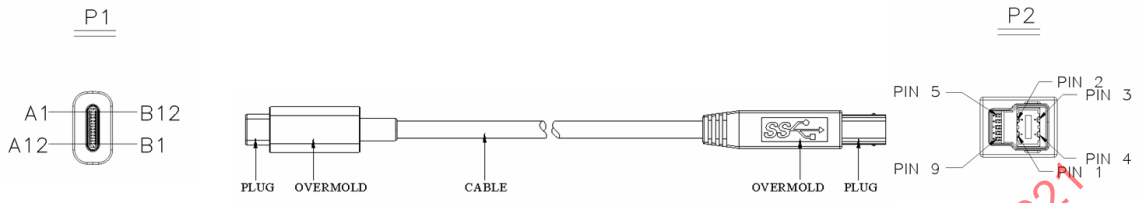
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.3 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-B

La Figure 3-26 représente un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-B.

Figure 3-26 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-B



Anglais	Français
PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE
OVERMOLD	SURMOULAGE
CABLE	CÂBLE
PIN	BROCHE

Le Tableau 3-14 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-B.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-14 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-B

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C		Fil		Connecteur mâle USB 3.1 Standard-B	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Numéro de fil**	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1 7, 10	GND_PWRrt1 SDP1_Drain, SDP2_Drain	4 7	GND GND_DRAIN
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	Voir Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D−
A2	TXp1	5	SDPp1	9	StdB_SSRX+
A3	TXn1	6	SDPn1	8	StdB_SSRX−
B11	RXp1	8	SDPp2	6	StdB_SSTX+
B10	RXn1	9	SDPn2	5	StdB_SSTX−
Enveloppe	Blindage	Ecrantage externe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. La broche A5 (CC) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être connectée à la broche GND par une résistance Rd (5,1 kΩ ± 20 %). Pour obtenir une description fonctionnelle et la valeur de Rd, voir 4.5.3.2.1 et Tableau 4-25.
2. Ce tableau repose sur l'hypothèse qu'une paire torsadée écrantée est utilisée pour l'ensemble des SDP et qu'il existe des fils de continuité. Si des fils coaxiaux sont utilisés, aucun fil de continuité n'est présent et l'écrantage des fils coaxiaux est connecté aux broches de terre.
3. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
4. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Un condensateur de découplage est exigé entre les broches VBUS et de terre du côté connecteur mâle USB Type-C du câble. Le condensateur de découplage doit être de 10 nF ± 20 % dans les câbles qui intègrent un connecteur mâle USB Standard-B. Le condensateur de découplage doit être placé aussi près que possible de la plaque d'alimentation.
5. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
6. L'écran et la broche GND doivent être connectés dans les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C et *USB 3.1* Standard-B aux deux extrémités de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.
7. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).

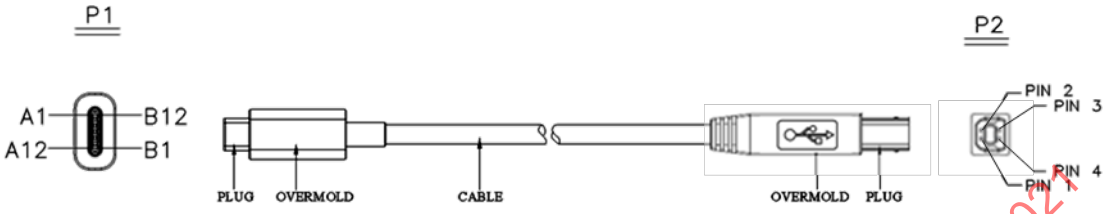
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.4 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-B

La Figure 3-27 représente un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-B.

Figure 3-27 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-B



Anglais	Français
PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE
OVERMOLD	SURMOULAGE
CABLE	CÂBLE
PIN	BROCHE

Le Tableau 3-15 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-B.

Tableau 3-15 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-B

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C		Fil		Connecteur mâle USB 2.0 Standard-B	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Numéro de fil**	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	4	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	Voir Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D−
Enveloppe	Blindage	Ecrantage externe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. La broche A5 (CC) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être connectée à la broche GND par une résistance Rd (5,1 kΩ ± 20 %). Pour obtenir une description fonctionnelle et la valeur de Rd, voir 4.5.3.2.1 et Tableau 4-25.
2. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
3. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Aucun condensateur de découplage n'est exigé pour les broches VBUS de ce câble.
4. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
5. L'écran et la broche GND doivent être connectés dans les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C et *USB 2.0* Standard-B aux deux extrémités de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.
6. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).

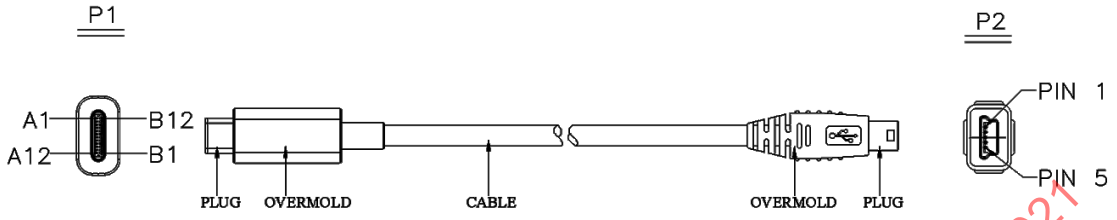
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.5 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Mini-B

La Figure 3-28 représente un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Mini-B.

Figure 3-28 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Mini-B



Anglais	Français
PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE
OVERMOLD	SURMOULAGE
CABLE	CÂBLE
PIN	BROCHE

Le Tableau 3-16 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Mini-B.

Tableau 3-16 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Mini-B

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C		Fil		Connecteur mâle USB 2.0 Mini-B	
Broche	Nom du signal	Numéro de fil	Nom du signal	Broche	Nom du signal
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	5	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	Voir Note 1			
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D–
				4	ID
Enveloppe	Blindage	Ecrantage externe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. La broche A5 du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être connectée à la broche GND par une résistance Rd (5,1 kΩ ± 20 %). Pour obtenir une description fonctionnelle et la valeur de Rd, voir 4.5.3.2.1 et Tableau 4-25.
2. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
3. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Aucun condensateur de découplage n'est exigé pour les broches VBUS de ce câble.
4. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
5. La broche 4 (ID) du connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Mini-B doit être terminée comme défini dans la spécification applicable au type de câble.
6. L'écrantage et la broche GND doivent être connectés dans les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C et *USB 2.0* Mini-B aux deux extrémités de l'ensemble câble-connecteur.
7. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).

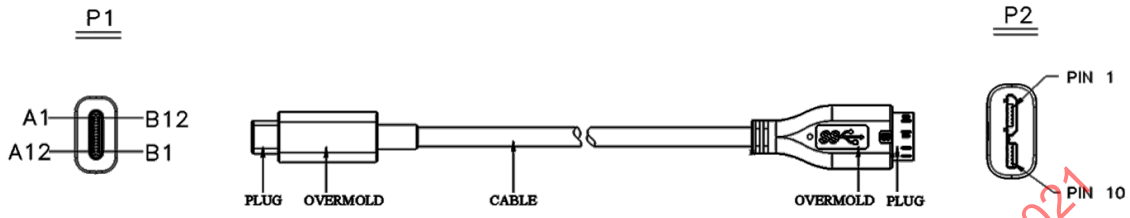
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.6 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Micro-B

La Figure 3-29 représente un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Micro-B.

Figure 3-29 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Micro-B



Anglais	Français
PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE
OVERMOLD	SURMOULAGE
CABLE	CÂBLE
PIN	BROCHE

Le Tableau 3-17 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Micro-B.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-17 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Micro-B

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C		Fil		Connecteur mâle USB 3.1 Micro-B	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Numéro de fil**	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1 7, 10	GND_PWRrt1 SDP1_Drain, SDP2_Drain	5 8	GND GND_DRAIN
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	Voir Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D−
A2	TXp1	5	SDPp1	10	MicB_SSRX+
A3	TXn1	6	SDPn1	9	MicB_SSRX−
B11	RXp1	8	SDPp2	7	MicB_SSTX+
B10	RXn1	9	SDPn2	6	MicB_SSTX−
				4	ID
Enveloppe	Blindage	Ecrantage externe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. La broche A5 (CC) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être connectée à la broche GND par une résistance Rd (5,1 kΩ ± 20 %). Pour obtenir une description fonctionnelle et la valeur de Rd, voir 4.5.3.2.1 et Tableau 4-25.
2. Ce tableau repose sur l'hypothèse qu'une paire torsadée écrantée est utilisée pour l'ensemble des SDP et qu'il existe des fils de continuité. Si des fils coaxiaux sont utilisés, aucun fil de continuité n'est présent et l'écrantage des fils coaxiaux est connecté aux broches de terre.
3. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
4. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Un condensateur de découplage est exigé entre les broches VBUS et de terre du côté connecteur mâle USB Type-C du câble. Le condensateur de découplage doit être de 10 nF ± 20 % dans les câbles qui intègrent un connecteur mâle USB Standard-B. Il convient de placer le condensateur de découplage aussi près que possible de la plaque d'alimentation.
5. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
6. La broche 4 (ID) du connecteur mâle *USB 3.1* Micro-B doit être terminée comme défini dans la spécification applicable au type de câble.
7. L'écrantage et la broche GND doivent être connectés dans les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C et *USB 3.1* Micro-B aux deux extrémités de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.
8. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).

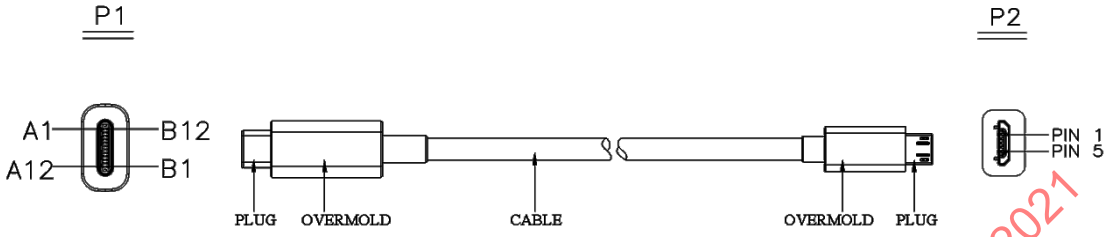
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.5.7 Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Micro-B

La Figure 3-30 représente un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Micro-B.

Figure 3-30 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Micro-B



Anglais	Français
PLUG	CONNECTEUR MÂLE
OVERMOLD	SURMOULAGE
CABLE	CÂBLE
PIN	BROCHE

Le Tableau 3-18 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Micro-B.

Tableau 3-18 — Câblage de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Micro-B

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C		Fil		Connecteur mâle USB 2.0 Micro-B	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Numéro de fil**	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	1	GND_PWRrt1	5	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	2	PWR_VBUS1	1	VBUS
A5	CC	Voir Note 1			
B5	VCONN				
A6	Dp1	3	UTP_Dp	3	D+
A7	Dn1	4	UTP_Dn	2	D−
				4	ID
Enveloppe	Blindage	Ecrantage externe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. La broche A5 (CC) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être connectée à la broche GND par une résistance Rd (5,1 kΩ ± 20 %). Pour obtenir une description fonctionnelle et la valeur de Rd, voir 4.5.3.2.1 et Tableau 4-25.
2. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
3. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Aucun condensateur de découplage n'est exigé pour les broches VBUS de ce câble.
4. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
5. La broche 4 (ID) du connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Micro-B doit être terminée comme défini dans la spécification applicable au type de câble.
6. L'écrantage et la broche GND doivent être connectés dans les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C et *USB 2.0* Micro-B aux deux extrémités de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.
7. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

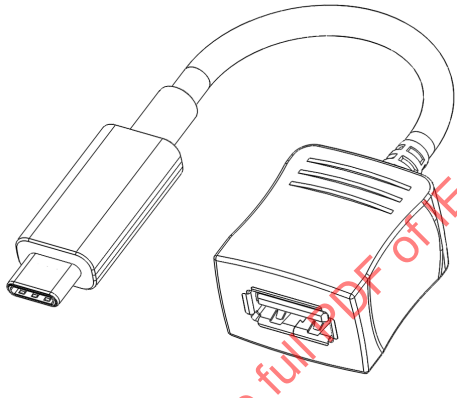
3.6 Ensembles adaptateurs existants

Pour assurer l'interopérabilité entre les produits USB Type-C et les produits USB existants, les ensembles adaptateurs existants normalisés suivants sont définis. Seuls les ensembles adaptateurs définis dans la présente spécification sont admis.

3.6.1 Ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A

La Figure 3-31 représente un ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A. Cet ensemble câble-connecteurs est défini pour une connexion directe à un dispositif USB (par exemple., une clé USB). La fonctionnalité système permettant d'utiliser cet ensemble adaptateur avec un autre ensemble câble-connecteurs USB n'est pas garantie.

Figure 3-31 — Ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A



Le Tableau 3-19 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-19 — Câblage de l'ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C		Connecteur femelle USB 3.1 Standard-A	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	4 7	GND GND_DRAIN
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	1	VBUS
A5	CC	Voir Note 1	
B5	VCONN		
A6	Dp1	3	D+
A7	Dn1	2	D−
A2	TXp1	9	StdA_SSTX+
A3	TXn1	8	StdA_SSTX−
B11	RXp1	6	StdA_SSRX+
B10	RXn1	5	StdA_SSRX−
Enveloppe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. La broche A5 (CC) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être connectée à la broche GND par une résistance Rd (5,1 kΩ ± 20 %). Pour obtenir une description fonctionnelle et la valeur de Rd, voir 4.5.3.2.1 et Tableau 4-25.
2. Ce tableau repose sur l'hypothèse qu'une paire torsadée écrantée est utilisée pour l'ensemble des SDP et qu'il existe des fils de continuité. Si des fils coaxiaux sont utilisés, aucun fil de continuité n'est présent et l'écrantage des fils coaxiaux est connecté aux broches de terre.
3. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
4. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Un condensateur de découplage de 10 nF est exigé pour la broche VBUS à l'extrémité du connecteur mâle USB Type-C du câble. Il convient de placer le condensateur de découplage aussi près que possible de la plaque d'alimentation. Aucun condensateur de découplage n'est exigé pour la broche VBUS à l'intérieur du connecteur femelle Standard-A.
5. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
6. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).

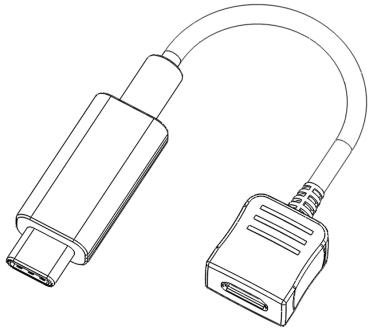
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.6.2 Ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B

La Figure 3-31 représente un ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B.

Figure 3-32 — Ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B



Le Tableau 3-19 définit les connexions filaires de l'ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B.

Tableau 3-20 — Câblage de l'ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B

Connecteur mâle USB Type-C		Connecteur femelle USB 2.0 Micro-B	
Broche	**Nom du signal**	**Broche**	**Nom du signal**
A1, B1, A12, B12	GND	5	GND
A4, B4, A9, B9	VBUS	1	VBUS
A5	CC	Voir Note 1	
A6	Dp1	3	D+
A7	Dn1	2	D−
		4	ID
Enveloppe	Blindage	Enveloppe	Blindage

Notes:

1. La broche A5 (CC) du connecteur mâle USB Type-C doit être connectée à VBUS par une résistance Rp (56 kΩ ± 5 %). Pour obtenir une description fonctionnelle et la valeur de Rp, voir 4.5.3.2.2 et Tableau 4-24.
2. Il convient que les contacts B6 et B7 ne soient pas présents dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
3. Toutes les broches VBUS doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C. Aucun condensateur de découplage n'est exigé pour les broches VBUS à l'extrémité du connecteur femelle Micro-B de ce câble.
4. Toutes les broches de retour à la terre doivent être connectées ensemble dans le connecteur mâle USB Type-C.
5. Toutes les broches du connecteur mâle USB Type-C qui ne sont pas répertoriées dans ce tableau doivent être ouvertes (non connectées).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7 Caractéristiques électriques

Le présent paragraphe définit les exigences électriques des ensembles câble-connecteurs, des connecteurs et des câbles bruts USB Type-C, y compris les exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal, l'efficacité de l'écrantage et le courant continu. L'Article 4 définit les exigences complémentaires concernant la définition du signal fonctionnel, la découverte de la configuration de l'hôte ou du dispositif et l'alimentation.

Sauf indication contraire, l'ensemble des mesures est réalisé à une température de 15 °C à 35 °C, une humidité relative de 25 % à 85 %, et une pression atmosphérique de 86 kPa à 106 kPa; tous les paramètres S sont normalisés avec une impédance différentielle de 85 Ω.

3.7.1 Câble brut (informatif)

Les objectifs de performance électrique des câbles bruts sont donnés à titre informatif pour aider les fabricants d'ensembles câble-connecteurs à gérer l'approvisionnement en câbles bruts. Ces objectifs ne relèvent pas des exigences de conformité de l'USB Type-C. La norme exige que l'ensemble câble-connecteurs soit conforme aux caractéristiques de performance spécifiées aux 3.7.2 et 3.7.5.3.

Il est recommandé que l'impédance caractéristique différentielle soit de 90 Ω ± 5 Ω pour les paires différentielles écrantées. Il est recommandé que l'impédance caractéristique asymétrique soit de 45 Ω ± 3 Ω pour les fils coaxiaux. Il convient d'évaluer l'impédance avec un temps de montée de 200 ps (de 10 % à 90 %). Un temps de montée supérieur n'est pas nécessaire pour un câble brut, car il fait ressortir les irrégularités du montage d'essai du câble.

3.7.1.1 Obliquité dans les paires (informative)

Il est recommandé que l'obliquité dans les paires d'une paire différentielle soit inférieure à 10 ps/m. Il convient de la mesurer avec une transmission dans le domaine temporel (TDT) en mode différentiel qui utilise un temps de montée de 200 ps (de 10 % à 90 %) et un croisement à 50 % de la tension d'entrée.

3.7.1.2 Perte d'insertion différentielle (informative)

L'affaiblissement du câble dépend des calibres de fil, du placage et des matériaux diélectriques. Le Tableau 3-21 et le Tableau 3-22 contiennent des exemples de perte d'insertion différentielle.

Tableau 3-21 — Exemples de perte d'insertion différentielle pour TX/RX avec une construction en paire torsadée

Fréquence	34AWG	32AWG	30AWG	28AWG
0,625 GHz	−1,8 dB/m	−1,4 dB/m	−1,2 dB/m	−1,0 dB/m
1,25 GHz	−2,5 dB/m	−2,0 dB/m	−1,7 dB/m	−1,4 dB/m
2,50 GHz	−3,7 dB/m	−2,9 dB/m	−2,5 dB/m	−2,1 dB/m
5,00 GHz	−5,5 dB/m	−4,5 dB/m	−3,9 dB/m	−3,1 dB/m
7,50 GHz	−7,0 dB/m	−5,9 dB/m	−5,0 dB/m	−4,1 dB/m
10,00 GHz	−8,4 dB/m	−7,2 dB/m	−6,1 dB/m	−4,8 dB/m
12,50 GHz	−9,5 dB/m	−8,2 dB/m	−7,3 dB/m	−5,5 dB/m
15,00 GHz	−11,0 dB/m	−9,5 dB/m	−8,7 dB/m	−6,5 dB/m

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-22 — Exemples de perte d'insertion différentielle pour USB TX/RX avec une construction coaxiale

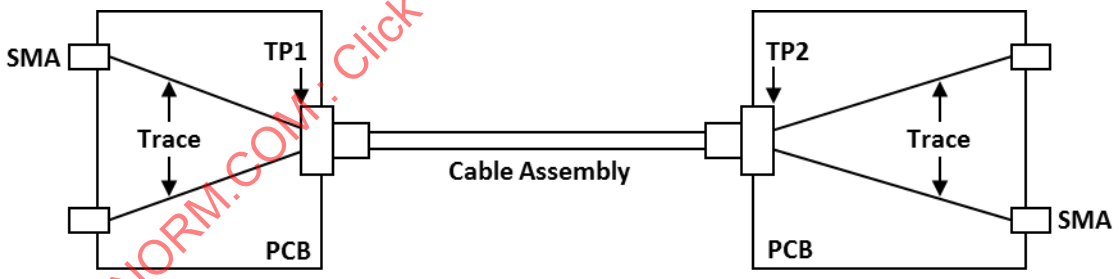
Fréquence	34AWG	32AWG	30AWG	28AWG
0,625 GHz	−1,8 dB/m	−1,5 dB/m	−1,2 dB/m	−1,0 dB/m
1,25 GHz	−2,8 dB/m	−2,2 dB/m	−1,8 dB/m	−1,3 dB/m
2,50 GHz	−4,2 dB/m	−3,4 dB/m	−2,7 dB/m	−1,9 dB/m
5,00 GHz	−6,1 dB/m	−4,9 dB/m	−4,0 dB/m	−3,1 dB/m
7,50 GHz	−7,6 dB/m	−6,5 dB/m	−5,2 dB/m	−4,2 dB/m
10,0 GHz	−8,8 dB/m	−7,6 dB/m	−6,1 dB/m	−4,9 dB/m
12,5 GHz	−9,9 dB/m	−8,6 dB/m	−7,1 dB/m	−5,7 dB/m
15,0 GHz	−12,1 dB/m	−10,9 dB/m	−9,0 dB/m	−6,5 dB/m

3.7.2 Ensembles câble-connecteurs passifs USB Type-C vers Type-C (normatifs)

Un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers Type-C doit être soumis à l'essai au moyen d'un montage d'essai avec la languette du connecteur femelle fabriquée dans le montage d'essai. Cet ensemble est représenté à la Figure 3-33. Les connecteurs femelles USB Type-C ne sont pas inclus dans le montage d'essai. Il convient que les hôtes et les dispositifs tiennent compte de la dégradation de signal supplémentaire introduite par le connecteur femelle.

Les exigences s'appliquent à l'intégralité du chemin du signal de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs couplé aux languettes de PCB du montage, sans inclure les traces PCB d'entrée. Comme représenté à la Figure 3-33, la mesure est réalisée entre le point d'essai 1 (TP1) et le point d'essai 2 (TP2). Pour obtenir une description d'un montage d'essai normalisé, se référer à la documentation disponible sur la page Cables and Connectors du site web de l'USB-IF.

Figure 3-33 — Représentation des points d'essai pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs couplé



Anglais	Français
Cable Assembly	Ensemble de câbles

Les exigences concernant les ensembles câble-connecteurs se divisent en exigences informatives et normatives. Les exigences informatives sont destinées aux fabricants d'ensembles câble-connecteurs en tant qu'objectifs de conception. Les exigences normatives constituent les critères de réussite et d'échec à la conformité des ensembles câble-connecteurs.

3.7.2.1 Caractéristiques recommandées pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs passifs TX/RX (USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

Les caractéristiques électriques recommandées définies dans le présent paragraphe sont des lignes directrices de conception informatives. Les ensembles câble-connecteurs qui ne satisfont pas à ces caractéristiques électriques recommandées peuvent toutefois réussir les essais de certification USB.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

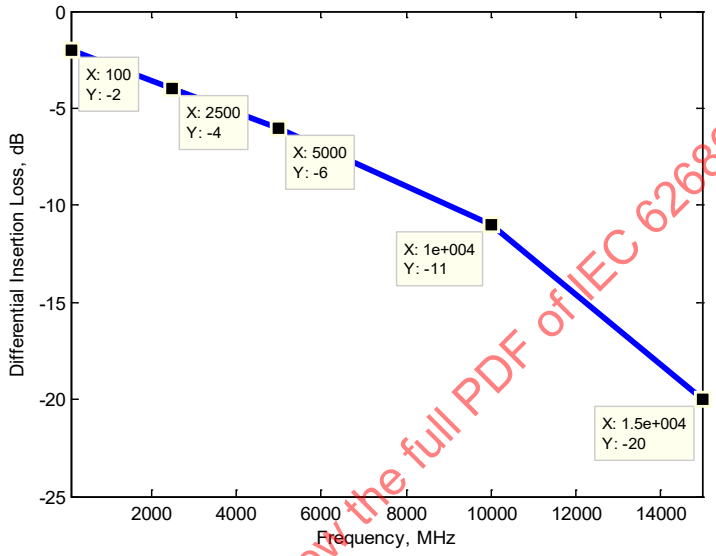
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

De même, les ensembles câble-connecteurs qui répondent à ces caractéristiques électriques recommandées peuvent ne pas réussir les essais de certification USB.

3.7.2.1.1 Perte d'insertion différentielle (informative – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

La Figure 3-34 représente la limite de la perte d'insertion différentielle pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs *USB 3.2* Gen 2 ou *USB4* Gen 2 Type-C, définie par les valeurs maximales suivantes: (100 MHz, −2 dB), (2,5 GHz, −4 dB), (5,0 GHz, −6 dB), (10 GHz, −11 dB) et (15 GHz, −20 dB).

Figure 3-34 — Exigence concernant la perte d'insertion différentielle recommandée (USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)



Anglais	Français
Differential Insertion Loss	Perte d'insertion différentielle
Frequency	Fréquence

3.7.2.1.2 Facteur d'adaptation différentiel (informatif – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

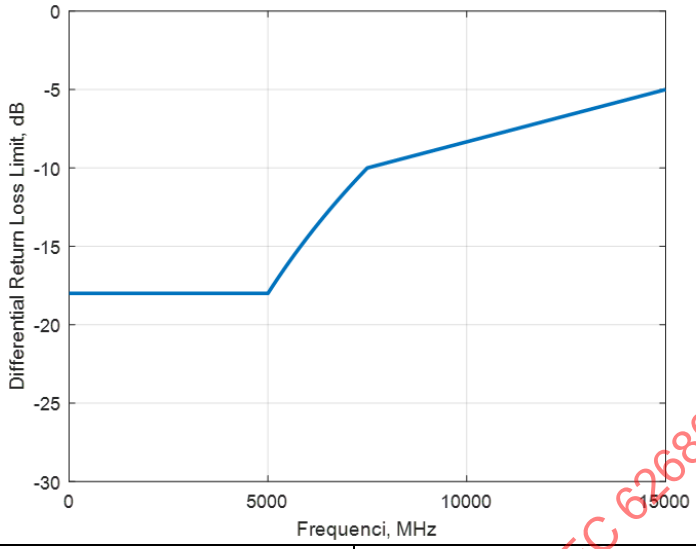
La Figure 3-35 représente la limite du facteur d'adaptation différentiel, défini par l'équation suivante:

$$FA\ masque = \begin{cases} -18\ dB,\ f < 5\ Ghz \\ -18 + 45{,}43 \times \log_{10}\left(\frac{f}{5}\right)\ dB\ ,\ 5\ Ghz < f\ \leq 7{,}5\ Ghz \\ -15 + \frac{2}{3} \times f\ dB,\ 7{,}5\ Ghz < f \leq 15\ Ghz \end{cases}$$

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-35 — Exigence concernant le facteur d'adaptation différentiel recommandé

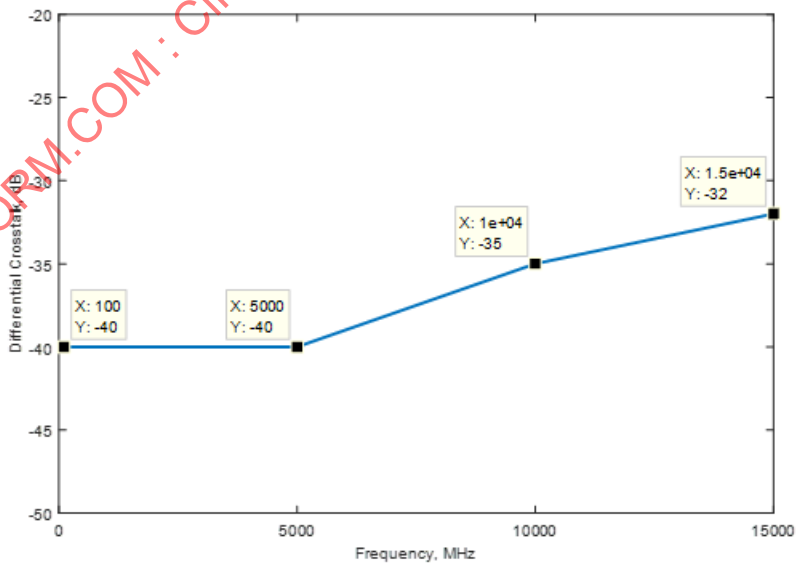


Anglais	Français
Differential Return Loss	Facteur d'adaptation différentiel
Frequency	Fréquence

3.7.2.1.3 Paradiaphonie et télédiaphonie différentielles entre les paires TX/RX (informatives – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

La paradiaphonie (DDNEXT) et la télédiaphonie (DDFEXT) sont spécifiées, comme représenté à la Figure 3-36. Les limites de DDNEXT/DDFEXT sont définies par les valeurs maximales suivantes: (100 MHz, −40 dB), (5 GHz, −40 dB), (10 GHz, −35 dB) et (15 GHz, −32 dB).

Figure 3-36 — Exigence concernant la diaphonie différentielle recommandée



Anglais	Français
Differential Crosstalk	Diaphonie différentielle
Frequency	Fréquence

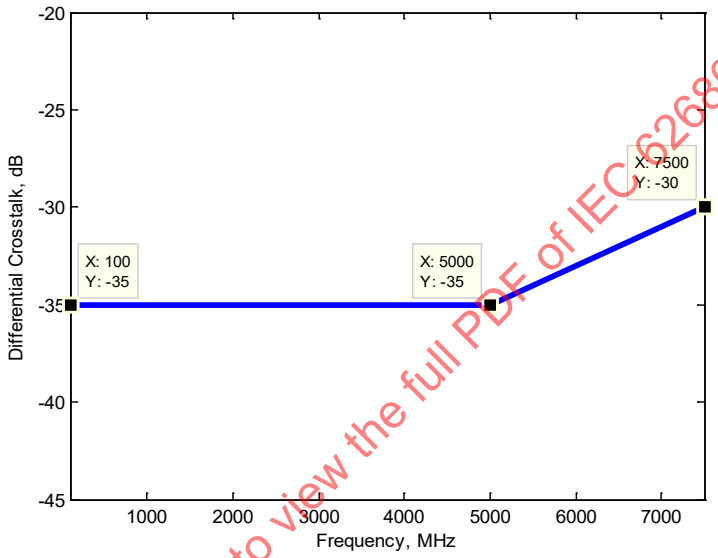
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.2.1.4 Diaphonie différentielle entre les paires USB D+/D− et TX/RX (informative – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

Il convient de gérer la paradiaphonie et la télédiaphonie différentielles entre la paire USB D+/D− et les paires TX/RX afin qu'elle ne dépasse pas les limites représentées à la Figure 3-37. Il convient d'interpréter la paire USB D+/D− et les paires TX/RX dans le contexte d'un agresseur et d'une victime. Il convient également de prendre en compte que la fréquence maximale de la paire D+/D− pour des essais similaires est de 1,2 GHz (voir Tableau 3-31), mais dans ce cas, la diaphonie sur la paire D+/D− est étendue à 7,5 GHz. Les limites sont définies par les points suivants: (100 MHz, −35 dB), (5 GHz, −35 dB) et (7,5 GHz, −30 dB).

Figure 3-37 — Exigence concernant la paradiaphonie et la télédiaphonie différentielles recommandées entre la paire USB D+/D− et les paires TX/RX



Anglais	Français
Differential Crosstalk	Diaphonie différentielle
Frequency	Fréquence

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

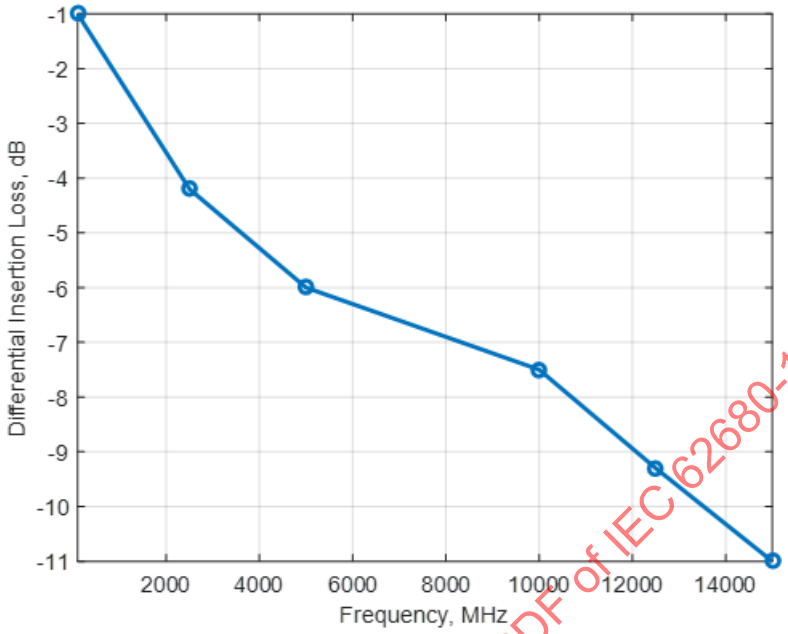
3.7.2.2 Caractéristiques recommandées pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs passifs TX/RX (USB4 Gen 3)

3.7.2.2.1 Perte d'insertion différentielle (informative – USB4 Gen 3)

La Figure 3-38 représente la limite de la perte d'insertion différentielle recommandée pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs *USB4* Gen 3 Type-C, définie par les valeurs maximales suivantes: (100 MHz, −1 dB), (2,5 GHz, −4.2 dB), (5,0 GHz, −6 dB), (10 GHz, −7,5 dB), (12 GHz, −9,3 dB) et (15 GHz, −11 dB).

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-38 — Exigence concernant la perte d'insertion différentielle recommandée (USB4 Gen 3)



Anglais	Français
Differential Insertion Loss	Perte d'insertion différentielle
Frequency	Fréquence

3.7.2.2.2 Facteur d'adaptation différentiel (informatif – USB4 Gen 3)

Le masque du facteur d'adaptation différentiel informatif est identique à celui du 3.7.2.1.2.

3.7.2.2.3 Paradiaphonie et télédiaphonie différentielles entre les paires TX/RX (informatives – USB4 Gen 3)

La paradiaphonie (DDNEXT) et la télédiaphonie (DDFEXT) recommandées sont définies au 3.7.2.1.3. Pour réduire le plus possible la diaphonie, il est important d'optimiser la conception de la carte d'accès et de la terminaison des fils à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle du câble.

3.7.2.2.4 Diaphonie différentielle entre la paire USB D+/D– et les paires TX/RX (informative – USB4 Gen 3)

La paradiaphonie et la télédiaphonie informatives entre la paire USB D+/D– et les paires TX/RX sont identiques à celles du 3.7.2.1.4.

3.7.2.3 Exigences normatives concernant l'ensemble câble-connecteurs passif TX/RX (USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

Les paramètres intégrés sont utilisés pour la conformité de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs (sauf pour la perte d'insertion et la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun) afin d'éviter un potentiel rejet d'un ensemble câble-connecteurs opérationnel qui peut ne pas être conforme à la spécification traditionnelle des paramètres S à certaines fréquences.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.2.3.1 Ajustement de la perte d'insertion différentielle aux fréquences de Nyquist (normatif – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

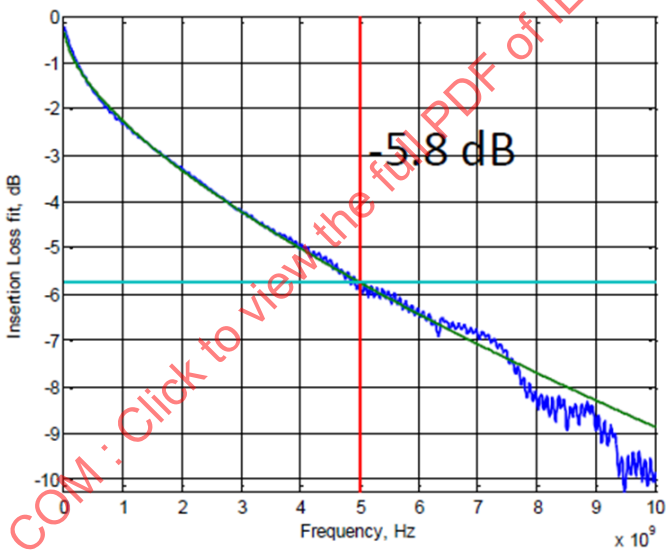
L'ajustement de la perte d'insertion à la fréquence de Nyquist mesure l'affaiblissement de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs. Pour obtenir l'ajustement de la perte d'insertion à la fréquence de Nyquist, la perte d'insertion différentielle mesurée pour l'ensemble câble-connecteurs est ajustée avec une fonction de lissage. Un algorithme et un outil d'ajustement normalisés doivent être utilisés pour extraire l'ajustement de la perte d'insertion aux fréquences de Nyquist. L'équation d'ajustement est définie comme suit:

$$IL_{fit} = a + b * \sqrt{f} + c * \sqrt{f^2} + d * \sqrt{f^3}$$

où f est la fréquence, et a, b, c et d sont les coefficients d'ajustement.

La Figure 3-39 représente un exemple de perte d'insertion, mesurée pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs, puis ajustée avec une fonction de lissage. L'ajustement de la perte d'insertion à la fréquence de Nyquist de l'USB SuperSpeed Gen 2 (5,0 GHz) est de −5,8 dB.

Figure 3-39 — Représentation de l'ajustement de la perte d'insertion à la fréquence de Nyquist



Anglais	Français
Insertion Loss fit	Ajustement de la perte d'insertion
Frequency	Fréquence

L'ajustement de la perte d'insertion à la fréquence de Nyquist (ILfitatNq) doit satisfaire aux exigences suivantes:

- ≥ −4 dB à 2,5 GHz;
- ≥ −6 dB à 5 GHz; et
- ≥ −11 dB à 10 GHz.

Les fréquences de Nyquist sont respectivement de 2,5 GHz, 5,0 GHz et 10 GHz pour les débits de données USB SuperSpeed Gen 1, USB SuperSpeed Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 3.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

L'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB SuperSpeed Gen 1, uniquement Type-C vers Type-C, est admis par la présente spécification et doit satisfaire aux exigences suivantes en ce qui concerne l'ajustement de la perte d'insertion à la fréquence de Nyquist:

- ≥ −7,0 dB à 2,5 GHz; et
- > −12 dB à 5 GHz.

Cet ajustement d'insertion à la fréquence de Nyquist admet que l'ensemble câble-connecteurs USB SuperSpeed Gen 1, uniquement Type-C vers Type-C, atteigne une longueur totale de 2 mètres environ.

3.7.2.3.2 Multiréflexion intégrée (normative – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

L'écart de la perte d'insertion (ILD, *Insertion Loss Deviation*) est défini comme suit:

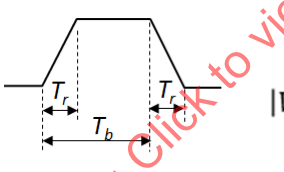
$$ILD(f) = IL(f) - ILfit(f)$$

Il mesure l'ondulation de la perte d'insertion, provoquée par les multiples réflexions à l'intérieur de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs (couplé au montage). L'intégration de *ILD(f)* est appelée "multiréflexion intégrée" (IMR, *Integrated Multi-Reflection*):

$$IMR = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}|ILD(f)|^2|Vin(f)|^2df}{\int_0^{fmax}|Vin(f)|^2df}}\right)$$

où *fmax* = 12,5 GHz et *Vin(f)* est le spectre d'une impulsion trapézoïdale en entrée, défini à la Figure 3-40.

Figure 3-40 — Spectre d'une impulsion en entrée



$$|V_{in}(f)| = \left|\frac{\sin(\pi f T_r)}{\pi f T_r} \cdot \frac{\sin(\pi f T_b)}{\pi f T_b}\right|$$

T_b=Unit interval=100 ps
T_r=0 to 100% rise time = $0.4T_b$

Anglais	Français
Unit interval	intervalle unitaire
0 à 100% rise time	0 à 100 % du temps de montée

L'IMR dépend de ILfitatNq. Une valeur plus élevée d'IMR peut être tolérée lorsque ILfitatNq diminue. La limite d'IMR est spécifiée en fonction de ILfitatNq:

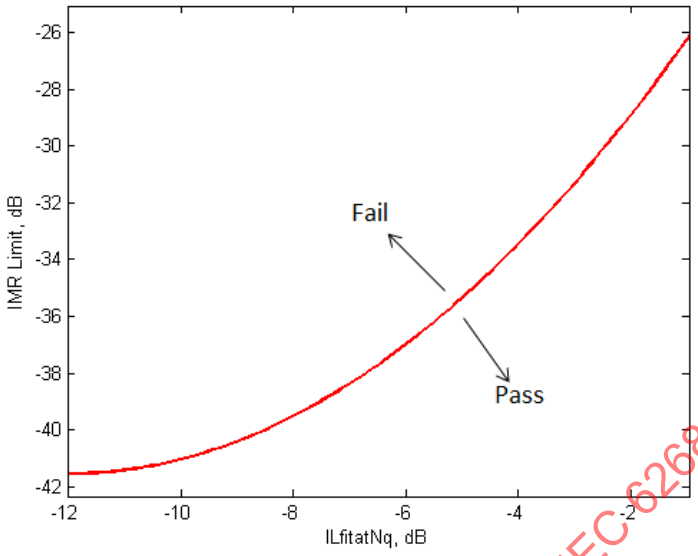
$IMR \leq 0{,}126 \cdot ILfitatNq^2 + 3{,}024 \cdot ILfitatNq - 23{,}392.$

Elle est représentée à la Figure 3-41.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-41 — Limite d'IMR en fonction de ILfitatNq



Anglais	Français
IMR Limit	Limite d'IRM
Fail	Incorrecte
Pass	Correcte

3.7.2.3.3 Diaphonie intégrée entre les paires TX/RX (normative – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

La diaphonie intégrée entre l'ensemble des paires TX/RX est calculée avec les équations suivantes:

$$INEXT = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}(|Vin(f)|^2(|NEXT(f)|^2 + 0{,}125^2 \cdot |C2D(f)|^2) + |Vdd(f)|^2\,|NEXTd(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2 df}}\right)$$

$$IFEXT = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}(|Vin(f)|^2(|FEXT(f)|^2 + 0{,}125^2 \cdot |C2D(f)|^2) + |Vdd(f)|^2\,|FEXTd(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2 df}}\right)$$

où *NEXT(f)*, *FEXT(f)* et *C2D(f)* correspondent respectivement à la paradiaphonie et à la télédiaphonie mesurées entre les paires TX/RX, et à la conversion du mode commun en mode différentiel. Le facteur de $0{,}125^2$ repose sur l'hypothèse que l'amplitude du mode commun correspond à 12,5 % de l'amplitude différentielle. *NEXTd(f)* et *FEXTd(f)* correspondent respectivement à la paradiaphonie et à la télédiaphonie entre la paire D+/D− et les paires TX/RX. *Vdd(f)* est le spectre d'impulsion en entrée, évalué au moyen de l'équation représentée à la Figure 3-40 avec Tb = 2,08 ns.

L'intégration doit être effectuée pour chaque NEXT et FEXT entre toutes les paires différentielles. Les valeurs les plus élevées pour INEXT et IFEXT doivent satisfaire aux exigences suivantes:

- INEXT ≤ −40 dB à 12,5 GHz, pour TX1 à RX1, TX2 à RX2, TX1 à RX2, TX2 à RX1, TX1 à TX2 et RX1 à RX2;
- IFEXT ≤ −40 dB à 12,5 GHz, pour TX1 à RX1, TX2 à RX2, TX1 à RX2, TX2 à RX1, TX1 à TX2 et RX1 à RX2.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

La diaphonie entre ports (TX1 à RX2, TX2 à RX1, TX1 à TX2 et RX1 à RX2) est spécifiée pour prendre en charge les utilisations où les quatre paires SuperSpeed transmettent ou reçoivent des signaux simultanément, par exemple en fonctionnement USB SuperSpeed à double voie.

3.7.2.3.4 Diaphonie intégrée entre les paires TX/RX et la paire USB 2.0 D+/D− (normative – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

La diaphonie entre les paires TX/RX et la paire USB 2.0 D+/D− doit être contrôlée pour s'assurer de la robustesse de la liaison USB 2.0. Etant donné que les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB Type-C Complet peuvent prendre en charge l'utilisation d'*USB 3.2*, d'*USB4* ou d'un mode alternatif (par exemple, DisplayPort™), la diaphonie entre les quatre paires différentielles à grande vitesse et la paire D+/D− peut être une paradiaphonie, une télédiaphonie ou une combinaison des deux. La diaphonie intégrée avec D+/D− est calculée avec les équations suivantes:

$$\text{IDDXT_1NEXT + FEXT } = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2(|NEXT1(f)|^2 + |FEXT(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2df}}\right)$$

où:

NEXT = paradiaphonie entre la paire TX et D+/D−;

FEXT = télédiaphonie entre la paire RX et D+/D−;

fmax = 1,2 GHz.

$$\text{IDDXT_2NEXT } = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2(|NEXT1(f)|^2 + |NEXT2(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}|Vin(f)|^2df}}\right)$$

où:

NEXT1 = paradiaphonie entre la paire TX et D+/D−;

NEXT2 = paradiaphonie entre la paire RX (RX fonctionnant en mode TX) et D+/D−;

fmax = 1,2 GHz.

L'intégration doit être effectuée pour NEXT + FEXT et 2NEXT sur D+/D− à partir des deux paires différentielles situées en A2, A3, B10 et B11 (voir Figure 2-2) et pour NEXT + FEXT et 2NEXT sur D+/D− à partir des deux paires différentielles situées en B2, B3, A10 et A11 (voir Figure 2-2). Les mesures sont réalisées dans deux ensembles afin de réduire le plus possible le nombre de ports exigés pour chaque mesure. La diaphonie différentielle intégrée sur D+/D− doit satisfaire aux exigences suivantes:

- IDDXT_1NEXT + FEXT ≤ −34,5 dB;
- IDDXT_2NEXT ≤ −33 dB.

3.7.2.3.5 Facteur d'adaptation intégré (normatif – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

Le facteur d'adaptation intégré (IRL, *Integrated Return Loss*) gère la réflexion entre l'ensemble câble-connecteurs et le reste du système (hôte et dispositif). Il est défini comme suit:

$$IRL = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}|Vin(f)|^2|SDD21(f)|^2(|SDD11(f)|^2 + |SDD22(f)|^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}|Vin(f)|^2df}}\right)$$

où *SDD21(f)* est la perte d'insertion différentielle mesurée pour l'ensemble câble-connecteurs, *SDD11(f)* et *SDD22(f)* sont les facteurs d'adaptation mesurés pour l'ensemble câble-connecteur côté gauche et côté droit, respectivement, d'une paire différentielle.

L'IRL dépend également fortement de ILfitatNq, et sa limite est spécifiée en fonction de ILfitatNq:

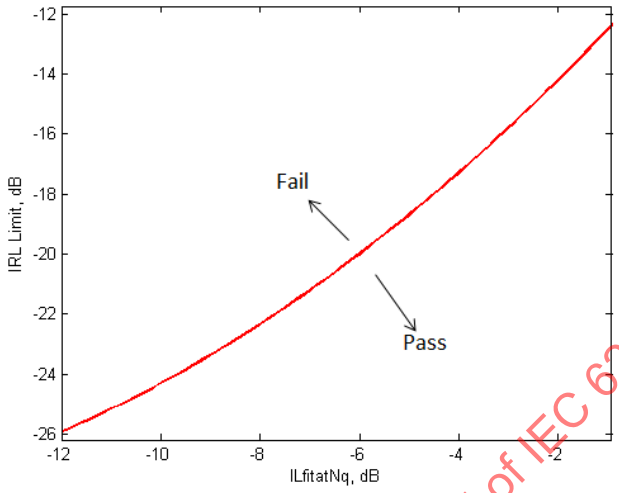
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

$IRL \leq 0{,}046 \cdot ILfitatNq^2 + 1{,}812 \cdot ILfitatNq - 10{,}784.$

Il est représenté à la Figure 3-42.

Figure 3-42 — Limite d'IRL en fonction de ILfitatNq



Anglais	Français
IMR Limit	Limite d'IRM
Fail	Incorrecte
Pass	Correcte

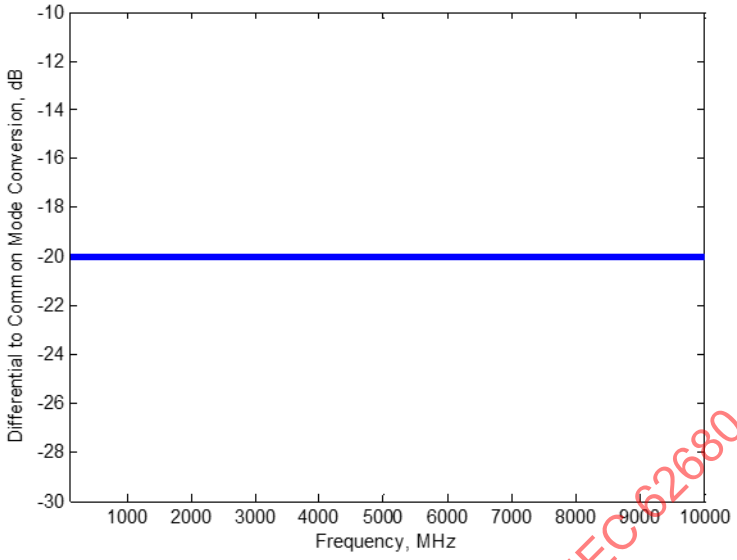
3.7.2.3.6 Conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (normative – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

La conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun permet de contrôler l'injection de bruit en mode commun, de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs dans l'hôte ou le dispositif. La Figure 3-43 représente l'exigence concernant la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (SCD12/SCD21). Un ensemble câble-connecteurs couplé réussit si sa conversion SCD12/SCD21 est inférieure ou égale à −20 dB, de 100 MHz à 10 GHz.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-43 — Exigence concernant la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun



Anglais	Français
Differential to Comm on Mode Conversion	Conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun
Frequency	Fréquence

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.2.4 Exigences normatives concernant l'ensemble câble-connecteurs passif TX/RX (USB4 Gen 3)

Les exigences concernant les paramètres S intégrés pour *USB4* Gen 3 suivent la même méthodologie que celle définie au 3.7.2.3. Certains ajustements de paramètres sont apportés pour convenir au débit de données *USB4* Gen 3. Sauf indication contraire, les paramètres suivants doivent être utilisés pour calculer l'ajustement de la perte d'insertion et les paramètres intégrés:

- l'intervalle unitaire T_b est défini sur 50 ps, ce qui reflète le débit de données *USB4* Gen 3;
- le temps de montée T_r reste de 0,4 * T_b;
- la fréquence d'intégration ou d'ajustement maximale f_{max} est augmentée à 20 GHz;
- un terme f-au-carré est ajouté à l'équation d'ajustement de la perte d'insertion afin d'améliorer la qualité de l'ajustement:

$$IL_{fit} = a + b * \sqrt{f} + c * \sqrt{f^2} + d * \sqrt{f^3} + e * \sqrt{f^4}$$

L'*USB4* Gen 3 introduit une marge de fonctionnement de canal (COM, *Channel Operating Margin*) au niveau du système pour l'ensemble câble-connecteurs. Les descriptions sont fournies au 3.7.2.4.7.

3.7.2.4.1 Ajustement de la perte d'insertion aux fréquences de Nyquist (normatif – USB4 Gen 3)

L'ajustement de la perte d'insertion à la fréquence de Nyquist (ILfitatNq) doit satisfaire aux exigences suivantes:

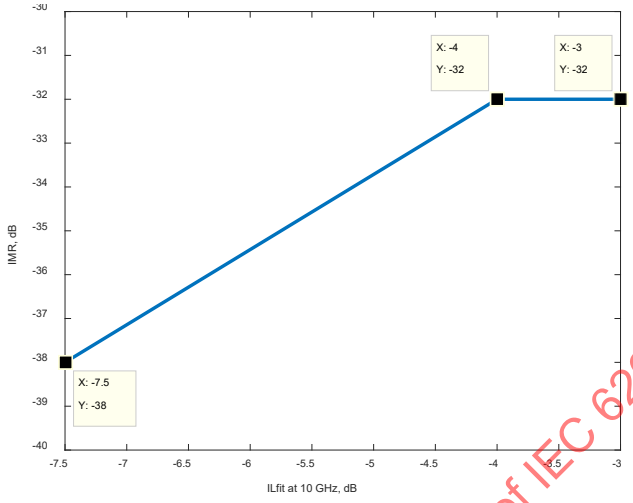
- ≥ −1 dB à 100 MHz;
- ≥ −4,2 dB à 2,5 GHz;
- ≥ −6 dB à 5 GHz;
- ≥ −7,5 dB à 10 GHz;
- ≥ −9,3 dB à 12,5 GHz; et
- ≥ −11 dB à 15 GHz.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.2.4.2 Multiréflexion intégrée (informative – USB4 Gen 3)

La limite d'IMR est représentée à la Figure 3-44.

Figure 3-44 — Limite d'IMR en fonction de ILfit à 10 GHz (USB4 Gen 3)



Anglais	Français
at 10 GHz	à 10 GHz

3.7.2.4.3 Diaphonie intégrée entre les paires TX/RX (normative – USB4 Gen 3)

La diaphonie intégrée à l'intérieur d'un port pour TX1 à RX1 et TX2 à RX2 est recommandée pour satisfaire aux exigences informatives suivantes:

- INEXT ≤ −43 dB; et
- IFEXT ≤ −43 dB.

L'exigence informative recommandée pour la diaphonie port à port intégrée pour TX1 à RX2, TX2 à RX1, TX1 à TX2 et RX1 à RX2 est définie comme suit:

- INEXT_p2p ≤ −50 dB; et
- IFEXT_p2p ≤ −50 dB.

La diaphonie totale est définie pour le mode alternatif DP et le fonctionnement *USB4*. En mode alternatif DP, l'ensemble de la diaphonie est FEXT, alors qu'en mode *USB4*, FEXT et NEXT existent. La diaphonie totale est définie par l'équation ci-dessous:

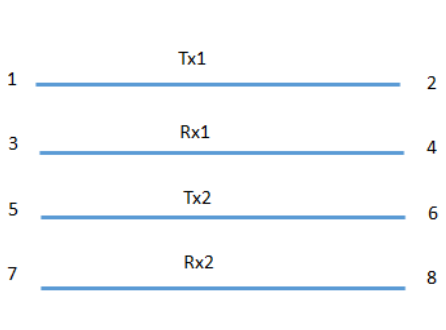
$$\text{IXTi_DP ou IXTi_USB} = dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}} |Vin(f)|^2 \sum_j |SDDij|^2 df}{\int_0^{f_{max}} |Vin(f)|^2 df}}\right)$$

où les victimes i = 1 à 8 et les agresseurs j sont définis à la Figure 3-45.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

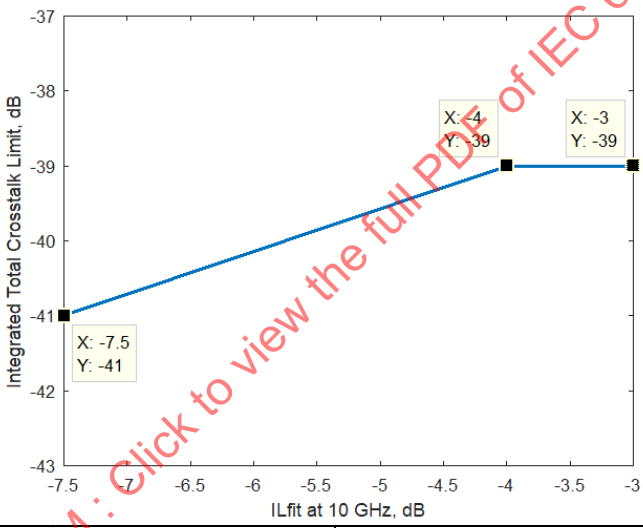
Figure 3-45 — Définition du port, de la victime et de l'agresseur



IXT_DP				IXT_USB			
i	j			i	j		
1	4	6	8	1	3	7	6
2	3	5	7	2	4	8	5
3	2	6	8	3	1	5	8
4	1	5	7	4	2	6	7
5	2	4	8	5	3	7	2
6	1	3	7	6	4	8	1
7	2	4	6	7	1	5	4
8	1	3	5	8	2	6	3

La diaphonie totale pour le mode alternatif DP et le fonctionnement *USB4* doit être contrôlée. Sa limite normative est définie à la Figure 3-46.

Figure 3-46 — Limite IXT_DP et IXT_USB en fonction de ILfit à 10 GHz (USB4 Gen 3)



Anglais	Français
Integrated total crosstalk limit	Limite de diaphonie totale intégrée
at 10 GHz	à 10 GHz

3.7.2.4.4 Diaphonie intégrée entre les paires TX/RX et la paire USB 2.0 D+/D– (normative – USB4 Gen 3)

Les exigences concernant la diaphonie intégrée entre les paires TX/RX et la paire USB 2.0 D+/D– sont définies au 3.7.2.3.4.

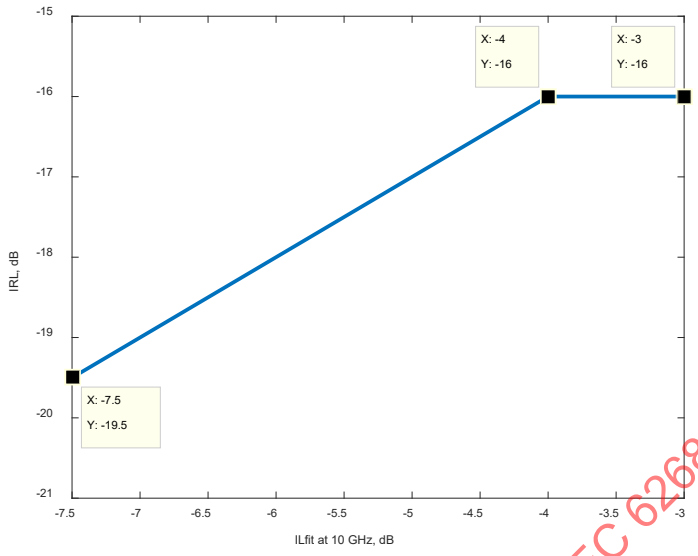
3.7.2.4.5 Facteur d'adaptation intégré (normatif – USB4 Gen 3)

La limite d'IRL est représentée à la Figure 3-47.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-47 — Limite d'IRL en fonction de ILfitatNq (USB4 Gen 3)

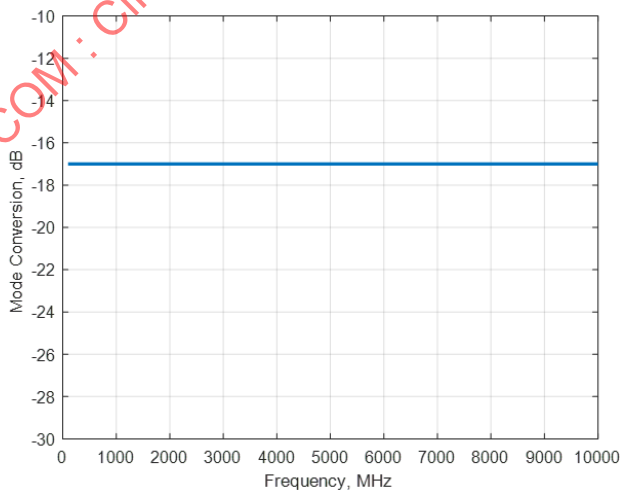


Anglais	Français
at 10 GHz	à 10 GHz

3.7.2.4.6 Conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (normative – USB4 Gen 3)

La Figure 3-48 représente l'exigence concernant la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (SCD12/SCD21). Un ensemble câble-connecteurs couplé réussit si sa conversion SCD12/SCD21 est inférieure ou égale à −17 dB, de 100 MHz à 10 GHz. Noter que −17 dB est la limite la plus défavorable; aucun câble *USB4* Gen 3 Type-C ne peut la dépasser.

Figure 3-48 — Exigence concernant la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (USB4 Gen 3)



Anglais	Français
Mode Conversion	Conversion du mode
Frequency	Fréquence

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.2.4.7 Exigence concernant la COM (normative – USB4 Gen 3)

La marge de fonctionnement de canal (COM) est un facteur de mérite destiné à mesurer la qualité électrique du canal. La description technique de la COM peut être consultée dans la norme IEEE 802.3bj™-2014, 93a.

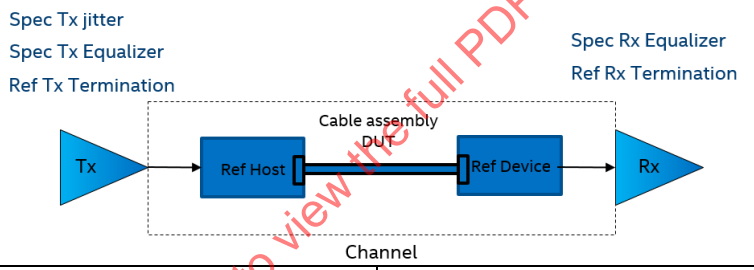
La COM est essentiellement le rapport signal-bruit du canal:

$$COM = 20log10(\frac{A}{N})$$

où A est l'amplitude de signal et N est le bruit combiné au BER (taux d'erreur binaire), qui inclut les sources de bruit provenant de l'ISI (interférence intersymbole), la diaphonie, la gigue de l'émetteur, etc.

Pour calculer la COM, les hôtes/dispositifs de référence, qui représentent les hôtes/dispositifs les plus défavorables, doivent être définis et les valeurs TX et RX de référence doivent être utilisées. Comme représenté à la Figure 3-49, les paramètres S mesurés pour l'ensemble câble-connecteurs sont mis en cascade avec les modèles de l'hôte de référence et du dispositif de référence pour former le canal complet. Le chargement des matrices et l'égalisation TX et RX sont ensuite appliqués au canal pour calculer la COM.

Figure 3-49 — Ensemble câble-connecteurs dans le système



Anglais	Français
Spec Tx jitter	Gigue Tx spé
Spec Tx Equalizer	Equaliseur Tx spé
Ref Tx Termination	Terminaison Tx réf
Ref Host	Hôte de réf
Cable assembly	Ensemble câble-connecteurs
Ref device	Dispositif de réf
Channel	Canal
Spec Rx Equalizer	Equaliseur RX spé
Ref Rx Termination	Terminaison Rx réf

Le Tableau 3-23 définit les paramètres clés du fichier de configuration de la COM. Il utilise les notations COM normalisées. Noter que tous les paramètres d'égalisation TX et RX suivent la spécification *USB4*.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-23 — Paramètres clés du fichier de configuration de la COM

Paramètre	Réglage	Unité	Informations
f_b	20	GBd	Débit de données USB4 Gen 3
C_d	[0 0]	nF	Chargement capacitif TX et RX. Il est défini sur zéro, car le chargement des matrices est traité comme une partie du canal
R_d	[42,5 42,5]	Ohm	Résistance des terminaisons TX et RX
ffe_preset	Tableau 3-4 de la spécification *USB4*		Préréglages d'égalisation TX
g_DC	[-9:1:0]	dB	Gain DC de CTLE
f_p1	5	GHz	Pôle 1 de CTLE
f_p2	10	GHz	Pôle 2 de CTLE
f_z	3,55	GHz	CTLE zéro
A_v	0,4	V	Oscillation du signal
A_fe	0,4	V	Oscillation de l'agresseur FEXT
A_ne	0,6	V	Oscillation de l'agresseur NEXT
N_b	1		Nombre de marques DFE
b_max(1)	0,7		Liaison DFE, rapport du curseur
Sigma_RJ	0,01	UI	Gigue aléatoire TX, valeur efficace
A_DD	0,085	UI	Gigue déterministe TX, moyenne à crête
DER_0	1e-12		Taux d'erreur binaire brut cible
eta_0	3,3e-8	V^2/GHz	Densité spectrale du bruit d'un côté
SNR_TX	40	dB	Rapport signal-bruit TX
Seuil COM	3	dB	Critère de réussite/échec

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Pour faciliter le calcul de la COM de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs, les garanties suivantes sont fournies et peuvent être obtenues sur le site web de l'USB-IF:

- modèles des paramètres S de l'hôte/dispositif de référence;
- modèles des paramètres S de chargement des matrices TX et RX de référence;
- fichier de configuration de la COM;
- outil de calcul de la COM.

3.7.2.5 Exigences concernant le signal à basse vitesse (normatives)

Le présent paragraphe spécifie les exigences électriques concernant les fils CC et SBU, ainsi que le couplage des fils CC, USB D+/D−, VBUS et SBU.

Les fils CC et SBU peuvent être écrantés ou non, et leurs propriétés doivent être conformes au Tableau 3-24.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-24 — Exigences électriques concernant les fils CC et SBU

Nom	Description	Min.	Max.	Unités
zCable_CC	Impédance caractéristique du câble sur le fil CC	32	93	Ω
rCable_CC	Résistance en courant continu sur le fil CC dans le câble		15	Ω
tCableDelay_CC	Délai de propagation sur le fil CC dans le câble		26	ns
cCablePlug_CC	Capacité du câble pour chaque connecteur mâle sur le fil CC		25	pF
zCable_SBU	Impédance caractéristique du câble sur les fils SBU	32	53	Ω
tCableDelay_SBU	Délai de propagation sur les fils SBU dans le câble		26	ns
rCable_SBU	Résistance en courant continu des fils SBU dans le câble		5	Ω
SBU SE Perte d'insertion	Perte d'insertion asymétrique SBU dans le câble		2,0 à 0,5 MHz 4,0 à 1 MHz 9,0 à 10 MHz 10,7 à 25 MHz 11,9 à 50 MHz 13,0 à 100 MHz	dB

Le couplage ou la diaphonie (paradiaphonie et télédiaphonie) doivent être contrôlés pour les signaux à basse vitesse. Le Tableau 3-25 décrit la matrice des couplages spécifiés.

Tableau 3-25 — Matrice de couplage des signaux à basse vitesse

Matrice de couplage	D– (SE)	D+/D– (DF)	VBUS	SBU_B/SBU_A (SE)
CC	FF, CT	FF, CT	FF, CT, CTVPD	FF
D+/D– (DF)	N/A	N/A	FF, CT	FF
SBU_A/SBU_B	N/A	FF	FF	FF

DF: Différentiel; FF: Câble complet; CT: Câble de charge (fonction USB 2.0 incluse); CTVPD: Dispositif USB de charge alimenté par VCONN.

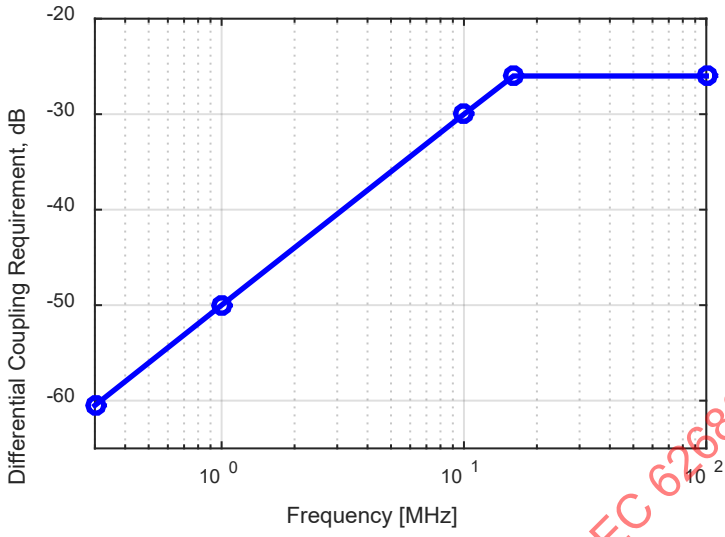
3.7.2.5.1 CC vers USB D+/D– (normatif)

Le couplage différentiel entre le fil CC et le fil D+/D– doit être au-dessous de la limite représentée à la Figure 3-50. La limite est définie avec les valeurs maximales suivantes: (0,3 MHz, –60,5 dB), (1 MHz, –50 dB), (10 MHz, –30 dB), (16 MHz, –26 dB) et (100 MHz, –26 dB).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

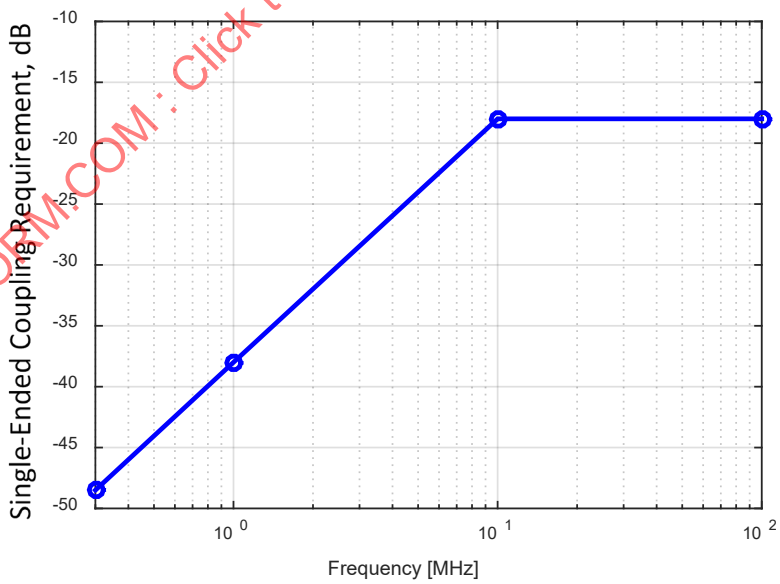
Figure 3-50 — Exigence concernant le couplage différentiel entre le fil CC et le fil D+/D–



Anglais	Français
Differential Coupling Requirement	Exigence de couplage différentiel
Frequency	Fréquence

Pour les câbles USB 2.0 Type-C, le couplage asymétrique entre le fil CC et le fil D– doit être au-dessous de la limite représentée à la Figure 3-51. La limite est définie avec les valeurs maximales suivantes: (0,3 MHz, –48,5 dB), (1 MHz, –38 dB), (10 MHz, –18 dB) et (100 MHz, –18 dB).

Figure 3-51 — Exigence concernant le couplage asymétrique entre le fil CC et le fil D– dans les câbles USB 2.0 Type-C



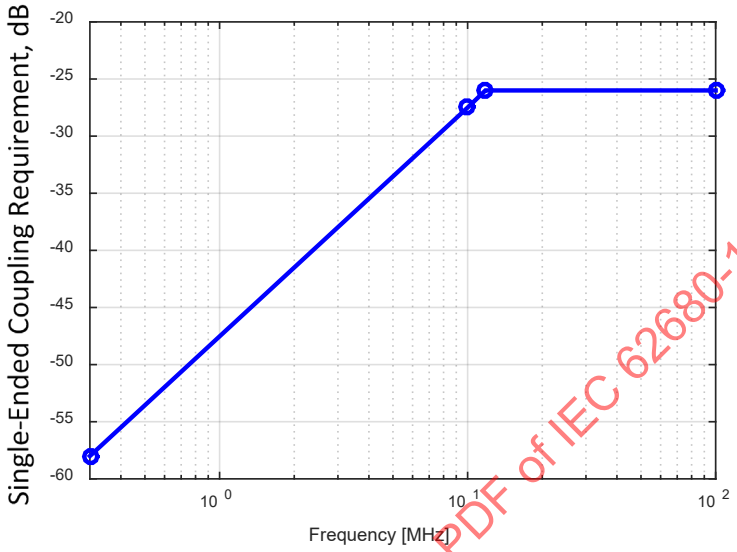
Anglais	Français
Single-Ended Coupling requirement	Exigence de couplage par une seule extrémité
Frequency	Fréquence

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Pour les câbles USB Type-C Complet, le couplage asymétrique entre le fil CC et le fil D– doit être au-dessous de la limite représentée à la Figure 3-52. La limite est définie avec les valeurs maximales suivantes: (0,3 MHz, –8 dB), (10 MHz, –27,5 dB), (11,8 MHz, –26 dB) et (100 MHz, –26 dB).

Figure 3-52 — Exigence concernant le couplage asymétrique entre le fil CC et le fil D– dans les câbles USB Type-C Complet



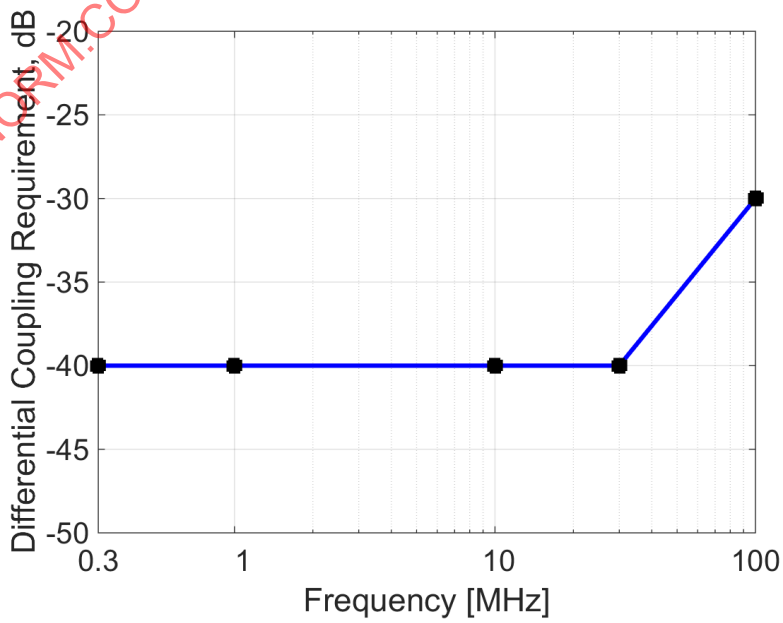
Anglais	Français
Single-Ended Coupling requirement	Exigence de couplage par une seule extrémité
Frequency	Fréquence

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.2.5.2 Couplage VBUS avec SBU_A/SBU_B, CC et USB D+/D– (normatif)

Le couplage différentiel entre VBUS et USB D+/D– doit être au-dessous de la limite représentée à la Figure 3-53. La limite est définie avec les valeurs maximales suivantes: (0,3 Mhz, –40 dB), (1 MHz, –40 dB), (30 MHz, –40 dB) et (100 MHz, –30 dB).

Figure 3-53 — Exigence concernant le couplage différentiel entre VBUS et D+/D–



Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Anglais	Français
Single-Ended Coupling requirement	Exigence de couplage par une seule extrémité
Frequency	Fréquence

L'inductance maximale de la boucle VBUS doit être de 900 nH et l'inductance mutuelle maximale (M) entre VBUS et les lignes de signaux à basse vitesse (CC, SBU_A, SBU_B, D+, D−) doit être spécifiée dans le Tableau 3-26 pour limiter le couplage inductif du bruit VBUS sur les lignes de signaux à basse vitesse. Pour les câbles complets, la capacité de dérivation VBUS doit être comprise entre 8 nF et 500 nF; les valeurs comprises dans cette plage ont une efficacité équivalente pour la dérivation du chemin retour à grande vitesse.

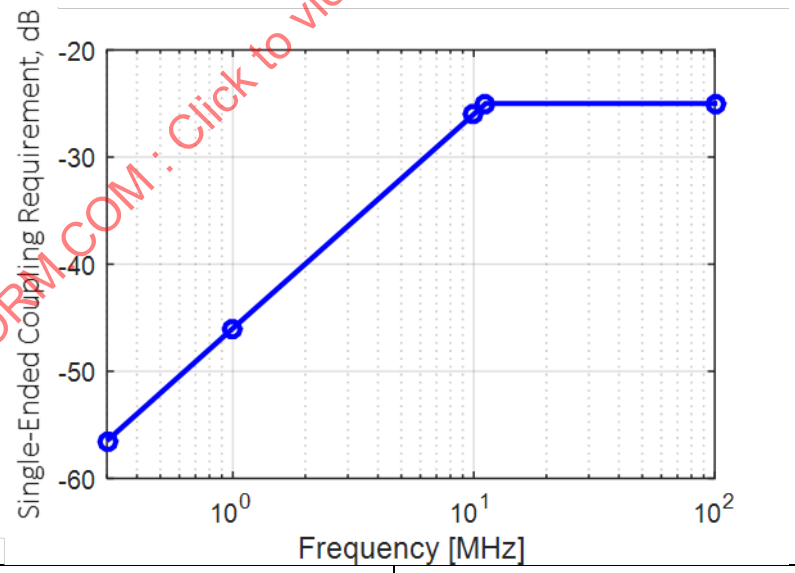
Tableau 3-26 — Inductance mutuelle maximale (M) entre VBUS et les lignes de signaux à basse vitesse

Fil à basse vitesse	Inductance mutuelle max. (nH)
CC	350
SBU_A, SBU_B	330
D+, D−	330

3.7.2.5.3 Couplage entre SBU_A et SBU_B (normatif)

Le couplage asymétrique entre SBU_A et SBU_B doit être au-dessous de la limite représentée à la Figure 3-54. La limite est définie avec les valeurs maximales suivantes: (0,3 MHz, −56,5 dB), (1 MHz, −46 dB), (10 MHz, −26 dB), (11,2 MHz, −25 dB) et (100 MHz, −25 dB).

Figure 3-54 — Exigence concernant le couplage asymétrique entre SBU_A et SBU_B



Anglais	Français
Single-Ended Coupling requirement	Exigence de couplage par une seule extrémité
Frequency	Fréquence

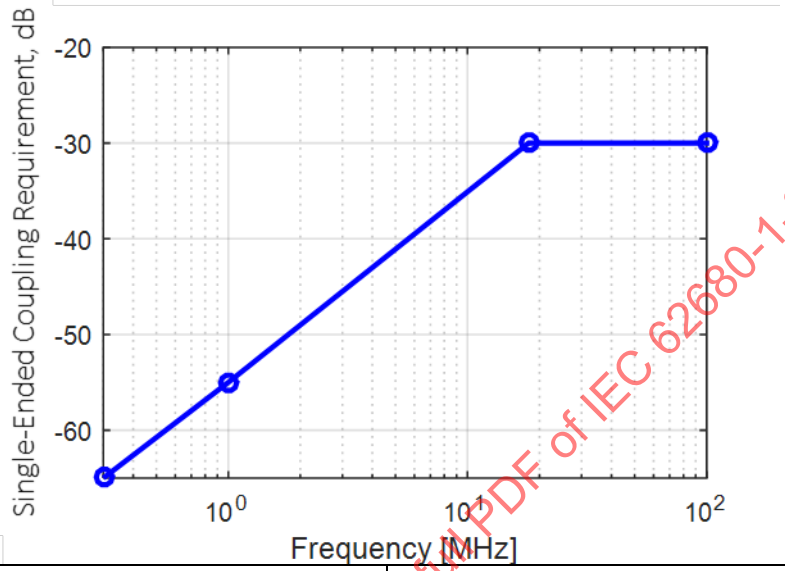
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.2.5.4 Couplage entre SBU_A/SBU_B et CC (normatif)

Le couplage asymétrique entre SBU_A et CC, et entre SBU_B et CC, doit être au-dessous de la limite représentée à la Figure 3-55. La limite est définie avec les valeurs maximales suivantes: (0,3 MHz, −65 dB), (1 MHz, −55 dB), (18 MHz, −30 dB) et (100 MHz, −30 dB).

Figure 3-55 — Exigence concernant le couplage asymétrique entre SBU_A/SBU_B et CC

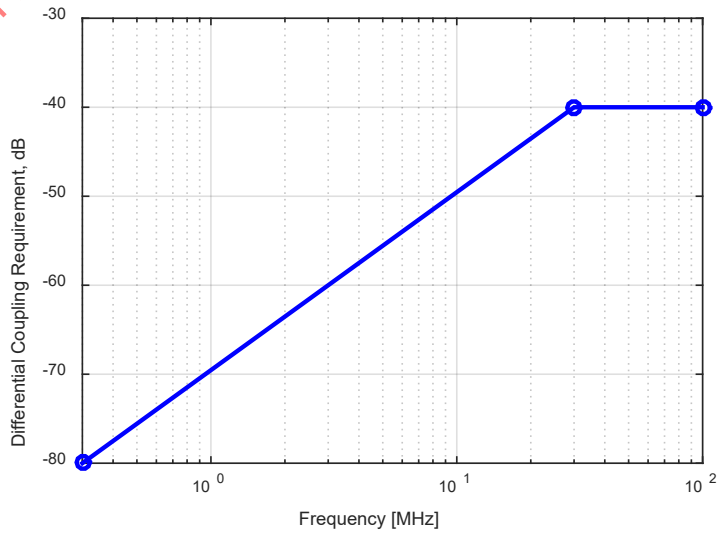


Anglais	Français
Single-Ended Coupling requirement	Exigence de couplage par une seule extrémité
Frequency	Fréquence

3.7.2.5.5 Couplage entre SBU_A/SBU_B et USB D+/D− (normatif)

Le couplage entre SBU_A et D+/D− en mode différentiel, et entre SBU_B et D+/D− en mode différentiel, doit être au-dessous de la limite représentée à la Figure 3-56. La limite est définie avec les valeurs maximales suivantes: (0,3 MHz, −80 dB), (30 MHz, −40 dB) et (100 MHz, −40 dB).

Figure 3-56 — Exigence concernant le couplage entre SBU_A et D+/D− en mode différentiel, et entre SBU_B et D+/D− en mode différentiel



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Anglais	Français
Differential Coupling Requirement	Exigence de couplage différentiel
Frequency	Fréquence

3.7.2.6 Exigences concernant le signal USB D+/D− (normatives)

Les lignes USB D+/D− de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs passif USB Type-C vers USB Type-C doivent satisfaire aux exigences définies dans le Tableau 3-27.

Tableau 3-27 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal USB D+/D− pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs passifs USB Type-C vers USB Type-C

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Impédance différentielle	EIA 364-108 Cet essai garantit que l'impédance des lignes D+/D− de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs est correcte. Pour l'ensemble câble-connecteurs complet.	75 Ω min. et 105 Ω max. Temps de montée: 400 ps (20 % à 80 %)
Temps de propagation	EIA 364-103 L'objectif de cet essai est de vérifier la propagation de bout en bout des lignes D+/D− de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.	26 ns max. Temps de montée: 400 ps (20 % à 80 %)
Obliquité dans les paires	EIA 364-103 Cet essai garantit que les signaux des lignes D+ et D− de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs atteignent le récepteur en même temps.	100 ps max. Temps de montée: 400 ps (20 % à 80 %)
Affaiblissement des paires D+/D−	EIA 364-101 Cet essai garantit que la paire D+/D− d'un ensemble câble-connecteurs est capable de fournir une puissance de signal adéquate au récepteur afin de maintenir un taux d'erreur faible.	≥ −1,02 dB à 50 MHz ≥ −1,43 dB à 100 MHz ≥ −2,40 dB à 200 MHz ≥ −4,35 dB à 400 MHz
D+ ou D− Résistance en courant continu	Cet essai garantit que la plage de résistances en courant continu du fil D+/D− est correcte afin de prévoir le niveau d'EOP et de régler le niveau de déconnexion de l'*USB 2.0*.	3,5 Ω max.

3.7.2.7 Tolérance sur tension continue VBUS (normative)

Un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB Type-C doit tolérer une tension continue VBUS de 21 V au courant assigné de câble (c'est-à-dire 3 A ou 5 A) appliquée pendant une heure comme condition préalable à l'essai portant sur les caractéristiques électriques de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.

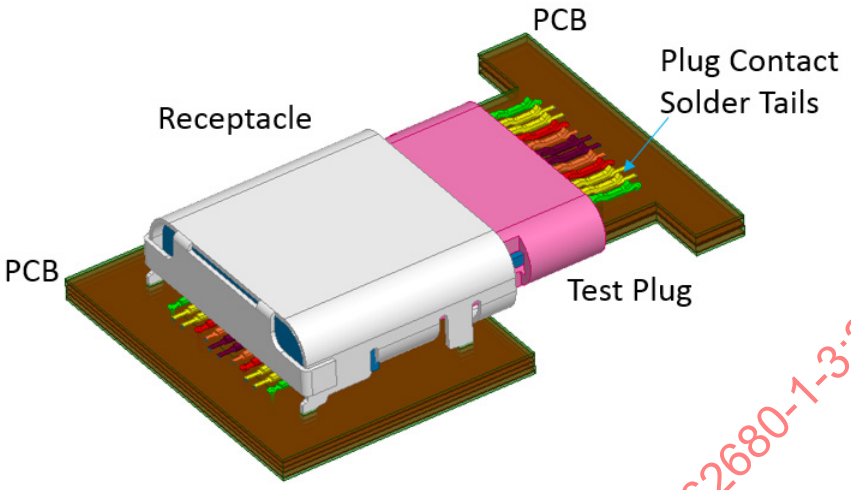
3.7.3 Connecteur couplé (informatif – USB 3.2 Gen 2 et USB4 Gen 2)

Le connecteur couplé défini dans la présente spécification USB Type-C se compose d'un connecteur femelle monté sur un PCB (représentatif du mode d'utilisation du connecteur femelle dans un matériel) et d'un connecteur mâle d'essai, lui-même monté sur un PCB (carte d'accès) sans câble. Cet ensemble est représenté à la Figure 3-57. Noter que le connecteur mâle d'essai est également utilisé lors de l'essai portant sur les paires TX/RX hôte/dispositif.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-57 — Représentation du connecteur couplé USB Type-C

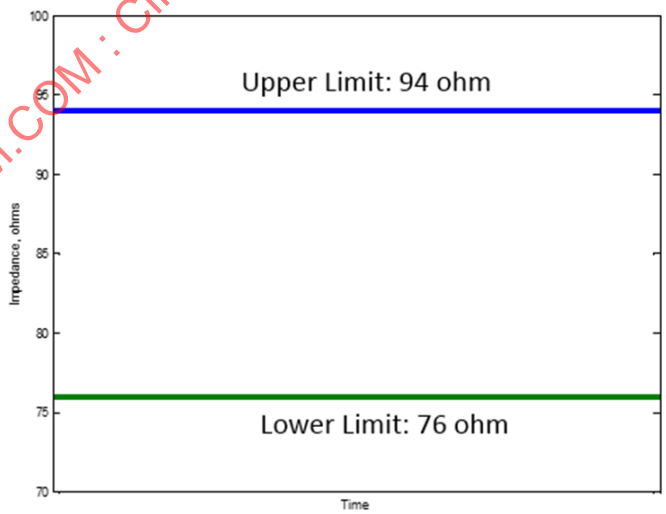


Anglais	Français
Receptacle	Connecteur femelle
Test Plug	Connecteur mâle à l'essai
Plug Contact Solder Tails	Connexions soudées du connecteur mâle

3.7.3.1 Impédance différentielle (informative)

L'impédance cible du connecteur couplé est spécifiée pour réduire le plus possible la réflexion émise par le connecteur. Il convient que l'impédance différentielle d'un connecteur couplé soit de 85 Ω ± 9 Ω pour un temps de montée de 40 ps (20 % à 80 %). Il convient que le profil d'impédance d'un connecteur couplé se situe dans les limites représentées à la Figure 3-58.

Figure 3-58 — Limites d'impédance recommandées d'un connecteur couplé USB Type-C



Anglais	Français
Impedance, ohms	Impédance, Ω
Upper Limit: 94 ohm	Limite supérieure: 94 Ω
Lower Limit: 76 ohm	Limite inférieure: 76 Ω

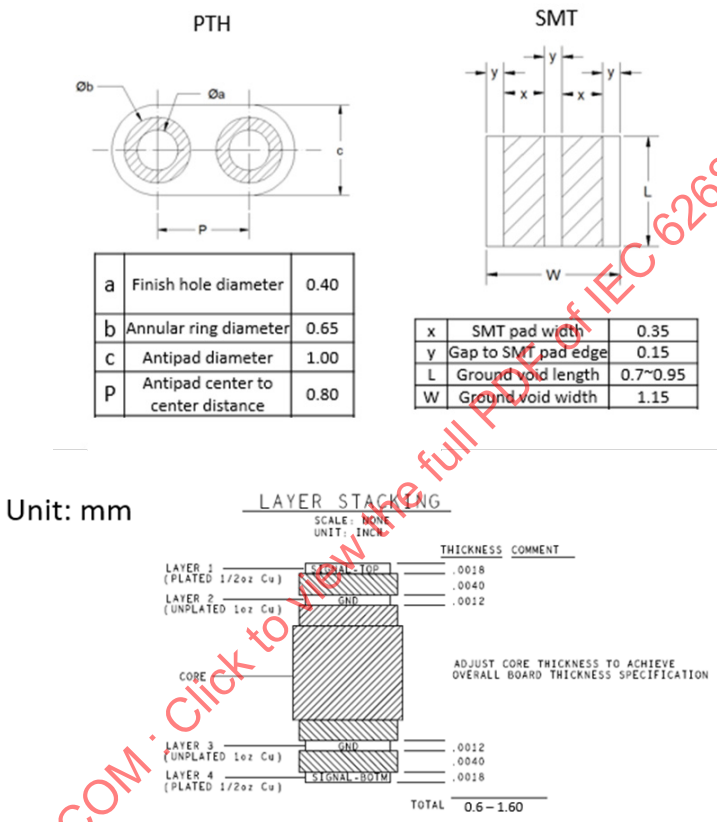
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Time	Temps

Il convient de modéliser, au moyen de la solution 3D Field Solver, l'empilage du PCB, la géométrie des fils et celle des pastilles de soudure afin d'optimiser les performances électriques. Des exemples de vides de terre sous les plaques de signal, reposant sur la géométrie des plaques, le type de montage et l'empilage des PCB sont représentés à la Figure 3-59.

Figure 3-59 — Dimensions recommandées des vides de terre pour un connecteur femelle USB Type-C



Anglais	Français
PTH	TROU MÉTALLISÉ
SMT	MONTAGE EN SURFACE
Finish hole diameter	Diamètre final du trou
Annular ring diameter	Diamètre de la bague annulaire
Antipad diameter	Diamètre de la contrepastille
Antipad center to center distance	Distance centre-à-centre de la pastille
SMT pad width	Largeur de la pastille SMT
Gap to SMT pat edge	Ecart avec l'arête de la pastille SMT
Ground void length	Longueur du vide GND
Ground void width	Largeur du vide GND
LAYER STACKING	COMPOSITION DES COUCHES
SCALE: NONE	ÉCHELLE: AUCUNE
UNIT: MM	UNITÉ: MM

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Unit: inch	Unité: pouce
LAYER 1 (PLATED 1/2$_{OZ\ Cu}$)	COUCHE 1 (PLAQUÉ, 1/2 once de Cu)
LAYER 2 (UNPLATED 1$_{OZ\ Cu}$)	COUCHE 2 (NON PLAQUÉ, 1 once de Cu)
CORE	CONDUCTEUR
LAYER 3 (UNPLATED 1$_{OZ\ Cu}$)	Couche 3 (NON PLAQUÉ, 1 once de Cu)
LAYER 4 (PLATED 1/2 $_{OZ\ Cu}$)	Couche 4 (PLAQUÉ, 1/2 once de Cu)
SIGNAL - TOP	SIGNAL - HAUT
SIGNAL - BOTM	SIGNAL - BAS
THICKNESS	ÉPAISSEUR
COMMENT	COMMENTAIRE
ADJUST CORE THICKNESS TO ACHIEVE AVERALL BOARD THICKNESS SPECIFICATION	AJUSTER L'ÉPAISSEUR DU CONDUCTEUR POUR RESPECTER LA SPÉCIFICATION RELATIVE À L'ÉPAISSEUR TOTALE DES PAROIS

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.3.2 Caractéristiques recommandées d'intégrité de signal et de paramètre S différentiel pour des connecteurs couplés (informatives)

Les caractéristiques recommandées d'intégrité de signal pour une paire de connecteurs couplés USB Type-C sont répertoriées dans le Tableau 3-28.

Tableau 3-28 — Caractéristiques recommandées d'intégrité de signal pour des connecteurs couplés USB Type-C (informatives)

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Ajustement de la perte d'insertion différentielle aux fréquences de Nyquist (ILfitatNq)	ILfitatNq est évalué aux fréquences de Nyquist TX/RX Gen 1, Gen 2 et Gen 3	≥ −0,6 dB à 2,5 GHz ≥ −0,8 dB à 5,0 GHz ≥ −1,0 dB à 10 GHz
Multiréflexion différentielle intégrée (IMR)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert ILD(f)\rvert^2\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −40 dB
Paradiaphonie différentielle intégrée sur TX/RX (INEXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2 + 0{,}125^2\cdot\lvert C2D(f)\rvert^2)df + \int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vdd(f)\rvert^2\ \lvert NEXTd(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ où: *NEXT* = NEXT entre les paires TX/RX; *NEXTd* = NEXT entre les paires TX/RX et la paire D+/D−.	≤ −44 dB
Télédiaphonie différentielle intégrée sur TX/RX (IFEXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2 + 0{,}125^2\cdot\lvert C2D(f)\rvert^2)df + \int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vdd(f)\rvert^2\ \lvert FEXTd(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ où: *FEXT* = FEXT entre les paires TX/RX; *FEXTd* = FEXT entre les paires TX/RX et la paire D+/D−.	≤ −44 dB

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Diaphonie différentielle de TX/RX sur D+/D−	Paradiaphonie et télédiaphonie différentielles des paires TX/RX sur la paire D+/D− dans les connecteurs couplés.	Voir Figure 3-60
Diaphonie différentielle de D+/D− sur TX/RX	Paradiaphonie et télédiaphonie différentielles de la paire D+/D− sur les paires TX/RX dans les connecteurs couplés.	Voir Figure 3-60
Facteur d'adaptation intégré (IRL)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert SDD21(f)\rvert^2(\lvert SDD11(f)\rvert^2+\lvert SDD22(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −18 dB
Conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (SCD12 et SCD21)	La conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun permet de contrôler l'injection de bruit en mode commun, de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs dans l'hôte ou le dispositif. Plage de fréquences: 100 MHz ~ 10,0 GHz	Voir Figure 3-61

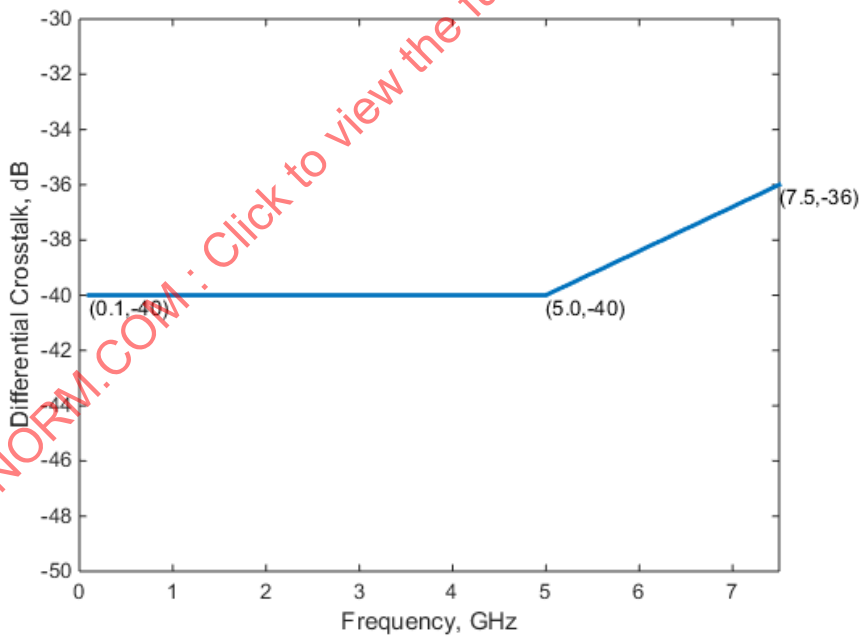
Note: *fmax* = 12,5 GHz (sauf spécification contraire);

Vin(f) est défini à la Figure 3-40 avec Tb (UI) = 100 ps;

Vdd(f) est également défini à la Figure 3-40 avec Tb (UI) = 2,08 ns;

C2D(f) = paradiaphonie et télédiaphonie respectivement mesurées entre les paires TX/RX, et conversion du mode commun en mode différentiel. Le facteur de $0{,}125^2$ repose sur l'hypothèse que l'amplitude du mode commun correspond à 12,5 % de l'amplitude différentielle.

Figure 3-60 — Limites recommandées pour la paradiaphonie et la télédiaphonie différentielles entre la paire D+/D− et les paires TX/RX

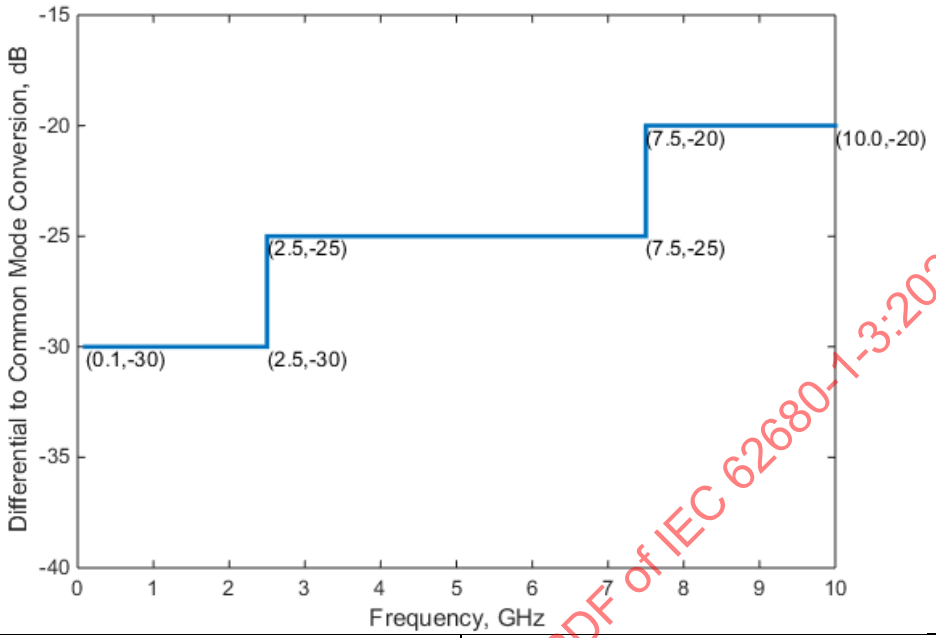


Anglais	Français
Differential Crosstalk	Diaphonie différentielle
Frequency	Fréquence

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-61 — Limites recommandées pour la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun



Anglais	Français
Differential to Comm on Mode Conversion	Conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun
Frequency	Fréquence

3.7.4 Connecteur couplé (normatif – USB4 Gen 3)

Les exigences concernant le connecteur couplé pour *USB4* Gen 3 sont normatives et répertoriées dans le Tableau 3-29. Sauf spécification contraire, les éléments à spécifier sont identiques à ceux définis au 3.7.3 et les paramètres utilisés pour calculer les paramètres intégrés sont les mêmes que ceux définis au 3.7.2.4 pour l'ensemble câble-connecteurs *USB4* Gen 3.

Tableau 3-29 — Caractéristiques d'intégrité de signal pour un connecteur couplé USB Type-C pour USB4 Gen 3 (normatives)

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Ajustement de la perte d'insertion différentielle aux fréquences de Nyquist (ILfitatNq)	IlfitatNq est évalué à certaines fréquences.	≥ −0,6 dB à 2,5 GHz ≥ −0,8 dB à 5,0 GHz ≥ −1,0 dB à 10 GHz ≥ −1,25 dB à 12,5 GHz ≥ −1,5 dB à 15 GHz
Multiréflexion différentielle intégrée (IMR)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert ILD(f)\rvert^2\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −39 dB
Paradiaphonie différentielle intégrée sur TX/RX (INEXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ où: *NEXT* = NEXT entre TX1et RX1, et TX2 et RX2.	≤ −43 dB

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Télédiaphonie différentielle intégrée sur TX/RX (IFEXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ où: *FEXT* = FEXT entre TX1 et RX1, et TX2 et RX2.	≤ −43 dB
Diaphonie différentielle de TX/RX sur D+/D−	Paradiaphonie et télédiaphonie différentielles des paires TX/RX sur la paire D+/D− dans les connecteurs couplés, et paradiaphonie et télédiaphonie différentielles de la paire D+/D− sur les paires TX/RX dans les connecteurs couplés. $dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ où: *FEXT* = télédiaphonie entre les paires TX/RX et la paire D+/D−; *NEXT* = paradiaphonie entre les paires TX/RX et la paire D+/D−; *fmax* = 1,2 GHz.	≤ −50 dB
Diaphonie différentielle de D+/D− sur TX/RX		
Facteur d'adaptation intégré (IRL)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert SDD21(f)\rvert^2(\lvert SDD11(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert SDD22(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −15 dB
Conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (SCD12 et SCD21)	La conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun permet de contrôler l'injection de bruit en mode commun, de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs dans l'hôte ou le dispositif. Plage de fréquences: 100 MHz – 10,0 GHz	≤ −20 dB

Note: *fmax* = 20 GHz (sauf spécification contraire);
Vin(f) est défini avec Tb (UI) = 50 ps.

3.7.5 Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant (normatifs)

Les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant peuvent prendre en charge l'*USB 2.0* uniquement ou l'*USB 3.2* Gen 2. Les ensembles câble-connecteurs *USB 3.2* Gen 1 uniquement Type-C vers existant ne sont pas admis.

3.7.5.1 Ensembles câble-connecteurs USB 2.0 uniquement (normatifs)

Les ensembles câble-connecteurs *USB 2.0* uniquement Type-C vers existant incluent:

- connecteur mâle USB Type-C vers connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Standard-A;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C vers connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Standard-B;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C vers connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Micro-B;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C vers connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Mini-B.

Les exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal USB D+/D− sont spécifiées dans le Tableau 3-30.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-30 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal USB D+/D– pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB existant

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Impédance différentielle	EIA 364-108 Cet essai garantit que l'impédance des lignes D+/D– de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs est correcte. Pour l'ensemble câble-connecteurs complet.	75 Ω min. et 105 Ω max. Temps de montée: 400 ps (20 % à 80 %)
Temps de propagation	EIA 364-103 L'objectif de cet essai est de vérifier la propagation de bout en bout des lignes D+/D– de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.	10 ns maximum pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers Micro-B; 20 ns maximum pour tous les autres ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB existant. Temps de montée: 400 ps (20 % à 80 %)
Obliquité dans les paires	EIA 364-103 Cet essai garantit que les signaux des lignes D+ et D– de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs atteignent le récepteur en même temps.	100 ps max. Temps de montée: 400 ps (20 % à 80 %)
Affaiblissement des paires D+/D–	EIA 364-101 Cet essai garantit que la paire D+/D– d'un ensemble câble-connecteurs est capable de fournir une puissance de signal adéquate au récepteur afin de maintenir un taux d'erreur faible.	≥ –1,02 dB à 50 MHz ≥ –1,43 dB à 100 MHz ≥ –2,40 dB à 200 MHz ≥ –4,35 dB à 400 MHz
D+ ou D– Résistance en courant continu	Cet essai garantit que la plage de résistances en courant continu du fil D+/D– est correcte afin de prévoir le niveau d'EOP et de régler le niveau de déconnexion de l'*USB 2.0*.	3,5 Ω max.

3.7.5.2 Ensembles câble-connecteurs *USB 3.1* Gen 2 (normatifs)

Les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Gen 2 existant incluent:

- connecteur mâle USB Type-C vers connecteur mâle *USB 3.1* Standard-A;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C vers connecteur mâle *USB 3.1* Standard-B;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C vers connecteur mâle *USB 3.1* Micro-B.

Les objectifs de conception informatifs pour ces câbles sont donnés dans le Tableau 3-31.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-31 — Objectifs de conception pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Gen 2 existant (informatifs)

Eléments	Objectifs de conception
Impédance différentielle	76 Ω min. et 96 Ω max. Temps de montée: 40 ps (20 % à 80 %)
Perte d'insertion différentielle	≥ −2 dB à 100 MHz ≥ −4 dB à 2,5 GHz, sauf pour l'ensemble câble-connecteurs mâle USB Type-C vers mâle USB 3.1 Standard-A, dont les valeurs sont les suivantes: ≥−3,5 dB à 2,5 GHz −6 dB maximum à 5 GHz
NEXT différentielle entre les paires SuperSpeed	≤ −34 dB à 5 GHz
NEXT et FEXT différentielles entre les paires D+/D− et SuperSpeed	≤ −30 dB à 5 GHz

Les exigences normatives incluent la signalisation USB D+/D− spécifiée dans le Tableau 3-30 et les paramètres USB SuperSpeed spécifiés dans le Tableau 3-32.

Tableau 3-32 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Gen 2 existant (normatives)

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Ajustement de la perte d'insertion différentielle aux fréquences de Nyquist (ILfitatNq)	ILfitatNq est évalué aux fréquences de Nyquist SuperSpeed Gen 1 et Gen 2.	≥ −4 dB à 2,5 GHz, sauf pour l'ensemble câble-connecteurs mâle USB Type-C vers mâle USB 3.1 Standard-A, dont les valeurs sont les suivantes: ≥ −3,5 dB à 2,5 GHz ≥ −6,0 dB à 5,0 GHz
Multiréflexion différentielle intégrée (IMR)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}} \lvert ILD(f)\rvert^2 \lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{f_{max}} \lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	$\leq 0{,}126 \cdot ILfitatNq^2 + 3{,}024 \cdot ILfitatNq - 21{,}392$ Voir Figure 3-62.
Diaphonie différentielle intégrée sur SuperSpeed (ISSXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}} (\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 \lvert NEXTs(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert Vdd(f)\rvert^2 \lvert NEXTd(f)\rvert^2) df}{\int_0^{f_{max}} \lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ où: *NEXT* = NEXT entre les paires SuperSpeed; *NEXTd* = NEXT entre les paires D+/D− et SuperSpeed; *Vdd(f)* = spectre d'une impulsion en entrée sur la paire D+/D−, évalué au moyen de l'équation représentée à la Figure 3-40 avec Tb (UI) = 2,08 ns.	≤ −38 dB

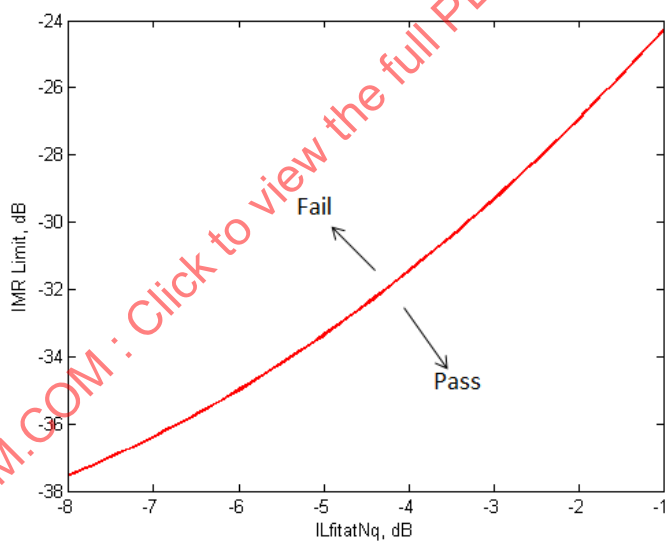
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Diaphonie différentielle intégrée sur D+/D− (IDDXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2+\lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2df}}\right)$ où: *NEXT* = paradiaphonie entre SuperSpeed et D+/D−; *FEXT* = télédiaphonie entre SuperSpeed et D+/D−; *fmax* = 1,2 GHz.	≤ −28,5 dB
Facteur d'adaptation intégré (IRL)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert SDD21(f)\rvert^2(\lvert SDD11(f)\rvert^2+\lvert SDD22(f)\rvert^2)df}{\int_0^{fmax}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2df}}\right)$	$\leq 0{,}046\cdot ILfitatNq^2 + 1{,}812\cdot ILfitatNq - 9{,}784$ Voir Figure 3-63.
Conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (SCD12 et SCD21)	La conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun permet de contrôler l'injection de bruit en mode commun, de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs dans l'hôte ou le dispositif. Plage de fréquences: 100 MHz ~ 10,0 GHz	≤ −20 dB

Note: *fmax* = 10 GHz (sauf spécification contraire); *Vin(f)* est défini à la Figure 3-40 avec Tb (UI) = 100 ps; et *Vdd(f)* est également défini à la Figure 3-40 avec Tb (UI) = 2,08 ns.

Figure 3-62 — Limite d'IMR en fonction de ILfitatNq pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant

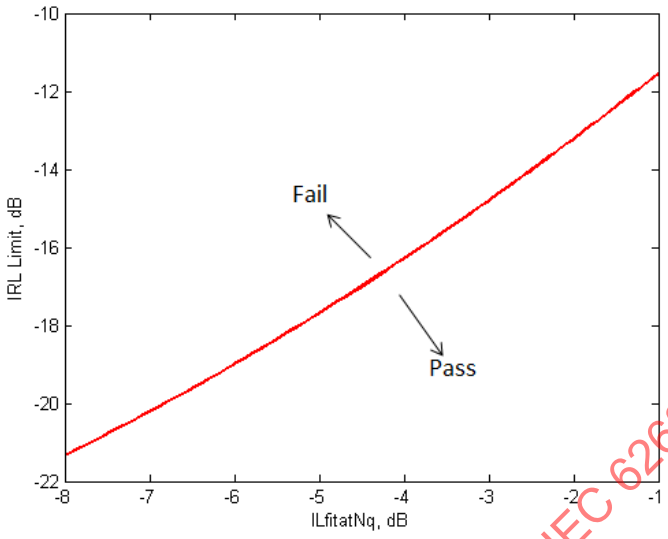


Anglais	Français
IMR Limit	Limite d'IRM
Fail	Incorrecte
Pass	Correcte

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-63 — Limite d'IRL en fonction de ILfitatNq pour un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant



Anglais	Français
IMR Limit	Limite d'IRM
Fail	Incorrecte
Pass	Correcte

3.7.5.3 Connecteurs mâles USB existants conformes utilisés dans les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant

Les exigences suivantes viennent s'ajouter aux exigences existantes pour les connecteurs existants, lorsqu'ils sont utilisés dans les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers existant conformes.

3.7.5.3.1 Exigences concernant les matériaux de contact pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB Micro-B

Pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB Micro-B, modifier le matériau de contact dans le connecteur USB Micro-B pour obtenir la résistance de contact à faible niveau suivante (EIA 364-23B):

- 20 mΩ (max.) initiaux pour les contacts VBUS et GND;
- variation maximale (delta) de +10 mΩ après application de contraintes environnementales.

3.7.5.3.2 Courant assigné des contacts pour les paires couplées de connecteurs USB Standard-A, USB Standard-B et USB Micro-B (EIA 364-70, Méthode 2)

Lorsqu'un courant de 3 A est appliqué à la broche VBUS et à sa broche GND correspondante (à savoir aux broches 1 et 4 dans un connecteur USB Standard-A ou USB Standard-B, ou aux broches 1 et 5 dans un connecteur USB Micro-B), le delta de température ne doit pas être supérieur à 30 °C, quel que soit le point des connecteurs soumis à l'essai, lorsque le mesurage est réalisé à une température ambiante de 25 °C.

3.7.6 Ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers USB existant (normatifs)

Seuls les ensembles adaptateurs existants normalisés suivants sont définis:

- connecteur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B;
- connecteur mâle USB Type-C Complet vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.6.1 Ensemble adaptateur mâle *USB 2.0* Type-C vers femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B (normatif)

Cet ensemble adaptateur ne prend en charge que la signalisation *USB 2.0*. Sa longueur totale ne doit pas dépasser 150 mm, d'une extrémité à l'autre. Le Tableau 3-33 définit les exigences électriques.

Tableau 3-33 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal USB D+/D− pour les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers USB existant (normatives)

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Impédance différentielle	EIA 364-108 Cet essai garantit que l'impédance des lignes D+/D− de l'ensemble adaptateur est correcte. Pour l'ensemble adaptateur complet.	75 Ω min. et 105 Ω max. Temps de montée: 400 ps (20 % à 80 %)
Obliquité dans les paires	EIA 364-103 Cet essai garantit que les signaux des lignes D+ et D− de l'ensemble adaptateur atteignent le récepteur en même temps.	20 ps max. Temps de montée: 400 ps (20 % à 80 %)
Perte d'insertion différentielle	EIA 364-101 Cet essai garantit que la paire D+/D− d'un ensemble adaptateur peut fournir l'alimentation de signal adéquate au récepteur.	−0,7 dB max. à 400 MHz
D+ ou D− Résistance en courant continu	Cet essai garantit que la plage de résistances en courant continu du fil D+/D− est correcte afin de prévoir le niveau d'EOP et de régler le niveau de déconnexion de l'*USB 2.0*.	2,5 Ω max.

3.7.6.2 Ensemble adaptateur mâle USB Type-C Complet vers femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A (normatif)

L'ensemble adaptateur mâle USB Type-C Complet vers femelle *USB 3.1* Standard–A est prévu pour une utilisation avec un dispositif à connexion directe (comme une clé USB). Le fonctionnement d'un système n'est pas garanti lors de l'utilisation d'un ensemble adaptateur avec un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB normalisé.

Pour réduire le plus possible l'impact de l'ensemble adaptateur sur l'intégrité du signal système, il convient que l'ensemble adaptateur respecte les objectifs de conception informatifs donnés dans le Tableau 3-34.

Tableau 3-34 — Objectifs de conception pour les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-A (informatifs)

Eléments	Objectifs de conception
Facteur d'adaptation différentiel	≤ −15 dB à 5 GHz Normalisé avec 85 Ω.
Perte d'insertion différentielle	≥ −2,4 dB à 2,5 GHz, ≥ −3,5 dB à 5 GHz
NEXT différentielle entre les paires SuperSpeed	≤ −40 dB à 2,5 GHz ≤ −34 dB à 5 GHz
NEXT et FEXT différentielles entre les paires D+/D− et SuperSpeed	≤ −30 dB à 2,5 GHz

Les exigences normatives pour l'ensemble adaptateur sont définies dans le Tableau 3-33 et dans le Tableau 3-35. La longueur totale de l'ensemble adaptateur est limitée à 150 mm max.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-35 — Exigences concernant l'intégrité du signal pour un ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A (normatives)

Eléments	Descriptions et procédures	Exigences
Ajustement de la perte d'insertion différentielle à la fréquence de Nyquist (ILfitatNq)	ILfitatNq est évalué à la fréquence de Nyquist SuperSpeed Gen 1.	≥ −2,4 dB à 2,5 GHz ≥ −3,5 dB à 5 GHz
Multiréflexion différentielle intégrée (IMR)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert ILD(f)\rvert^2\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −38 dB, Tb = 200 ps ≤ −27 dB, Tb = 100 ps
Diaphonie différentielle intégrée sur SuperSpeed (ISSXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}(\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2\lvert NEXTs(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert Vdd(f)\rvert^2\lvert NEXTd(f)\rvert^2) df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ où: *NEXT* = NEXT entre les paires SuperSpeed; *NEXTd* = NEXT entre les paires D+/D− et SuperSpeed; *Vdd(f)* = spectre d'une impulsion en entrée sur la paire D+/D−, évalué au moyen de l'équation représentée à la Figure 3-40 avec Tb (UI) = 2,08 ns.	≤ −37 dB
Diaphonie différentielle intégrée sur D+/D− (IDDXT)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert NEXT(f)\rvert^2 + \lvert FEXT(f)\rvert^2) df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$ où: *NEXT* = paradiaphonie entre SuperSpeed et D+/D−; *FEXT* = télédiaphonie entre SuperSpeed et D+/D−; f_{max} = 1,2 GHz.	≤ −30 dB
Facteur d'adaptation intégré (IRL)	$dB\left(\sqrt{\frac{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2(\lvert SDD21(f)\rvert^2(\lvert SDD11(f)\rvert^2+\lvert SDD22(f)\rvert^2) df}{\int_0^{f_{max}}\lvert Vin(f)\rvert^2 df}}\right)$	≤ −14,5 dB, Tb = 200 ps ≤ −12,0 dB, Tb = 100 ps
Mode différentiel en mode commun	Conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun (SCD12, SCD21)	≤ −15 dB

Note: *fmax* = 7,5 GHz; *Vin(f)* est défini à la Figure 3-40 avec Tb (UI) = 200 ps; et *Vdd(f)* est également spécifié à la Figure 3-40 avec Tb (UI) = 2,08 ns.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.7.6.3 Connecteurs femelles USB existants conformes utilisés dans les ensembles adaptateur USB Type-C vers existant

3.7.6.3.1 Exigences concernant les matériaux de contact

Pour consulter les exigences concernant les matériaux de contact qui s'appliquent aux connecteurs femelles USB Standard-A et USB Micro-B existants utilisés dans les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers existant, voir 3.7.5.3.1.

3.7.6.3.2 Courant assigné de contact

Pour consulter les exigences concernant les courants assignés des contacts qui s'appliquent aux connecteurs femelles USB Standard-A et USB Micro-B existants utilisés dans les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers existant, voir 3.7.5.3.2.

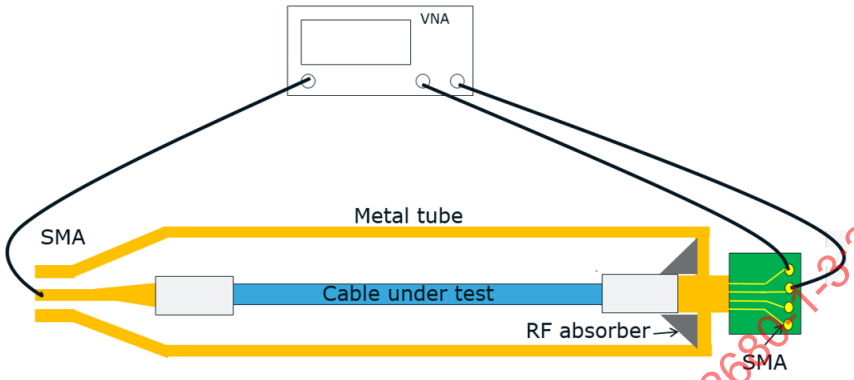
3.7.7 Exigences concernant l'efficacité de l'écrantage (normatives)

L'essai d'efficacité de l'écrantage (SE) de l'ensemble de câbles mesure le niveau des perturbations électromagnétiques (EMI) et radioélectriques (RFI) émises par l'ensemble câble-connecteurs. Pour réaliser la mesure, l'ensemble câble-connecteurs doit être installé dans le montage d'essai SE du

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

câble, comme représenté à la Figure 3-64. Les facteurs de couplage entre le câble et le montage se caractérisent par un analyseur de réseau vectoriel (VNA).

Figure 3-64 — Essai d'efficacité de l'écrantage d'un ensemble câble-connecteurs



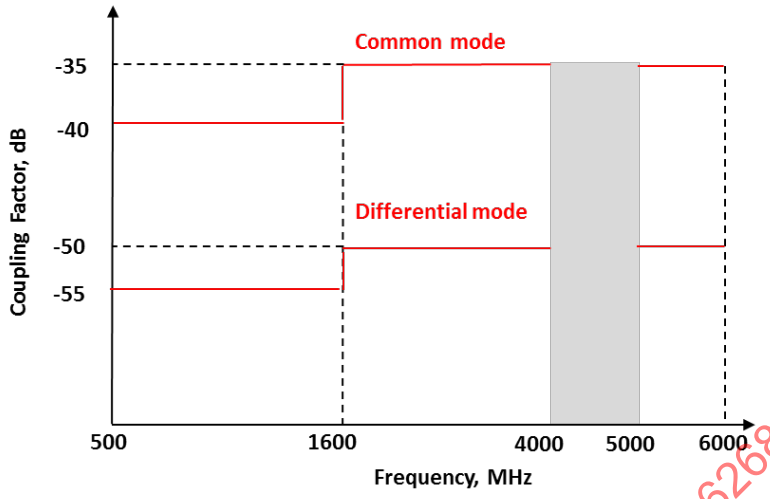
Anglais	Français
Metal Tube	Tube métallique
Cable under test	Câble soumis à l'essai
RF Absorber	Absorbeur RF

Pour être conformes, tous les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C doivent réussir l'essai d'efficacité de l'écrantage. La Figure 3-65 représente les critères de réussite/échec pour (a) les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB Type-C, (b) les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB existant et (c) les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 3.1* Standard-A. Noter que l'efficacité de l'écrantage pour la bande de fréquences comprise entre 4 GHz et 5 GHz n'est pas spécifiée, car aucune antenne ne fonctionne dans cette plage de fréquences.

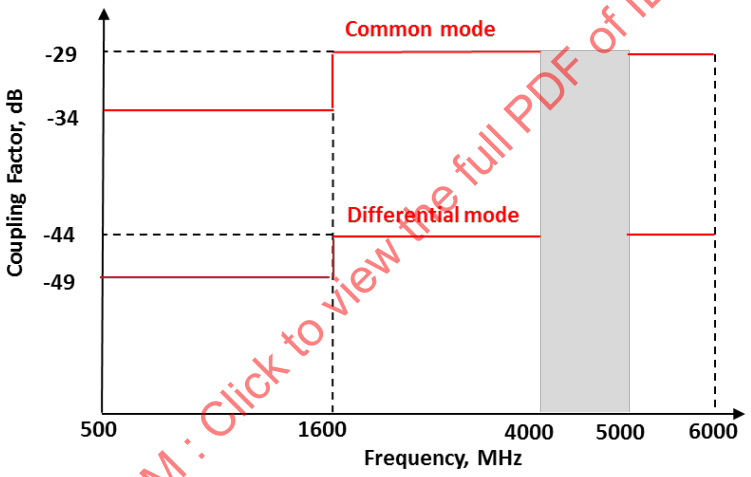
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

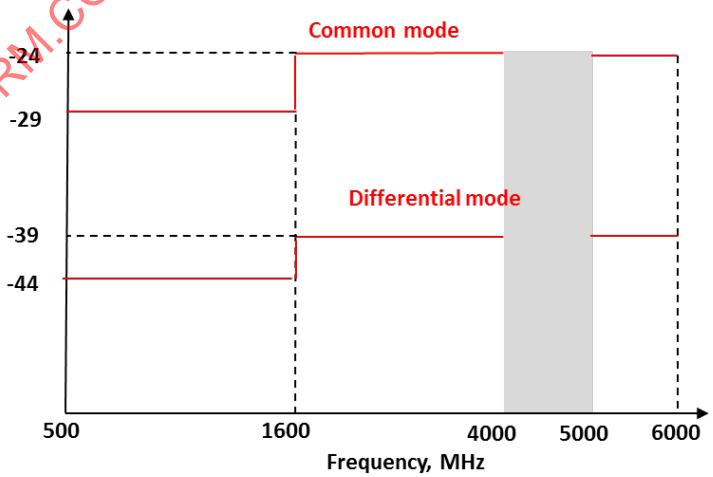
Figure 3-65 — Critères de réussite/échec pour l'efficacité de l'écrantage



(a) For USB Type-C to USB Type-C Cable Assemblies



(b) For USB Type-C to legacy USB Cable Assemblies



(c) For USB Type-C to USB3.1 Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Anglais	Français
Coupling Factor	Facteur de couplage
Frequency, MHz	Fréquence, MHz
(a) (a) For USB Type-C to USB Type-C Cable Assemblies	(a) (a) Pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB Type-C
(b) (b) For USB Type-C to legacy USB Cable Assemblies	(b) (b) Pour les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers USB existant
(c) (c) For USB Type-C to USB3.1 Standard-A Receptacle Adapter Assembly	(c) (c) Pour les ensembles adaptateurs USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle USB 3.1 Standard-A
Common Mode	Mode commun
Differential Mode	Mode différentiel

3.7.8 Exigences électriques en courant continu (normatives)

Sauf indication contraire, les essais décrits ci-dessous sont réalisés sur des paires de connecteurs couplés.

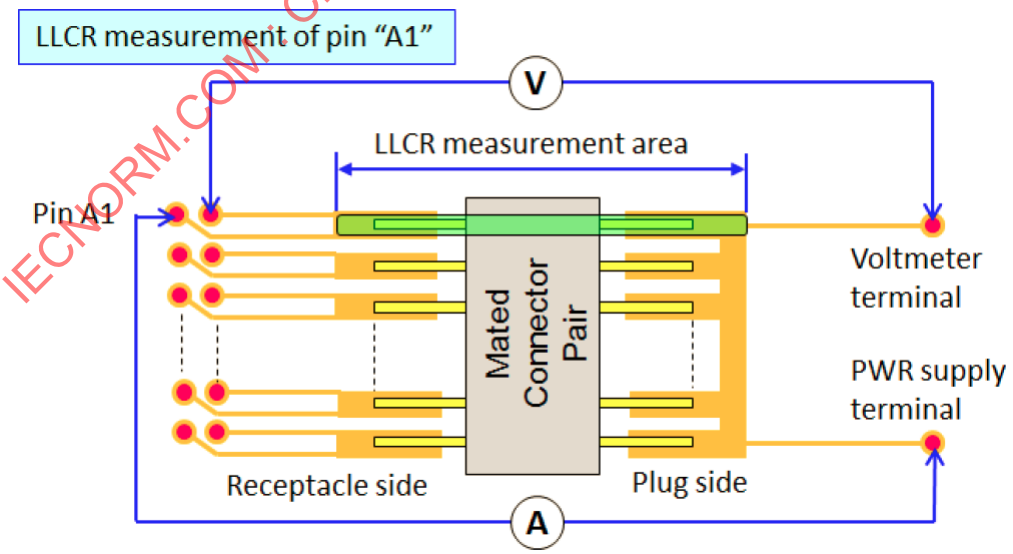
3.7.8.1 Résistance de contact à faible niveau (EIA 364-23B)

Le mesurage de la résistance de contact à faible niveau (LLCR) est réalisé sur les contacts couplés du connecteur mâle et du connecteur femelle. Il ne s'applique pas aux cartes d'accès internes ni aux sous-couches du connecteur mâle ou du connecteur femelle. Voir Figure 3-66. Les mesures suivantes s'appliquent aux contacts d'alimentation et de signal:

- 40 mΩ (max.) initiaux pour les contacts VBUS, GND et tous les autres;
- 50 mΩ (max.) après application de contraintes environnementales;
- mesure à 20 mV (max.) en circuit ouvert à 100 mA.

Pour obtenir les exigences environnementales et les séquences d'essai, voir 3.8.

Figure 3-66 — Diagramme de mesure de la LLCR



Anglais	Français
LLCR measurement of pin "A1"	Mesure de la LLCR sur la broche "A1"
Pin A1	Broche A1
LLCR measurement area	Zone de mesure de la LLCR

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Receptacle side	Côté connecteur femelle
Mated Connector Pair	Paire de connecteurs couplés
Plug side	Côté connecteur mâle
Voltmeter terminal	Borne du voltmètre
PWR supply terminal	Borne d'alimentation PWR

3.7.8.2 Rigidité diélectrique (EIA 364-20)

Aucune panne ne doit se produire lors de l'application d'une tension alternative de 100 V (valeur efficace) entre les contacts adjacents des connecteurs couplés et non couplés.

3.7.8.3 Résistance d'isolation (EIA 364-21)

Une résistance d'isolation minimale de 100 MΩ est exigée entre les contacts adjacents des connecteurs couplés et non couplés.

3.7.8.4 Courant assigné des contacts

L'essai portant sur le courant assigné du connecteur USB Type-C (connecteur mâle et connecteur femelle) doit être réalisé conformément aux procédures et au montage suivants:

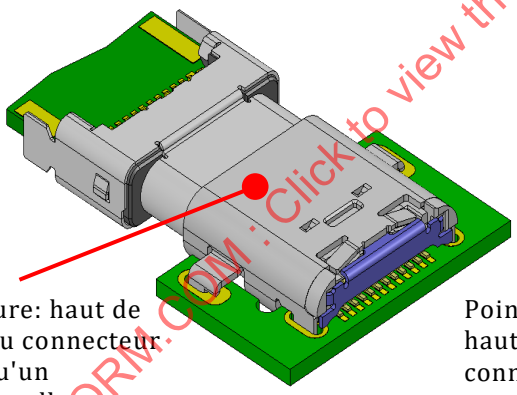
- Un courant de 5 A doit être appliqué collectivement aux broches VBUS (à savoir aux broches A4, A9, B4 et B9) et un courant de 1,25 A doit être appliqué à la broche VCONN (à savoir à la broche B5), le cas échéant, terminés par les broches GND correspondantes (à savoir les broches A1, A12, B1 et B12). Un courant minimal de 0,25 A doit également, le cas échéant, être appliqué individuellement à tous les autres contacts. Lorsque le courant est appliqué aux contacts, la température de la paire de connecteurs doit pouvoir se stabiliser. L'échauffement de la surface de l'enveloppe externe de la paire couplée au-dessus des contacts VBUS et GND ne doit pas dépasser de 30 °C la température ambiante. La Figure 3-67 représente l'emplacement de la mesure.
- La mesure doit être réalisée sous air statique.
- Les connecteurs doivent être orientés de telle sorte que la surface de l'enveloppe externe accessible soit sur le dessus, horizontalement par rapport au sol.
- Le connecteur mâle et le connecteur femelle peuvent exiger une modification pour accéder aux connexions coudées ou aux points de raccordement du câble.
- La méthode utilisant un thermocouple ou l'imagerie thermique (privilégiée) peut être utilisée pour mesurer la température.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

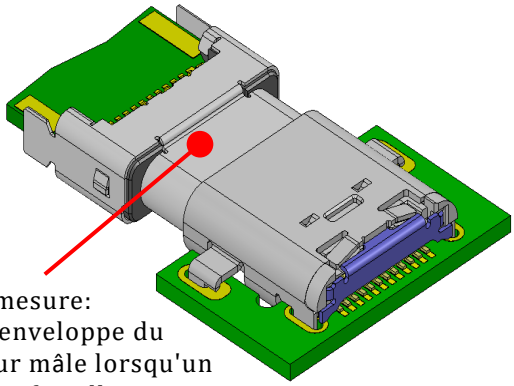
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- Pour la certification, le fabricant du connecteur doit fournir les échantillons du connecteur femelle et du connecteur mâle soumis à l'essai, montés sur un PCB d'essai du courant assigné, sans plaque de cuivre. Les différents points de branchement du connecteur mâle d'un câble peuvent être raccordés par des fils courts, en lieu et place d'un PCB d'essai au courant assigné:
    - les PCB d'essai du courant assigné doivent avoir une structure à 2 couches. Si la structure à deux couches n'est pas possible, en raison de la configuration des connexions coudées, les traces VBUS et de terre doivent se situer sur les couches externes, les couches internes étant réservées aux traces de signal, selon les exigences. Les traces VCONN peuvent être routées sur les couches internes ou externes. Le Tableau 3-36 définit les exigences concernant l'épaisseur et les traces du PCB d'essai. La longueur de trace s'applique à chaque PCB (PCB du connecteur femelle et PCB du connecteur mâle) et court de la borne de contact jusqu'au point de raccordement de la source de courant. La Figure 3-68 représente la trace partielle informative du PCB d'essai du courant assigné;
    - si le PCB d'essai au courant assigné est remplacé par des fils courts, la longueur de fil ne doit pas dépasser 70 mm, lorsqu'elle est mesurée du point de soudage du contact du connecteur mâle jusqu'à l'autre extrémité du fil. Aucune carte d'accès ni aucun surmoulage ne doivent être inclus dans le montage d'essai. Chaque connexion coudée du connecteur mâle doit être branchée à un fil de calibre AWG 36 pour les signaux, AWG 32 pour l'alimentation (VBUS et VCONN) et AWG 30 pour la terre.

Figure 3-67 — Point de mesure de la température



Point de mesure: haut de l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle lorsqu'un connecteur femelle avec enveloppe conductrice est utilisé



Point de mesure: haut de l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle lorsqu'un connecteur femelle avec enveloppe non conductrice ou sans enveloppe est utilisé

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

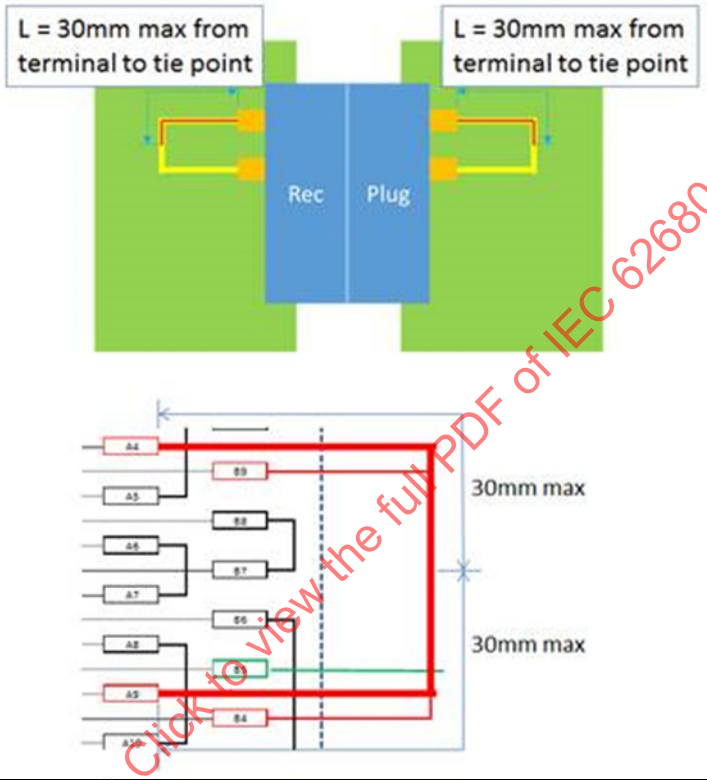
Tableau 3-36 — PCB d'essai du courant assigné

Elément	Largeur de trace (mm)	Longueur de trace (mm) sur chaque PCB	Epaisseur
Trace de signal	0,25 max.	13 max.	35 µm (1 oz de cuivre)
Trace de terre	1,57 max.	38 max.	35 µm (1 oz de cuivre)
VBUS et VCONN	1,25 max.	30 max.	35 µm (1 oz de cuivre)

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Elément	Largeur de trace (mm)	Longueur de trace (mm) sur chaque PCB	Epaisseur
PCB	N/A	N/A	0,80 mm à 1,20 mm

Figure 3-68 — Exemple de configuration de la trace de montage pour l'essai du courant assigné



Anglais	Français
L = 30mm max from terminal to tie point	L = 30 mm max de la borne au point de raccordement
Rec	Connecteur femelle
Plug	Connecteur mâle

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.7.8.5 Résistance en courant continu de D+ et D–

La résistance en courant continu de D+ et D– dans les dispositifs USB Type-C compatibles *USB 2.0* à grande vitesse et les dispositifs USB Type-C captifs compatibles *USB 2.0* à grande vitesse doit être inférieure ou égale à la valeur maximale spécifiée dans le Tableau 3-37. La résistance en courant continu de D+ et D– est la combinaison série de toutes les résistances dans les commutateurs, multiplexeurs et la PHY USB.

Tableau 3-37 — Exigence concernant la résistance en courant continu maximale (normative)

	Résistance en courant continu maximale
Dispositif USB Type-C (compatible USB 2.0 à grande vitesse)	19 Ω
Dispositif USB Type-C captif (compatible USB 2.0 à grande vitesse)	25 Ω

Un hôte USB Type-C qui fonctionne en mode *USB 2.0* à grande vitesse doit implémenter le niveau de tension de seuil de déconnexion (V_{HSDSC}) défini dans l'ECN DCR *USB 2.0*.

3.8 Exigences mécaniques et environnementales (normatives)

Les exigences décrites dans le présent paragraphe s'appliquent à tous les connecteurs et/ou ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C, sauf spécification contraire. Pour les fiches de connecteurs mâles et les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C, les méthodes d'essai reposent sur l'hypothèse que le câble sort du surmoulage dans la même direction de couplage vers un connecteur femelle USB Type-C (donc il sort tout droit de la partie arrière du surmoulage). Pour les fiches de connecteurs mâles et les ensembles câble-connecteurs USB Type-C dont le câble ne sort pas directement de l'arrière du surmoulage (donc en angle droit par rapport à la direction de couplage), les montages et les procédures d'essai doivent être modifiés selon les besoins pour réaliser le mesurage.

3.8.1 Exigences mécaniques

3.8.1.1 Force d'insertion (EIA 364-13)

La force d'insertion du connecteur initial doit être comprise entre 5 N et 20 N à un débit maximal de 12,5 mm (0,492") par minute. Cette exigence ne s'applique pas lorsque les connecteurs sont utilisés dans une station d'accueil.

Il est recommandé d'enduire le mécanisme de verrouillage d'un lubrifiant sans silicium afin de réduire l'usure. Il convient de limiter l'usage des lubrifiants aux caractéristiques d'insertion et d'extraction, et il convient qu'ils n'augmentent pas la résistance de la connexion couplée.

3.8.1.2 Force d'extraction (EIA 364-13)

La force d'extraction du connecteur initial doit être comprise entre 8 N et 20 N, mesurée à la suite d'un préconditionnement en cinq cycles d'insertion/extraction (soit la sixième extraction). Après 25 cycles d'insertion/extraction supplémentaires, la force d'extraction doit à nouveau être mesurée (soit la 32e extraction). Elle doit:

a. correspondre à 33 % du relevé initial; et
b. être comprise entre 8 N et 20 N.

La force d'extraction doit être comprise entre 6 N et 20 N après 10 000 cycles d'insertion/extraction. La mesure de la force d'extraction doit être réalisée à une vitesse maximale de 12,5 mm (0,492") par minute. L'exigence concernant la force d'extraction ne s'applique pas lorsque les connecteurs sont utilisés dans une station d'accueil mécanique.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Il est recommandé d'enduire le mécanisme de verrouillage d'un lubrifiant sans silicium afin de réduire l'usure. Il convient de limiter l'usage des lubrifiants aux caractéristiques d'insertion et d'extraction, et il convient qu'ils n'augmentent pas la résistance de la connexion couplée.

3.8.1.3 Durabilité ou cycles d'insertion/extraction (EIA 364-09)

La valeur assignée de durabilité doit être de 10 000 cycles au minimum pour la famille de connecteurs USB Type-C. L'essai de durabilité doit être réalisé à un débit de (500 ± 50) cycles par heure. Aucune partie du connecteur ni de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs ne doit subir de dommage physique.

3.8.1.4 Flexion du câble (EIA 364-41, Condition 1)

L'ensemble câble-connecteurs ne doit subir aucun dommage physique ni aucune discontinuité de plus de 1 ms pendant sa flexion, avec une dimension X égale à 3,7 fois le diamètre du câble et 100 cycles dans chacun des deux plans.

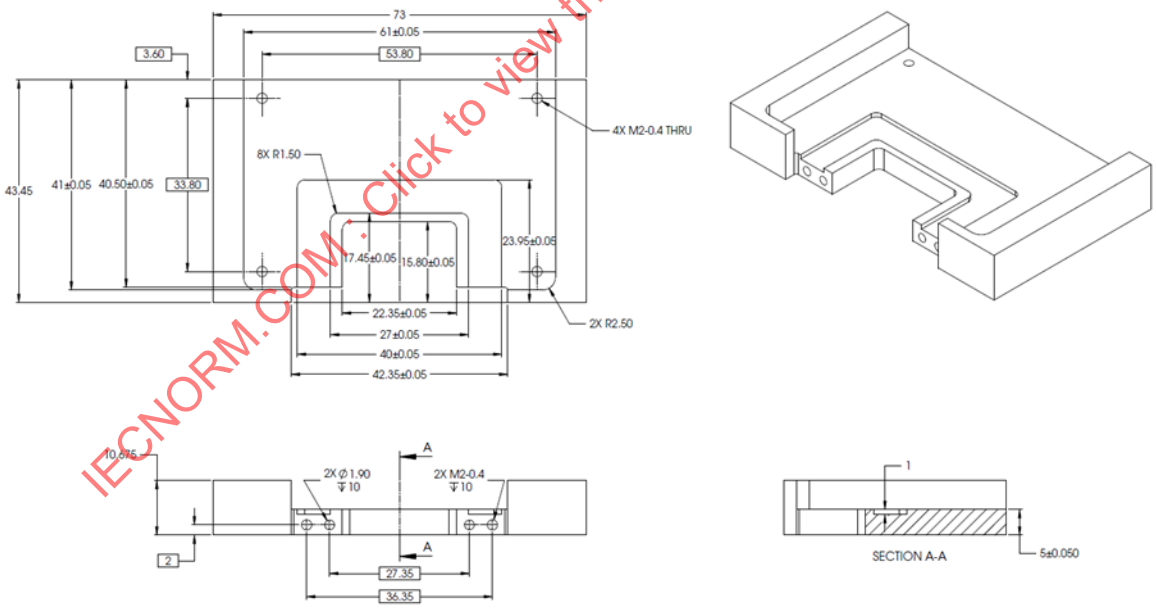
3.8.1.5 Arrachement du câble (EIA 364-38, Méthode A)

L'ensemble câble-connecteurs ne doit subir aucun dommage physique lorsqu'il est soumis à une charge axiale de 40 N pendant une minute minimum lors du serrage d'une extrémité du connecteur mâle du câble.

3.8.1.6 Essai de continuité sur quatre axes

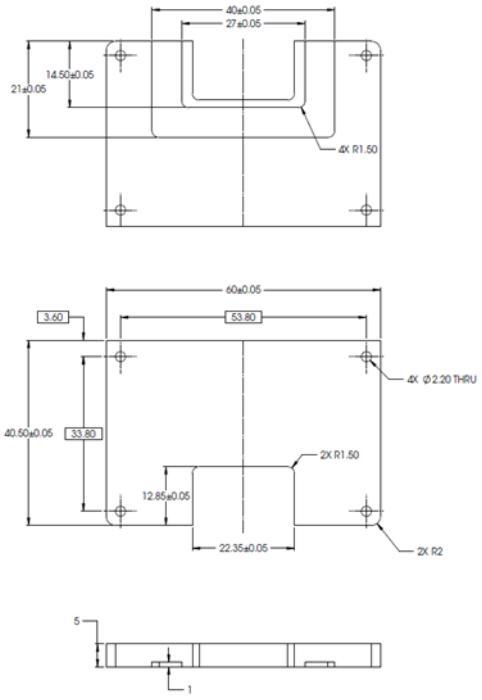
La famille de connecteurs USB Type-C doit être soumise à un essai de continuité sous contrainte, au moyen du montage d'essai représenté à la Figure 3-69, ou équivalent.

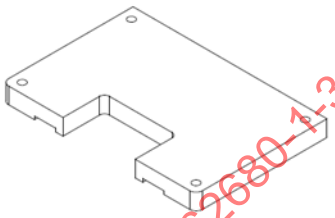
Figure 3-69 — Exemple de montage d'essai de continuité sur quatre axes



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

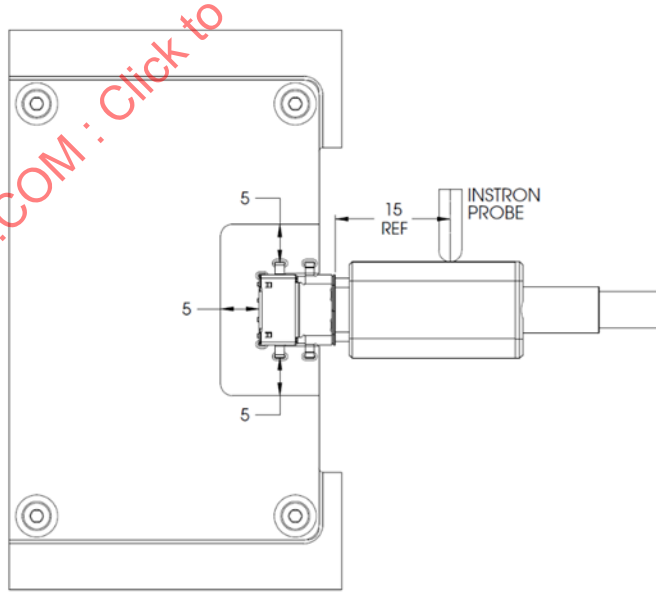
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.





Anglais	Français
SECTION A-A	COUPE A-A

Figure 3-69 — Exemple de montage d'essai de continuité sur quatre axes (suite)



Anglais	Français
INSTRON PROBE	SONDE INSTRON
REF	RÉF

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Les connecteurs mâles doivent être fournis avec un surmoulage représentatif, ou être montés sur un circuit imprimé nu (PCB, *printed circuit board*) à deux couches dont l'épaisseur, le cas échéant, est comprise entre 0,8 mm et 1,0 mm. Un connecteur femelle USB Type-C doit être monté sur un PBC à deux couches, dont l'épaisseur est comprise entre 0,8 mm et 1,0 mm. Le PCB doit être serré des trois côtés du connecteur femelle à une distance maximale de 5 mm du contour du connecteur femelle. Le PCB du connecteur femelle doit être initialement placé sur une surface horizontale, puis un moment perpendiculaire doit être appliqué au connecteur mâle avec une sonde à bout arrondi de 5 mm pendant 10 s au moins, à une distance de 15 mm du bord de contact de l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle, vers le bas et perpendiculairement à l'axe d'insertion. Voir Tableau 3-38 pour obtenir la force et le moment à appliquer. Toutes les configurations de connecteur femelle à enveloppe non conductrice doivent être soumises à l'essai aux valeurs spécifiées pour la configuration de connecteur femelle vertical.

Tableau 3-38 — Exigences concernant la force et le moment

Configuration du connecteur femelle par rapport à la surface de montage	Force à 15 mm du bord de contact de l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle (N)	Moment par rapport au bord de contact de l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle (Nm)
Angle droit	20	0,30
Verticale[1]	8	0,12

Notes:
1. Toutes les configurations de connecteur femelle à enveloppe non conductrice doivent être soumises à l'essai aux valeurs spécifiées pour la configuration de connecteur femelle vertical.

La continuité sur chaque contact doit être mesurée en appliquant la force de traction. Chaque contact non relié à la terre doit également être soumis à l'essai pour confirmer qu'il ne crée pas de court-circuit dans l'enveloppe pendant les tensions. Le PCB doit ensuite subir une rotation de 90° de sorte que le câble reste inséré horizontalement, et la force de traction indiquée dans le Tableau 3-38 doit être à nouveau appliquée dans une direction descendante et la continuité mesurée comme précédemment. Cet essai est répété pour les rotations à 180° et à 270°. Les câbles traversants ne doivent montrer aucune discontinuité ni créer de court-circuit supérieur à 1 µs dans l'enveloppe, quelle que soit l'orientation.

L'une des méthodes de mesure de la continuité par les contacts est de court-circuiter tous les fils à l'extrémité de la fibre amorce du câble et d'appliquer une tension par la polarisation de chaque broche VBUS, USB D+, USB D–, SBU, CC et TX/RX, les broches GND étant reliées à la terre.

D'autres méthodes sont admises pour vérifier la continuité par l'ensemble des broches.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

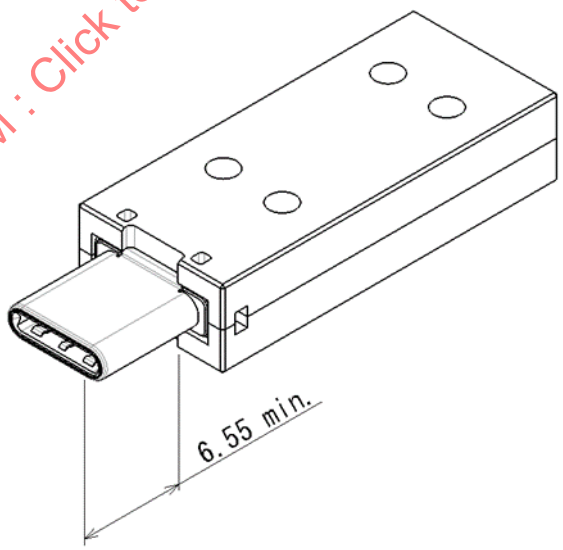
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.8.1.7 Résistance à l'arrachement

Les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C sur les ensembles câble-connecteurs et les connecteurs mâles de montage sans surmoulage (y compris les connecteurs mâles USB Type-C montés dans le PCB) doivent être soumis à l'essai au moyen du montage d'essai de la résistance à l'arrachement mécanique défini dans le document de conformité des connecteurs et des ensembles câble-connecteurs Universal Serial Bus Type-C. Pour les connecteurs mâles sans surmoulage, le fournisseur doit fournir un montage d'essai de connecteur mâle conforme aux dimensions spécifiées pour le surmoulage du connecteur mâle USB Type-C (voir Figure 3-70). Le montage peut être en métal ou tout autre matériau adapté. Des moments perpendiculaires sont appliqués au connecteur mâle avec une sonde à bout arrondi de 5 mm pendant au moins 10 s, le connecteur étant inséré dans le montage d'essai pour atteindre les moments définis dans les quatre directions, vers le haut ou vers le bas (c'est-à-dire perpendiculaire à l'axe long de l'ouverture du connecteur mâle) et vers la gauche ou vers la droite (c'est-à-dire dans le plan de l'ouverture du connecteur mâle). Les connecteurs conformes doivent satisfaire aux limites de force suivantes:

- un moment de 0 Nm à 0,75 Nm (par exemple 50 N à une distance de 15 mm du bord du connecteur femelle) est appliqué à un connecteur mâle inséré dans le montage d'essai dans chacune des quatre directions. Un seul connecteur mâle doit être utilisé pour cet essai. Des déformations mécaniques peuvent se produire. Le connecteur mâle doit être couplé avec le montage d'essai de continuité, après avoir appliqué les forces d'essai pour vérifier qu'aucun dommage ayant entraîné une discontinuité ou un court-circuit n'a été subi. Le montage d'essai de continuité doit posséder une surface plane côté couplage, située à une distance de 6,20 mm ± 0,20 mm du plan de référence A du connecteur femelle, perpendiculairement à la direction d'insertion. Aucune force de moment n'est appliquée au connecteur mâle pendant cet essai de continuité. La Figure 3-71 représente un exemple de montage pour l'essai de continuité. L'essai de tension de tenue diélectrique doit être réalisé après l'essai de continuité afin de vérifier la conformité du connecteur mâle;

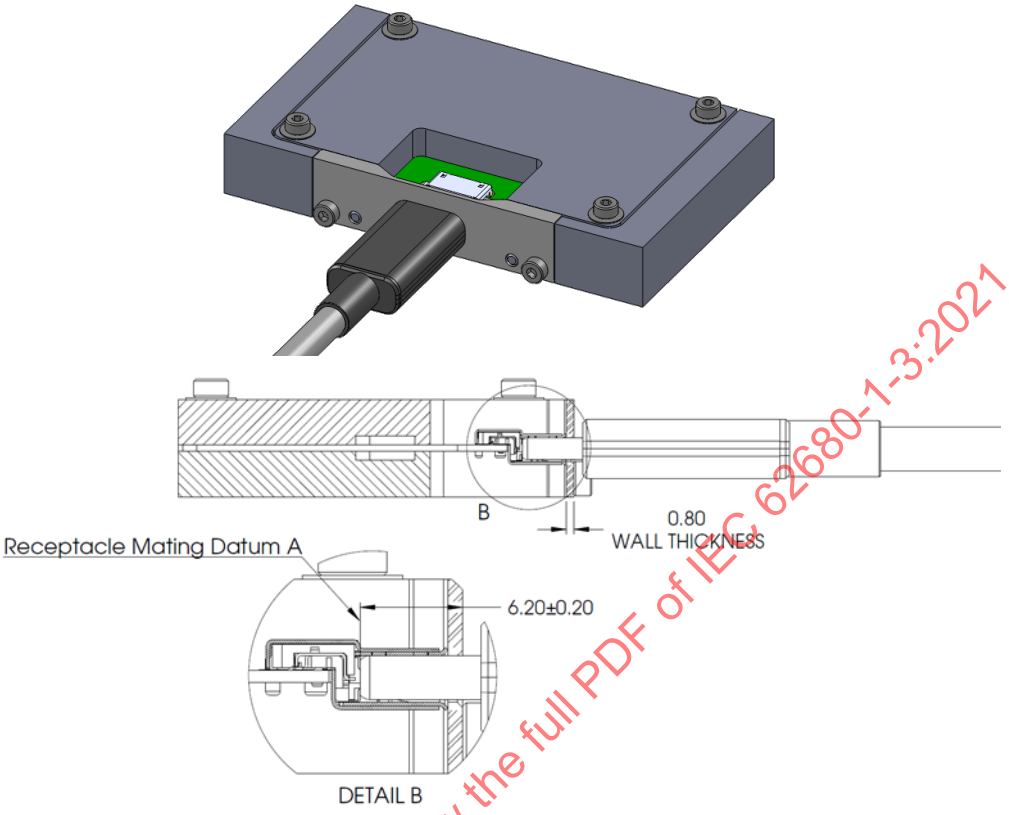
Figure 3-70 — Exemple de montage d'essai de résistance à l'arrachement pour les connecteurs mâles sans surmoulage



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-71 — Montage d'essai de continuité/résistance à l'arrachement de référence



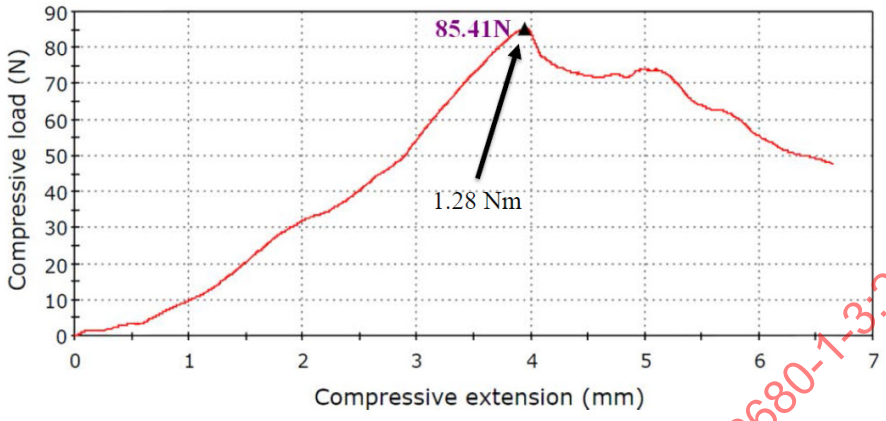
Anglais	Français
Receptacle Mating Datum A	Couplage du connecteur femelle réf A
DETAIL B	ÉLÉMENT B
WALL THICKNESS	ÉPAISSEUR DE LA PAROI

- le connecteur mâle doit être retiré du montage d'essai ou présenter une défaillance mécanique (c'est-à-dire la force appliquée pendant la procédure d'essai atteint la limite maximale et chute) lorsqu'un moment de 2,0 Nm est appliqué au connecteur mâle vers le haut et vers le bas, et qu'un moment de 3,5 Nm est appliqué au connecteur mâle vers la gauche et vers la droite. Un nouveau connecteur mâle doit être utilisé pour chacune des quatre directions d'essai. La Figure 3-72 et la Figure 3-73 représentent un exemple de point de défaillance mécanique et un montage d'essai de résistance à l'arrachement.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

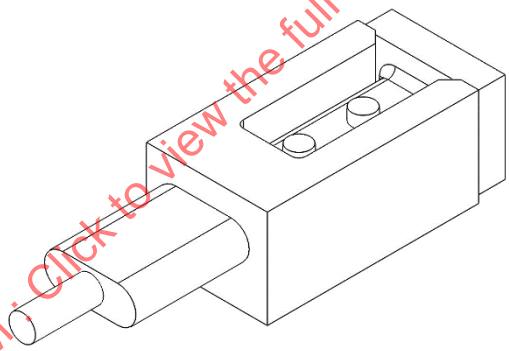
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 3-72 — Exemple de point de défaillance mécanique pour l'essai de résistance à l'arrachement



Anglais	Français
Compressive load (N)	Charge de compression (N)
Compressive extension (mm)	Déformation à la compression (mm)

Figure 3-73 — Essai de résistance à l'arrachement avec un câble dans le montage



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.8.1.8 Limitation de l'utilisation des substances dangereuses

Il est recommandé que les composants soient conformes à la directive RoHS.

3.8.2 Exigences environnementales

Les essais environnementaux portant sur l'interface des connecteurs doivent satisfaire à l'EIA 364-1000.01, "Environmental Test Methodology for Assessing the Performance of Electrical Connectors and Sockets Used in Business Office Applications".

Etant donné que le connecteur défini possède une surface de frottement de longueur supérieure à 0,127 mm, le Groupe d'essai 6 de l'EIA 364-1000.01 n'est pas exigé. Les valeurs de durée des essais Durée de température et Mélange de gaz sont tirées de l'EIA 364-1000.01, selon la température de champ du tableau suivant.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-39 — Conditions d'essai environnementales

Température et durée pour l'essai Durée de température	105 °C pendant 120 heures
Température et durée pour l'essai Durée de température pour le préconditionnement	105 °C pendant 72 heures
Durée de l'essai Mélange de gaz	7 jours

Le critère de réussite/échec pour la résistance de contact à faible niveau (LLCR) est défini au 3.7.8.1. Les valeurs assignées de durabilité sont définies au 3.8.1.3.

3.8.2.1 Matériaux de référence (informatifs)

La présente spécification ne spécifie pas les matériaux des connecteurs et des câbles. Il convient que les fabricants de connecteurs et de câbles choisissent des matériaux appropriés en fonction de leurs exigences de performance. Les informations ci-dessous sont données à titre de référence uniquement.

Note: Il convient que les fabricants de connecteurs et de câbles répondent aux exigences de placage des contacts selon les options suivantes:

Option I

Connecteur femelle

Zone de contact: (Min) 0,05 µm Au + (Min) 0,75 µm Ni-Pd sur (Min) 2,0 µm Ni

Connecteur mâle

Zone de contact: (Min) 0,05 µm Au + (Min) 0,75 µm Ni-Pd sur (Min) 2,0 µm Ni

Option II

Connecteur femelle

Zone de contact: (Min) 0,75 µm Au sur (Min) 2,0 µm Ni

Connecteur mâle

Zone de contact: (Min) 0,75 µm Au sur (Min) 2,0 µm Ni

Les autres matériaux de référence, choisis par les fabricants de connecteurs et de câbles en fonction des paramètres de performance, répertoriés dans le Tableau 3-40 sont donnés à titre de référence uniquement.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 3-40 — Matériaux de référence

Composant	Matériaux
Câble	Conducteur: cuivre avec placage en plomb ou en argent
	Ecrantage du SDP: Feuille d'aluminium ou feuille d'aluminium/de mylar
	Ecrantage coaxial: toron de cuivre
	Tresse: Cuivre ou aluminium étamé
	Gaine: Matériau de substitution en PVC ou sans halogène
Surmoulage du câble	Plastique thermodurci ou thermoplastique
Enveloppes de connecteur	Acier inoxydable ou bronze phosphoreux
Verrou latéral du connecteur mâle	Acier inoxydable
Plaque médiane du connecteur femelle	Acier inoxydable
Ressort CEM interne du connecteur mâle	Acier inoxydable ou alliage de cuivre hautement résistant à la déformation
Plaque CEM du connecteur femelle	Acier inoxydable ou bronze phosphoreux
Enveloppe du connecteur femelle	Acier inoxydable ou bronze phosphoreux
Languette du connecteur femelle	Nylon chargé en verre
Boîtier	Thermoplastiques capables de supporter la température de soudage sans plomb

Note: Il convient de prendre en compte les matériaux sans halogène pour l'ensemble des plastiques.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.9 Applications d'accueil (informatives)

Dans la présente spécification, le terme "accueil" fait référence au branchement d'un dispositif directement dans une station d'accueil sans utiliser d'ensemble câble-connecteurs. Le connecteur USB Type-C est défini pour prendre en charge ces applications.

Il n'est qu'une partie d'une solution d'accueil. Au niveau du système, une solution d'accueil complète peut également inclure des mécanismes de maintien ou de verrouillage, des mécanismes d'alignement, des solutions de montage de connecteur mâle pour l'accueil et des protocoles pris en charge par le connecteur. La présente spécification n'essaie pas de normaliser les solutions d'accueil de système; il n'existe donc pas d'exigence d'interopérabilité pour les solutions d'accueil.

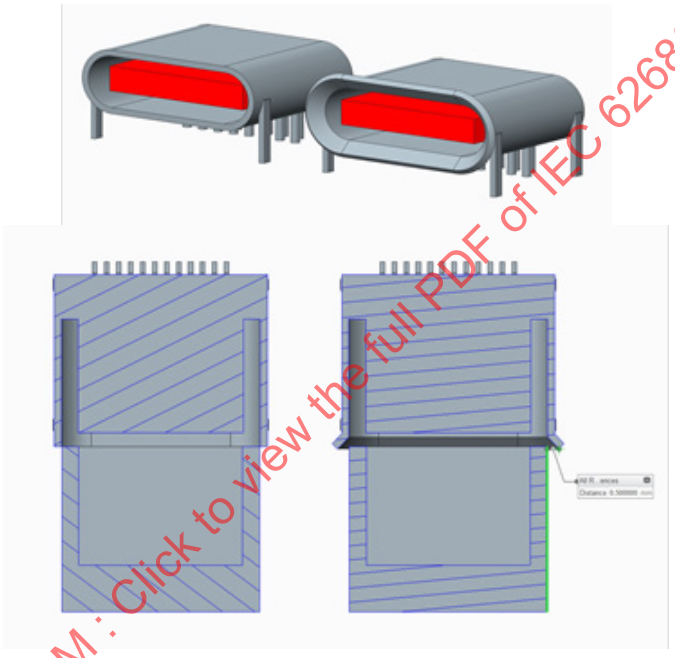
La liste suivante répertorie les exigences et les lignes directrices pour l'utilisation du connecteur USB Type-C à des fins d'accueil:

1. le connecteur mâle USB Type-C utilisé pour l'accueil doit fonctionner avec le connecteur femelle USB Type-C conforme. Il doit satisfaire aux exigences dimensionnelles, électriques et mécaniques;
2. si le connecteur mâle sur la station d'accueil ne possède pas de verrous latéraux, il convient que la station d'accueil comporte un mécanisme de maintien ou de verrouillage afin de fixer le dispositif au connecteur mâle. Les verrous de maintien servent également de chemin de retour à la terre pour la CEM. Il convient que la conception de la station d'accueil garantisse des performances CEM adéquates sans les verrous latéraux, s'ils ne sont pas présents;

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3. les doigts CEM internes ne sont pas exigés pour le connecteur mâle d'accueil tant que les enveloppes du connecteur femelle et du connecteur mâle possèdent une connexion électrique adéquate;
4. l'alignement est un facteur important pour l'accueil. Selon la conception du système, les connecteurs USB Type-C normalisés seuls peuvent ne pas garantir un alignement adéquat pour le couplage. Un alignement au niveau du système est fortement recommandé. Les solutions d'alignement sont propres à chaque mise en œuvre;
5. un alignement correct est fourni par le connecteur. La face avant du connecteur femelle peut avoir des caractéristiques d'entrée pour garantir un bon alignement. La Figure 3-74 représente un exemple de connecteur femelle USB Type-C avec une collerette de guidage par comparaison à un connecteur femelle sans collerette.

Figure 3-74 — Exemple de collerette pour un connecteur femelle de câble USB Type-C



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

3.10 Notes relatives à la mise en œuvre et guides de conception

Le présent paragraphe fournit des notes relatives à la mise en œuvre et des guides de conception afin d'aider les utilisateurs à concevoir et à utiliser les connecteurs et câbles USB Type-C.

3.10.1 Gestion de la CEM (informative)

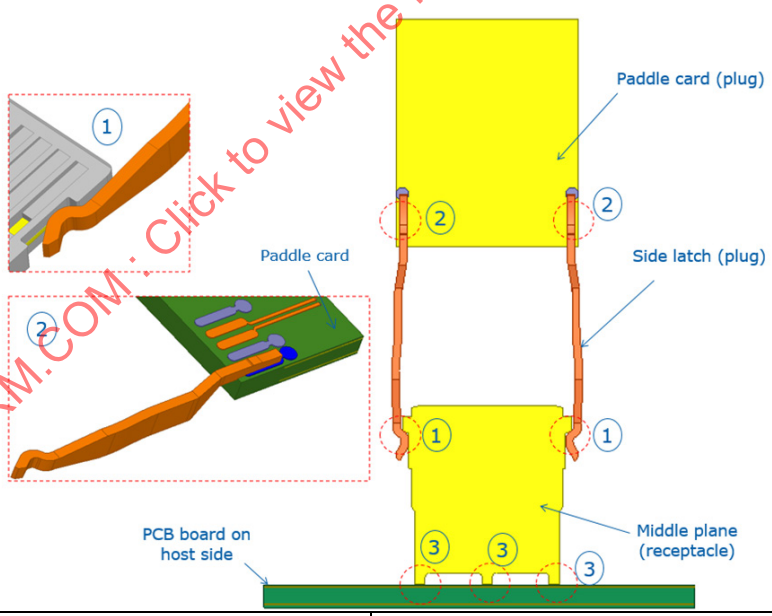
Il convient que les concepteurs de connecteurs et d'ensembles câble-connecteurs, ainsi que les implémenteurs de systèmes, prêtent attention à l'écrantage du connecteur femelle et de l'ensemble de câbles afin de garantir un chemin de mise à la terre de faible impédance. Les lignes directrices suivantes s'appliquent à la gestion de la CEM:

- Il convient de vérifier la qualité des câbles bruts. L'obliquité dans les paires ou la conversion du mode différentiel en mode commun des paires TX/RX a un impact significatif sur la CEM des câbles et il convient de les contrôler dans les limites de la présente spécification.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- Il convient que la tresse externe du câble soit physiquement connectée à l'enveloppe en métal du connecteur mâle sous un angle qui approche autant que possible les 360°, afin de contrôler la CEM. En l'absence d'une terminaison de sortie convenablement écrantée, même un câble parfait qui ne présenterait aucune obliquité dans les paires peut ne pas satisfaire aux exigences de la CEM. Il peut être nécessaire d'utiliser un ruban de cuivre pour écranter la zone de la terminaison de la tresse.
- La terminaison du fil contribue au bruit de mode commun. Il convient de réduire le plus possible la distance de branchement de la terminaison du fil afin d'optimiser les performances de CEM et d'intégrité du signal. Si possible, il convient que les deux lignes d'une paire différentielle restent symétriques.
- Outre la fonction mécanique, les verrous latéraux sur le connecteur mâle et la plaque médiane dans le connecteur femelle jouent également un rôle dans la CEM. Ceci est représenté à la Figure 3-75:
    1. il convient qu'une connexion électrique soit établie entre le verrou latéral et la plaque médiane du connecteur femelle (un connecteur mâle d'accueil peut ne pas comporter de verrous latéraux);
    2. il convient de raccorder le verrou latéral au plan GND de la carte d'accès à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle;
    3. il convient de relier directement la plaque médiane au plan GND du CI du système avec trois conducteurs/connexions coudés, ou plus.

Figure 3-75 — Lignes directrices concernant la CEM pour les verrous latéraux et la plaque médiane



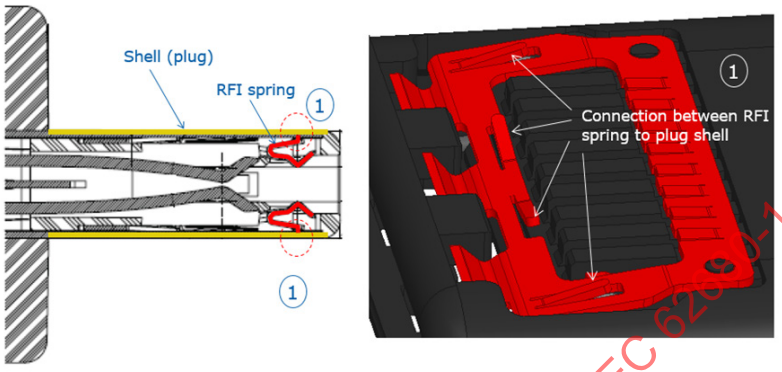
Anglais	Français
Paddle card	Carte d'accès
PCB board on host side	Support PCB côté hôte
Paddle card (plug)	Carte d'accès (connecteur mâle)
Side latch (plug)	Verrou latéral (connecteur mâle)
Middle plane (receptacle)	Plaque médiane (connecteur femelle)

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- Il convient que le doigt RFI interne, à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle, possède des points de connexion adéquats sur la surface interne de l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle. Quatre points de connexion ou plus sont recommandés, comme représenté à la Figure 3-76.

Figure 3-76 — Connexions du doigt CEM sur l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle



Anglais	Français
Shell (plug)	Enveloppe (connecteur mâle)
RFI spring	Ressort RFI
Connection between RFI spring to plug shell	Connexion entre le ressort RFI et l'enveloppe du connecteur mâle

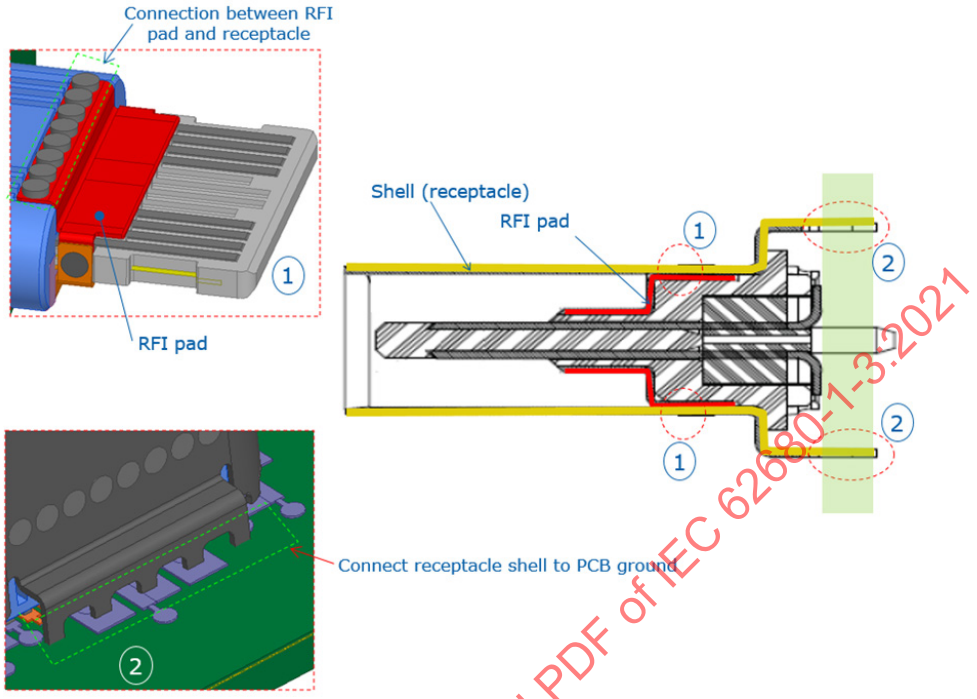
- Les doigts CEM, à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle, sont couplés avec la plaque CEM dans le connecteur femelle. Il est important que la plaque CEM possède des connexions adéquates sur l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle. Comme représenté à la Figure 3-77, plusieurs points de soudure laser se trouvent entre les plaques CEM et l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle, en haut et en bas.

- Il convient que l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle possède un nombre suffisant de points de connexion sur le plan GND du PCB du système, avec des ouvertures aussi petites que possible. La Figure 3-77 représente un exemple de plusieurs connexions coudées, qui permettent de connecter l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle au plan GND du PCB du système.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

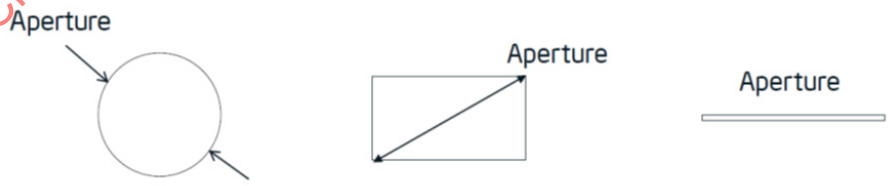
Figure 3-77 — Connexions de la plaque CEM sur l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle



Anglais	Français
Connection between RFI pad and receptacle	Connexion entre la pastille RFI et le connecteur femelle
RFI pad	Pastille RFI
Shell (receptacle)	Enveloppe (connecteur femelle)
Connect receptacle shell to PCB ground	Raccorder l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle à la terre PCB

- Il convient de réduire le plus possible les ouvertures dans l'enveloppe des connecteurs femelle et mâle. Si les ouvertures sont inévitables, une taille d'ouverture maximale de 1,5 mm est recommandée. Pour obtenir des exemples d'ouvertures, voir Figure 3-78. Du ruban de cuivre peut être appliqué pour sceller les ouvertures à l'intérieur du connecteur mâle du câble.

Figure 3-78 — Exemples d'ouvertures de connecteur



Anglais	Français
Aperture	Ouverture

- Il convient de connecter les fiches de connecteurs femelles au châssis en métal ou aux boîtiers, par des doigts de mise à la terre, des vis ou toute autre méthode permettant de gérer la CEM.

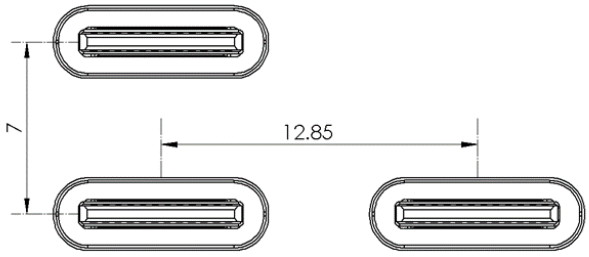
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3.10.2 Espacement physique des connecteurs empilés et adjacents (informatif)

Les connecteurs USB empilés et adjacents sont couramment utilisés dans les systèmes PC. La Figure 3-79 représente l'espacement recommandé entre les connecteurs pour les configurations empilées et adjacentes.

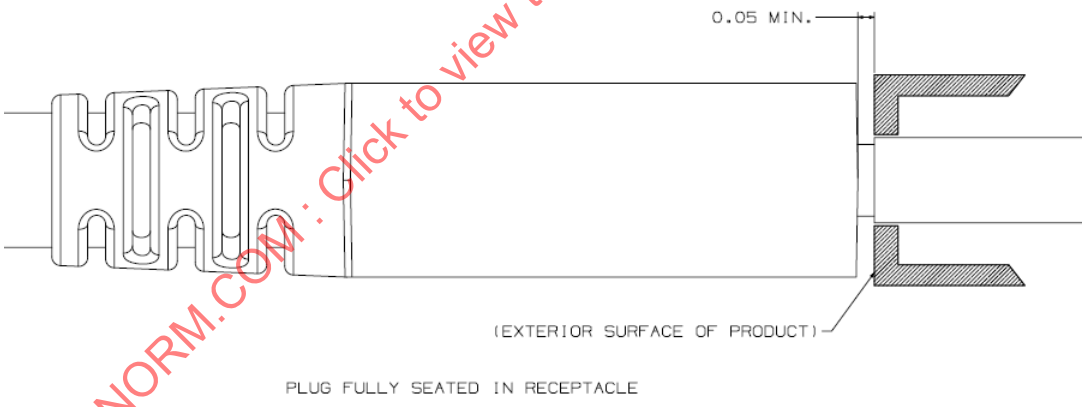
Figure 3-79 — Espacement minimal recommandé entre les connecteurs



3.10.3 Remarques sur le couplage des câbles (informatives)

Il est nécessaire de prendre en compte l'emplacement de montage du connecteur femelle, les surfaces extérieures du produit, le surmoulage des câbles et la longueur de couplage des connecteurs mâles pour pouvoir insérer complètement le connecteur mâle USB Type-C dans le connecteur femelle USB Type-C. La Figure 3-80 représente l'espace minimal recommandé pour le surmoulage du connecteur mâle afin de permettre l'insertion complète du connecteur mâle du câble dans le connecteur femelle du produit.

Figure 3-80 — Espace minimal recommandé pour le surmoulage du connecteur mâle



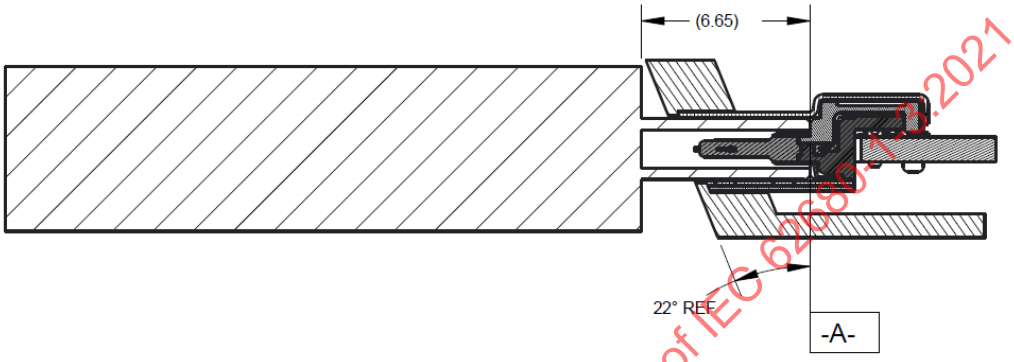
Anglais	Français
EXTERIOR SURFACE OF PRODUCT	SURFACE EXTÉRIEURE DU PRODUIT
PLUG FULLY SEATED IN RECEPTACLE	CONNECTEUR MÂLE INSTALLÉ DANS LE CONNECTEUR FEMELLE

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

La Figure 3-81 représente les considérations particulières exigées lorsque les parois externes sont inclinées. Pour ces applications, la protection par l'alignement mécanique de la languette sur l'enveloppe du connecteur femelle USB Type-C peut ne pas être aussi efficace que pour une conception avec enveloppe intégrale. Les options de conception qui permettent au connecteur femelle de répondre aux exigences d'essai mécanique incluent de relâcher la surface de la paroi extérieure pour permettre d'utiliser l'enveloppe intégrale du connecteur femelle, ou un connecteur femelle spécialement conçu pour cette application.

Figure 3-81 — Surmoulage du connecteur mâle du câble et surface inclinée



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4 Exigences fonctionnelles

Le présent article traite des exigences fonctionnelles concernant la signalisation sur les câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C®. Elles incluent la définition du signal fonctionnel, les processus de découverte et de configuration, ainsi que l'alimentation.

4.1 Récapitulatif des signaux

Le Tableau 4-1 récapitule la liste des signaux utilisés sur les connecteurs USB Type-C.

Tableau 4-1 — Liste des signaux utilisés sur les connecteurs USB Type-C

Groupe de signaux	Signal	Description
USB 3.2/*USB4™*	**TXp1, TXn1** **RXp1, RXn1** **TXp2, TXn2** **RXp2, RXn2**	Les interfaces de données en série *USB 3.2* SuperSpeed et *USB4* définissent une paire d'émission différentielle et une paire de réception différentielle par voie. Sur un connecteur femelle USB Type-C, deux ensembles de broches de signal sont définis pour prendre en charge le fonctionnement à double voie et activer la fonctionnalité de retournement des connecteurs mâles.
USB 2.0	**Dp1, Dn1** **Dp2, Dn2**	L'interface de données en série *USB 2.0* définit une paire différentielle. Sur un connecteur femelle USB Type-C, deux ensembles de broches de signal *USB 2.0* sont définis pour activer la fonctionnalité de retournement des connecteurs mâles.
Configuration	**CC1, CC2** (connecteur femelle) **CC** (connecteur mâle)	Canal CC dans le connecteur mâle utilisé pour la détection des connexions, la configuration de l'interface et VCONN.
Signaux auxiliaires	**SBU1, SBU2**	Utilisation en bande latérale. Dans le cadre de l'*USB4*, ces signaux sont utilisés pour SBTX et SBRX.
Alimentation	**VBUS**	Alimentation de bus du câble USB
	VCONN (connecteur mâle)	Alimentation du connecteur mâle USB
	GND	Chemin du courant de retour du câble USB

4.2 Description des broches de signal

4.2.1 Broches USB SuperSpeed

TXp1, TXn1
TXp2, TXn2

Ces broches doivent implémenter le chemin d'émission du système d'une interface *USB 3.2* SuperSpeed ou *USB4* TX/RX. La paire différentielle de transmission dans un port est routée vers la paire différentielle de réception dans le port à l'extrémité opposée du chemin. En fonction de la connexion établie, la *spécification USB 3.2* ou la *spécification USB4* définit l'ensemble des caractéristiques électriques et des fonctionnalités d'énumération, de protocole et de gestion pour cette interface.

Deux paires de broches sont définies pour activer le fonctionnement à double voie (voir 4.5.1.1 pour une définition complète).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

RXp1, RXn1
RXp2, RXn2

Ces broches doivent implémenter le chemin de réception du système d'une interface *USB 3.2* SuperSpeed ou *USB4* TX/RX. La paire différentielle de réception dans un port est routée vers la paire différentielle de transmission dans le port à l'extrémité opposée du chemin. En fonction de la connexion établie, la *spécification USB 3.2* ou la *spécification USB4* définit l'ensemble des caractéristiques électriques et des fonctionnalités d'énumération, de protocole et de gestion pour cette interface.

Deux paires de broches sont définies pour activer le fonctionnement à double voie (voir 4.5.1.1 pour une définition complète).

4.2.2 Broches USB 2.0

Dp1, Dn1
(Dp2, Dn2)

Ces broches doivent implémenter la fonctionnalité *USB 2.0*. Les trois modes de l'*USB 2.0* (LS, FS et HS) sont pris en charge. La *spécification USB 2.0* définit l'ensemble des caractéristiques électriques et des fonctionnalités d'énumération, de protocole de bus et de gestion de bus pour cette interface.

Deux paires de broches sont définies pour activer la fonctionnalité de retournement des connecteurs mâles (voir 4.5.1.1 pour une définition complète).

4.2.3 Broches de signal auxiliaire

SBU1, SBU2

Ces broches sont affectées à l'utilisation en bande latérale. Dans le cadre de l'*USB4*, ces signaux sont utilisés pour SBTX et SBRX. Voir 4.3 pour obtenir les exigences fonctionnelles.

4.2.4 Broches d'alimentation et de terre

VBUS

Ces broches sont destinées à l'alimentation de bus du câble USB définie par les spécifications USB. La VBUS n'est présente que lorsqu'une connexion source-collecteur est établie sur le canal CC (voir 4.5.1.2.1). Voir 4.4.2 pour obtenir les exigences fonctionnelles de VBUS.

VCONN

La tension VCONN est appliquée à la broche CC inutilisée pour alimenter le connecteur mâle locale. Voir 4.4.3 pour obtenir les exigences fonctionnelles de VCONN.

GND

Chemin du courant de retour.

4.2.5 Broches de configuration

CC1, CC2, CC

Ces broches sont utilisées pour détecter les connexions et pour configurer l'interface sur les câbles et connecteurs USB Type-C. Voir 4.5 pour obtenir la définition fonctionnelle. Lorsqu'une connexion est établie, CC1 ou CC2 sont réaffectées à l'alimentation du connecteur mâle par la broche VCONN (voir 4.5.1.2.1).

4.3 Utilisation en bande latérale (SBU)

Les broches SBU (SBU1 et SBU2) sont limitées aux utilisations définies par la présente spécification. Une fonctionnalité supplémentaire est définie dans la *spécification USB4*. Voir Annexe E et Annexe A pour plus d'informations sur l'utilisation des broches SBU en modes alternatifs et en mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio.

Les broches SBU sur un port doivent être en circuit ouvert ou avoir une faible dépolarisation à la terre, moins puissante que zSBUTermination.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Ces broches sont prébranchées dans le câble USB Type-C Complet normalisé en tant que fils individuels à extrémité unique (SBU_A et SBU_B). Noter que SBU1 et SBU2 sont interconnectés dans le câble.

Lorsque l'*USB4* est utilisé, ces broches sont utilisées comme canal en bande latérale *USB4* avec mappage SBU1 vers SBTX et SBU2 vers SBRX. Les exigences fonctionnelles SBTX et SBRX sont définies dans la *spécification USB4*. Lorsqu'un port détermine que le connecteur mâle inséré localement est retourné (c'est-à-dire CC1 est ouvert, CC2 est terminé), la *spécification USB4* (inversion de la voie de canal en bande latérale de référence) exige que le port retourne les mappages SBTX et SBRX vers SBU1 et SBU2 afin d'assurer l'opération d'émission-réception en bande latérale de bout en bout appropriée.

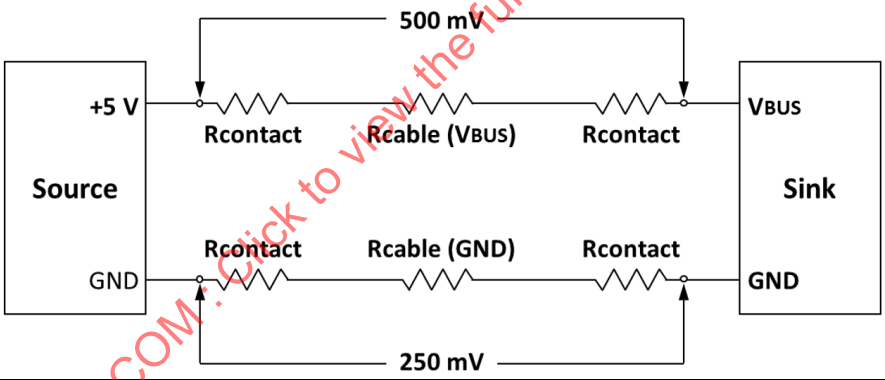
4.4 Alimentation et terre

4.4.1 Chute de tension ohmique

La chute de tension ohmique de câble maximale admise pour la terre (y compris sur un câble captif) doit être de 250 mV et de 500 mV pour VBUS par le câble, pour la capacité maximale de courant VBUS assigné. Lorsque la VCONN est alimentée, la chute de tension ohmique pour la terre doit toujours être respectée en tenant compte d'un éventuel courant de retour VCONN supplémentaire.

La Figure 4-1 représente les paramètres qui contribuent à la chute de tension ohmique et où la mesure doit s'effectuer. La chute de tension ohmique inclut la résistance de contact des connecteurs mâle et femelle couplés à chaque extrémité.

Figure 4-1 —Chute de tension ohmique d'un câble



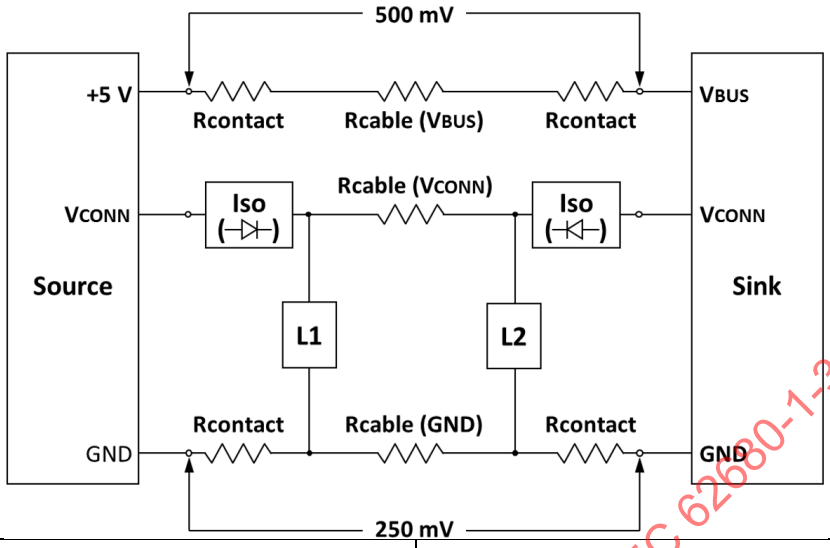
Anglais	Français
Sink	Collecteur

La Figure 4-2 représente les paramètres qui contribuent à la chute de tension ohmique d'un câble alimenté et où la mesure doit s'effectuer. Noter que le câble alimenté inclut des éléments d'isolation (Iso) et des charges (L1 et L2) pour les fonctions du câble alimenté, tels les contrôleurs *USB PD*. La chute de tension ohmique doit rester inférieure à 250 mV dans tous les cas.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-2 — Chute de tension ohmique des câbles alimentés



Anglais	Français
Sink	Collecteur

4.4.2 VBUS

La plage de tensions VBUS admise par défaut, mesurée au niveau du connecteur femelle de la source, doit être celle définie par la *spécification USB 2.0* et la *spécification USB 3.2*. Dans le cadre de l'*USB4*, la *spécification USB 3.2* est utilisée pour cette exigence. NOTER qu'en raison des courants plus élevés admis, les dispositifs existants peuvent supporter une tension plus élevée (jusqu'à 5,5 V maximum) à des charges légères.

La broche VBUS du connecteur femelle USB Type-C de la source doit rester hors tension et doit limiter la capacité entre VBUS et GND conformément au Tableau 4-2, tant qu'un collecteur n'est pas branché. La broche VBUS doit revenir à l'état hors tension lorsque le collecteur est débranché. Le Tableau 4-29 contient les valeurs de temporisation de VBUS. Ces deux exigences ne s'appliquent pas aux hôtes/chargeurs existants qui alimentent par défaut la broche VBUS lorsqu'ils sont connectés par un connecteur USB existant (Standard-A, Micro-B, etc.) à un câble ou un adaptateur USB Type-C.

Un DRP ou une source (ou un dispositif avec prise en charge des accessoires) qui applique une polarisation Rp comme méthode de détection des connexions doit fournir une impédance entre les broches VBUS et GND de son connecteur femelle, conformément au Tableau 4-2, lorsqu'il ou elle ne source pas l'alimentation sur la VBUS (à savoir à l'état Unattached.SRC ou Unattached.Accessory).

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-2 — Caractéristiques d'une source VBUS

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
Impédance de fuite de VBUS	72,4 kΩ		Fuite entre les broches VBUS et GND sur le connecteur femelle lorsque la tension VBUS n'est pas alimentée.
Capacité de VBUS		3 000 µF	Capacité pour les ports source uniquement entre les broches VBUS et GND sur le connecteur femelle lorsque la tension VBUS n'est pas alimentée.
		10 µF	Capacité pour les ports DRP entre les broches VBUS et GND sur le connecteur femelle lorsque la tension VBUS n'est pas alimentée.

Le Tableau 4-3 spécifie les caractéristiques du collecteur VBUS par rapport au comportement de déconnexion en fonction de la surveillance de VBUS. Les collecteurs peuvent surveiller la broche CC, le retrait de Rp par la source étant un indice supplémentaire de déconnexion.

Tableau 4-3 — Caractéristiques d'un collecteur VBUS

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
tSinkDisconnect		40 ms	Limite de temps pour la transition de Attached.SNK vers Unattached.SNK
vSinkDisconnect[1]	0,8 V	3,67 V	Seuil utilisé pour la transition de Attached.SNK vers Unattached.SNK lorsque VBUS est de 5 V. Il s'applique également pour les contrats *USB PD* à 5 V. Pour les contrats *USB PD* à 5 V, le collecteur doit prendre en compte la chute de tension ohmique et la marge lors du choix de ce seuil.
		PPS_APDO_Min_Voltage * 0,95	Seuil utilisé pour la transition de Attached.SNK vers Unattached.SNK. Il s'applique aux contrats PPS *USB PD* pour une tension de sortie du RDO inférieure ou égale à 5 V. Il s'applique également aux contrats PPS *USB PD* qui fonctionnent en mode de limite du courant. Le collecteur doit prendre en compte la chute de tension ohmique et la marge lors du choix de ce seuil.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
vSinkPD_min[1]		vNew – 750 mV + vValid	Tension VBUS valide minimale lue par le collecteur lors de la négociation par l'*USB PD*. vNew = vSrcNew (min) ou vPpsNew (min) comme défini dans l'*USB PD*. 750 mV = 500 mV + 250 mV (chute de tension ohmique maximale) vValid = vSrcValid (min) ou vPpsValid (min) comme défini dans l'*USB PD*.
vSinkDisconnectPD[1]	90 % de vSinkPD_min	vSinkPD_min	Seuil de déconnexion de VBUS lorsque la tension VBUS a été négociée par *USB PD* à une valeur supérieure à 5 V. Il s'applique aux contrats PPS *USB PD* pour une tension de sortie du RDO supérieure à 5 V. Il s'applique également aux contrats PPS *USB PD* qui fonctionnent en mode de tension constante.
Capacité de VBUS		10 µF	Capacité entre les broches VBUS et GND sur le connecteur femelle lorsque Attached.SNK n'est pas activé.

Note 1: Pour l'applicabilité de cette exigence, voir 4.5.2.2.5.2.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.4.3 VCONN

La tension VCONN est fournie par la source pour alimenter les câbles dont le connecteur mâle comporte des composants électroniques. Elle est fournie par la broche CC qui est désignée pour ne pas être connectée au fil CC du câble.

Dans un premier temps, la VCONN doit être alimentée sur l'ensemble des connecteurs femelles USB Type-C de la source, qui utilisent les broches TX et RX lors de certains états de connexion décrits au 4.5.2.2. Par la suite, si la VCONN n'est pas explicitement exigée par le câble ou le dispositif comme indiqué dans son marqueur électronique, elle peut être retirée comme décrit dans le Tableau 4-4. La VCONN peut également être alimentée par les connecteurs femelles USB Type-C qui n'utilisent pas les broches SSTX et SSRX, comme décrit au 4.5.2.2. La commande *USB PD* VCONN_Swap permet également à la source de demander que le collecteur branché alimente la VCONN.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-4 — Récapitulatif des exigences de tension VCONN du port Source USB Type-C

D+/D–	TX/RX, VPD	> 3 A	Exigences concernant la VCONN
Non	Non	Non	Non exigé pour alimenter la VCONN
Oui	Non	Non	Non exigé pour alimenter la VCONN
Oui	Oui	Non	Exigé pour fournir 1 W pour les implémentations x1 et 1,5 W pour les implémentations x2. Sauf indication contraire, l'alimentation VCONN peut être retirée lorsque la source a lu le marqueur électronique du câble et déterminé qu'il ne s'agit ni d'un câble actif ni d'un VPD.
Non	Non	Oui	Exigé pour fournir 100 mW. Sauf indication contraire, l'alimentation VCONN peut être retirée lorsque la source a lu le marqueur électronique du câble et déterminé le courant maximal admissible du câble.
Oui	Non	Oui	Exigé pour fournir 100 mW. Sauf indication contraire, l'alimentation VCONN peut être retirée lorsque la source a lu le marqueur électronique du câble et déterminé le courant maximal admissible du câble.
Oui	Oui	Oui	Exigé pour fournir 1 W pour les implémentations x1 et 1,5 W pour les implémentations x2. Sauf indication contraire, l'alimentation VCONN peut être retirée lorsque la source a lu le marqueur électronique du câble et déterminé le courant maximal admissible du câble, et qu'il ne s'agit ni d'un câble actif ni d'un VPD.

Le Tableau 4-5 indique les exigences de tension et d'alimentation qui doivent être respectées pour VCONN. Voir 4.9 pour plus d'informations sur les câbles avec marquage électronique. Voir Annexe E pour plus d'informations sur la prise en charge facultative d'une plage de tensions VCONN étendue en modes alternatifs.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-5 — Caractéristiques d'une source VCONN

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
vVCONNValid	3,0 V	5,5 V	Plage de tensions dans laquelle VCONN est interprétée comme valide.
Alimentation des sources avec signaux TX/RX	x1 1 W		La source peut verrouiller VCONN si la quantité d'alimentation puisée dépasse les valeurs spécifiées de courant d'appel et de tension. La source peut désactiver VCONN conformément au Tableau 4-4. Les modes alternatifs peuvent exiger une alimentation plus élevée.
	x2 1,5 W		
Alimentation des sources avec prise en charge des VPD	1 W		La source peut verrouiller VCONN si la quantité d'alimentation puisée dépasse les valeurs spécifiées de courant d'appel et de tension.
Alimentation des sources en mode veille USB ou sans signaux TX/RX	100 mW		La source d'alimentation minimale doit être fournie en mode veille USB ou sans signaux TX/RX. La source peut désactiver VCONN conformément au Tableau 4-4.
Rdch	30 Ω	6 120 Ω	Résistance de décharge appliquée dans UnattachedWait.SRC entre la broche CC en cours de déchargement et GND.

Pour aider à réduire la puissance associée à l'alimentation de la VCONN, une source peut soit ne pas alimenter la VCONN, soit la désactiver dans l'une des conditions suivantes:

- la Ra n'est pas détectée sur la broche CC à l'issue du délai tCCDebounce lorsque l'autre broche CC est à l'état SRC.Rd; ou
- aucune réponse GoodCRC n'a été donnée aux messages de découverte d'identité de l'*USB PD* envoyés sur SOP'.

Si la source d'alimentation utilisée pour alimenter VCONN est une source d'alimentation partagée avec d'autres sorties USB VCONN et VBUS, elle doit être découplée avec une capacité identique aux exigences de capacité VBUS définies au 11.4.4 Dynamic Attach and Detach de l'*USB 3.2*. La capacité de dérivation des sources d'alimentation VCONN doit être isolée des broches CC lorsque VCONN n'est pas fournie.

Le Tableau 4-6 fournit les exigences qui doivent être respectées pour les câbles qui consomment de l'alimentation VCONN.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-6 — Caractéristiques d'un collecteur VCONN de câble

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
Tension	3,0	5,5 V	Plage de tensions (vVCONNValid) à laquelle ce tableau s'applique.
Capacité d'appel		10 µF	Un câble ne doit pas présenter une capacité d'appel supérieure à celle de la source VCONN. Le câble actif est responsable du déchargement de sa capacité.
Alimentation des câbles passifs avec marquage électronique		20 mW	Voir 4.9. Mesurée sans trafic USB PD au moins 500 ms après application de VCONN. Note: 75 mW max. admis pendant les 500 premières millisecondes après application de VCONN.
Alimentation USB 3.2 pour les câbles actifs à l'état U		Voir Tableau 6-19	U0, U1, U2, U3, Rx.Detect et eSS.Disabled.
tVCONNDischarge		230 ms	Durée entre la déconnexion du câble et le moment où vVCONNDischarge est atteint.
vVCONNDischarge		800 mV	Tension VCONN à l'issue du délai tVCONNDischarge
vRaReconnect	800 mV		Tension à laquelle le câble doit réappliquer Ra sur le bord descendant de VCONN.

Le câble doit retirer ou affaiblir Ra lorsque VCONN est comprise dans la plage de tensions valide (vVCONNValid). Le câble doit réappliquer Ra lorsque VCONN chute au-dessous de vRaReconnect, comme défini dans le Tableau 4-6. Le câble doit décharger VCONN à une valeur inférieure à vVCONNDischarge lors de la déconnexion du câble. Le câble doit tenir compte de la capacité VCONN présente dans le câble lors du déchargement de VCONN.

Note d'implémentation: L'augmentation de Ra à 20 kΩ satisfait à l'alimentation dissipée pour les câbles passifs avec marquage électronique et à la décharge de 10 µF inférieure à vVCONNDischarge dans tVCONNDischarge.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-7 — Caractéristiques d'un collecteur VPA (accessoire alimenté par VCONN)

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
Tension	3,0 V	5,5 V	Plage de tensions (vVCONNValid) à laquelle ce tableau s'applique.
Capacité d'appel		10 µF	Un accessoire ne doit pas présenter une capacité d'appel supérieure à celle de la source VCONN. L'accessoire est responsable du déchargement de sa capacité lorsqu'il est débranché d'un port.
Alimentation avant l'entrée en mode alternatif		35 mW	Alimentation maximale en mode veille USB Note: L'alimentation doit être réduite cinq secondes après l'application de VCONN, si le passage en mode alternatif ne s'est pas effectué. Une mise sous/hors tension de VCONN peut être exigée pour réactiver la communication USB-PD.
tVCONNDischarge		230 ms	Délai entre la déconnexion du VPA et le moment où vVCONNDischarge est atteint.
vVCONNDischarge		800 mV	Tension VCONN à l'issue du délai tVCONNDischarge
vRaReconnect	800 mV		Tension à laquelle le VPA doit réappliquer Ra sur le bord descendant de VCONN.
vVCONNDisconnect	800 mV	2,4 V	Seuil utilisé pour détecter les déconnexions de VCONN.

L'accessoire alimenté par VCONN doit retirer ou affaiblir Ra lorsque VCONN est compris dans la plage de tensions valide (vVCONNValid). L'accessoire alimenté par VCONN doit réappliquer Ra lorsque VCONN chute au-dessous de vRaReconnect, comme défini dans le Tableau 4-7. L'accessoire alimenté par VCONN doit tenir compte de la capacité VCONN présente dans l'accessoire lors du déchargement de VCONN.

La consommation de puissance maximale en mode alternatif est définie par la spécification relative au mode alternatif utilisé.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-8 — Caractéristiques d'un collecteur VPD

	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
Tension	3,0 V	5,5 V	Plage de tensions (vVCONNValid) à laquelle ce tableau s'applique.
Capacité d'appel		10 µF	Un VPD ne doit pas présenter une capacité d'appel supérieure à celle de la source VCONN. Le VPD est responsable du déchargement de sa capacité lorsqu'il est débranché d'un port.
Alimentation avant l'énumération USB		35 mW	Alimentation maximale en mode veille USB
Alimentation en activité		500 mW (*USB 2.0*) 750 mW (*USB 3.2*)	Un VPD doit uniquement exposer une interface à faible alimentation par USB.
tVCONNDischarge		230 ms	Durée entre la déconnexion du VPD et le moment où vVCONNDischarge est atteint.
vVCONNDischarge		800 mV	Tension VCONN à l'issue du délai tVCONNDischarge
vRaReconnect	800 mV		Tension à laquelle le VPD doit réappliquer Ra sur le bord descendant de VCONN.
vVCONNDisconnect	800 mV	2,4 V	Seuil utilisé pour détecter les déconnexions de VCONN.

Le VPD doit retirer ou affaiblir Ra lorsque VCONN est comprise dans la plage de tensions valide (vVCONNValid).

Le VPD doit réappliquer Ra lorsque VCONN chute au-dessous de vRaReconnect, comme défini dans le Tableau 4-8. Le VPD doit tenir compte de la capacité VCONN présente dans le dispositif lors du déchargement de VCONN.

4.5 Canal de configuration (CC)

4.5.1 Vue d'ensemble de l'architecture

Pour la solution USB Type-C, deux broches sur le connecteur, CC1 et CC2, sont utilisées pour établir et gérer la connexion de la source au collecteur. Lorsque le dispositif est connecté par un hub, la connexion entre un collecteur (UFP) sur le hub et la source (port hôte), et la connexion entre le collecteur (port dispositif) et une source (DFP sur le hub), sont traitées séparément. Sur le plan fonctionnel, le canal de configuration permet d'atteindre les objectifs suivants:

- détecter le branchement d'un port USB, d'une source à un collecteur par exemple;
- résoudre l'orientation du câble et les connexions torsadées pour établir le routage du bus de données USB;
- établir des rôles de données entre deux ports branchés;
- découvrir et configurer VBUS: modes de courant USB Type-C ou *USB Power Delivery*;

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- configurer VCONN;
- découvrir et configurer les modes alternatif et accessoire facultatifs.

4.5.1.1 Interface de bus de données USB et capacité de retournement des connecteurs mâles USB Type-C

Etant donné que le connecteur mâle USB Type-C peut être inséré vers le haut ou vers le bas, les hôtes et dispositifs qui prennent en charge la fonctionnalité de bus de données USB doivent s'exécuter sur les broches de signal qui sont connectées de bout en bout. Dans le cas de l'*USB 2.0*, les deux broches de signal D+ et les deux broches de signal D− sont court-circuitées ensemble dans les connecteurs femelles de l'hôte et du dispositif. Dans le cas des signaux *USB 3.2* SuperSpeed ou des signaux *USB4* TX/RX en fonctionnement à voie unique, l'équivalent fonctionnel d'un commutateur est exigé dans l'hôte et le dispositif afin de router de manière appropriée les paires de signaux TX et RX vers le chemin connecté par le câble. Pour une implémentation *USB 3.2* SuperSpeed ou *USB4* à double voie, l'hôte et/ou le dispositif résolvent l'ordre des voies.

La Figure 4-3 représente le modèle de bus de données logique d'un hôte USB Type-C connecté à un dispositif USB Type-C qui ne peut fonctionner qu'en USBSuperSpeed à voie unique. Le câble USB qui se trouve entre un hôte et un dispositif peut être dans l'un des quatre états connectés possibles du point de vue de l'hôte:

- liaison directe non retournée – Position ① ⇔ Position ①;
- liaison torsadée non retournée – Position ① ⇔ Position ②;
- liaison directe retournée – Position ② ⇔ Position ②;
- liaison torsadée retournée – Position ② ⇔ Position ①.

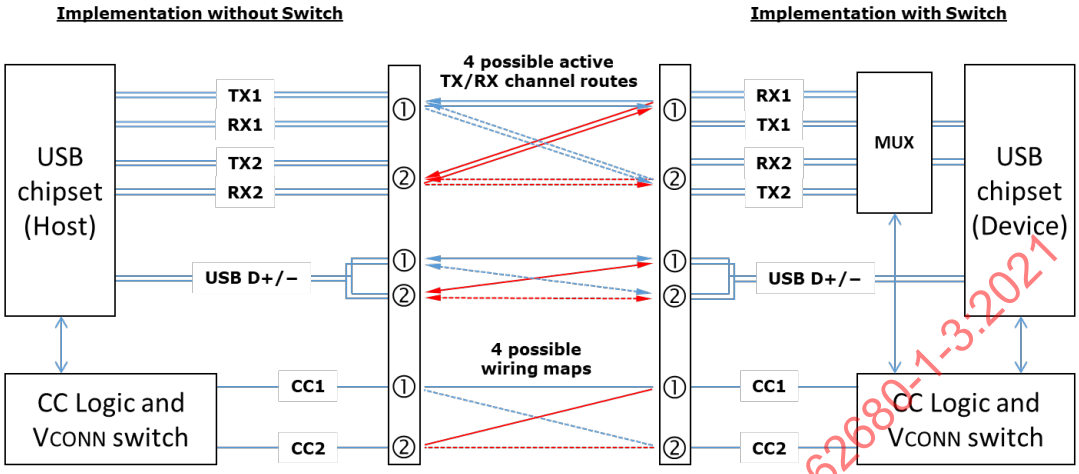
Pour établir un routage approprié du bus de données USB actif de l'hôte vers le dispositif, le câble USB Type-C normalisé est branché de sorte qu'un seul fil CC est aligné sur les premières paires de signaux TX/RX (TXp1/TXn1 et RXp1/RXn1). De cette façon, le fil CC et les fils du bus de données TX/RX qui sont utilisés pour le signalement en fonctionnement à voie unique dans le câble suivent l'orientation et la torsion du câble. En étant capable de détecter quelle broche CC (CC1 ou CC2) au niveau du connecteur femelle est terminée par le dispositif, l'hôte peut déterminer les signaux TX/RX qui doivent être utilisés pour la connexion à voie unique. L'hôte peut également contrôler le commutateur fonctionnel pour le routage des paires de signaux TX/RX. De la même façon dans le dispositif, la détection de la broche CC, au niveau du connecteur femelle, terminée par l'hôte permet au dispositif de contrôler le commutateur fonctionnel qui route ses paires de signaux TX/RX.

Pour une implémentation à double voie, la paire de signaux TX/RX dans le câble/connecteur mâle aligné sur le fil/la broche CC est "Lane 0" et, en référence à l'*USB 3.2*, doit être identifiée comme la voie de configuration. La deuxième paire de signaux TX/RX (TXp2/TXn2 et RXp2/RXn2) dans le câble/connecteur mâle est "Lane 1" pour une configuration à double voie.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-3 — Modèle logique du routage du bus de données à voie unique sur les ports USB Type-C



Anglais	Français
Implementation without Switch	Mise en œuvre sans commutateur
Implementation with Switch	Mise en œuvre avec commutateur
USB chipset (Host)	Jeu de puces USB (hôte)
CC Logic and V_{CONN} switch	Logique CC et commutateur V_{CONN}
4 possible active TX/RX channel routes	4 canaux TX/RX actifs possibles
4 possible wiring maps	4 plans de câblage possibles
USB chipset (Device)	Jeu de puces USB (dispositif)

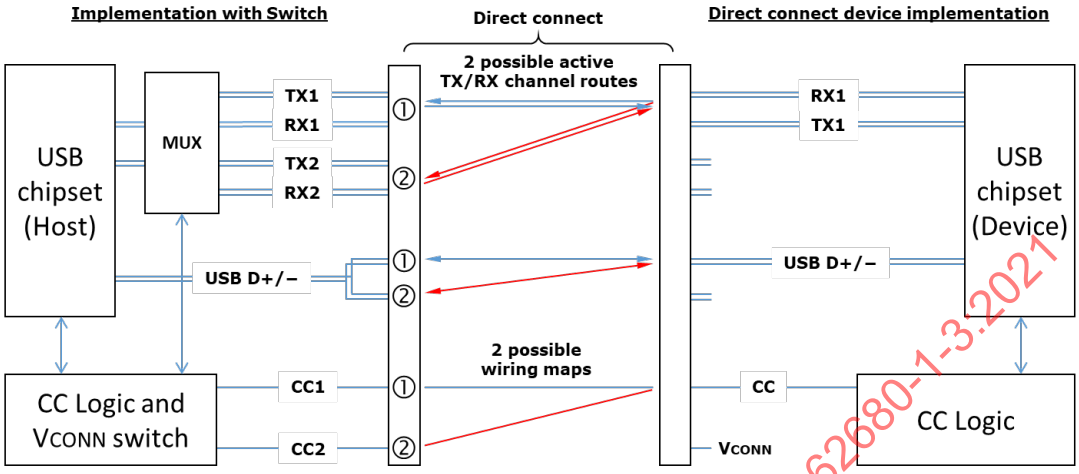
Tandis que la Figure 4-3 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'un hôte connecté à un dispositif, ce modèle s'applique également aux ports en aval d'un hub USB.

La Figure 4-4 représente le modèle de bus de données logique d'un dispositif USB Type-C à voie unique (mis en œuvre avec un connecteur mâle USB Type-C physiquement incorporé au dispositif ou connecté de façon permanente en tant que câble captif) directement connecté à un hôte USB Type-C. Pour le dispositif, l'emplacement du bus de données TX/RX, du bus de données *USB 2.0* et des broches CC et V_{CONN} est défini à la conception. Etant donné que l'emplacement des broches du dispositif est fixe, seuls deux états de connexion possibles sont disponibles du point de vue de l'hôte.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-4 — Modèle logique des ports USB Type-C du dispositif à voie unique et connexion directe



Anglais	Français
Implementation without Switch	Mise en œuvre sans commutateur
Direct connect device implementation	Mise en œuvre de dispositif à connexion directe
USB chipset (Host)	Jeu de puces USB (hôte)
CC Logic and V_{CONN} switch	Logique CC et commutateur V_{CONN}
Direct connect	Connexion directe
2 possible active TX/RX channel routes	2 canaux TX/RX actifs possibles
2 possible wiring maps	2 plans de câblage possibles
USB chipset (Device)	Jeu de puces USB (dispositif)
CC Logic	Logique CC

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Les exigences fonctionnelles concernant la mise en œuvre du routage du bus de données TX/RX pour le connecteur femelle USB Type-C ne relèvent pas du domaine d'application de la présente spécification. Ce modèle logique peut reposer sur plusieurs architectures d'hôte, de dispositif et de hub, qui peuvent inclure la commutation discrète ou intégrée, et l'intégration de cette fonctionnalité à d'autres éléments de conception *USB 3.2* ou *USB4*, comme un répéteur de bus par exemple.

Les exigences fonctionnelles concernant l'adressage du routage SBU1 et SBU2 ne relèvent pas du domaine d'application de la présente spécification. Pour *USB4*, où SBTX et SBRX sont mappés vers SBU1 et SBU2, l'ajustement du mappage de ces signaux en fonction de l'état de connexion (retournée et/ou torsadée) du câble est défini par la *spécification USB4* (inversion de la voie de canal en bande latérale de référence).

4.5.1.2 Connexion des sources et des collecteurs

Etant donné que les connecteurs mâle et femelle USB Type-C ne font plus la différence entre les rôles hôte et dispositif en fonction de la forme du connecteur (les connecteurs USB Type-A et Type-B par exemple), deux ports équipés de connecteurs femelles USB Type-C peuvent être connectés ensemble avec un câble USB Type-C normalisé. Le Tableau 4-9 récapitule les résultats attendus lors de l'interconnexion de ports Source, Collecteur et DRP.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-9 — Interopérabilité d'un port USB Type-C

	Source uniquement	**Collecteur uniquement**	**DRP (alimentation double fonction)**
Source uniquement	Non fonctionnel	Fonctionnel	Fonctionnel
Collecteur uniquement	Fonctionnel	Non fonctionnel	Fonctionnel
DRP (alimentation double fonction)	Fonctionnel	Fonctionnel	Fonctionnel*

* La résolution des rôles peut être automatique ou manuelle.

Dans les cas où l'interconnexion ne fonctionne pas, aucun des ports ne doit être utilisé. L'utilisateur doit trouver lui-même la combinaison invalide et prendre les mesures de résolution appropriées. Bien que ces deux combinaisons incorrectes imitent l'USB traditionnel où les connexions entre hôtes et entre dispositifs ne sont pas destinées à fonctionner, la solution USB Type-C non détrompée n'empêche pas l'utilisateur de tenter ces interconnexions. Les tensions VBUS et VCONN ne doivent pas être appliquées par une source (hôte) dans ces cas.

Le processus classique de configuration de l'interface dans le cas général d'une connexion USB entre une source (hôte) et un collecteur (dispositif) est le suivant:

1. détecter une connexion valide entre les ports (déterminer notamment l'orientation du câble et la relation source-collecteur et DFP-UFP);
2. découvrir éventuellement les capacités du câble;
3. établir éventuellement des alternatives à l'alimentation traditionnelle par USB (voir 4.6.2):
    a. communication *USB PD* par CC pour la négociation de l'alimentation avancée;
    b. modes de courant USB Type-C;
    c. *USB BC 1.2*;
4. procéder à la récupération des informations du dispositif USB.

Lorsque les ports DRP (alimentation double fonction) sont branchés à un port Source uniquement, Collecteur uniquement ou autre DRP, le processus est fondamentalement le même, à l'exception près que lors de l'étape de détection d'une connexion valide, le DRP alterne entre le fonctionnement en tant que source pour détecter un collecteur branché, et la présentation en tant que collecteur pour être détecté par une source branchée. Finalement, une connexion source-collecteur est établie.

4.5.1.2.1 Détection d'une connexion source-collecteur valide

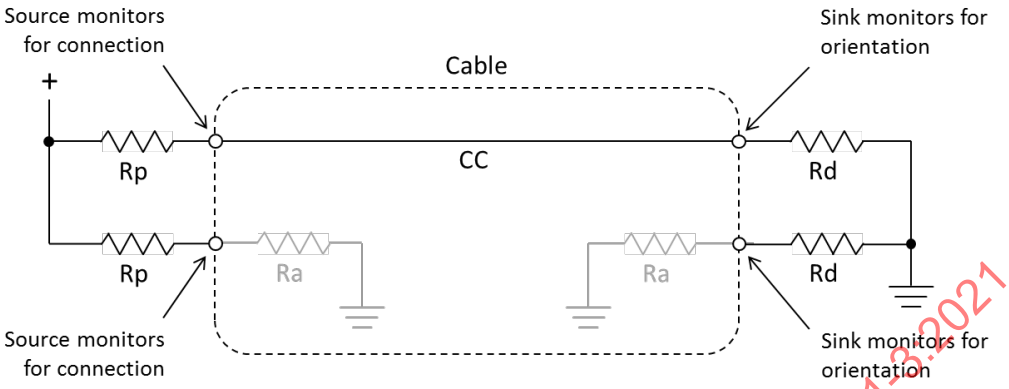
Le concept général de configuration d'une connexion valide entre une source et un collecteur repose sur la capacité à détecter les terminaisons qui figurent dans le produit actuellement branché.

Pour faciliter la définition du comportement fonctionnel du CC, un modèle de terminaison de polarisation (Rp) et de dépolarisation (Rd) est utilisé. La mise en œuvre réelle dans les hôtes et les dispositifs peut varier. Par exemple, la terminaison de polarisation peut être remplacée par une source de courant. La Figure 4-5 et la Figure 4-6 représentent deux modèles: le premier modèle repose sur une résistance de polarisation dans la source et le second modèle remplace cette résistance par une source de courant.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

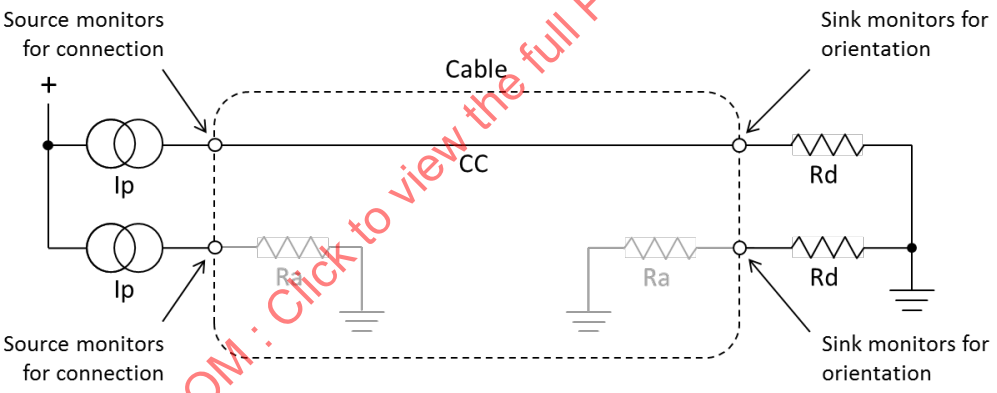
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-5 — Modèle CC de polarisation/dépolarisation



Anglais	Français
Source monitors for connection	La source détecte la connexion
Sink monitors for orientation	Le collecteur détecte l'orientation
Cable	Câble

Figure 4-6 — Modèle CC de source de courant/dépolarisation



Anglais	Français
Source monitors for connection	La source détecte la connexion
Sink monitors for orientation	Le collecteur détecte l'orientation
Cable	Câble

A l'origine, une source expose les terminaisons Rp indépendantes sur ses broches CC1 et CC2, et un collecteur expose les terminaisons Rd indépendantes sur ses broches CC1 et CC2. La combinaison source-collecteur de cette configuration de circuit représente une connexion valide. Pour détecter cette connexion, la source surveille CC1 et CC2 afin d'identifier une tension inférieure à sa tension non terminée. La Rp est déterminée en fonction de la tension de terminaison de polarisation et du circuit de détection de la source. Elle indique qu'un collecteur, un câble alimenté ou un collecteur connecté par un câble alimenté a été branché.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Avant l'application de VCONN, un câble alimenté expose Ra sur sa broche VCONN. La Ra représente la charge sur VCONN à laquelle s'ajoute les éventuels éléments résistants reliés à la terre. Dans certains connecteurs mâles de câble, il peut s'agir d'une résistance pure et dans d'autres, il peut tout simplement s'agir de la charge.

La source doit être capable de faire la différence entre la présence de Rd et de Ra, pour savoir si un collecteur est branché et à quel endroit appliquer VCONN. Il n'est pas nécessaire que la source détecte VCONN à moins que Ra soit détecté.

Deux combinaisons de terminaisons spéciales sur les broches CC, du point de vue de la source, sont définies pour les modes accessoires à branchement direct: Ra/Ra pour le mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio (Annexe A) et Rd/Rd pour le mode accessoire de débogage (Annexe B).

La source utilise des temporisateurs antirebond pour détecter de manière fiable l'état des broches CC, afin de neutraliser les rebonds de la connexion (tCCDebounce) et masquer les communications BMC *USB PD* (tPDDebounce).

Le Tableau 4-10 récapitule l'état des ports du point de vue de la source.

Tableau 4-10 — Point de vue de la source

CC1	CC2	Etat	Position
Ouverte	**Ouverte**	Aucun branchement	N/A
Rd	**Ouverte**	Collecteur branché	①
Ouverte	**Rd**		②
Ouverte	**Ra**	Câble alimenté sans collecteur branché	①
Ra	**Ouverte**		②
Rd	**Ra**	Câble alimenté avec un collecteur, un accessoire alimenté par VCONN (VPA) ou un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN (VPD) branché	①
Ra	**Rd**		②
Rd	**Rd**	Mode accessoire de débogage branché (Annexe B)	N/A
Ra	**Ra**	Mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio branché (Annexe A)	N/A

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Après alimentation, le collecteur surveille CC1 et CC2 pour identifier une tension supérieure à la tension de terre locale. La broche CC dont la tension est la plus élevée (donc polarisée par Rp dans la source) indique l'orientation du connecteur mâle.

Le Tableau 4-11 récapitule les comportements types de sources (hôtes) et de collecteurs (dispositifs) simples pour chaque état décrit dans le Tableau 4-10.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-11 — Comportements de la source (hôte) et du collecteur (dispositif) par état

Etat	Comportement de la source	Comportement du collecteur
Aucun branchement	• Détecte les broches CC pour le branchement • N'applique pas VBUS ou VCONN	• Détecte VBUS pour le branchement
Collecteur branché	• Détecte CC pour l'orientation • Détecte CC pour le débranchement • Applique VBUS et VCONN	• Détecte les broches CC pour l'orientation • Détecte la perte de VBUS pour le débranchement
Câble alimenté sans collecteur branché	• Détecte les broches CC pour le branchement • N'applique pas VBUS ou VCONN	• Détecte VBUS pour le branchement
Câble alimenté avec un collecteur, un accessoire alimenté par VCONN ou un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN branché	• Détecte CC pour l'orientation • Détecte CC pour le débranchement • Applique VBUS et VCONN • Détecte VPD et retire VBUS	• Si les accessoires ou les VPD sont pris en charge, se référer à la colonne Comportement de la source, à l'exception de VBUS qui n'est pas appliqué. Sinon, N/A.
Mode accessoire de débogage branché	• Détecte les broches CC pour le débranchement • Reconfigure pour le débogage	• Détecte VBUS pour le débranchement • Reconfigure pour le débogage
Mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio branché	• Détecte les broches CC pour le débranchement • Reconfigure pour l'audio analogique	• Si les accessoires sont pris en charge, se référer à la colonne Comportement de la source. Sinon, N/A

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

La Figure 4-3 représente comment l'orientation du connecteur mâle inséré est détectée au niveau du connecteur femelle de la source en identifiant sur laquelle des deux broches CC du connecteur femelle la terminaison Rd est décelée. Quand la source (hôte) a reconnu qu'un collecteur (dispositif) est branché et quand l'orientation du connecteur mâle est déterminée, la source configure le routage du bus de données TX/RX vers le connecteur femelle.

La source (hôte) active ensuite la VBUS. Pour les broches CC qui ne connectent pas la source au collecteur par câble, la source alimente la VCONN et peut retirer la terminaison. Lorsque le collecteur (dispositif) est sous tension, il configure le chemin de données USB. Cela finalise la connexion hôte-dispositif.

La source surveille le fil CC (perte de la terminaison de dépolarisation) afin de détecter tout débranchement. Lorsque le collecteur est retiré, le port source élimine toute tension appliquée sur la VBUS et la VCONN, réinitialise la configuration de son interface et reprend la recherche d'un nouveau branchement de collecteur.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Lorsqu'une connexion source-collecteur valide est établie, des alternatives aux alimentations USB traditionnelles (VBUS définie par les spécifications *USB 2.0* ou *USB 3.2*) peuvent être disponibles en fonction des capacités de l'hôte et du dispositif. Il s'agit notamment d'USB Type-C Current, d'USB Power Delivery et d'*USB Battery Charging 1.2*.

Lorsque l'*USB PD* PR_Swap est utilisée pour échanger la source et le collecteur d'une VBUS, le fournisseur de la VCONN reste inchangé pendant et après l'échange d'alimentation de la VBUS. La nouvelle source surveille le fil CC et le nouveau collecteur surveille la VBUS afin de détecter tout débranchement. Lorsqu'un débranchement est détecté, toutes les tensions appliquées sur la VBUS et la VCONN sont éliminées, et chaque port réinitialise la configuration de son interface et reprend la recherche d'un nouveau branchement.

Lorsque l'*USB PD* DR_Swap est utilisée pour échanger les rôles de données (DFP et UFP), la source de la VBUS et de la VCONN n'est pas modifiée après l'échange des rôles de données.

Lorsque l'*USB PD* VCONN_Swap est utilisée pour échanger la source de la VCONN, la source/le collecteur de la VBUS et les rôles DFP/UFP sont conservés pendant et après l'échange de la VCONN.

La dernière étape du processus de connexion normale par USB Type-C renvoie au dispositif USB à brancher et à énumérer conformément aux processus normalisés *USB 2.0* et *USB 3.2*.

4.5.1.3 Modèles fonctionnels du canal de configuration

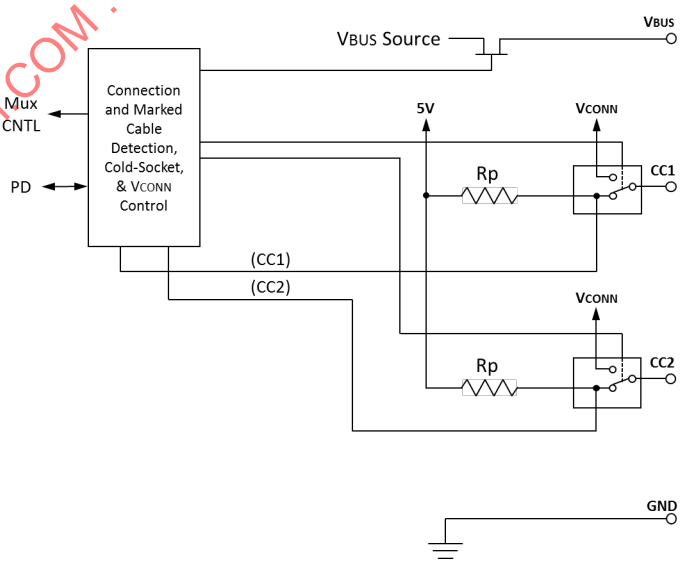
Les modèles fonctionnels relatifs au comportement du canal de configuration fondé sur les broches CC1 et CC2 sont décrits dans le présent paragraphe pour chaque type de port: Source, Collecteur et Alimentation double fonction (DRP).

Les figures suivantes représentent les routages CC1 et CC2 à la fin du processus de détection CC. Dans ces figures, les broches VBUS et VCONN peuvent ne pas être disponibles.

4.5.1.3.1 Modèle fonctionnel du canal de configuration d'une source

La Figure 4-7 représente le modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'un port source avant branchement. Cette image prend en compte l'*USB PD*.

Figure 4-7 — Modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'une source



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

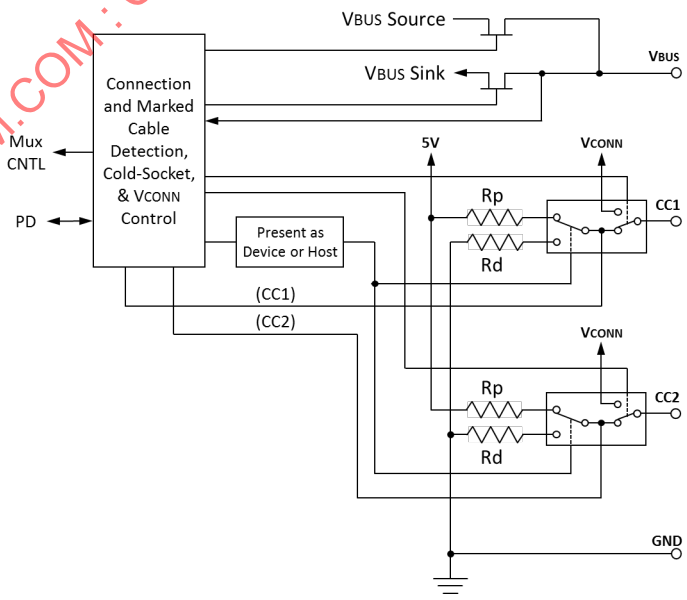
Anglais	Français
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & VCONN Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de VCONN
VBUS Source	Source VBUS

D'après la Figure 4-7, un port qui se comporte comme une source présente les caractéristiques fonctionnelles suivantes:

1. la source utilise un TEC pour activer/désactiver l'alimentation par la VBUS ou lorsque la source est initialement équipée d'une VBUS désactivée;
2. la source fournit les résistances de polarisation (Rp) sur les broches CC1 et CC2, et surveille ces dernières en vue de détecter un collecteur; la présence d'une résistance de dépolarisation (Rd) sur chaque broche indique qu'un collecteur est branché. La valeur d'une Rp indique le niveau initial de courant USB Type-C pris en charge par l'hôte;
3. la source utilise la capacité de dépolarisation des broches CC pour détecter et établir le routage adapté au chemin de données USB SuperSpeed et déterminer quelle broche CC est destinée à alimenter la VCONN;
4. une fois le collecteur détecté, la source active la VBUS et la VCONN;
5. la source peut ajuster dynamiquement la valeur de la Rp pour indiquer une modification de courant USB Type-C disponible vers un collecteur;
6. la source surveille le maintien de la présence de Rd, afin de détecter tout débranchement du collecteur. Lorsqu'un débranchement est détecté, la source élimine (le cas échéant) la VBUS et la VCONN et revient à l'étape 2;
7. si la source prend en charge les fonctions avancées (*USB Power Delivery* et/ou modes alternatifs), une communication *USB PD* est exigée.

La Figure 4-8 représente le modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'une source qui prend en charge l'*USB PD* PR_Swap.

Figure 4-8 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une source prenant en charge USB PD PR_Swap



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

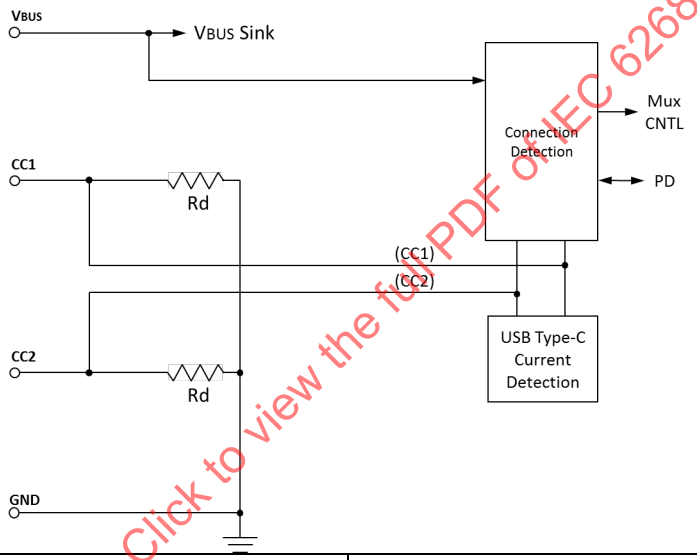
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Anglais	Français
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de V_{CONN}
Present as device or Host	Dispositif ou hôte présent
VBUS Source	Source VBUS
VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS

4.5.1.3.2 Modèle fonctionnel du canal de configuration d'un collecteur

La Figure 4-9 représente le modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'un collecteur. Cette image prend en compte le courant USB Type-C et l'*USB PD*.

Figure 4-9 — Modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'un collecteur



Anglais	Français
VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS
Connection Detection	Détection de connexion
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C

D'après la Figure 4-9, un port qui se comporte comme un collecteur présente les caractéristiques fonctionnelles suivantes:

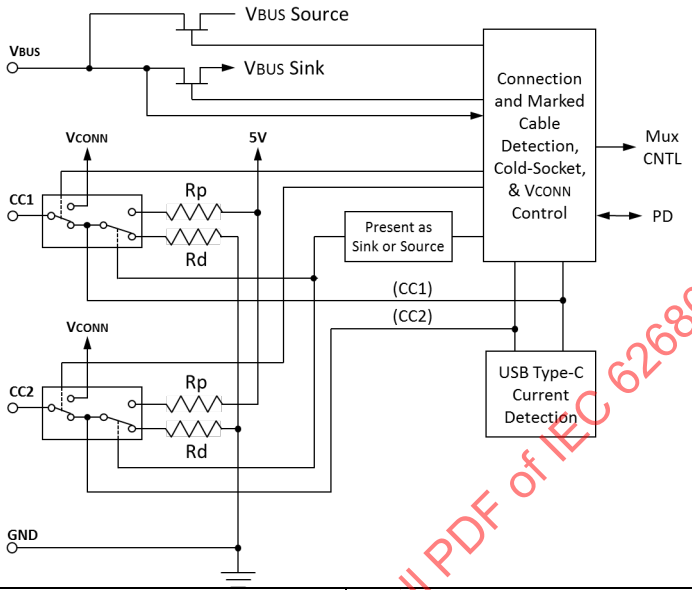
1. le collecteur termine les broches CC1 et CC2 vers la GND avec des résistances de dépolarisation;
2. le collecteur détermine qu'une source est branchée par la présence d'une alimentation sur VBUS;
3. le collecteur utilise la caractéristique de polarisation des broches CC pour détecter et établir le routage adéquat au chemin de données USB SuperSpeed;
4. le collecteur peut, de manière facultative, surveiller les broches CC pour détecter un courant USB Type-C supérieur, disponible en provenance de la source. Le collecteur doit gérer sa charge afin de respecter la limite de courant de la source détectée;
5. si le collecteur prend en charge les fonctions avancées (*USB Power Delivery* et/ou modes alternatifs), une communication *USB PD* est exigée.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

La Figure 4-10 représente le modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'un collecteur qui prend en charge l'*USB PD* PR_Swap et l'*USB PD* VCONN_Swap avant branchement.

Figure 4-10 — Modèle fonctionnel d'un collecteur prenant en charge l'USB PD PR_Swap et VCONN_Swap



Anglais	Français
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de V_{CONN}
Present as Sink or Source	Source ou collecteur présent
VBUS Source	Source VBUS
VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C

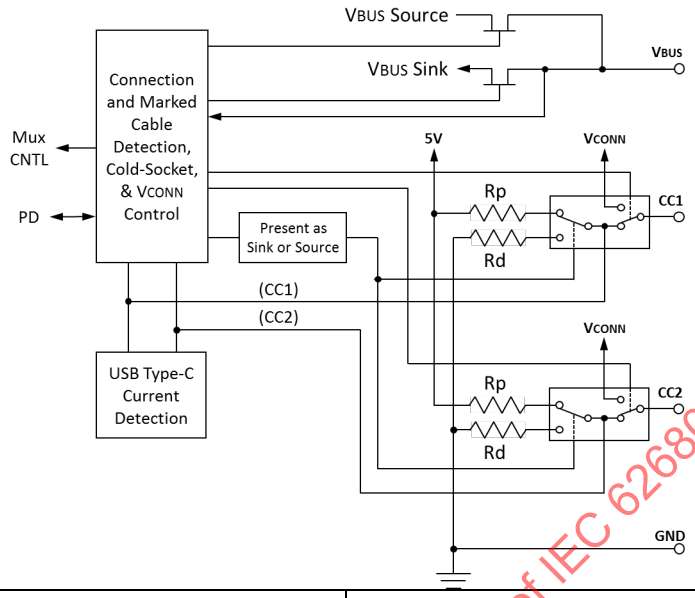
4.5.1.3.3 Modèle fonctionnel du canal de configuration de l'alimentation double fonction (DRP)

La Figure 4-11 représente le modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'une DRP apparaissant comme une source avant branchement. Cette image prend en compte les fonctionnalités de courant USB Type-C et *USB PD*.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-11 — Modèle fonctionnel des broches CC1 et CC2 d'une DRP



Anglais	Français
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & VCONN Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de VCONN
Present as Sink or Source	Source ou collecteur présent
VBUS Source	Source VBUS
VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C

D'après la Figure 4-11, un port qui peut alterner entre les comportements DFP et UFP présente les caractéristiques fonctionnelles suivantes:

1. la DRP utilise un TEC pour activer/désactiver l'alimentation par VBUS. En mode source, VBUS est initialement désactivée;
2. la DRP utilise des commutateurs pour apparaître comme une source ou un collecteur;
3. la DRP fait appel à une logique utilisée pendant le branchement initial pour alterner entre le fonctionnement source et collecteur:
    a. jusqu'à ce qu'un état stable spécifique soit atteint, la DRP apparaît alternativement comme une source et un collecteur. La temporisation du processus est dictée par une période (tDRP), le pourcentage de temps d'exposition d'une Rp par la DRP (dcSRC.DRP) et le délai de transition des rôles (tDRPTransition);
    b. lorsque la DRP apparaît comme une source, elle suit le fonctionnement d'une source pour détecter un collecteur branché (lorsqu'un collecteur est détecté, il applique VBUS et VCONN, et continue de fonctionner comme une source, par exemple interruption alternative);
    c. lorsque la DRP apparaît comme un collecteur, elle surveille VBUS pour détecter le branchement à une source (si une source est détectée, elle continue de fonctionner comme un collecteur, interruption alternative);
4. si la DRP prend en charge les fonctions avancées (*USB Power Delivery* et/ou modes alternatifs), une communication *USB PD* est exigée.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.1.4 Rôles d'alimentation des ports USB Type-C et mécanismes d'échange des rôles

Les ports USB Type-C des produits (hôte USB, dispositifs USB, chargeurs USB, etc.) peuvent généralement se caractériser comme mettant en œuvre un des sept modèles de comportement des rôles d'alimentation:

- Source uniquement;
- Source (par défaut): nette préférence pour le rôle de source, mais capacité à devenir par la suite un collecteur avec des mécanismes d'échange USB PD;
- Collecteur uniquement;
- Collecteur (par défaut): nette préférence pour le rôle de collecteur, mais capacité à devenir par la suite une source par le biais des mécanismes d'échange USB PD;
- DRP: alternance (source/collecteur);
- DRP: dispositif d'alimentation;
- DRP: hôte collecteur.

Deux ensembles indépendants de mécanismes d'échange sont définis pour les mises en œuvre de ports USB Type-C. Le premier repose sur l'échange des rôles dans le processus de connexion initiale avec diagramme d'états, le second sur l'utilisation ultérieure des mécanismes d'échange de l'*USB PD*.

4.5.1.4.1 Echange des rôles, fondé sur le diagramme d'états USB Type-C

Pendant le processus de connexion initiale avec diagramme d'états USB Type-C, les produits à connecter se terminent lorsque l'un des deux rôles suivants est associé à la terminaison de son port:

- Rp → source de la VBUS et de la VCONN qui se comporte comme un port orienté en aval (hôte USB);
- Rd → collecteur de la VBUS qui se comporte comme un port orienté en amont (dispositif USB).

Un produit DRP USB Type-C peut intégrer les mécanismes d'échange Try.SRC et Try.SNK pour affecter le rôle résultant. Try.SRC permet à une DRP avec préférence stratégique de constituer une source lorsqu'elle se connecte à une autre DRP pour effectuer une transition depuis un rôle de collecteur prévu vers le rôle de source. De son côté, Try.SNK permet à une DRP avec préférence stratégique de constituer un collecteur lorsqu'elle se connecte à une autre DRP pour effectuer une transition depuis un rôle de source prévu vers le rôle de collecteur. La temporisation de la connexion et d'autres facteurs sont impliqués dans ce processus, comme défini pour le fonctionnement avec diagramme d'états USB Type-C (voir 4.5.2). Il est important de noter que ces fonctions (Try.SRC et Try.SNK) ne peuvent être utilisées qu'une seule fois dans le cadre du processus de connexion initiale.

Try.SRC et Try.SNK sont destinés à garantir des rôles d'alimentation plus prévisibles lors de la connexion initiale de deux DRP, notamment si le port partenaire ne prend pas en charge *USB PD*. Par exemple, un dispositif mobile de petite taille peut demander à implémenter Try.SNK de sorte que, lors de son branchement à un ordinateur portable DRP, le dispositif mobile reste le collecteur d'alimentation. De même, un ordinateur portable ou une batterie d'alimentation peuvent demander à implémenter Try.SRC pour s'assurer de continuer à alimenter les DRP branchées. Les dispositifs autoalimentés (AMA, par exemple), ou ceux dont la fonction primaire est un rôle de données UFP, peuvent également envisager d'implémenter Try.SNK pour s'assurer de pouvoir correctement exposer leur fonctionnalité. Lorsque les deux côtés prennent en charge *USB PD*, les rôles pertinents peuvent ensuite être affinés ou échangés conformément à la spécification *USB PD*.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.1.4.2 Echange des rôles d'alimentation, des rôles de données et de la VCONN USB PD

A l'issue du processus de connexion initiale avec diagramme d'états USB Type-C, les produits peuvent utiliser les mécanismes d'échange de l'*USB PD* pour commander une modification des rôles d'alimentation, des rôles de données et de l'extrémité de câble qui alimente la VCONN. Ces mécanismes sont les suivants:

- *USB PD* PR_Swap: échange la source (Rp) et le collecteur (Rd);
- *USB PD* DR_Swap: échange les rôles DFP (données d'hôte) et UFP (données du dispositif);
- *USB PD* VCONN_Swap: échange le port qui alimente la VCONN.

Le Tableau 4-12 récapitule les comportements d'un port en réponse aux trois commandes d'échange *USB PD*.

Tableau 4-12 — Récapitulatif du comportement d'échange des ports USB PD

	Rôles de données DFP/UFP	Rp/Rd	Source/collecteur de la VBUS	Source de la VCONN
PR_Swap	Sans modification	Permutation	Permutation	Sans modification
DR_Swap	Permutation	Sans modification	Sans modification	Sans modification
VCONN_Swap	Sans modification	Sans modification	Sans modification	Echange*

* Echange du port source de la VCONN

4.5.1.4.3 Récapitulatif du modèle comportemental des rôles d'alimentation

Le Tableau 4-13 récapitule les caractéristiques de définition des sept principaux rôles d'alimentation.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-13 — Récapitulatif du modèle comportemental des rôles d'alimentation

Rôle d'alimentation		Alter-nance	PR_Swap	Hôte USB	Dispo-sitif USB	DFP	UFP	DR_Swap	Try.SRC/ Try.SNK	Connexion à...
Source uniquement		Non	N/A	Fac.	Fac.[1]	Exigé	Fac.	Fac.	N/A	Collecteur/ DRP
Source (par défaut)		Non	Exigé	Fac.	Fac.[1]	Exigé	Fac.	Fac.	N/A	Collecteur/ DRP
Collecteur uniquement		Non	N/A	Fac.[1]	Fac.	Fac.	Exigé	Fac.	N/A	Source/ DRP
Collecteur (par défaut)		Non	Exigé	Fac.[1]	Fac.	Fac.	Exigé	Fac.	N/A	Source/ DRP
DRP	**Alternance (source/ collecteur)**	Exigé	Exigé	Fac.	Fac.	Exigé	Exigé	Exigé	Fac.	Source/ Collecteur/ DRP
	Dispositif d'alimentation	Exigé	Exigé	N/A	Exigé	Exigé	Exigé	Exigé	Fac.	
	Hôte collecteur	Exigé	Exigé	Exigé	N/A	Exigé	Exigé	Exigé	Fac.	

Note: 1. Exige l'utilisation de DR_Swap.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2 Exigences fonctionnelles et comportementales des broches CC

Le présent paragraphe spécifie les exigences fonctionnelles et comportementales exigées pour la mise en œuvre des broches CC. La première partie fournit les diagrammes d'états de connexion qui constituent le socle des parties suivantes.

Les termes "Source" (SRC) et "Collecteur" (SNK) utilisés dans le présent paragraphe renvoient au rôle d'alimentation du port. Les termes "DFP" et "UFP" renvoient au rôle de données du port. Un port DRP (alimentation double fonction) est capable d'agir comme une source ou un collecteur. En général, les sources se trouvent sur les hôtes et alimentent la VBUS, alors que les collecteurs se trouvent sur les dispositifs et consomment l'alimentation en provenance de la VBUS. Lors d'une connexion initiale, l'état d'alimentation initial du port et le rôle de données sont établis. L'*USB PD* introduit trois commandes d'échange qui peuvent altérer le rôle d'alimentation ou de données d'un port:

- la commande PR_Swap modifie l'état d'alimentation du port, conformément aux diagrammes d'états ci-dessous. PR_Swap ne modifie pas le port d'alimentation de la VCONN;
- la commande DR_Swap n'a aucun effet sur les diagrammes d'états ci-dessous ni sur la VCONN, car elle ne modifie que le rôle de données du port;
- la commande VCONN_Swap modifie le port qui alimente la VCONN. Les commandes PR_Swap et DR_Swap n'ont aucun effet sur le port d'alimentation de la VCONN.

Note: Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN qui prend en charge la capacité de charge en option, après avoir été détecté par le biais de la messagerie *USB PD* modifie également l'état d'alimentation du port côté hôte sans affecter le port d'alimentation de la VCONN.

Note: L'*USB PD* définit un autre mécanisme facultatif d'échange (FR_Swap), qui est utilisé dans les cas particuliers où une interaction utilisateur involontaire peut rendre nécessaire la modification de la source de la VBUS. Variante de PR_Swap, FR_Swap procède de la même manière à l'échange de la source (Rp) et du collecteur (Rd) entre deux ports connectés. Pour les besoins de la présente spécification, seul PR_Swap est explicitement pris en compte dans les exigences comportementales. Le cas échéant, il convient que les mises en œuvre prenant en charge FR_Swap appliquent les comportements associés à PR_Swap à FR_Swap. Voir la spécification *USB PD* pour plus d'informations sur FR_Swap.

Les diagrammes d'états de connexion et les descriptions du comportement des broches CC du présent paragraphe décrivent le comportement des connecteurs femelles des ports. Le connecteur mâle d'un dispositif directement branché ou d'un dispositif connecté par un câble captif doit se comporter comme le connecteur mâle d'un câble branché à un connecteur femelle à son autre extrémité, selon une orientation normale. Ces dispositifs ne doivent appliquer et détecter les niveaux de tension CC que sur la broche A5. La broche B5 doit avoir une impédance supérieure à zOPEN, sauf s'il s'agit d'un accessoire alimenté par VCONN. Dans ce cas, B5 doit avoir une impédance Ra.

4.5.2.1 Diagrammes d'états de connexion

Le présent paragraphe fournit des diagrammes d'états de connexion de référence pour les comportements des broches CC.

Voir 4.5.2.2 pour les exigences de transition d'états spécifiques relatives à chaque état représenté dans les diagrammes.

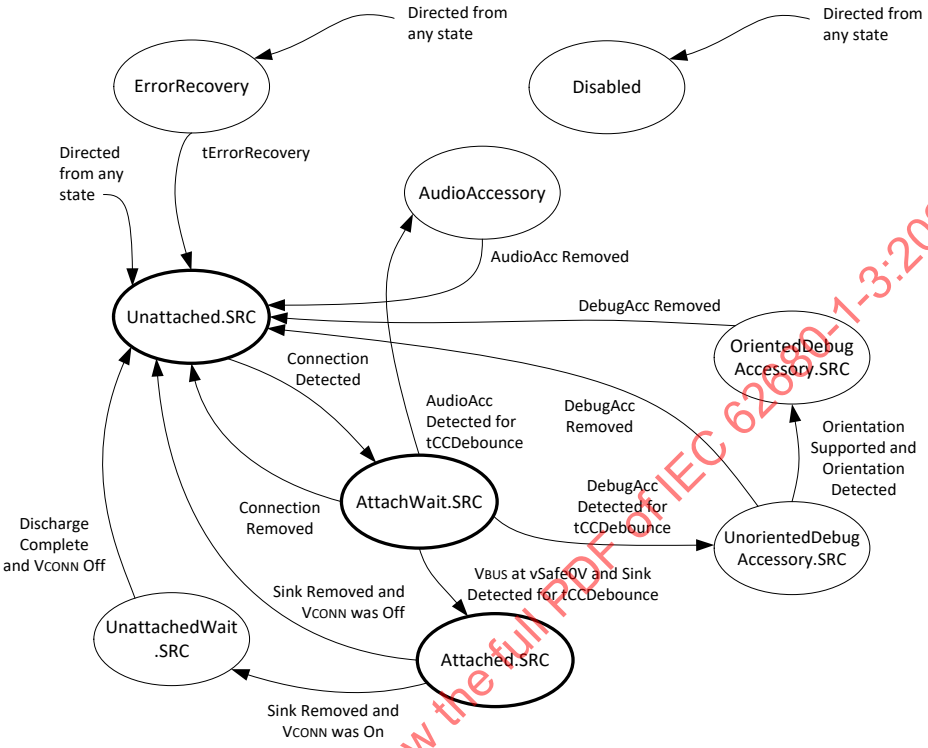
Voir 4.5.2.4 pour une description des états obligatoires pour chaque type de port, ainsi qu'une liste des états où une communication *USB PD* est admise.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

La Figure 4-12 représente un diagramme d'états de connexion d'une source (DFP d'hôte/hub).

Figure 4-12 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: source



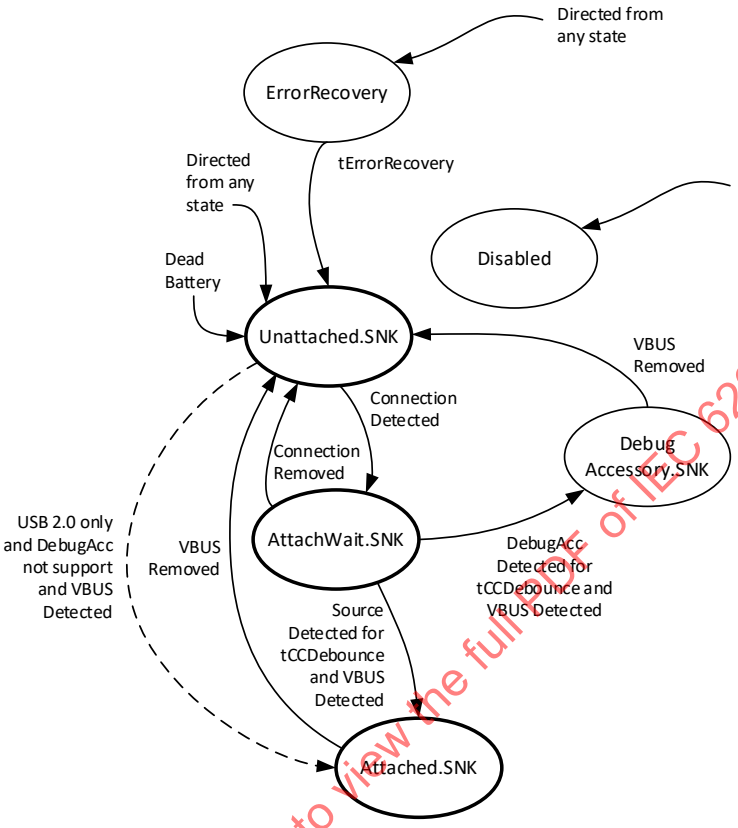
Anglais	Français
Directed from any state	Induit depuis n'importe quel état
Disabled	Désactivé
AudioAcc Removed	AudioAcc supprimé
Connection detected	Connexion détectée
DebugAcc Removed	DebugAcc supprimé
AudioAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	AudioAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
DebugAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
Orientation Supported and Orientation Detected	Orientation prise en charge et détectée
Connection Removed	Connexion supprimée
Discharge Complete and V_{CONN} Off	Déchargement complet et V_{CONN} désactivée
Sink Removed and V_{CONN} was Off	Collecteur supprimé et V_{CONN} désactivée
Sink Removed and V_{CONN} was On	Collecteur supprimé et V_{CONN} activée
Vbus at vSafe0V and Sink Detected for tCCDebounce	V_{BUS} en état vSafe0V et collecteur détecté pour tCCDebounce

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

La Figure 4-13 représente un diagramme d'états de connexion d'un collecteur simple (UFP de dispositif/hub).

Figure 4-13 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: collecteur



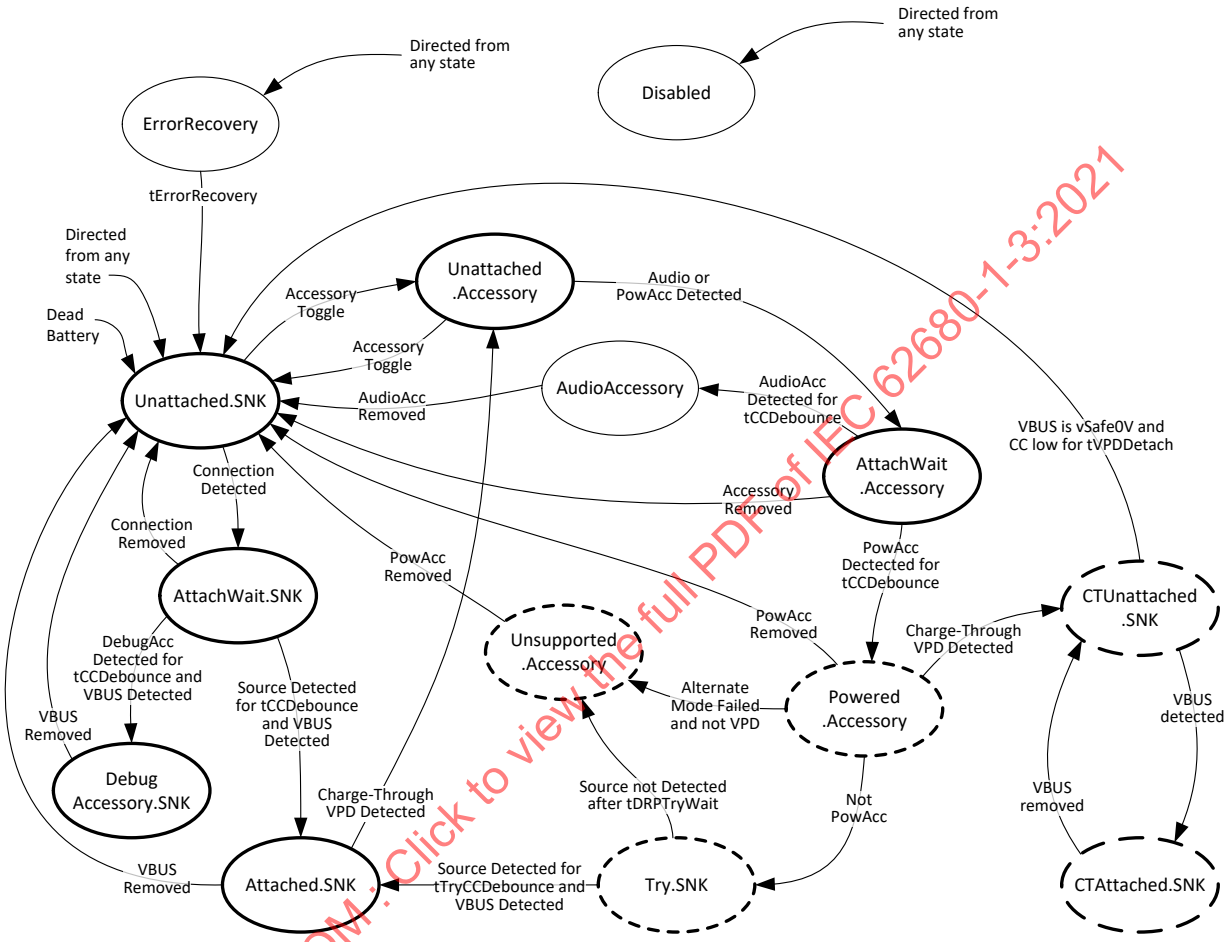
Anglais	Français
Disabled	Désactivé
Directed from any state	Induit depuis n'importe quel état
Dead Battery	Batterie déchargée
USB 2.0 only and DebugAcc not support and VBUS Detected	USB 2.0 seul et DebugAcc non pris en charge et VBUS détectée
VBUS Removed	VBUS supprimée
Connection Detected	Connexion détectée
Connection Removed	Connexion supprimée
Source Detected for tCCDebounce and VBUS Detected	Source détectée pour tCCDebounce et VBUS détectée
DebugAcc Detected for tCCDebounce and VBUS Detected	DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce et VBUS détectée

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

La Figure 4-14 représente un diagramme d'états de connexion d'un collecteur avec prise en charge des modes accessoires.

Figure 4-14 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: collecteur avec prise en charge des accessoires



Anglais	Français
Disabled	Désactivé
Dead Battery	Batterie déchargée
Directed from any state	Induit depuis n'importe quel état
Accessory Toggle	Alternance accessoire
AudioAcc or PowerAcc Detected	AudioAcc ou PowerAcc détecté
Connection Detected	Connexion détectée
Connection Removed	Connexion supprimée
Accessory Removed	Accessoire supprimé
AudioAcc Removed	AudioAcc supprimé
AudioAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	AudioAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
PowerAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	PowerAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
Source Detected for tCCDebounce and VBUS Detected	Source détectée pour tCCDebounce et V_{BUS}
DebugAcc Detected for tCCDebounce and VBUS Detected	DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectée

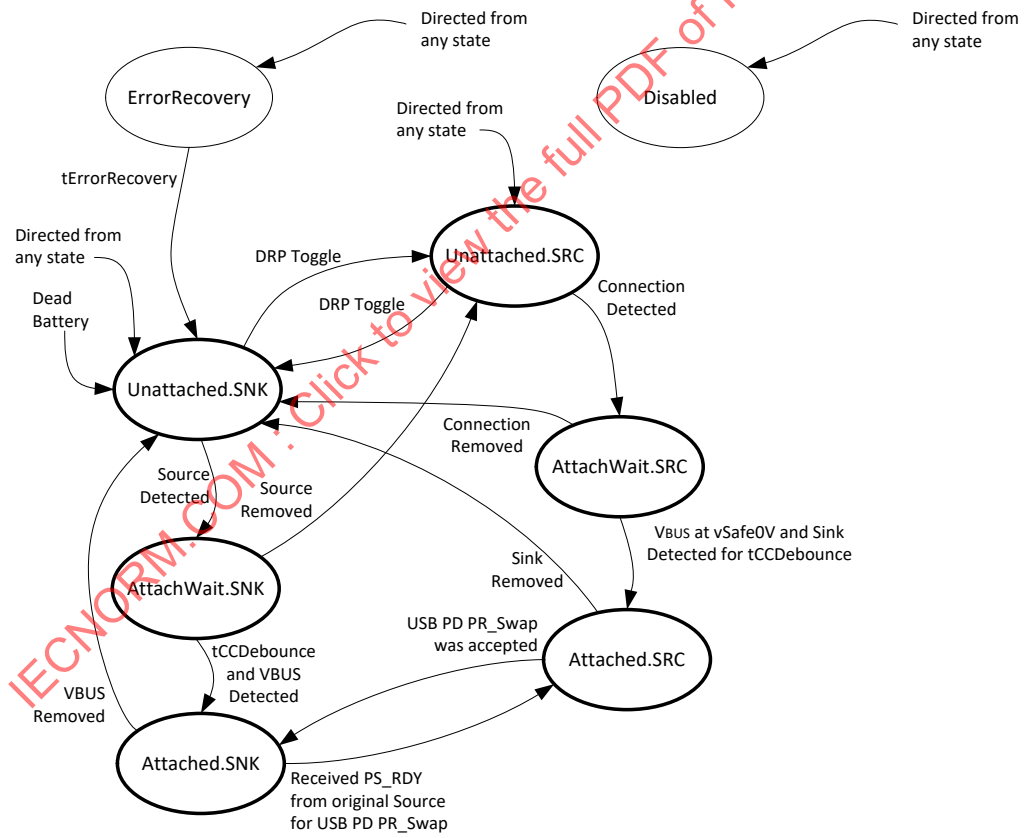
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Vbus Removed	V_{BUS} supprimée
Charge-through VPD detected	VPD de charge détectée
PowerAcc Removed	PowerAcc supprimé
Unsupported accessory	Accessoire non pris en charge
Powered accessory	Accessoire sous tension
Alternate Mode failed	Echec du Mode Alternatif
Not PowerAcc	Pas de PowerAcc
Source not Detected after tDRPTryWait	Source non détectée après tDRPTryWait
Source Detected for tTryCCDebounce and VBUS Detected	Source détectée pour tTryCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectée
VBUS is vSafe0V and CC low for tVPDDetach	VBUS est vSafe0V et tension continue faible pour tVPDDetach

La Figure 4-15 représente un diagramme d'états de connexion d'un port DRP (alimentation double fonction) simple.

Figure 4-15 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: DRP



Anglais	Français
Disabled	Désactivé
Directed from any state	Induit depuis n'importe quel état
DRP Toggle	Alternance DRP
Connection Detected	Connexion détectée

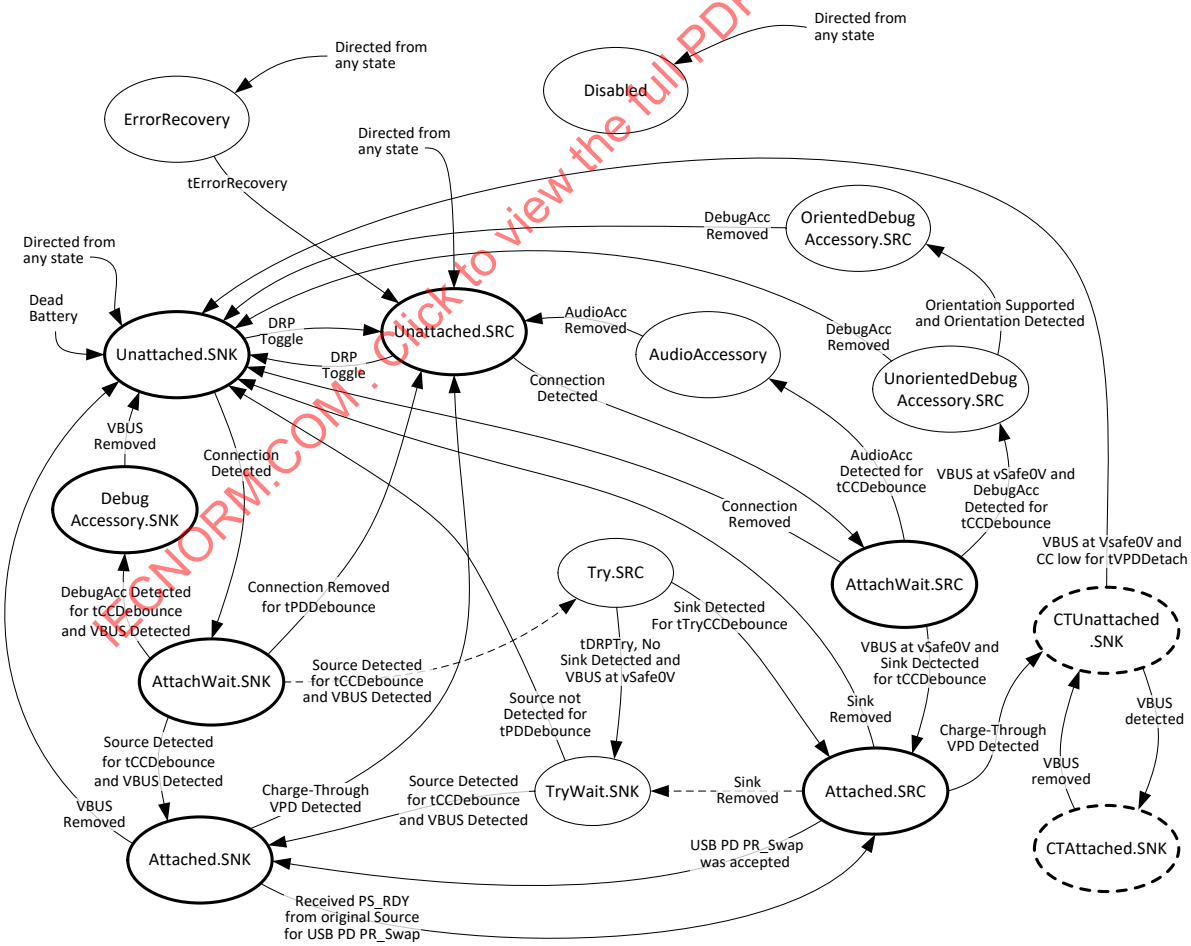
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Connection Removed	Connexion supprimée
Source Detected	Source détectée
Source Removed	Source supprimée
Dead Battery	Batterie déchargée
Sink Removed	Collecteur supprimé
Vbus at vSafe0V and Sink Detected for tCCDebounce	V_{BUS} en état vSafe0V et collecteur détecté pour tCCDebounce
USB PD PR_Swap was accepted	USB PD PR_Swap accepté
tCCDebounce and Vbus Detected	tCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectés
VBUS Removed	V_{BUS} supprimée
Received PS_RDY from original Source or USB PD PR_Swap	PS_RDY reçu depuis la Source ou USB PD PR_Swap

La Figure 4-16 représente un diagramme d'états de connexion d'une DRP avec prise en charge de l'état Try.SRC et des modes accessoires.

Figure 4-16 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: DRP avec prise en charge de l'état Try.SRC et des modes accessoires



Anglais	Français

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

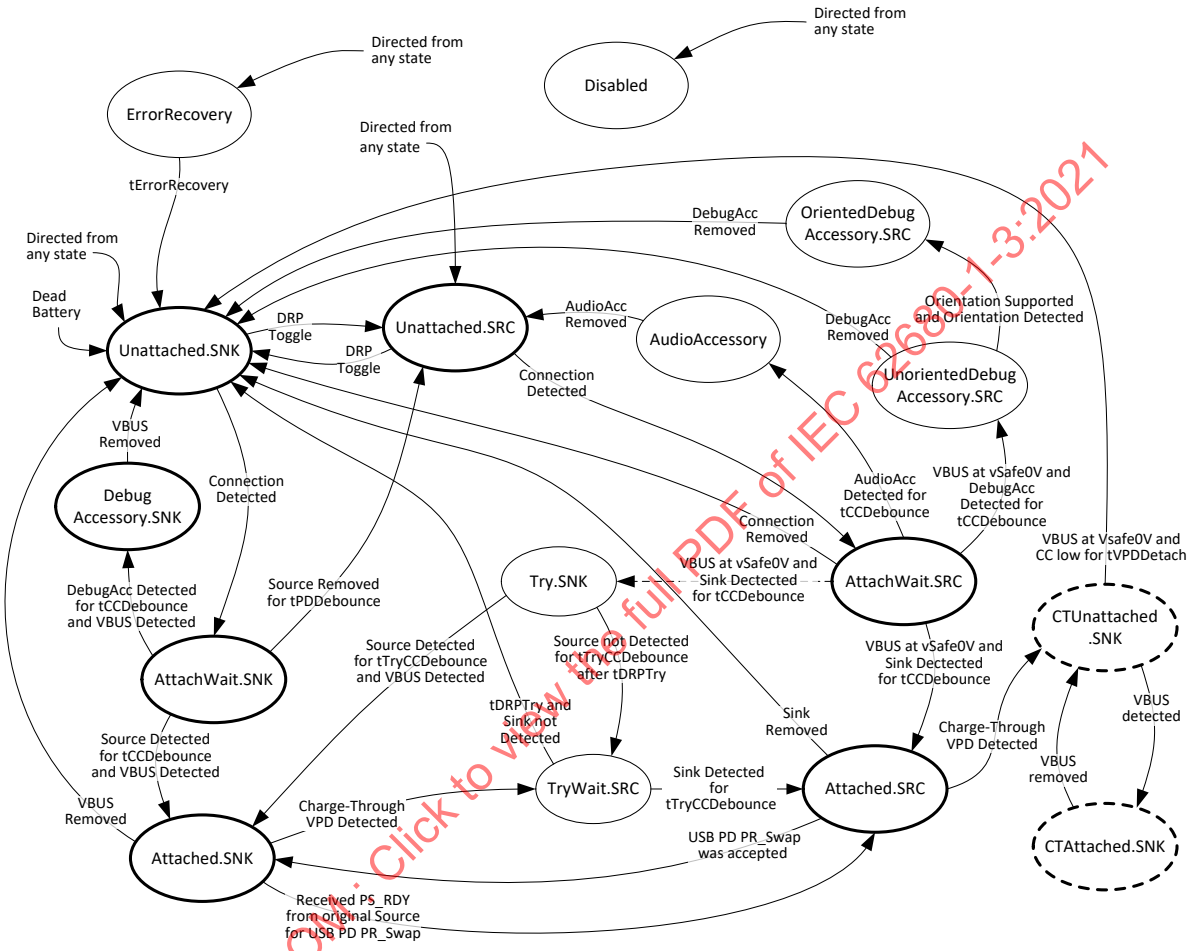
Disabled	Désactivé
Directed from any state	Induit depuis n'importe quel état
DRP Toggle	Alternance DRP
Connection Detected	Connexion détectée
Connection Removed	Connexion supprimée
Dead Battery	Batterie déchargée
DebugAcc Removed	DebugAcc supprimé
Orientation Supported And Orientation Detected	Orientation prise en charge et détectée
Sink Removed	Collecteur supprimé
Vbus at vSafe0V and Sink Detected for tCCDebounce	V_{BUS} en état vSafe0V et collecteur détecté pour tCCDebounce
USB PD PR_Swap was accepted	USB PD PR_Swap accepté
VBUS Removed	V_{BUS} supprimée
Received PS_RDY from original Source or USB PD PR_Swap	PS_RDY depuis la Source ou USB PD PR_Swap
DebugAcc Removed	DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce et V_{BUS}
AudioAcc Removed	AudioAcc supprimé
AudioAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	AudioAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
DebugAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
Connection Removed for tCCDebounce	Connexion supprimée pour tCCDebounce
Source Detected for tCCDebounce and VBUS detected	Source détectée pour tCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectée
Sink Detected for tCCDebounce	Collecteur détecté pour tTryCCDebounce
Source not Detected for tPDDebounce	Source non détectée pour tCCDebounce
no Sink Detected and Vbus at vSafe0V	Aucun collecteur détecté et Vbus à Safe0V
VBUS is vSafe0V and CC low for sVPDDetach	VBUS est vSafe0V et tension continue faible pour sVPDDetach

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

La Figure 4-17 représente un diagramme d'états de connexion d'une DRP avec prise en charge de l'état Try.SNK et des modes accessoires.

Figure 4-17 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: DRP avec prise en charge de l'état Try.SNK et des modes accessoires



Anglais	Français
Disabled	Désactivé
Directed from any state	Induit depuis n'importe quel état
DRP Toggle	Alternance DRP
Connection Detected	Connexion détectée
Connection Removed	Connexion supprimée
Debug Accessory.SNK	Débugger Accessory.SNK
Dead Battery	Batterie déchargée
DebugAcc Removed	DebugAcc supprimé
Orientation Supported And Orientation Detected	Orientation prise en charge et détectée
Sink Removed	Collecteur supprimé
Vbus at vSafe0V and Sink Detected for tCCDebounce	V_{BUS} en état vSafe0V et collecteur détecté pour tCCDebounce

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

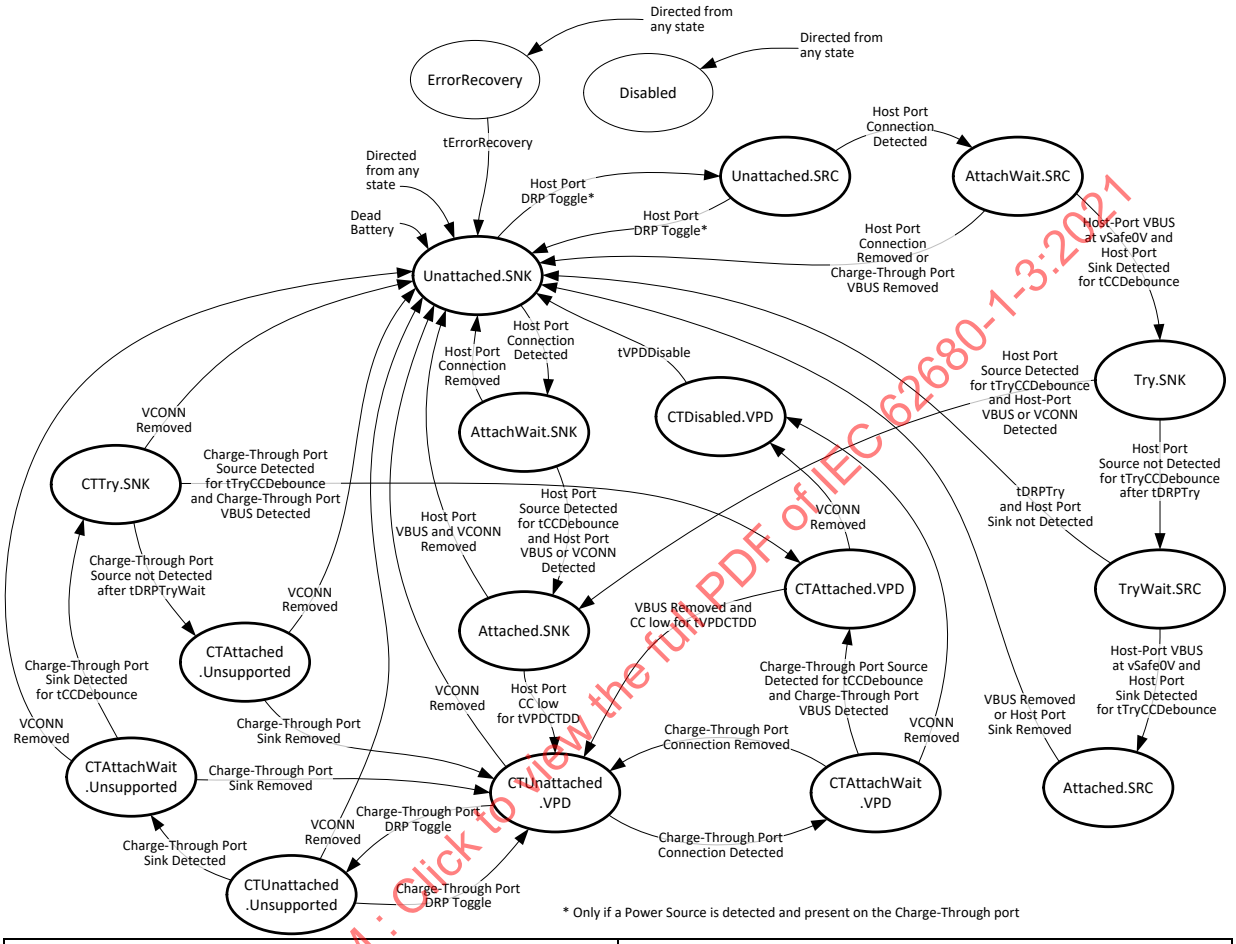
Vbus at vSafe0V and DebugAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	V_{BUS} en état vSafe0V et DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
VBUS Removed	V_{BUS} supprimée
Received PS_RDY from original Source or USB PD PR_Swap	PS_RDY reçu depuis la Source ou USB PD PR_Swap
DebugAcc Detected for tCCDebounce and VBUS Detected	DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectée
AudioAcc Removed	AudioAcc supprimé
AudioAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	AudioAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
DebugAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
Connection Removed for tCCDebounce	Connexion supprimée pour tCCDebounce
Source Detected for tCCDebounce and VBUS detected	Source détectée pour tCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectée
Sink Detected for tTryCCDebounce	Collecteur détecté pour tTryCCDebounce
Source not Detected for tTryCCDebounce after tDRPTry	Source non détectée pour tCCDebounce après tDRPTry
tDRPTry and Sink not Detected	tDRPTry et Collecteur non détectés
Sink Detected for tCCDebounce	Collecteur détecté pour tCCDebounce
Source Detected for tTryCCDebounce and VBUS detected	Source détectée pour tTryCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectée
VBUS at vSafe0V and CC low for tVPDDetach	VBUS en état vSafe0V et tension continue faible pour tVPDDetach

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

La Figure 4-18 représente un diagramme d'états de connexion d'un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge.

Figure 4-18 — Diagramme d'états de connexion: VPD de charge



Anglais	Français
Disabled	Désactivé
Directed from any state	Induit depuis n'importe quel état
DRP Toggle	Alternance DRP
Connection Detected	Connexion détectée
Connection Removed	Connexion supprimée
DebugAccessory.SNK	DebugAccessory.SNK
Dead Battery	Batterie déchargée
DebugAcc Removed	DebugAcc supprimé
Orientation Supported And Orientation Detected	Orientation prise en charge et détectée
Sink Removed	Collecteur supprimé
Vbus at vSafe0V and Sink Detected for tCCDebounce	V_{BUS} en état vSafe0V et collecteur détecté pour tCCDebounce
USB PD PR_Swap was accepted	USB PD PR_Swap accepté
VBUS Removed	V_{BUS} supprimée

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Received PS_RDY from original Source or USB PD PR_Swap	PS_RDY reçu depuis la Source ou USB PD PR_Swap
DebugAcc Detected for tCCDebounce and VBUS Detected	DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectée
AudioAcc Removed	AudioAcc supprimé
AudioAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	AudioAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
DebugAcc Detected for tCCDebounce	DebugAcc détecté pour tCCDebounce
Connection Removed for tCCDebounce	Connexion supprimée pour tCCDebounce
Source Detected for tCCDebounce and VBUS detected	Source détectée pour tCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectée
Sink Detected for tTryCCDebounce	Collecteur détecté pour tTryCCDebounce
Source not Detected for tTryCCDebounce after tDRPTry	Source non détectée pour tCCDebounce après tDRPTry
tDRPTry and Sink not Detected	tDRPTry et Collecteur non détectés
Sink Detected for tCCDebounce	Collecteur détecté pour tCCDebounce
Source Detected for tTryCCDebounce and VBUS detected	Source détectée pour tTryCCDebounce et V_{BUS} détectée
Only if a power source is detected and presnt on the charge-through pprt	Uniquement si une source d'alimentation est détectée et présente sur le port de charge

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.2 Exigences relatives aux diagrammes d'états de connexion

Le passage à un état de déconnexion "induit depuis n'importe quel état" ne doit pas être utilisé pour écraser une alternance tDRP.

Une DRP ou un collecteur peuvent consommer l'alimentation par défaut de la VBUS dans n'importe quel état, lorsque la mise à disposition de la VBUS n'est pas exigée.

Les deux tableaux suivants définissent les états électriques d'une broche CC d'une source et d'un collecteur. Chaque port est équipé de broches CC1 et CC2; chaque broche dispose de son propre état de broche CC. La combinaison de l'état des broches CC1 et CC2 d'un port est utilisée pour définir les conditions de transition d'un port d'un état à un autre.

Tableau 4-14 — Etats des broches CC d'un port source

Etat des broches CC	Terminaison CC du port partenaire	Tension détectée sur les broches CC lorsque le port affirme la Rp
SRC.Open	**Ouverte, Rp**	Supérieure à vOPEN
SRC.Rd	**Rd**	Dans la plage vRd (à savoir entre la vRd minimale et la vRd maximale)
SRC.Ra	**Ra**	Inférieure à la vRa maximale

Tableau 4-15 — Etats des broches CC d'un port collecteur

Etat des broches CC	Terminaison CC du port partenaire	Tension détectée sur les broches CC lorsque le port affirme la Rd
SNK.Rp	**Rp**	Supérieure à la vRd-Connect minimale
SNK.Open	**Ouverte, Ra, Rd**	Inférieure à la vRa maximale

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.5.2.2.1 Etat Désactivé

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-12, Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16 et Figure 4-17.

L'état Désactivé correspond aux situations où le port empêche la connexion en retirant toutes les terminaisons des broches CC.

Il convient que le port passe à l'état Désactivé depuis n'importe quel autre état en cas de demande. Lorsque le port passe à l'état Désactivé depuis l'état Attached.SNK, aucune terminaison de câble ne doit être en contact avec les broches CC, pendant un délai d'au moins tErrorRecovery.

Un port peut choisir de ne pas prendre en charge l'état Désactivé. Si l'état Désactivé n'est pas pris en charge, le port doit être mis à l'état Unattached.SNK ou Unattached.SRC après mise sous tension.

4.5.2.2.1.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Désactivé

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN, et doit présenter une impédance de mise à la terre élevée (supérieure à zOPEN) sur ses broches CC1 et CC2.

4.5.2.2.1.2 Sortie de l'état Désactivé

Un collecteur doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK en cas de demande.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Une source doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC en cas de demande.

Une DRP doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK ou Unattached.SRC en cas de demande.

4.5.2.2.2 Etat ErrorRecovery

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-12, Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16 et Figure 4-17.

L'état ErrorRecovery désigne la situation où le port extrait ses terminaisons de câbles des broches CC1 et CC2 pendant le délai tErrorRecovery, avant de passer à l'état Unattached.SNK ou Unattached.SRC approprié selon le type de port. Il s'agit de l'équivalent d'un débranchement forcé avec recherche d'un nouveau branchement.

Il convient que le port passe à l'état ErrorRecovery depuis n'importe quel autre état en cas de demande.

Un port peut choisir de ne pas prendre en charge l'état ErrorRecovery. Si l'état ErrorRecovery n'est pas pris en charge, le port doit être mis à l'état Disabled si celui-ci est pris en charge. Si l'état Disabled n'est pas pris en charge, le port doit être mis à l'état Unattached.SNK ou Unattached.SRC.

4.5.2.2.2.1 Exigences relatives à l'état ErrorRecovery

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN, et doit présenter une impédance de mise à la terre élevée (supérieure à zOPEN) sur ses broches CC1 et CC2.

4.5.2.2.2.2 Sortie de l'état ErrorRecovery

Un collecteur doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK à l'issue du délai tErrorRecovery.

Une source doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC à l'issue du délai tErrorRecovery.

Une DRP (voir Figure 4-15) et une DRP avec prise en charge de l'état Try.SNK et des accessoires (voir Figure 4-17) doivent passer à l'état Unattached.SNK à l'issue du délai tErrorRecovery.

Une DRP avec prise en charge de l'état Try.SRC et des modes accessoires (voir Figure 4-16) doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC à l'issue du délai tErrorRecovery.

4.5.2.2.3 Etat Unattached.SNK

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 et Figure 4-18.

A l'état Unattached.SNK, le port attend de détecter la présence d'une source.

Un port dont la batterie est déchargée doit passer à cet état lorsqu'il est hors tension.

4.5.2.2.3.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Unattached.SNK

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN.

Les deux broches CC1 et CC2 doivent être mises à la terre de manière indépendante par le biais de la Rd.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS. Il doit mettre à la terre les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge et la broche CC de son port côté hôte, de façon indépendante, par le biais de la Rd.

4.5.2.2.3.2 Sortie de l'état Unattached.SNK

S'il prend en charge l'*USB PD* ou les modes accessoires, le port doit passer à l'état AttachWait.SNK lorsque l'état SNK.Rp est présent sur au moins l'une de ses broches CC.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Les délais suivants sont les délais maximaux qu'un port doit attendre pour passer à l'état AttachWait.SNK:

- tNoToggleConnect lorsqu'aucun des deux ports partenaires n'est alterné;
- tOnePortToggleConnect lorsqu'un seul port partenaire est alterné.

Lorsque les deux ports partenaires sont alternés, il convient qu'un port passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK avant la fin du délai tTwoPortToggleConnect. Lorsque les deux ports partenaires sont des DRP, il n'est pas déterminé si le port local va passer à l'état AttachWait.SRC ou AttachWait.SNK.

Note: Les délais tOnePortToggleConnect et tTwoPortToggleConnect sont liés aux délais de synchronisation et de détection d'une connexion dont les ports alternés peuvent avoir besoin.

Un collecteur *USB 2.0* exclusif qui ne prend pas en charge des accessoires, qui est autoalimenté ou exige uniquement une alimentation par défaut, ou qui ne prend pas en charge l'*USB PD*, peut directement passer à l'état Attached.SNK lorsque la VBUS est détectée.

Une DRP doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC dans le délai tDRPTransition, après basculement des deux broches CC à l'état SNK.Open pendant le délai tDRP – dcSRC.DRP · tDRP ou en cas de demande.

Un collecteur avec prise en charge des accessoires doit passer à l'état Unattached.Accessory dans le délai tDRPTransition, après basculement des deux broches CC1 et CC2 à l'état SNK.Open pendant le délai tDRP – dcSRC.DRP · tDRP ou en cas de demande.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC dans le délai tDRPTranposition, après basculement de la broche CC du port côté hôte à l'état SNK.Open pendant le délai tDRP – dcSRC.DRP · tDRP, et lorsque les deux situations suivantes sont détectées sur le port de charge:

- l'état SNK.Rp est détecté sur exactement l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 pendant au moins le délai tCCDebounce;
- la VBUS est détectée.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit passer à l'état Attached.SNK lorsqu'une connexion source est détectée, comme l'indique l'état SNK.Rp sur la broche CC de son port côté hôte.

4.5.2.2.4 Etat AttachWait.SNK

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 et Figure 4-18.

A l'état AttachWait.SNK, le port détecte l'état SNK.Rp sur au moins l'une de ses broches CC et attend la VBUS.

A l'état AttachWait.SNK, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge a détecté l'état SNK.Rp sur la broche CC de son port côté hôte et attend la VBUS côté hôte.

4.5.2.2.4.1 Exigences relatives à l'état AttachWait.SNK

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN.

Les deux broches CC1 et CC2 doivent être mises à la terre de manière indépendante par le biais de la Rd.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS. Il doit mettre à la terre les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge et la broche CC de son port côté hôte, de façon indépendante, par le biais de la Rd.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Il est vivement recommandé qu'un dispositif USB 3.2 SuperSpeed suspende la détection de la VBUS sur le contrôleur du dispositif jusqu'à atteindre l'état Attached.SNK ou DebugAccessory.SNK (à savoir l'état d'au moins une broche CC est SNK.Rp). Sinon, il peut se connecter en *USB 2.0* lorsqu'il est branché au DFP d'un hôte/hub existant.

4.5.2.2.4.2 Sortie de l'état AttachWait.SNK

Un collecteur doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état des deux broches CC1 et CC2 est SNK.Open pendant un délai d'au moins tPDDebounce.

Une DRP doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC lorsque l'état des deux broches CC1 et CC2 est SNK.Open pendant un délai d'au moins tPDDebounce.

Le port doit passer à l'état Attached.SNK lorsque l'état d'une seule des broches CC1 ou CC2 est SNK.Rp pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce et que la VBUS est détectée. Noter que la source peut initier une communication *USB PD*, qui entraîne de courtes périodes à l'état SNK.Open sur l'une des broches CC, tandis que l'état de la seconde broche CC reste SNK.Open; toutefois, cet événement ne dépasse pas le délai tPDDebounce.

Lorsque le port est un accessoire alimenté par VCONN ou un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN, il doit passer à l'état Attached.SNK lorsque la VCONN ou la VBUS est détectée. Le port peut changer d'état sans attendre le délai tCCDebounce sur les broches CC.

Lorsqu'il prend en charge le mode accessoire de débogage, le port doit passer à l'état DebugAccessory.SNK, si l'état des broches CC1 et CC2 est SNK.Rp pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce et que la VBUS est détectée. Noter que la source DAM peut initier une communication *USB PD*, qui entraîne de courtes périodes à l'état SNK.Open sur l'une des broches CC, tandis que l'état de la seconde broche CC reste SNK.Rp; toutefois, cet événement ne dépasse pas le délai tPDDebounce.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Attached.SNK après basculement de la broche CC du port côté hôte à l'état SNK.Rp pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce et lorsque la VCONN ou la VBUS a été détectée côté hôte.

Une DRP qui privilégie fortement le rôle de source peut passer à l'état Try.SRC plutôt qu'à l'état Attached.SNK, lorsque l'état d'une broche CC a été SNK.Rp pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce et que la VBUS est détectée.

4.5.2.2.5 Etat Attached.SNK

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 et Figure 4-18.

A l'état Attached.SNK, le port est branché et fonctionne comme un collecteur. Lorsque le port entre initialement dans cet état, il fonctionne également comme un UFP. Les rôles d'alimentation et de données peuvent être modifiés avec les commandes *USB PD*.

Un port qui passe à cet état directement depuis l'état Unattached.SNK en raison de la détection de la VBUS ne doit pas déterminer l'orientation ou la disponibilité d'une alimentation USB supérieure à celle par défaut ni utiliser l'*USB PD*.

4.5.2.2.5.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Attached.SNK

S'il est nécessaire que le port détermine l'orientation du connecteur, il ne doit le faire qu'au moment où il passe à cet état en détectant laquelle des broches CC1 ou CC2 est connectée par le câble (à savoir la broche CC dont l'état est SNK.Rp).

S'il prend en charge la signalisation sur paires USB SuperSpeed, le port doit connecter les paires USB SuperSpeed de manière fonctionnelle et gérer la connexion pendant et après une *USB PD* PR_Swap.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Si le port est passé à l'état Attached.SNK depuis l'état AttachWait.SNK ou TryWait.SNK, une seule des broches CC1 ou CC2 se trouve à l'état SNK.Rp. Le port doit continuer à mettre la broche CC à la terre par le biais de la Rd.

Si le port est passé à l'état Attached.SNK depuis l'état Attached.SRC à l'issue d'une *USB PD* PR_Swap, le port doit mettre à la terre la broche CC connectée par le biais de la Rd.

Le port doit satisfaire aux exigences relatives au sous-état Sink Power spécifiées au 4.5.2.2.22.

Lorsque le port est un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN, il doit répondre aux requêtes d'identité du câble *USB PD* sur SOP'. Il ne doit pas envoyer de messages ni y répondre sur SOP'. Il doit garantir une capacité suffisante sur la broche CC afin de satisfaire aux exigences cReceiver définies dans l'*USB PD*.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS. Il doit présenter une impédance de mise à la terre élevée (supérieure à zOPEN) sur les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge. Il doit aussi mettre à la terre les broches CC de son port côté hôte par le biais de la Rd.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit démarrer un temporisateur de prise en charge de la charge lorsqu'il passe à l'état Attached.SNK. Si un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge ne parvient pas à quitter l'état Attached.SNK avant que le temporisateur de prise en charge de la charge ne dépasse le délai tAMETimeout, il doit présenter une interface USB Billboard Device Class qui indique qu'il ne prend pas en charge la charge.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit réinitialiser le temporisateur de prise en charge de la charge lorsqu'il reçoit pour la première fois une commande de VDM structuré *USB PD* qu'il prend en charge. Si un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge reçoit une commande de VDM structuré plusieurs fois, il ne doit réinitialiser le temporisateur de prise en charge de la charge qu'une seule fois. Cela garantit qu'un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge présente une interface USB Billboard Device Class s'il ne parvient pas à quitter l'état Attached.SNK tout en recevant des commandes de VDM structuré répétées ou continues (de découverte d'identité, par exemple).

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit réinitialiser le temporisateur de prise en charge de la charge lorsqu'il reçoit un message de données qu'il prend en charge. Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit maintenir la réinitialisation du temporisateur de prise en charge de la charge lorsqu'il est en mode BIST *USB PD*.

A l'exception d'un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN ou d'un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge, le port peut négocier une *USB PD* PR_Swap, DR_Swap ou VCONN_Swap.

Si le port prend en charge un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge et que la négociation d'un contrat *USB PD* explicite a échoué, le port doit interroger l'identité du câble par le biais de l'*USB PD* sur SOP'.

Par défaut et en cas d'entrée depuis l'état AttachWait.SNK ou Unattached.SNK, la VCONN ne doit pas être alimentée à l'état Attached.SNK. En cas de passage à l'état Attached.SNK depuis l'état Attached.SRC à la suite d'une *USB PD* PR_Swap, il doit conserver l'état d'alimentation de la VCONN, si elle est sous tension ou hors tension, son rôle de données et ses connexions. Une *USB PD* DR_Swap n'a aucun effet sur l'identité du port qui alimente la VCONN.

Le port peut négocier une *USB PD* VCONN_Swap. Lorsque le port qui n'alimentait pas la VCONN exécute correctement une opération *USB PD* VCONN_Swap, il doit commencer à alimenter la VCONN dans le délai tVCONNON. Le port doit exécuter une commande VCONN_Swap dans une séquence de contact avec chevauchement afin de maintenir actifs les câbles USB Type-C vers USB Type-C alimentés. Lorsque le port qui alimentait la VCONN exécute correctement une opération *USB PD* VCONN_Swap, il doit arrêter d'alimenter la VCONN dans le délai tVCONNOFF.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.2.5.2 Sortie de l'état Attached.SNK

Lorsqu'un port n'est pas un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN et n'est pas concerné par une *USB PD* PR_Swap, une *USB PD* Hard Reset ou une *USB PD* FR_Swap, il doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK dans le délai tSinkDisconnect lorsque la VBUS chute au-dessous de vSinkDisconnect pour une VBUS fonctionnant à 5 V maximum ou à une valeur inférieure au vSinkDisconnectPD lorsque l'*USB PD* a négocié un fonctionnement au-dessus de 5 V.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit revenir à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque la VBUS a chuté au-dessous de vSinkDisconnect et que la VCONN a chuté au-dessous de vVCONNDisconnect.

Un port qui est entré en communication *USB PD* avec la source et qui a enregistré une tension CC supérieure à vRd-USB peut surveiller la broche CC pour détecter une déconnexion de câble en plus de contrôler la VBUS.

Un port qui surveille la tension CC à la recherche de déconnexion (mais qui n'est pas concerné par une *USB PD* PR_Swap ou une *USB PD* FR_Swap) doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK dans le délai tSinkDisconnect après maintien de la tension CC au-dessous de vRd-USB pendant le délai tPDDebounce.

S'il alimente la VCONN, le port doit interrompre l'alimentation dans le délai tVCONNOFF à compter de la sortie de l'état Attached.SNK.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.VPD si la VCONN est présente et que l'état de la broche CC de son port côté hôte est SNK.Open pendant le délai tVPDCTDD.

Un port qui, par l'intermédiaire de SOP', a détecté un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge branché doit passer à l'état TryWait.SRC s'il est implémenté ou à l'état Unattached.SRC ou Unattached.Accessory si Try.SRC n'est pas pris en charge. Ce basculement peut être retardé jusqu'à ce que le dispositif dispose de la charge de batterie nécessaire pour rester alimenté jusqu'à ce qu'il atteigne l'état CTAttached.SNK.

Après avoir reçu un *USB PD* PS_RDY de la source originale pendant une *USB PD* PR_Swap, le port doit directement passer à l'état Attached.SRC (à savoir retirer la Rd de la broche CC, affirmer la Rp sur la broche CC et alimenter la VBUS); toutefois, il doit conserver l'état d'alimentation de la VCONN, si elle est sous tension ou hors tension, son rôle de données et ses connexions.

4.5.2.2.6 Etat UnattachedWait.SRC

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-12.

A l'état UnattachedWait.SRC, le port décharge la broche CC qui fournissait la VCONN dans le précédent état Attached.SRC.

4.5.2.2.6.1 Exigences relatives à l'état UnattachedWait.SRC

Le port ne doit pas activer la VBUS ou la VCONN.

Le port doit achever la mise sous tension de la VCONN initiée lors de la sortie du précédent état Attached.SRC.

Le port doit continuer à fournir une terminaison Rp, définie dans le Tableau 4-24, sur la broche CC non déchargée.

Le port ne doit pas fournir de terminaison Rp sur la broche CC déchargée.

Le port doit fournir une terminaison Rdch sur la broche CC déchargée.

Le port doit décharger la broche CC déchargée au-dessous de vVCONNDischarge.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.5.2.2.6.2 Sortie de l'état UnattachedWait.SRC

Le port doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC lorsque la VCONN est hors tension et que la broche CC est au-dessous de vVCONNDischarge.

4.5.2.2.7 Etat Unattached.SRC

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-12, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 et Figure 4-18.

A l'état Unattached.SRC, le port attend de détecter la présence d'un collecteur ou d'un accessoire.

A l'état Unattached.SRC, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge a détecté une source sur son port de charge et surveille de manière indépendante son port côté hôte pour détecter la présence d'un collecteur.

4.5.2.2.7.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Unattached.SRC

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN.

Le port doit fournir le courant des broches CC1 et CC2 de manière indépendante.

Le port doit fournir une terminaison Rp distincte sur les broches CC1 et CC2, conformément au Tableau 4-24. Note: Une source équipée d'un câble captif ou d'un simple connecteur mâle présente une terminaison Rp unique sur sa broche CC (A5).

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS. Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit s'assurer qu'il est alimenté par la VBUS à partir du port de charge.

Dès l'entrée dans cet état, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit retirer la terminaison Rd à la terre de la broche CC du port côté hôte. Il doit fournir une terminaison Rp au lieu d'annoncer la puissance USB par défaut, conformément au Tableau 4-24. Il doit aussi continuer à mettre à la terre les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge de façon indépendante par le biais de la Rd.

4.5.2.2.7.2 Sortie de l'état Unattached.SRC

Le port doit passer à l'état AttachWait.SRC lorsque:

- l'état SRC.Rd est présent sur la broche CC1 ou CC2; ou
- l'état SRC.Ra est présent sur les deux broches CC1 et CC2.

Les délais suivants sont les délais maximaux qu'un port doit attendre pour passer à l'état AttachWait.SRC:

- tNoToggleConnect lorsqu'aucun des deux ports partenaires n'est alterné;
- tOnePortToggleConnect lorsqu'un seul port partenaire est alterné.

Lorsque les deux ports partenaires sont alternés, il convient qu'un port passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC dans le délai tTwoPortToggleConnect. Lorsque les deux ports partenaires sont des DRP, il n'est pas déterminé si le port local va passer à l'état AttachWait.SRC ou AttachWait.SNK.

Note: Les délais tOnePortToggleConnect et tTwoPortToggleConnect sont liés aux délais de synchronisation et de détection d'une connexion dont les ports alternés peuvent avoir besoin.

Note: Un câble sans dispositif branché peut être détecté lorsque l'état SRC.Ra est détecté sur l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2, et que l'état de l'autre broche CC est SRC.Open. Dans ce cas, toutefois, le port ne doit pas passer à l'état AttachWait.SRC.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état AttachWait.SRC lorsque la VBUS côté hôte est vSafe0V et que l'état SRC.Rd est détecté sur la broche CC du port côté hôte.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Une DRP doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK dans le délai tDRPTransition, à l'issue du délai dcSRC.DRP · tDRP ou en cas de demande.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK dans le délai tDRPTransition, à l'issue du délai dcSRC.DRP · tDRP ou si la broche VBUS de charge est retirée.

4.5.2.2.8 Etat AttachWait.SRC

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-12, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 et Figure 4-18.

L'état AttachWait.SRC est utilisé pour s'assurer que l'état des deux broches CC1 et CC2 est stable après la connexion d'un collecteur.

A l'état AttachWait.SRC, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge garantit que l'état de la broche CC du port côté hôte est stable après la connexion d'un collecteur.

4.5.2.2.8.1 Exigences relatives à l'état AttachWait.SRC

Les exigences relatives à cet état sont identiques à celles de l'état Unattached.SRC.

4.5.2.2.8.2 Sortie de l'état AttachWait.SRC

Le port doit passer à l'état Attached.SRC lorsque la VBUS est vSafe0V et que l'état SRC.Rd est détecté sur exactement l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Try.SNK lorsque la VBUS côté hôte est vSafe0V et que l'état SRC.Rd est détecté sur la broche CC du port côté hôte pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

Si le port prend en charge le mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio, il doit passer à l'état AudioAccessory lorsque l'état SRC.Ra est détecté sur les deux broches CC1 et CC2 pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

Si le port prend en charge le mode accessoire de débogage, il doit passer à l'état UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC lorsque la VBUS est vSafe0V et que l'état SRC.Rd est détecté sur les deux broches CC1 et CC2 pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

Une source doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC et une DRP à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur les deux broches CC1 et CC2. La source doit détecter l'état SRC.Open dans le délai tSRCDisconnect; toutefois, il convient que la détection soit la plus rapide possible.

Une source doit passer l'état Unattached.SRC et une DRP à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 et que l'état de l'autre broche CC est SRC.Ra. La source doit détecter l'état SRC.Open dans le délai tSRCDisconnect; toutefois, il convient que la détection soit la plus rapide possible.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur la broche CC du port côté hôte ou si la VBUS de charge chute au-dessous de vSinkDisconnect. Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit détecter l'état SRC.Open dans le délai tSRCDisconnect; toutefois, il convient que la détection soit la plus rapide possible.

Une DRP qui privilégie fortement le rôle de collecteur peut passer à l'état Try.SNK plutôt qu'à l'état Attached.SRC lorsque la VBUS est vSafe0V et que l'état SRC.Rd est détecté sur exactement l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

4.5.2.2.9 Etat Attached.SRC

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-12, Figure 4-15, Figure 4-16, Figure 4-17 et Figure 4-18.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

A l'état Attached.SRC, le port est branché et fonctionne comme une source. Lorsque le port entre initialement dans cet état, il fonctionne également comme un DFP. Puis, les rôles d'alimentation et de données initiaux peuvent être modifiés à l'aide des commandes *USB PD*.

A l'état Attached.SRC, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge a détecté un collecteur sur son port côté hôte et a connecté la broche VBUS du port de charge à la broche VBUS du port côté hôte.

4.5.2.2.9.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Attached.SRC

S'il est nécessaire que le port détermine l'orientation du connecteur, il doit uniquement le faire lorsqu'il passe à l'état Attached.SRC en détectant laquelle des broches CC1 ou CC2 est connectée par le câble (à savoir la broche CC dont l'état est SRC.Rd).

Si le port est passé à cet état depuis l'état AttachWait.SRC ou l'état Try.SRC, une seule des broches CC1 ou CC2 se trouve à l'état SRC.Rd. Le port doit fournir le courant de cette broche CC et surveiller son état.

Si le port est passé à cet état depuis l'état Attached.SNK à l'issue d'une *USB PD* PR_Swap, le port doit fournir le courant de la broche CC connectée et surveiller son état.

Le port doit fournir une Rp définie dans le Tableau 4-24.

Le port doit alimenter la VBUS en courant au niveau annoncé sur la Rp.

Le port doit alimenter la VBUS dans le délai tVBUSON à compter de l'entrée dans cet état et tant qu'il fonctionne comme une source d'alimentation.

Le port ne doit pas initier de communication *USB PD* jusqu'à ce que la VBUS atteigne vSafe5V.

S'il prend en charge la signalisation sur paires USB SuperSpeed, le port doit:

- connecter les paires USB SuperSpeed de manière fonctionnelle;
- pour la VCONN, exécuter l'une des actions suivantes:
  - alimenter la VCONN de manière inconditionnelle sur la broche CC qui ne se trouve pas à l'état SRC.Rd; ou
  - alimenter la VCONN sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état SRC.Ra.

Un port qui ne prend pas en charge la signalisation sur paires USB SuperSpeed peut alimenter la VCONN comme décrit ci-dessus.

Le port peut négocier une *USB PD* PR_Swap, une DR_Swap ou une VCONN_Swap.

Si le port alimente la VCONN, il doit le faire dans le délai tVCONNON.

Le port peut interroger l'identité du câble par l'*USB PD* sur SOP'. S'il détecte que celui-ci est connecté à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN, le port peut retirer la VBUS et la décharger à vSafe0V tout en continuant dans cet état avec la VCONN appliquée. Le port peut également initier d'autres communications SOP'.

Le port ne doit pas alimenter la VCONN si elle est entrée dans cet état du fait d'une *USB PD* PR_Swap et qu'il n'alimentait par la VCONN auparavant. Une *USB PD* DR_Swap n'a aucun effet sur l'identité du port qui alimente la VCONN.

Le port peut négocier une *USB PD* VCONN_Swap. Lorsque le port qui alimentait la VCONN exécute correctement une opération *USB PD* VCONN_Swap, il doit arrêter d'alimenter la VCONN dans le délai tVCONNOFF. Le port doit exécuter une commande VCONN_Swap dans une séquence de contact avec chevauchement afin de maintenir actifs les câbles USB Type-C vers USB Type-C alimentés. Lorsque le

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

port qui n'alimentait pas la VCONN exécute correctement une opération *USB PD* VCONN_Swap, il doit commencer à alimenter la VCONN dans le délai tVCONNON.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit continuer à isoler la broche CC de son port côté hôte des broches CC de son port de charge.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit maintenir la terminaison Rp qui annonce la puissance USB par défaut sur la broche CC du port côté hôte. Il doit aussi continuer à mettre à la terre les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge de façon indépendante par le biais de la Rd.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit immédiatement connecter la broche VBUS du port de charge à la broche VBUS du port côté hôte.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit s'assurer qu'il est entièrement alimenté par la VBUS.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit uniquement répondre aux requêtes de découverte d'identité *USB PD* sur SOP' sur son port côté hôte et terminer toutes les requêtes actives avant de quitter cet état. Il doit garantir une capacité suffisante sur la broche CC du port côté hôte afin de satisfaire aux exigences cReceiver définies dans l'*USB PD*.

4.5.2.2.9.2 Sortie de l'état Attached.SRC

Une source qui alimente la VCONN ou qui a confié la responsabilité d'alimentation de la VCONN au collecteur par le biais de la messagerie *USB PD* VCONN_Swap doit passer à l'état UnattachedWait.SRC lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur la broche CC surveillée. La source doit détecter l'état SRC.Open dans le délai tSRCDisconnect; toutefois, il convient que la détection soit la plus rapide possible.

Une source qui n'alimente pas la VCONN ou qui n'a pas confié la responsabilité de la VCONN au collecteur par le biais de la messagerie *USB PD* VCONN_Swap doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur la broche CC surveillée. La source doit détecter l'état SRC.Open dans le délai tSRCDisconnect; toutefois, il convient que la détection soit la plus rapide possible.

Lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur la broche CC surveillée, une DRP doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK, sauf si elle privilégie fortement le rôle de source. Dans ce cas, elle doit passer à l'état TryWait.SNK. Cette transition vers l'état TryWait.SNK est nécessaire pour que deux dispositifs privilégiant le rôle de source ne bouclent pas indéfiniment entre la source et le collecteur. En d'autres termes, une DRP qui passe à l'état Try.SRC depuis l'état AttachWait.SNK doit passer à l'état TryWait.SNK pour le débranchement d'un collecteur de l'état Attached.SRC.

Une DRP qui prend en charge un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.SNK si le dispositif connecté s'identifie comme un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge dans sa réponse à la commande de découverte d'identité. La DRP peut retarder ce basculement pour effectuer d'autres communications SOP'.

Le port doit interrompre l'alimentation de la VBUS dans le délai tVBUSOFF à compter de la sortie de l'état Attached.SRC.

S'il alimente la VCONN, le port doit interrompre l'alimentation dans le délai tVCONNOFF à compter de la sortie de l'état Attached.SRC, sauf s'il existe du fait d'une *USB PD* PR_Swap ou qu'il passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK.

Après acceptation d'une *USB PD* PR_Swap (à savoir par réception ou confirmation d'un message d'acceptation), une DRP doit directement passer à l'état Attached.SNK (c'est-à-dire retirer la Rp de la broche CC, affirmer la Rd sur la broche CC et interrompre l'alimentation de la VBUS) et conserver son rôle de données, l'état de connexion et l'état d'alimentation de la VCONN.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque la VBUS chute au-dessous de vSinkDisconnect ou que l'état de la broche CC du port côté hôte est SRC.Open. Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit détecter l'état SRC.Open dans le délai tSRCDisconnect; toutefois, il convient que la détection soit la plus rapide possible.

4.5.2.2.10 Etat Try.SRC

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-16.

A l'état Try.SRC, le port détermine (par interrogation) si le port partenaire prend en charge le rôle de collecteur.

Note: Si les mécanismes Try.SRC et Try.SNK sont mis en œuvre, le port ne doit activer que l'un d'entre eux, et ce à tout moment. Le choix du mécanisme à activer est propre à la conception du produit.

4.5.2.2.10.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Try.SRC

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN.

Le port doit fournir le courant des broches CC1 et CC2 de manière indépendante.

Le port doit fournir une Rp définie dans le Tableau 4-24.

4.5.2.2.10.2 Sortie de l'état Try.SRC

Le port doit passer à l'état Attached.SRC lorsque l'état SRC.Rd est détecté sur exactement l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 pendant un délai d'au moins tTryCCDebounce.

Le port doit passer à l'état TryWait.SNK à l'issue du délai tDRPTry, lorsque l'état SRC.Rd n'a pas été détecté et que la VBUS est dans vSafe0V, ou à l'issue du délai tTryTimeout lorsque l'état SRC.Rd n'a pas été détecté.

4.5.2.2.11 Etat TryWait.SNK

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-16.

A l'état TryWait.SNK, le port n'a pas réussi à devenir une source et attend de se brancher comme un collecteur. A défaut, le port répond au retrait du collecteur à l'état Attached.SRC.

4.5.2.2.11.1 Exigences relatives à l'état TryWait.SNK

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN.

Les deux broches CC1 et CC2 doivent être mises à la terre de manière indépendante par le biais de la Rd.

4.5.2.2.11.2 Sortie de l'état TryWait.SNK

Le port doit passer à l'état Attached.SNK à l'issue du délai tCCDebounce si ou lorsque la VBUS est détectée. Noter que la source peut initier une communication *USB PD*, qui entraîne de courtes périodes à l'état SNK.Open sur les deux broches CC1 et CC2; toutefois, cet événement ne dépasse pas le délai tPDDebounce.

Le port doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état des deux broches CC1 et CC2 est SNK.Open pendant un délai d'au moins tPDDebounce.

4.5.2.2.12 Etat Try.SNK

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-14, Figure 4-17 et Figure 4-18.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

A l'état Try.SNK, le port détermine (par interrogation) si le port partenaire prend en charge le rôle de source.

A l'état Try.SNK, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge effectue une requête pour déterminer si le port partenaire sur le port côté hôte prend en charge le rôle de source.

Note: Si les mécanismes Try.SRC et Try.SNK sont mis en œuvre, le port ne doit activer que l'un d'entre eux, et ce à tout moment. Le choix du mécanisme à activer est propre à la conception du produit.

4.5.2.2.12.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Try.SNK

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN.

Les deux broches CC1 et CC2 doivent être mises à la terre de manière indépendante par le biais de la Rd.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS. Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit s'assurer qu'il est alimenté par la VBUS à partir du port de charge.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit retirer la terminaison Rp (annonce de la puissance USB par défaut) de la broche CC du port côté hôte. Il doit à la place fournir une terminaison Rd à la terre définie dans le Tableau 4-24. Il doit aussi continuer à mettre à la terre les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge de façon indépendante par le biais de la Rd.

4.5.2.2.12.2 Sortie de l'état Try.SNK

Le port doit attendre le délai tDRPTry et, seulement après, commencer à surveiller l'affectation de l'état SNK.Rp aux broches CC1 et CC2.

Le port doit passer à l'état Attached.SNK lorsque l'état SNK.Rp est détecté sur exactement l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 pendant un délai d'au moins tTryCCDebounce et que la VBUS est détectée.

A défaut, le port doit passer à l'état TryWait.SRC si l'état SNK.Rp n'est pas détecté pendant le délai tTryCCDebounce.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit attendre le délai tDRPTry et, seulement après, commencer à surveiller l'affectation de l'état SNK.Rp à la broche CC du port côté hôte.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit ensuite passer à l'état Attached.SNK lorsque l'état SNK.Rp est détecté sur la broche CC du port côté hôte pendant un délai d'au moins tTryCCDebounce, et que la VBUS ou la VCONN est détectée sur le port côté hôte.

A défaut, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état TryWait.SRC si l'état SNK.Rp côté hôte n'est pas détecté pendant le délai tTryCCDebounce.

Un collecteur avec prise en charge des accessoires doit passer à l'état Unsupported.Accessory si l'état SNK.Rp n'est pas détecté pendant le délai tDRPTryWait.

Note: La source peut initier une communication *USB PD*, qui entraîne de courtes périodes à l'état SNK.Open sur les deux broches CC1 et CC2; toutefois, cet événement ne dépasse pas le délai tTryCCDebounce.

4.5.2.2.13 Etat TryWait.SRC

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-17 et Figure 4-18.

A l'état TryWait.SRC, le port n'a pas réussi à devenir un collecteur et attend de se brancher comme une source.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

A l'état TryWait.SRC, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge n'a pas réussi à devenir un collecteur sur son port côté hôte et attend de se brancher comme une source sur ce même port.

4.5.2.2.13.1 Exigences relatives à l'état TryWait.SRC

Les exigences relatives à cet état sont identiques à celles de l'état Unattached.SRC.

4.5.2.2.13.2 Sortie de l'état TryWait.SRC

Le port doit passer à l'état Attached.SRC lorsque la VBUS est vSafe0V et que l'état SRC.Rd est détecté sur exactement l'une des broches CC pendant un délai d'au moins tTryCCDebounce.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Attached.SRC lorsque la VBUS côté hôte est vSafe0V et que l'état SRC.Rd est détecté sur la broche CC du port côté hôte pendant un délai d'au moins tTryCCDebounce.

Le port doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK à l'issue du délai tDRPTry si aucune des broches CC1 et CC2 ne se trouve à l'état SRC.Rd.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK à l'issue du délai tDRPTry si la broche CC du port côté hôte n'est pas à l'état SRC.Rd.

4.5.2.2.14 Etat Unattached.Accessory

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-14.

L'état Unattached.Accessory permet qu'un collecteur avec prise en charge des modes accessoires se connecte à un accessoire d'adaptateur audio ou à un accessoire alimenté par VCONN.

Cet état est l'équivalent fonctionnel de l'état Unattached.SRC dans une DRP, sauf que l'état Attached.SRC n'est pas pris en charge.

4.5.2.2.14.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Unattached.Accessory

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN.

Le port doit fournir le courant des broches CC1 et CC2 de manière indépendante.

Le port doit fournir une Rp définie dans le Tableau 4-24.

4.5.2.2.14.2 Sortie de l'état Unattached.Accessory

Un port prenant en charge le mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio doit passer à l'état AttachWait.Accessory lorsque les deux broches CC sont à l'état SRC.Ra.

Un port prenant en charge les accessoires alimentés par VCONN doit également passer à l'état AttachWait.Accessory lorsque l'état de l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 est SRC.Ra et que l'état de l'autre broche CC est SRC.Rd.

Le délai maximal que le port local doit attendre pour passer de l'état Unattached.Accessory à l'état AttachWait.Accessory lorsqu'un accessoire d'adaptateur audio ou un accessoire alimenté par VCONN est présent est tOnePortToggleConnect.

A défaut, le port doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK dans le délai tDRPTransition, à l'issue du délai dcSRC.DRP · tDRP ou en cas de demande.

4.5.2.2.15 Etat AttachWait.Accessory

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-14.

L'état AttachWait.Accessory est utilisé pour s'assurer que l'état des deux broches CC1 et CC2 est stable après le branchement d'un câble.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.5.2.2.15.1 Exigences relatives à l'état AttachWait.Accessory

Les exigences concernant cet état sont identiques à celles de l'état Unattached.Accessory.

4.5.2.2.15.2 Sortie de l'état AttachWait.Accessory

Si le port prend en charge le mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio, il doit passer à l'état AudioAccessory lorsque l'état des deux broches CC1 et CC2 est SRC.Ra pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

Le port doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état de l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 est SRC.Open pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

Si le port prend en charge les accessoires alimentés par VCONN, il doit également passer à l'état PoweredAccessory lorsque l'état de l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 est SRC.Rd et que l'autre broche CC est simultanément à l'état SRC.Ra pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

4.5.2.2.16 Etat AudioAccessory

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-12, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-16 et Figure 4-17.

L'état AudioAccessory est utilisé avec le mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio défini dans l'Annexe A.

4.5.2.2.16.1 Exigences relatives à l'état AudioAccessory

Le port doit reconfigurer ses broches conformément à l'Annexe A.

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN. Un port qui admet un courant en provenance d'un accessoire audio par la VBUS ne doit pas puiser plus de 500 mA.

Le port doit fournir une Rp définie dans le Tableau 4-24.

Le port doit fournir le courant d'au moins l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2 et les surveiller en vue de détecter lorsque l'état SRC.Ra est modifié. Si le port alimente et surveille une seule des broches CC1 ou CC2, il doit s'assurer que la terminaison sur la broche CC non surveillée n'affecte pas le signal surveillé lorsque le port est connecté à un accessoire audio qui peut court-circuiter ensemble les broches CC1 et CC2.

4.5.2.2.16.2 Sortie de l'état AudioAccessory

Si le port est un collecteur, il doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état des broches CC1 ou CC2 surveillées est SRC.Open pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

Si le port est une source ou une DRP, il doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC lorsque l'état des broches CC1 ou CC2 surveillées est SRC.Open pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

4.5.2.2.17 Etat UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-12, Figure 4-16 et Figure 4-17.

L'état UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC est utilisé avec le mode accessoire de débogage défini dans l'Annexe B.

4.5.2.2.17.1 Exigences relatives à l'état UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC

Ce mode sert uniquement à des fins de débogage et ne doit pas être utilisé pour communiquer avec des produits commerciaux.

Le port doit fournir une Rp définie dans le Tableau 4-24 sur les broches CC1 et CC2, et les surveiller en vue de détecter lorsque l'état de l'une des deux broches est SRC.Open.

Le port doit alimenter la VBUS en courant au niveau annoncé sur la Rp. Le port ne doit pas piloter la VCONN.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Le port peut connecter les signaux de débogage non spécifiques de l'orientation pour un fonctionnement en mode accessoire de débogage uniquement après être passé à cet état.

4.5.2.2.17.2 Sortie de l'état UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC

Si le port est une source, il doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2.

Si le port est une DRP, il doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2.

Le port doit passer à l'état OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC si l'orientation est exigée et détectée conformément à B.2.6.1.2.

4.5.2.2.18 Etat OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-12, Figure 4-16 et Figure 4-17.

L'état OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC est utilisé avec le mode accessoire de débogage défini dans l'Annexe B.

4.5.2.2.18.1 Exigences relatives à l'état OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC

Ce mode sert uniquement à des fins de débogage et ne doit pas être utilisé pour communiquer avec des produits commerciaux.

Le port doit fournir une Rp définie dans le Tableau 4-24 sur les broches CC1 et CC2, et les surveiller en vue de détecter lorsque l'état de l'une des deux broches est SRC.Open.

Le port doit alimenter la VBUS en courant au niveau annoncé sur la Rp. Le port ne doit pas piloter la VCONN.

Le port doit connecter les signaux de débogage spécifiques de l'orientation pour un fonctionnement en mode accessoire de débogage uniquement après être passé à cet état. Tout signal de débogage non spécifique de l'orientation pour un fonctionnement en mode accessoire de débogage doit être ou rester connecté à cet état.

S'il est nécessaire que le port établisse une communication *USB PD*, il doit uniquement le faire après être passé à cet état. Le port ne doit pas initier de communication *USB PD* jusqu'à ce que la VBUS atteigne vSafe5V. Dans cet état, le port assume le rôle *USB PD* initial du DFP/de la source.

4.5.2.2.18.2 Sortie de l'état OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC

Si le port est une source, il doit passer à l'état Unattached.SRC lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2.

Si le port est une DRP, il doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur l'une des broches CC1 ou CC2.

4.5.2.2.19 Etat DebugAccessory.SNK

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-13, Figure 4-14, Figure 4-16 et Figure 4-17.

L'état DebugAccessory.SNK est utilisé avec le mode accessoire de débogage défini dans l'Annexe B.

4.5.2.2.19.1 Exigences relatives à l'état DebugAccessory.SNK

Ce mode sert uniquement à des fins de débogage et ne doit pas être utilisé pour communiquer avec des produits commerciaux.

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Le port doit fournir une Rd définie dans le Tableau 4-25 sur les broches CC1 et CC2, et les surveiller en vue de détecter lorsque l'état de l'une des deux broches est SRC.Open.

Lorsqu'elle est prise en charge, l'orientation est déterminée conformément à B.2.6.1.1. Le port doit connecter les signaux de débogage pour un fonctionnement en mode accessoire de débogage uniquement après être passé à cet état.

4.5.2.2.19.2 Sortie de l'état DebugAccessory.SNK State

Le port doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque la VBUS n'est plus présente.

4.5.2.2.20 Etat PoweredAccessory

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-14.

A l'état PoweredAccessory, le port alimente un accessoire alimenté par VCONN ou un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN.

4.5.2.2.20.1 Exigences relatives à l'état PoweredAccessory

S'il est nécessaire que le port détermine l'orientation du connecteur, il doit uniquement le faire lorsqu'il passe à l'état PoweredAccessory en détectant laquelle des broches CC1 ou CC2 est connectée par le câble (à savoir la broche CC dont l'état est SRC.Rd).

L'état SRC.Rd est détecté sur une seule des broches CC1 ou CC2. Le port doit annoncer 1,5 A ou 3,0 A (voir Tableau 4-24) sur cette broche CC et surveiller son état.

Le port doit alimenter la VCONN sur la broche CC inutilisée dans le délai tVconnON-PA à compter du passage à l'état PoweredAccessory.

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS.

Lorsqu'il passe initialement à l'état PoweredAccessory, le port doit fonctionner comme une source *USB Power Delivery* avec un rôle de données DFP. En outre, le port doit prendre en charge au moins l'une des actions suivantes:

- utiliser l'*USB PD* pour établir un contrat explicite, puis utiliser des messages définis par le fournisseur structurés (VDM structurés) pour identifier un accessoire alimenté par VCONN et entrer dans un mode alternatif;
- utiliser l'*USB PD* pour interroger l'identité d'un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN (qui fonctionne comme le connecteur mâle d'un câble qui répond sur SOP').

4.5.2.2.20.2 Sortie de l'état PoweredAccessory

Le port doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur la broche CC surveillée.

Le port doit passer à l'état Try.SNK si le dispositif branché n'est pas un accessoire alimenté par VCONN ou un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN. Par exemple, le dispositif branché ne prend pas en charge l'*USB PD* ou ne répond pas aux commandes *USB PD* exigées pour un accessoire alimenté par VCONN (découverte de SVID, recherche de modes, par exemple), ou il s'agit d'un collecteur ou d'une DRP branchée par un câble alimenté.

Le port doit passer à l'état Unsupported.Accessory si le dispositif branché est un accessoire alimenté par VCONN, mais que le port n'a pas réussi à entrer dans un mode alternatif dans le délai tAMETimeout (voir Annexe E).

Un port qui prend en charge un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.SNK si le dispositif connecté s'identifie comme un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

de charge dans sa réponse à la commande de découverte d'identité. Le port peut retarder ce basculement pour effectuer d'autres communications SOP'.

Le port doit interrompre l'alimentation de la VCONN dans le délai tVCONNOFF après être sorti de l'état PoweredAccessory, sauf s'il passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK.

4.5.2.2.21 Etat Unsupported.Accessory

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-14.

Si un accessoire alimenté par VCONN n'entre pas dans un mode alternatif, l'état Unsupported.Accessory est utilisé pour attendre que l'accessoire soit débranché avant de poursuivre.

4.5.2.2.21.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Unsupported.Accessory

Une seule des broches CC1 ou CC2 doit être à l'état SRC.Rd. Le port doit annoncer la puissance USB par défaut (voir Tableau 4-24) sur cette broche CC et surveiller sa tension.

Le port ne doit pas piloter la VBUS ou la VCONN.

Un collecteur prenant en charge un accessoire alimenté par VCONN ou un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit fournir une notification utilisateur indiquant qu'elle ne reconnaît ou ne prend pas en charge l'accessoire ou le dispositif branché.

4.5.2.2.21.2 Sortie de l'état Unsupported.Accessory

Le port doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur la broche CC surveillée.

4.5.2.2.22 Etat CTUnattached.VPD

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-18.

Dans l'état CTUnattached.VPD, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge a détecté l'état SNK.Open sur son port hôte pendant le délai tVPDCTDD. Cela indique qu'il est connecté à une source compatible avec la charge, et qu'il surveille de manière indépendante son port de charge en vue de détecter la présence d'une source d'alimentation de transfert.

Cet état peut aussi avoir été activé par le débranchement d'une source d'alimentation sur le port de charge ou par le débranchement d'un collecteur du port de charge du CTVPD.

4.5.2.2.22.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTUnattached.VPD

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS. Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit s'assurer qu'il est alimenté par la VCONN, que sa consommation ne dépasse pas ICCS (*USB 3.2*)/ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) de la VBUS pour la surveillance, et qu'il est suffisamment isolé de la VBUS afin de tolérer des tensions élevées pendant l'opération de charge.

Dès l'entrée dans cet état, le dispositif doit retirer la terminaison Rd à la terre (le cas échéant) de la broche CC du port côté hôte. Il doit à la place fournir une terminaison Rp qui annonce 3,0 A, conformément au Tableau 4-24. Noter que, comme la VBUS n'est pas fournie, les signaux de la terminaison Rp ont continué à se connecter au port partenaire, mais ne s'accompagnent d'aucune annonce de courant.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit uniquement répondre aux requêtes de découverte d'identité *USB PD* sur SOP' sur son port côté hôte. Il doit garantir une capacité suffisante sur la broche CC du port côté hôte afin de satisfaire aux exigences cReceiver définies dans l'*USB PD*.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit mettre les deux broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge à la terre, de façon indépendante, par le biais de la Rd.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit fournir une capacité de découplage de CCTB sur les broches VBUS du port de charge.

4.5.2.2.22.2 Sortie de l'état CTUnattached.VPD

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit passer à l'état CTAttachWait.VPD lorsque la connexion d'une source est détectée sur le port de charge, comme l'indique l'état SNK.Rp sur exactement l'une des broches CC du port de charge.

Les accessoires de débogage ne sont pas pris en charge sur le port de charge.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK si VCONN chute au-dessous de vVCONNDisconnect.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.Unsupported dans le délai tDRPTransition, après basculement des deux broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge à l'état SNK.Open pendant le délai tDRP – dcSRC.DRP · tDRP ou en cas de demande.

4.5.2.2.23 Etat CTAttachWait.VPD

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-18.

A l'état CTAttachWait.VPD, le dispositif détecte l'état SNK.Rp sur exactement l'une des broches CC du port de charge et attend la VBUS sur le port de charge.

4.5.2.2.23.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTAttachWait.VPD

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS. Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit s'assurer qu'il est alimenté par la VCONN, que sa consommation ne dépasse pas ICCS (*USB 3.2*)/ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) de la VBUS pour la surveillance, et qu'il est suffisamment isolé de la VBUS afin de tolérer des tensions élevées pendant l'opération de charge.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit maintenir la terminaison Rp qui annonce 3,0 A sur la broche CC du port côté hôte. Il doit aussi continuer à mettre les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge à la terre, de façon indépendante, par le biais de la Rd.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit uniquement répondre aux requêtes de découverte d'identité *USB PD* sur SOP' sur son port côté hôte et terminer toutes les requêtes actives avant de quitter cet état. Il doit garantir une capacité suffisante sur la broche CC du port côté hôte afin de satisfaire aux exigences cReceiver définies dans l'*USB PD*.

4.5.2.2.23.2 Sortie de l'état CTAttachWait.VPD

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.VPD lorsque l'état des deux broches CC1 et CC2 est SNK.Open pendant un délai d'au moins tPDDebounce.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTAttached.VPD lorsqu'une seule des broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge est passée à l'état SNK.Rp pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce et que la VBUS du port de charge est détectée.

Noter que la source de charge peut initier une communication *USB PD*, qui entraîne de courtes périodes à l'état SNK.Open sur l'une des broches CC du port de charge, tandis que l'état de la seconde broche CC reste SNK.Open; toutefois, cet événement ne dépasse pas le délai tPDDebounce.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTDisabled.VPD si VCONN chute au-dessous de vVCONNDisconnect.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

4.5.2.2.24 Etat CTAttached.VPD

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-18.

A l'état CTAttached.VPD, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge a détecté une source d'alimentation sur son port de charge et a connecté les broches CC et VBUS du port de charge directement aux broches CC et VBUS du port côté hôte. Par conséquent, l'ensemble des alimentations, négociations et communications *USB PD* sont directement effectuées entre l'unité sur le port côté hôte et la source d'alimentation connectée au port de charge.

4.5.2.2.24.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTAttached.VPD

Dès l'entrée dans cet état, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit détecter laquelle des broches CC1 ou CC2 du port de charge est connectée par le câble (à savoir la broche CC qui se trouve dans l'état SNK.Rp). Le dispositif doit alors, immédiatement et dans l'ordre suivant:

1. supprimer ou réduire toute capacité supplémentaire sur le port CC côté hôte qui a été introduite afin de satisfaire aux exigences cReceiver définies dans l'*USB PD*, et afin de présenter sur la broche CC une valeur inférieure ou égale à deux fois la valeur maximale de cCablePlug_CC;
2. désactiver la terminaison Rp qui annonce 3,0 A sur la broche CC du port hôte;
3. multiplexer de manière passive la broche CC détectée du port de charge à la broche CC du port hôte avec une impédance inférieure à celle de RccCON;
4. désactiver la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge;
5. connecter la broche VBUS du port de charge à la broche VBUS du port hôte.

Ces étapes doivent être accomplies dans le délai tVPDDetach minimal après l'entrée dans cet état.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit s'assurer qu'il est alimenté par la VCONN, que sa consommation ne dépasse pas ICCS (*USB 3.2*) ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) de la VBUS pour la surveillance, et qu'il est suffisamment isolé de la VBUS afin de tolérer des tensions élevées pendant l'opération de charge.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge ne doit pas répondre à une communication *USB PD* sur une broche CC dans cet état. Toute requête active sur SOP' doit avoir été effectuée avant d'être passé à cet état.

4.5.2.2.24.2 Sortie de l'état CTAttached.VPD

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.VPD lorsque la VBUS chute au-dessous de vSinkDisconnect ou que l'état de la broche CC traversée est SRC.Open pendant le délai tVPDCTDD.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTDisabled.VPD si VCONN chute au-dessous de vVCONNDisconnect.

4.5.2.2.25 Etat CTDisabled.VPD

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-18.

A l'état CTDisabled.VPD, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge a détecté une déconnexion sur son port côté hôte, mais peut encore être connecté à une source d'alimentation sur le port de charge. Cela permet de s'assurer que la VBUS de la source d'alimentation est retirée.

4.5.2.2.25.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTDisabled.VPD

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Le dispositif doit présenter une impédance de mise à la terre élevée (supérieure à zOPEN) sur la broche CC du port côté hôte, et sur les broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit s'assurer qu'il est entièrement alimenté par la VBUS.

4.5.2.2.25.2 Sortie de l'état CTDisabled.VPD

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK à l'issue du délai tVPDDisable.

4.5.2.2.26 Etat CTUnattached.SNK

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-14, Figure 4-16 et Figure 4-17.

A l'état CTUnattached.SNK, le port a détecté qu'il est branché à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge et qu'il est prêt si une source d'alimentation est branchée au dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge.

Cet état peut aussi s'activer en cas de débranchement d'une source d'alimentation de charge.

4.5.2.2.26.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTUnattached.SNK

Dès l'entrée dans cet état, le port doit retirer sa terminaison Rp (le cas échéant) et mettre la broche CC à la terre par de biais de la Rd.

Le port doit continuer à fournir la VCONN.

Le port doit cesser d'alimenter ou de collecter la VBUS et de la décharger.

Dans l'*USB PD* version 2.0, le port doit agir comme le maître du bus pour initier les messages PD.

Le port peut interroger l'état du dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN branché en envoyant des messages SOP' sur l'*USB PD* afin de lire le marqueur électronique du VPD.

4.5.2.2.26.2 Sortie de l'état CTUnattached.SNK

Le port doit passer à l'état CTAttached.SNK lorsque la VBUS est détectée. Noter qu'à ce stade, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN a déjà éliminé les rebonds de la broche CC traversée.

Le port doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK si l'état de la broche CC est SNK.Open pendant le délai tVPDDetach lorsque VBUS est vSafe0V.

4.5.2.2.27 Etat CTAttached.SNK

Cet état est représenté aux Figure 4-14, Figure 4-16 et Figure 4-17.

A l'état CTAttached.SNK, le port est connecté à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge qui à son tour passe par la connexion à une source d'alimentation.

4.5.2.2.27.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTAttached.SNK

Le port doit continuer à mettre la broche CC à la terre par le biais de la Rd. Etant donné qu'une source d'alimentation est maintenant connectée aux broches VBUS et CC, le port doit fonctionner dans l'un des sous-états Sink Power indiqués à la Figure 4-19 et demeurer dans l'un de ces sous-états jusqu'à ce que la broche VBUS soit retirée ou qu'un contrat *USB PD* soit établi avec la source.

Le port ne doit pas négocier une tension sur VBUS supérieure à la tension maximale spécifiée dans la réponse à la commande de découverte d'identité du dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge.

Le port doit continuer à fournir la VCONN.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Le port doit rejeter une demande de permutation VCONN.

Le port ne doit pas effectuer de détection primaire *USB BC 1.2*, car cela interfère avec la fonctionnalité du VPD.

Dans l'*USB PD* version 2.0, le port doit agir comme l'esclave du bus pour initier les messages *USB PD*, même s'il reste un DFP pour les données USB.

Le port ne doit ni initier ni répondre à une communication SOP'.

Le port doit satisfaire aux exigences relatives au sous-état Sink Power spécifiées au 4.5.2.2.29.

Le port doit satisfaire aux contraintes de courant maximal supplémentaires décrites au 4.6.2.5.

Le port doit satisfaire aux restrictions sur les messages *USB PD* décrites au 4.10.2.

Le port doit modifier ses capacités annoncées par le rôle d'UFP/de collecteur uniquement conformément au 4.10.2.

4.5.2.2.27.2 Sortie de l'état CTAttached.SNK

Lorsqu'un port n'est pas concerné par une réinitialisation *USB PD* Hard Reset, il doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.SNK dans le délai tSinkDisconnect lorsque la VBUS chute au-dessous de vSinkDisconnect pour une VBUS inférieure ou égale à 5 V ou au-dessous de vSinkDisconnectPD lorsque l'*USB PD* a négocié un fonctionnement au-dessus de 5 V.

Un port qui est entré en communication *USB PD* avec la source et qui a enregistré une tension CC supérieure à vRd-USB peut surveiller la broche CC pour détecter une déconnexion de câble en plus de contrôler la VBUS.

Un port qui surveille la tension CC à la recherche de déconnexion doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.SNK dans le délai tSinkDisconnect après maintien de la tension CC au-dessous de vRd-USB pendant le délai tPDDebounce.

4.5.2.2.28 Etat CTUnattached.Unsupported

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-18.

A l'état CTUnattached.Unsupported, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge a précédemment détecté l'état SNK.Open sur son port hôte pendant le délai tVPDCTDD. Cela indique qu'il est connecté à une source compatible avec la charge, et qu'il surveille désormais son port de charge en vue de détecter la présence d'un collecteur non pris en charge.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge ne prend pas en charge les collecteurs, le mode accessoire de débogage ni le mode accessoire d'adaptateur audio.

4.5.2.2.28.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTUnattached.Unsupported

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS. Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit s'assurer qu'il est alimenté par la VCONN, que sa consommation ne dépasse pas ICCS (*USB 3.2*)/ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) de la VBUS pour la surveillance, et qu'il est suffisamment isolé de la VBUS afin de tolérer des tensions élevées pendant l'opération de charge.

Dès l'entrée dans cet état, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit maintenir la terminaison Rp qui annonce 3,0 A sur la broche CC du port côté hôte. Il doit retirer la terminaison Rd à la terre des broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge. Il doit à la place fournir une terminaison Rp qui annonce la puissance USB par défaut.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit uniquement répondre aux requêtes de découverte d'identité *USB PD* sur SOP' sur son port côté hôte. Il doit garantir une capacité suffisante sur la broche CC du port côté hôte afin de satisfaire aux exigences cReceiver définies dans l'*USB PD*.

4.5.2.2.28.2 Sortie de l'état CTUnattached.Unsupported

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit passer à l'état CTAttachWait.Unsupported lorsqu'une connexion de collecteur est détectée sur le port de charge, comme l'indique l'état SRC.Rd sur au moins l'une des broches CC du port en charge ou l'état SRC.Ra sur les deux broches CC1 et CC2.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK si VCONN chute au-dessous de vVCONNDisconnect.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.VPD dans le délai tDRPTransition, à l'issue du délai dcSRC.DRP · tDRP ou en cas de demande.

4.5.2.2.29 Etat CTAttachWait.Unsupported

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-18.

L'état CTAttachWait.Unsupported est utilisé pour s'assurer que l'état des deux broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge est stable pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

4.5.2.2.29.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTAttachWait.Unsupported

Les exigences relatives à cet état sont identiques à celles de l'état CTUnattached.Unsupported.

4.5.2.2.29.2 Sortie de l'état CTAttachWait.Unsupported

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTTry.SNK si l'état d'au moins l'une des broches CC du port de charge est SRC.Rd, ou si l'état des deux broches CC1 et CC2 est SRC.Ra pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.VPD lorsque l'état de la broche CC1 ou CC2 du port de charge est SRC.Open pendant un délai d'au moins tCCDebounce.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK si VCONN chute au-dessous de vVCONNDisconnect.

4.5.2.2.30 Etat CTTry.SNK

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-18.

A l'état CTTry.SNK, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge effectue une requête pour déterminer si le port partenaire sur le port de charge prend en charge le rôle de source.

4.5.2.2.30.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTTry.SNK

Les exigences relatives à cet état sont identiques à celles de l'état CTUnattached.VPD.

4.5.2.2.30.2 Sortie de l'état CTTry.SNK

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit attendre le délai tDRPTry et, seulement après, commencer à surveiller l'affectation de l'état SNK.Rp à la broche CC du port de charge.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit ensuite passer à l'état CTAttached.VPD lorsque l'état SNK.Rp est détecté sur les broches CC du port de charge pendant un délai d'au moins tTryCCDebounce et que la VBUS est détectée sur le port de charge.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTAttached.Unsupported si l'état SNK.Rp n'est pas détecté pendant le délai tDRPTryWait.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Note: La source peut initier une communication *USB PD*, qui entraîne de courtes périodes à l'état SNK.Open sur les deux broches CC1 et CC2; toutefois, cet événement ne dépasse pas le délai tTryCCDebounce.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état Unattached.SNK si VCONN chute au-dessous de vVCONNDisconnect.

4.5.2.2.31 Etat CTAttached.Unsupported

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-18.

Si le port partenaire du port de charge du dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge ne prend pas en charge le rôle d'alimentation source ou n'a pas négocié le rôle de source, l'état CTAttached.Unsupported est utilisé pour attendre que ce dispositif soit débranché avant de continuer.

4.5.2.2.31.1 Exigences relatives à l'état CTAttached.Unsupported

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit isoler son port côté hôte de son port de charge, y compris les broches CC et VBUS. Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit s'assurer qu'il est alimenté par la VCONN, que sa consommation ne dépasse pas ICCS (*USB 3.2*)/ICCSH (*USB 2.0*) de la VBUS pour la surveillance, et qu'il est suffisamment isolé de la VBUS afin de tolérer des tensions élevées pendant l'opération de charge.

Dès l'entrée dans cet état, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit maintenir la terminaison Rp qui annonce 3,0 A sur la broche CC du port côté hôte. Il doit retirer la terminaison Rd à la terre des broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge. Il doit à la place fournir une terminaison Rp qui annonce la puissance USB par défaut.

Au moins une des broches CC1 ou CC2 bascule dans l'état SRC.Rd ou les deux broches basculent dans l'état SRC.Ra. Le port de charge doit annoncer la puissance USB par défaut (voir Tableau 4-24) sur ses broches CC et surveiller leur tension.

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit présenter une interface USB Billboard Device Class qui indique qu'il ne reconnaît ni ne prend en charge l'accessoire ou le dispositif branché.

4.5.2.2.31.2 Sortie de l'état CTAttached.Unsupported

Le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit passer à l'état CTUnattached.VPD lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur les deux broches CC du port de charge, ou lorsque l'état SRC.Open est détecté sur l'une des broches CC et l'état SRC.Ra est détecté sur l'autre broche CC.

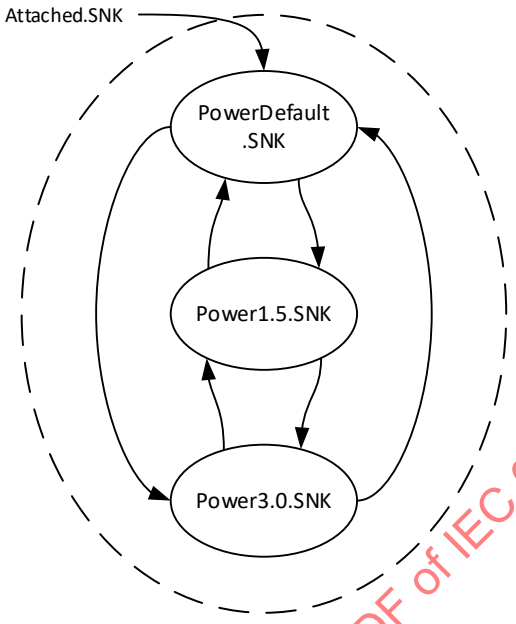
4.5.2.3 Exigences relatives au sous-état Sink Power

A l'état Attached.SNK ou CTAttached.SNK et lorsque la source alimente la VBUS par défaut, le port doit fonctionner dans l'un des sous-états représentés à la Figure 4-19. Le sous-état Sink Power initial est PowerDefault.SNK. Puis, le sous-état Sink Power est déterminé par l'annonce de courant USB Type-C de la source. Le port à l'état Attached.SNK doit rester dans le sous-état Sink Power jusqu'au retrait de la VBUS ou jusqu'à l'établissement du contrat *USB PD* avec la source.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-19 — Sous-états Sink Power



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Le collecteur n'est exigé que pour la mise en œuvre des transitions avec le sous-état Sink Power, lorsque le collecteur demande à puiser un courant USB supérieur à celui par défaut.

Noter que pour l'état CTAttached.SNK, il existe d'autres limitations concernant le courant maximal (voir 4.6.2.5).

4.5.2.3.1 Sous-état PowerDefault.SNK

Ce sous-état prend en charge les collecteurs qui consomment un courant dans la plage de courants la plus basse (par défaut), fournie par la source.

4.5.2.3.1.1 Exigences relatives au sous-état PowerDefault.SNK

Le port ne doit pas puiser plus que l'alimentation USB par défaut de la VBUS. Voir 4.6.2.1.

Si le port demande à consommer une alimentation USB supérieure à celle établie par défaut, il doit surveiller la vRd pour déterminer si la source est en capacité de fournir un courant supérieur.

4.5.2.3.1.2 Sortie du sous-état PowerDefault.SNK

Pour toute modification de la vRd indiquant une variation de l'alimentation admissible, le port ne doit pas changer d'état tant que la nouvelle vRd n'a pas été stable pendant un délai d'au moins tRpValueChange.

Pour une vRd dans la plage vRd-1.5, le port doit basculer vers le sous-état Power1.5.SNK.

Pour une vRd dans la plage vRd-3.0, le port doit basculer vers le sous-état Power3.0.SNK.

4.5.2.3.2 Sous-état Power1.5.SNK

Ce sous-état prend en charge les collecteurs qui consomment un courant dans les deux plages de courants les plus basses (par défaut et 1,5 A), fournies par la source.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.2.3.2.1 Exigences relatives au sous-état Power1.5.SNK

Le port ne doit pas puiser plus que 1,5 A de la VBUS.

Le port doit surveiller la vRd lorsqu'elle est dans ce sous-état.

4.5.2.3.2.2 Sortie du sous-état Power1.5.SNK

Pour toute modification de la vRd indiquant une variation de l'alimentation admissible, le port ne doit pas changer d'état tant que la nouvelle vRd n'a pas été stable pendant un délai d'au moins tRpValueChange.

Pour une vRd dans la plage vRd-USB, le port doit basculer vers le sous-état PowerDefault.SNK et réduire sa consommation de puissance à la nouvelle plage dans le délai tSinkAdj.

Pour une vRd dans la plage vRd-3.0, le port doit basculer vers le sous-état Power3.0.SNK.

4.5.2.3.3 Sous-état Power3.0.SNK

Ce sous-état prend en charge les collecteurs qui consomment un courant dans les trois plages de courants (par défaut, 1,5 A et 3,0 A), fournies par la source.

4.5.2.3.3.1 Exigences relatives au sous-état Power3.0.SNK

Le port ne doit pas puiser plus que 3,0 A de la VBUS.

Le port doit surveiller la vRd lorsqu'elle est dans ce sous-état.

4.5.2.3.3.2 Sortie du sous-état Power3.0.SNK

Pour toute modification de la vRd indiquant une variation de l'alimentation admissible, le port ne doit pas changer d'état tant que la nouvelle vRd n'a pas été stable pendant un délai d'au moins tRpValueChange.

Pour une vRd dans la plage vRd-USB, le port doit basculer vers le sous-état PowerDefault.SNK et réduire sa consommation de puissance à la nouvelle plage dans le délai tSinkAdj.

Pour une vRd dans la plage vRd-1.5, le port doit basculer vers le sous-état Power1.5.SNK et réduire sa consommation de puissance à la nouvelle plage dans le délai tSinkAdj.

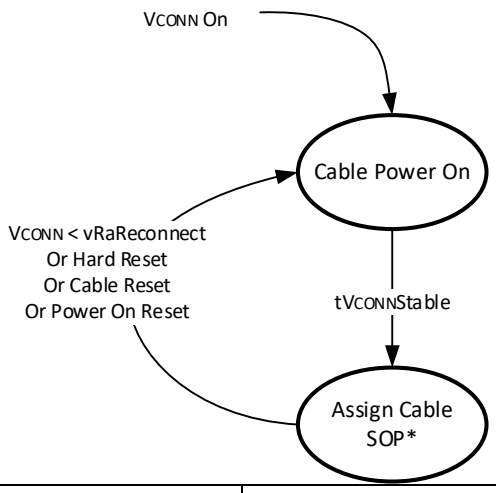
4.5.2.4 Exigences relatives aux diagrammes d'états des câbles

La Figure 4-20 représente le diagramme d'états de connexion par câble avec marqueur électronique.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-20 — Diagramme d'états de connexion par câble avec marqueur électronique



Anglais	Français
V_{CONN} On	V_{conn} activée
Cable Power On	Câble d'alimentation branché
Assign Cable SOP'	Affectation SOP' câble
Or Hard Reset Or Cable Reset Or Power On Reset	Ou réinitialisation matérielle Ou réinitialisation par câble Ou réinitialisation de l'alimentation

4.5.2.4.1 Etat Cable Power On

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-20. Il s'agit de l'état de mise sous tension initiale pour chaque marqueur électronique du câble lorsque la VCONN est appliquée.

4.5.2.4.1.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Cable Power On

Chaque marqueur électronique du câble doit présenter une Ra lorsqu'aucune VCONN n'est appliquée.

Dans cet état, chaque marqueur électronique du câble doit se mettre sous tension et peut continuer à présenter une Ra.

Dans cet état, le câble ne doit pas répondre aux commandes SOP' et SOP".

4.5.2.4.1.2 Sortie de l'état Cable Power On

Chaque marqueur électronique d'un câble passif ou actif doit passer à l'état Assign Cable SOP* lorsqu'il a terminé son processus d'amorçage. Chaque marqueur électronique doit passer à l'état Assign Cable SOP* dans le délai tVCONNStable.

4.5.2.4.2 Etat Assign Cable SOP*

Cet état est représenté à la Figure 4-20.

En général, un câble passif ne compte qu'un seul marqueur électronique alimenté à la fois. Dans cet état, le marqueur électronique d'un câble passif doit répondre sur SOP'. Si deux marqueurs électroniques sont alimentés en même temps dans un câble passif, l'un doit répondre à un SOP' prédéfini et l'autre à SOP".

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Chaque marqueur électronique d'un câble actif doit répondre à un SOP' ou SOP" prédéfini. S'il n'existe qu'un seul marqueur électronique dans le câble, il ne doit répondre qu'à SOP'.

4.5.2.4.2.1 Exigences relatives à l'état Assign Cable SOP*

Le marqueur électronique d'un câble passif ou actif doit être capable de répondre à une communication *USB PD* envoyée à son SOP' ou SOP" prédéfini. Pour un câble passif, il convient d'alimenter un seul marqueur électronique à la fois et celui-ci ne doit répondre qu'à SOP'. Si deux marqueurs électroniques existent dans un câble passif ou actif, et sont alimentés en même temps, un seul doit répondre à SOP' tandis que l'autre doit répondre à SOP". L'affectation des SOP' et SOP" est fixée pour chaque marqueur électronique d'un câble et ne doit pas être définie de manière dynamique lorsque l'alimentation est appliquée à VCONN.

Lorsqu'il ne l'a pas encore fait, chaque marqueur électronique du câble doit diminuer, voire retirer la Ra.

Les câbles passifs doivent satisfaire à l'alimentation des câbles passifs avec marquage électronique définis dans le Tableau 4-6.

Les câbles actifs doivent satisfaire à l'alimentation des câbles actifs définis dans le Tableau 4-6.

4.5.2.4.2.2 Sortie de l'état Assign Cable SOP*

Chaque marqueur électronique du câble doit passer à l'état Cable Power On lors de la détection d'une VCONN inférieure à vRaReconnect ou lors d'un événement Power On Reset.

Chaque marqueur électronique du câble doit passer à l'état Cable Power On lors de la détection d'une réinitialisation Hard Reset ou Cable Reset.

4.5.2.5 Récapitulatif des états de connexion

Le Tableau 4-16 définit les états obligatoires et facultatifs pour chaque type de port.

Tableau 4-16 – Etats obligatoires et facultatifs

	SOURCE	COLLECTEUR	DRP	Communication USB PD
Disabled	Facultatif	Facultatif	Facultatif	Non admis
ErrorRecovery	Obligatoire[10]	Obligatoire[10]	Obligatoire[10]	Non admis
Unattached.SNK	N/A	Obligatoire	Obligatoire	Non admis
AttachWait.SNK	N/A	Obligatoire[1]	Obligatoire	Non admis
Attached.SNK	N/A	Obligatoire	Obligatoire	Admis
UnattachedWait.SRC	Obligatoire ou N/A[7]	N/A	N/A	Non admis
Unattached.SRC	Obligatoire	N/A	Obligatoire	Non admis
AttachWait.SRC	Obligatoire	N/A	Obligatoire	Non admis
Attached.SRC	Obligatoire	N/A	Obligatoire	Admis
Try.SRC[4]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	Non admis
TryWait.SNK[2]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	Non admis
Try.SNK[4, 8]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	Non admis
TryWait.SRC[5, 8]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	Non admis
AudioAccessory	Facultatif	Facultatif	Facultatif	Non admis
UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC	Facultatif[6]	N/A	Facultatif[6]	Non admis

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

	SOURCE	COLLECTEUR	DRP	Communication USB PD
OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC	Facultatif [6]	N/A	Facultatif [6]	Admis
DebugAccessory.SNK	N/A	Facultatif	Facultatif	Admis
Unattached.Accessory	N/A	Facultatif	N/A	Non admis
AttachWait.Accessory	N/A	Facultatif	N/A	Non admis
PoweredAccessory	N/A	Facultatif	N/A	Admis
Unsupported.Accessory[3]	N/A	Facultatif	N/A	Non admis
CTUnattached.VPD	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	SOP' admis
CTAttachWait.VPD[8]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	SOP' admis
CTAttached.VPD[8]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	Non admis
CTDisabled.VPD[8]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	Non admis
CTUnattached.SNK	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	SOP' admis
CTAttached.SNK[9]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	Admis
CTUnattached.Unsupported[8]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	SOP' admis
CTAttachWait.Unsupported[8]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	SOP' admis
CTTry.SNK[8]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	SOP' admis
CTAttached.Unsupported[8]	N/A	N/A	Facultatif	SOP' admis
PowerDefault.SNK	N/A	Obligatoire	Obligatoire	Admis
Power1.5.SNK	N/A	Facultatif	Facultatif	Admis
Power3.0.SNK	N/A	Facultatif	Facultatif	Admis

Notes:

1. Facultatif pour les applications UFP classées USB 2.0 exclusives qui consomment une alimentation USB par défaut et qui ne prennent pas en charge l'*USB PD* ni les accessoires.
2. L'état TryWait.SNK est obligatoire lorsque l'état Try.SRC est pris en charge.
3. L'état Unsupported.Accessory est obligatoire lorsque l'état PoweredAccessory est pris en charge.
4. Les états Try.SRC et Try.SNK ne doivent pas être pris en charge simultanément, et ce même si un dispositif non branché peut effectuer un choix dynamique entre les diagrammes d'états Try.SRC et Try.SNK à partir de facteurs externes.
5. L'état TryWait.SRC est obligatoire lorsque l'état Try.SNK est pris en charge.
6. L'état UnorientedDebugAccessory.SRC est exigé pour toute source ou DRP prenant en charge le mode accessoire de débogage. L'état OrientedDebugAccessory.SRC n'est exigé que si la détection de l'orientation est nécessaire en mode accessoire de débogage.
7. Obligatoire avec un DFP qui a fourni une VCONN à l'état Attached.SRC précédent. N/A avec un DFP qui n'a pas fourni de VCONN à l'état Attached.SRC précédent.
8. Les états CTAttachWait.VPD, CTAttached.VPD, CTDisabled.VPD, Try.SNK, TryWait.SRC, CTUnattached.Unsupported, CTAttachWait.Unsupported, CTAttached.Unsupported et CTTry.SNK sont obligatoires lorsque l'état CTUnattached.VPD est pris en charge.
9. L'état CTAttached.SNK est obligatoire lorsque l'état CTUnattached.SNK est pris en charge.
10. Facultatif pour les mises en œuvre non *USB4*.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.3 Comportement d'interopérabilité des ports USB

Le présent paragraphe décrit le comportement d'interopérabilité entre les ports USB Type-C et les ports USB Type-C, et entre les ports USB Type-C et les ports USB existants.

4.5.3.1 Comportements d'interopérabilité entre les ports USB Type-C et les ports USB Type-C

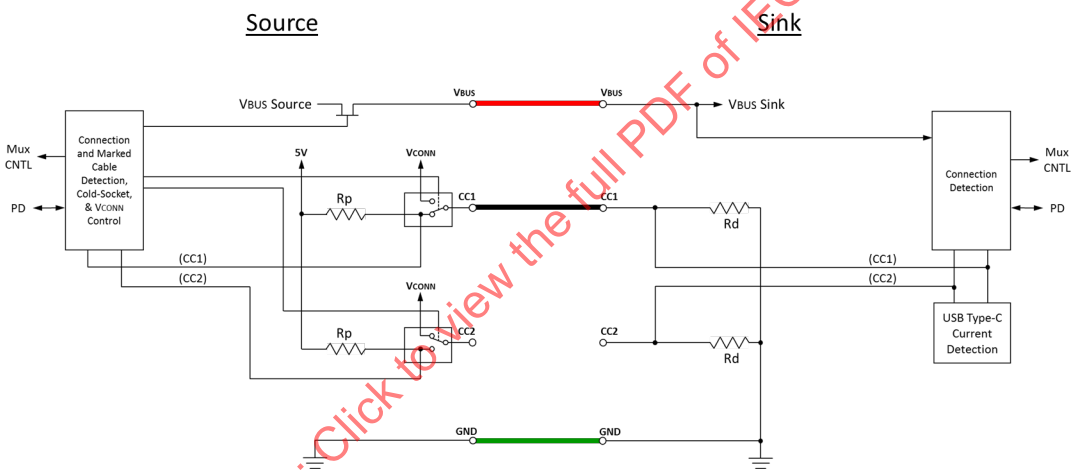
Les paragraphes suivants décrivent les comportements d'interopérabilité types entre deux ports pour les différentes combinaisons de source, de collecteur et de DRP USB Type-C présentées dans le Tableau 4-9. Pour tous les comportements décrits, l'impact des échanges *USB PD* (PR_Swap, DR_Swap ou VCONN_Swap) n'est pas pris en compte.

Les figures suivantes représentent les routages CC1 et CC2 à la fin du processus de détection CC.

4.5.3.1.1 Comportement source-collecteur

La Figure 4-21 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une source connectée à un collecteur. Le fil CC unique, utilisé dans un câble normalisé, n'est représenté que pour l'un des quatre chemins de connexion possibles, CC1 à CC1.

Figure 4-21 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une source branchée à un collecteur



Anglais	Français
Sink	Collecteur
Vbus Source	Source V_{BUS}
Vbus Sink	Collecteur V_{BUS}
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de V_{CONN}
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C

Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une source est connectée à un collecteur.

1. La source et le collecteur sont débranchés.
2. La source passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   - la source détecte la dépolarisation du collecteur sur la broche CC et passe à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC;
   - la source active la VBUS et la VCONN.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

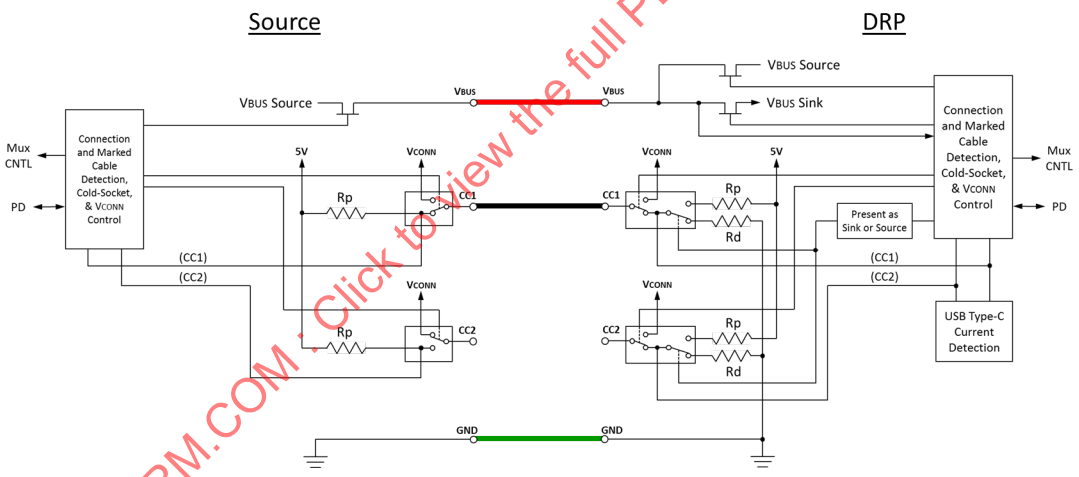
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

3. Le collecteur passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SNK. Le collecteur peut ignorer l'état AttachWait.SNK s'il est USB 2.0 exclusif et qu'il ne prend pas en charge les accessoires:
   - le collecteur détecte la VBUS et passe à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SNK.
4. Lorsque la source et le collecteur sont branchés:
   - la source ajuste la Rp en fonction des besoins, afin de limiter le courant qui peut être puisé par le collecteur;
   - le collecteur détecte et surveille la vRd par rapport au courant disponible sur la VBUS;
   - la source surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SRC;
   - le collecteur surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état Unattached.SNK.

4.5.3.1.2 Comportement source-DRP

La Figure 4-22 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une source connectée à une DRP. Le fil CC unique, utilisé dans un câble normalisé, n'est représenté que pour l'un des quatre chemins de connexion possibles, CC1 à CC1.

Figure 4-22 —Modèle fonctionnel d'une source branchée à une DRP



Anglais	Français
Sink	Collecteur
Vbus Source	Source V_{BUS}
Vbus Sink	Collecteur V_{BUS}
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de V_{CONN}
Present as Sink or Source	Source ou collecteur présent
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C

Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une source est connectée à une DRP.

1. La source et la DRP sont débranchées:

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- la DRP alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.

2. La source passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   - la source détecte la dépolarisation de la DRP sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC. A l'issue du délai tCCDebounce, elle passe à l'état Attached.SRC;
   - la source active la VBUS et la VCONN.
3. La DRP passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SNK:
   - la DRP à l'état Unattached.SNK détecte la polarisation sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK. Après être restée dans cet état pendant le délai tCCDebounce et détection de la VBUS, elle passe à l'état Attached.SNK.
4. Lorsque la source et la DRP se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs:
   - la source ajuste la Rp en fonction des besoins, afin de limiter le courant qui peut être puisé par la DRP (en tant que collecteur);
   - la DRP (en tant que collecteur) détecte et surveille la vRd par rapport au courant disponible sur la VBUS;
   - la source surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SRC;
   - la DRP (en tant que collecteur) surveille la VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC).

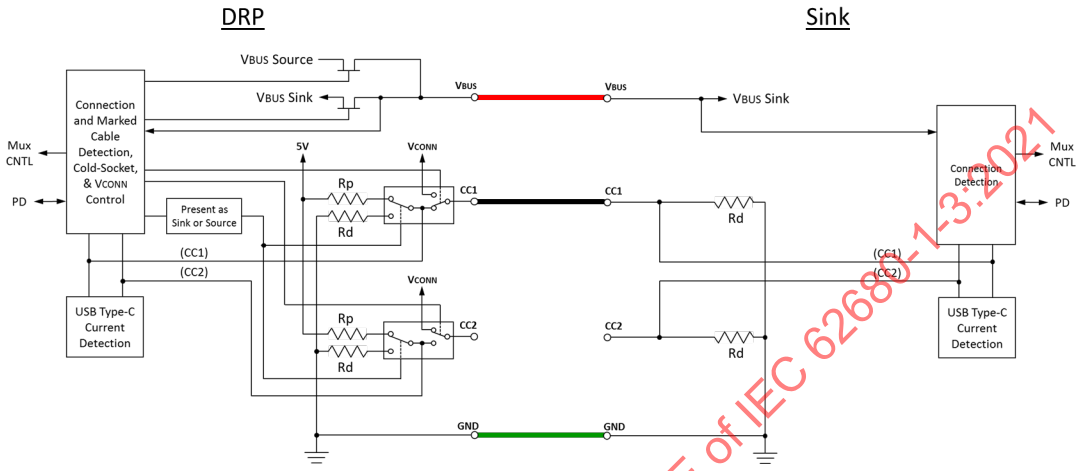
IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.5.3.1.3 Comportement DRP-collecteur

La Figure 4-23 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP connectée à un collecteur. Le fil CC unique, utilisé dans un câble normalisé, n'est représenté que pour l'un des quatre chemins de connexion possibles, CC1 à CC1.

Figure 4-23 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à un collecteur



Anglais	Français
Sink	Collecteur
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de V_{CONN}
Present as Sink or Source	Source ou collecteur présent
VBUS Source	Source VBUS
VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS
Connection detection	Détection de connexion
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C

Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une DRP est connectée à un collecteur.

1. La DRP et le collecteur sont débranchés:
   - la DRP alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.
2. La DRP passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état AttachWait.SRC, puis à l'état Attached.SRC:
   - la DRP à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte l'une des dépolarisations du collecteur sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Unattached.SNK et la DRP passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;
   - la DRP à l'état AttachWait.SRC détecte le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce. Elle passe alors à l'état Attached.SRC, puis active la VBUS et la VCONN.
3. Le collecteur passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SNK, si exigé:
   - le collecteur détecte la VBUS et passe à l'état Attached.SNK.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

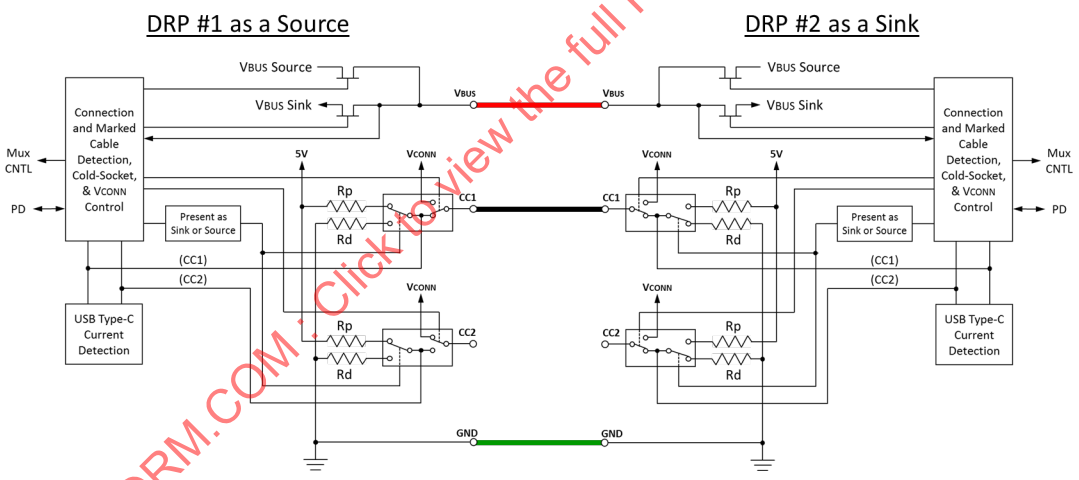
4. Lorsque la DRP et le collecteur se trouvent dans leur état de connexion respectif:
   - la DRP (en tant que source) ajuste la Rp en fonction des besoins, afin de limiter le courant qui peut être puisé par le collecteur;
   - le collecteur détecte et surveille la vRd par rapport au courant disponible sur la VBUS;
   - la DRP (en tant que source) surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC);
   - le collecteur surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état Unattached.SNK.

4.5.3.1.4 Comportement DRP-DRP

Les informations suivantes décrivent deux comportements issus des diagrammes d'états de connexion. Dans le premier cas, les deux DRP acceptent la relation source-collecteur obtenue de manière aléatoire; dans le second cas, la DRP n° 2 choisit d'amener le résultat aléatoire vers le résultat opposé avec le mécanisme Try.SRC.

La Figure 4-24 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP connectée à une DRP dans le cadre du premier cas. Le fil CC unique, utilisé dans un câble normalisé, n'est représenté que pour l'un des quatre chemins de connexion possibles, CC1 à CC1. Sur le diagramme, les numéros de port ont été affectés de manière arbitraire afin de simplifier la compréhension du processus par le lecteur.

Figure 4-24 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à une DRP – CAS n° 1



Anglais	Français
DRP #1 as a source	DRP n° 1 en tant que source
DRP #2 as a sink	DRP n° 2 en tant que collecteur
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & VCONN Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de VCONN
Present as sink or source	Source ou collecteur présent
VBUS Source	Source VBUS
VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C

CAS n° 1: Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une DRP est connectée à une autre DRP. Dans ce processus, les deux DRP acceptent la relation source-collecteur résultante obtenue de manière aléatoire.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

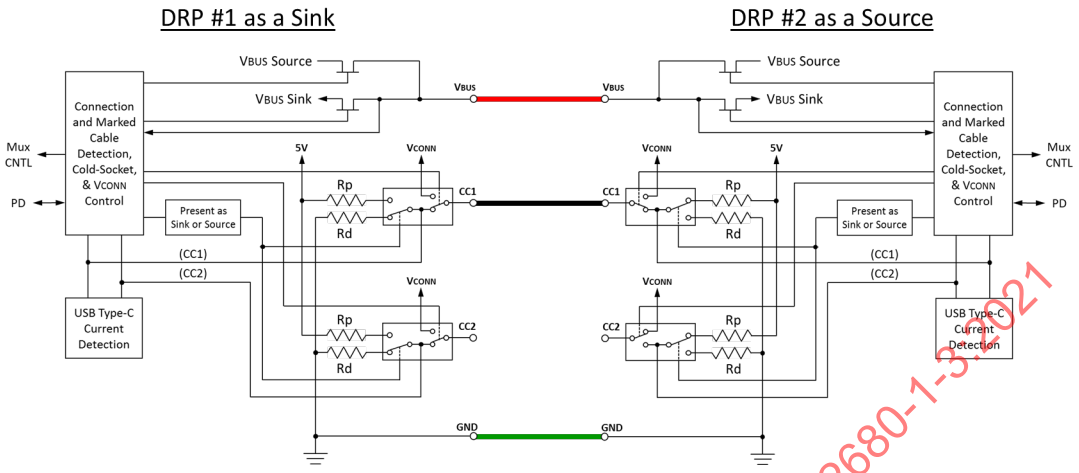
1. Les deux DRP sont débranchées:
   - la DRP n° 1 et la DRP n° 2 alternent entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.
2. La DRP n° 1 passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   - la DRP n° 1 à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte la dépolarisation de la DRP n° 2 sur la broche CC à l'état Unattached.SNK et passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC.
3. La DRP n° 2 passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état AttachWait.SNK:
   - la DRP n° 2 à l'état Unattached.SNK détecte la polarisation sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK.
4. La DRP n° 1 passe de l'état AttachWait.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC:
   - la DRP n° 1 à l'état AttachWait.SRC constate le maintien de la dépolarisation de la DRP n° 2 sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce, passe à l'état Attached.SRC, puis active la VBUS et la VCONN.
5. La DRP n° 2 passe de l'état AttachWait.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK:
   - après avoir été à l'état AttachWait.SNK pendant le délai tCCDebounce et après avoir détecté la VBUS, la DRP n° 2 passe à l'état Attached.SNK.
6. Lorsque les DRP se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs:
   - la DRP n° 1 (en tant que source) ajuste la Rp en fonction des besoins afin de limiter le courant qui peut être puisé par la DRP n° 2 (en tant que collecteur);
   - la DRP n° 2 (en tant que collecteur) détecte et surveille la vRd par rapport au courant disponible sur la VBUS;
   - la DRP n° 1 (en tant que source) surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC);
   - la DRP n° 2 (en tant que collecteur) surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC).

La Figure 4-25 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP connectée à une DRP dans le cadre du second cas.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-25 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à une DRP – CAS n° 2 et 3



Anglais	Français
DRP #1 as a sink	DRP n° 1 en tant que collecteur
DRP #2 as a source	DRP n° 2 en tant que source
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de V_{CONN}
Present as sink or source	Source ou collecteurprésent
VBUS Source	Source VBUS
VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C

CAS n° 2: Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une DRP est connectée à une autre DRP. Dans ce processus, la DRP n° 2 choisit d'amener le résultat aléatoire vers le résultat opposé avec le mécanisme Try.SRC.

1. Les deux DRP sont débranchées:
   - la DRP n° 1 et la DRP n° 2 alternent entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.
2. La DRP n° 1 passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   - la DRP n° 1 à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte la dépolarisation de la DRP n° 2 sur la broche CC à l'état Unattached.SNK et passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC.
3. La DRP n° 2 passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état AttachWait.SNK:
   - la DRP n° 2 à l'état Unattached.SNK détecte la polarisation sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK.
4. La DRP n° 1 passe de l'état AttachWait.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC:
   - la DRP n° 1 à l'état AttachWait.SRC constate le maintien de la dépolarisation de la DRP n° 2 sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce, passe à l'état Attached.SRC, puis active la VBUS et la VCONN.
5. La DRP n° 2 passe de l'état AttachWait.SNK à l'état Try.SRC:
   - la DRP n° 2, à l'état AttachWait.SNK, reste dans cet état pendant le délai tCCDebounce et détecte VBUS, mais privilégie fortement le rôle de source et passe alors à l'état Try.SRC;
   - la DRP n° 2 à l'état Try.SRC annonce la polarisation de la broche CC et attend.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

6. La DRP n° 1 passe de l'état Attached.SRC à l'état Unattached.SNK, puis à l'état AttachWait.SNK:
   - la DRP n° 1, à l'état Attached.SRC, ne détecte plus la dépolarisation de la DRP n° 2 sur la broche CC et passe à l'état Unattached.SNK;
   - la DRP n° 1 à l'état Unattached.SNK désactive la VBUS et la VCONN, puis applique une dépolarisation sur la broche CC;
   - la DRP n° 1 à l'état Unattached.SNK détecte la polarisation sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK.
7. La DRP n° 2 passe de l'état Try.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC:
   - la DRP n° 2 à l'état Try.SRC détecte la dépolarisation de la DRP n° 1 sur la broche CC à l'état Unattached.SNK, puis passe à l'état Attached.SRC;
   - la DRP n° 2, à l'état Attached.SRC, active la VBUS et la VCONN.
8. La DRP n° 1 passe de l'état AttachWait.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK:
   - à l'issue du délai tCCDebounce et de la détection de la VBUS, la DRP n° 1 à l'état AttachWait.SNK passe à l'état Attached.SNK.
9. Lorsque les DRP se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs:
   - la DRP n° 2 (en tant que source) ajuste la Rp en fonction des besoins afin de limiter le courant qui peut être puisé par la DRP n° 1 (en tant que collecteur);
   - la DRP n° 1 (en tant que collecteur) détecte et surveille la vRd par rapport au courant disponible sur la VBUS;
   - la DRP n° 2 (en tant que source) surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC);
   - la DRP n° 1 (en tant que collecteur) surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC).

CAS n° 3: Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une DRP est connectée à une autre DRP. Dans ce processus, la DRP n° 1 choisit d'amener le résultat aléatoire vers le résultat opposé avec le mécanisme Try.SNK.

1. Les deux DRP sont débranchées:
   - la DRP n° 1 et la DRP n° 2 alternent entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.
2. La DRP n° 1 passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   - la DRP n° 1 à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte la dépolarisation de la DRP n° 2 sur la broche CC à l'état Unattached.SNK et passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC.
3. La DRP n° 2 passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état AttachWait.SNK:
   - la DRP n° 2 à l'état Unattached.SNK détecte la polarisation sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK.
4. La DRP n° 1 passe de l'état AttachWait.SRC à l'état Try.SNK:
   - après être restée à l'état AttachWait.SRC pendant le délai tCCDebounce, la DRP n° 1 détecte la dépolarisation de la DRP n° 2 sur la broche CC, mais privilégie fortement le rôle de collecteur et passe alors à l'état Try.SNK;
   - la DRP n° 1 à l'état Try.SNK annonce la dépolarisation de la broche CC et attend.
5. La DRP n° 2 passe de l'état AttachWait.SNK à l'état Unattached.SRC, puis à l'état AttachWait.SRC:

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

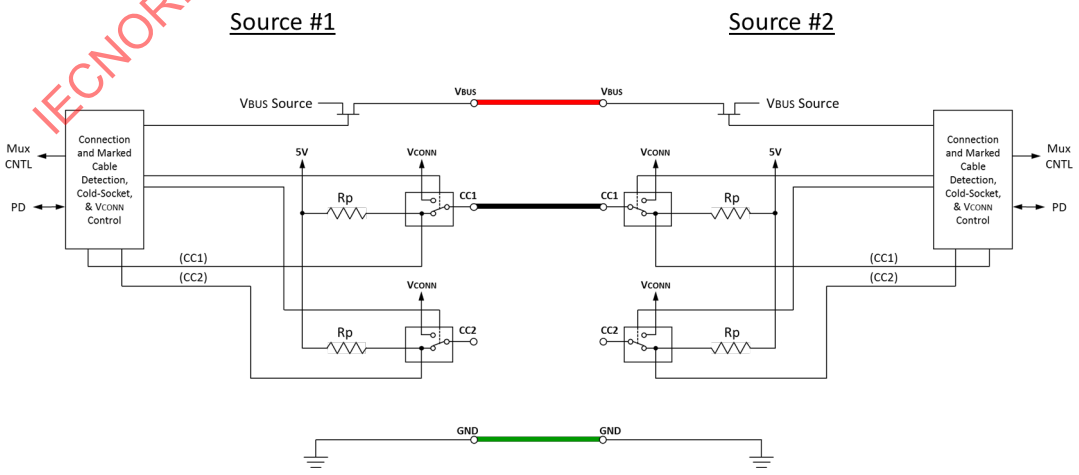
- la DRP n° 2 à l'état AttachWait.SNK ne détecte plus la polarisation de la DRP n° 1 sur la broche CC et passe à l'état Unattached.SRC;
- la DRP n° 2 à l'état Unattached.SRC applique une polarisation sur la broche CC;
- la DRP n° 2 à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte une dépolarisation sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;
- la DRP n° 1 détecte la polarisation de la DRP n° 2 sur la broche CC et reste à l'état Try.SNK.

6. La DRP n° 2 passe de l'état AttachWait.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC:
   - la DRP n° 2, à l'état AttachWait.SRC, arrive à expiration (tCCDebounce) et passe à l'état Attached.SRC;
   - la DRP n° 2, à l'état Attached.SRC, active la VBUS et la VCONN.
7. La DRP n° 1 passe de l'état Try.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK:
   - la DRP n° 1 à l'état Try.SNK, après avoir détecté la VBUS, passe à l'état Attached.SNK.
8. Lorsque les DRP se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs:
   - la DRP n° 2 (en tant que source) ajuste la Rp en fonction des besoins afin de limiter le courant qui peut être puisé par la DRP n° 1 (en tant que collecteur);
   - la DRP n° 1 (en tant que collecteur) détecte et surveille la vRd par rapport au courant disponible sur la VBUS;
   - la DRP n° 2 (en tant que source) surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC);
   - la DRP n° 1 (en tant que collecteur) surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC).

4.5.3.1.5 Comportement source-source

La Figure 4-26 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une source connectée à une source. Le fil CC unique, utilisé dans un câble normalisé, n'est représenté que pour l'un des quatre chemins de connexion possibles, CC1 à CC1. Sur le diagramme, les numéros de port ont été affectés de manière arbitraire afin de simplifier la compréhension du processus par le lecteur.

Figure 4-26 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une source branchée à une source



Anglais	Français

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de V_{CONN}
VBUS Source	Source VBUS
VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS

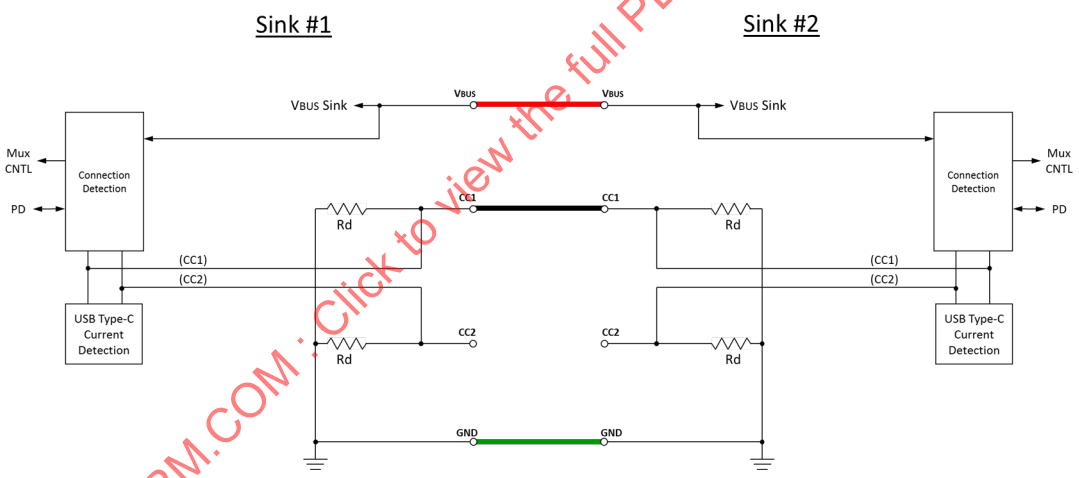
Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une source est connectée à une autre source.

1. Les deux sources sont débranchées:
   - la source n° 1 ne parvient pas à détecter la dépolarisation du collecteur sur la broche CC et reste à l'état Unattached.SRC;
   - la source n° 2 ne parvient pas à détecter la dépolarisation du collecteur sur la broche CC et reste à l'état Unattached.SRC.

4.5.3.1.6 Comportement collecteur-collecteur

La Figure 4-27 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'un collecteur connecté à un collecteur. Le fil CC unique, utilisé dans un câble normalisé, n'est représenté que pour l'un des quatre chemins de connexion possibles, CC1 à CC1. Sur le diagramme, les numéros de port ont été affectés de manière arbitraire afin de simplifier la compréhension du processus par le lecteur.

Figure 4-27 — Modèle fonctionnel d'un collecteur branché à un collecteur



Anglais	Français
Sink #	Collecteur n°
VBUS Source	Source VBUS
VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS
Connection detection	Détection de connexion
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C

Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'un collecteur est connecté à un autre collecteur.

1. Les deux collecteurs sont débranchés:
   - le collecteur n° 1 ne parvient pas à détecter une polarisation sur la broche CC ou sur la broche VBUS alimentée par une source et reste à l'état Unattached.SNK;

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

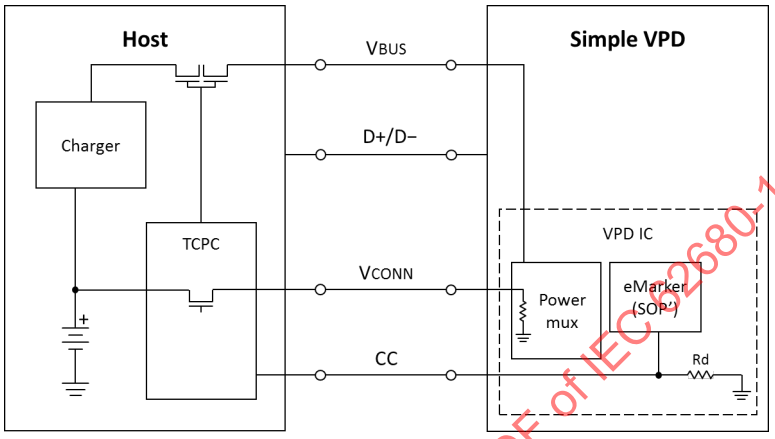
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- le collecteur n° 2 ne parvient pas à détecter une polarisation sur la broche CC ou sur la broche VBUS alimentée par une source et reste à l'état Unattached.SNK.

4.5.3.1.7 Comportement DRP-dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN (VPD)

La Figure 4-28 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP connectée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN, qui ne propose pas de fonctionnalité de charge.

Figure 4-28 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à un VPD



Anglais	Français
Host	Hôte
Simple VPD	VPD simple
Charger	Chargeur
Power mux	MUX alimentation
eMarker (SOP')	Marqueur électronique (SOP')

Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une DRP, qui prend en charge les VPD, est connectée à un VPD.

1. La DRP et le VPD sont débranchés:
   - la DRP alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.
2. La DRP passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   - la DRP à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte la dépolarisation du VPD sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Unattached.SNK et la DRP passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;
   - la DRP à l'état AttachWait.SRC détecte le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce. Elle passe alors à l'état Attached.SRC, puis active la VBUS et la VCONN.
3. Le VPD passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SNK:
   - le VPD détecte la VCONN et passe à l'état Attached.SNK.
4. Lorsque la DRP et le VPD se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs, la DRP découvre le VPD et retire la VBUS:
   - la DRP (en tant que source) interroge l'identité du câble par l'*USB PD* sur SOP';

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

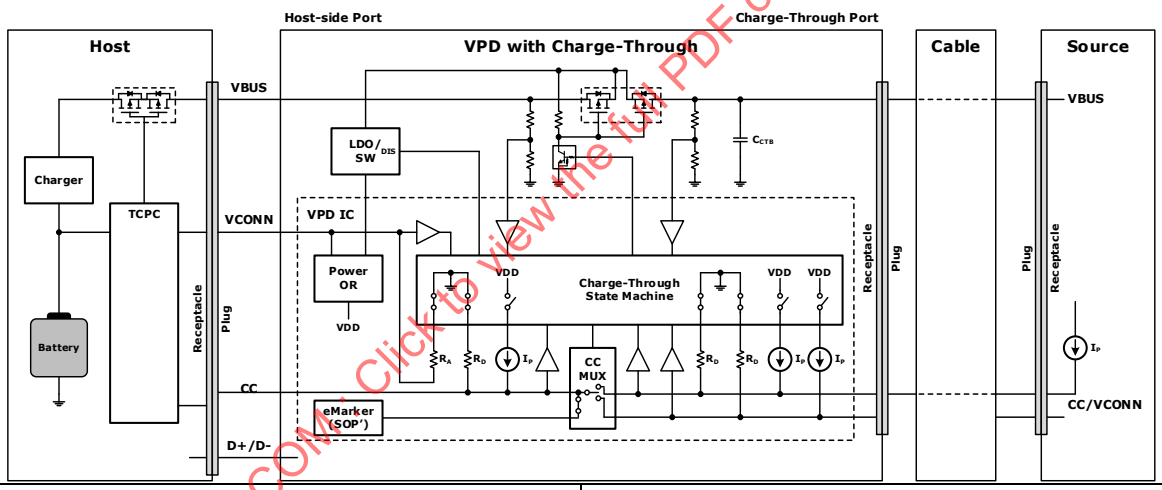
- le VPD répond sur SOP' en annonçant qu'il est un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN qui n'assume pas la fonctionnalité de charge;
- la DRP (en tant que source) retire la VBUS;
- la DRP (en tant que source) conserve sa Rp.

5. Débranchement de la DRP et du VPD:
   - la DRP (en tant que source) surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC);
   - le VPD surveille la broche VCONN afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état Unattached.SNK.

4.5.3.1.8 Comportement DRP-dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge (CTVPD)

La Figure 4-29 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP connectée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge, avec une source branchée au port de charge sur le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN.

Figure 4-29 — Exemple de modèle de DRP branchée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge



Anglais	Français
Host	Hôte
Host-side port	Port côté hôte
Charge-through port	Port de charge
VPD with charge-through	VPD avec charge
Cable	Câble
Charger	Chargeur
Charge-through state machine	Diagramme d'états de charge
eMarker (SOP')	Marqueur électronique (SOP')
Battery	Batterie
Receptacle	Connecteur femelle

CAS n° 1: Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une DRP est connectée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge (CTVPD en abrégé) sans source d'alimentation branchée au port de charge sur le CTVPD.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

1. La DRP et le CTVPD sont débranchés:
    a. la DRP alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK;
    b. le CTVPD a appliqué la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge et la Rd sur la broche CC du port côté hôte.
2. La DRP passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:
    a. la DRP à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte une dépolarisation du CTVPD sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Unattached.SNK et la DRP passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;
    b. la DRP à l'état AttachWait.SRC constate le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce, passe à l'état Attached.SRC, puis active la VBUS et la VCONN.
3. Le CTVPD passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SNK:
    a. le CTVPD détecte la polarisation de la broche CC côté hôte de la DRP et le CTVPD passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK;
    b. le CTVPD à l'état AttachWait.SNK constate le maintien de la polarisation de la broche CC du port côté hôte pendant le délai tCCDebounce, détecte la présence de la VCONN et passe à l'état Attached.SNK;
    c. le CTVPD présente une impédance de mise à la terre élevée (supérieure à zOPEN) sur les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge.
4. Lorsque la DRP et le CTVPD se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs, la DRP découvre le CTVPD et passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK:
    a. la DRP (en tant que source) interroge l'identité du dispositif par l'*USB PD* (commande de découverte d'identité de dispositif) sur SOP';
    b. le CTVPD répond sur SOP' en annonçant qu'il est un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge;
    c. la DRP (en tant que source) retire la VBUS;
    d. la DRP (en tant que source) modifie sa Rp par une Rd;
    e. la DRP (en tant que collecteur) continue à fournir la VCONN et passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK.
5. Le CTVPD passe à l'état CTUnattached.VPD:
    a. le CTVPD détecte le retrait de la VBUS, la présence de la VCONN et la faible tension de la broche CC côté hôte, et passe à l'état CTUnattached.VPD;
    b. le CTVPD modifie sa Rd côté hôte en une Rp annonçant 3,0 A;
    c. le CTVPD s'isole de la VBUS;
    d. le CTVPD applique la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge.
6. Lorsque le CTVPD est à l'état CTUnattached.VPD et la DRP à l'état CTUnattached.SNK:
    a. le CTVPD surveille les broches CC de charge pour détecter une source ou un collecteur; lorsqu'une connexion de source d'alimentation est détectée, il passe à l'état CTAttachWait.VPD; lorsqu'un collecteur est détecté, il passe à l'état CTAttachWait.Unsupported;
    b. le CTVPD surveille la broche VCONN afin de détecter un débranchement de l'hôte; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état Unattached.SNK;
    c. la DRP surveille la broche VBUS et la broche CC afin de détecter une déconnexion du CTVPD pendant le délai tVPDDetach; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK;

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

d. la DRP surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter une connexion de la source d'alimentation; en cas de déconnexion détectée, elle passe à l'état CTAttached.SNK.

CAS n° 2: Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une source d'alimentation est connectée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge (CTVPD en abrégé), avec un hôte déjà branché au port côté hôte sur le CTVPD.

1. La DRP est à l'état CTUnattached.SNK, le CTVPD est à l'état CTUnattached.VPD et la source d'alimentation est débranchée:
   a. le CTVPD a appliqué la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge et la terminaison Rd qui annonce 3,0 A sur la broche CC du port côté hôte.
2. La source d'alimentation passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   a. la source d'alimentation détecte la dépolarisation du CTVPD sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;
   b. la source d'alimentation à l'état AttachWait.SRC constate le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce, passe à l'état Attached.SRC et active la VBUS.
3. Le CTVPD passe de l'état CTUnattached.VPD à l'état CTAttached.VPD, en passant par l'état CTAttachWait.VPD:
   a. le CTVPD détecte la Rp de la source sur l'une de ses broches CC de charge et passe à l'état CTAttachWait.VPD;
   b. le CTVPD termine toute communication *USB PD* active sur SOP' et cesse de répondre aux requêtes SOP';
   c. le CTVPD à l'état CTAttachWait.VPD constate le maintien de la polarisation sur la broche CC de charge pendant le délai tCCDebounce, détecte la VBUS et passe à l'état CTAttached.VPD;
   d. le CTVPD connecte la broche CC de charge active à la broche CC du port côté hôte;
   e. le CTVPD désactive sa terminaison Rp qui annonce 3,0 A sur la broche CC du port côté hôte;
   f. le CTVPD désactive sa Rd sur les broches CC de charge;
   g. le CTVPD connecte la VBUS du côté charge au côté hôte.
4. La DRP (en tant que collecteur) passe à l'état CTAttached.SNK:
   a. la DRP (en tant que collecteur) détecte la VBUS, surveille la vRd par rapport au courant disponible et passe à l'état CTAttached.SNK.
5. Lorsque les dispositifs se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs:
   a. le CTVPD surveille la broche VCONN afin de détecter un débranchement de la DRP; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état CTDisabled.VPD;
   b. le CTVPD surveille la broche VBUS et la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement de la source d'alimentation; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état CTUnattached.VPD dans le délai tVPDCTDD;
   c. la DRP (en tant que collecteur) surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement de la source d'alimentation de charge; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK;
   d. la DRP (en tant que collecteur) surveille la broche VBUS et la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement du CTVPD; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC);

e. la source d'alimentation surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement du CTVPD; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SRC.

CAS n° 3: Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une source d'alimentation est connectée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge (CTVPD en abrégé), sans hôte branché au port côté hôte sur le CTVPD.

1. Le CTVPD et la source d'alimentation sont débranchés:
   a. le CTVPD a appliqué la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge et la Rd sur la broche CC du port côté hôte.
2. La source d'alimentation passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   a. la source d'alimentation détecte la dépolarisation du CTVPD sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;
   b. la source d'alimentation à l'état AttachWait.SRC constate le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce, passe à l'état Attached.SRC et active la VBUS.
3. Le CTVPD alterne entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC:
   a. le CTVPD détecte la Rp de la source sur l'une de ses broches CC de charge, détecte la VBUS pendant le délai tCCDebounce, puis commence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.
4. Lorsque le CTVPD alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK, et que la source d'alimentation est à l'état Attached.SRC:
   a. le CTVPD surveille la broche CC du port côté hôte afin de détecter une connexion de dispositif; en cas de déconnexion détectée, il passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;
   b. le CTVPD surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement de la source d'alimentation; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état Unattached.SNK;
   c. la source d'alimentation surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement du CTVPD; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SRC.

CAS n° 4: Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une DRP est connectée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge (CTVPD en abrégé), avec une source d'alimentation déjà branchée au côté charge sur le CTVPD.

1. La DRP et le CTVPD sont débranchés et la source d'alimentation est à l'état Attached.SRC:
   a. la DRP alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK;
   b. le CTVPD alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK;
   c. le CTVPD a appliqué la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge;
   d. la source d'alimentation a appliqué la VBUS.
2. La DRP passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état AttachWait.SNK:
   a. la DRP à l'état Unattached.SNK détecte la polarisation du CTVPD sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Unattached.SRC et la DRP passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK.
3. Le CTVPD passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Try.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   a. le CTVPD à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte la dépolarisation de la DRP sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Unattached.SNK et le CTVPD passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

b. le CTVPD à l'état AttachWait.SRC constate le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce et passe à l'état Try.SNK;

c. le CTVPD désactive la terminaison Rp qui annonce la puissance USB par défaut sur la broche CC du port côté hôte;

d. le CTVPD active la Rd sur la broche CC du port côté hôte.

4. La DRP passe de l'état AttachWait.SNK à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état AttachWait.SRC:

a. la DRP à l'état AttachWait.SNK détecte le retrait de la polarisation du CTVPD sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Try.SNK et la DRP passe à l'état Unattached.SRC;

b. la DRP à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte la dépolarisation du CTVPD sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Try.SNK et la DRP passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;

c. la DRP à l'état AttachWait.SRC détecte le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce. Elle passe alors à l'état Attached.SRC, puis active la VBUS et la VCONN.

5. Le CTVPD passe de l'état Try.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK:

a. le CTVPD constate le maintien de la polarisation de la DRP sur la broche CC pendant le délai tTryCCDebounce;

b. le CTVPD détecte la VBUS sur le port côté hôte et passe à l'état Attached.SNK.

6. Lorsque la DRP et le CTVPD se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs, la DRP découvre le CTVPD de charge et passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK:

a. la DRP (en tant que source) interroge l'identité du dispositif par l'*USB PD* (commande de découverte d'identité) sur SOP';

b. le CTVPD répond sur SOP' en annonçant qu'il est un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge;

c. la DRP (en tant que source) retire la VBUS;

d. la DRP (en tant que source) modifie sa Rp par une Rd;

e. la DRP (en tant que collecteur) continue à fournir la VCONN et passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK.

7. Le CTVPD passe à l'état CTUnattached.VPD:

a. le CTVPD détecte le retrait de la VBUS, la présence de la VCONN et la faible tension de la broche CC de son port hôte, et passe à l'état CTUnattached.VPD;

b. le CTVPD modifie sa Rd côté hôte en une terminaison Rp annonçant 3,0 A;

c. le CTVPD s'isole de la VBUS.

8. Le CTVPD passe de l'état CTUnattached.VPD à l'état CTAttached.VPD, en passant par l'état CTAttachWait.VPD:

a. le CTVPD détecte la Rp de la source sur l'une de ses broches CC de charge et passe à l'état CTAttachWait.VPD;

b. le CTVPD à l'état CTAttachWait.VPD constate le maintien de la polarisation sur la broche CC de charge pendant le délai tCCDebounce, détecte la VBUS et passe à l'état CTAttached.VPD;

c. le CTVPD termine toute communication *USB PD* active sur SOP' et cesse de répondre aux requêtes SOP';

d. le CTVPD connecte la broche CC de charge active à la broche CC du port côté hôte;

e. le CTVPD désactive sa terminaison Rp qui annonce 3,0 A sur la broche CC du port côté hôte;

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

f. le CTVPD désactive sa Rd sur les broches CC de charge;

g. le CTVPD connecte la VBUS du côté charge au côté hôte.

9. La DRP (en tant que collecteur) passe à l'état CTAttached.SNK:

   a. la DRP (en tant que collecteur) détecte la VBUS, surveille la vRd par rapport au courant disponible et passe à l'état CTAttached.SNK.

10. Lorsque les dispositifs se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs:

    a. le CTVPD surveille la broche VCONN afin de détecter un débranchement de la DRP; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état CTDisabled.VPD;

    b. le CTVPD surveille la broche VBUS et la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement de la source d'alimentation; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état CTUnattached.VPD dans le délai tVPDCTDD;

    c. la DRP (en tant que collecteur) surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement de la source d'alimentation de charge; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK;

    d. la DRP (en tant que collecteur) surveille la broche VBUS et la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement du CTVPD; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC);

    e. la source d'alimentation surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement du CTVPD; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SRC.

CAS n° 5: Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une source d'alimentation est connectée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge (CTVPD en abrégé), avec une DRP (dont la batterie est déchargée) branchée au port côté hôte sur le CTVPD.

1. La DRP, le CTVPD et la source d'alimentation sont débranchés:

   a. la DRP applique la Rd de la batterie déchargée;

   b. le CTVPD applique la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 du port de charge et la Rd sur la broche CC du port côté hôte.

2. La source d'alimentation passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:

   a. la source d'alimentation détecte la dépolarisation du CTVPD sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;

   b. la source d'alimentation à l'état AttachWait.SRC constate le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce, passe à l'état Attached.SRC et active la VBUS.

3. Le CTVPD alterne entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC:

   a. le CTVPD détecte la Rp de la source sur l'une de ses broches CC de charge, détecte la VBUS pendant le délai tCCDebounce, puis commence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.

4. Le CTVPD passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Try.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:

   a. le CTVPD à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte la dépolarisation de la DRP sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Unattached.SNK et le CTVPD passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;

   b. le CTVPD à l'état AttachWait.SRC constate le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce et passe à l'état Try.SNK;

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

c. le CTVPD désactive la terminaison Rp qui annonce la puissance USB par défaut sur la broche CC du port côté hôte;

d. le CTVPD active la Rd sur la broche CC du port côté hôte.

5. La DRP dont la batterie est déchargée reste à l'état Unattached.SNK.

6. Le CTVPD passe de l'état Try.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état TryWait.SRC:

a. le CTVPD n'a pas détecté la polarisation de la DRP sur la broche CC pendant le délai tTryCCDebounce, à l'issue du délai tDRPTry, et passe à l'état TryWait.SRC;

b. le CTVPD désactive la Rp sur la broche CC du port côté hôte;

c. le CTVPD active la terminaison Rp qui annonce la puissance USB par défaut sur la broche CC du port côté hôte;

d. le CTVPD détecte la dépolarisation de la DRP sur la broche CC pendant le délai tTryCCDebounce et passe à l'état Attached.SRC;

e. le CTVPD connecte la VBUS du côté charge au côté hôte.

7. La DRP passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SNK:

a. la DRP à l'état Unattached.SNK détecte la polarisation du CTVPD sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Attached.SRC et la DRP passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK;

b. la DRP à l'état AttachWait.SNK constate le maintien de la polarisation de la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce, détecte la présence de la VBUS et passe à l'état Attached.SNK.

8. Lorsque les dispositifs se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs:

a. le CTVPD surveille la broche CC du port côté hôte afin de détecter une connexion de dispositif; en cas de déconnexion détectée, il passe à l'état Unattached.SNK;

b. le CTVPD surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement de la source d'alimentation; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état Unattached.SNK;

c. la source d'alimentation surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement du CTVPD; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SRC;

d. la DRP surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement du CTVPD; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK;

e. de plus, la DRP peut interroger l'identité du câble par l'*USB PD* sur SOP'; lorsqu'elle dispose d'une batterie suffisante et lorsqu'un VPD de charge est identifié, elle passe à l'état TryWait.SRC si implémenté ou à l'état Unattached.SRC lorsque l'état TryWait.SRC n'est pas pris en charge.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

CAS n° 6: Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une DRP est connectée à un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge (CTVPD en abrégé), avec un collecteur branché au port de charge sur le CTVPD.

1. La DRP, le CTVPD et le collecteur sont débranchés:

a. la DRP alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK;

b. le CTVPD a appliqué la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge et la Rd sur la broche CC du port côté hôte.

2. La DRP passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:

a. la DRP à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte la dépolarisation du CTVPD sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Unattached.SNK et la DRP passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

b. la DRP à l'état AttachWait.SRC détecte le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce. Elle passe alors à l'état Attached.SRC, puis active la VBUS et la VCONN.

3. Le CTVPD passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SNK:

   a. le CTVPD détecte la polarisation de la broche CC côté hôte de la DRP et le CTVPD passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK;

   b. le CTVPD à l'état AttachWait.SNK constate le maintien de la polarisation de la broche CC du port côté hôte pendant le délai tCCDebounce, détecte la présence de la VCONN et passe à l'état Attached.SNK;

   c. le CTVPD présente une impédance de mise à la terre élevée (supérieure à zOPEN) sur les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge.

4. Lorsque la DRP et le CTVPD se trouvent dans leurs états de connexion respectifs, la DRP découvre le CTVPD de charge et passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK:

   a. la DRP (en tant que source) interroge l'identité du dispositif par l'*USB PD* (commande de découverte d'identité) sur SOP';

   b. le CTVPD répond sur SOP' en annonçant qu'il est un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge;

   c. la DRP (en tant que source) retire la VBUS;

   d. la DRP (en tant que source) modifie sa Rp par une Rd;

   e. la DRP (en tant que collecteur) continue à fournir la VCONN et passe à l'état CTUnattached.SNK.

5. Le CTVPD passe à l'état CTUnattached.VPD:

   a. le CTVPD détecte le retrait de la VBUS, la présence de la VCONN et la faible tension de la broche CC de son port hôte, et passe à l'état CTUnattached.VPD;

   b. le CTVPD modifie sa Rd côté hôte en une terminaison Rp annonçant 3,0 A;

   c. le CTVPD s'isole de la VBUS;

   d. le CTVPD applique la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 de son port de charge.

6. Le CTVPD alterne entre l'état CTUnattached.VPD et l'état CTUnattached.Unsupported:

   a. le CTVPD détecte l'état SRC.Open sur ses broches CC de charge et commence à alterner entre l'état CTUnattached.VPD et l'état CTUnattached.Unsupported.

7. Le CTVPD passe de l'état CTUnattached.Unsupported à l'état CTTry.SNK, en passant par l'état CTAttachWait.Unsupported:

   a. le CTVPD à l'état CTUnattached.Unsupported détecte la dépolarisation du collecteur sur la broche CC qui se trouve à l'état Unattached.SNK et le CTVPD passe à l'état CTAttachWait.Unsupported;

   b. le CTVPD à l'état CTAttachWait.Unsupported constate le maintien de la dépolarisation sur la broche CC pendant le délai tCCDebounce et passe à l'état CTTry.SNK;

   c. le CTVPD désactive la terminaison Rp qui annonce la puissance USB par défaut sur les broches CC du port de charge;

   d. le CTVPD active la Rd sur les broches CC du port de charge.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

8. Le CTVPD passe de l'état CTTry.SNK à l'état CTAttached.Unsupported:
    a. le CTVPD n'a pas détecté la polarisation de la source potentielle sur la broche CC pendant le délai tDRPTryWait, à l'issue du délai tDRPTry, et passe à l'état CTAttached.Unsupported.
9. Lorsque le CTVPD est à l'état CTAttached.Unsupport, la DRP à l'état CTUnattached.SNK et le collecteur à l'état Unattached.SNK:
    a. le CTVPD désactive la terminaison Rd sur les broches CC du port de charge et applique la terminaison Rp qui annonce la puissance USB par défaut;
    b. le CTVPD expose une interface USB Billboard Device Class pour indiquer à la DRP qu'il est connecté à un dispositif non pris en charge sur son port de charge;
    c. le CTVPD surveille les broches CC de charge afin de détecter un débranchement du collecteur; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état CTUnattached.VPD;
    d. le CTVPD surveille la broche VCONN afin de détecter un débranchement de l'hôte; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état Unattached.SNK;
    e. la DRP surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement du CTVPD pendant le délai tVPDDetach; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK;
    f. la DRP surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un branchement de la source du CTVPD de charge; si un branchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état CTAttached.SNK.

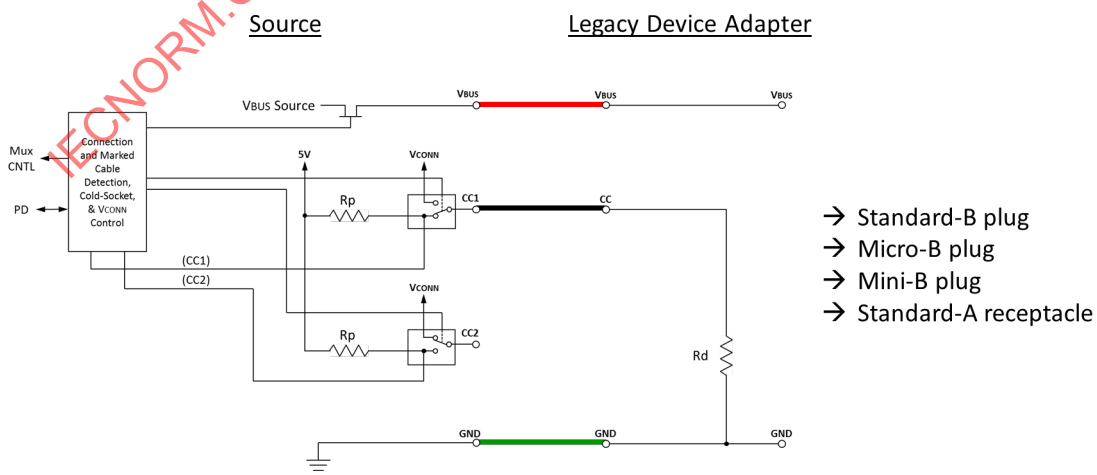
4.5.3.2 Comportements d'interopérabilité entre les ports USB Type-C et les ports existants

Les paragraphes suivants décrivent les comportements d'interopérabilité entre deux ports pour les différentes combinaisons de source, de collecteur et de DRP USB Type-C avec un port USB existant.

4.5.3.2.1 Comportement source-port de dispositif existant

La Figure 4-30 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une source connectée à un port de dispositif existant. Ce modèle repose sur la présence d'un adaptateur comme collecteur de la source. Cet adaptateur est équipé d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C sur une extrémité branchée à la source et d'un connecteur mâle USB Standard-B, d'un connecteur mâle USB Micro-B, d'un connecteur mâle USB Mini-B ou d'un connecteur femelle USB Standard-A sur l'autre extrémité.

Figure 4-30 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une source branchée à un port de dispositif existant



Anglais	Français
Source	Source

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Legacy Device Adapter	Adaptateur pour dispositif existant
Vbus Source	Source V_{BUS}
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement & Vérification de la V_{CONN}
Standard-B plug	Connecteur mâle Standard-B
Micro-B plug	Connecteur mâle Micro-B
Mini-B plug	Connecteur mâle Mini-B
Standard-A receptacle	Connecteur femelle Standard-A

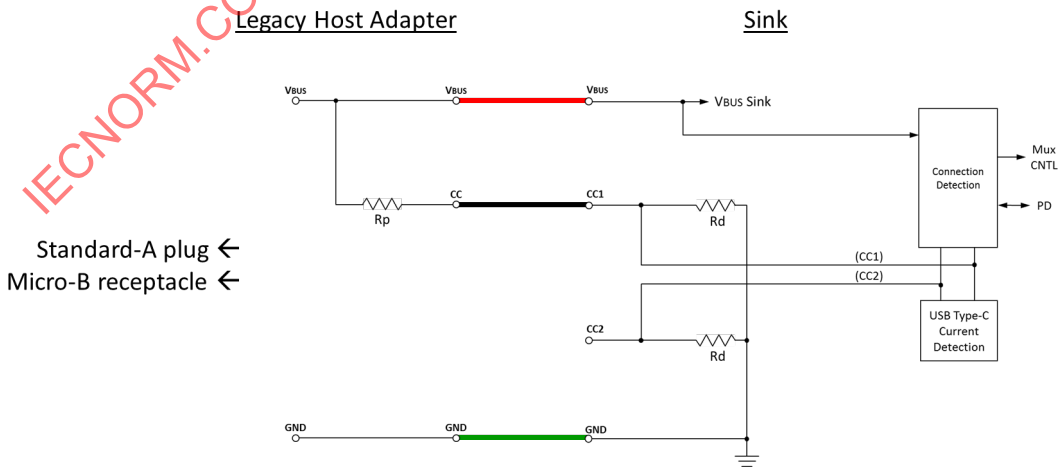
Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une source est connectée à un adaptateur de dispositif existant, équipé d'une Rd à la terre destinée à reproduire le comportement d'un collecteur.

1. La source est débranchée.
2. La source passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SRC:
   - la source détecte la dépolarisation du collecteur sur la broche CC, puis passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC. A l'issue du délai tCCDebounce, elle passe à l'état Attached.SRC;
   - la source active la V_{BUS} et la V_{CONN}.
3. Lorsque la source est branchée:
   - la source surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SRC.

4.5.3.2.2 Comportement port hôte existant-collecteur

La Figure 4-31 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'un port hôte existant connecté à un collecteur. Ce modèle repose sur la présence d'un adaptateur comme source du collecteur. Cet adaptateur est équipé d'un connecteur mâle USB Standard-A existant ou d'un connecteur femelle USB Micro-B existant sur une extrémité et d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C sur l'autre extrémité branchée au collecteur.

Figure 4-31 — Modèle fonctionnel d'un port hôte existant branché à un collecteur



Anglais	Français
Sink	Collecteur
Legacy Host Adapter	Adaptateur pour hôte existant

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Vbus Sink	Collecteur V_{BUS}
Connection Detection	Détection de connexion
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C
Standard-A plug	Connecteur mâle Standard-A
Micro-B receptacle	Connecteur femelle Micro-B

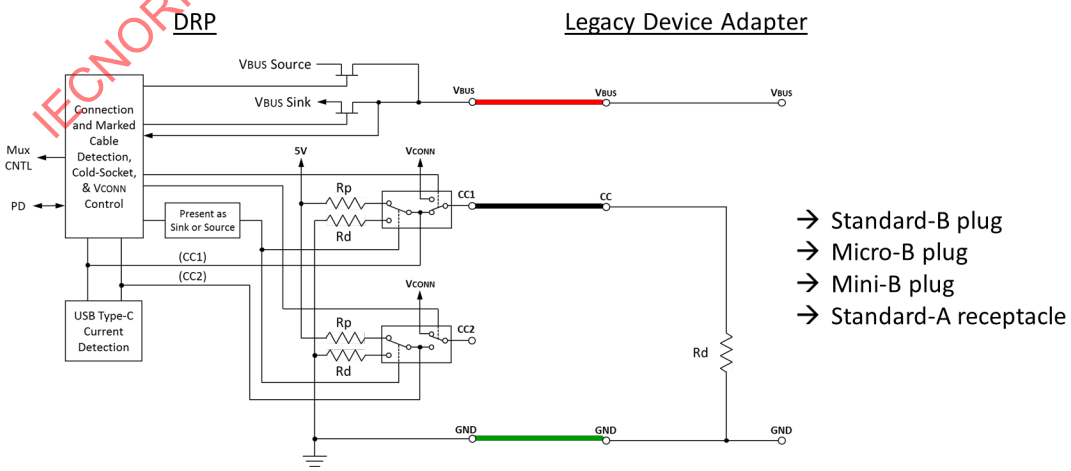
Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'un adaptateur hôte existant, équipé d'une Rp dont la VBUS est destinée à reproduire le comportement d'une source, est connecté à un collecteur. La valeur de la Rp doit annoncer la puissance USB par défaut (voir Tableau 4-24), y compris si le câble peut transporter un courant de 3 A. En effet, le câble ne connaît pas les capacités de la source d'alimentation et tout courant supérieur est négocié par l'*USB BC 1.2*.

1. Le collecteur est débranché.
2. Le collecteur passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état Attached.SNK, en passant par l'état AttachWait.SNK, si nécessaire:
   - à l'état Unattached.SNK et si le dispositif n'est pas exclusivement USB 2.0, qu'il prend en charge les accessoires ou exige une alimentation supérieure à celle établie par défaut, le collecteur passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK lorsqu'il détecte une polarisation sur la broche CC et ignore la VBUS. Sinon, il peut passer directement à l'état Attached.SNK lorsque la VBUS est détectée;
   - le collecteur détecte la VBUS et passe à l'état Attached.SNK.
3. Lorsque le collecteur est branché:
   - le collecteur surveille la broche VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, il passe à l'état Unattached.SNK.

4.5.3.2.3 Comportement DRP-port de dispositif existant

La Figure 4-32 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP connectée à un port de dispositif existant. Ce modèle repose sur la présence d'un adaptateur comme collecteur (le dispositif) de la DRP. Cet adaptateur est équipé d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C sur l'extrémité branchée à la DRP et d'un connecteur mâle USB Standard-B, d'un connecteur mâle USB Micro-B, d'un connecteur mâle USB Mini-B ou d'un connecteur femelle USB Standard-A sur l'autre extrémité.

Figure 4-32 — Modèle fonctionnel d'une DRP branchée à un port de dispositif existant



Anglais	Français

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Legacy Device Adapter	Adaptateur pour dispositif existant
Vbus Source	Source V_{BUS}
Vbus Sink	Collecteur V_{BUS}
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de V_{CONN}
Standard-B plug	Connecteur mâle Standard-B
Micro-B plug	Connecteur mâle Micro-B
Mini-B plug	Connecteur mâle Mini-B
Standard-A receptacle	Connecteur femelle Standard-A
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C
Present as sink or source	Source ou collecteur présent

Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'une DRP est connectée à un adaptateur de dispositif existant, équipé d'une Rd à la terre destinée à reproduire le comportement d'un collecteur.

1. La DRP est débranchée:
   - la DRP alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.
2. La DRP passe de l'état Unattached.SRC à l'état Attached.SRC:
   - la DRP à l'état Unattached.SRC détecte la dépolarisation de l'adaptateur sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SRC;
   - la DRP, à l'état AttachWait.SRC, arrive à expiration (tCCDebounce) et passe à l'état Attached.SRC;
   - la DRP, à l'état Attached.SRC, active la VBUS et la VCONN;
   - la DRP, à l'état AttachWait.SRC, peut prendre en charge l'état Try.SNK; le cas échéant, elle peut basculer vers les états Try.SNK et TryWait.SRC avant de passer à l'état Attached.SRC.
3. Lorsque la DRP est branchée:
   - la DRP surveille la broche CC afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC).

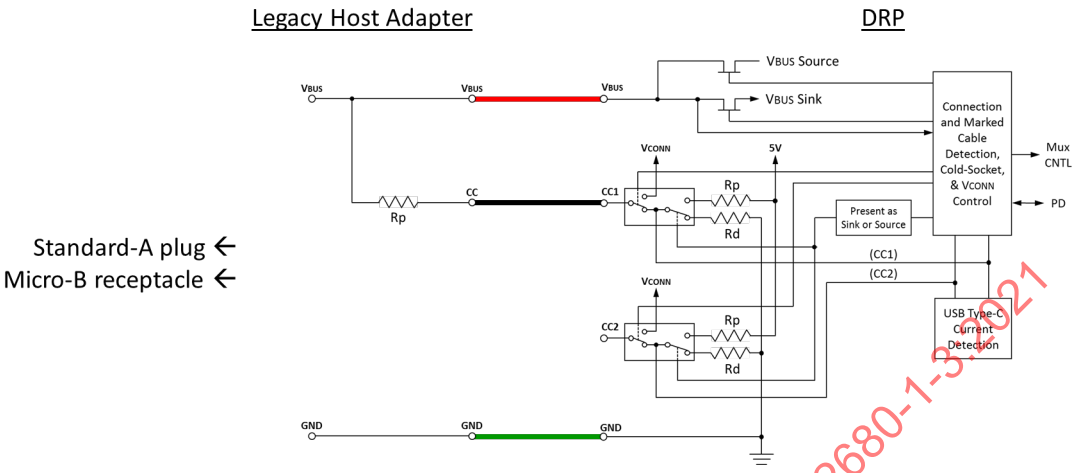
4.5.3.2.4 Comportement port hôte existant-DRP

La Figure 4-33 représente le modèle fonctionnel d'un port hôte existant connecté à une DRP fonctionnant comme un collecteur. Ce modèle repose sur la présence d'un adaptateur comme source (hôte) de la DRP fonctionnant comme un collecteur. Cet adaptateur est équipé d'un connecteur mâle USB Standard-A existant ou d'un connecteur femelle USB Micro-B existant sur une extrémité et d'un connecteur mâle USB Type-C branché à la DRP sur l'autre extrémité.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-33 — Modèle fonctionnel d'un port hôte existant branché à une DRP



Anglais	Français
Legacy Host Adapter	Adaptateur pour hôte existant
Vbus Source	Source V_{BUS}
Vbus Sink	Collecteur V_{BUS}
Connection and Marked Cable Detection, Cold-Socket, & V_{CONN} Control	Détection de connexion et de câbles marqués électroniquement, prise commutée et contrôle de V_{CONN}
Connection Detection	Détection de connexion
USB Type-C Current Detection	Détection de courant USB Type-C
Standard-A plug	Connecteur mâle Standard-A
Micro-B receptacle	Connecteur femelle Micro-B
Present as sink or source	Source ou collecteur présent

Les informations suivantes décrivent le comportement de l'ensemble lorsqu'un adaptateur hôte existant, équipé d'une Rp dont la VBUS est destinée à reproduire le comportement d'une source, est connecté à une DRP. La valeur de la Rp doit annoncer la puissance USB par défaut (voir Tableau 4-24), y compris si le câble peut transporter un courant de 3 A. En effet, le câble ne connaît pas les capacités de la source d'alimentation et tout courant supérieur est négocié par l'*USB BC 1.2*.

1. La DRP est débranchée:
   - la DRP alterne entre l'état Unattached.SRC et l'état Unattached.SNK.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

2. La DRP passe de l'état Unattached.SNK à l'état AttachWait.SNK, puis à l'état Attached.SNK:
   - la DRP à l'état Unattached.SNK détecte la polarisation sur la broche CC et passe à l'état AttachWait.SNK;
   - la DRP à l'état AttachWait.SNK détecte la VBUS et passe à l'état Attached.SNK;
   - la DRP à l'état AttachWait.SNK peut prendre en charge l'état Try.SRC; le cas échéant, elle peut basculer vers les états Try.SRC et TryWait.SNK avant de passer à l'état Attached.SNK.
3. Lorsque la DRP est branchée:
   - la DRP surveille la VBUS afin de détecter un débranchement; si un débranchement est détecté, elle passe à l'état Unattached.SNK (et recommence à alterner entre l'état Unattached.SNK et l'état Unattached.SRC).

4.6 Alimentation

L'alimentation par connecteur USB Type-C repose sur les méthodes USB existantes, définies par les spécifications *USB 2.0* et *USB 3.2*, la spécification *USB BC 1.2* et la spécification *USB Power Delivery*. L'alimentation propre à l'*USB4* nécessite un contrat *USB PD* explicite, défini au 5.3 et dans la *spécification USB Power Delivery*. Avant de passer à un contrat *USB PD* explicite, un port *USB4* fonctionne comme un port *USB 3.2* en ce qui concerne l'alimentation.

La technique de courant USB Type-C permet à la source de fournir un courant supérieur aux exigences de la spécification *USB BC 1.2*. Une source d'alimentation USB ne doit pas fournir une tension nominale supérieure à 20 V sur la VBUS. Les sources d'alimentation électrique par *USB PD*, qui émettent par le biais d'un connecteur USB Type-C, doivent suivre les règles d'alimentation définies à l'Article 10 de la spécification *USB Power Delivery*.

Tous les dispositifs USB Type-C doivent prendre en charge le courant USB Type-C et peuvent prendre en charge d'autres méthodes d'alimentation définies par USB. L'ordre de priorité ci-dessous relatif à la négociation d'alimentation doit être respecté: la spécification *USB BC 1.2* remplace les spécifications *USB 2.0* et *USB 3.2*; les courants USB Type-C de 1,5 A et 3,0 A remplacent l'*USB BC 1.2*; enfin, l'*USB Power Delivery* remplace le courant USB Type-C. Le Tableau 4-17 récapitule l'ordre de priorité relatif à l'utilisation des sources d'alimentation.

Tableau 4-17 — Ordre de priorité pour l'utilisation des sources d'alimentation

Ordre de priorité	Mode de fonctionnement		Tension nominale	Courant maximal
Maximale ↓ Minimale	*USB PD*		Paramétrable	5 A
	Courant USB Type-C à 3,0 A		5 V	3,0 A
	Courant USB Type-C à 1,5 A		5 V	1,5 A
	USB BC 1.2		5 V	Jusqu'à 1,5 A[1]
	Puissance USB par défaut	*USB 3.2*	5 V	Voir USB 3.2
		USB 2.0	5 V	Voir USB 2.0

Notes:

1. L'*USB BC 1.2* permet de désigner un fournisseur d'alimentation pour prendre en charge un niveau d'alimentation entre 0,5 A et 1,5 A. Si le fournisseur d'alimentation *USB BC 1.2* ne prend pas en charge 1,5 A, il doit respecter les exigences en matière de baisse d'alimentation. Un consommateur d'alimentation *USB BC 1.2* peut consommer jusqu'à 1,5 A sous réserve que la tension ne chute pas au-dessous de 2 V, ce qui peut survenir à tout niveau d'alimentation supérieur à 0,5 A.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Par exemple, en cas de passage en mode PD (par exemple lorsqu'un contrat d'alimentation a été négocié), le dispositif doit respecter le contrat d'alimentation et ignorer toute autre exigence précédemment imposée ou apportée par les spécifications de courant USB Type-C, *USB BC 1.2* ou *USB 2.0*, et *USB 3.2*. En cas de sortie du mode PD, le dispositif doit se conformer aux niveaux d'alimentation des spécifications de courant USB Type-C, *USB BC 1.2* ou *USB 2.0*, et *USB 3.2*.

Tous les ports USB Type-C doivent permettre la connexion à une source d'alimentation USB qui fournit l'alimentation USB par défaut (par exemple, un hôte connecté à un chargeur USB existant qui alimente toujours la VBUS).

4.6.1 Exigences relatives à l'alimentation pendant la veille USB

Il est nécessaire de développer la définition d'une veille USB traditionnelle pour les mises en œuvre USB Type-C avec le courant USB Type-C, l'*USB PD* et la VCONN, ainsi qu'avec des câbles actifs.

4.6.1.1 Exigences relatives à la VBUS pendant la veille USB

Les spécifications *USB 2.0* et *USB 3.2* définissent la quantité de courant que peut consommer un collecteur en veille.

Les règles d'alimentation en cas de veille USB doivent s'appliquer lorsque le courant USB Type-C est au niveau d'alimentation USB par défaut ou lorsque l'*USB PD* est utilisé et que le bit de veille est défini en conséquence.

Lorsque le courant USB Type-C est défini à 1,5 A ou à 3,0 A, le collecteur peut continuer à puiser le courant de la VBUS pendant la veille USB. Pendant la veille USB, les exigences du collecteur relatives au suivi et au respect des annonces de courant USB Type-C demeurent applicables (voir 4.5.2.3).

L'*USB PD* fournit une méthode qui permet à la source d'indiquer au collecteur si le collecteur doit suivre (ou non) les règles d'alimentation USB relative à la veille.

4.6.1.2 Exigences relatives à la VCONN pendant la veille USB

Si la source fournit une alimentation à la Vbus au cours d'une veille USB, elle doit également alimenter la VCONN et satisfaire aux exigences définies dans le Tableau 4-5.

Les câbles avec marquage électronique doivent satisfaire aux exigences du Tableau 4-6 lors de la veille USB.

Les accessoires alimentés par la VCONN doivent satisfaire aux exigences définies dans le Tableau 4-7 lors de la veille USB.

4.6.2 Alimentation de la VBUS par câble USB Type-C

Les exigences minimales relatives à l'alimentation de la VBUS par un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C correspondent aux exigences actuelles applicables aux VBUS alimentées par des ensembles câble-connecteurs USB existants. L'*USB Power Delivery* est destinée à fonctionner par câble USB Type-C à USB Type-C non modifié. Par conséquent, tout ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C qui intègre des composants électriques ou électroniques doit s'assurer de tolérer une tension VBUS de 21 V, ou être protégé contre celle-ci.

4.6.2.1 Courant USB Type-C

La tension et le courant USB par défaut sont définis par les spécifications *USB 2.0* et *USB 3.2*. Toutes les annonces de courant USB Type-C sont à la tension USB de la VBUS définie par ces spécifications.

La fonctionnalité de courant USB Type-C fournit les extensions suivantes:

- courant supérieur à celui défini par les spécifications *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2* ou *BC 1.2*;
- source d'alimentation qui permet la gestion du courant fourni.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Le connecteur USB Type-C utilise les broches CC à des fins de configuration, avec possibilité pour une source d'annoncer la quantité de courant qu'elle doit fournir à son port partenaire (le collecteur):

- la valeur par défaut est celle configurée pour une valeur de courant en fonctionnement sous tension élevée et définie par une spécification USB (500 mA pour les ports USB 2.0; 900 mA/1500 mA pour les ports *USB 3.2* respectivement à voie unique/double voie);
- courant de 1,5 A;
- courant de 3,0 A.

Lorsqu'une source annonce un courant USB Type-C par défaut, le comportement du collecteur est défini comme suit:

- il se connecte en tant que dispositif *USB 2.0* ou *USB 3.2*; après quoi, le collecteur doit respecter la spécification USB appropriée;
- il passe à un contrat *USB PD*; après quoi, le collecteur doit suivre la spécification *USB PD* pour déterminer le courant (par exemple, Rp n'est plus la valeur par défaut, car elle est remplacée par le contrat *USB PD*);
- il détecte un port de charge USB BC 1.2; après quoi, le collecteur doit suivre la spécification USB BC 1.2;
- il se connecte en tant que dispositif collecteur d'alimentation (PSD) USB Type-C; après quoi, le collecteur peut puiser jusqu'à 500 mA.

Un PSD doit prendre entièrement en charge le courant USB Type-C; il convient qu'il prenne en charge l'*USB PD* et il peut prendre en charge l'USB BC 1.2. Un PSD peut être un collecteur ou une DRP fonctionnant en mode collecteur. Un PSD ne doit pas avoir de fonction de communication USB ou USB Type-C en mode alternatif.

La relation du courant USB Type-C avec sa valeur équivalente *USB PD* Power (PDP) est représentée dans le Tableau 4-18.

Tableau 4-18 — Annonce de courant USB Type-C et équivalent PDP

Courant USB Type-C		Equivalent PDP
Par défaut	500 mA (*USB 2.0*)	2,5 W
	900 mA (*USB 3.2* à voie unique)	4,5 W
	1 500 mA (*USB 3.2* à double voie)	7,5 W
1,5 A		7,5 W
3,0 A		15 W

Un collecteur qui utilise l'excédent de courant disponible (1,5 A ou 3,0 A, par exemple) doit surveiller les broches CC et doit ajuster sa consommation de courant dans le délai tSinkAdj pour rester dans la plage de valeurs annoncée par la source. Lorsqu'un contrat *USB PD* existe, le collecteur ne doit pas surveiller les annonces de courant USB Type-C et il ne doit pas répondre aux annonces de courant USB Type-C.

La source doit alimenter la VBUS jusqu'au collecteur dans le délai tVBUSON. La VBUS doit se trouver dans la plage de tensions spécifiée pour le courant annoncé.

Une source (le port qui alimente la VBUS) doit se protéger des collecteurs puisant un courant supérieur à l'annonce de courant USB Type-C du port.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

La source ajuste la Rp (ou la source de courant) pour annoncer lequel des trois niveaux de courant elle prend en charge. Voir Tableau 4-24 pour les exigences de terminaison qui permettent à la source d'annoncer un courant.

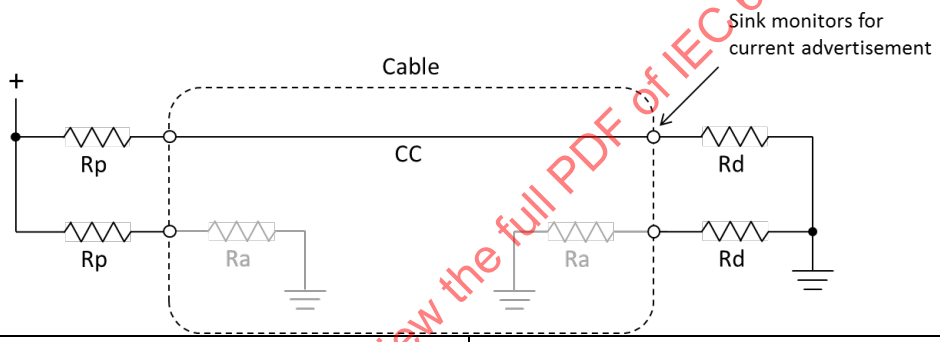
La valeur de la Rp établit une tension (vRd) sur la broche CC utilisée par le collecteur pour déterminer le courant maximal qu'elle peut puiser.

Le Tableau 4-35 définit la plage de tensions CC observées par un collecteur prenant uniquement en charge le courant USB par défaut.

Si le collecteur demande à utiliser un courant USB supérieur à celui par défaut, il doit surveiller la vRd pour déterminer le courant maximal qu'il peut puiser. Voir Tableau 4-36.

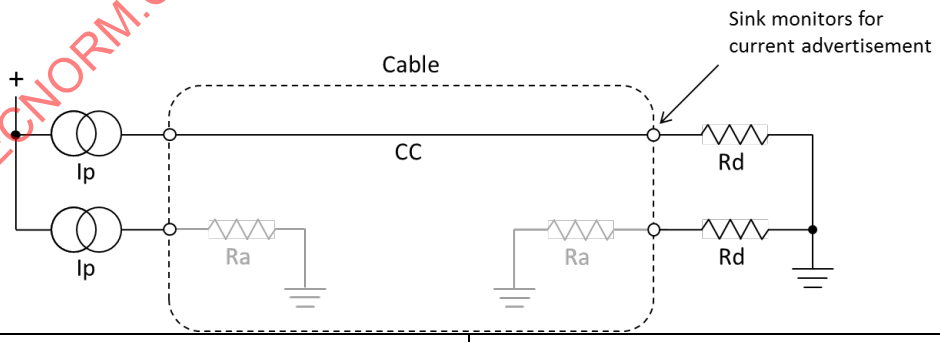
La Figure 4-34 et la Figure 4-35 représentent les cas où le collecteur surveille la vRd de la broche CC afin de détecter si l'hôte annonce un courant USB supérieur à celui par défaut.

Figure 4-34 — Surveillance du courant par le collecteur avec les modèles de broches CC à polarisation/dépolarisation



Anglais	Français
Cable	Câble
Sink Monitors for current advertisement	Le collecteur surveille les annonces de courant

Figure 4-35 — Surveillance du courant par le collecteur avec les modèles de broches CC à source de courant/dépolarisation



Anglais	Français
Cable	Câble
Sink Monitors for current advertisement	Le collecteur surveille les annonces de courant

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.6.2.2 Charge des batteries par USB 1.2

La spécification *USB Battery Charging Specification, Révision 1.2*, définit une méthode qui utilise les broches USB 2.0 D+ et D− pour annoncer que la VBUS peut fournir jusqu'à 1,5 A. La prise en charge de la charge *USB BC 1.2* est facultative.

Un port USB Type-C qui met en œuvre la *BC 1.2* en mesure de fournir au moins 1,5 A doit annoncer un courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A dans le délai tVBUSON, à compter du passage à l'état Attached.SRC. Sinon, le port doit annoncer un courant USB Type-C au niveau d'alimentation USB par défaut. Un port USB Type-C qui met en œuvre la *BC 1.2* prenant également en charge le courant USB Type-C de 3,0 A peut annoncer un courant USB Type-C de 3,0 A.

Si un collecteur qui prend en charge la détection *BC 1.2* détecte une Rp au niveau de puissance USB par défaut et ne découvre pas de source conforme à la *BC 1.2*, il doit limiter sa consommation maximale de courant au niveau USB normalisé, conformément au Tableau 4-17. Cela assure le respect des limites maximales de courant en cas de connexion à une source ne prenant pas en charge la *BC 1.2*.

4.6.2.3 Source d'alimentation propriétaire

Ce paragraphe est obsolète. Les dispositifs avec connecteurs USB Type-C ne doivent utiliser que les méthodes de signalisation définies par les spécifications USB pour négocier l'alimentation.

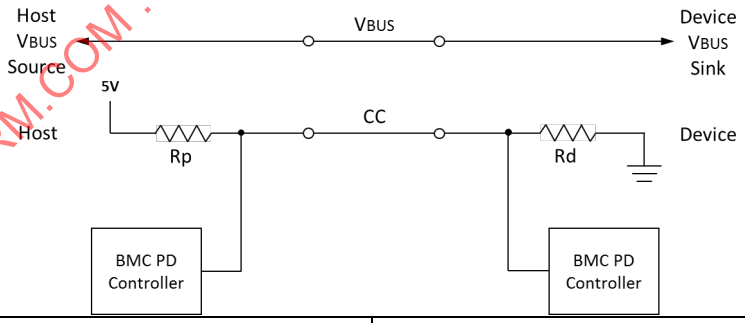
4.6.2.4 Alimentation électrique par port USB

L'*USB Power Delivery* est une fonctionnalité des connecteurs USB Type-C. Lorsque l'*USB PD* est mise en œuvre, le codage BMC (Biphase Mark Coding) *USB PD* transmis sur le fil CC doit être utilisé pour les communications *USB PD* entre les ports USB Type-C.

Lors du branchement, la VBUS doit être fonctionnellement stable avant d'initier une communication *USB PD*.

La Figure 4-36 montre comment la signalisation BMC *USB PD* est transmise sur le fil CC du câble USB Type-C.

Figure 4-36 — USB PD sur les broches CC



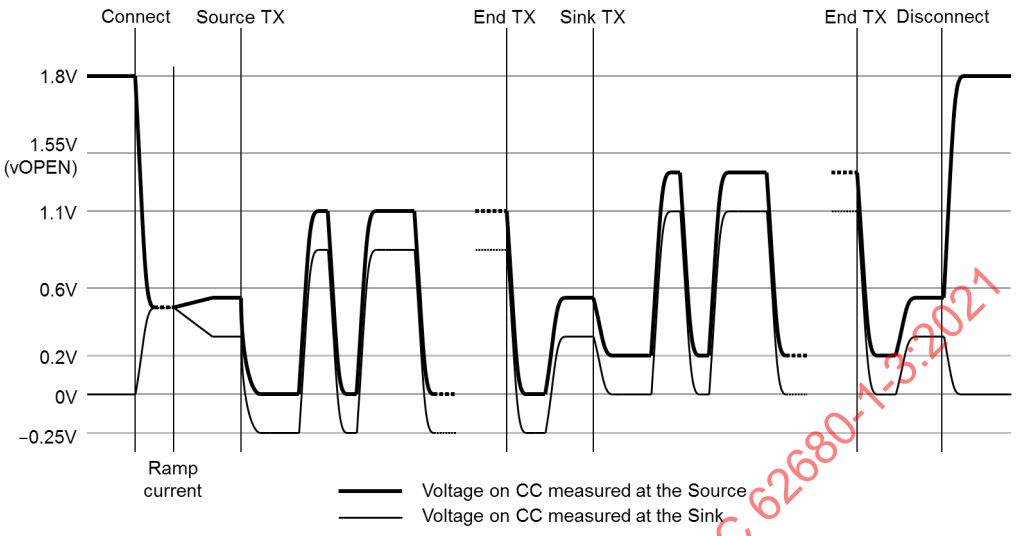
Anglais	Français
Host VBUS Source	Source VBUS de l'hôte
Host	Hôte
Device	Dispositif
BMC PD Controller	Contrôleur BMC PD
Device VBUS Sink	Collecteur VBUS du dispositif

La Figure 4-37 représente la signalisation BMC *USB PD* du point de vue de la broche CC de la source et du collecteur. Les ruptures de signalisation visent à représenter le passage du temps.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Figure 4-37 — Signalisation BMC USB PD sur les broches CC



Anglais	Français
Connect	Connexion
Source TX	Source TX
End TX	Terminaison TX
Sink TX	Collecteur TX
End TX	Terminaison TX
Disconnect	Déconnexion
Ramp current	Courant de rampe
Voltage on CC measured at the Source	Tension continue mesurée aux bornes de la Source
Voltage on CC measured at the Sink	Tension continue mesurée aux bornes du Collecteur

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

En l'absence de contrat explicite, les sources *USB PD* qui peuvent fournir, en fonction de leur PDP:

- 5 V à 3 A ou plus, doivent annoncer un courant USB Type-C de 3 A;
- 5 V à 1,5 A ou plus et jusqu'à 3 A, doivent annoncer un courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A;
- 5 V à moins de 1,5 A, doivent annoncer un courant USB Type-C au niveau d'alimentation USB par défaut;

dans le délai tVBUSON à compter du passage à l'état Attached.SRC. Pour les chargeurs multiports à capacité partagée, une source *USB PD* qui peut fournir 5 V à 3 A ou plus peut annoncer un courant USB Type-C initial de 1,5 A, puis augmenter l'annonce après le branchement (voir 4.8.6.2). Lors d'une veille USB, une source *USB PD* peut fixer sa Rp à la valeur par défaut, afin d'indiquer que le collecteur ne doit puiser que le courant de veille USB défini en 4.6.1.1.

Lorsqu'un contrat *USB PD* explicite existe, une source conforme à la spécification *USB PD*, révision 2, doit annoncer un courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A ou de 3,0 A. Lors de l'application d'un contrat explicite, la source conforme à la spécification *USB PD*, révision 2, doit annoncer une Rp d'une valeur de 1,5 A ou de 3,0 A, après avoir reçu GoodCRC en réponse au premier message PS_RDY.

Lorsqu'un contrat *USB PD* explicite existe, une source conforme à la spécification USB PD, révision 3, doit définir la Rp en fonction du schéma de prévention des conflits défini en 5.7 de la spécification *USB PD*, révision 3. Lors de l'application d'un contrat explicite, la source conforme à la spécification

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

USB PD, révision 3, doit annoncer une Rp conforme au schéma de prévention des conflits de la spécification *USB PD*, révision 3.

Voir 1.6 de la spécification *USB Power Delivery* pour connaître la définition d'un contrat explicite.

4.6.2.5 Limitations de courant des dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN (CTVPD) de charge

Les dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN de charge mettent en œuvre la charge en connectant passivement les broches CC et VBUS de la source à l'hôte. Ainsi, les dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN augmentent effectivement l'impédance sur les broches VBUS, GND et CC entre la source d'alimentation et l'hôte. Cela se traduit par des impédances qui peuvent être supérieures à la valeur maximale admise pour les câbles. Pour éviter les problèmes de communication et de fausse déconnexion associés aux chutes au niveau des broches GND et VBUS à impédance accrue, les critères suivants doivent être respectés:

1. le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit indiquer l'impédance des broches GND et VBUS la plus défavorable (y compris la paire supplémentaire de connecteurs couplés et de TEC) dans sa réponse de commande de découverte d'identité *USB PD* sur SOP';
2. l'hôte qui prend en charge le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit utiliser ces informations, ainsi que les informations déduites sur le câble, pour limiter son courant maximal si la source d'alimentation annonce un courant supérieur à celui admis par le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge.

L'hôte n'a aucun moyen d'interroger le câble, car sa source VCONN est consommée par le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN. Au lieu de cela, l'hôte peut prendre pour hypothèse que le câble est de 5 A afin de calculer la limite de courant de charge uniquement s'il reçoit un PDO SourceCapability *USB PD* de plus de 3 A (même si l'hôte ne demande finalement pas ce PDO ou s'il demande un courant inférieur ou égal à 3 A).

L'hôte doit limiter encore son courant maximal au-dessus de la valeur annoncée par la source d'alimentation, en fonction de l'impédance indiquée pour la broche GND et de la capacité de câble déduite. L'impédance de la broche GND est indiquée dans la réponse de commande de découverte d'identité du VPD en incréments de 1 mΩ et est utilisée dans les formules suivantes:

- curant limité sur la GND avec un câble de 3 A déduits = 0,25 V / (0,25 V / 3 A + VPD_GND_DCR);
- courant limité sur la GND avec un câble de 5 A déduits = 0,25 V / (0,25 V / 5 A + VPD_GND_DCR).

Le Tableau 4-19 fournit quelques exemples.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Tableau 4-19 — Ordre de priorité pour l'utilisation des sources d'alimentation

Impédance indiquée pour la GND	Câble de 3 A déduits[1]	Câble de 5 A déduits[2]
0,010 Ω	2,679 A	4,167 A
0,015 Ω	2,542 A	3,846 A
0,020 Ω	2,419 A	3,571 A
0,025 Ω	2,308 A	3,333 A
0,030 Ω	2,206 A	3,125 A
0,035 Ω	2,113 A	2,941 A
0,040 Ω	2,027 A	2,778 A

Notes:

1. Calculé par 0,25 V / (0,25 V / 3 A + VPD_GND_DCR).
2. Calculé par 0,25 V / (0,25 V / 5 A + VPD_GND_DCR).

De plus, l'impédance accrue de la broche VBUS peut entraîner une chute de la VBUS de plus de 1 V mesurée à l'entrée de l'hôte. Selon l'impédance de la broche VBUS indiquée dans la réponse de commande de découverte d'identité du VPD par incréments de 2 mΩ et selon la capacité de câble déduite, l'hôte doit abaisser son seuil de déconnexion VBUS ou limiter davantage son courant maximal à l'aide des formules suivantes:

- courant limité sur la VBUS et la GND avec un câble de 3 A déduits = 0,75 V / (0,75 V / 3 A + VPD_VBUS_DCR + VPD_GND_DCR);
- courant limité sur la VBUS et la GND avec un câble de 5 A déduits = 0,75 V / (0,75 V / 5 A + VPD_VBUS_DCR + VPD_GND_DCR).

Tableau 4-20 — Exemples de courant maximal entre le VPD de charge et le collecteur selon l'impédance sur les broches VBUS et GND

Impédance indiquée pour la VBUS[4]	Impédance indiquée pour la GND[4]	Câble de 3 A déduits[1]	Câble de 5 A déduits[2]
0,020 Ω	0,010 Ω	2,679 A	4,167 A
0,030 Ω	0,015 Ω	2,542 A	3,846 A
0,040 Ω	0,020 Ω	2,419 A	3,571 A
0,050 Ω	0,025 Ω	2,308 A	3,333 A
0,060 Ω	0,030 Ω	2,206 A	3,125 A
0,070 Ω	0,035 Ω	2,113 A	2,941 A
0,080 Ω	0,040 Ω	2,027 A	2,778 A

Notes:

1. Calculé par 0,75 V / (0,75 V / 3 A + VPD_VBUS_DCR + VPD_GND_DCR).
2. Calculé par 0,75 V / (0,75 V / 5 A + VPD_VBUS_DCR + VPD_GND_DCR).
3. Le tableau ne présente pas toutes les combinaisons autorisées, mais uniquement un sous-ensemble fourni à titre de représentation.
4. Le rapport entre l'impédance indiquée pour la VBUS et l'impédance indiquée pour la GND est de 2:1.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.7 Hubs USB

Les hubs *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2* et *USB4* sont respectivement définis par les spécifications *USB 2.0*, *USB 3.2* et *USB4*. Les hubs USB mis en œuvre avec un ou plusieurs connecteurs USB Type-C doivent être conformes à ces spécifications concernant les implémentations USB Type-C. Il convient que tous les ports USB Type-C en aval d'un hub USB prennent en charge la même fonctionnalité. Sinon, ces ports doivent être clairement marqués pour identifier la fonctionnalité prise en charge.

Les hubs USB doivent être équipés d'un port orienté en amont (pour se connecter à un hôte ou un hub supérieur dans l'arborescence USB), qui peut être un dispositif d'alimentation (voir 4.8.4). Le hub doit désigner clairement à l'utilisateur le port orienté en amont. Cette mesure peut s'effectuer par isolation physique et/ou étiquetage.

Les ports orientés en aval du hub USB ne doivent pas être dotés de capacités double fonction (DRD). Toutefois, ces ports peuvent être dotés de capacités d'alimentation double fonction (DRP).

Les broches CC sont utilisées pour les connexions port-port et doivent être prises en charge sur toutes les connexions USB Type-C du hub.

Pour les hubs *USB 2.0* et *USB 3.2*, les ports orientés en aval ne doivent pas mettre en œuvre de, ni passer par un mode alternatif ou accessoire. Les broches SBU ne doivent pas être connectées (zSBUTermination) à un port de hub USB. Pour les hubs *USB4*, voir 5.2.3.2 concernant la prise en charge des modes alternatifs.

Les DFP du hub USB doivent prendre en charge les exigences relatives aux sources d'alimentation. Voir 4.8.1.

Les exigences supplémentaires concernant les hubs *USB4* sont indiquées à l'Article 5.

4.8 Alimentation et charge

Le présent paragraphe définit les exigences et les recommandations relatives à l'utilisation de ports USB Type-C à des fins d'alimentation. Tout port USB Type-C qui offre un courant supérieur à celui par défaut et/ou prend en charge l'USB Power Delivery doit satisfaire aux exigences comme s'il s'agissait d'un chargeur.

La liste ci-dessous répertorie les paragraphes généralement applicables aux ports USB Type-C sur:

- les systèmes hôtes: 4.8.1 et 4.8.5. Note: le 4.8.6 ne concerne pas les systèmes hôtes;
- les dispositifs qui peuvent fournir une alimentation: 4.8.4;
- les hubs:
  - hubs traditionnels: si l'*USB BC 1.2* est prise en charge, se reporter aux spécifications de base USB 2.0/USB 3.2 et au 4.8.1 selon les besoins;
  - hubs qui peuvent fournir une alimentation supérieure aux spécifications de base: 4.8.1, 4.8.4, 4.8.5 et 4.8.6;
- les chargeurs dédiés:
  - chargeurs à port simple: 4.8.1;
  - chargeurs multiports: 4.8.1 et 4.8.6.

4.8.1 DFP comme source d'alimentation

Les sources (chargeurs de batterie, ports en amont du hub et hôtes) peuvent toutes être utilisées pour charger une batterie. Lorsqu'un chargeur est mis en œuvre avec un connecteur femelle USB Type-C ou un câble USB Type-C captif, il doit respecter l'ensemble des exigences applicables.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

- Une source doit exposer ses capacités d'alimentation à partir de la méthode de courant USB Type-C et peut prendre en charge d'autres méthodes USB normalisées (*USB BC 1.2* ou *USB-PD*).
- Une source annonçant sa capacité de courant avec l'*USB BC 1.2* doit satisfaire aux exigences du 4.6.2.2, en lien avec les annonces de courant USB Type-C.
- Une source qui a négocié un contrat *USB-PD* doit satisfaire aux exigences du 4.6.2.4, en lien avec les annonces de courant USB Type-C.
- Si une source est capable de fournir une tension supérieure à la VBUS par défaut, elle doit se conformer intégralement à la spécification *USB PD* et ne doit négocier ses contrats d'alimentation qu'avec l'*USB PD*.
- Une source en capacité d'inverser les rôles d'alimentation de source et de collecteur doit se conformer intégralement à la spécification *USB PD* et ne doit négocier ses contrats d'alimentation qu'avec l'*USB PD*.
- Si une source est capable de fournir un courant supérieur à 3,0 A, elle doit utiliser la technique *USB-PD* Discover Identity pour déterminer la capacité de transport de courant du câble.

4.8.1.1 Chargeurs USB avec connecteurs femelles USB Type-C

- Un chargeur USB avec connecteur femelle USB Type-C (source) ne doit alimenter la VBUS que lorsqu'il détecte qu'un collecteur est branché. Il doit interrompre l'alimentation de la VBUS lorsqu'il détecte que le collecteur est débranché (vOPEN).
- Un chargeur USB avec connecteur femelle USB Type-C ne doit pas annoncer de courant supérieur à 3,0 A, sauf lorsqu'il utilise la technique *USB-PD* Discover Identity pour déterminer la capacité réelle de transport de courant du câble. Il doit ensuite limiter le courant annoncé en conséquence.
- Un chargeur USB avec connecteur femelle USB Type-C (source) qui ne peut pas communiquer des données doit annoncer un courant USB Type-C d'au moins 1,5 A, dans le délai tVBUSON à compter du passage à l'état Attached.SRC. Il doit court-circuiter ensemble D+ et D− avec une résistance inférieure à 200 Ω. Cela assure la rétrocompatibilité des collecteurs existants qui peuvent utiliser l'*USB BC 1.2* pour la détection de chargeur.

4.8.1.2 Chargeurs USB avec câbles USB Type-C captifs

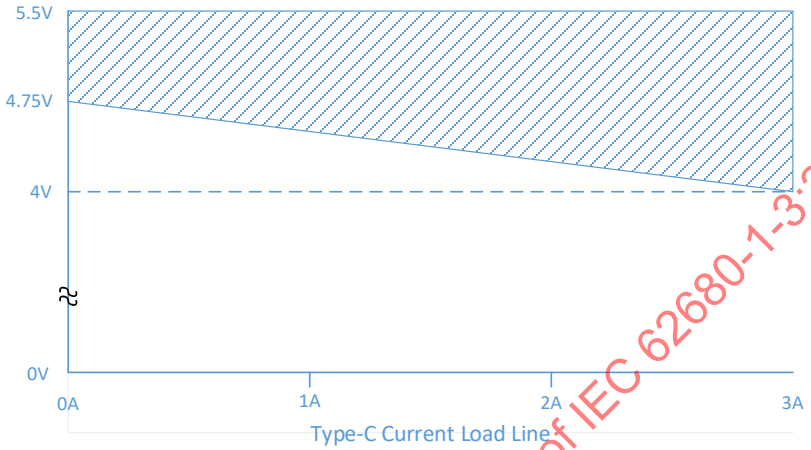
- Un chargeur USB avec câble USB Type-C captif qui prend en charge l'USB PD ne doit alimenter la VBUS que lorsqu'il détecte qu'un collecteur est branché. Il doit interrompre l'alimentation de la VBUS lorsqu'il détecte que le collecteur est débranché (vOPEN).
- Un chargeur USB avec câble USB Type-C captif qui ne prend pas en charge l'USB PD peut alimenter la VBUS à tout moment. Il est recommandé qu'un tel chargeur n'alimente la VBUS que lorsqu'il détecte qu'un collecteur est branché, et qu'il interrompe l'alimentation de la VBUS lorsqu'il détecte que le collecteur est absent (vOPEN).
- Un chargeur USB avec câble USB Type-C captif doit limiter son annonce de courant et ne pas dépasser la capacité de courant du câble (jusqu'à 5 A).
- Un chargeur USB avec câble USB Type-C captif qui ne peut pas communiquer des données doit annoncer un courant USB Type-C d'au moins 1,5 A. Il est recommandé qu'un tel chargeur court-circuite ensemble D+ et D− avec une résistance inférieure à 200 Ω.
- La tension mesurée aux bornes du connecteur mâle d'un chargeur USB avec câble USB Type-C captif peut atteindre jusqu'à 0,75 × I / 3 V (0 < I ≤ 3 A) ou 0,75 × I / 5 V (0 < I ≤ 5 A) au-dessous de la plage de tolérances normalisée pour la tension choisie, où I est le courant réellement puisé.
    - Un chargeur USB qui annonce un courant USB Type-C doit fournir une tension dans la plage de 4,75 V à 5,5 V si aucun courant n'est puisé, ou dans la plage de 4,0 V à 5,5 V

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

pour 3 A. La tension de sortie en tant que fonction de charge au courant USB Type-C annoncé (par défaut, 1,5 A et 3 A) doit rester dans la zone hachurée représentée à la Figure 4-38.

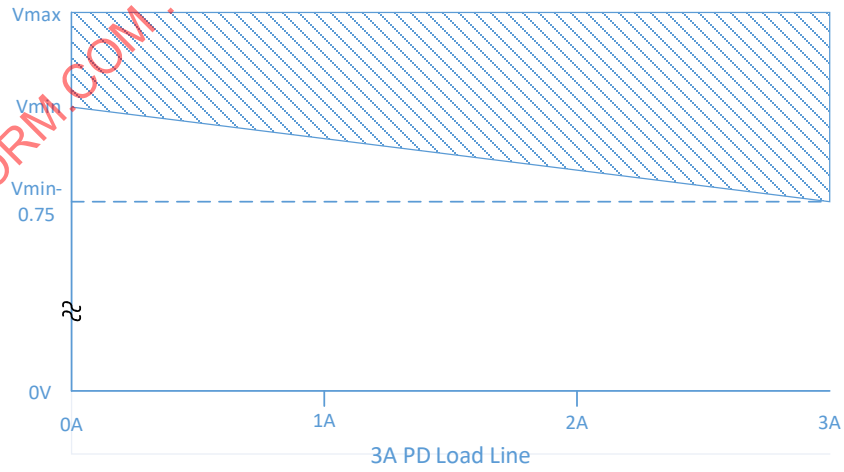
Figure 4-38 — Sortie d'un câble USB Type-C en tant que fonction de charge USB Type-C non PD



Anglais	Français
Type-C Current Load Line	Ligne de charge en courant Type-C

- Un chargeur USB PD qui a négocié une tension V à une valeur ≤ à 3 A doit fournir une tension dans la plage de Vmax (V + 5 %) à Vmin (V – 5 %) si aucun courant n'est puisé, ou dans la plage de Vmax à Vmin – 0,75 V pour 3 A. Pour toutes les charges, la tension de sortie doit rester dans la zone hachurée représentée à la Figure 4-39.

Figure 4-39 — Sortie d'un câble USB Type-C de chargeur USB PD de 0 A à 3 A en tant que fonction de charge



Anglais	Français
3A PD Load Line	Ligne de charge 3A PD

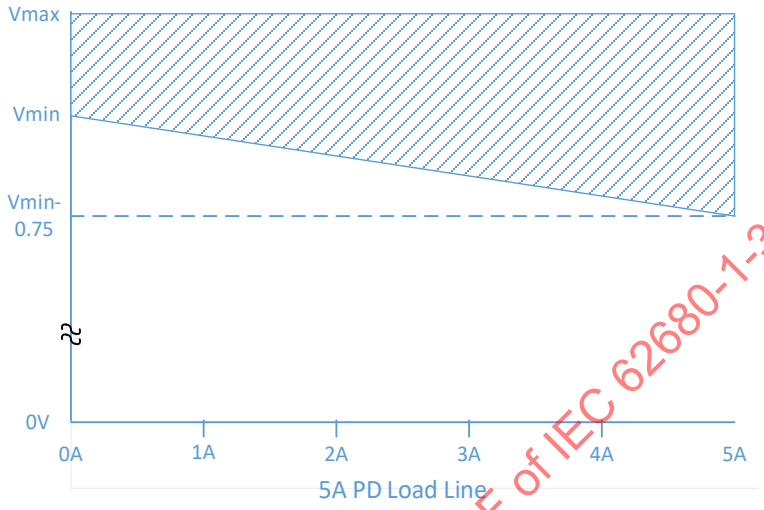
- Un chargeur USB PD qui a négocié une tension V entre 3 A et 5 A doit fournir une tension dans la plage de Vmax (V + 5 %) à Vmin (V – 5 %) si aucun courant n'est

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

puisé, ou dans la plage de Vmax à Vmin – 0,75 V pour 5 A. Pour toutes les charges, la tension de sortie doit rester dans la zone hachurée représentée à la Figure 4-40.

Figure 4-40 — Sortie d'un câble USB Type-C de chargeur USB PD de 3 A à 5 A en tant que fonction de charge



Anglais	Français
5A PD Load Line	Ligne de charge 5A PD

- Note: La chute de tension ohmique maximale admissible pour la terre du câble est de 250 mV (voir 4.4.1). Il s'agit d'assurer l'intégrité des signaux pour le fil CC, lorsqu'il est utilisé à des fins de détection de connexion et de signalisation BMC *USB PD*.

4.8.2 Méthodes de charge non USB

Un produit (source et/ou collecteur) avec un connecteur USB Type-C ne doit utiliser que les méthodes de signalisation définies dans les spécifications USB pour négocier l'alimentation sur son ou ses connecteurs USB Type-C.

4.8.3 Hôte collecteur

Un hôte collecteur est une sous-catégorie de DRP spécifique, capable d'utiliser une alimentation, mais qui n'est pas en capacité d'agir comme un dispositif USB. Par exemple, le DFP d'un hub ou d'un ordinateur portable fonctionne comme un hôte, mais pas comme un dispositif.

L'hôte collecteur doit suivre les règles applicables aux DRP (voir 4.5.1.4 et Figure 4-15). Le DFP collecteur doit prendre en charge l'*USB PD* et la commande DR_Swap pour que le collecteur assume le rôle de données du DFP.

4.8.4 Dispositif d'alimentation

Un dispositif d'alimentation est une sous-catégorie de DRP spécifique, capable de fournir une alimentation, mais qui n'est pas en capacité d'agir comme un hôte USB. Par exemple, l'UFP d'un hub ou d'un moniteur fonctionne comme un dispositif, mais pas comme un hôte.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Le dispositif d'alimentation doit suivre les règles applicables aux DRP (voir 4.5.1.4 et Figure 4-15). Il doit également suivre les exigences applicables aux sources en tant que sources d'alimentation (voir 4.8.1). Le dispositif d'alimentation doit prendre en charge l'*USB PD* et la commande DR_Swap pour que la source assume le rôle de données de l'UFP.

4.8.5 Charge d'un système avec une batterie déchargée

Un système assumant la charge par USB lorsque la batterie est déchargée doit appliquer la Rd sur les broches CC1 et CC2 et suivre l'ensemble des règles applicables aux collecteurs. Lorsqu'il est connecté à une source, une DRP ou un dispositif d'alimentation, le système reçoit la VBUS par défaut. Il peut utiliser l'une des méthodes admises pour accroître la quantité d'alimentation qu'il peut utiliser pour charger sa batterie.

Uniquement dans le cas où la batterie du circuit d'application de la Rd est déchargée, il est nécessaire de garantir le maintien de la tension sur la broche CC dans la même plage que celle de la mise en œuvre du régulateur de tension de la Rd, afin que la source reconnaisse le collecteur et fournisse la VBUS. Par exemple, une résistance à 20 % de la valeur Rd en série avec un TEC avec VGTH(max) < VCLAMP(max), lorsque la porte est légèrement ramenée sur la broche CC, garantit la détection et peut être retirée lors de l'alimentation.

Lorsqu'un système avec une batterie déchargée présente une charge suffisante, il peut utiliser le message *USB PD* DR_Swap pour devenir un DFP.

4.8.6 Chargeurs multiports USB Type-C

Un chargeur à plusieurs ports USB Type-C est un produit qui expose plusieurs ports sources USB Type-C aux seules fins de la charge de plusieurs dispositifs connectés. Un chargeur USB Type-C conforme peut annoncer sur chacun de ses ports un ensemble d'options d'alimentation définies en 4.6.

Les chargeurs multiports se déclinent généralement en deux catégories définies ci-après:

1. chargeur à capacité assurée: chargeur multiport pour lequel la somme des capacités maximales de tous les ports exposés (indiquées à l'utilisateur) équivaut à la capacité d'alimentation totale du chargeur;
2. chargeur à capacité partagée: chargeur multiport pour lequel la somme des capacités maximales de tous les ports exposés (indiquées à l'utilisateur) est inférieure à la capacité d'alimentation totale du chargeur.

Un chargeur multiport peut disposer, dans un même produit, de groupements de ports de charge visuellement identifiables. Dans ce cas, chaque groupe peut annoncer indépendamment l'une des deux catégories de charge (chargeur à capacité assurée ou chargeur à capacité partagée).

Les informations suivantes définissent les exigences et les lignes directrices relatives au fonctionnement et au comportement d'un chargeur multiport USB Type-C.

4.8.6.1 Exigences générales

Les ports sources individuels doivent toujours satisfaire à la négociation d'alimentation et aux règles établies par les spécifications USB Type-C et USB Power Delivery, qui sont ajustées en fonction des besoins lorsque les ressources disponibles varient selon la consommation de puissance des autres ports.

La capacité minimale de tous les ports USB Type-C individuels d'un chargeur multiport USB Type-C doit être de 5 V à 1,5 A, indépendamment du nombre de ports utilisés par ailleurs.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Lorsqu'un chargeur USB Type-C comporte des ports de charge équipés de connecteurs femelles USB Standard-A, les exigences suivantes doivent être respectées:

- les ports USB Standard-A doivent être mis en œuvre comme un groupe indépendant (les ports USB Standard-A ne doivent donc pas être inclus dans un groupe de ports USB Type-C en tant que chargeurs à capacité partagée). Toute modification de la charge sur un port USB Type-A ne doit pas entraîner de variation de la tension sur l'un des ports USB Type-C et inversement;
- la capacité minimale de chaque port USB Standard-A doit être de 5 V à 500 mA, indépendamment du nombre de ports utilisés.

4.8.6.2 Comportements des chargeurs multiports

Chaque port source d'un chargeur à capacité assurée doit, compte tenu de sa conception, se comporter de manière indépendante et ne pas être affecté par l'état ou la charge des autres ports. Une exception à ce comportement est admise si le chargeur doit effectuer une action nécessaire pour satisfaire à une exigence de sécurité fonctionnelle globale du produit, en raison d'un comportement imprévu sur l'un des ports.

Pour les chargeurs à capacité partagée, les règles de comportement suivantes doivent s'appliquer:

- Chacun des ports sources exposés doit avoir la même capacité d'alimentation. Chaque port du chargeur doit offrir les mêmes capacités minimales et maximales, et doit pouvoir puiser l'alimentation partagée à parts égales.
- Tous les ports sources USB PD non branchés doivent avoir la même capacité d'alimentation.
    - Les ports doivent être en mesure d'alimenter la puissance de capacité partagée disponible jusqu'à la puissance maximale du port.
        - Les ports d'un chargeur à capacité partagée peuvent offrir une valeur inférieure à celle-ci, mais ils doivent augmenter l'offre jusqu'à la valeur exigée lorsque le collecteur définit le bit de non-correspondance de capacité dans sa réponse. L'opération peut s'effectuer en plusieurs étapes, mais tous les ports du groupe de capacité partagée doivent atteindre la puissance maximale dans un délai de trois secondes.
    - Chaque fois qu'un contrat d'alimentation est conclu ou modifié sur un port, la capacité partagée disponible doit être recalculée et la source doit envoyer des messages de capacité source mis à jour selon les besoins.
        - A mesure que les ports d'un groupe de capacité partagée sont connectés, chaque port source non branché restant doit être capable d'annoncer la plus faible capacité maximale du port OU la capacité partagée totale – la puissance contractuelle des ports connectés – (le nombre de ports non branchés – 1) * la puissance minimale du port.
    - Les ports doivent offrir au moins 7,5 W.
    - Lors du calcul de la capacité partagée disponible pour les ports d'un contrat d'alimentation fixe, le chargeur de capacité partagée doit utiliser la tension multipliée par le courant maximal dans le PDO en tant que puissance fournie par le port, indépendamment du courant de fonctionnement réel demandé dans la requête de RDO.
    - Lors du calcul de la capacité partagée disponible pour les ports d'un contrat d'alimentation PPS, le chargeur de capacité partagée doit utiliser la tension maximale multipliée par le courant maximal dans l'APDO en tant que puissance fournie par le port, indépendamment de la tension et du courant réels demandés dans la requête de RDO.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

  - Les ports ne relevant pas d'un contrat PD doivent respecter les règles d'une source de courant USB Type-C partagé, sauf si la puissance restante est suffisante pour que chaque port annonce 15 W.

- Tous les ports de courant USB Type-C exposés doivent pouvoir offrir les mêmes capacités d'alimentation.
  - Tous les ports doivent initialement offrir 1,5 A.
  - Les ports doivent passer à 3 A après branchement s'ils disposent d'une capacité partagée suffisante dans un délai d'une seconde.
  - Les ports ne doivent jamais offrir moins de 1,5 A (par exemple, ils ne doivent pas offrir la valeur par défaut).

Lorsque les ports sources sont connectés et commencent à fournir une alimentation, les ports sources restants doivent offrir les mêmes capacités d'alimentation. La capacité maximale peut être inférieure à celle des ports précédemment connectés en raison d'une capacité inutilisée inférieure à la capacité d'alimentation totale du chargeur. Par exemple, si la capacité d'alimentation totale d'un chargeur à deux ports USB Type-C est de 60 W avec une PDP de port de 35 W et que le premier port source connecté a établi un contrat d'alimentation de 35 W avec un collecteur connecté, le second port source peut offrir une PDP de 25 W.

Il convient que chaque port commence par fournir la capacité minimale du port, puis augmente l'alimentation fournie au collecteur au moment de la connexion. Par exemple, si la capacité maximale d'un port source USB Type-C exclusif est de 3 A, tous les ports sources exposés sont capables de fournir 3 A. Il convient que chaque port commence par fournir une alimentation inférieure à la capacité maximale (1,5 A, par exemple), puis augmente l'alimentation fournie à 3 A après un branchement. Cela se produit pour chaque port connecté jusqu'à ce que la capacité partagée inutilisée soit épuisée. A partir de ce point, aucun autre port n'augmente sa capacité à 3 A. Dans cet exemple, un collecteur reçoit une annonce de démarrage d'un courant USB Type-C de 1,5 A au moment du branchement, puis reçoit une annonce pour une augmentation du courant USB Type-C à 3 A. Autre exemple, si la capacité maximale d'un port source USB Type-C doit offrir l'*USB PD* avec une PDP de 35 W, tous les ports sources exposés prennent également en charge l'*USB PD* à 35 W. Chaque port doit commencer par fournir une alimentation inférieure (comme 15 W) à la connexion initiale, puis augmente l'alimentation fournie avec de nouvelles capacités sources lorsqu'il détermine que le collecteur demande une alimentation supérieure. Si le collecteur ne reçoit pas l'alimentation qu'il exige, il envoie une demande avec le bit de non-correspondance de capacité indiquant à la source qu'il souhaite plus de puissance. Cela se produit pour chaque port connecté jusqu'à ce que la capacité partagée inutilisée soit épuisée. A partir de ce point, aucun autre port n'augmente la capacité d'alimentation.

Lorsqu'il établit la capacité disponible restante, un chargeur prenant en charge le rééquilibrage d'alimentation stratégique peut inclure l'alimentation qui peut être revendiquée par les ports déjà utilisés:

1. en ajustant l'équivalent des capacités sources annoncées selon une PDP réduite sur un ou plusieurs ports déjà utilisés; ou
2. en émettant une commande *USB PD* GotoMin vers un ou plusieurs ports déjà utilisés.

Il convient que le rééquilibrage stratégique de l'alimentation prenne en compte l'expérience utilisateur et préserve les fonctionnalités USB nominales des dispositifs USB affectés. Les algorithmes de rééquilibrage fixes, qui n'intègrent pas la stratégie globale des systèmes USB, peuvent ne pas être adaptés à la mise en œuvre du rééquilibrage d'alimentation.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.8.6.3 Etiquetage des ports d'un chargeur multiport

Un étiquetage des ports conçu par l'OEM et conforme aux règles ci-dessous doit être présent sur les chargeurs multiports:

- pour les chargeurs à capacité assurée, chaque port source exposé doit être étiqueté afin d'indiquer la PDP du port. Dans ce cas, l'utilisateur peut prévoir que chaque port étiqueté soit en mesure de satisfaire aux contrats d'alimentation associés à l'étiquetage, indépendamment du nombre de ports sources utilisés;
- pour les chargeurs à capacité partagée, chaque port source doit être étiqueté afin indiquer la même PDP. En outre, le chargeur doit comporter une étiquette de portée visuelle identique, qui indique la capacité d'alimentation totale partagée parmi l'ensemble des ports identifiés comme un groupe.

Dans le cas d'un chargeur multiport qui dispose dans un même produit de groupements de ports de charge séparés, chaque groupe doit être clairement identifié comme un groupement distinct. Chaque groupement doit être étiqueté séparément, conformément au modèle de fonctionnement du groupe, comme un chargeur à capacité assurée ou comme un chargeur à capacité partagée.

Se reporter à l'USB Implementers Forum (USB-IF) pour la certification des chargeurs USB Type-C ainsi qu'aux lignes directrices relatives à l'étiquetage.

4.8.6.4 Chargeurs multiports avec fonctionnalité de hub de données USB

Les chargeurs multiports qui intègrent également une fonctionnalité de hub de données USB doivent satisfaire aux mêmes exigences que les chargeurs autonomes. Ces hubs de charge doivent être autoalimentés et doivent fonctionner intégralement comme des chargeurs, indépendamment de l'état des connexions du bus de données USB.

Dans le cas de chargeurs multiports équipés de hubs et qui alimentent un port orienté en amont (vers l'hôte), ce port peut se comporter comme un port de charge à capacité assurée (et donc constituer un port de charge dédié) ou comme un port de charge à capacité partagée (la capacité est partagée avec les ports orientés en aval). Dans ces deux cas, il convient d'étiqueter clairement le port conformément au comportement attendu et de l'identifier comme le composant d'un groupe lorsqu'il partage la capacité avec les autres ports.

Lorsque le port orienté en amont partage la capacité avec les ports orientés en aval, la PDP du port orienté en amont peut différer de celle des ports orientés en aval.

4.9 Câbles avec marquage électronique

Tous les câbles USB Type-C Complets doivent comporter un marquage électronique. Les câbles USB 2.0 Type-C peuvent avoir un marquage électronique. Le marqueur électronique est un élément des câbles avec marquage électronique, qui renvoie des informations sur le câble en réponse à une commande *USB PD* Discover Identity.

Les câbles avec marquage électronique doivent prendre en charge la commande *USB Power Delivery* Structured VDM Discover Identity adressée sur SOP' (le marqueur électronique). Cela fournit une méthode de détermination des caractéristiques du câble (capacité de transport du courant, performance, identification du fournisseur, etc.). Celle-ci peut être désignée comme une fonction d'identification des câbles USB Type-C.

Avant un contrat *USB PD* explicite, un dispositif d'alimentation peut utiliser SOP' pour découvrir l'identité du câble. Après la négociation d'un contrat *USB PD* explicite, seule la source doit communiquer avec SOP' et SOP" (voir 6.2.1).

Les câbles passifs qui incluent un marqueur électronique doivent respecter le diagramme d'états des câbles défini au 4.5.2.4 et à la Figure 4-20.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

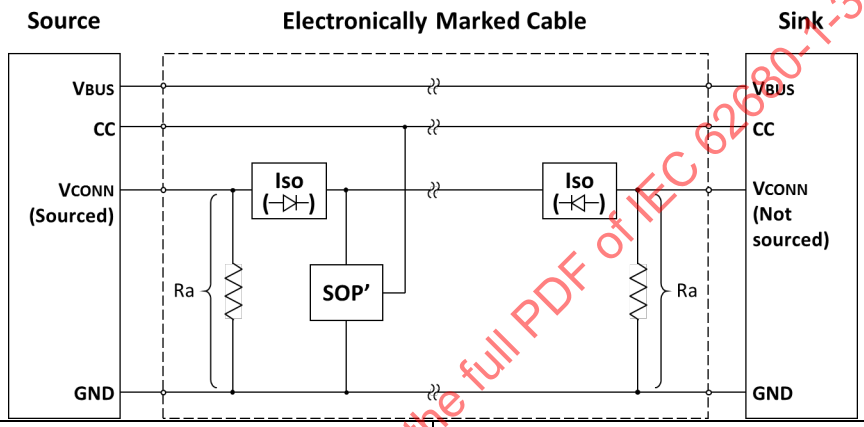
Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Les câbles avec marquage électronique sont généralement alimentés par la VCONN, bien que la VBUS ou une autre source puisse être utilisée. Les câbles qui incluent un marqueur électronique doivent satisfaire à l'alimentation maximale définie dans le Tableau 4-6.

Voir Tableau 4-5 pour connaître les exigences relatives aux sources d'alimentation de la VCONN. En l'absence de VCONN, un câble sous tension ne doit pas interférer avec le fonctionnement normal de la broche CC, y compris pour la détection du collecteur, l'annonce du courant et les opérations *USB PD*.

La Figure 4-41 représente un câble avec marquage électronique classique. Les éléments d'isolation (Iso) doivent empêcher la VCONN de parcourir le câble d'une extrémité à l'autre. La Ra est exigée dans le câble pour que la source détermine si la VCONN est nécessaire.

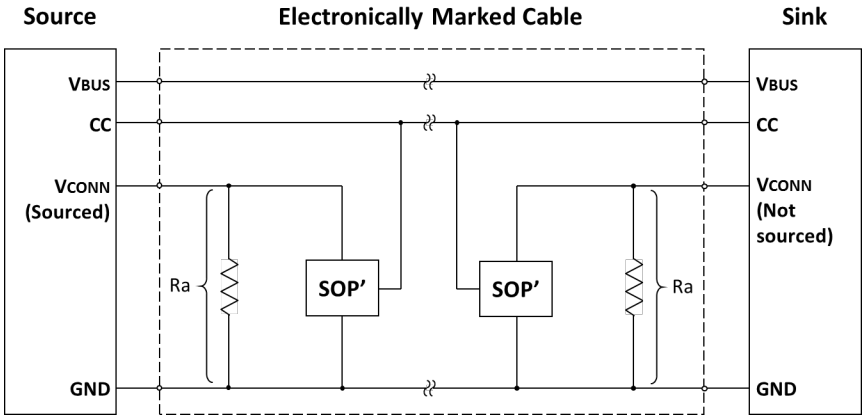
Figure 4-41 — Câble avec marquage électronique, VCONN étant connectée par le câble



Anglais	Français
Source	Source
Electronically Marked Cable	Câble avec marquage électronique
Sink	Collecteur
Sourced	Sourcée
Not Sourced	Non sourcée

La Figure 4-42 représente un câble avec marquage électronique, pour lequel le fil de la VCONN ne s'étend pas par le câble. Par conséquent, un élément SOP' (marqueur électronique) est exigé à chaque extrémité du câble. Dans ce cas, aucun élément d'isolation n'est nécessaire.

Figure 4-42 — Câble avec marquage électronique, avec SOP' à chaque extrémité



IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Anglais	Français
Source	Source
Electronically Marked Cable	Câble avec marquage électronique
Sink	Collecteur
Sourced	Sourcée
Not Sourced	Non sourcée

Pour les câbles qui répondent uniquement à SOP', l'emplacement du répondeur n'est pas pertinent.

4.9.1 Valeurs de paramètres

Le Tableau 4-21 fournit les exigences de temporisation de mise sous tension pour que les marqueurs électroniques SOP' et SOP" soient prêts à communiquer.

Tableau 4-21 — Temporisation SOP' et SOP"

	Maximum	Description
tVCONNStable	50 ms	Délai entre l'application de la VCONN et le moment où SOP' et SOP" doivent être prêts à communiquer.

4.9.2 Câbles actifs

Un câble actif est un câble avec marquage électronique qui intègre des circuits de traitement des signaux en bus de données, par exemple pour permettre la mise en œuvre de câbles plus longs. Les câbles actifs avec conditionnement des signaux en bus de données sur chaque connecteur mâle doivent implémenter SOP' et peuvent implémenter SOP". Les câbles actifs doivent satisfaire aux exigences d'alimentation définie dans le Tableau 4-6.

Les câbles actifs peuvent prendre en charge une paire TX/RX ou deux paires TX/RX. Le marqueur électronique du câble doit identifier le nombre de voies TX/RX prises en charge. Les câbles actifs peuvent exiger ou non une gestion de la configuration. La gestion de la configuration des câbles actifs est définie au 5.5.4.

4.10 Accessoires alimentés par VCONN (VPA) et dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN (VPD)

Les accessoires et dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN sont des collecteurs à connexion directe qui peuvent fonctionner uniquement avec la VCONN.

Ils exposent une impédance maximale de mise à la terre de Ra sur la broche VCONN et de Rd sur la broche CC.

Le retrait de la VCONN en l'absence de VBUS doit être traité comme un événement de déconnexion.

4.10.1 Accessoires alimentés par VCONN (VPA)

Un accessoire alimenté par VCONN met en oeuvre un mode alternatif (voir Annexe E).

Les accessoires alimentés par VCONN doivent se conformer au Tableau 4-7.

Lorsqu'ils fonctionnent avec le rôle de collecteur et en l'absence de VBUS, les accessoires alimentés par VCONN doivent traiter l'application de la VCONN comme un signal de connexion et doivent répondre aux messages *USB Power Delivery*.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

Lorsqu'ils sont alimentés uniquement par la VCONN, les accessoires alimentés par VCONN doivent négocier un mode alternatif. S'ils ne réussissent pas à négocier un mode alternatif dans le délai tAMETimeout, leur port partenaire retire la VCONN.

Lorsque la VBUS est fournie, les accessoires alimentés par VCONN sont soumis à toutes les exigences relatives aux modes alternatifs, y compris la présentation d'une interface *USB Billboard Device Class* lorsque la négociation d'un mode alternatif échoue.

Si un accessoire alimenté par VCONN demande à fournir une fonctionnalité de charge, il doit négocier la tension et le courant de manière indépendante sur l'hôte et les ports de charge, et il doit probablement réajuster la tension de la source avant de la transmettre au collecteur. Le collecteur peut absorber l'intégralité du courant que lui a annoncé l'accessoire alimenté par VCONN.

4.10.2 Dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN (VPD)

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit mettre en œuvre un point d'extrémité USB UFP.

Les dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN doivent se conformer au Tableau 4-8.

En l'absence de VBUS, les dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN doivent traiter l'application de la VCONN comme un signal de connexion.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit répondre aux messages *USB PD* sur SOP' et ne doit pas répondre aux autres messages USB PD. Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit répondre aux signaux USB PD Hard Reset et Cable Reset.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN de charge doit rejeter tous les messages *USB PD* pendant qu'une connexion est activée entre la broche CC du port hôte et la broche CC du port de charge.

Lorsque la VBUS est fournie par l'hôte, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit se comporter comme un collecteur UFP normal, mais ne doit répondre qu'aux messages *USB PD* sur SOP'. Si la VBUS est retirée par la suite et que la VCONN reste appliquée, le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN doit rester connecté et utiliser la VCONN comme signal de déconnexion exclusif.

Etant donné que les dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN ne répondent pas aux messages *USB PD* sur SOP, ils ne peuvent pas entrer dans l'un des modes alternatifs.

Un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN peut fournir des fonctionnalités de charge par le biais du VPD de charge. Les dispositifs USB alimentés par VCONN ne doivent pas assurer de transfert de données vers le port de charge autrement que par le fil CC.

Puisque la négociation de la puissance et du CC est transférée directement, le collecteur doit limiter son courant maximal en fonction de l'impédance supplémentaire introduite par le dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN.

De plus, comme l'alimentation peut uniquement passer du port de charge à l'hôte, la VCONN doit être fournie par l'hôte. Il n'y a aucune connexion de données au-delà du fil CC transférée à la source connectée. Il existe des limitations concernant ce que l'hôte peut annoncer et prendre en charge par l'*USB PD*:

- l'hôte ne doit pas négocier ni accepter de PR_Swap ou de VCONN_Swap;
- l'hôte ne doit pas activer de FR_Swap;
- l'hôte ne peut négocier une DR_Swap que lorsqu'il utilise l'*USB PD* Révision 2.0, et uniquement afin d'alterner le côté qui correspond au maître du bus PD; l'hôte reste toujours un DFP pour les données USB;
- l'hôte ne doit pas annoncer de données double fonction ni d'alimentation double fonction dans ses messages SourceCapability ou SinkCapability (l'hôte modifie ses capacités annoncées en rôle UFP/collecteur uniquement);

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

- l'hôte ne doit négocier aucun mode alternatif qui modifie la fonction des broches sur le connecteur;
- l'hôte doit se représenter auprès de la source de charge avec l'*USB PD*, comme s'il s'agissait d'un dispositif collecteur uniquement sans données.

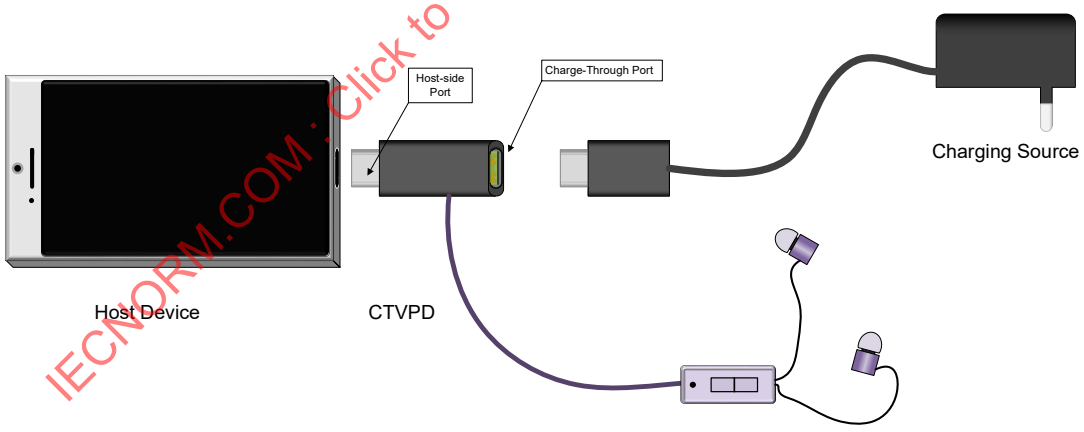
Tableau 4-22 — Exigences relatives à l'impédance CC du VPD de charge (RccCON)

	Minimum	Maximum	Description
RccCON		15 Ω	Impédance dans le VPD de charge pendant qu'une connexion est activée entre la broche CC du port hôte et la broche CC du port de charge.
	zOPEN		Impédance entre la broche CC du port hôte et la broche CC de charge lorsqu'une connexion est désactivée.

Tableau 4-23 — Exigences relatives au découplage de la VBUS du port de charge du CTVPD

	Minimum	Maximum	Description
CCTB	1 µF	10 µF	Capacité de découplage sur la connexion VBUS du port de charge pour prendre en charge ADP max CADP_THR

Figure 4-43 — Exemple de cas d'utilisation d'un dispositif USB alimenté par VCONN



Anglais	Français
Host device	Dispositif hôte
Host-side port	Port côté hôte
Charge through port	Port de charge
Charging source	Source de charge

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

4.11 Valeurs de paramètres

4.11.1 Paramètres de terminaison

Le Tableau 4-24 fournit les valeurs qui doivent être utilisées pour la Rp de la source, ou la source de courant. Les autres tensions de polarisation doivent être admises si elles restent inférieures à 5,5 V et respectent la plage de tensions applicables côté collecteur (voir Tableau 4-32, Tableau 4-33 et Tableau 4-34). Note: Lorsque deux sources sont connectées ensemble, elles peuvent utiliser des méthodes de terminaison différentes qui peuvent entraîner un flux de courant inattendu.

Tableau 4-24 — Exigences relatives aux terminaisons CC de la source (Rp)

Annonce de la source	Source de courant jusqu'à 1,7 V – 5,5 V	Polarisation de la résistance jusqu'à 4,75 V – 5,5 V	Polarisation de la résistance jusqu'à 3,3 V ±5 %
Puissance USB par défaut	80 µA ± 20 %	56 kΩ ± 20 % (Note 1)	36 kΩ ± 20 %
1,5 A à 5 V	180 µA ± 8 %	22 kΩ ± 5 %	12 kΩ ± 5 %
3,0 A à 5 V	330 µA ± 8 %	10 kΩ ± 5 %	4,7 kΩ ± 5 %

Notes:

1. Pour une Rp mise en œuvre dans un connecteur mâle USB Type-C sur un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 3.1* Standard-A, un ensemble câble-connecteurs USB Type-C vers *USB 2.0* Standard-A, un ensemble adaptateur USB Type-C vers connecteur femelle *USB 2.0* Micro-B ou un câble USB Type-C captif connecté à un hôte USB, une valeur de 56 kΩ ± 5 % doit être utilisée afin d'assurer une tolérance sur chutes de tension ohmique sur les bornes VBUS et GND de l'ensemble câble-connecteurs.

Le collecteur peut juger plus commode de mettre en œuvre la Rd simultanément sur plusieurs chemins (une plage Rd étendue lorsqu'il est hors tension et une plage Rd réduite lorsqu'il sous tension). Les transitions entre les mises en œuvre de la Rd qui ne dépassent pas le délai tCCDebounce ne doivent pas être interprétées comme dépassant la plage de Rd étendue. Les transitions entre les mises en œuvre de la Rd ne doivent pas entraîner une augmentation de la tension sur la broche CC en dehors de la plage de tensions qui définit une connexion. Le Tableau 4-25 fournit les méthodes et les valeurs qui doivent être utilisées pour la mise en œuvre de la Rd du collecteur.

Tableau 4-25 — Exigences relatives aux terminaisons CC du collecteur (Rd)

Mise en œuvre de la Rd	Valeur nominale	La capacité d'alimentation peut-elle être détectée?	Tension max. sur la broche
Régulateur de tension ±20 %[1]	1,1 V	Non	1,32 V
Résistance à la terre ±20 %	5,1 kΩ	Non	2,18 V
Résistance à la terre ±10 %	5,1 kΩ	Oui	2,04 V

Note:

1. La mise en œuvre du régulateur bloque la communication *USB PD* bien que le système puisse démarrer avec le régulateur et basculer vers la résistance dès qu'il peut exécuter l'*USB PD*.

Le Tableau 4-26 fournit la valeur de l'impédance à la terre de la VCONN des câbles alimentés.

Copyright © 2019 USB 3.0 Promoter Group. All rights reserved.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 62680-1-3:2021